SHELLY CASHMAN SERIES®

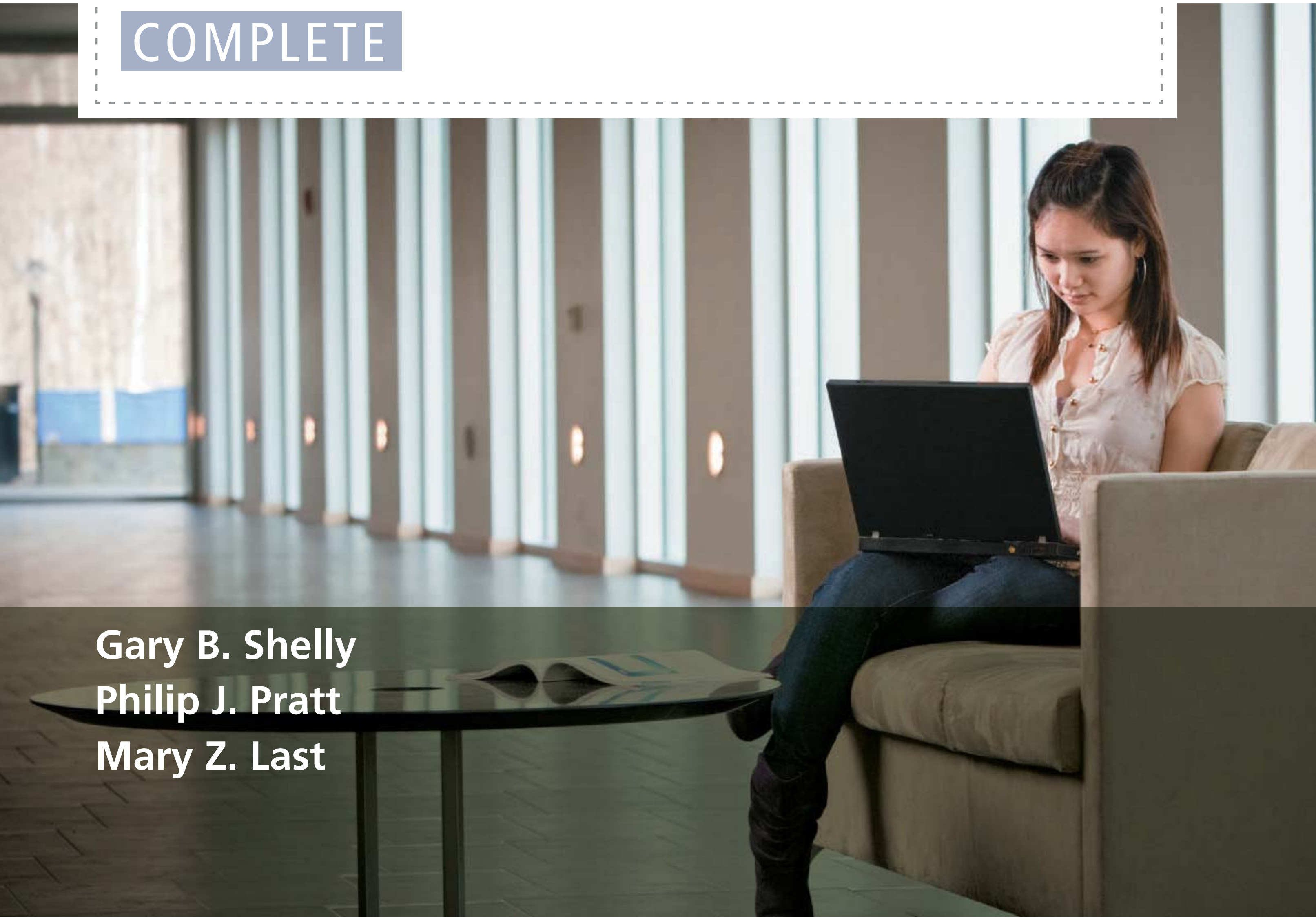
Microsoft® ACCESS® 2010

COMPLETE

SHELLY | PRATT

Microsoft® ACCESS® 2010

COMPLETE



Gary B. Shelly
Philip J. Pratt
Mary Z. Last

COURSE TECHNOLOGY
CENGAGE Learning™

Shelly Cashman Series®

Australia • Brazil • Japan • Korea • Mexico • Singapore • Spain • United Kingdom • United States

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

This is an electronic version of the print textbook. Due to electronic rights restrictions, some third party content may be suppressed. Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. The publisher reserves the right to remove content from this title at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it. For valuable information on pricing, previous editions, changes to current editions, and alternate formats, please visit www.cengage.com/highered to search by ISBN#, author, title, or keyword for materials in your areas of interest.

COURSE TECHNOLOGY
CENGAGE Learning™

Microsoft® Access® 2010: Complete
Gary B. Shelly, Philip J. Pratt, Mary Z. Last

Vice President, Publisher: Nicole Pinard
Executive Editor: Kathleen McMahon
Product Manager: Jon Farnham
Associate Product Manager: Aimee Poirier
Editorial Assistant: Lauren Brody
Director of Marketing: Cheryl Costantini
Marketing Manager: Tristen Kendall
Marketing Coordinator: Stacey Leasca
Print Buyer: Julio Esperas
Director of Production: Patty Stephan
Content Project Manager: Jennifer Feltri
Development Editor: Amanda Brodkin
Copyeditor: Troy Lilly
Proofreader: Karen Annett
Indexer: Rich Carlson
QA Manuscript Reviewers: Chris Scriver, John Freitas, Serge Palladino, Susan Pedicini, Danielle Shaw
Art Director: Marissa Falco
Cover Designer: Lisa Kuhn, Curio Press, LLC
Cover Photo: Tom Kates Photography
Text Design: Joel Sadagursky
Compositor: PreMediaGlobal

Microsoft and the Office logo are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries. Course Technology, a part of Cengage Learning, is an independent entity from the Microsoft Corporation, and not affiliated with Microsoft in any manner.

© 2011 Course Technology, Cengage Learning

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. No part of this work covered by the copyright herein may be reproduced, transmitted, stored or used in any form or by any means graphic, electronic, or mechanical, including but not limited to photocopying, recording, scanning, digitizing, taping, Web distribution, information networks, or information storage and retrieval systems, except as permitted under Section 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

For product information and technology assistance, contact us at
Cengage Learning Customer & Sales Support, 1-800-354-9706

For permission to use material from this text or product,
submit all requests online at **cengage.com/permissions**
Further permissions questions can be emailed to
permissionrequest@cengage.com

Library of Congress Control Number: 2010931625

ISBN-13: 978-0-538-74862-9

ISBN-10: 0-538-74862-1

Course Technology
20 Channel Center Street
Boston, MA 02210
USA

Cengage Learning is a leading provider of customized learning solutions with office locations around the globe, including Singapore, the United Kingdom, Australia, Mexico, Brazil, and Japan. Locate your local office at: **international.cengage.com/region**

Cengage Learning products are represented in Canada by Nelson Education, Ltd.

Visit our Web site **www.cengage.com/ct/shellycashman** to share and gain ideas on our textbooks!

To learn more about Course Technology,
visit **www.cengage.com/coursetechnology**

Purchase any of our products at your local college bookstore or at our preferred online store at **www.cengagebrain.com**

We dedicate this book to the memory of James S. Quasney (1940 – 2009), who for 18 years co-authored numerous books with Tom Cashman and Gary Shelly and provided extraordinary leadership to the Shelly Cashman Series editorial team. As series editor, Jim skillfully coordinated, organized, and managed the many aspects of our editorial development processes and provided unending direction, guidance, inspiration, support, and advice to the Shelly Cashman Series authors and support team members. He was a trusted, dependable, loyal, and well-respected leader, mentor, and friend. We are forever grateful to Jim for his faithful devotion to our team and eternal contributions to our series.

The Shelly Cashman Series Team

Printed in the United States of America
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 13 12 11 10

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

This page was intentionally left blank

Microsoft® ACCESS® 2010
COMPLETE

Contents

Preface viii

Microsoft Office 2010 and Windows 7

Office 2010 and Windows 7: Essential Concepts and Skills

Objectives **OFF 1**
Office 2010 and Windows 7 **OFF 2**
  Overview OFF 2
Introduction to the Windows 7 Operating System **OFF 2**
  Using a Mouse OFF 2
  Scrolling OFF 4
  Shortcut Keys OFF 4
  Starting Windows 7 OFF 5
  To Log On to the Computer OFF 6
  The Windows 7 Desktop OFF 7
Introduction to Microsoft Office 2010 **OFF 7**
  Microsoft Office 2010 Programs OFF 8
  Microsoft Office 2010 Suites OFF 8
Starting and Using a Program **OFF 9**
  Access OFF 9
  To Start a Program Using the Start Menu OFF 9
  To Maximize a Window OFF 12
Saving and Organizing Files **OFF 12**
  Organizing Files and Folders OFF 13
  To Create a Folder OFF 13
  Folder Windows OFF 15
  To Create a Folder within a Folder OFF 16
  To Expand a Folder, Scroll through Folder Contents, and Collapse a Folder OFF 17
  To Switch from One Program to Another OFF 18
  To Create an Access Database OFF 19
  To Close an Office File Using the Backstage View OFF 22
  Unique Elements in Access OFF 22
  The Access Window, Ribbon, and Elements Common to Office Programs OFF 23
  To Open an Existing Office File OFF 26
  To Display a Different Tab on the Ribbon OFF 27
  To Minimize, Display, and Restore the Ribbon OFF 28
  To Display and Use a Shortcut Menu OFF 29
  To Customize the Quick Access Toolbar OFF 30
Screen Resolution **OFF 31**
  To Change the Screen Resolution OFF 32
Additional Common Features of Office Programs **OFF 34**
  To Start a Program Using the Search Box OFF 34
  To Open a Recent Office File Using the Backstage View OFF 36
  To Create a New Blank Database from Windows Explorer OFF 37
  To Start a Program from Windows Explorer and Open a File OFF 38
Moving, Renaming, and Deleting Files **OFF 39**
  To Rename a File OFF 39
  To Move a File OFF 40
  To Delete a File OFF 41
Microsoft Office and Windows Help **OFF 41**
  To Open the Help Window in an Office Program OFF 42
  Moving and Resizing Windows OFF 42
  To Move a Window by Dragging OFF 42
  To Resize a Window by Dragging OFF 43
  Using Office Help OFF 44
  To Obtain Help Using the 'Type words to search for' Text Box OFF 44
  To Obtain Help Using the Help Links OFF 46
  To Obtain Help Using the Help Table of Contents OFF 47
  Obtaining Help while Working in an Office Program OFF 48
  Using Windows Help and Support OFF 48
  To Start Windows Help and Support OFF 48
Chapter Summary **OFF 49**
Learn It Online **OFF 50**
Apply Your Knowledge **OFF 51**
Extend Your Knowledge **OFF 51**
Make It Right **OFF 52**
In the Lab **OFF 52**
Cases and Places **OFF 54**

Microsoft Access 2010

CHAPTER ONE

Databases and Database Objects: An Introduction

Objectives **AC 1**
Introduction **AC 2**

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Project — Database Creation **AC 2**
Overview AC 4
Designing a Database **AC 6**
Database Requirements AC 6
Naming Tables and Fields AC 8
Identifying the Tables AC 8
Determining the Primary Keys AC 8
Determining Additional Fields AC 8
Determining and Implementing Relationships Between the Tables AC 9
Determining Data Types for the Fields AC 9
Identifying and Removing Redundancy AC 10
Creating a Database **AC 13**
The Access Window **AC 15**
Navigation Pane and Access Work Area AC 15
Creating a Table **AC 15**
To Modify the Primary Key AC 16
To Define the Remaining Fields in a Table AC 19
Making Changes to the Structure AC 20
To Save a Table AC 21
To View the Table in Design View AC 21
Checking the Structure in Design View AC 22
To Close the Table AC 23
To Add Records to a Table AC 23
Making Changes to the Data AC 25
Starting Access and Opening a Database AC 27
To Add Additional Records to a Table AC 28
To Resize Columns in a Datasheet AC 29
Previewing and Printing the Contents of a Table **AC 30**
To Preview and Print the Contents of a Table AC 31
Creating Additional Tables **AC 32**
To Create a Table in Design View AC 33
Correcting Errors in the Structure AC 37
Importing Data from Other Applications to Access **AC 38**
To Import an Excel Worksheet AC 38
Additional Database Objects **AC 42**
To Use the Simple Query Wizard to Create a Query AC 43
Using Queries AC 45
To Use a Criterion in a Query AC 46
Creating and Using Forms AC 48
To Create a Form AC 48
Using a Form AC 50
Creating and Printing Reports AC 51
To Create a Report AC 52
Using Layout View in a Report AC 53
To Modify Column Headings and Resize Columns AC 54
To Add Totals to a Report AC 57
Database Properties **AC 58**
To Change Database Properties AC 59
Special Database Operations **AC 60**
Backup and Recovery AC 60
Compacting and Repairing a Database AC 61
Additional Operations AC 62
Chapter Summary **AC 63**
Learn It Online **AC 63**
Apply Your Knowledge **AC 64**
Extend Your Knowledge **AC 65**
Make It Right **AC 66**
In the Lab **AC 66**
Cases and Places **AC 72**

CHAPTER TWO
Querying a Database

Objectives **AC 73**
Introduction **AC 74**
Project — Querying a Database **AC 74**
Overview AC 76
Creating Queries **AC 77**
To Create a Query in Design View AC 78
To Add Fields to the Design Grid AC 79
Determining Criteria AC 80
To Use Text Data in a Criterion AC 80
Using Saved Queries AC 82
To Use a Wildcard AC 83
To Use Criteria for a Field Not Included in the Results AC 85
Creating a Parameter Query AC 86
To Create and View a Parameter Query AC 87
To Use a Parameter Query AC 89
To Use a Number in a Criterion AC 90
To Use a Comparison Operator in a Criterion AC 91
Using Compound Criteria AC 92
To Use a Compound Criterion Involving AND AC 92
To Use a Compound Criterion Involving OR AC 93
Special Criteria AC 94
Sorting **AC 94**
To Clear the Design Grid AC 95
To Sort Data in a Query AC 96
To Omit Duplicates AC 97
To Sort on Multiple Keys AC 98
To Create a Top-Values Query AC 99
Joining Tables **AC 100**
To Join Tables AC 102
To Change Join Properties AC 105
To Create a Report Involving a Join AC 106
Creating a Form for a Query **AC 108**
To Create a Form for a Query AC 109
Using a Form AC 110
Exporting Data from Access to Other Applications **AC 110**
To Export Data to Excel AC 111
Text Files AC 113
Adding Criteria to a Join Query **AC 114**
To Restrict the Records in a Join AC 115
Calculations **AC 115**
To Use a Calculated Field in a Query AC 116
To Change a Caption AC 118
To Calculate Statistics AC 119
To Use Criteria in Calculating Statistics AC 121
To Use Grouping AC 122
Crosstab Queries **AC 123**
To Create a Crosstab Query AC 124
To Customize the Navigation Pane AC 127
Chapter Summary **AC 128**
Learn It Online **AC 129**
Apply Your Knowledge **AC 129**
Extend Your Knowledge **AC 130**
Make It Right **AC 131**
In the Lab **AC 132**
Cases and Places **AC 135**

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CHAPTER THREE
Maintaining a Database

Objectives **AC 137**
Introduction **AC 138**
Project — Maintaining a Database **AC 138**
- Overview AC 139

Updating Records **AC 141**
- Adding Records AC 141
- To Create a Split Form AC 142
- To Use a Form to Add Records AC 144
- To Search for a Record AC 144
- To Update the Contents of a Record AC 146
- To Delete a Record AC 147

Filtering Records **AC 147**
- To Use Filter By Selection AC 148
- To Toggle a Filter AC 150
- To Use a Common Filter AC 150
- To Use Filter By Form AC 152
- To Use Advanced Filter/Sort AC 153
- Filters and Queries AC 154

Changing the Database Structure **AC 154**
- To Add a New Field AC 155
- To Create a Lookup Field AC 156
- To Add a Calculated Field AC 159

Mass Changes **AC 161**
- To Use an Update Query AC 162
- To Use a Delete Query AC 163

Validation Rules **AC 165**
- To Specify a Required Field AC 166
- To Specify a Range AC 166
- To Specify a Default Value AC 167
- To Specify a Collection of Legal Values AC 167
- To Specify a Format AC 168
- Updating a Table that Contains Validation Rules AC 169
- To Change the Contents of a Field AC 170
- To Use a Lookup Field AC 171
- To Use a Multivalued Lookup Field AC 172
- To Update a Form to Reflect the Changes in the Table AC 174
- To Update a Report to Reflect the Changes in the Table AC 175
- To Include Totals in a Datasheet AC 177
- To Remove Totals from a Datasheet AC 179

Changing the Appearance of a Datasheet **AC 179**
- To Change Gridlines in a Datasheet AC 180
- To Change the Colors and Font in a Datasheet AC 181
- Using the Datasheet Formatting Dialog Box AC 182

Multivalued Fields in Queries **AC 183**
- To Query a Multivalued Field Showing Multiple Values on a Single Row AC 183
- To Query a Multivalued Field Showing Multiple Values on Multiple Rows AC 184

Referential Integrity **AC 185**
- To Specify Referential Integrity AC 186
- Effect of Referential Integrity AC 190
- To Use a Subdatasheet AC 191
- Handling Data Inconsistency AC 193

Ordering Records **AC 193**
- To Use the Ascending Button to Order Records AC 194

Chapter Summary **AC 196**
Learn It Online **AC 197**
Apply Your Knowledge **AC 197**
Extend Your Knowledge **AC 199**
Make It Right **AC 200**
In the Lab **AC 201**
Cases and Places **AC 205**

CHAPTER FOUR
Creating Reports and Forms

Objectives **AC 209**
Introduction **AC 210**
Project — Reports and Forms **AC 210**
- Overview AC 213

Report Creation **AC 215**
- Using Layout View in a Report AC 216
- Understanding Report Sections AC 216
- To Group and Sort in a Report AC 217
- Grouping and Sorting Options AC 220
- Understanding Report Controls AC 221
- To Add Totals and Subtotals AC 221
- To Remove the Group, Sort, and Total Pane AC 223
- To Conditionally Format Controls AC 224
- To Filter Records in a Report AC 228
- To Clear a Report Filter AC 229
- The Arrange and Page Setup Tabs AC 230

Multitable Reports **AC 231**
- To Create a Report that Involves Multiple Tables AC 232
- Creating a Report in Layout View AC 236
- Using Themes AC 238
- Live Preview for Themes AC 241
- To Create a Summary Report AC 242

Form Creation **AC 243**
- To Use the Form Wizard to Create a Form AC 243
- Understanding Form Sections AC 245
- Understanding Form Controls AC 245
- Using Layout View in a Form AC 245
- To Place Controls in a Control Layout AC 245
- To Add a Date AC 246
- To Change the Format of a Control AC 248
- To Move a Control AC 249
- To Move Controls in a Control Layout AC 249
- To Add a Field AC 251
- To Filter and Sort Using a Form AC 253
- The Arrange Tab AC 255

Mailing Labels **AC 255**
- To Create Labels AC 255

Chapter Summary **AC 260**
Learn It Online **AC 260**
Apply Your Knowledge **AC 261**
Extend Your Knowledge **AC 262**
Make It Right **AC 264**
In the Lab **AC 266**
Cases and Places **AC 271**

CHAPTER FIVE
Multitable Forms

Objectives **AC 273**
Introduction **AC 274**
Project — Multitable Forms **AC 274**
- Overview AC 275

Adding Special Fields **AC 277**
- To Add Fields with New Data Types to a Table AC 278
- To Use the Input Mask Wizard AC 280
- Adding Fields in Datasheet View AC 282

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Updating the New Fields **AC 283**
  To Enter Data Using an Input Mask AC 283
  To Enter Data in Yes/No Fields AC 284
  To Enter Data in Date/Time Fields AC 285
  To Enter Data in Memo Fields AC 285
  To Change the Row and Column Size AC 286
  Undoing Changes to Row Height and Column Width AC 287
  To Enter Data in OLE Object Fields AC 287
  Bitmap Image AC 289
  To Enter Data in Attachment Fields AC 289
  Viewing Pictures and Attachments in Datasheet View AC 292
Multitable Form Techniques **AC 292**
  To Create a Form in Design View AC 292
  To Add a Control for a Field to the Form Design AC 293
  To Add Controls for Additional Fields AC 294
  To Align Controls on the Left AC 295
  To Align Controls on the Top and Adjust Vertical Spacing AC 296
  To Move the Field List AC 297
  To Add Controls for the Remaining Fields AC 297
  To Use a Shortcut Menu to Change the Fill/Back Color AC 299
  To Add a Title AC 301
  To Place a Subform AC 301
  To View the Form AC 305
  To Modify a Subform AC 305
  To Change a Label AC 308
  Size Mode for Pictures AC 309
  To Change Special Effects and Colors AC 309
  To Modify the Appearance of a Form Title AC 312
  To Change a Tab Stop AC 314
  Changing the Tab Order AC 315
  To Use the Form AC 315
  Navigation in the Form AC 318
Object Dependencies **AC 318**
  To View Object Dependencies AC 319
Date/Time, Memo, and Yes/No Fields in Queries **AC 319**
  To Use Date/Time, Memo, and Yes/No Fields in a Query AC 320
Datasheets in Forms **AC 322**
  Creating a Simple Form with a Datasheet AC 322
  Creating a Form with a Datasheet in Layout View AC 323
Creating a Multitable Form Based on the Many Table **AC 325**
Chapter Summary **AC 326**
Learn It Online **AC 327**
Apply Your Knowledge **AC 327**
Extend Your Knowledge **AC 328**
Make It Right **AC 329**
In the Lab **AC 330**
Cases and Places **AC 333**

CHAPTER SIX
Advanced Report Techniques

Objectives **AC 337**
Introduction **AC 338**
Project — Advanced Report Techniques **AC 338**
  Overview AC 339
Additional Tables **AC 342**
  To Create the New Tables AC 343
  Linking versus Importing AC 345
  The Linked Table Manager AC 346
  To Relate Several Tables AC 346
Creating Reports in Design View **AC 347**
  To Create an Additional Query for the Report AC 348
  To Create an Initial Report in Design View AC 351
  To Add Fields to the Report in Design View AC 354
  To Change Labels AC 356
  Using Other Tools in the Controls Group AC 357
  To Add Text Boxes AC 358
  To View the Report in Print Preview AC 361
  To Format a Control AC 361
  To Group Controls AC 362
  To Modify Grouped Controls AC 364
  To Modify Multiple Controls That Are Not Grouped AC 365
  Undoing and Saving AC 367
  To Add a Subreport AC 368
  To Open the Subreport in Design View AC 371
  Print Layout Issues AC 371
  To Modify the Controls in the Subreport AC 372
  To Change the Can Grow Property AC 373
  To Change the Appearance of the Controls in the Subreport AC 374
  To Resize the Subreport and the Report in Design View AC 376
  To Modify Section Properties AC 377
  To Add a Title, Page Number, and Date AC 378
  To Remove the Alternate Color AC 380
  To Add and Move Fields in a Report AC 382
  To Add the Remaining Fields AC 385
  To Resize the Detail Section AC 386
  Totals and Subtotals AC 387
  To Add Totals and Subtotals AC 387
  Grouping and Sorting Options AC 392
  To Remove the Color from the Report Header AC 393
  To Assign a Conditional Value AC 394
  Obtaining Help on Functions AC 399
  Page Setup Tab AC 399
  Fine-Tuning a Report AC 401
Chapter Summary **AC 402**
Learn It Online **AC 403**
Apply Your Knowledge **AC 403**
Extend Your Knowledge **AC 405**
Make It Right **AC 405**
In the Lab **AC 406**
Cases and Places **AC 414**

CHAPTER SEVEN
Using SQL

Objectives **AC 417**
Introduction **AC 418**
Project — Using SQL **AC 418**
  Overview AC 419
SQL Background **AC 420**
  To Change the Font Size AC 421
SQL Queries **AC 421**
  To Create a New SQL Query AC 422
  SQL Commands AC 423
  To Include Only Certain Fields AC 423

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Prepare to Enter a New SQL Query AC 425
To Include All Fields AC 426
To Use a Criterion Involving a Numeric Field AC 427
Simple Criteria AC 428
To Use a Comparison Operator AC 428
To Use a Criterion Involving a Text Field AC 429
To Use a Wildcard AC 430
Compound Criteria AC 431
To Use a Compound Criterion Involving AND AC 431
To Use a Compound Criterion Involving OR AC 432
To Use NOT in a Criterion AC 433
To Use a Computed Field AC 434
Sorting AC 435
To Sort the Results on a Single Field AC 435
To Sort the Results on Multiple Fields AC 437
To Sort the Results in Descending Order AC 438
To Omit Duplicates When Sorting AC 439
To Use a Built-In Function AC 441
To Assign a Name to the Results of a Function AC 442
To Use Multiple Functions in the Same Command AC 443
Grouping AC 444
To Use Grouping AC 444
Grouping Requirements AC 445
To Restrict the Groups that Appear AC 446
Joining Tables AC 447
Qualifying Fields AC 447
To Join Tables AC 448
To Restrict the Records in a Join AC 449
Aliases AC 450
To Join a Table to Itself AC 450
Subqueries AC 451
To Use a Subquery AC 452
Using an IN Clause AC 453
Comparison with Access-Generated SQL AC 453
Updating Data through SQL AC 454
To Use an INSERT Command AC 454
To Use an UPDATE Command AC 455
To Use a DELETE Command AC 456
Chapter Summary AC 457
Learn It Online AC 458
Apply Your Knowledge AC 458
Extend Your Knowledge AC 459
Make It Right AC 459
In the Lab AC 460
Cases and Places AC 462

Appendices

APPENDIX A

Project Planning Guidelines

Using Project Planning Guidelines APP 1
Determine the Project’s Purpose APP 1
Analyze Your Audience APP 1
Gather Possible Content APP 2
Determine What Content to Present to Your Audience APP 2
Summary APP 2

APPENDIX B

Publishing Office 2010 Web Pages Online

Using an Office Program to Publish Office 2010 Web Pages APP 3

Index IND 1

Quick Reference Summary QR 1

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Preface

The Shelly Cashman Series® offers the finest textbooks in computer education. We are proud that since Mircosoft Office 4.3, our series of Microsoft Office textbooks have been the most widely used books in education. With each new edition of our Office books, we make significant improvements based on the software and comments made by instructors and students. For this Microsoft Access 2010 text, the Shelly Cashman Series development team carefully reviewed our pedagogy and analyzed its effectiveness in teaching today's Office student. Students today read less, but need to retain more. They need not only to be able to perform skills, but to retain those skills and know how to apply them to different settings. Today's students need to be continually engaged and challenged to retain what they're learning.

With this Microsoft Access 2010 text, we continue our commitment to focusing on the user and how they learn best.

Objectives of This Textbook

Microsoft Access 2010: Complete is intended for a six- to nine-week period in a course that teaches Access 2010 in conjunction with another application or computer concepts. No experience with a computer is assumed, and no mathematics beyond the high school freshman level is required. The objectives of this book are:

- To offer an in-depth presentation of Microsoft Access 2010
- To expose students to practical examples of the computer as a useful tool
- To acquaint students with the proper procedures to create databases suitable for coursework, professional purposes, and personal use
- To help students discover the underlying functionality of Access 2010 so they can become more productive
- To develop an exercise-oriented approach that allows learning by doing

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

New to This Edition

Microsoft Access 2010: Complete offers a number of new features and approaches, which improve student understanding, retention, transference, and skill in using Access 2010. The following enhancements will enrich the learning experience:

- Office 2010 and Windows 7: Essential Concepts and Skills chapter presents basic Office 2010 and Windows 7 skills.
- Streamlined first chapter allows the ability to cover more advanced skills earlier.
- Chapter topic redistribution offers concise chapters that ensure complete skill coverage.
- New pedagogical elements enrich material creating an accessible and user-friendly approach.
  - Break Points, a new boxed element, identify logical stopping points and give students instructions regarding what they should do before taking a break.
  - Within step instructions, Tab | Group Identifiers, such as (Home tab | Bold button), help students more easily locate elements in the groups and on the tabs on the Ribbon.
  - Modified step-by-step instructions tell the student what to do and provide the generic reason why they are completing a specific task, which helps students easily transfer given skills to different settings.

The Shelly Cashman Approach

A Proven Pedagogy with an Emphasis on Project Planning

Each chapter presents a practical problem to be solved, within a project planning framework. The project orientation is strengthened by the use of Plan Ahead boxes, which encourage critical thinking about how to proceed at various points in the project. Step-by-step instructions with supporting screens guide students through the steps. Instructional steps are supported by the Q&A, Experimental Step, and BTW features.

A Visually Engaging Book that Maintains Student Interest

The step-by-step tasks, with supporting figures, provide a rich visual experience for the student. Call-outs on the screens that present both explanatory and navigational information provide students with information they need when they need to know it.

Supporting Reference Materials (Appendices and Quick Reference)

The appendices provide additional information about the Application at hand and include such topics as project planning guidelines and certification. With the Quick Reference, students can quickly look up information about a single task, such as keyboard shortcuts, and find page references of where in the book the task is illustrated.

Integration of the World Wide Web

The World Wide Web is integrated into the Access 2010 learning experience by (1) BTW annotations; (2) BTW, Q&A, and Quick Reference Summary Web pages; and (3) the Learn It Online section for each chapter.

End-of-Chapter Student Activities

Extensive end-of-chapter activities provide a variety of reinforcement opportunities for students where they can apply and expand their skills.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Instructor Resources

The Instructor Resources include both teaching and testing aids and can be accessed via CD-ROM or at www.cengage.com/login.

BOOK RESOURCES
Blackboard Testbank
Instructor's Manual
Lecture Success System
PowerPoint Presentations
Solutions to Exercises (Windows)
Syllabus
Test Bank and Test Engine
WebCT Testbank

Instructor's Manual Includes lecture notes summarizing the chapter sections, figures and boxed elements found in every chapter, teacher tips, classroom activities, lab activities, and quick quizzes in Microsoft Word files.

Syllabus Easily customizable sample syllabi that cover policies, assignments, exams, and other course information.

Figure Files Illustrations for every figure in the textbook in electronic form.

PowerPoint Presentations A multimedia lecture presentation system that provides slides for each chapter. Presentations are based on chapter objectives.

Solutions To Exercises Includes solutions for all end-of-chapter and chapter reinforcement exercises.

Test Bank & Test Engine Test Banks include 112 questions for every chapter, featuring objective-based and critical thinking question types, and including page number references and figure references, when appropriate. Also included is the test engine, ExamView, the ultimate tool for your objective-based testing needs.

Data Files For Students Includes all the files that are required by students to complete the exercises.

Additional Activities For Students Consists of Chapter Reinforcement Exercises, which are true/false, multiple-choice, and short answer questions that help students gain confidence in the material learned.

SAM: Skills Assessment Manager

SAM 2010 is designed to help bring students from the classroom to the real world. It allows students to train on and test important computer skills in an active, hands-on environment.

SAM's easy-to-use system includes powerful interactive exams, training, and projects on the most commonly used Microsoft Office applications. SAM simulates the Microsoft Office 2010 application environment, allowing students to demonstrate their knowledge and think through the skills by performing real-world tasks such as bolding word text or setting up slide transitions. Add in live-in-the-application projects, and students are on their way to truly learning and applying skills to business-centric documents.

Designed to be used with the Shelly Cashman Series, SAM includes handy page references so that students can print helpful study guides that match the Shelly Cashman textbooks used in class. For instructors, SAM also includes robust scheduling and reporting features.

Content for Online Learning

Course Technology has partnered with the leading distance learning solution providers and class-management platforms today. To access this material, instructors will visit our password-protected instructor resources available at www.cengage.com/coursetechnology. Instructor resources include the following: additional case projects, sample syllabi, PowerPoint presentations per chapter, and more. For additional information or for an instructor user name and password, please contact your sales representative. For students

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

to access this material, they must have purchased a WebTutor PIN-code specific to this title and your campus platform. The resources for students may include (based on instructor preferences), but are not limited to: topic review, review questions, and practice tests.

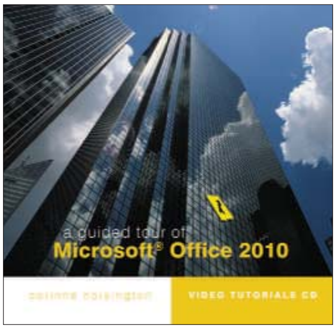
CourseNotes

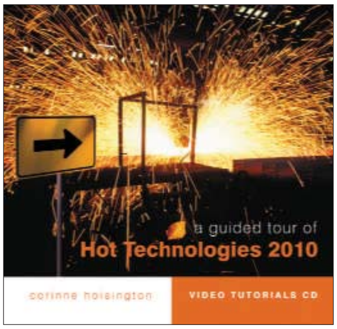
Course Technology's CourseNotes are six-panel quick reference cards that reinforce the most important and widely used features of a software application in a visual and user-friendly format. CourseNotes serve as a great reference tool during and after the student completes the course. CourseNotes are available for software applications such as Microsoft Office 2010, Word 2010, Excel 2010, Access 2010, PowerPoint 2010, and Windows 7. Topic-based CourseNotes are available for Best Practices in Social Networking, Hot Topics in Technology, and Web 2.0. Visit www.cengage.com/ct/coursenotes to learn more!

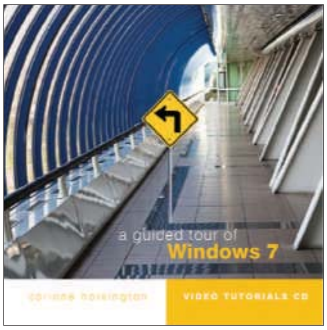
course|notes™
quick reference guide

A Guided Tour

Add excitement and interactivity to your classroom with "*A Guided Tour*" product line. Play one of the brief mini-movies to spice up your lecture and spark classroom discussion. Or, assign a movie for homework and ask students to complete the correlated assignment that accompanies each topic. "*A Guided Tour*" product line takes the prep work out of providing your students with information about new technologies and applications and helps keep students engaged with content relevant to their lives; all in under an hour!







About Our Covers

The Shelly Cashman Series is continually updating our approach and content to reflect the way today's students learn and experience new technology. This focus on student success is reflected on our covers, which feature real students from the University of Rhode Island using the Shelly Cashman Series in their courses, and reflect the varied ages and backgrounds of the students learning with our books. When you use the Shelly Cashman Series, you can be assured that you are learning computer skills using the most effective courseware available.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Textbook Walk-Through

The Shelly Cashman Series Pedagogy: Project-Based — Step-by-Step — Variety of Assessments

Plan Ahead boxes prepare students to create successful projects by encouraging them to think strategically about what they are trying to accomplish before they begin working.

Overview

As you read this chapter, you will learn how to query a database by performing these general tasks:

- Create queries using Design view.
- Use criteria in queries.
- Create and use parameter queries.
- Sort data in queries.
- Join tables in queries.
- Create reports and forms from a query.
- Export data from a query.
- Perform calculations in queries.
- Create crosstab queries.

Plan Ahead

Query Design Decisions

When posing a question to Access, you must design an appropriate query. In the process of designing a query, the decisions you make will determine the fields, tables, criteria, order, and special calculations included in the query. To design a query, you can follow these general guidelines:

1. **Identify the fields.** Examine the question or request to determine which fields from the tables in the database are involved. Examine the contents of these fields to make sure you understand the data type and format for storing the data.
2. **Identify restrictions.** Unless the question or request calls for the inclusion of all records, determine the restrictions or the conditions records must satisfy to be included in the results.
3. **Determine whether special order is required.** Examine the question or request to determine whether the results must appear in some specific order.
4. **Determine whether more than one table is required.** If all the fields identified in Step 1 are in the same table, no special action is required. If this is not the case, identify all tables represented by those fields.
5. **Determine whether calculations are required.** Examine the question or request to determine whether, in addition to the fields determined in Step 1, calculations must be included. Such calculations include individual record calculations (for example, adding the values in two fields) or group calculations (for example, finding the total of the values in a particular field for all the records).
6. **If data is to be summarized, determine whether a crosstab query would be appropriate.** If data is to be grouped by two different types of information, you can use a crosstab query. You will need to identify the two types of information. One of the types will form the row headings and the other will form the column headings in the query results.

When necessary, more specific details concerning the decisions and/or actions are presented at appropriate points in the chapter. The chapter also will identify the use of these guidelines in creating queries such as those shown in Figure 2–1.

BTW

Designing Queries
Before creating queries, examine the contents of the tables involved. You need to know the data type for each field and how the data for the field is stored. If a query includes a state, for example, you need to know whether state is stored as the two-character abbreviation or as the full state name.

Step-by-step instructions now provide a context beyond the point-and-click. Each step provides information on why students are performing each task, or what will occur as a result.

To Use the Simple Query Wizard to Create a Query

Queries are simply questions, the answers to which are in the databa feature that helps you find the answers to a wide variety of questions. Once want to ask to determine the fields involved in the question, you can begin restrictions involved in the query, nor any special order or calculations, you

The following steps use the Simple Query Wizard to create a query th obtain financial information on its clients. The query displays the number, n hours YTD, and business analyst number of all clients.

1

- If the Navigation Pane is closed, click the Shutter Bar Open/Close Button to open the Navigation Pane.
- Be sure the Client table is selected.
- Click Create on the Ribbon to display the Create tab.
- Click the Query Wizard button (Create tab | Queries group) to display the New Query dialog box (Figure 1–60).

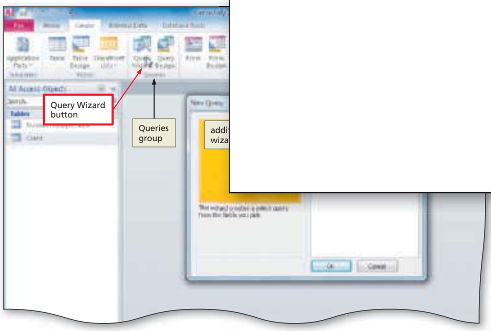


Figure 1–60

2

- Be sure Simple Query Wizard is selected, and then click the OK button (New Query dialog box) to display the Simple Query Wizard dialog box (Figure 1–61).

Q&A What would happen if the Business Analyst Table were selected instead of the Client table?

The list of available fields would contain fields from the Business Analyst Table rather than the Client table.

Q&A If the list contained Business Analyst Table fields, how could I make it contain Client table fields?

Click the arrow in the Tables/Queries box and then click the Client table in the list that appears.

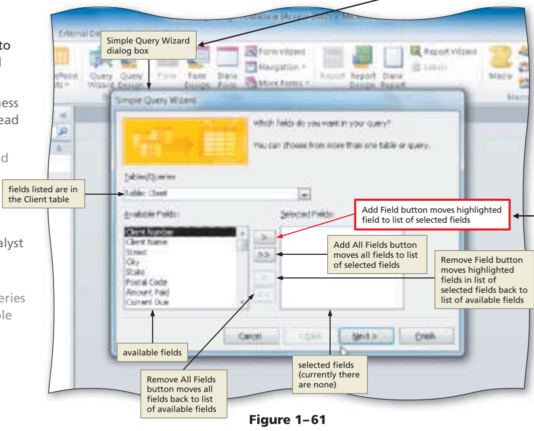

Simple Query Wizard dialog box
fields listed are in the Client table
Add Field button moves highlighted field to list of selected fields
Add All Fields button moves all fields to list of selected fields
Remove Field button moves highlighted fields in list of selected fields back to list of available fields
available fields
Remove All Fields button moves all fields back to list of available fields
selected fields (currently there are none)

Figure 1–61

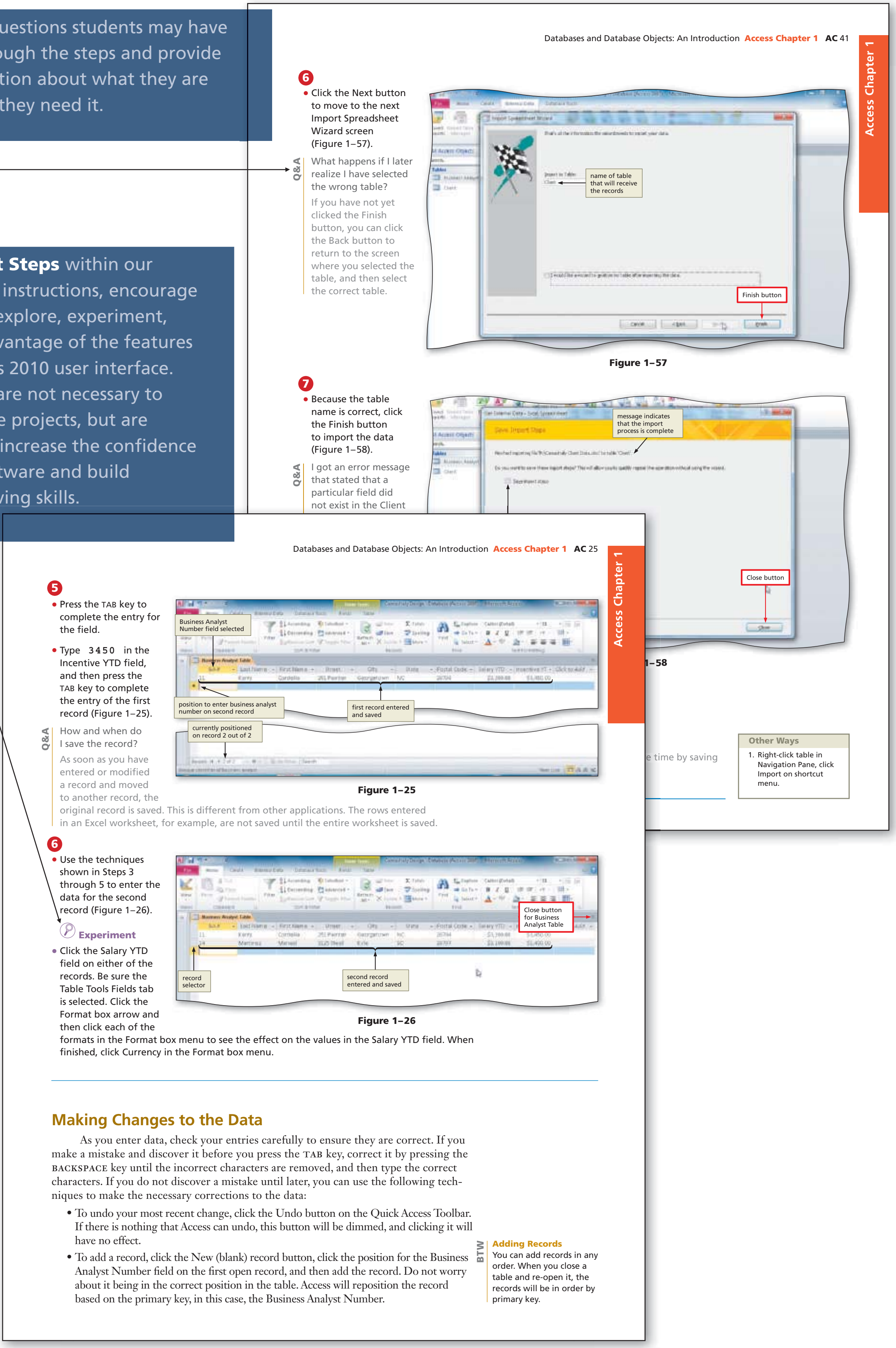
Explanatory callouts summarize what is happening on screen.

Navigational callouts in red show students where to click.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Q&A boxes offer questions students may have when working through the steps and provide additional information about what they are doing right where they need it.

Experiment Steps within our step-by-step instructions, encourage students to explore, experiment, and take advantage of the features of the Access 2010 user interface. These steps are not necessary to complete the projects, but are designed to increase the confidence with the software and build problem-solving skills.



Databases and Database Objects: An Introduction **Access Chapter 1** **AC** 41

6

- Click the Next button to move to the next Import Spreadsheet Wizard screen (Figure 1–57).

Q&A What happens if I later realize I have selected the wrong table?

If you have not yet clicked the Finish button, you can click the Back button to return to the screen where you selected the table, and then select the correct table.

name of table that will receive the records
Finish button

Figure 1–57

7

- Because the table name is correct, click the Finish button to import the data (Figure 1–58).

Q&A I got an error message that stated that a particular field did not exist in the Client

message indicates that the import process is complete
Close button

1–58

e time by saving

Other Ways

1. Right-click table in Navigation Pane, click Import on shortcut menu.

Access Chapter 1

Databases and Database Objects: An Introduction **Access Chapter 1** **AC** 25

5

- Press the TAB key to complete the entry for the field.
- Type 3450 in the Incentive YTD field, and then press the TAB key to complete the entry of the first record (Figure 1–25).

Q&A How and when do I save the record?

As soon as you have entered or modified a record and moved to another record, the original record is saved. This is different from other applications. The rows entered in an Excel worksheet, for example, are not saved until the entire worksheet is saved.

Business Analyst Number field selected
position to enter business analyst number on second record
first record entered and saved
currently positioned on record 2 out of 2

Figure 1–25

6

- Use the techniques shown in Steps 3 through 5 to enter the data for the second record (Figure 1–26).

Experiment

- Click the Salary YTD field on either of the records. Be sure the Table Tools Fields tab is selected. Click the Format box arrow and then click each of the formats in the Format box menu to see the effect on the values in the Salary YTD field. When finished, click Currency in the Format box menu.

Close button for Business Analyst Table
record selector
second record entered and saved

Figure 1–26

Making Changes to the Data

As you enter data, check your entries carefully to ensure they are correct. If you make a mistake and discover it before you press the TAB key, correct it by pressing the BACKSPACE key until the incorrect characters are removed, and then type the correct characters. If you do not discover a mistake until later, you can use the following techniques to make the necessary corrections to the data:

- To undo your most recent change, click the Undo button on the Quick Access Toolbar. If there is nothing that Access can undo, this button will be dimmed, and clicking it will have no effect.
- To add a record, click the New (blank) record button, click the position for the Business Analyst Number field on the first open record, and then add the record. Do not worry about it being in the correct position in the table. Access will reposition the record based on the primary key, in this case, the Business Analyst Number.

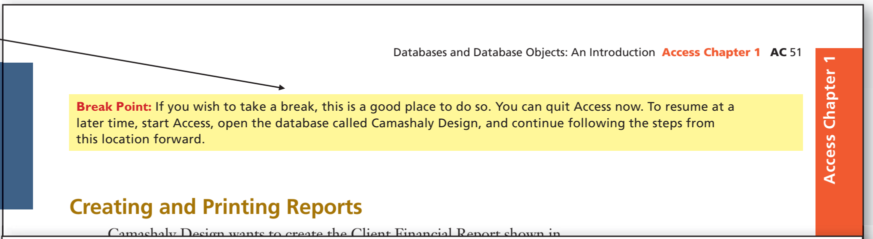
BTW **Adding Records**
You can add records in any order. When you close a table and re-open it, the records will be in order by primary key.

Access Chapter 1

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Textbook Walk-Through

Break Points identify logical breaks in the chapter if students need to stop before completing the project.



Databases and Database Objects: An Introduction Access Chapter 1 AC 51

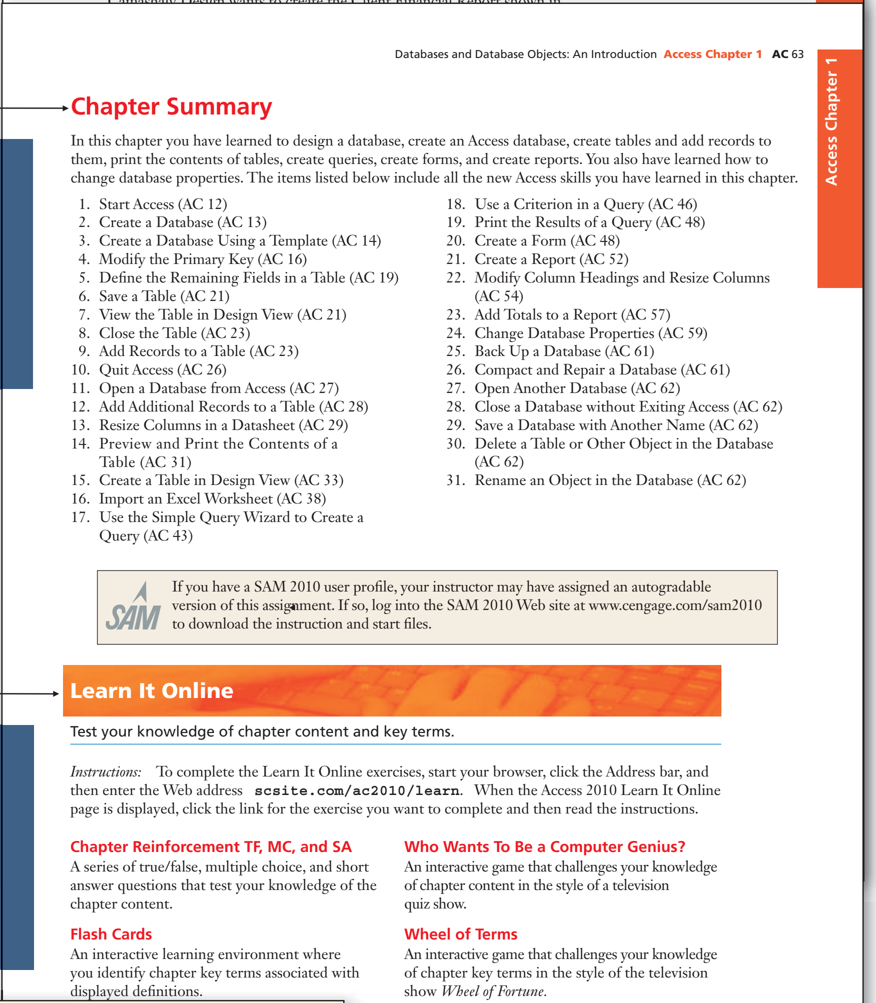
Break Point: If you wish to take a break, this is a good place to do so. You can quit Access now. To resume at a later time, start Access, open the database called Camashaly Design, and continue following the steps from this location forward.

Creating and Printing Reports

Camashaly Design wants to create the Client Financial Report shown in

Access Chapter 1

Chapter Summary A concluding paragraph, followed by a listing of the tasks completed within a chapter together with the pages on which the step-by-step, screen-by-screen explanations appear.



Databases and Database Objects: An Introduction Access Chapter 1 AC 63

Chapter Summary

In this chapter you have learned to design a database, create an Access database, create tables and add records to them, print the contents of tables, create queries, create forms, and create reports. You also have learned how to change database properties. The items listed below include all the new Access skills you have learned in this chapter.

1. Start Access (AC 12)
2. Create a Database (AC 13)
3. Create a Database Using a Template (AC 14)
4. Modify the Primary Key (AC 16)
5. Define the Remaining Fields in a Table (AC 19)
6. Save a Table (AC 21)
7. View the Table in Design View (AC 21)
8. Close the Table (AC 23)
9. Add Records to a Table (AC 23)
10. Quit Access (AC 26)
11. Open a Database from Access (AC 27)
12. Add Additional Records to a Table (AC 28)
13. Resize Columns in a Datasheet (AC 29)
14. Preview and Print the Contents of a Table (AC 31)
15. Create a Table in Design View (AC 33)
16. Import an Excel Worksheet (AC 38)
17. Use the Simple Query Wizard to Create a Query (AC 43)
18. Use a Criterion in a Query (AC 46)
19. Print the Results of a Query (AC 48)
20. Create a Form (AC 48)
21. Create a Report (AC 52)
22. Modify Column Headings and Resize Columns (AC 54)
23. Add Totals to a Report (AC 57)
24. Change Database Properties (AC 59)
25. Back Up a Database (AC 61)
26. Compact and Repair a Database (AC 61)
27. Open Another Database (AC 62)
28. Close a Database without Exiting Access (AC 62)
29. Save a Database with Another Name (AC 62)
30. Delete a Table or Other Object in the Database (AC 62)
31. Rename an Object in the Database (AC 62)

SAM If you have a SAM 2010 user profile, your instructor may have assigned an autogradable version of this assignment. If so, log into the SAM 2010 Web site at www.cengage.com/sam2010 to download the instruction and start files.

Learn It Online Every chapter features a Learn It Online section that is comprised of six exercises. These exercises include True/False, Multiple Choice, Short Answer, Flash Cards, Practice Test, and Learning Games.

Learn It Online

Test your knowledge of chapter content and key terms.

Instructions: To complete the Learn It Online exercises, start your browser, click the Address bar, and then enter the Web address `scsite.com/ac2010/learn`. When the Access 2010 Learn It Online page is displayed, click the link for the exercise you want to complete and then read the instructions.

Chapter Reinforcement TF, MC, and SA
A series of true/false, multiple choice, and short answer questions that test your knowledge of the chapter content.

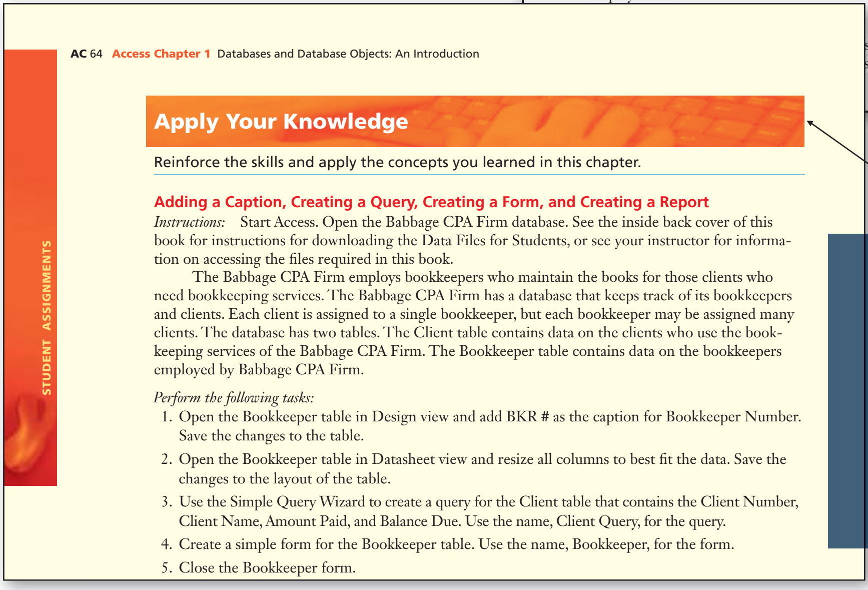
Flash Cards
An interactive learning environment where you identify chapter key terms associated with displayed definitions.

Who Wants To Be a Computer Genius?
An interactive game that challenges your knowledge of chapter content in the style of a television quiz show.

Wheel of Terms
An interactive game that challenges your knowledge of chapter key terms in the style of the television show *Wheel of Fortune.*

Crossword Puzzle Challenge
A crossword puzzle that challenges your knowledge of key terms presented in the chapter.

Access Chapter 1



AC 64 Access Chapter 1 Databases and Database Objects: An Introduction

Apply Your Knowledge

Reinforce the skills and apply the concepts you learned in this chapter.

Adding a Caption, Creating a Query, Creating a Form, and Creating a Report

Instructions: Start Access. Open the Babbage CPA Firm database. See the inside back cover of this book for instructions for downloading the Data Files for Students, or see your instructor for information on accessing the files required in this book.

The Babbage CPA Firm employs bookkeepers who maintain the books for those clients who need bookkeeping services. The Babbage CPA Firm has a database that keeps track of its bookkeepers and clients. Each client is assigned to a single bookkeeper, but each bookkeeper may be assigned many clients. The database has two tables. The Client table contains data on the clients who use the bookkeeping services of the Babbage CPA Firm. The Bookkeeper table contains data on the bookkeepers employed by Babbage CPA Firm.

Perform the following tasks:

1. Open the Bookkeeper table in Design view and add BKR # as the caption for Bookkeeper Number. Save the changes to the table.
2. Open the Bookkeeper table in Datasheet view and resize all columns to best fit the data. Save the changes to the layout of the table.
3. Use the Simple Query Wizard to create a query for the Client table that contains the Client Number, Client Name, Amount Paid, and Balance Due. Use the name, Client Query, for the query.
4. Create a simple form for the Bookkeeper table. Use the name, Bookkeeper, for the form.
5. Close the Bookkeeper form.

STUDENT ASSIGNMENTS

Apply Your Knowledge This exercise usually requires students to open and manipulate a file from the Data Files that parallels the activities learned in the chapter. To obtain a copy of the Data Files for Students, follow the instructions on the inside back cover of this text.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Extend Your Knowledge

Extend the skills you learned in this chapter and experiment with new skills. You may need to use Help to complete the assignment.

Using a Database Template to Create a Students Database

Instructions: Access includes a number of templates that you can use to create a beginning database that can be modified to meet your specific needs. You will create a Students database using the Students template. The database includes sample tables, queries, forms, and reports. You will change the database and create the Student Birthdays Query, shown in Figure 1–91.

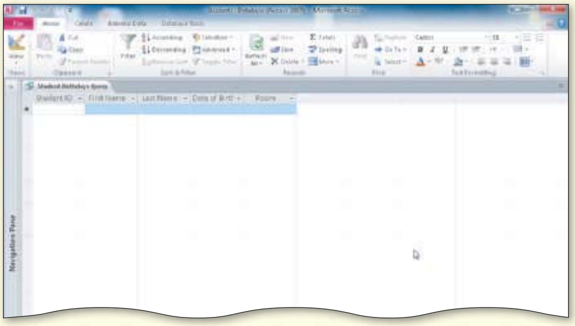


Figure 1–91

Perform the following tasks:

1. Start Access.
2. With a USB flash drive connected to one of the computer's USB po selected in the Backstage view and select Sample templates in the N
3. Select the Students template and create a new database on your USB d
4. Close the Student List form and change the organization of the Nav Related Views .
5. Delete the Student Details form.
6. Use the Query Wizard to create the query shown in Figure 1–91. S Birthdays Query.
7. Open the Student Phone List in Layout view and use the tools on th Student Phone List title bold and change the font size to 24. Delete
8. Save your changes to the report.
9. Compact the database.
10. Change the database properties, as specified by your instructor. Subr format specified by your instructor.

Extend Your Knowledge projects at the end of each chapter allow students to extend and expand on the skills learned within the chapter. Students use critical thinking to experiment with new skills to complete each project.

Make It Right

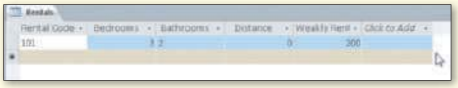
Analyze a database and correct all errors and/or improve the design.

Correcting Errors in the Table Structure

Instructions: Start Access. Open the Beach Rentals database. See the inside back cover of this book for instructions for downloading the Data Files for Students, or see your instructor for information on accessing the files required in this book.

Beach Rentals is a database containing information on rental properties available at a beach resort. The Rentals table shown in Figure 1–92 contains a number of errors in the table structure. You are to correct these errors before any additional records can be added to the table. The Rental Code field is a Text field that contains a maximum of three characters. The field Address was omitted from the table. The Address field is a Text field with a maximum of 20 characters. It should appear after Rental Code. Only whole numbers should be allowed in the Bedrooms and Bathrooms fields. The column heading Weakly Rental is misspelled, and the field should contain monetary values. The Distance field represents the walking distance from the beach; the field should display two decimal places. The table name should be Rental Units, not Rentals.

Change the database properties, as specified by your instructor. Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.



Rental Code	Bedrooms	Bathrooms	Distance	Weakly Rent	Click to Add
101	3	2	0	300	

Figure 1–92

SAM

In the Lab

Design, create, modify, and/or use a database using the guidelines, concepts, and skills presented in this chapter. Labs are listed in order of increasing difficulty.

Lab 1: Creating Objects for the ECO Clothesline Database

Problem: ECO Clothesline is a local company that designs and manufactures eco-friendly casual wear, yoga clothing, and fitness apparel. All clothes are made from earth-friendly fabrics, such as bamboo, hemp, organic cotton, and natural silk. The company recently decided to store its customer and sales rep data in a database. Each customer is assigned to a single sales rep, but each sales rep may be assigned many customers. The database and the Customer table have been created, but there is no data in the Customer table. The Sales Rep table has not been created. The company plans to import the Customer data from an Excel workbook, shown in Figure 1–93a. The other Excel workbook (Figure 1–93b) contains information on the sales representatives that ECO employs. ECO would like to finish storing this data in a database and has asked for your help.

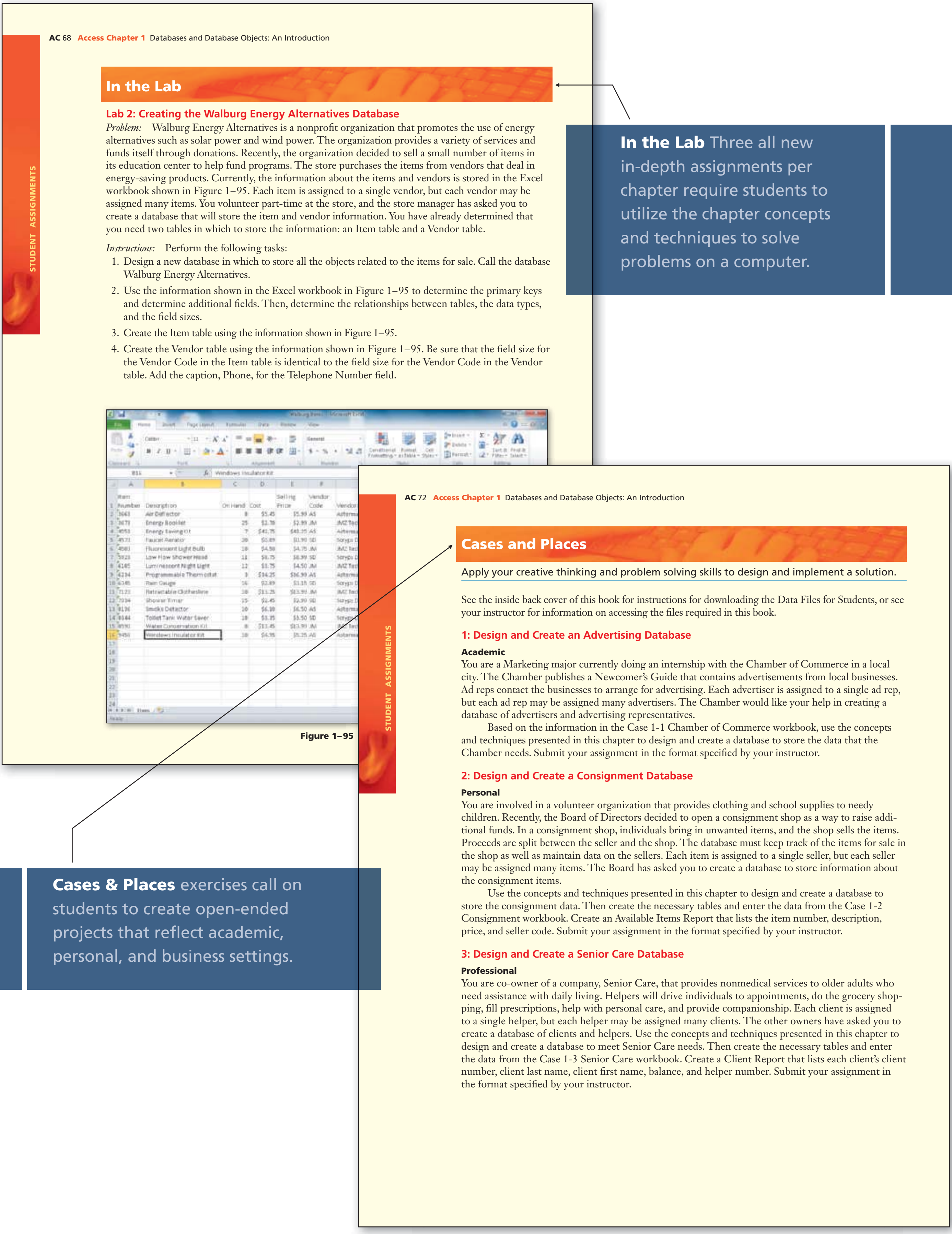
Instructions: Perform the following tasks: Start Access and open the ECO Clothesline database. See the inside back cover of this book for instructions for downloading the Data Files for Students, or see your instructor for information on accessing the files required in this book.

1. Import the Lab 1-1 Customer Data workbook into the Customer table.
2. Add the captions Cust # to the Customer Number field and SR # to the Sales Rep Number field in the Customer table and save the changes.
3. Open the Customer table in Datasheet view and resize the columns to best fit the data. Save the changes to the layout of the table.
4. Use Datasheet view to create a table in which to store the data related to sales reps. Use the name Sales Rep for the table. The fields and the data for the Sales Rep table are shown in Figure 1–93b.

Make It Right projects call on students to analyze a file, discover errors in it, and fix them using the skills they learned in the chapter.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Textbook Walk-Through



AC 68 **Access Chapter 1** Databases and Database Objects: An Introduction

STUDENT ASSIGNMENTS

In the Lab

Lab 2: Creating the Walburg Energy Alternatives Database

Problem: Walburg Energy Alternatives is a nonprofit organization that promotes the use of energy alternatives such as solar power and wind power. The organization provides a variety of services and funds itself through donations. Recently, the organization decided to sell a small number of items in its education center to help fund programs. The store purchases the items from vendors that deal in energy-saving products. Currently, the information about the items and vendors is stored in the Excel workbook shown in Figure 1–95. Each item is assigned to a single vendor, but each vendor may be assigned many items. You volunteer part-time at the store, and the store manager has asked you to create a database that will store the item and vendor information. You have already determined that you need two tables in which to store the information: an Item table and a Vendor table.

Instructions: Perform the following tasks:

1. Design a new database in which to store all the objects related to the items for sale. Call the database Walburg Energy Alternatives.
2. Use the information shown in the Excel workbook in Figure 1–95 to determine the primary keys and determine additional fields. Then, determine the relationships between tables, the data types, and the field sizes.
3. Create the Item table using the information shown in Figure 1–95.
4. Create the Vendor table using the information shown in Figure 1–95. Be sure that the field size for the Vendor Code in the Item table is identical to the field size for the Vendor Code in the Vendor table. Add the caption, Phone, for the Telephone Number field.

Figure 1–95

In the Lab Three all new in-depth assignments per chapter require students to utilize the chapter concepts and techniques to solve problems on a computer.

AC 72 **Access Chapter 1** Databases and Database Objects: An Introduction

STUDENT ASSIGNMENTS

Cases and Places

Apply your creative thinking and problem solving skills to design and implement a solution.

See the inside back cover of this book for instructions for downloading the Data Files for Students, or see your instructor for information on accessing the files required in this book.

1: Design and Create an Advertising Database

Academic

You are a Marketing major currently doing an internship with the Chamber of Commerce in a local city. The Chamber publishes a Newcomer's Guide that contains advertisements from local businesses. Ad reps contact the businesses to arrange for advertising. Each advertiser is assigned to a single ad rep, but each ad rep may be assigned many advertisers. The Chamber would like your help in creating a database of advertisers and advertising representatives.

Based on the information in the Case 1-1 Chamber of Commerce workbook, use the concepts and techniques presented in this chapter to design and create a database to store the data that the Chamber needs. Submit your assignment in the format specified by your instructor.

2: Design and Create a Consignment Database

Personal

You are involved in a volunteer organization that provides clothing and school supplies to needy children. Recently, the Board of Directors decided to open a consignment shop as a way to raise additional funds. In a consignment shop, individuals bring in unwanted items, and the shop sells the items. Proceeds are split between the seller and the shop. The database must keep track of the items for sale in the shop as well as maintain data on the sellers. Each item is assigned to a single seller, but each seller may be assigned many items. The Board has asked you to create a database to store information about the consignment items.

Use the concepts and techniques presented in this chapter to design and create a database to store the consignment data. Then create the necessary tables and enter the data from the Case 1-2 Consignment workbook. Create an Available Items Report that lists the item number, description, price, and seller code. Submit your assignment in the format specified by your instructor.

3: Design and Create a Senior Care Database

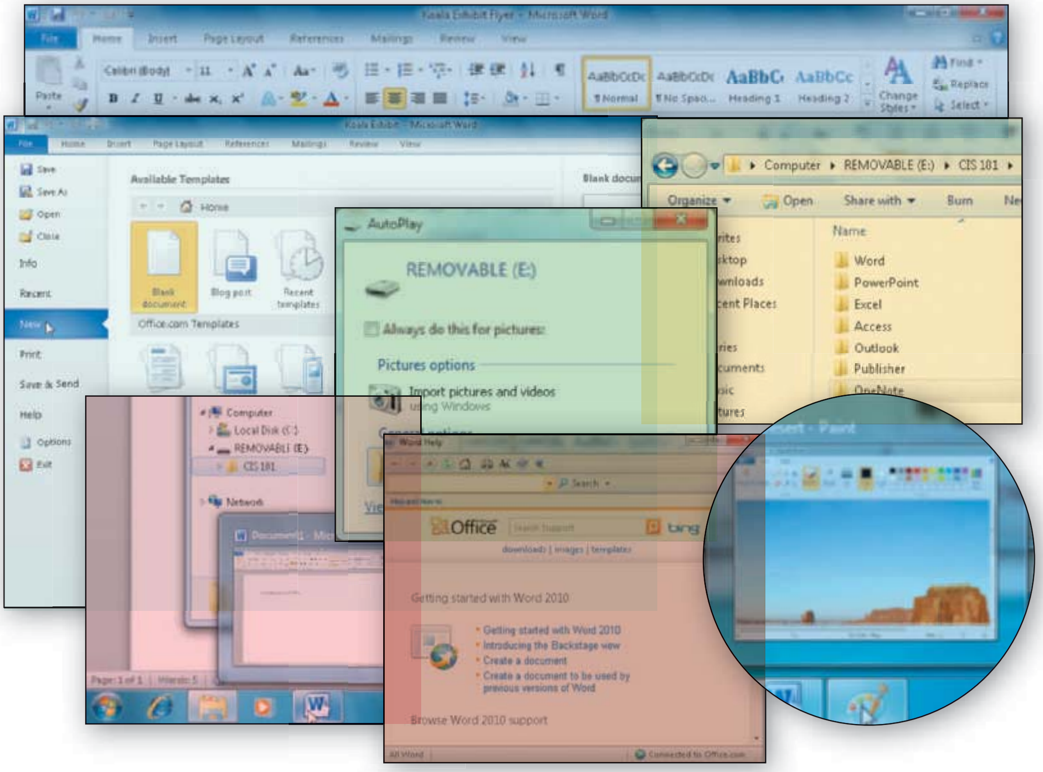
Professional

You are co-owner of a company, Senior Care, that provides nonmedical services to older adults who need assistance with daily living. Helpers will drive individuals to appointments, do the grocery shopping, fill prescriptions, help with personal care, and provide companionship. Each client is assigned to a single helper, but each helper may be assigned many clients. The other owners have asked you to create a database of clients and helpers. Use the concepts and techniques presented in this chapter to design and create a database to meet Senior Care needs. Then create the necessary tables and enter the data from the Case 1-3 Senior Care workbook. Create a Client Report that lists each client's client number, client last name, client first name, balance, and helper number. Submit your assignment in the format specified by your instructor.

Cases & Places exercises call on students to create open-ended projects that reflect academic, personal, and business settings.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Office 2010 and Windows 7: Essential Concepts and Skills



Objectives

You will have mastered the material in this chapter when you can:

- Perform basic mouse operations
- Start Windows and log on to the computer
- Identify the objects on the Windows 7 desktop
- Identify the programs in and versions of Microsoft Office
- Start a program
- Identify the components of the Microsoft Office Ribbon
- Create folders
- Save files
- Change screen resolution
- Perform basic tasks in Microsoft Office programs
- Manage files
- Use Microsoft Office Help and Windows Help

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Office 2010 and Windows 7: Essential Concepts and Skills

Office 2010 and Windows 7

This introductory chapter uses Access 2010 to cover features and functions common to Office 2010 programs, as well as the basics of Windows 7.

Overview

As you read this chapter, you will learn how to perform basic tasks in Windows and Access by performing these general activities:

- Start programs using Windows.
- Use features in Access that are common across Office programs.
- Organize files and folders.
- Change screen resolution.
- Quit programs.

Introduction to the Windows 7 Operating System

Windows 7 is the newest version of Microsoft Windows, which is the most popular and widely used operating system. An **operating system** is a computer program (set of computer instructions) that coordinates all the activities of computer hardware such as memory, storage devices, and printers, and provides the capability for you to communicate with the computer.

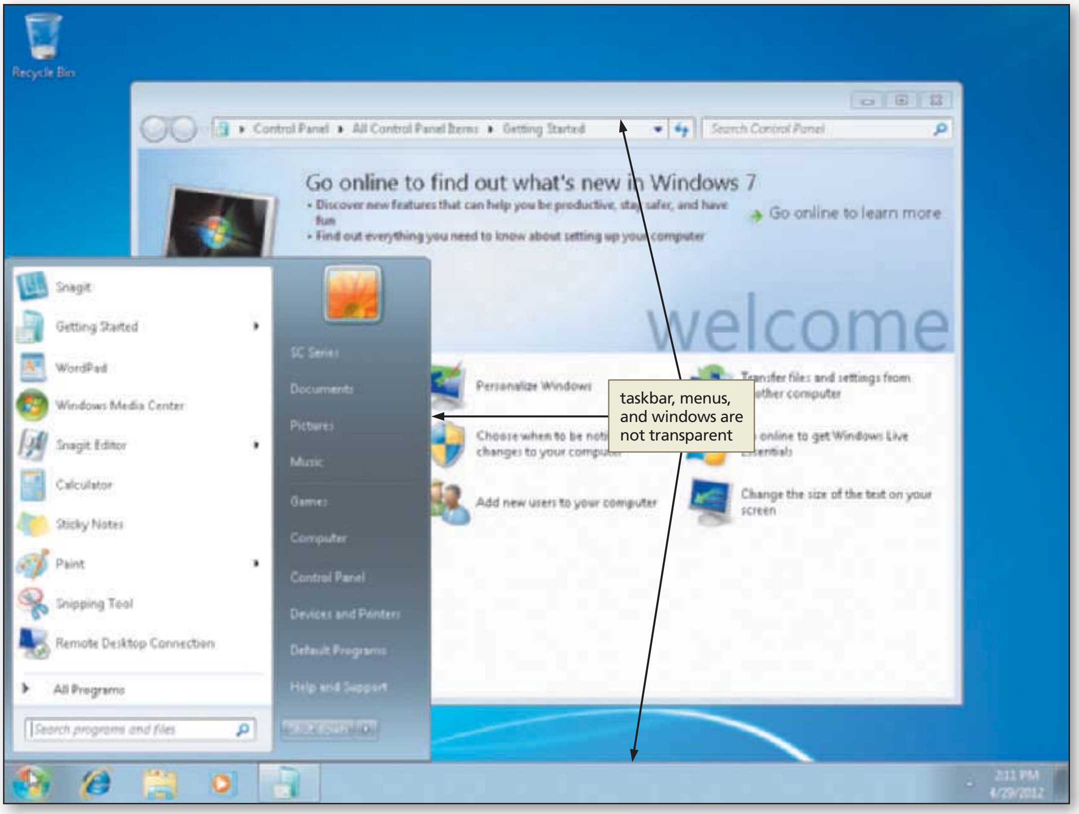
The Windows 7 operating system simplifies the process of working with documents and programs by organizing the manner in which you interact with the computer. Windows 7 is used to run **application software**, which consists of programs designed to make users more productive and/or assist them with personal tasks, such as database management.

Windows 7 has two interface variations, Windows 7 Basic and Windows 7 Aero. Computers with up to 1 GB of RAM display the Windows 7 Basic interface (Figure 1a). Computers with more than 1 GB of RAM also can display the Windows Aero interface (Figure 1b), which provides an enhanced visual appearance. The Windows 7 Professional, Windows 7 Enterprise, Windows 7 Home Premium, and Windows 7 Ultimate editions have the capability to use Windows Aero.

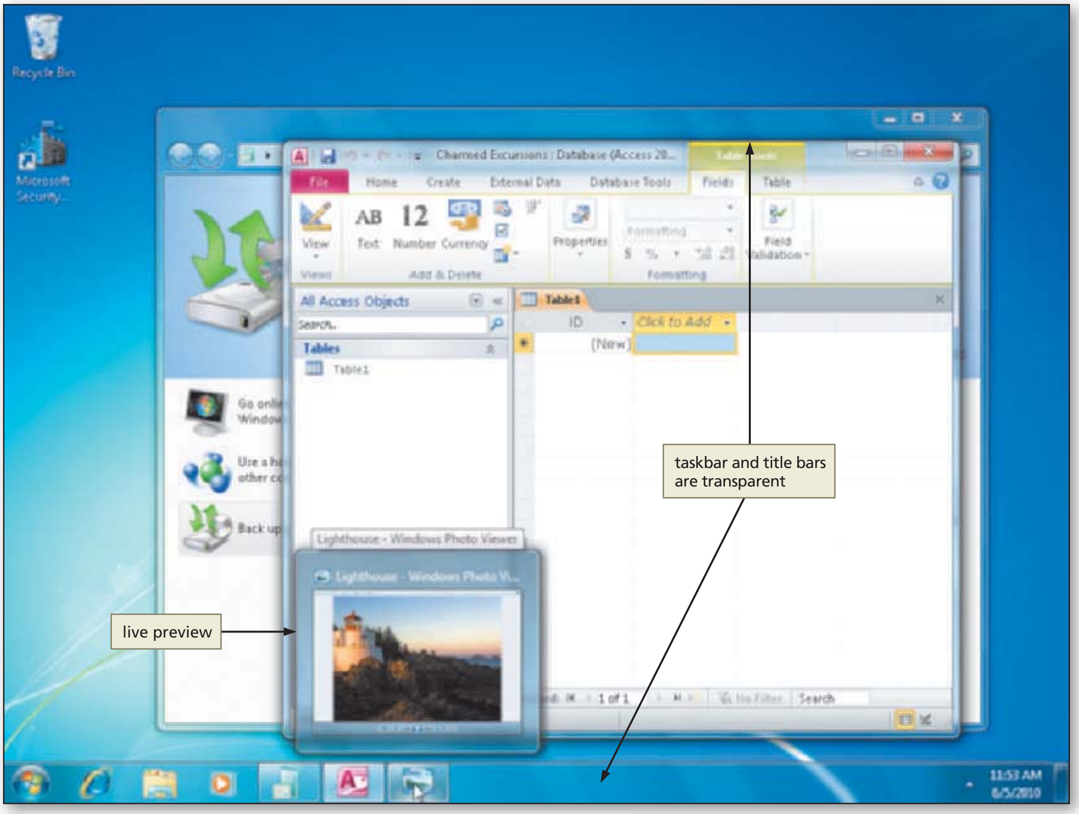
Using a Mouse

Windows users work with a mouse that has at least two buttons. For a right-handed user, the left button usually is the primary mouse button, and the right mouse button is the secondary mouse button. Left-handed people, however, can reverse the function of these buttons.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.


taskbar, menus, and windows are not transparent
Recycle Bin
Control Panel ▸ All Control Panel Items ▸ Getting Started
Search Control Panel
Go online to find out what's new in Windows 7
Discover new features that can help you be productive, stay safer, and have fun
Find out everything you need to know about setting up your computer
Go online to learn more
welcome
Snagit
Getting Started
WordPad
Windows Media Center
Snagit Editor
Calculator
Sticky Notes
Paint
Snipping Tool
Remote Desktop Connection
All Programs
Search programs and files
SC Series
Documents
Pictures
Music
Games
Computer
Control Panel
Devices and Printers
Default Programs
Help and Support
Personalize Windows
Choose when to be notified about changes to your computer
Add new users to your computer
Transfer files and settings from another computer
Go online to get Windows Live Essentials
Change the size of the text on your screen
2:11 PM
4/29/2012

(a) Windows 7 Basic interface


taskbar and title bars are transparent
live preview
Recycle Bin
Microsoft Security...
Charmed Excursions : Database (Access 20...
Table Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Fields
Table
View
AB Text
12 Number
Currency
Properties
Formatting
Field Validation
Views
Add & Delete
All Access Objects
Search...
Tables
Table1
ID
Click to Add
(New)
Lighthouse - Windows Photo Viewer
1 of 1
No Filter
Search
11:53 AM
6/5/2010

(b) Windows 7 Aero interface

Figure 1

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Table 1 explains how to perform a variety of mouse operations. Some programs also use keys in combination with the mouse to perform certain actions. For example, when you hold down the CTRL key while rolling the mouse wheel, text on the screen becomes larger or smaller based on the direction you roll the wheel. The function of the mouse buttons and the wheel varies depending on the program.

Table 1 Mouse Operations

Operation	Mouse Action	Example*
Point	Move the mouse until the pointer on the desktop is positioned on the item of choice.	Position the pointer on the screen.
Click	Press and release the primary mouse button, which usually is the left mouse button.	Select or deselect items on the screen or start a program or program feature.
Right-click	Press and release the secondary mouse button, which usually is the right mouse button.	Display a shortcut menu.
Double-click	Quickly press and release the left mouse button twice without moving the mouse.	Start a program or program feature.
Triple-click	Quickly press and release the left mouse button three times without moving the mouse.	Select a paragraph.
Drag	Point to an item, hold down the left mouse button, move the item to the desired location on the screen, and then release the left mouse button.	Move an object from one location to another or draw pictures.
Right-drag	Point to an item, hold down the right mouse button, move the item to the desired location on the screen, and then release the right mouse button.	Display a shortcut menu after moving an object from one location to another.
Rotate wheel	Roll the wheel forward or backward.	Scroll vertically (up and down).
Free-spin wheel	Whirl the wheel forward or backward so that it spins freely on its own.	Scroll through many pages in seconds.
Press wheel	Press the wheel button while moving the mouse.	Scroll continuously.
Tilt wheel	Press the wheel toward the right or left.	Scroll horizontally (left and right).
Press thumb button	Press the button on the side of the mouse with your thumb.	Move forward or backward through Web pages and/or control media, games, etc.

*Note: The examples presented in this column are discussed as they are demonstrated in this chapter.

Scrolling

A **scroll bar** is a horizontal or vertical bar that appears when the contents of an area may not be visible completely on the screen (Figure 2). A scroll bar contains **scroll arrows** and a **scroll box** that enable you to view areas that currently cannot be seen. Clicking the up and down scroll arrows moves the screen content up or down one line. You also can click above or below the scroll box to move up or down a section, or drag the scroll box up or down to move up or down to move to a specific location.

BTW

Minimize Wrist Injury
Computer users frequently switch between the keyboard and the mouse during a database management session; such switching strains the wrist. To help prevent wrist injury, minimize switching. For instance, if your fingers already are on the keyboard, use keyboard keys to scroll. If your hand already is on the mouse, use the mouse to scroll.

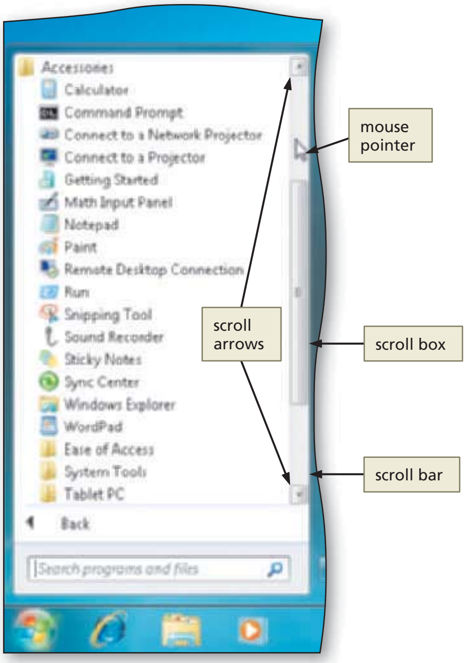


Figure 2

Shortcut Keys

In many cases, you can use the keyboard instead of the mouse to accomplish a task. To perform tasks using the keyboard, you press one or more keyboard keys, sometimes identified as

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

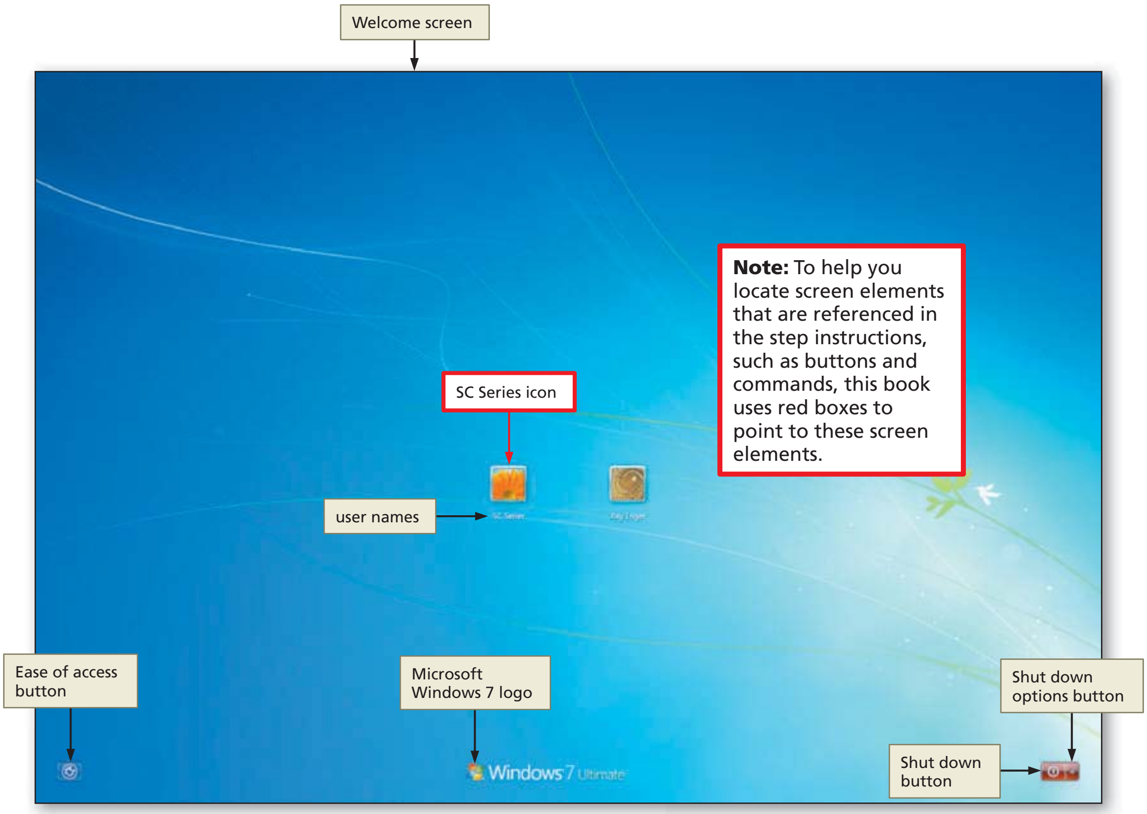
a **shortcut key** or **keyboard shortcut**. Some shortcut keys consist of a single key, such as the F1 key. For example, to obtain help about Windows 7, you can press the F1 key. Other shortcut keys consist of multiple keys, in which case a plus sign separates the key names, such as CTRL+ESC. This notation means to press and hold down the first key listed, press one or more additional keys, and then release all keys. For example, to display the Start menu, press CTRL+ESC, that is, hold down the CTRL key, press the ESC key, and then release both keys.

Starting Windows 7

It is not unusual for multiple people to use the same computer in a work, educational, recreational, or home setting. Windows 7 enables each user to establish a **user account**, which identifies to Windows 7 the resources, such as programs and storage locations, a user can access when working with a computer.

Each user account has a user name and may have a password and an icon, as well. A **user name** is a unique combination of letters or numbers that identifies a specific user to Windows 7. A **password** is a private combination of letters, numbers, and special characters associated with the user name that allows access to a user's account resources. A **user icon** is a picture associated with a user name.

When you turn on a computer, an introductory screen consisting of the Windows logo and copyright messages is displayed. The Windows logo is animated and glows as the Windows 7 operating system is loaded. After the Windows logo appears, depending on your computer's settings, you may or may not be required to log on to the computer. **Logging on** to a computer opens your user account and makes the computer available for use. If you are required to log on to the computer, the **Welcome screen** is displayed, which shows the user names of users on the computer (Figure 3). Clicking the user name or picture begins the process of logging on to the computer.



Note: To help you locate screen elements that are referenced in the step instructions, such as buttons and commands, this book uses red boxes to point to these screen elements.

Figure 3

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

At the bottom of the Welcome screen is the 'Ease of access' button, the Windows 7 logo, a Shut down button, and a 'Shut down options' button. The following list identifies the functions of the buttons and commands that typically appear on the Welcome screen:

- Clicking the 'Ease of access' button displays the Ease of Access Center, which provides tools to optimize your computer to accommodate the needs of the mobility, hearing, and vision impaired users.
- Clicking the Shut down button shuts down Windows 7 and the computer.
- Clicking the 'Shut down options' button, located to the right of the Shut down button, displays a menu containing commands that perform actions such as restarting the computer, placing the computer in a low-powered state, and shutting down the computer. The commands available on your computer may differ.
    - The **Restart command** closes open programs, shuts down Windows 7, and then restarts Windows 7 and displays the Welcome screen.
    - The **Sleep command** waits for Windows 7 to save your work and then turns off the computer fans and hard disk. To wake the computer from the Sleep state, press the power button or lift a notebook computer's cover, and log on to the computer.
    - The **Shut down command** shuts down and turns off the computer.

To Log On to the Computer

After starting Windows 7, you might need to log on to the computer. The following steps log on to the computer based on a typical installation. You may need to ask your instructor how to log on to your computer. This set of steps uses SC Series as the user name. The list of user names on your computer will be different.

1

- Click the user icon (SC Series, in this case) on the Welcome screen (shown in Figure 3 on the previous page); depending on settings, this either will display a password text box (Figure 4) or will log on to the computer and display the Windows 7 desktop.

Q&A

Why do I not see a user icon?

Your computer may require you to type a user name instead of clicking an icon.

Q&A

What is a text box?

A text box is a rectangular box in which you type text.

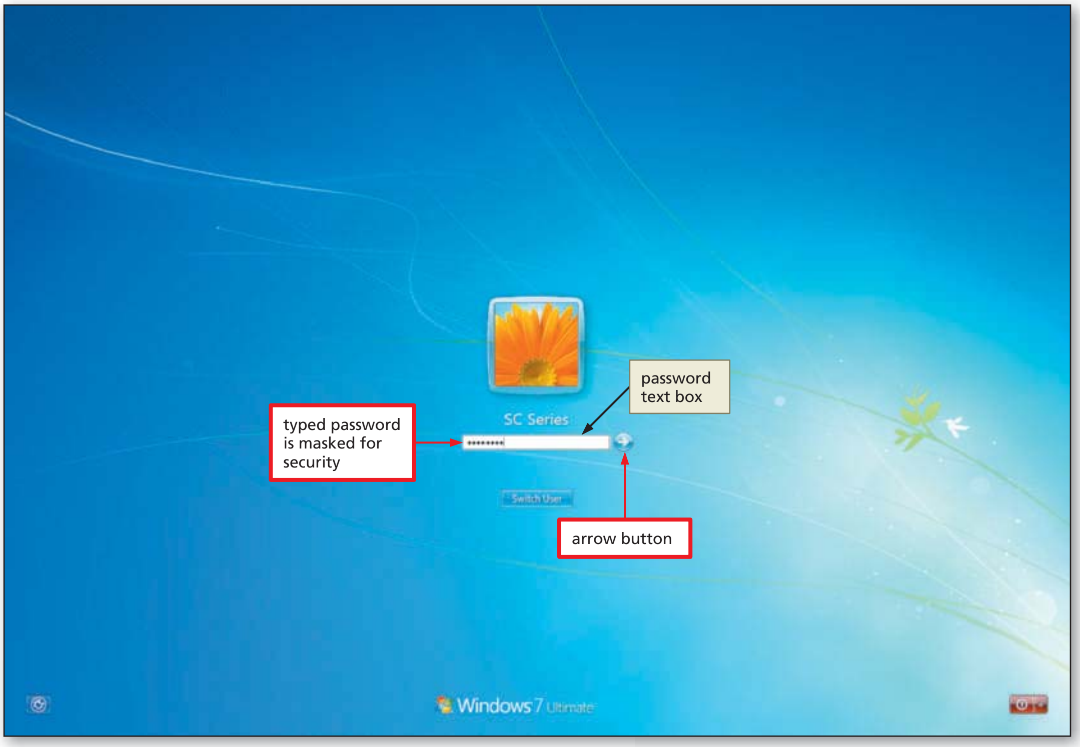


Figure 4

Q&A

Why does my screen not show a password text box?

Your account does not require a password.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2

- If Windows 7 displays a password text box, type your password in the text box and then click the arrow button to log on to the computer and display the Windows 7 desktop (Figure 5).

Q&A

Why does my desktop look different from the one in Figure 5?

The Windows 7 desktop is customizable, and your school or employer may have modified the desktop to meet its needs. Also, your screen resolution, which affects the size of the elements on the screen, may differ from the screen resolution used in this book. Later in this chapter, you learn how to change screen resolution.

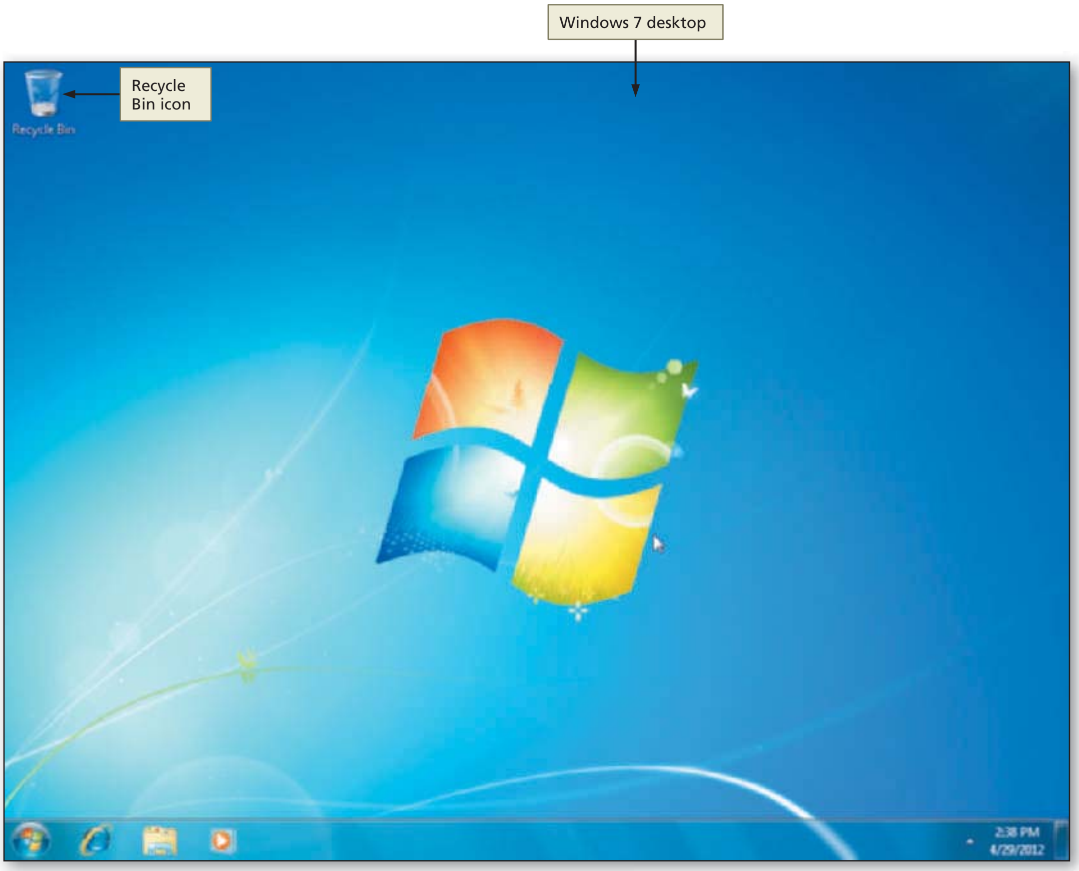


Figure 5

The Windows 7 Desktop

The Windows 7 desktop (Figure 5) and the objects on the desktop emulate a work area in an office. Think of the Windows desktop as an electronic version of the top of your desk. You can perform tasks such as placing objects on the desktop, moving the objects around the desktop, and removing items from the desktop.

When you start a program in Windows 7, it appears on the desktop. Some icons also may be displayed on the desktop. For instance, the icon for the **Recycle Bin**, the location of files that have been deleted, appears on the desktop by default. A **file** is a named unit of storage. Files can contain text, images, audio, and video. You can customize your desktop so that icons representing programs and files you use often appear on your desktop.

Introduction to Microsoft Office 2010

Microsoft Office 2010 is the newest version of Microsoft Office, offering features that provide users with better functionality and easier ways to work with the various files they create. These features include enhanced design tools, such as improved picture formatting tools and new themes, shared notebooks for working in groups, mobile versions of Office programs, broadcast presentation for the Web, and a digital notebook for managing and sharing multimedia information.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Microsoft Office 2010 Programs

Microsoft Office 2010 includes a wide variety of programs such as Word, PowerPoint, Excel, Access, Outlook, Publisher, OneNote, InfoPath, SharePoint Workspace, Communicator, and Web Apps:

- **Microsoft Word 2010**, or Word, is a full-featured word processing program that allows you to create professional-looking documents and revise them easily.
- **Microsoft PowerPoint 2010**, or PowerPoint, is a complete presentation program that allows you to produce professional-looking presentations.
- **Microsoft Excel 2010**, or Excel, is a powerful spreadsheet program that allows you to organize data, complete calculations, make decisions, graph data, develop professional-looking reports, publish organized data to the Web, and access real-time data from Web sites.
- **Microsoft Access 2010**, or Access, is a database management system that allows you to create a database; add, change, and delete data in the database; ask questions concerning the data in the database; and create forms and reports using the data in the database.
- **Microsoft Outlook 2010**, or Outlook, is a communications and scheduling program that allows you to manage e-mail accounts, calendars, contacts, and access to other Internet content.
- **Microsoft Publisher 2010**, or Publisher, is a desktop publishing program that helps you create professional-quality publications and marketing materials that can be shared easily.
- **Microsoft OneNote 2010**, or OneNote, is a note taking program that allows you to store and share information in notebooks with other people.
- **Microsoft InfoPath 2010**, or InfoPath, is a form development program that helps you create forms for use on the Web and gather data from these forms.
- **Microsoft SharePoint Workspace 2010**, or SharePoint, is collaboration software that allows you to access and revise files stored on your computer from other locations.
- **Microsoft Communicator** is communications software that allows you to use different modes of communications such as instant messaging, video conferencing, and sharing files and programs.
- **Microsoft Web Apps** is a Web application that allows you to edit and share files on the Web using the familiar Office interface.

Microsoft Office 2010 Suites

A **suite** is a collection of individual programs available together as a unit. Microsoft offers a variety of Office suites. Table 2 lists the Office 2010 suites and their components.

Programs in a suite, such as Microsoft Office, typically use a similar interface and share features. In addition, Microsoft Office programs use **common dialog boxes** for performing actions such as opening and saving files. Once you are comfortable working with these elements and this interface and performing tasks in one program, the similarity can help you apply the knowledge and skills you have learned to another Office program(s). For example, the process for saving a file in Word is the same in PowerPoint, Excel, and the other Office programs.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Table 2 Microsoft Office 2010 Suites

	Microsoft Office Professional Plus 2010	Microsoft Office Professional 2010	Microsoft Office Home and Business 2010	Microsoft Office Standard 2010	Microsoft Office Home and Student 2010
Microsoft Word 2010	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔
Microsoft PowerPoint 2010	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔
Microsoft Excel 2010	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔
Microsoft Access 2010	✔	✔	✗	✗	✗
Microsoft Outlook 2010	✔	✔	✔	✔	✗
Microsoft Publisher 2010	✔	✔	✗	✔	✗
Microsoft OneNote 2010	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔
Microsoft InfoPath 2010	✔	✗	✗	✗	✗
Microsoft SharePoint Workspace 2010	✔	✗	✗	✗	✗
Microsoft Communicator	✔	✗	✗	✗	✗

Starting and Using a Program

To use a program, such as Access, you must instruct the operating system to start the program. Windows 7 provides many different ways to start a program, one of which is presented in this section (other ways to start a program are presented throughout this chapter). After starting a program, you can use it to perform a variety of tasks. The following pages use Access to discuss some elements of the Office interface and to perform tasks that are common to other Office programs.

Access

The term **database** describes a collection of data organized in a manner that allows access, retrieval, and use of that data. **Microsoft Access 2010**, usually referred to as simply **Access**, is a database management system. A **database management system** is software that allows you to use a computer to create a database; add, change, and delete data in the database; create queries that allow you to ask questions concerning the data in the database; and create forms and reports using the data in the database.

To Start a Program Using the Start Menu

Across the bottom of the Windows 7 desktop is the taskbar. The taskbar contains the **Start button**, which you use to access programs, files, folders, and settings on a computer. A **folder** is a named location on a storage medium that usually contains related documents. The taskbar also displays a button for each program currently running on a computer.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Clicking the Start button displays the Start menu. The **Start menu** allows you to access programs, folders, and files on the computer and contains commands that allow you to start programs, store and search for documents, customize the computer, and obtain help about thousands of topics. A **menu** is a list of related items, including folders, programs, and commands. Each **command** on a menu performs a specific action, such as saving a file or obtaining help.

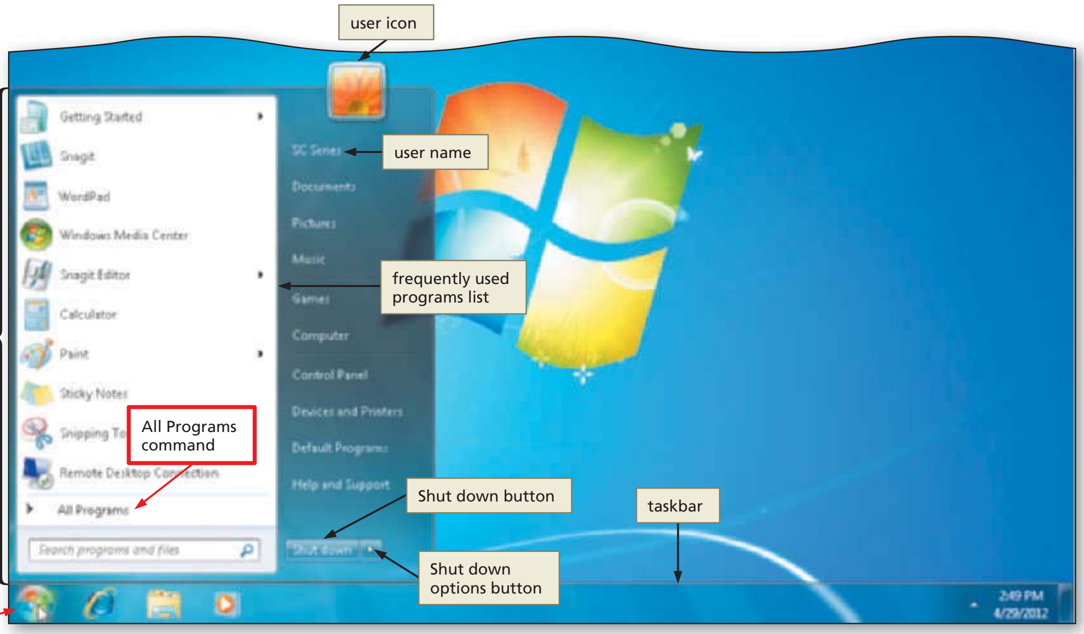
The following steps, which assume Windows 7 is running, use the Start menu to start the Microsoft Access 2010 program based on a typical installation. You may need to ask your instructor how to start Access for your computer.

1

- Click the Start button on the Windows 7 taskbar to display the Start menu (Figure 6).

Q&A Why does my Start menu look different?

It may look different depending on your computer's configuration. The Start menu may be customized for several reasons, such as usage requirements or security restrictions.


Getting Started
Snagit
WordPad
Windows Media Center
Snagit Editor
Calculator
Paint
Sticky Notes
Snipping Tool
Remote Desktop Connection
All Programs
Search programs and files
SC Series
Documents
Pictures
Music
Games
Computer
Control Panel
Devices and Printers
Default Programs
Help and Support
Shut down
2:49 PM
4/29/2012

user icon

user name

frequently used programs list

Start menu

All Programs command

Shut down button

taskbar

Shut down options button

Start button

Figure 6

2

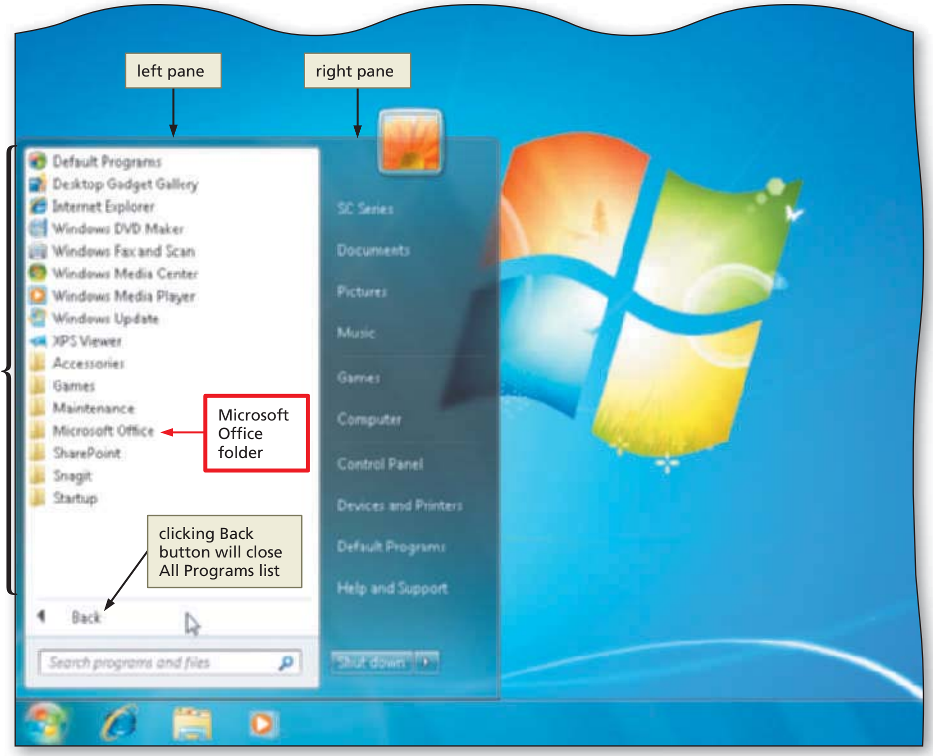
- Click All Programs at the bottom of the left pane on the Start menu to display the All Programs list (Figure 7).

Q&A What is a pane?

A **pane** is an area of a window that displays related content. For example, the left pane on the Start menu contains a list of frequently used programs, as well as the All Programs command.

Q&A Why might my All Programs list look different?

Most likely, the programs installed on your computer will differ from those shown in Figure 7. Your All Programs list will show the programs that are installed on your computer.


Default Programs
Desktop Gadget Gallery
Internet Explorer
Windows DVD Maker
Windows Fax and Scan
Windows Media Center
Windows Media Player
Windows Update
XPS Viewer
Accessories
Games
Maintenance
Microsoft Office
SharePoint
Snagit
Startup
Back
Search programs and files
SC Series
Documents
Pictures
Music
Games
Computer
Control Panel
Devices and Printers
Default Programs
Help and Support
Shut down

left pane

right pane

All Programs list

Microsoft Office folder

clicking Back button will close All Programs list

Figure 7

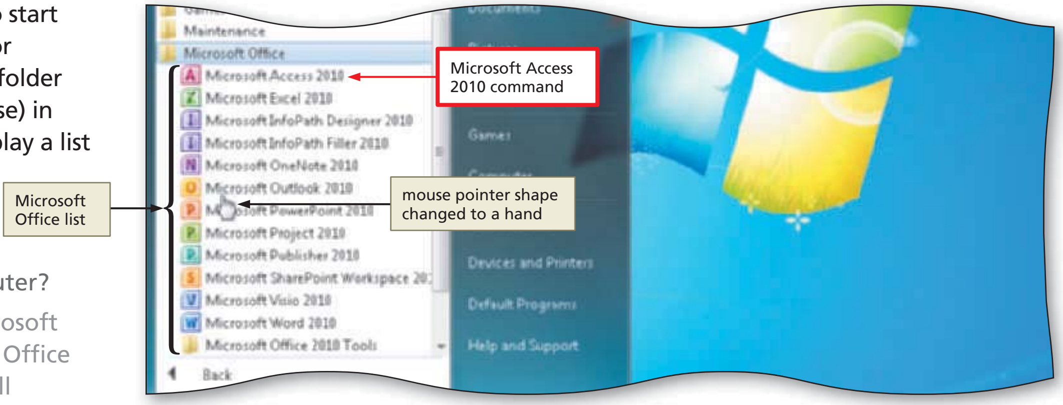
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3

- If the program you want to start is located in a folder, click or scroll to and then click the folder (Microsoft Office, in this case) in the All Programs list to display a list of the folder's contents (Figure 8).

Q&A Why is the Microsoft Office folder on my computer?

During installation of Microsoft Office 2010, the Microsoft Office folder was added to the All Programs list.


Maintenance
Microsoft Office
Microsoft Access 2010
Microsoft Excel 2010
Microsoft InfoPath Designer 2010
Microsoft InfoPath Filler 2010
Microsoft OneNote 2010
Microsoft Outlook 2010
Microsoft PowerPoint 2010
Microsoft Project 2010
Microsoft Publisher 2010
Microsoft SharePoint Workspace 2010
Microsoft Visio 2010
Microsoft Word 2010
Microsoft Office 2010 Tools
Back
Games
Devices and Printers
Default Programs
Help and Support

Microsoft Access 2010 command

Microsoft Office list

mouse pointer shape changed to a hand

Figure 8

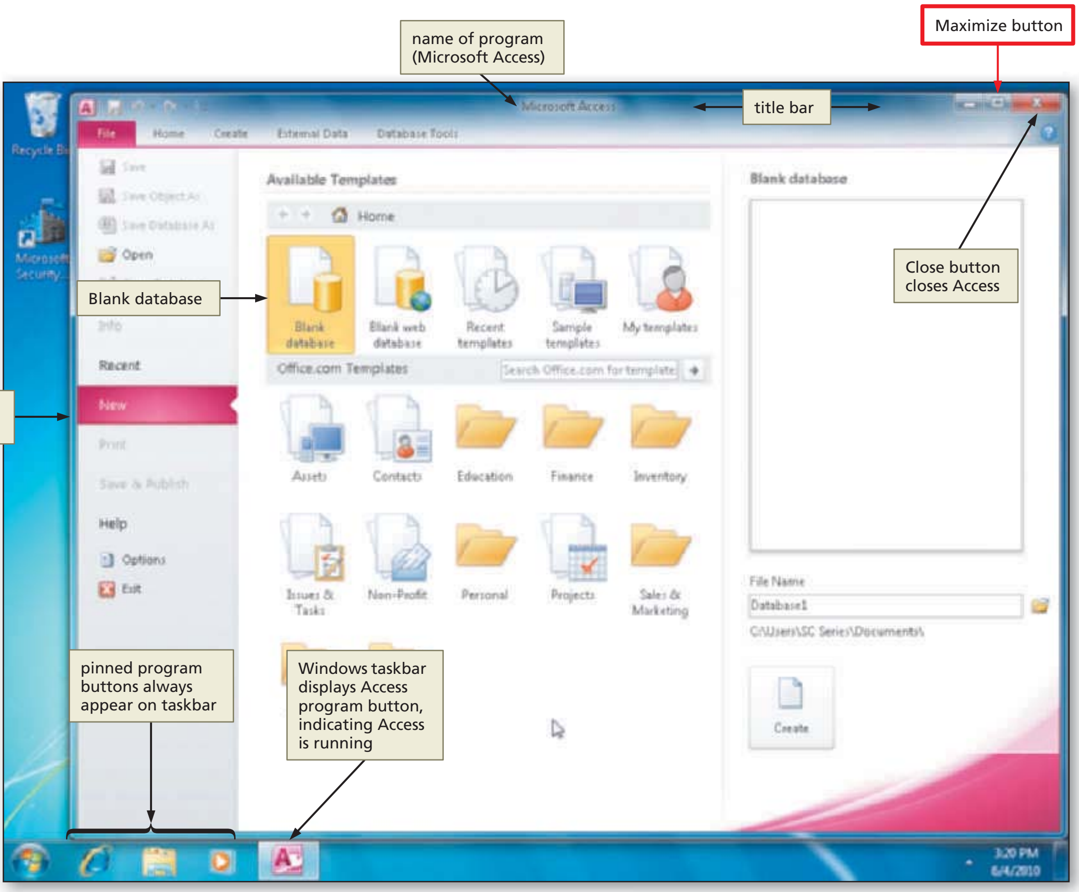
4

- Click, or scroll to and then click, the program name (Microsoft Access 2010, in this case) in the list to start the selected program (Figure 9).

Q&A What happens when you start a program?

Many programs initially display a blank document in a program window, others provide a means for you to create a blank document or new database. A window is a rectangular area that displays data and information. The top of a window has a **title bar**, which is a horizontal space that contains the window's name.

Access window


Recycle Bin
Microsoft Security...
Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Save
Save Object As
Save Database As
Open
Info
Recent
New
Print
Save & Publish
Help
Options
Exit
Available Templates
Home
Blank database
Blank web database
Recent templates
Sample templates
My templates
Office.com Templates
Search Office.com for templates
Assets
Contacts
Education
Finance
Inventory
Issues & Tasks
Non-Profit
Personal
Projects
Sales & Marketing
Blank database
File Name
Database1
C:\Users\SC Series\Documents\
Create
3:20 PM
6/4/2010

name of program (Microsoft Access)

Maximize button

title bar

Close button closes Access

Blank database

pinned program buttons always appear on taskbar

Windows taskbar displays Access program button, indicating Access is running

Figure 9

Q&A Why is my program window a different size?

The Access window shown in Figure 9 is not maximized. Your Access window already may be maximized. The steps on the next page maximize a window.

Other Ways

1. Double-click program icon on desktop, if one is present
2. Click program name in left pane of Start menu, if present
3. Display Start menu, type program name in search box, click program name
4. Double-click file created using program you want to start

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Maximize a Window

Sometimes content is not visible completely in a window. One method of displaying the entire contents of a window is to **maximize** it, or enlarge the window so that it fills the entire screen. The following step maximizes the Access window; however, any Office program's window can be maximized using this step.

1

- If the program window is not maximized already, click the Maximize button (shown in Figure 9 on the previous page) next to the Close button on the window's title bar (the Access window title bar, in this case) to maximize the window (Figure 10).

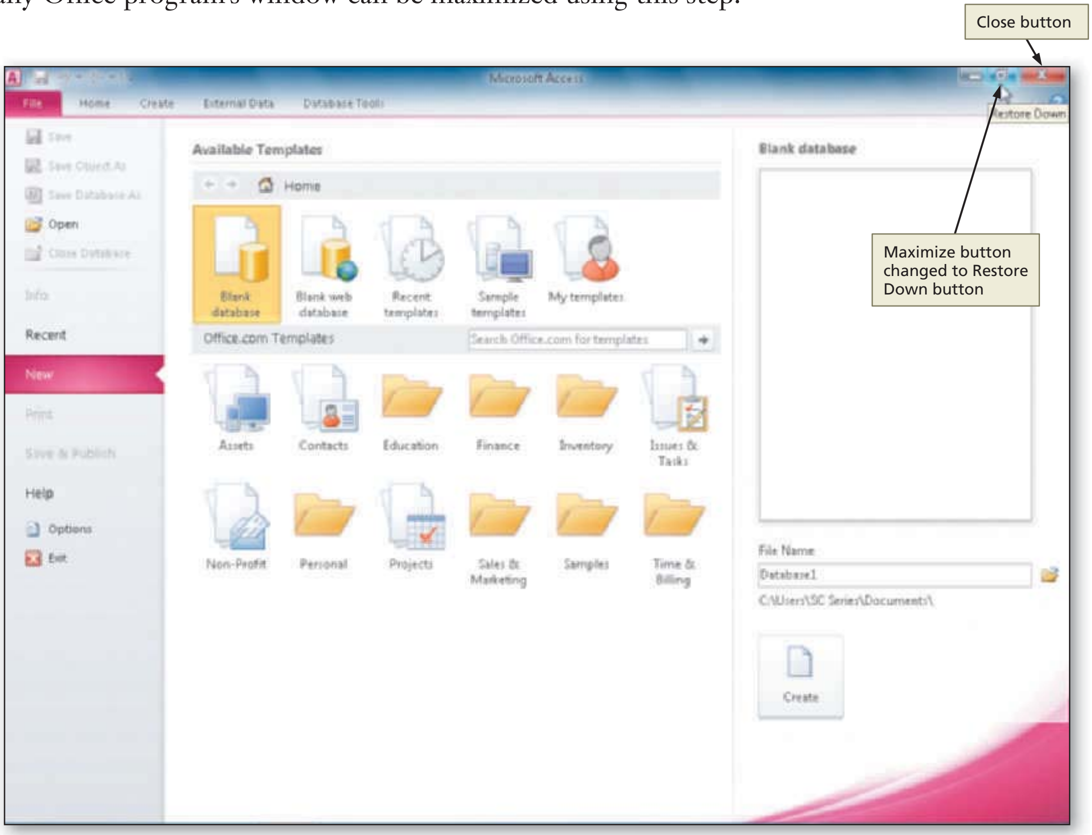

Close button
Restore Down
Maximize button changed to Restore Down button
Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Save
Save Object As
Save Database As
Open
Close Database
Info
Recent
New
Print
Save & Publish
Help
Options
Exit
Available Templates
Home
Blank database
Blank web database
Recent templates
Sample templates
My templates
Office.com Templates
Search Office.com for templates
Assets
Contacts
Education
Finance
Inventory
Issues & Tasks
Non-Profit
Personal
Projects
Sales & Marketing
Samples
Time & Billing
Blank database
File Name
Database1
C:\Users\SC Series\Documents\
Create

Figure 10

Q&A What happened to the Maximize button?

It changed to a Restore Down button, which you can use to return a window to its size and location before you maximized it.

Q&A How do I know whether a window is maximized?

A window is maximized if it fills the entire display area and the Restore Down button is displayed on the title bar.

Other Ways

1. Double-click title bar
2. Drag title bar to top of screen

Saving and Organizing Files

While you are creating a document, the computer stores it in memory. When you save a document, the computer places it on a storage medium such as a hard disk, USB flash drive, or optical disc. A saved document is referred to as a file. A **file name** is the name assigned to a file when it is saved. It is important to save a document frequently for the following reasons:

- The document in memory might be lost if the computer is turned off or you lose electrical power while a program is running.
- If you run out of time before completing a project, you may finish it at a future time without starting over.

When saving files, you should organize them so that you easily can find them later. Windows 7 provides tools to help you organize files.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Organizing Files and Folders

A file contains data. This data can range from a database to an accounting spreadsheet to an electronic math quiz. You should organize and store these files in folders to avoid misplacing a file and to help you find a file quickly.

If you are a freshman taking an introductory computer class (CIS 101, for example), you may want to design a series of folders for the different subjects covered in the class. To accomplish this, you can arrange the folders in a hierarchy for the class, as shown in Figure 11.

The hierarchy contains three levels. The first level contains the storage device, in this case a USB flash drive. Windows 7 identifies the storage device with a letter, and, in some cases, a name. In Figure 11, the USB flash drive is identified as REMOVABLE (E:). The second level contains the class folder (CIS 101, in this case), and the third level contains seven folders, one each for a different Office program that will be covered in the class (Word, PowerPoint, Excel, Access, Outlook, Publisher, and OneNote).

When the hierarchy in Figure 11 is created, the USB flash drive is said to contain the CIS 101 folder, and the CIS 101 folder is said to contain the separate Office folders (i.e., Word, PowerPoint, Excel, etc.). In addition, this hierarchy easily can be expanded to include folders from other classes taken during additional semesters.

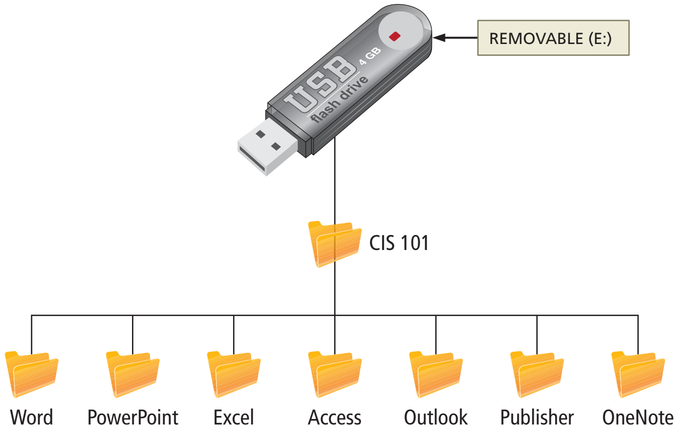


Figure 11

The vertical and horizontal lines in Figure 11 form a pathway that allows you to navigate to a drive or folder on a computer or network. A **path** consists of a drive letter (preceded by a drive name when necessary) and colon, to identify the storage device, and one or more folder names. Each drive or folder in the hierarchy has a corresponding path.

Table 3 shows examples of paths and their corresponding drives and folders.

Table 3 Paths and Corresponding Drives and Folders

Path	Drive and Folder
Computer ▶ REMOVABLE (E:)	Drive E (REMOVABLE (E:))
Computer ▶ REMOVABLE (E:) ▶ CIS 101	CIS 101 folder on drive E
Computer ▶ REMOVABLE (E:) ▶ CIS 101 ▶ Access	Access folder in CIS 101 folder on drive E

The following pages illustrate the steps to organize folders for a class and save a file in a folder:

1. Create a folder identifying your class.
2. Create an Access folder in the folder identifying your class.
3. Save a file in the Access folder.
4. Verify the location of the saved file.

BTW

Saving Online
Instead of saving files on a USB flash drive, some people prefer to save them online so that they can access the files from any computer with an Internet connection.

To Create a Folder

When you create a folder, such as the CIS 101 folder shown in Figure 11, you must name the folder. A folder name should describe the folder and its contents. A folder name can contain spaces and any uppercase or lowercase characters, except a backslash (\), slash (/), colon (:), asterisk (*), question mark (?), quotation marks (“),

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

less than symbol (<), greater than symbol (>), or vertical bar (|). Folder names cannot be CON, AUX, COM1, COM2, COM3, COM4, LPT1, LPT2, LPT3, PRN, or NUL. The same rules for naming folders also apply to naming files.

To store files and folders on a USB flash drive, you must connect the USB flash drive to an available USB port on a computer. The following steps create your class folder (CIS 101, in this case) on a USB flash drive.

1

- Connect the USB flash drive to an available USB port on the computer to open the AutoPlay window (Figure 12). (You may need to click the Windows Explorer program button on the taskbar to make the AutoPlay window visible.)

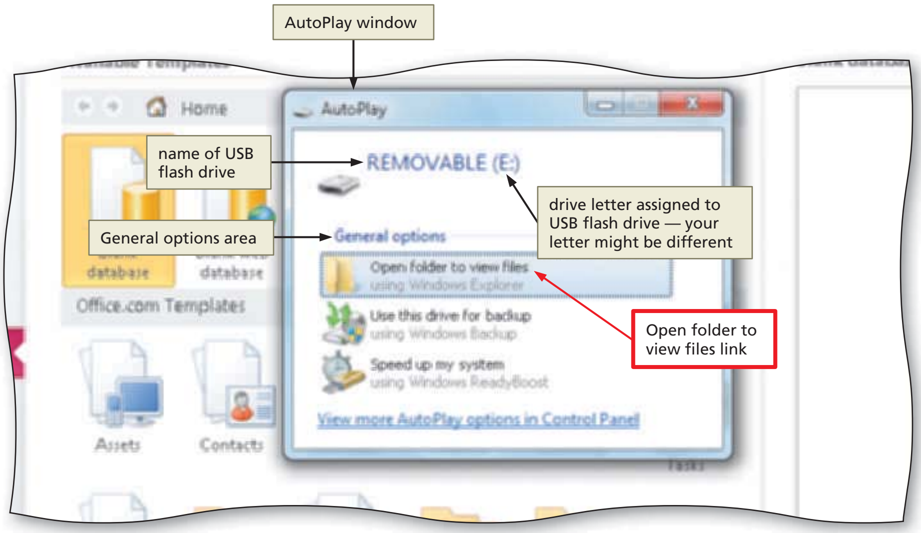

AutoPlay window
AutoPlay
REMOVABLE (E:)
name of USB flash drive
drive letter assigned to USB flash drive — your letter might be different
General options area
General options
Open folder to view files using Windows Explorer
Use this drive for backup using Windows Backup
Speed up my system using Windows ReadyBoost
Open folder to view files link
View more AutoPlay options in Control Panel
Home
Office.com Templates
Assets
Contacts

Figure 12

Q&A Why does the AutoPlay window not open?

Some computers are not configured to open an AutoPlay window. Instead, they might display the contents of the USB flash drive automatically, or you might need to access contents of the USB flash drive using the Computer window. To use the Computer window to display the USB flash drive's contents, click the Start button, click Computer on the Start menu, and then click the icon representing the USB flash drive and then proceed to Step 3 on the next page.

Q&A Why does the AutoPlay window look different from the one in Figure 12?

The AutoPlay window that opens on your computer might display different options. The type of USB flash drive, its contents, and the next available drive letter on your computer all will determine which options are displayed in the AutoPlay window.

2

- Click the 'Open folder to view files' link in the AutoPlay window to open the USB flash drive window (Figure 13).

Q&A Why does Figure 13 show REMOVABLE (E:) for the USB flash drive?

REMOVABLE is the name of the USB flash drive used to illustrate these steps. The (E:) refers to the drive letter assigned by Windows 7 to the USB flash drive. The name and drive letter of your USB flash drive probably will be different.

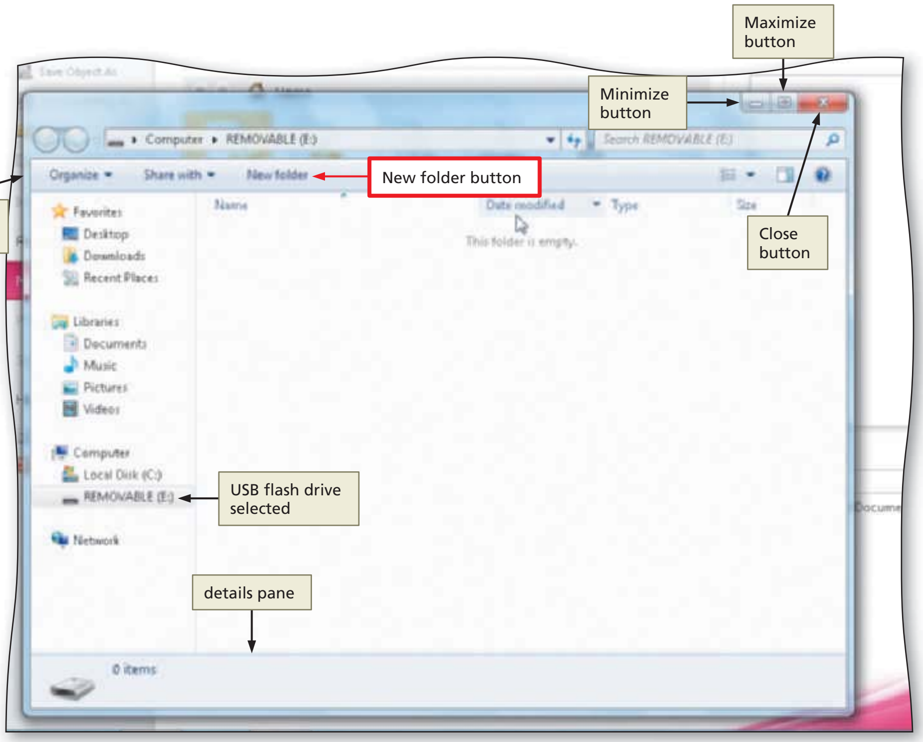

Maximize button
Minimize button
Close button
USB flash drive window
New folder button
Computer ▸ REMOVABLE (E:)
Search REMOVABLE (E:)
Organize
Share with
New folder
Name
Date modified
Type
Size
This folder is empty.
Favorites
Desktop
Downloads
Recent Places
Libraries
Documents
Music
Pictures
Videos
Computer
Local Disk (C:)
REMOVABLE (E:)
Network
USB flash drive selected
details pane
0 items

Figure 13

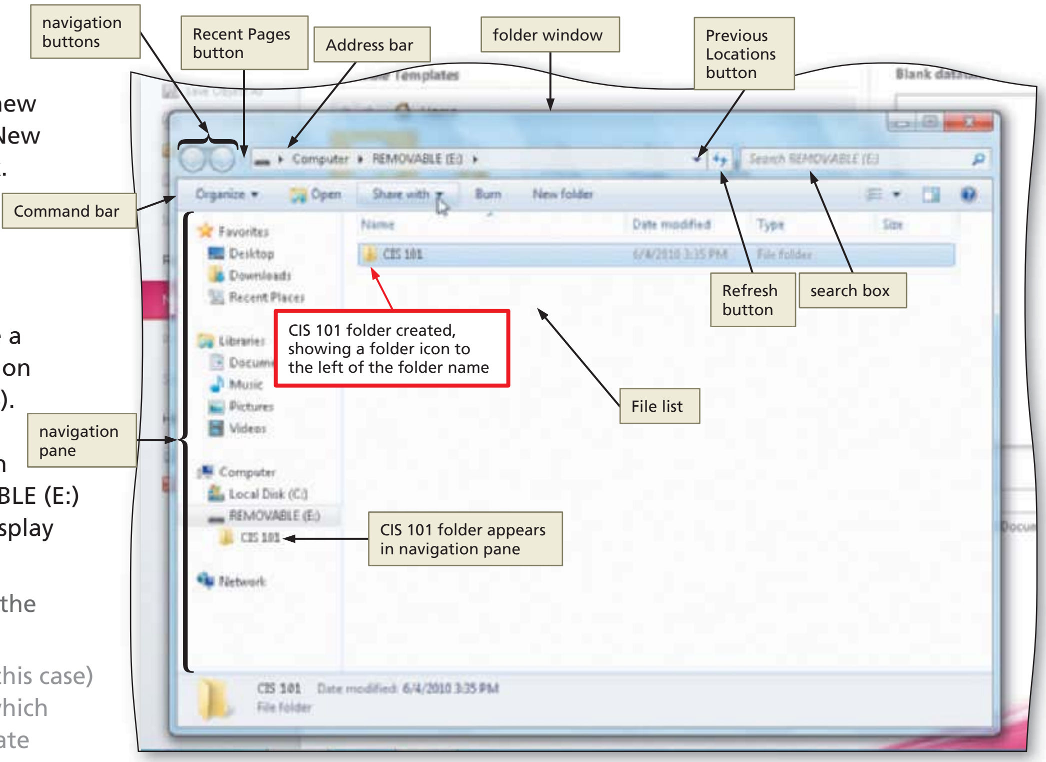
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3

- Click the New folder button on the toolbar to display a new folder icon with the name, New folder, selected in a text box.
- Type `CIS 101` (or your class code) in the text box to name the folder.
- Press the ENTER key to create a folder identifying your class on the selected drive (Figure 14). If the CIS 101 folder does not appear in the navigation pane, double-click REMOVABLE (E:) in the navigation pane to display the folder just added.

Q&A What happens when I press the ENTER key?

The class folder (CIS 101, in this case) is displayed in the File list, which contains the folder name, date modified, type, and size.



navigation buttons

Recent Pages button

Address bar

folder window

Previous Locations button

Command bar

Refresh button

search box

CIS 101 folder created, showing a folder icon to the left of the folder name

File list

navigation pane

CIS 101 folder appears in navigation pane

Figure 14

Q&A Why is the folder icon displayed differently on my computer?

Windows might be configured to display contents differently on your computer.

Folder Windows

The USB flash drive window (shown in Figure 14) is called a folder window. Recall that a folder is a specific named location on a storage medium that contains related files. Most users rely on **folder windows** for finding, viewing, and managing information on their computer. Folder windows have common design elements, including the following (Figure 14):

- The **Address bar** provides quick navigation options. The arrows on the Address bar allow you to visit different locations on the computer.
- The buttons to the left of the Address bar allow you to navigate the contents of the left pane and view recent pages. Other buttons allow you to specify the size of the window.
- The **Previous Locations button** saves the locations you have visited and displays the locations when clicked.
- The **Refresh button** on the right side of the Address bar refreshes the contents of the right pane of the folder window.
- The **search box** to the right of the Address bar contains the dimmed word, Search. You can type a term in the search box for a list of files, folders, shortcuts, and elements containing that term within the location you are searching. A **shortcut** is an icon on the desktop that provides a user with immediate access to a program or file.
- The **Command bar** contains five buttons used to accomplish various tasks on the computer related to organizing and managing the contents of the open window.
- The **navigation pane** on the left contains the Favorites area, Libraries area, Computer area, and Network area.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

- The **Favorites area** contains links to your favorite locations. By default, this list contains only links to your Desktop, Downloads, and Recent Places.
- The **Libraries area** shows links to files and folders that have been included in a library.

A **library** helps you manage multiple folders and files stored in various locations on a computer. It does not store the files and folders; rather, it displays links to them so that you can access them quickly. For example, you can save pictures from a digital camera in any folder on any storage location on a computer. Normally, this would make organizing the different folders difficult; however, if you add the folders to a library, you can access all the pictures from one location regardless of where they are stored.

To Create a Folder within a Folder

With the class folder created, you can create folders that will store the files you create using Access. The following steps create an Access folder in the CIS 101 folder (or the folder identifying your class).

1

- Double-click the icon or folder name for the CIS 101 folder (or the folder identifying your class) in the File list to open the folder (Figure 15).

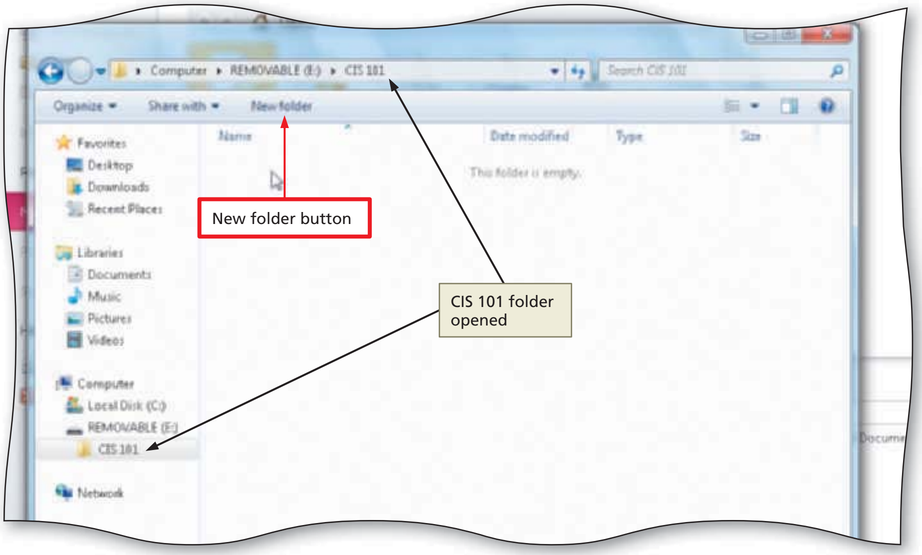

Computer ▸ REMOVABLE (E:) ▸ CIS 101
Search CIS 101
Organize
Share with
New folder
Name
Date modified
Type
Size
This folder is empty.
Favorites
Desktop
Downloads
Recent Places
Libraries
Documents
Music
Pictures
Videos
Computer
Local Disk (C:)
REMOVABLE (E:)
CIS 101
Network
New folder button
CIS 101 folder opened

Figure 15

2

- Click the New folder button on the toolbar to display a new folder icon and text box for the folder.
- Type `Access` in the text box to name the folder.
- Press the ENTER key to create the folder (Figure 16).

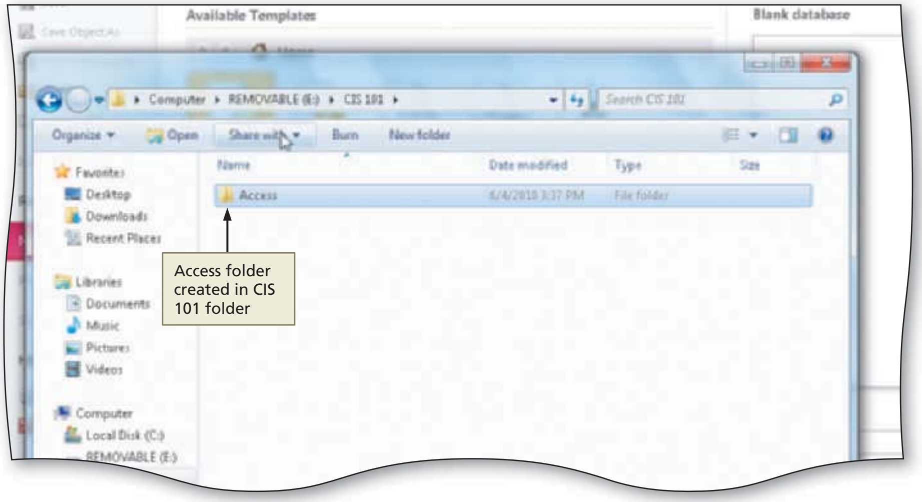

Available Templates
Blank database
Computer ▸ REMOVABLE (E:) ▸ CIS 101 ▸
Search CIS 101
Organize
Open
Share with
Burn
New folder
Name
Date modified
Type
Size
Access
6/4/2010 3:37 PM
File folder
Favorites
Desktop
Downloads
Recent Places
Libraries
Documents
Music
Pictures
Videos
Computer
Local Disk (C:)
REMOVABLE (E:)
Access folder created in CIS 101 folder

Figure 16

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Expand a Folder, Scroll through Folder Contents, and Collapse a Folder

Folder windows display the hierarchy of items and the contents of drives and folders in the right pane. You might want to expand a drive in the navigation pane to view its contents, scroll through its contents, and collapse it when you are finished viewing its contents. When a folder is expanded, it lists all the folders it contains. By contrast, a collapsed folder does not list the folders it contains. The steps on the next page expand, scroll through, and then collapse the folder identifying your class (CIS 101, in this case).

1

- Double-click the folder identifying your class (CIS 101, in this case) in the navigation pane, which expands the folder to display its contents and displays a black arrow to the left of the folder icon (Figure 17).

Q&A Why is the Access folder indented below the CIS 101 folder in the navigation pane?

It shows that the folder is contained within the CIS 101 folder.

Q&A Why did a scroll bar appear in the navigation pane?

When all contents cannot fit in a window or pane, a scroll bar appears. As described earlier, you can view areas currently not visible by (1) clicking the scroll arrows, (2) clicking above or below the scroll bar, and (3) dragging the scroll box.

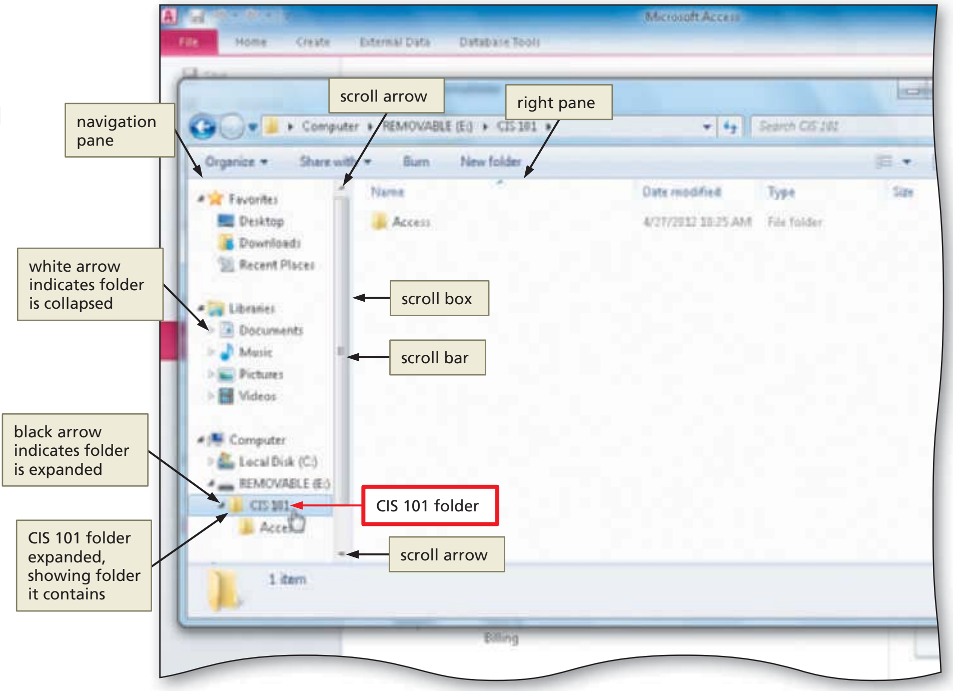

scroll arrow
right pane
navigation pane
white arrow indicates folder is collapsed
scroll box
scroll bar
black arrow indicates folder is expanded
CIS 101 folder
CIS 101 folder expanded, showing folder it contains
scroll arrow

Figure 17

Experiment

- If a scroll bar appears on your screen, click the down scroll arrow on the vertical scroll bar to display additional content at the bottom of the navigation pane.
- If a scroll bar appears on your screen, click the scroll bar above the scroll box to move the scroll box to the top of the navigation pane.
- If a scroll bar appears on your screen, drag the scroll box down the scroll bar until the scroll box is halfway down the scroll bar.

2

- Double-click the folder identifying your class (CIS 101, in this case) in the navigation pane to collapse the folder (Figure 18).

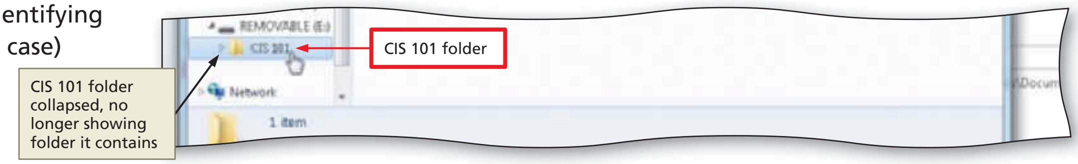

CIS 101 folder
CIS 101 folder collapsed, no longer showing folder it contains

Figure 18

Other Ways

1. Point in navigation pane to display arrows, click white arrow to expand or click black arrow to collapse
2. Select folder to expand or collapse using arrow keys, press RIGHT ARROW to expand; press LEFT ARROW to collapse

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Switch from One Program to Another

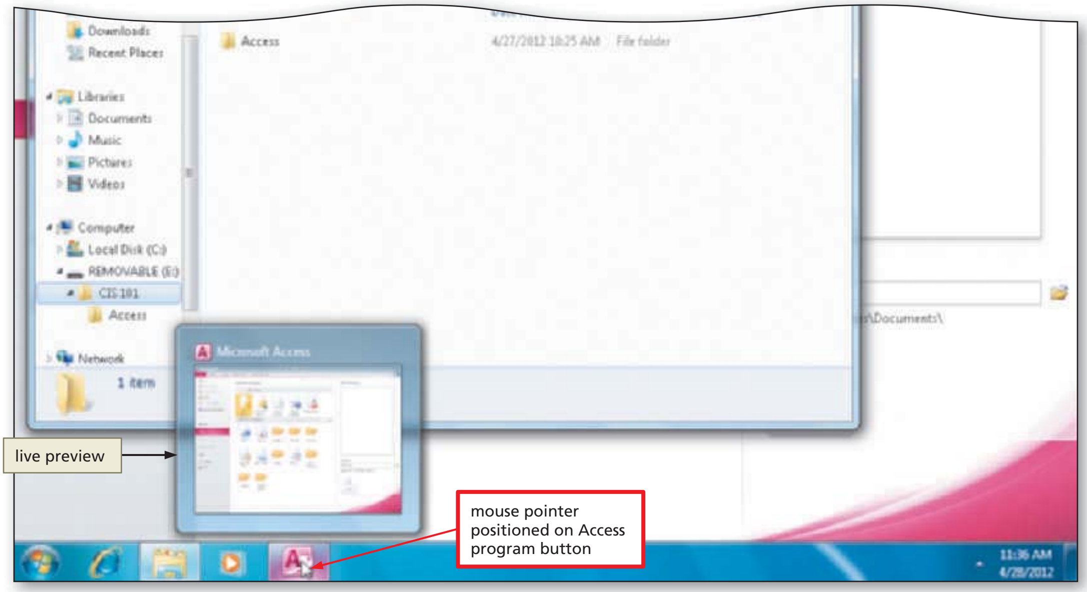
The next step is to create the database. Access, however, currently is not the active window. You can use the program button on the taskbar and live preview to switch to Access and then save the database in Access.

If Windows Aero is active on your computer, Windows displays a live preview window whenever you move your mouse on a button or click a button on the taskbar. If Aero is not supported or enabled on your computer, you will see a window title instead of a live preview. These steps use the Access program; however, the steps are the same for any active Office program currently displayed as a program button on the taskbar.

The next steps switch to the Access window.

1

- Point to the Access program button on the taskbar to see a live preview of the open document(s) or the window title(s) of the open document(s), depending on your computer's configuration (Figure 19).


Downloads
Recent Places
Libraries
Documents
Music
Pictures
Videos
Computer
Local Disk (C:)
REMOVABLE (E:)
CIS 101
Access
Network
1 item
Access
4/27/2012 10:25 AM
File folder
Microsoft Access
\Documents\
11:36 AM
4/28/2012

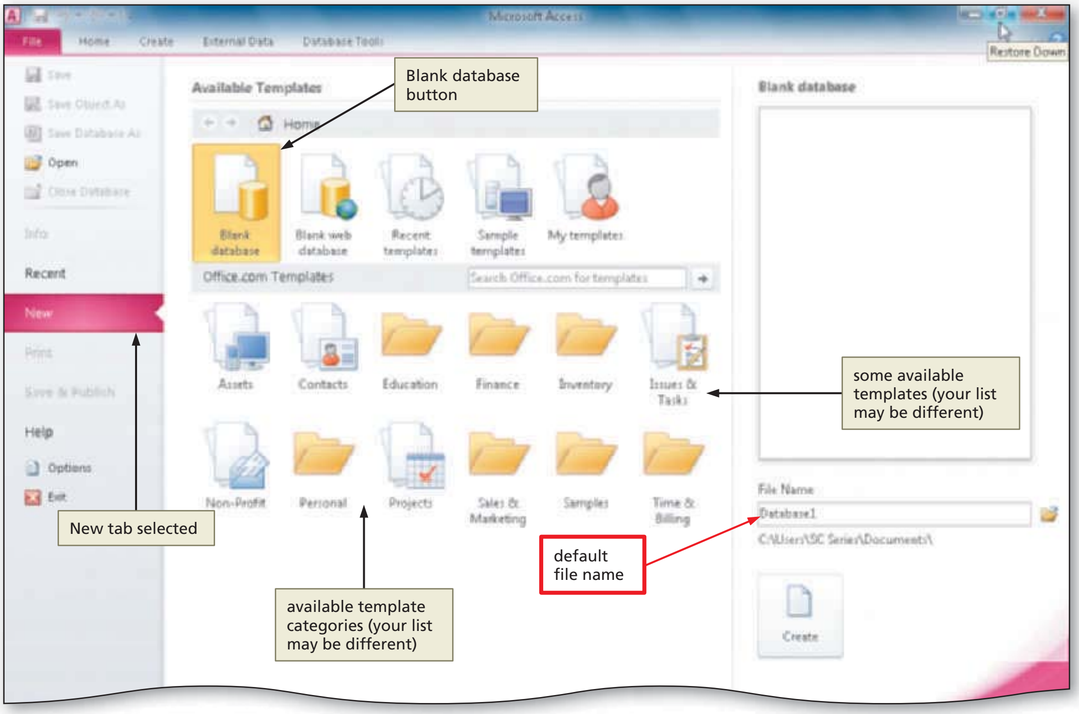
live preview

mouse pointer positioned on Access program button

Figure 19

2

- Click the program button or the live preview to make the program associated with the program button the active window (Figure 20).


Microsoft Access
Restore Down
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Save
Save Object As
Save Database As
Open
Close Database
Info
Recent
New
Print
Save & Publish
Help
Options
Exit
Available Templates
Home
Blank database
Blank web database
Recent templates
Sample templates
My templates
Office.com Templates
Search Office.com for templates
Assets
Contacts
Education
Finance
Inventory
Issues & Tasks
Non-Profit
Personal
Projects
Sales & Marketing
Samples
Time & Billing
Blank database
File Name
Database1
C:\Users\SC Series\Documents\
Create

Blank database button

New tab selected

some available templates (your list may be different)

available template categories (your list may be different)

default file name

Figure 20

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Create an Access Database

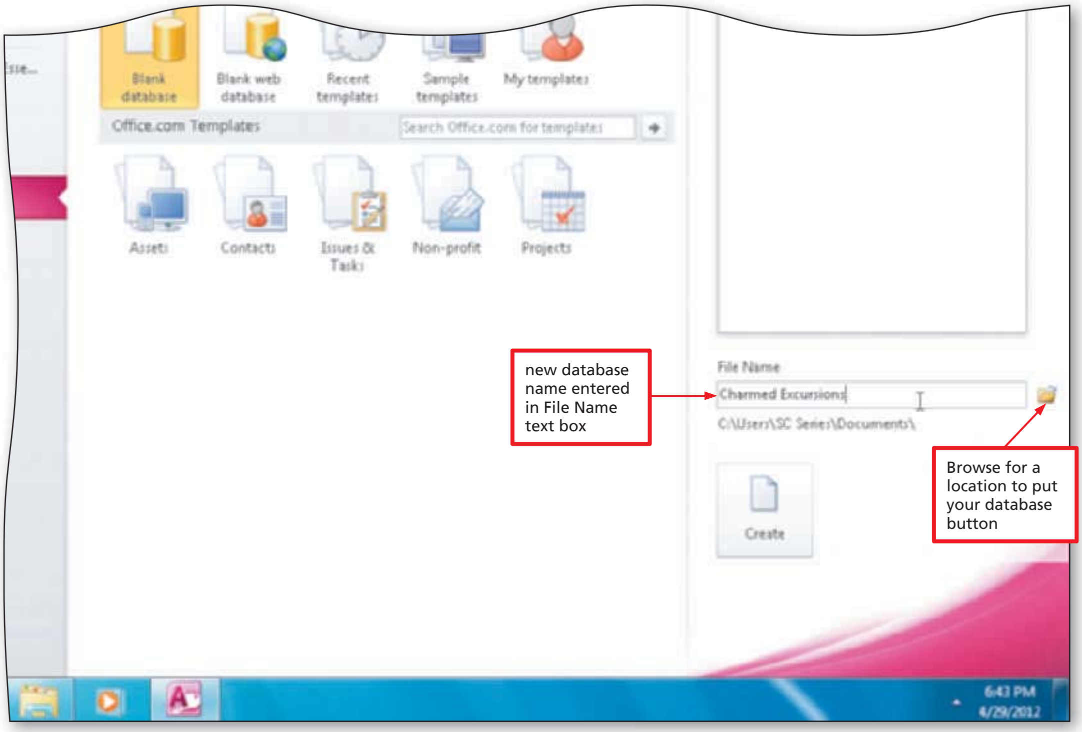
Unlike the other Office programs, Access saves a database when you first create it. When working in Access, you will add data to an Access database. As you add data to a database, Access automatically saves your changes rather than waiting until you manually save the database or quit Access. Recall that in Word and Excel, you entered the data first and then saved it.

Because Access automatically saves the database as you add and change data, you do not have to always click the Save button. In fact, the Save button in Access is used for saving the objects (including tables, queries, forms, reports, and other database objects) a database contains. You can use either the Blank database option or a template to create a new database. If you already know the organization of your database, you would use the Blank database option. If not, you can use a template. Templates can guide you by suggesting some commonly used databases that are available to use.

The following steps use the Blank database option to create a database named Charmed Excursions in the Access folder in the class folder (CIS 101, in this case) on a USB flash drive.

1

- If necessary, click the Blank database button in the New gallery (shown in Figure 20) in the Backstage view to select the template type.
- Click the File Name text box to select the default database name.
- Type `Charmed Excursions` in the File Name text box to enter the new file name. Do not press the ENTER key after typing the file name because you do not want to create the database at this time (Figure 21).



File Name: Charmed Excursions

C:\Users\SC Series\Documents\

new database name entered in File Name text box

Browse for a location to put your database button

Figure 21

Q&A

Why is the Backstage view automatically open when you start Access?

Unlike other Office programs, you first must save a database before adding any data. For this reason, the Backstage view opens automatically when you start Access.

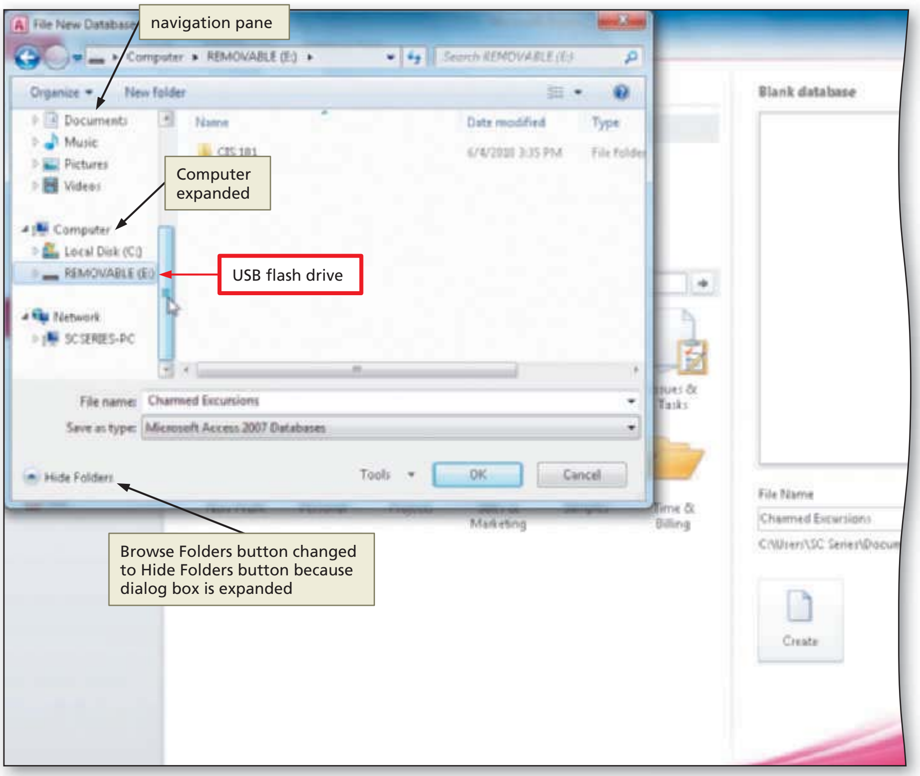
2

- Click the ‘Browse for a location to put your database’ button to display the File New Database dialog box.
- Navigate to the desired save location (in this case, the Access folder in the CIS 101 folder [or your class folder] on the USB flash drive) by performing the tasks in Steps 2a, 2b, and 2c.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2a

- If the navigation pane is not displayed in the dialog box, click the Browse Folders button to expand the dialog box.
- If Computer is not displayed in the navigation pane, drag the navigation pane scroll bar until Computer appears.
- If Computer is not expanded in the navigation pane, double-click Computer to display a list of available storage devices in the navigation pane.
- If necessary, scroll through the dialog box until your USB flash drive appears in the list of available storage devices in the navigation pane (Figure 22).


File New Database
Computer ▸ REMOVABLE (E:) ▸
Search REMOVABLE (E:)
Organize
New folder
Documents
Music
Pictures
Videos
Computer
Local Disk (C:)
REMOVABLE (E:)
Network
SCSERIES-PC
Name
Date modified
Type
CIS 101
6/4/2010 3:35 PM
File folder
Hide Folders
Tools
OK
Cancel
Blank database
Create

File name: Charmed Excursions

Save as type: Microsoft Access 2007 Databases

navigation pane

Computer expanded

USB flash drive

Browse Folders button changed to Hide Folders button because dialog box is expanded

Figure 22

2b

- If your USB flash drive is not expanded, double-click the USB flash drive in the list of available storage devices in the navigation pane to select that drive as the new save location and display its contents in the right pane.

2c

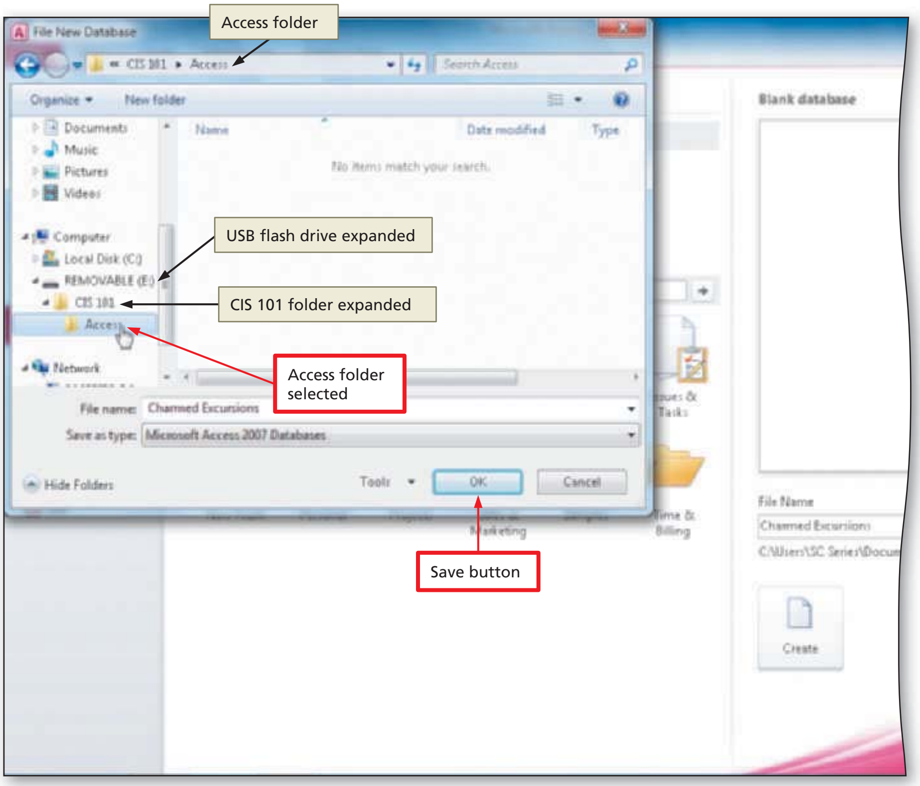
- If your class folder (CIS 101, in this case) is not expanded, double-click the CIS 101 folder to select the folder and display its contents in the right pane.

Q&A

What if I do not want to save in a folder?

Although storing files in folders is an effective technique for organizing files, some users prefer not to store files in folders. If you prefer not to save this file in a folder, skip all instructions in Step 2c and proceed to Step 3.

- Click the Access folder to select the folder and display its contents in the right pane (Figure 23).


File New Database
« CIS 101 ▸ Access
Search Access
Organize
New folder
Documents
Music
Pictures
Videos
Computer
Local Disk (C:)
REMOVABLE (E:)
CIS 101
Access
Network
Name
Date modified
Type
No items match your search.
Hide Folders
Tools
OK
Cancel
Blank database
Create

File name: Charmed Excursions

Save as type: Microsoft Access 2007 Databases

Access folder

USB flash drive expanded

CIS 101 folder expanded

Access folder selected

Save button

Figure 23

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Q&A Why does the 'Save as type' box say Microsoft Access 2007 Databases?

Microsoft Access database formats change with some new versions of Microsoft Access. The most recent format is the Microsoft Access 2007 Databases format, which was released with Access 2007.

3

- Click the OK button (File New Database dialog box) to select the Access folder as the location for the database and close the dialog box (Figure 24).

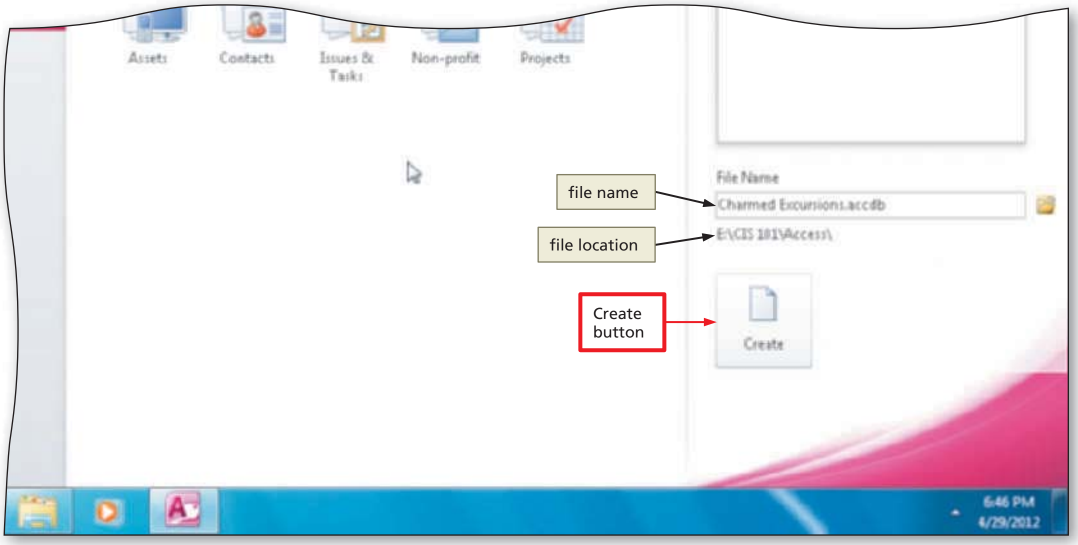

Assets
Contacts
Issues & Tasks
Non-profit
Projects
file name
file location
Create button
File Name
Charmed Excursions.accdb
E:\CIS 101\Access\
Create

Figure 24

4

- Click the Create button in the Backstage view to create the database on the selected drive in the selected folder with the file name, Charmed Excursions. If necessary, click the Enable Content option button (Figure 25).

Q&A How do I know that the Charmed Excursions database is created?

The name of the database appears on the title bar.

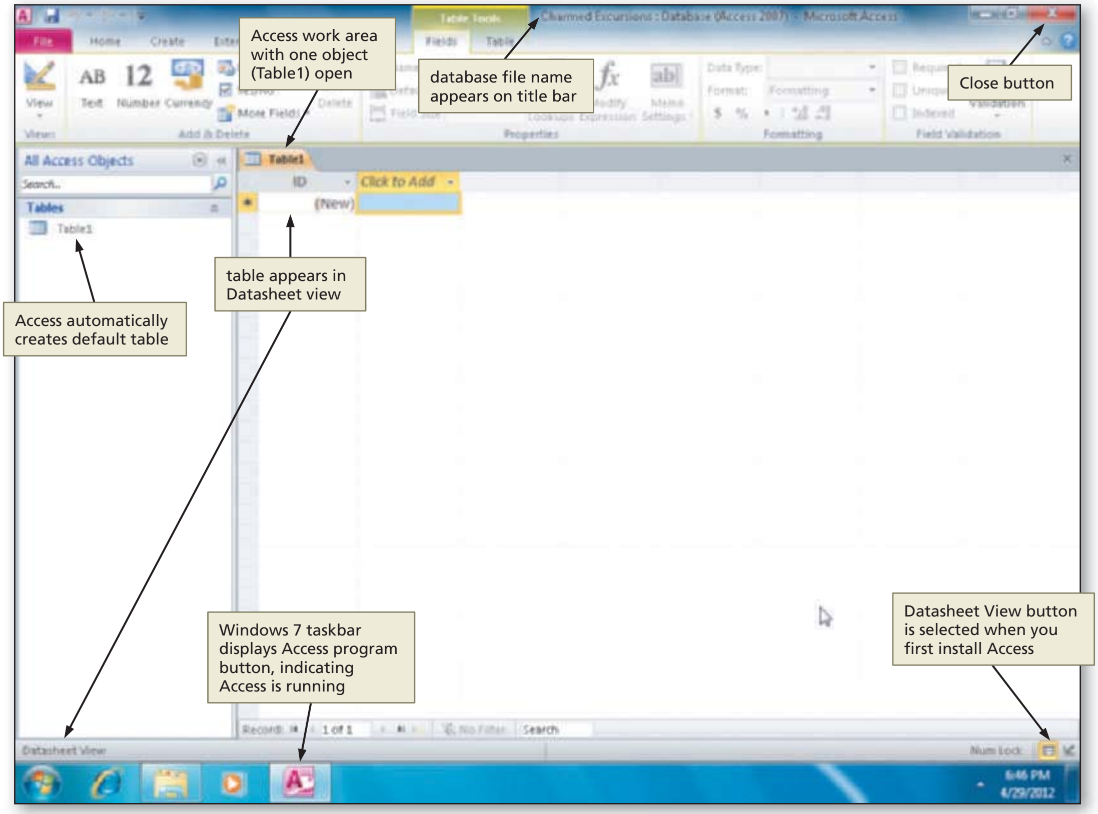

Access work area with one object (Table1) open
database file name appears on title bar
Close button
Access automatically creates default table
table appears in Datasheet view
Windows 7 taskbar displays Access program button, indicating Access is running
Datasheet View button is selected when you first install Access
Charmed Excursions : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
All Access Objects
Tables
Table1
ID
Click to Add
(New)

Figure 25

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Close an Office File Using the Backstage View

Sometimes, you may want to close an Office file, such as an Access database, entirely and start over with a new file. You also may want to close a file when you are finished working with it so that you can begin a new file. The following steps close the current active Office file, that is, the Charmed Excursions database, without quitting the active program (Access, in this case).

1

- Click File on the Ribbon to open the Backstage view (Figure 26).

2

- Click Close Database in the Backstage view to close the open file (Charmed Excursions, in this case) without quitting the active program.

Q&A

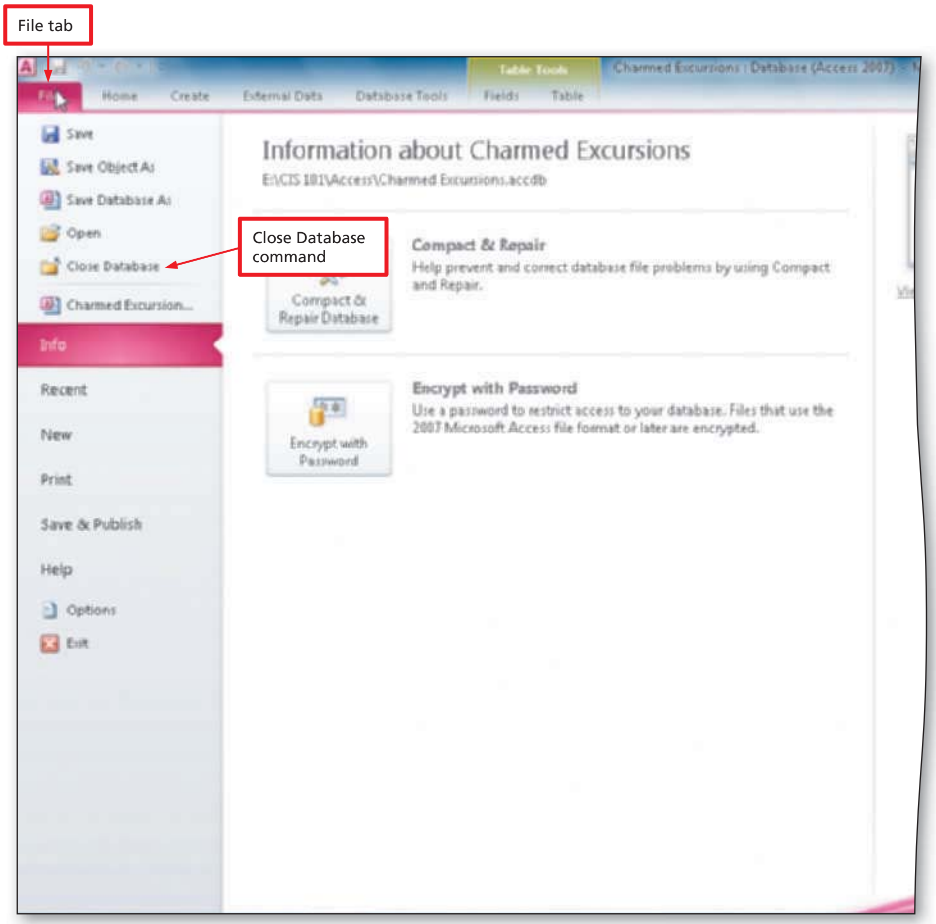
What if the Office program displays a dialog box about saving?

Click the Save button if you want to save the changes, click the Don't Save button if you want to ignore the changes since the last time you saved, and click the Cancel button if you do not want to close the document.

Q&A

Can I use the Backstage view to close an open file in other Office programs, such as Word and Excel?

Yes.


File tab
Close Database command
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Table Tools
Fields
Table
Charmed Excursions : Database (Access 2007)
Save
Save Object As
Save Database As
Open
Close Database
Charmed Excursion...
Info
Recent
New
Print
Save & Publish
Help
Options
Exit
Compact & Repair Database
Encrypt with Password

Information about Charmed Excursions

E:\CIS 101\Access\Charmed Excursions.accdb

Compact & Repair

Help prevent and correct database file problems by using Compact and Repair.

Encrypt with Password

Use a password to restrict access to your database. Files that use the 2007 Microsoft Access file format or later are encrypted.

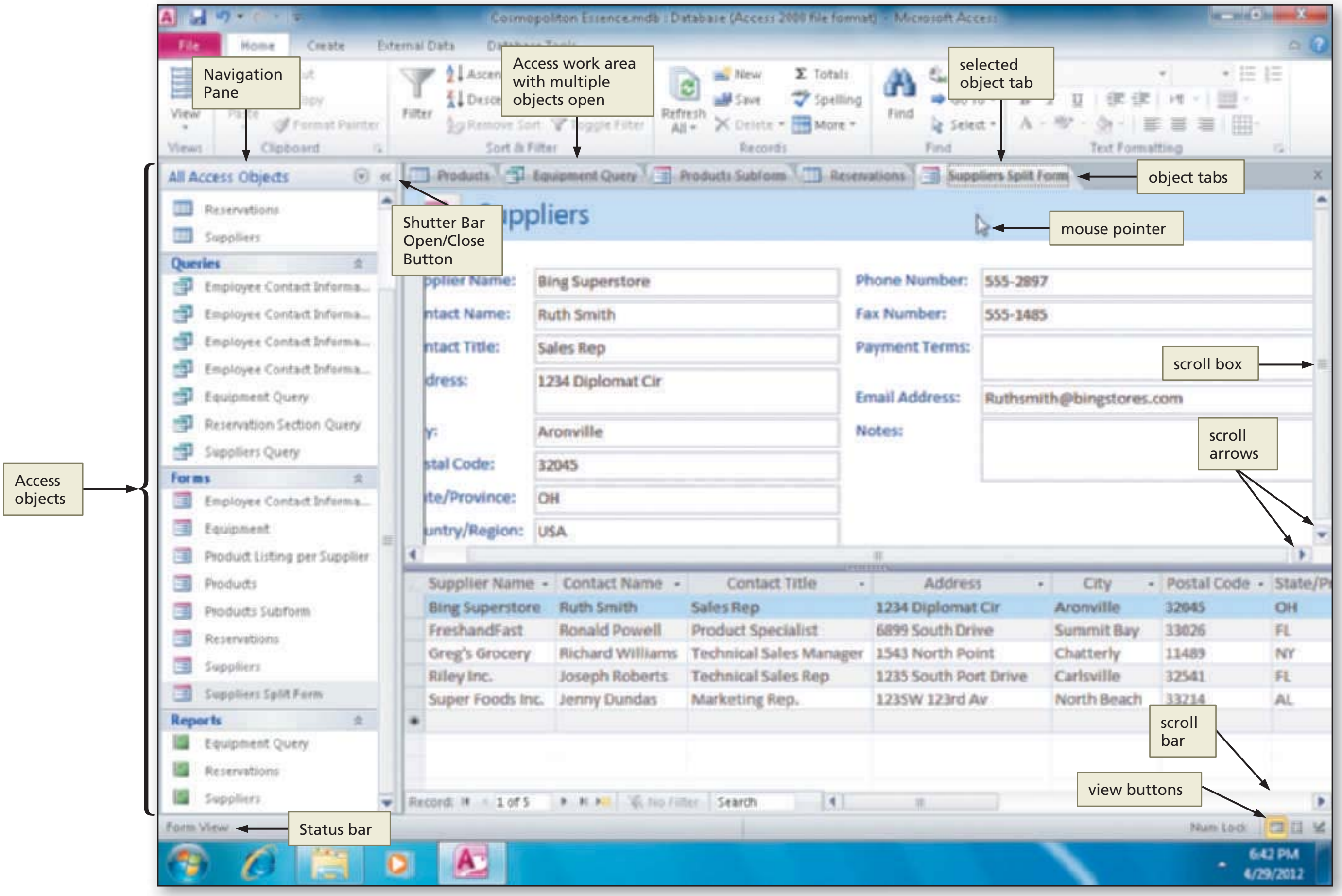
Figure 26

Unique Elements in Access

You work on objects such as tables, forms, and reports in the **Access work area**. In Figure 25 on the previous page, the Access window contains one open object. Figure 27 shows a work area with multiple objects open. **Object tabs** for the open objects appear at the top of the work area. You select an open object by clicking its tab. In the figure, the Suppliers Split Form is the selected object. To the left of the work area is the Navigation Pane, which contains a list of all the objects in the database. You use this pane to open an object. You also can customize the way objects are displayed in the Navigation Pane.

Because the Navigation Pane can take up space in the window, you may not have as much open space for working as you would with Word or Excel. You can use the Shutter Bar Open/Close Button to minimize the Navigation Pane when you are not using it, which allows more space to work with tables, forms, reports, and other database elements.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.


Cosmopolitan Essence.mdb : Database (Access 2000 file format) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Navigation Pane
Access work area with multiple objects open
selected object tab
object tabs
All Access Objects
Products
Equipment Query
Products Subform
Reservations
Suppliers Split Form
Shutter Bar Open/Close Button
mouse pointer
scroll box
scroll arrows
Access objects
Reservations
Suppliers
Queries
Employee Contact Informa...
Employee Contact Informa...
Employee Contact Informa...
Employee Contact Informa...
Equipment Query
Reservation Section Query
Suppliers Query
Forms
Employee Contact Informa...
Equipment
Product Listing per Supplier
Products
Products Subform
Reservations
Suppliers
Suppliers Split Form
Reports
Equipment Query
Reservations
Suppliers
scroll bar
view buttons
Status bar
Form View
Num Lock
6:42 PM
4/29/2012

ppliers

pplier Name: Bing Superstore
ntact Name: Ruth Smith
ntact Title: Sales Rep
dress: 1234 Diplomat Cir
y: Aronville
stal Code: 32045
te/Province: OH
untry/Region: USA
Phone Number: 555-2897
Fax Number: 555-1485
Payment Terms:
Email Address: Ruthsmith@bingstores.com
Notes:

Supplier Name	Contact Name	Contact Title	Address	City	Postal Code	State/Pr
Bing Superstore	Ruth Smith	Sales Rep	1234 Diplomat Cir	Aronville	32045	OH
FreshandFast	Ronald Powell	Product Specialist	6899 South Drive	Summit Bay	33026	FL
Greg's Grocery	Richard Williams	Technical Sales Manager	1543 North Point	Chatterly	11489	NY
Riley Inc.	Joseph Roberts	Technical Sales Rep	1235 South Port Drive	Carlsville	32541	FL
Super Foods Inc.	Jenny Dundas	Marketing Rep.	1235W 123rd Av	North Beach	33214	AL

Record: 1 of 5 No Filter Search

Figure 27

The Access Window, Ribbon, and Elements Common to Office Programs

Scroll Bars You use a scroll bar to display different portions of an object in the work area. At the right edge of the work area is a vertical scroll bar. If an object is too wide to fit in the document window, a horizontal scroll bar also appears at the bottom of the work area. On a scroll bar, the position of the scroll box reflects the location of the portion of the object that is displayed in the work area.

Status Bar The **Status bar**, located at the bottom of the Access window above the Windows 7 taskbar, presents information about the object as well as controls for viewing the document. As you type text or perform certain tasks, various indicators and buttons may appear on the Status bar.

The left side of the Status bar in Figure 25 shows the current object. The right side of the Status bar includes buttons you can use to change the view of an object.

Ribbon The Ribbon, located near the top of the window below the title bar, is the control center in Access and other Office programs (Figure 28 on the next page). The Ribbon provides easy, central access to the tasks you perform while creating a document. The Ribbon consists of tabs, groups, and commands. Each **tab** contains a collection of

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

groups, and each **group** contains related functions. When you start an Office program, such as Access, it initially displays several main tabs, also called default tabs. All Office programs have a **Home tab**, which contains the more frequently used commands.

In addition to the main tabs, Office programs display **tool tabs**, also called contextual tabs (Figure 28), when you perform certain tasks or work with objects such as forms, reports, or tables. If you are modifying the design of a form, for example, the Form Design Tools tab and its related subordinate Design tabs appear, collectively referred to as the Form Design Tools Design tab. When you are finished working with the form, the Form Design Tools tab disappears from the Ribbon. Access and other Office programs determine when tool tabs should appear and disappear based on tasks you perform. Some tool tabs, such as the Form Design Tools tab, have more than one related subordinate tab.

Items on the Ribbon include buttons, boxes (text boxes, check boxes, etc.), and galleries (Figure 28). A **gallery** is a set of choices, often graphical, arranged in a grid or in a list. You can scroll through choices in an in-Ribbon gallery by clicking the gallery's scroll arrows. Or, you can click a gallery's More button to view more gallery options on the screen at a time.

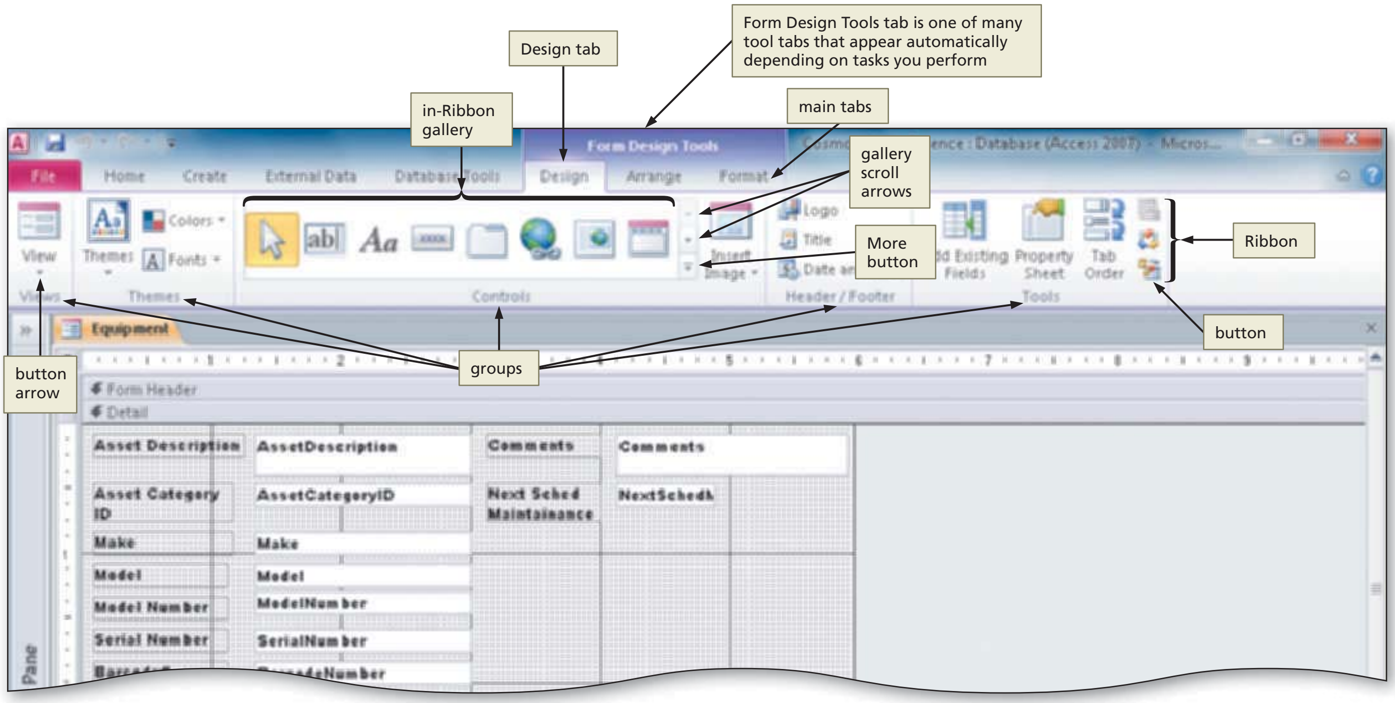

Design tab
Form Design Tools tab is one of many tool tabs that appear automatically depending on tasks you perform
in-Ribbon gallery
main tabs
gallery scroll arrows
More button
Ribbon
button
button arrow
groups

Figure 28

Some commands on the Ribbon display an image to help you remember their function. When you point to a command on the Ribbon, all or part of the command glows in shades of yellow and orange, and an Enhanced ScreenTip appears on the screen. An **Enhanced ScreenTip** is an on-screen note that provides the name of the command, available keyboard shortcut(s), a description of the command, and sometimes instructions for how to obtain help about the command (Figure 29). Enhanced ScreenTips are more detailed than a typical ScreenTip, which usually displays only the name of the command.

Some groups on the Ribbon have a small arrow in the lower-right corner, called a **Dialog Box Launcher**, that when clicked, displays a dialog box or a task pane with additional options for the group (Figure 30). When presented with a dialog box, you make selections and must close the dialog box before returning to the database. A **task pane**, in contrast to a dialog box, is a window that can remain open and visible while you work in the database.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

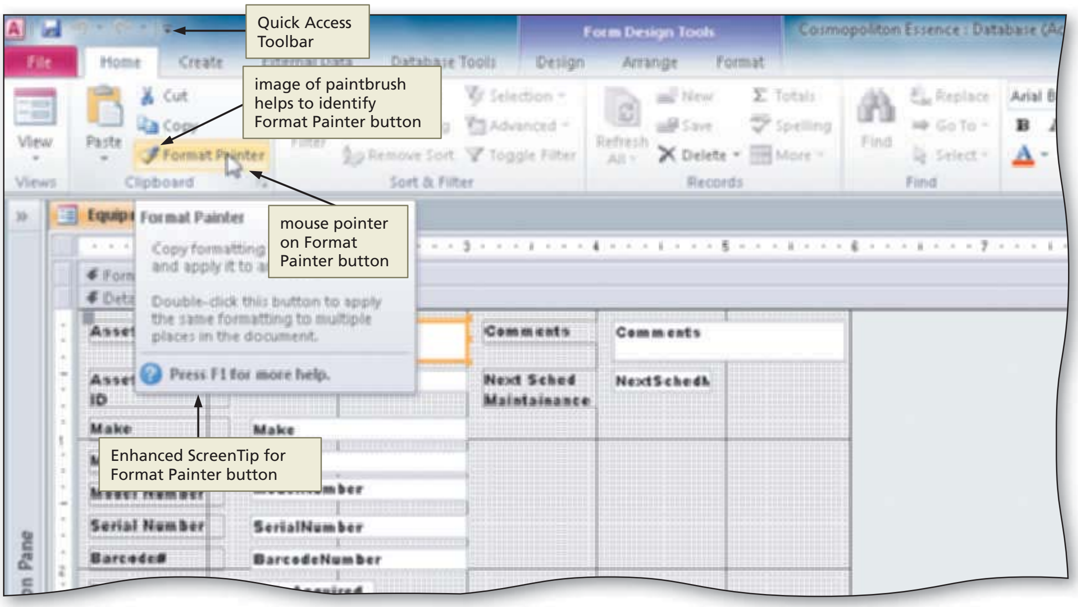
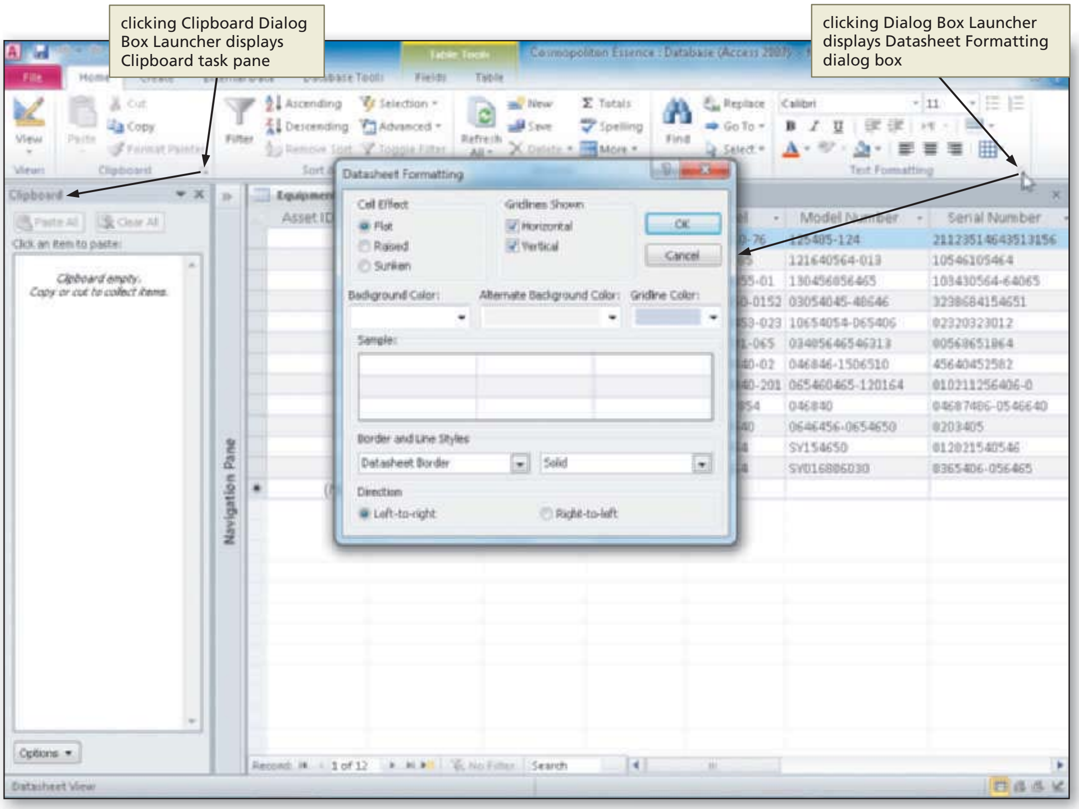

Quick Access Toolbar
image of paintbrush helps to identify Format Painter button
mouse pointer on Format Painter button
Enhanced ScreenTip for Format Painter button
Format Painter
Copy formatting and apply it to a
Double-click this button to apply the same formatting to multiple places in the document.
Press F1 for more help.

Figure 29


clicking Clipboard Dialog Box Launcher displays Clipboard task pane
clicking Dialog Box Launcher displays Datasheet Formatting dialog box
Clipboard
Clipboard empty.
Copy or cut to collect items.
Datasheet Formatting
OK
Cancel

Cell Effect: ● Flat ○ Raised ○ Sunken

Gridlines Shown: ☑ Horizontal ☑ Vertical

Border and Line Styles: Datasheet Border, Solid

Direction: ● Left-to-right ○ Right-to-left

Figure 30

Quick Access Toolbar The **Quick Access Toolbar**, located initially (by default) above the Ribbon at the left edge of the title bar, provides convenient, one-click access to frequently used commands (Figure 29). The commands on the Quick Access Toolbar always are available, regardless of the task you are performing. The Quick Access Toolbar is discussed in more depth later in the chapter.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

KeyTips If you prefer using the keyboard instead of the mouse, you can press the ALT key on the keyboard to display **KeyTips**, or keyboard code icons, for certain commands (Figure 31). To select a command using the keyboard, press the letter or number displayed in the KeyTip, which may cause additional KeyTips related to the selected command to appear. To remove KeyTips from the screen, press the ALT key or the ESC key until all KeyTips disappear, or click the mouse anywhere in the program window.

KeyTips appear when you press ALT key on keyboard

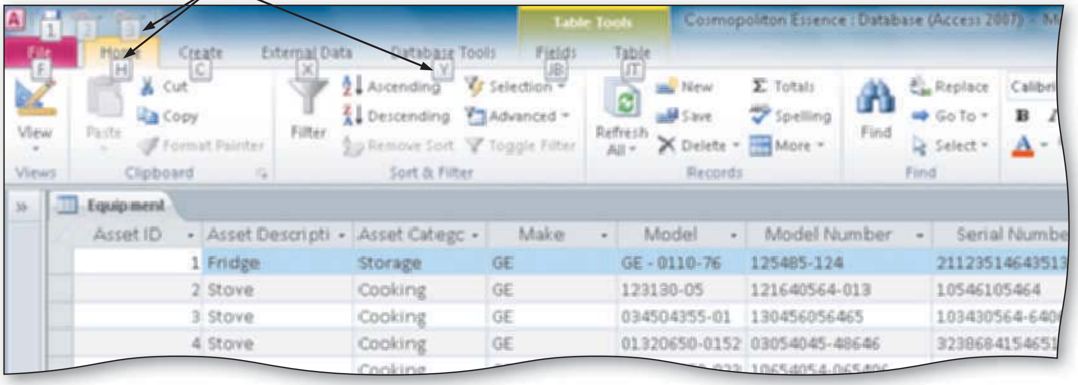


Table Tools
Cosmopolitan Essence : Database (Access 2007)
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Fields
Table
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Find
Equipment

Asset ID	Asset Descripti	Asset Categc	Make	Model	Model Number	Serial Numbe
1	Fridge	Storage	GE	GE - 0110-76	125485-124	21123514643513
2	Stove	Cooking	GE	123130-05	121640564-013	10546105464
3	Stove	Cooking	GE	034504355-01	130456056465	103430564-640
4	Stove	Cooking	GE	01320650-0152	03054045-48646	32386841546 51

Figure 31

To Open an Existing Office File

Assume you want to continue working on an existing file, that is, a file you previously saved. Earlier in this chapter, you learned how to open a recently used file through the Backstage view. The following steps open a database, specifically the Charmed Excursions database, from the USB flash drive.

1

- With your USB flash drive connected to one of the computer's USB ports, if necessary, click File on the Ribbon to open the Backstage view.
- Click Open in the Backstage view to display the Open dialog box (Figure 32).

2

- Navigate to the location of the file to be opened (in this case, the USB flash drive, then to the CIS 101 folder [or your class folder], and then to the Access folder). For detailed steps about navigating, see Steps 2a – 2c on page OFF 20.

Q&A What if I did not save my file in a folder?

If you did not save your file in a folder, the file you want to open should be displayed in the Open dialog box before navigating to any folders.

File tab

Open dialog box

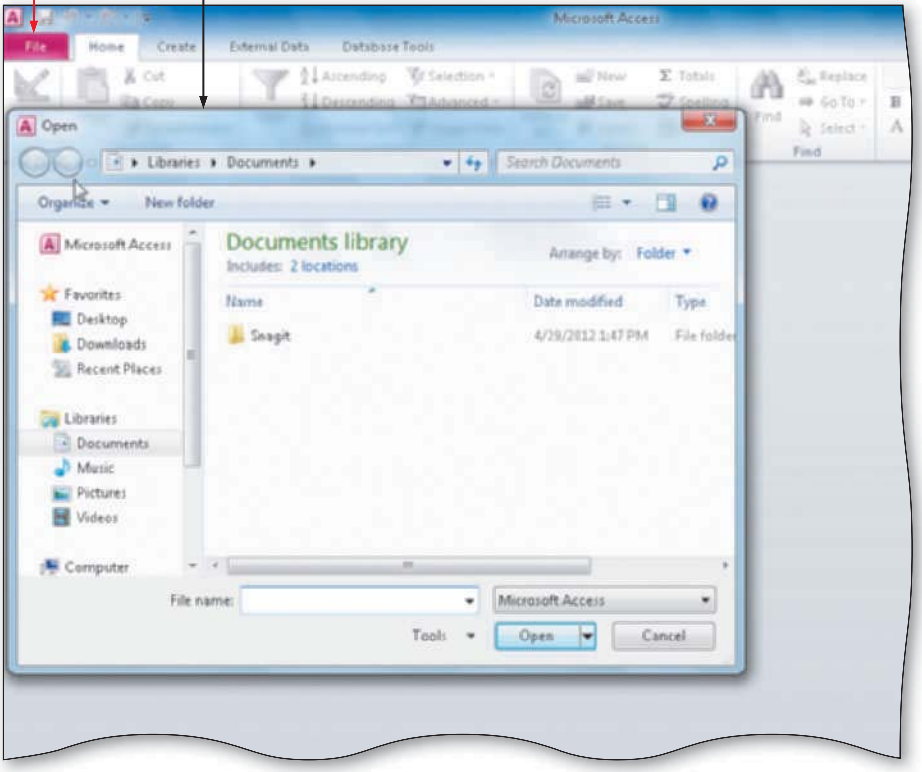

Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Open
Libraries ▸ Documents ▸
Search Documents
Organize
New folder
Microsoft Access
Favorites
Desktop
Downloads
Recent Places
Libraries
Documents
Music
Pictures
Videos
Computer
Documents library
Includes: 2 locations
Arrange by: Folder
Name
Date modified
Type
Snagit
4/29/2012 1:47 PM
File folder
File name:
Microsoft Access
Tools
Open
Cancel

Figure 32

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3

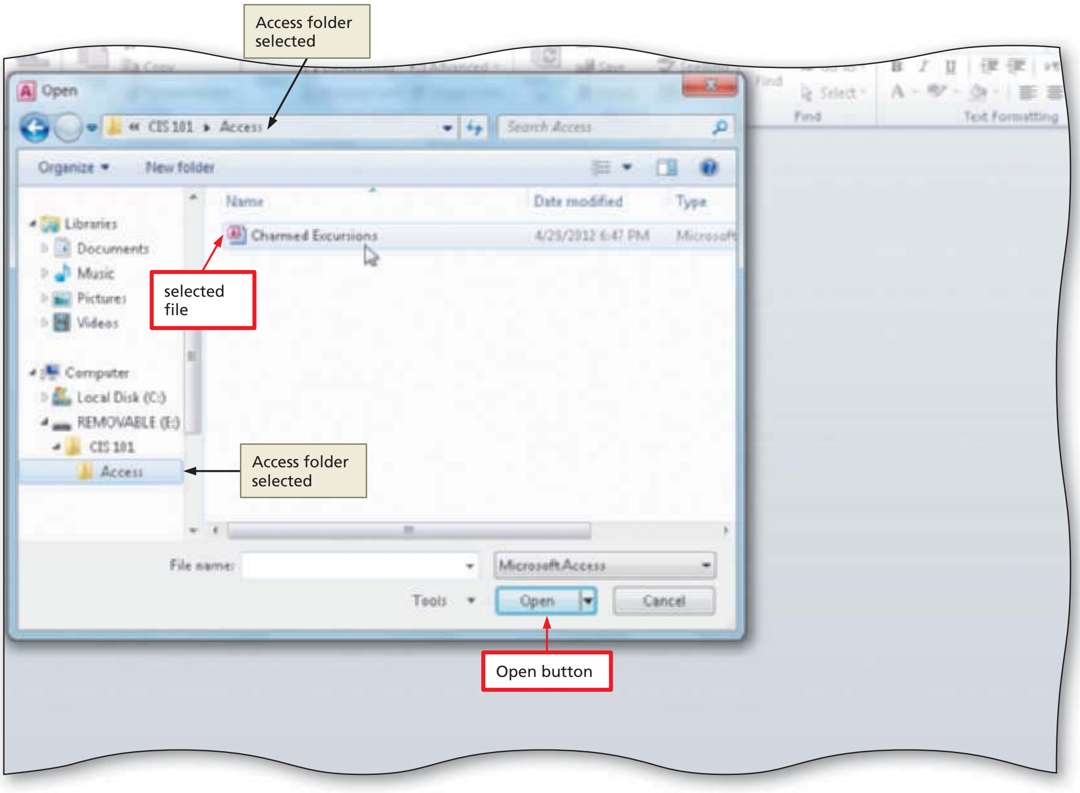
- Click the file to be opened, Charmed Excursions in this case, to select the file (Figure 33).

4

- Click the Open button (Open dialog box) to open the selected file and display the opened file in the current program window.

Other Ways

1. Click File on the Ribbon, click Recent in Backstage view, double-click file
2. Press CTRL+O
3. Navigate to file in Windows Explorer, double-click file


Open
CIS 101 ▸ Access
Search Access
Organize ▾
New folder
Libraries
Documents
Music
Pictures
Videos
Computer
Local Disk (C:)
REMOVABLE (E:)
CIS 101
Access
Name
Date modified
Type
Charmed Excursions
4/25/2012 6:47 PM
Microsoft
File name:
Microsoft Access
Tools
Open
Cancel

Access folder selected

selected file

Access folder selected

Open button

Figure 33

To Display a Different Tab on the Ribbon

When you start Access, the Ribbon displays five main tabs: File, Home, Create, External Data, and Database Tools. The tab currently displayed is called the **active tab**.

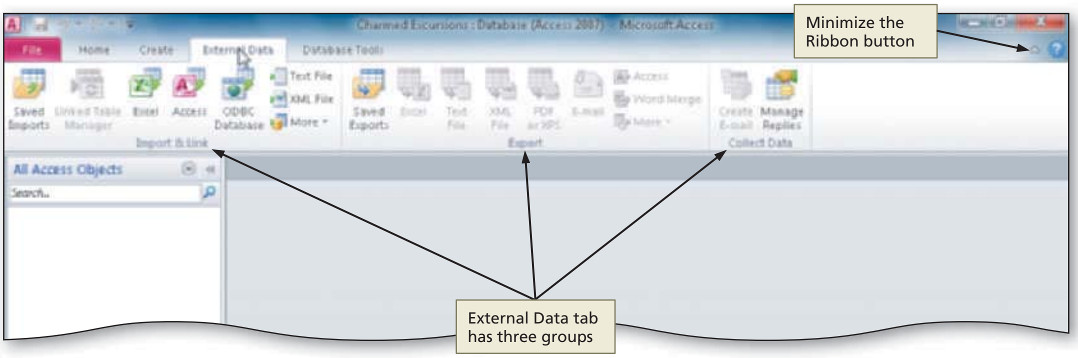
The following step displays the External Data tab, that is, makes it the active tab.

1

- Click External Data on the Ribbon to display the External Data tab (Figure 34).

Experiment

- Click the other tabs on the Ribbon to view their contents. When you are finished, click the External Data tab to redisplay the External Data tab.


Charmed Excursions : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Saved Imports
Linked Table Manager
Excel
Access
ODBC Database
Text File
XML File
More
Import & Link
Saved Exports
Excel
Text File
XML File
PDF or XPS
E-mail
Access
Word Merge
More
Export
Create E-mail
Manage Replies
Collect Data
All Access Objects
Search...

Minimize the Ribbon button

External Data tab has three groups

Figure 34

Q&A

If I am working in a different Office program, such as PowerPoint or Word, how do I display a different tab on the Ribbon?

Follow this same procedure; that is, click the desired tab on the Ribbon.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Minimize, Display, and Restore the Ribbon

To display more of a database or other item in the window of an Office program, some users prefer to minimize the Ribbon, which hides the groups on the Ribbon and displays only the main tabs. Each time you start an Office program, such as Access, the Ribbon appears the same way it did the last time you used that Office program. The chapters in this book, however, begin with the Ribbon appearing as it did at the initial installation of Access.

The following steps minimize, display, and restore the Ribbon in Access.

1

- Click the Minimize the Ribbon button on the Ribbon (shown in Figure 34) to minimize the Ribbon (Figure 35).

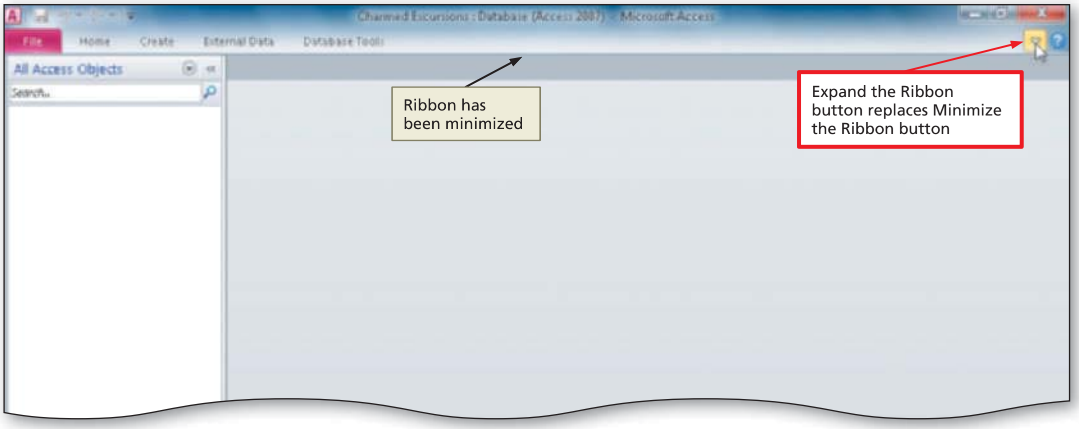

Charmed Excursions : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
All Access Objects
Search...
Ribbon has been minimized
Expand the Ribbon button replaces Minimize the Ribbon button

Figure 35

Q&A What happened to the groups on the Ribbon?

When you minimize the Ribbon, the groups disappear so that the Ribbon does not take up as much space on the screen.

Q&A What happened to the Minimize the Ribbon button?

The Expand the Ribbon button replaces the Minimize the Ribbon button when the Ribbon is minimized.

2

- Click Home on the Ribbon to display the Home tab (Figure 36).

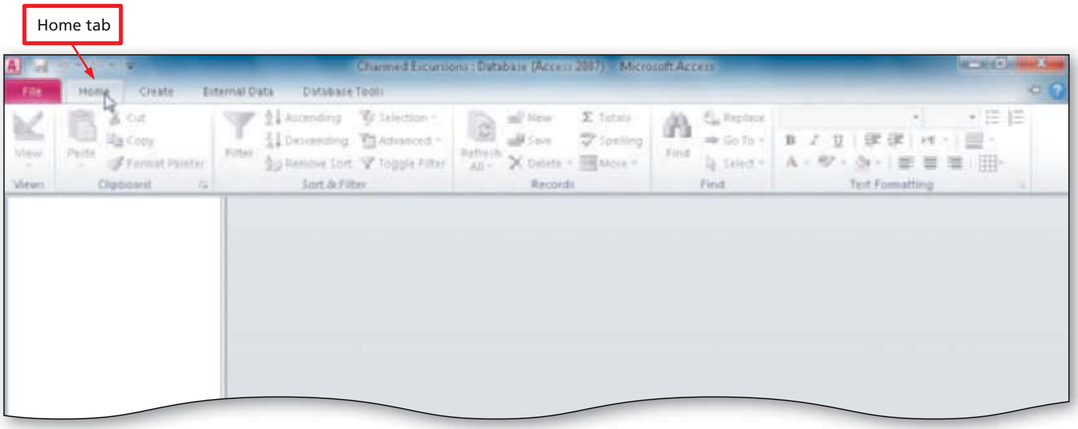

Home tab
Charmed Excursions : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Find
Text Formatting

Figure 36

Q&A Why would I click the Home tab?

If you want to use a command on a minimized Ribbon, click the main tab to display the groups for that tab. After you select a command on the Ribbon, the groups will be hidden once again. If you decide not to use a command on the Ribbon, you can hide the groups by clicking the same main tab or clicking in the program window.

3

- Click Home on the Ribbon to hide the groups again (shown in Figure 35).
- Click the Expand the Ribbon button on the Ribbon (shown in Figure 35) to restore the Ribbon.

Other Ways

1. Double-click Home on the Ribbon
2. Press CTRL+F1

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Display and Use a Shortcut Menu

When you right-click certain areas of the Access and other program windows, a shortcut menu will appear. A **shortcut menu** is a list of frequently used commands that relate to the right-clicked object. When you right-click a scroll bar, for example, a shortcut menu appears with commands related to the scroll bar. When you right-click the Quick Access Toolbar, a shortcut menu appears with commands related to the Quick Access Toolbar. You can use shortcut menus to access common commands quickly. The following steps use a shortcut menu to move the Quick Access Toolbar, which by default is located on the title bar.

1

- Right-click the Quick Access Toolbar to display a shortcut menu that presents a list of commands related to the Quick Access Toolbar (Figure 37).

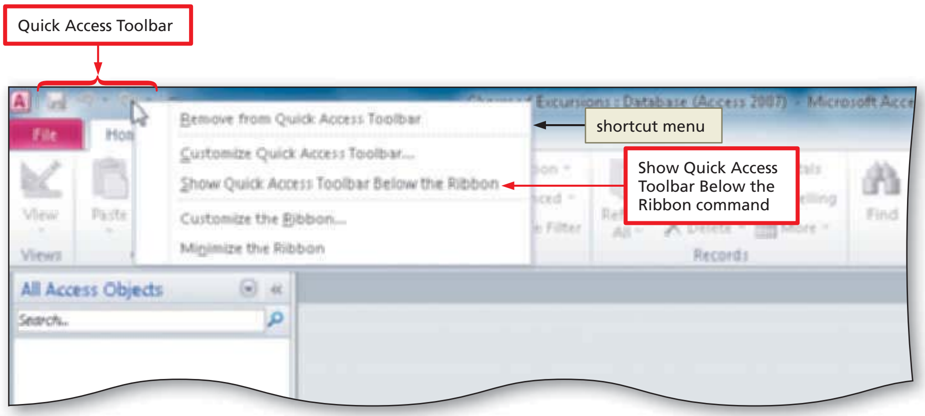

Quick Access Toolbar
shortcut menu
Show Quick Access Toolbar Below the Ribbon command
Remove from Quick Access Toolbar
Customize Quick Access Toolbar...
Show Quick Access Toolbar Below the Ribbon
Customize the Ribbon...
Minimize the Ribbon
All Access Objects
Search...

Figure 37

2

- Click Show Quick Access Toolbar Below the Ribbon on the shortcut menu to display the Quick Access Toolbar below the Ribbon (Figure 38).

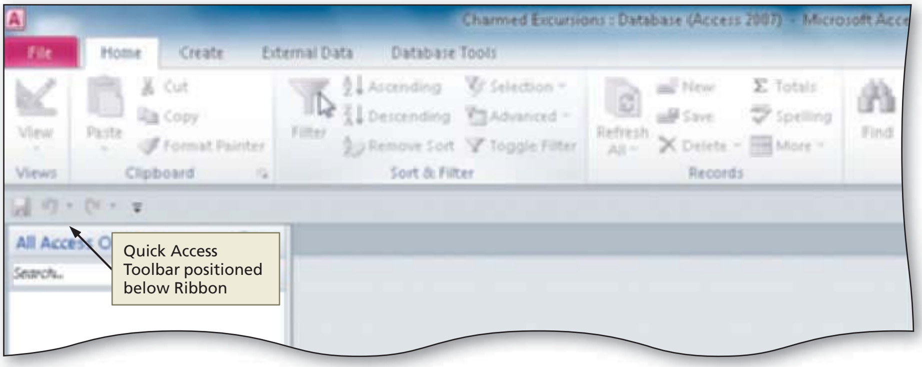

Charmed Excursions : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Acce
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Quick Access Toolbar positioned below Ribbon

Figure 38

3

- Right-click the Quick Access Toolbar to display a shortcut menu (Figure 39).

4

- Click Show Quick Access Toolbar Above the Ribbon on the shortcut menu to return the Quick Access Toolbar to its original position (shown in Figure 37).

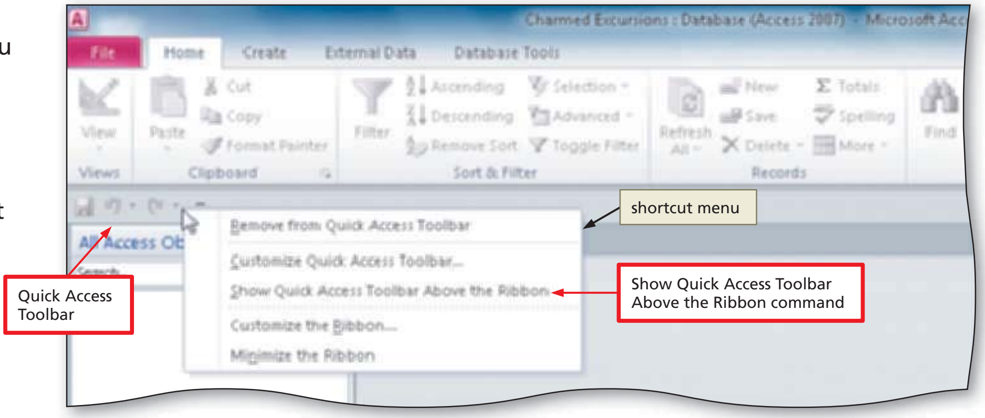

shortcut menu
Quick Access Toolbar
Show Quick Access Toolbar Above the Ribbon command
Remove from Quick Access Toolbar
Customize Quick Access Toolbar...
Show Quick Access Toolbar Above the Ribbon
Customize the Ribbon...
Minimize the Ribbon

Figure 39

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Customize the Quick Access Toolbar

The Quick Access Toolbar provides easy access to some of the more frequently used commands in Office programs. By default, the Quick Access Toolbar contains buttons for the Save, Undo, and Redo commands. You can customize the Quick Access Toolbar by changing its location in the window, as shown in the previous steps, and by adding more buttons to reflect commands you would like to access easily. The following steps add the Quick Print button to the Quick Access Toolbar in the Access window. They then remove the button from the Quick Access Toolbar. You can use these techniques to add or remove any of the available buttons.

1

- Click the Customize Quick Access Toolbar button to display the Customize Quick Access Toolbar menu (Figure 40).

Q&A Which commands are listed on the Customize Quick Access Toolbar menu?

It lists commands that commonly are added to the Quick Access Toolbar.

Q&A What do the check marks next to some commands signify?

Check marks appear next to commands that already are on the Quick Access Toolbar. When you add a button to the Quick Access Toolbar, a check mark will be displayed next to its command name.

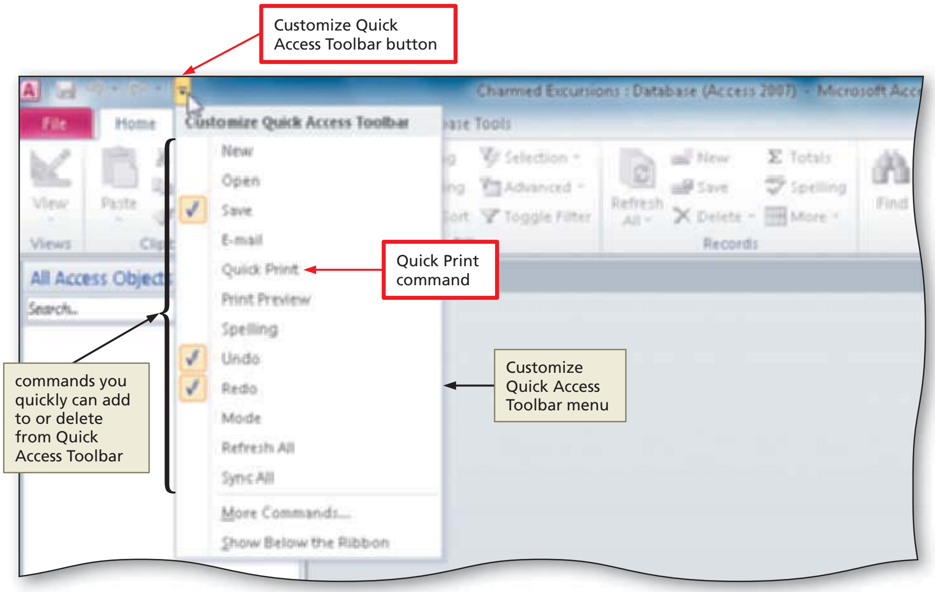

Customize Quick Access Toolbar button
Charmed Excursions : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Acc
File
Home
Customize Quick Access Toolbar
New
Open
Save
E-mail
Quick Print
Print Preview
Spelling
Undo
Redo
Mode
Refresh All
Sync All
More Commands...
Show Below the Ribbon
Quick Print command
commands you quickly can add to or delete from Quick Access Toolbar
Customize Quick Access Toolbar menu
All Access Objects
Search...
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Records
Find

Figure 40

2

- Click Quick Print on the Customize Quick Access Toolbar menu to add the Quick Print button to the Quick Access Toolbar (Figure 41).

Q&A How would I remove a button from the Quick Access Toolbar?

You would right-click the button you want to remove and then click Remove from Quick Access Toolbar on the shortcut menu. If you want your screens to match the screens in the remaining chapters in this book, you would remove the Quick Print button from the Quick Access Toolbar.

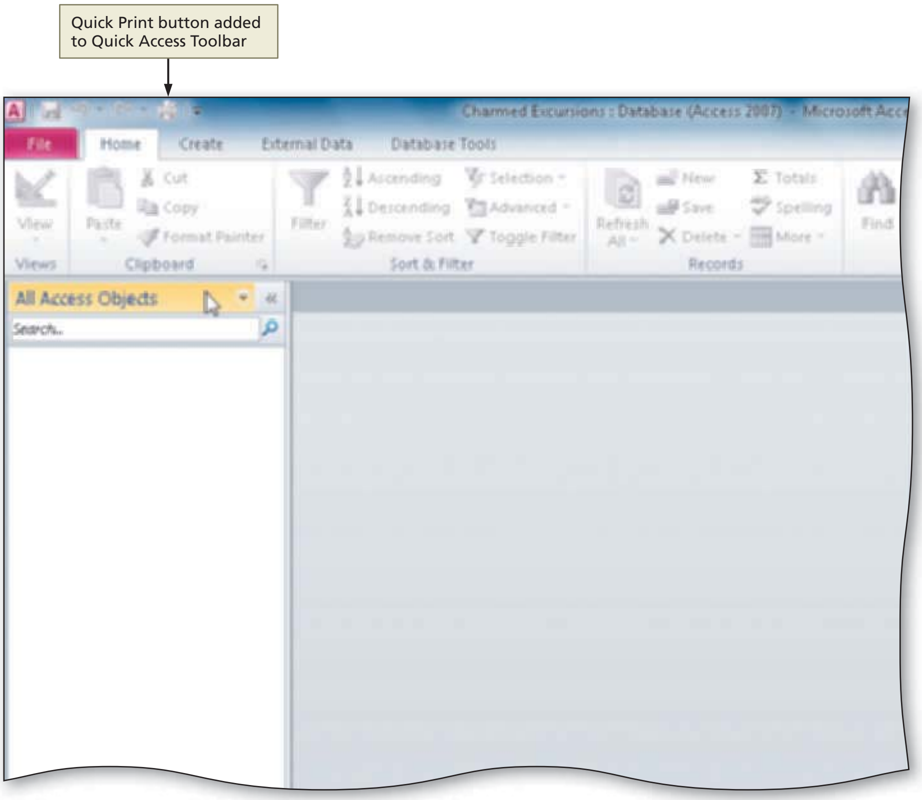

Quick Print button added to Quick Access Toolbar
Charmed Excursions : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Acc
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Views
Clipboard
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Sort & Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Records
Find
All Access Objects
Search...

Figure 41

3

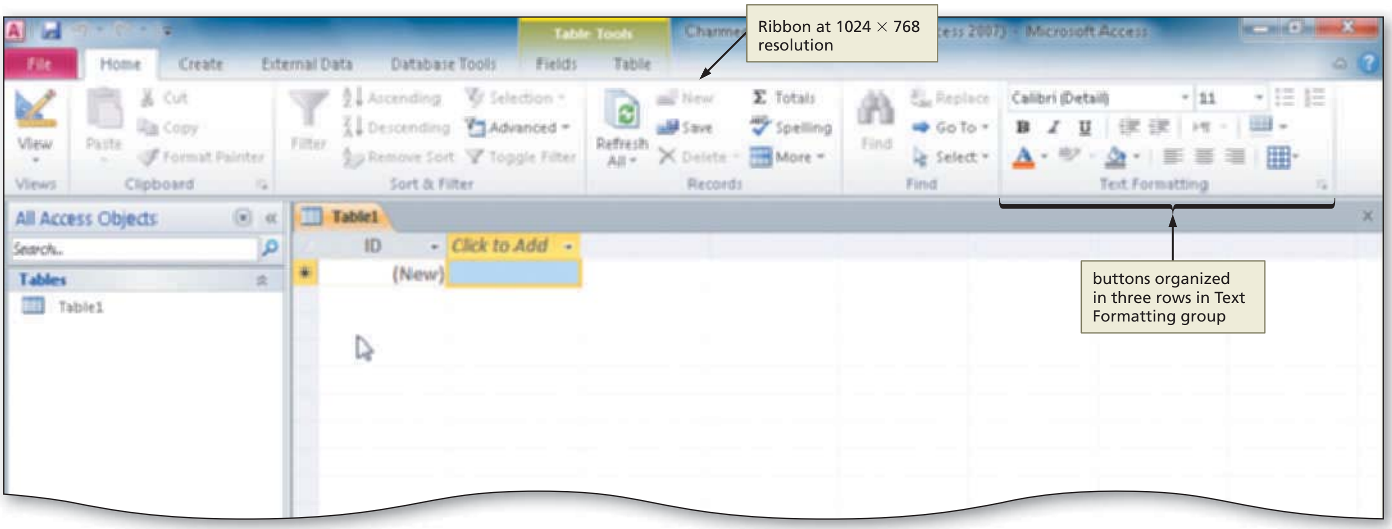
- Click the Customize Quick Access Toolbar button to display the Customize Quick Access Toolbar menu, and then click Quick Print on the menu to remove the Quick Print button from the Quick Access Toolbar.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Screen Resolution

Screen resolution indicates the number of pixels (dots) that the computer uses to display the letters, numbers, graphics, and background you see on the screen. When you increase the screen resolution, Windows displays more information on the screen, but the information decreases in size. The reverse also is true; as you decrease the screen resolution, Windows displays less information on the screen, but the information increases in size.

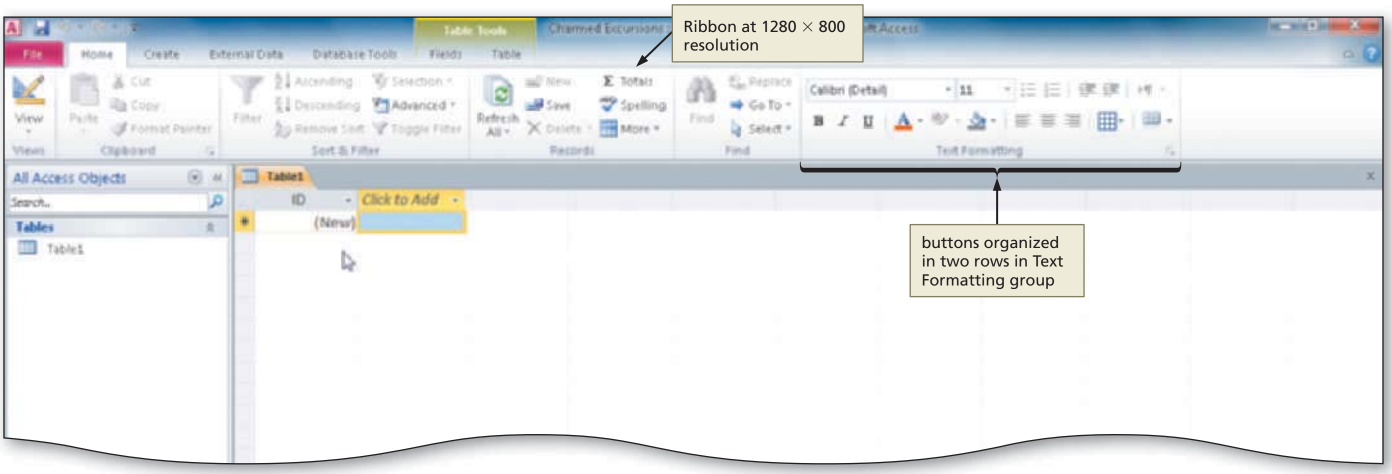
Screen resolution usually is stated as the product of two numbers, such as 1024 × 768 (pronounced "ten twenty-four by seven sixty-eight"). A 1024 × 768 screen resolution results in a display of 1,024 distinct pixels on each of 768 lines, or about 786,432 pixels. Changing the screen resolution affects how the Ribbon appears in Office programs. Figure 42, for example, shows the Access Ribbon at screen resolutions of 1024 × 768 and 1280 × 800. All of the same commands are available regardless of screen resolution. Access, however, makes changes to the groups and the buttons within the groups to accommodate the various screen resolutions. The result is that certain commands may need to be accessed differently depending on the resolution chosen. A command that is visible on the Ribbon and available by clicking a button at one resolution may not be visible and may need to be accessed using its Dialog Box Launcher at a different resolution.



Ribbon at 1024 × 768 resolution

buttons organized in three rows in Text Formatting group

(a) Ribbon at Resolution of 1024 x 768



Ribbon at 1280 × 800 resolution

buttons organized in two rows in Text Formatting group

(b) Ribbon at Resolution of 1280 x 800

Figure 42

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Comparing the two Ribbons in Figure 42, notice the changes in content and layout of the groups and galleries. In some cases, the content of a group is the same in each resolution, but the layout of the group differs. For example, the same gallery and buttons appear in the Text Formatting groups in the two resolutions, but the layouts differ. In other cases, the content and layout are the same across the resolution, but the level of detail differs with the resolution.

To Change the Screen Resolution

If you are using a computer to step through the chapters in this book and you want your screen to match the figures, you may need to change your screen's resolution. The figures in this book use a screen resolution of 1024 × 768. The following steps change the screen resolution to 1024 × 768. Your computer already may be set to 1024 × 768 or some other resolution. Keep in mind that many computer labs prevent users from changing the screen resolution; in that case, read the following steps for illustration purposes.

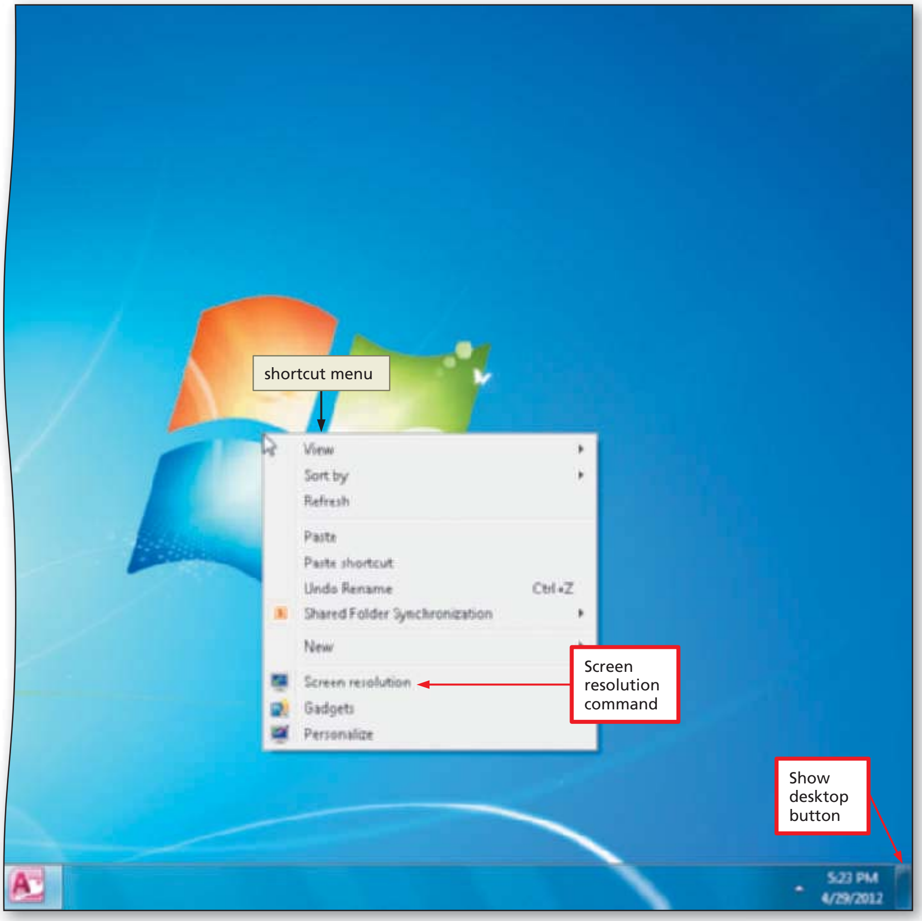
1

- Click the Show desktop button on the taskbar to display the Windows 7 desktop.
- Right-click an empty area on the Windows 7 desktop to display a shortcut menu that displays a list of commands related to the desktop (Figure 43).

Q&A

Why does my shortcut menu display different commands?

Depending on your computer's hardware and configuration, different commands might appear on the shortcut menu.


shortcut menu

Screen resolution command

Show desktop button

Figure 43

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2

- Click Screen resolution on the shortcut menu to open the Screen Resolution window (Figure 44).

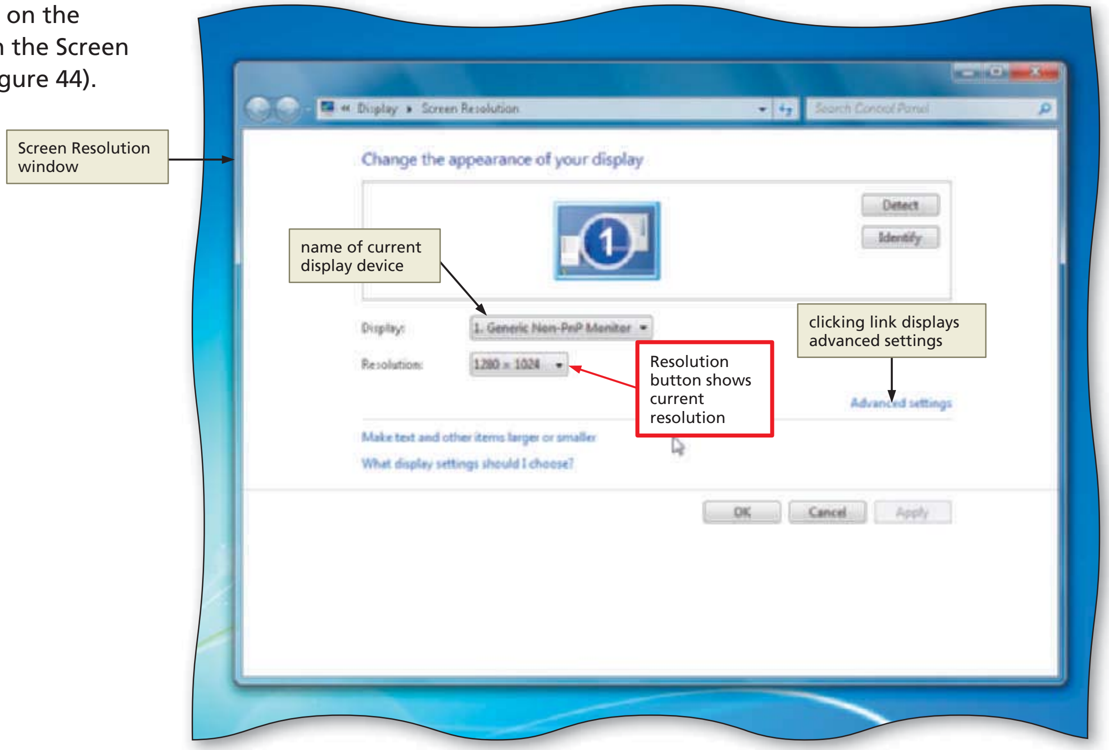

Screen Resolution window
Display ▸ Screen Resolution
Search Control Panel
Change the appearance of your display
Detect
Identify
name of current display device
Display: 1. Generic Non-PnP Monitor
Resolution: 1280 × 1024
Resolution button shows current resolution
clicking link displays advanced settings
Advanced settings
Make text and other items larger or smaller
What display settings should I choose?
OK
Cancel
Apply

Figure 44

3

- Click the Resolution button in the Screen Resolution window to display the resolution slider.

Q&A

What is a slider?

A **slider** is an object that allows users to choose from multiple predetermined options. In most cases, these options represent some type of numeric value. In most cases, one end of the slider (usually the left or bottom) represents the lowest of available values, and the opposite end (usually the right or top) represents the highest available value.

4

- If necessary, drag the resolution slider until the desired screen resolution (in this case, 1024 × 768) is selected (Figure 45).

Q&A

What if my computer does not support the 1024 × 768 resolution?

Some computers do not support the 1024 × 768 resolution. In this case, select a resolution that is close to the 1024 × 768 resolution.

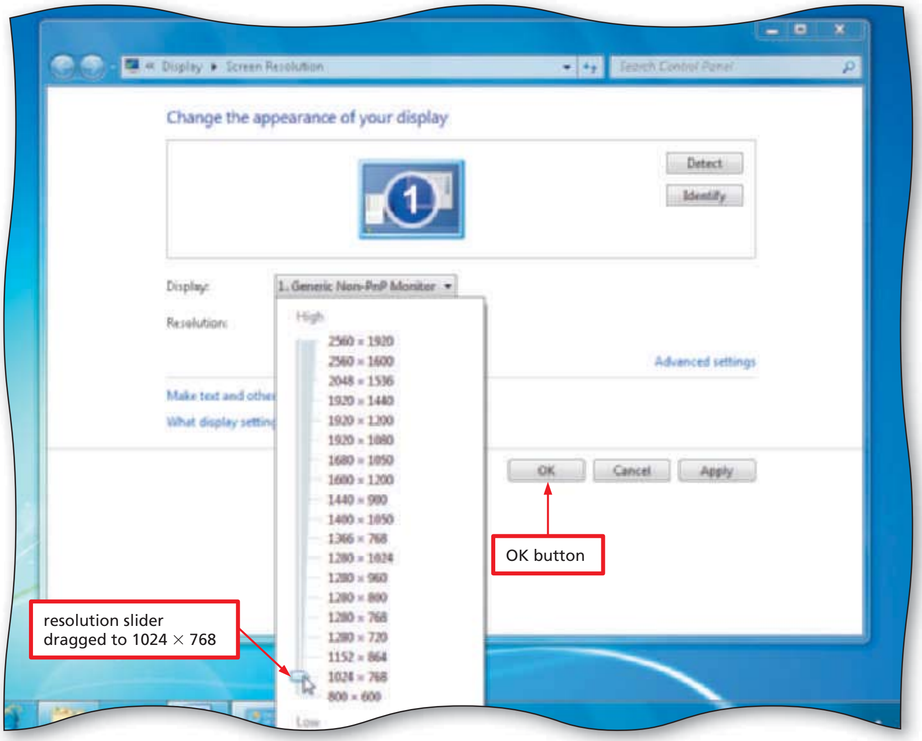

Display ▸ Screen Resolution
Search Control Panel
Change the appearance of your display
Detect
Identify
Display: 1. Generic Non-PnP Monitor
Resolution:
High
2560 × 1920
2560 × 1600
2048 × 1536
1920 × 1440
1920 × 1200
1920 × 1080
1680 × 1050
1600 × 1200
1440 × 900
1400 × 1050
1366 × 768
1280 × 1024
1280 × 960
1280 × 800
1280 × 768
1280 × 720
1152 × 864
1024 × 768
800 × 600
Low
Advanced settings
Make text and othe
What display setting
OK
Cancel
Apply
OK button
resolution slider dragged to 1024 × 768

Figure 45

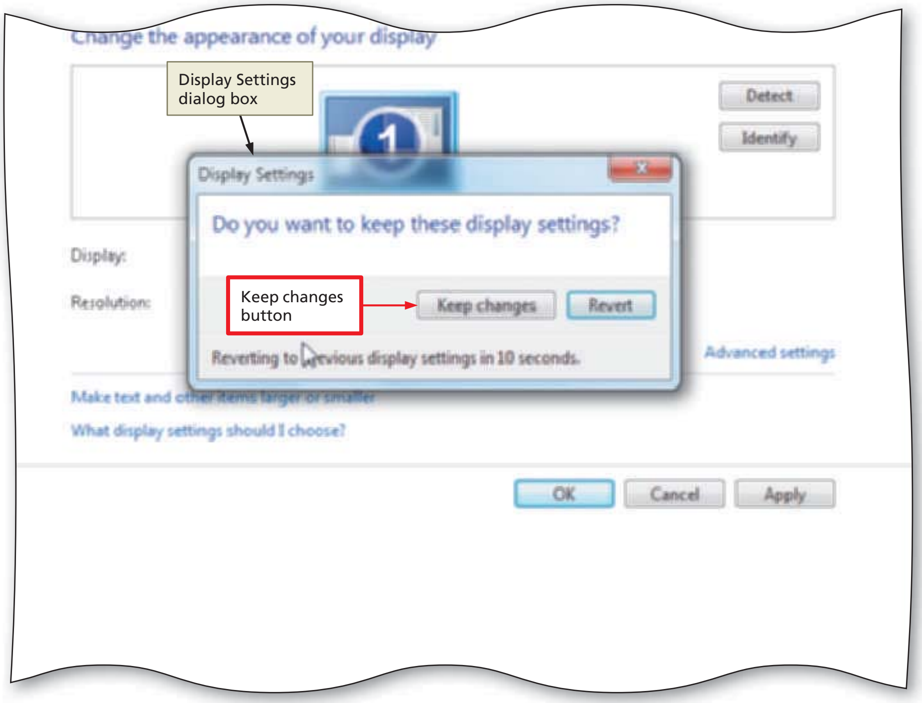
5

- Click an empty area of the Screen Resolution window to close the resolution slider.
- Click the OK button to change the screen resolution and display the Display Settings dialog box (Figure 46).
- Click the Keep changes button (Display Settings dialog box) to accept the new screen resolution.

Q&A

Why does a message display stating that the image quality can be improved?

Some computer monitors are designed to display contents better at a certain screen resolution, sometimes referred to as an optimal resolution.


Change the appearance of your display
Display Settings dialog box
Detect
Identify
1
Display Settings
Display:
Resolution:
Keep changes button
Keep changes
Revert
Advanced settings
Make text and other items larger or smaller
What display settings should I choose?
OK
Cancel
Apply

Do you want to keep these display settings?

Reverting to previous display settings in 10 seconds.

Figure 46

Break Point: If you wish to take a break, this is a good place to do so. To resume at a later time, continue to follow the steps from this location forward.

Additional Common Features of Office Programs

The previous section used Access to illustrate common features of Office and some basic elements unique to Access. The following sections continue to use Access to present additional common features of Office.

In the following pages, you will learn how to do the following:

1. Start an Office program (Access) using the search box.
2. Open a database in an Office program (Access).
3. Close the database.
4. Reopen the database just closed.
5. Create a blank database from Windows Explorer and then open the file.
6. Save a database with a new file name.

To Start a Program Using the Search Box

The next steps, which assume Windows 7 is running, use the search box to start Access based on a typical installation; however, you would follow similar steps to start any program. You may need to ask your instructor how to start programs for your computer.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

1

- Click the Start button on the Windows 7 taskbar to display the Start menu.

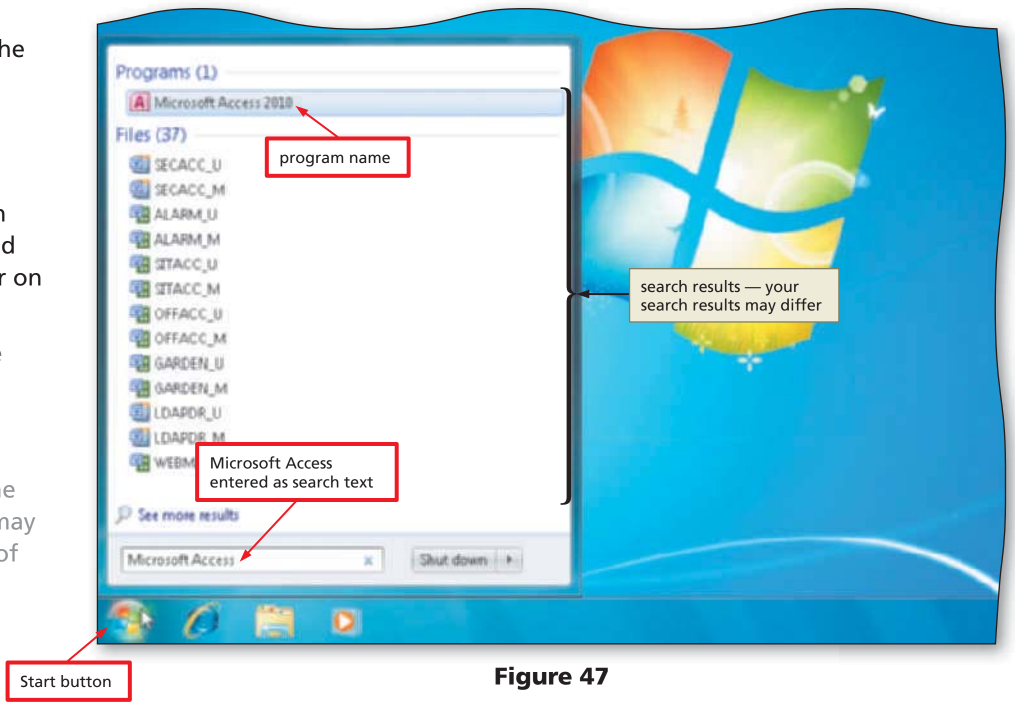
2

- Type `Microsoft Access` as the search text in the 'Search programs and files' text box and watch the search results appear on the Start menu (Figure 47).

Q&A

Do I need to type the complete program name or correct capitalization?

No, just enough of it for the program name to appear on the Start menu. For example, you may be able to type Access instead of Microsoft Access or access.


Programs (1)
Microsoft Access 2010
Files (37)
SECACC_U
SECACC_M
ALARM_U
ALARM_M
STTACC_U
STTACC_M
OFFACC_U
OFFACC_M
GARDEN_U
GARDEN_M
LDAPDR_U
LDAPDR_M
WEBM
See more results
Microsoft Access
Shut down

program name

search results — your search results may differ

Microsoft Access entered as search text

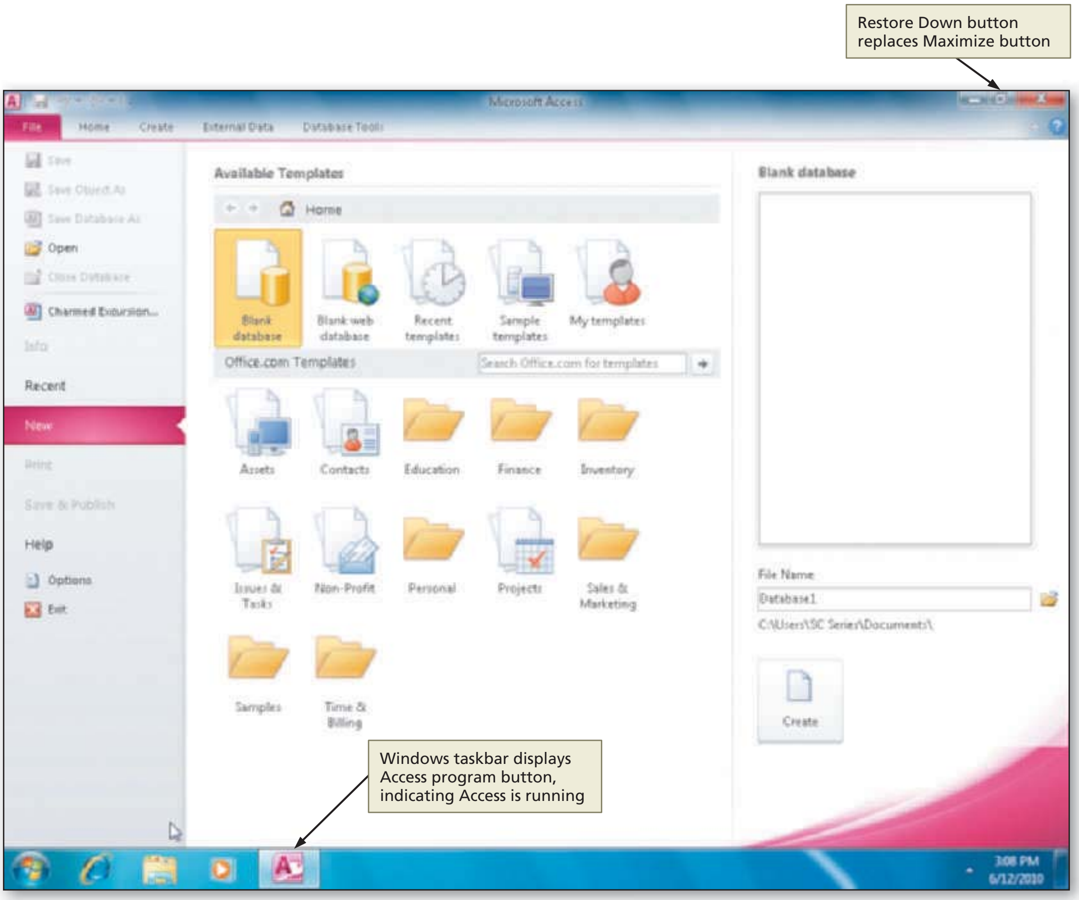
Start button

Figure 47

3

- Click the program name, Microsoft Access 2010 in this case, in the search results on the Start menu.

- If the program window is not maximized, click the Maximize button on its title bar to maximize the window (Figure 48).


Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Save
Save Object As
Save Database As
Open
Close Database
Charmed Excursion...
Info
Recent
New
Print
Save & Publish
Help
Options
Exit
Available Templates
Home
Blank database
Blank web database
Recent templates
Sample templates
My templates
Office.com Templates
Search Office.com for templates
Assets
Contacts
Education
Finance
Inventory
Issues & Tasks
Non-Profit
Personal
Projects
Sales & Marketing
Samples
Time & Billing
Blank database
File Name
Database1
C:\Users\SC Series\Documents\
Create
3:08 PM
6/12/2010

Restore Down button replaces Maximize button

Windows taskbar displays Access program button, indicating Access is running

Figure 48

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Open a Recent Office File Using the Backstage View

You sometimes need to open a file that you recently modified. You may have more changes to make such as adding more content or correcting errors. The Backstage view allows you to access recent files easily. The following steps reopen the Charmed Excursions database.

1

- If necessary, click File on the Ribbon to open the Backstage view.
- Click the Recent tab in the Backstage view to display the Recent Databases Gallery (Figure 49).

2

- Click the desired file name in the Recent Databases Gallery, Charmed Excursions in this case, to open the database.

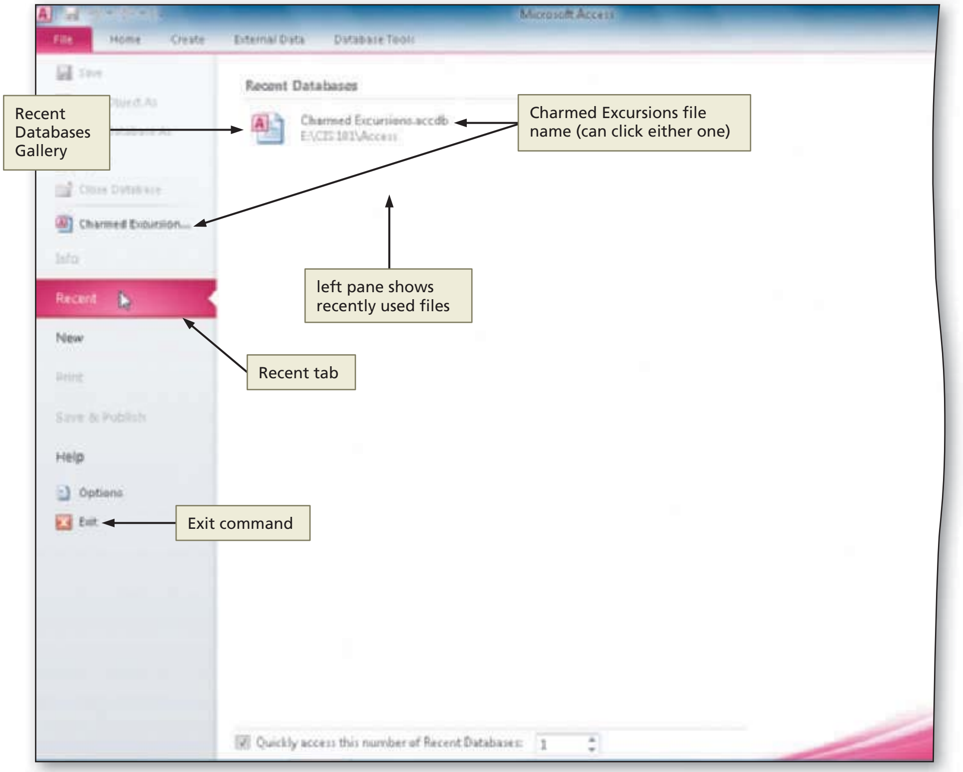

Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Save
Close Database
Charmed Excursion...
Info
Recent
New
Print
Save & Publish
Help
Options
Exit
Recent Databases
Charmed Excursions.accdb
E:\CIS 101\Access
Quickly access this number of Recent Databases: 1
Recent Databases Gallery
Charmed Excursions file name (can click either one)
left pane shows recently used files
Recent tab
Exit command

Figure 49

Q&A Can I use the Backstage view to open a recent file in other Office programs, such as Word and Excel?

Yes, as long as the file name appears in the list of recent files in the Recent gallery.

Q&A I see that there are two Charmed Excursions on the screen, one that is with the tabs and the other in the Recent Databases. Does it matter which one I click?

No. You could click either one. The advantage to the Recent Databases pane is that it can contain more databases.

Other Ways

1. Click Start button, point to program name, click file name on submenu
2. Click File on Ribbon, click Open in Backstage view, navigate to file (Open dialog box), click Open button

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Create a New Blank Database from Windows Explorer

Windows Explorer provides a means to create a blank database without ever starting an Office program. The following steps use Windows Explorer to create a blank database.

1

- Click the Windows Explorer program button on the taskbar to make the folder window the active window in Windows Explorer.
- If necessary, navigate to the desired location for the new file (in this case, the Access folder in the CIS 101 folder [or your class folder] on the USB flash drive).
- With the Access folder selected, right-click an open area in the right pane to display a shortcut menu.
- Point to New on the shortcut menu to display the New submenu (Figure 50).

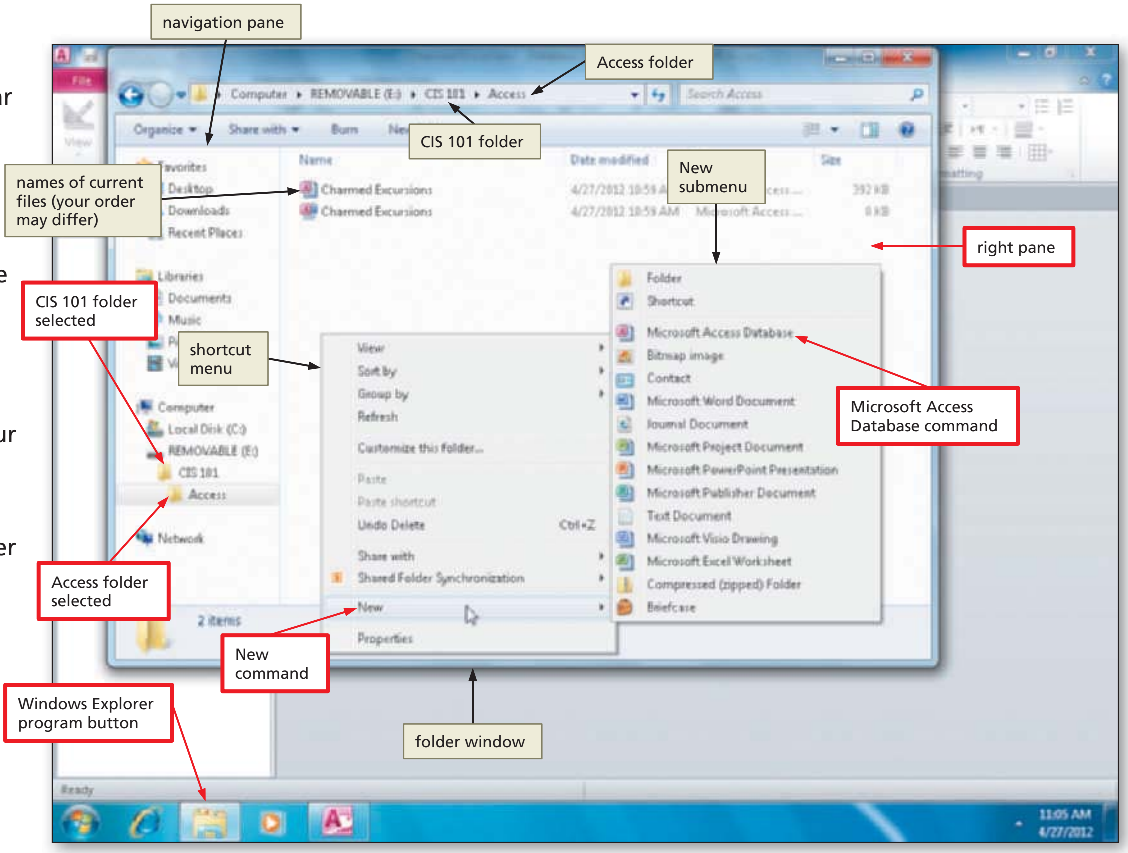

navigation pane
Access folder
CIS 101 folder
New submenu
names of current files (your order may differ)
right pane
CIS 101 folder selected
shortcut menu
Microsoft Access Database command
Access folder selected
New command
Windows Explorer program button
folder window

Figure 50

2

- Click Microsoft Access Database on the New submenu to display an icon and text box for a new file in the current folder window (Figure 51).

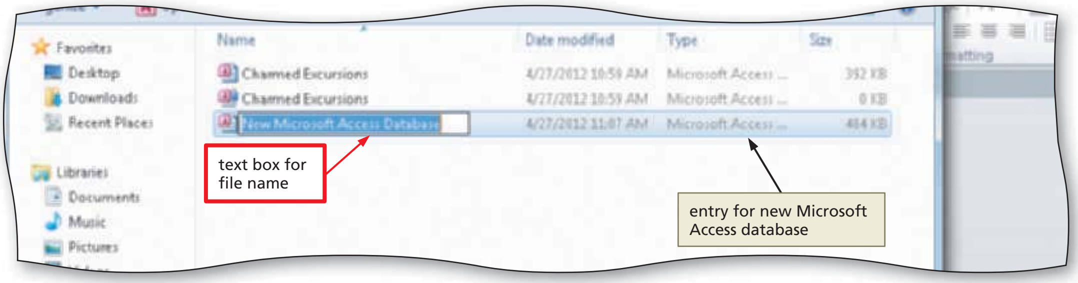

text box for file name
entry for new Microsoft Access database

Figure 51

3

- Type `Charmed Excursions Northern` in the text box and then press the ENTER key to assign a name to the new file in the current folder (Figure 52).

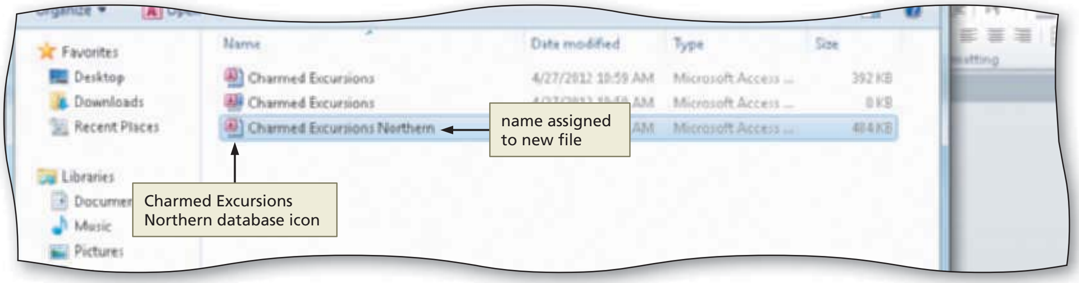

name assigned to new file
Charmed Excursions Northern database icon

Figure 52

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Start a Program from Windows Explorer and Open a File

Previously, you learned how to start an Office program (Access) using the Start menu and the search box. Another way start an Office program is to open an existing file from Windows Explorer, which causes the program in which the file was created to start and then open the selected file. The following steps, which assume Windows 7 is running, use Windows Explorer to start Access based on a typical installation. You may need to ask your instructor how to start Access for your computer.

1

- If necessary, display the file to open in the folder window in Windows Explorer (shown in Figure 52).
- Right-click the file icon or file name (Charmed Excursions Northern, in this case) to display a shortcut menu (Figure 53).

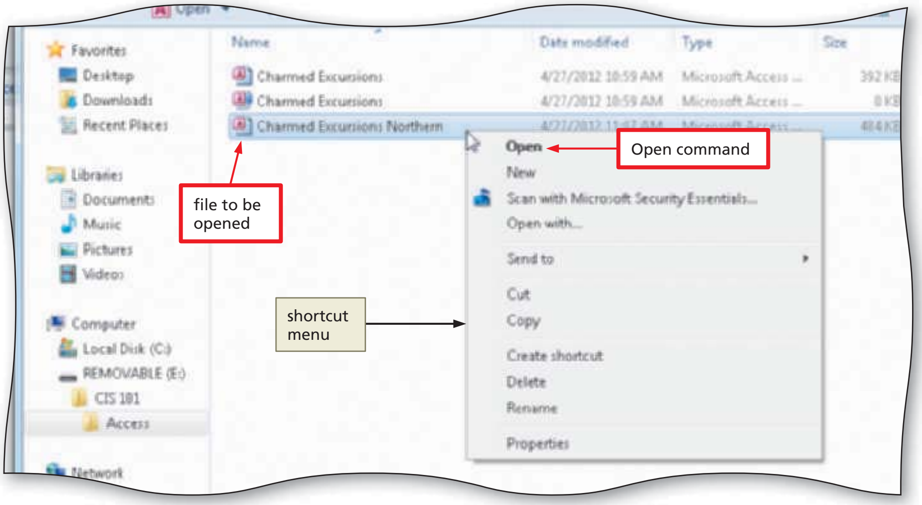

Open
Favorites
Desktop
Downloads
Recent Places
Libraries
Documents
Music
Pictures
Videos
Computer
Local Disk (C:)
REMOVABLE (E:)
CIS 101
Access
Network
Name
Date modified
Type
Size
Charmed Excursions
Charmed Excursions
Charmed Excursions Northern
4/27/2012 10:59 AM
4/27/2012 10:59 AM
Microsoft Access ...
Microsoft Access ...
392 KB
0 KB
404 KB
file to be opened
shortcut menu
Open command
Open
New
Scan with Microsoft Security Essentials...
Open with...
Send to
Cut
Copy
Create shortcut
Delete
Rename
Properties

Figure 53

2

- Click Open on the shortcut menu to open the selected file in the program used to create the file, Microsoft Access in this case (Figure 54).
- If the program window is not maximized, click the Maximize button on the title bar to maximize the window.

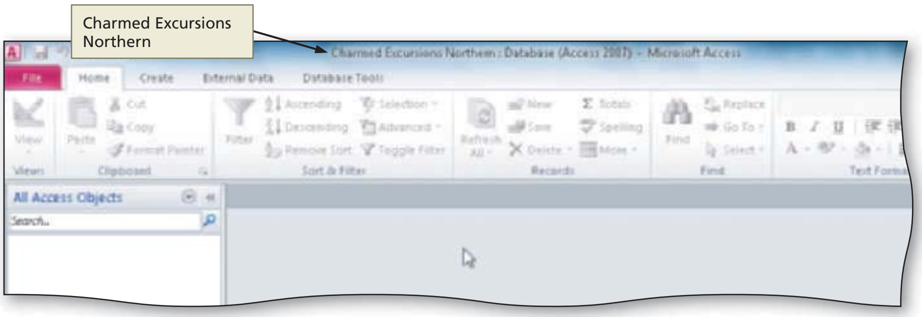

Charmed Excursions Northern
Charmed Excursions Northern : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Find
Text Formatting
All Access Objects
Search...

Figure 54

To Use Save Database As to Change the Name of a File

You might want to save a file with a different name and even to a different location. For example, you might start a homework assignment with a data file and then save it with a final file name for submitting to your instructor, saving it to a location designated by your instructor. The following steps save a file with a different file name.

1 With your USB flash drive connected to one of the computer's USB ports, click File on the Ribbon to open the Backstage view.

2 Click Save Database As in the Backstage view to display the Save As dialog box.

3 Type **`Charmed Excursions Western`** in the File name text box (Save As dialog box) to change the file name. Do not press the ENTER key after typing the file name because you do not want to close the dialog box at this time.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

4. If necessary, navigate to the desired save location (the Access folder in the CIS 101 folder [or your class folder] on the USB flash drive, in this case).
5. Click the Save button (Save As dialog box) to save the file in the selected folder on the selected drive with the new file name.

To Quit an Office Program

You are finished using Access. The following steps quit Access. You would use similar steps to quit other Office programs.

1. Click the Close button on the right side of the title bar to quit Access (you might need to do this twice).
2. If a dialog box appears, click the Save button to save any changes made to the object since the last save.

Moving, Renaming, and Deleting Files

Earlier in this chapter, you learned how to organize files in folders, which is part of a process known as **file management**. The following sections cover additional file management topics including renaming, moving, and deleting files.

To Rename a File

In some circumstances, you may want to change the name of, or rename, a file or a folder. For example, you may want to distinguish a file in one folder or drive from a copy of a similar file, or you may decide to rename a file to better identify its contents. The Access folder shown in Figure 53 contains the Access database, Charmed Excursions. The following steps change the name of the Charmed Excursions database in the Access folder to Charmed Excursions Southern.

1

- If necessary, click the Windows Explorer program button on the taskbar to display the folder window in Windows Explorer.
- If necessary, navigate to the location of the file to be renamed (in this case, the Access folder in the CIS 101 [or your class folder] folder on the USB flash drive) to display the file(s) it contains in the right pane.
- Right-click the Charmed Excursions icon or file name in the right pane to select the Charmed Excursions database and display a shortcut menu that presents a list of commands related to files (Figure 55).

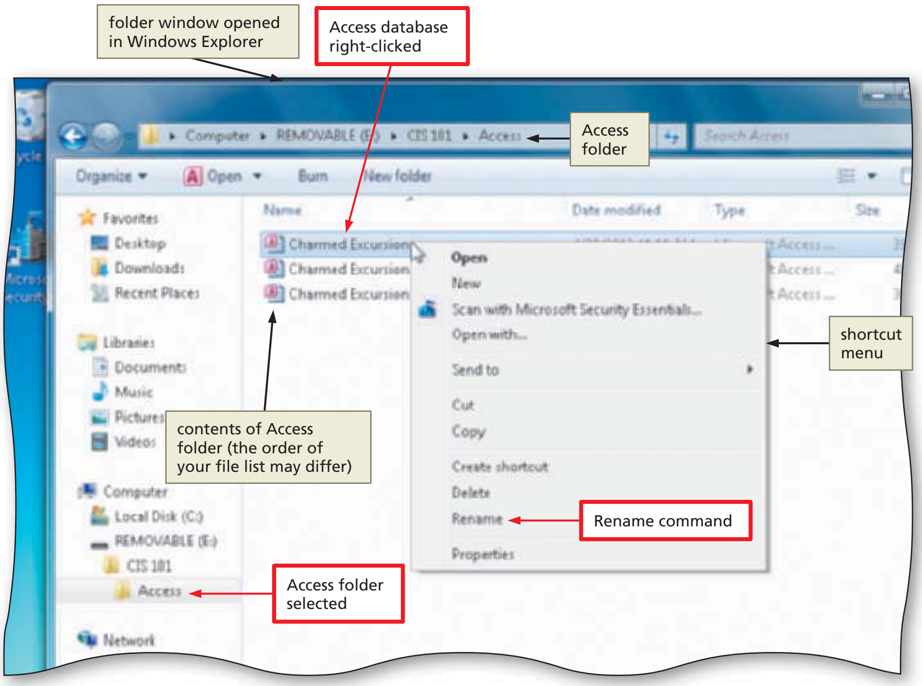
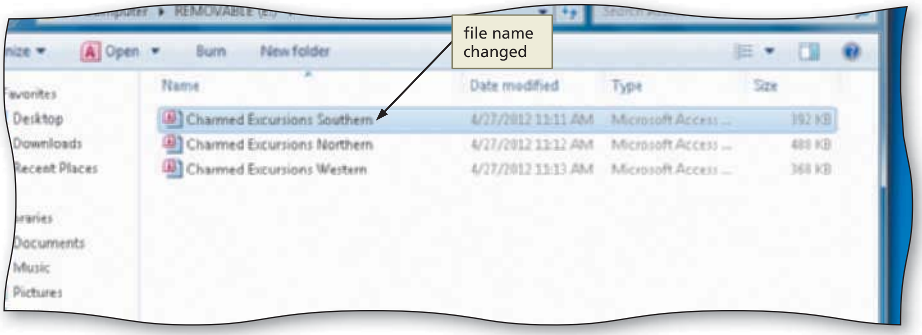

folder window opened in Windows Explorer
Access database right-clicked
Access folder
shortcut menu
contents of Access folder (the order of your file list may differ)
Rename command
Access folder selected
Computer ▸ REMOVABLE (E:) ▸ CIS 101 ▸ Access
Organize
Open
Burn
New folder
Name
Date modified
Type
Size
Charmed Excursions
Open
New
Scan with Microsoft Security Essentials...
Open with...
Send to
Cut
Copy
Create shortcut
Delete
Rename
Properties
Favorites
Desktop
Downloads
Recent Places
Libraries
Documents
Music
Pictures
Videos
Computer
Local Disk (C:)
REMOVABLE (E:)
CIS 101
Access
Network

Figure 55

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2

- Click Rename on the shortcut menu to place the current file name in a text box.
- Type `Charmed Excursions Southern` in the text box and then press the ENTER key (Figure 56).


Open
Burn
New folder
Name
Date modified
Type
Size
Favorites
Desktop
Downloads
Recent Places
Libraries
Documents
Music
Pictures
Charmed Excursions Southern
Charmed Excursions Northern
Charmed Excursions Western
4/27/2012 11:11 AM
4/27/2012 11:12 AM
4/27/2012 11:13 AM
Microsoft Access ...
392 KB
488 KB
368 KB

file name changed

Figure 56

Q&A Are any risks involved in renaming files that are located on a hard disk?

If you inadvertently rename a file that is associated with certain programs, the programs may not be able to find the file and, therefore, may not execute properly. Always use caution when renaming files.

Q&A Can I rename a file when it is open?

No, a file must be closed to change the file name.

Other Ways

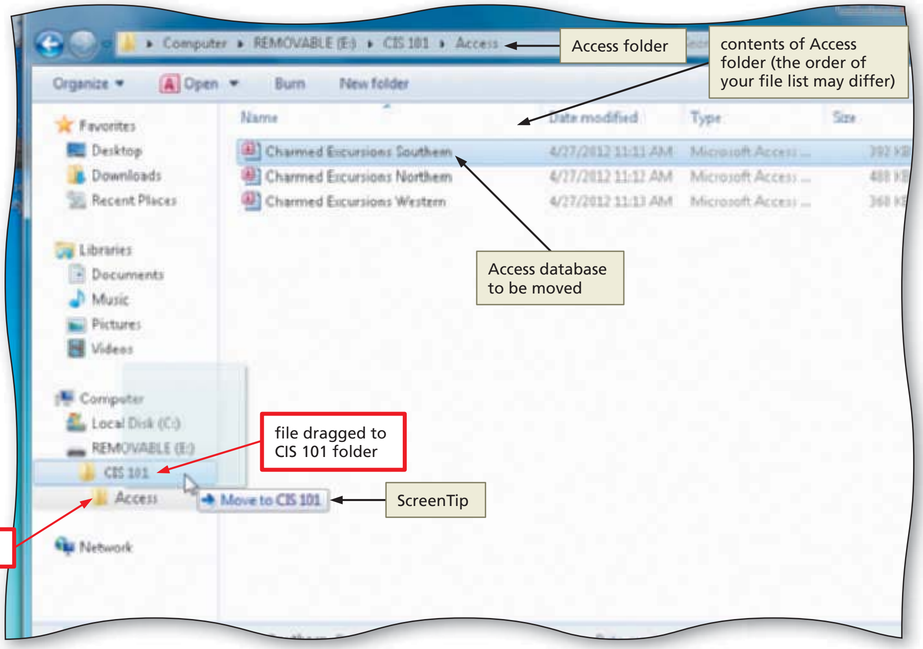
1. Select file, press F2, type new file name, press ENTER

To Move a File

At some time, you may want to move a file from one folder, called the source folder, to another, called the destination. When you move a file, it no longer appears in the original folder. If the destination and the source folders are on the same disk drive, you can move a file by dragging it. If the folders are on different disk drives, then you will need to right-drag the file. The following step moves the Charmed Excursions Southern from the Access folder to the CIS 101 folder.

1

- In Windows Explorer, if necessary, navigate to the location of the file to be moved (in this case, the Access folder in the CIS 101 folder [or your class folder] on the USB flash drive).
- If necessary, click the Access folder in the navigation pane to display the files it contains in the right pane.
- Drag the Charmed Excursions Southern in the right pane to the CIS 101 folder in the navigation pane and notice the ScreenTip as you drag the mouse (Figure 57).


Computer ▸ REMOVABLE (E:) ▸ CIS 101 ▸ Access
Organize
Open
Burn
New folder
Name
Date modified
Type
Size
Favorites
Desktop
Downloads
Recent Places
Libraries
Documents
Music
Pictures
Videos
Computer
Local Disk (C:)
REMOVABLE (E:)
CIS 101
Access
Network
Charmed Excursions Southern
Charmed Excursions Northern
Charmed Excursions Western
4/27/2012 11:11 AM
4/27/2012 11:12 AM
4/27/2012 11:13 AM
Microsoft Access ...
Move to CIS 101

Access folder

contents of Access folder (the order of your file list may differ)

Access database to be moved

file dragged to CIS 101 folder

ScreenTip

Access folder

Figure 57

Other Ways

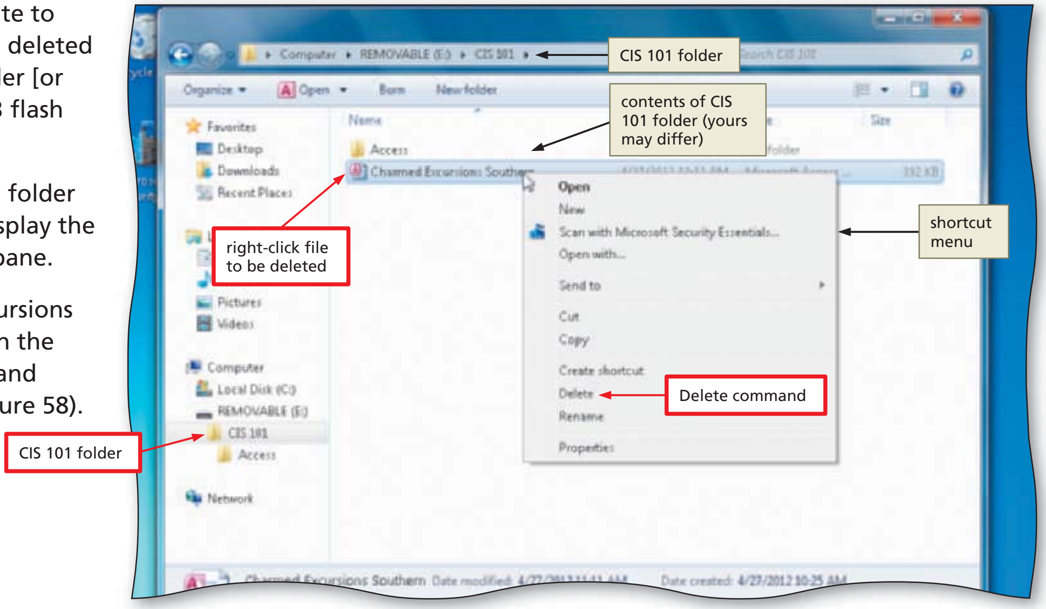
1. Right-click file, drag file to destination folder, click Move here
2. Right-click file to copy, click Cut on shortcut menu, right-click destination folder, click Paste on shortcut menu
3. Select file to copy, press CTRL+X, select destination folder, press CTRL+V

To Delete a File

A final task you may want to perform is to delete a file. Exercise extreme caution when deleting a file or files. When you delete a file from a hard disk, the deleted file is stored in the Recycle Bin where you can recover it until you empty the Recycle Bin. If you delete a file from removable media, such as a USB flash drive, the file is deleted permanently. The next steps delete the Charmed Excursions Southern database from the CIS 101 folder.

1

- In Windows Explorer, navigate to the location of the file to be deleted (in this case, the CIS 101 folder [or your class folder] on the USB flash drive).
- If necessary, click the CIS 101 folder in the navigation pane to display the files it contains in the right pane.
- Right-click the Charmed Excursions Southern icon or file name in the right pane to select the file and display a shortcut menu (Figure 58).


Computer ▸ REMOVABLE (E:) ▸ CIS 101 ▸
Organize
Open
Burn
New folder
Favorites
Desktop
Downloads
Recent Places
Pictures
Videos
Computer
Local Disk (C:)
REMOVABLE (E:)
CIS 101
Access
Network
Name
Size
Access
Charmed Excursions Southern
Open
New
Scan with Microsoft Security Essentials...
Open with...
Send to
Cut
Copy
Create shortcut
Delete
Rename
Properties
Charmed Excursions Southern Date modified: 4/27/2012 11:11 AM Date created: 4/27/2012 10:25 AM

CIS 101 folder

contents of CIS 101 folder (yours may differ)

shortcut menu

right-click file to be deleted

Delete command

CIS 101 folder

Figure 58

2

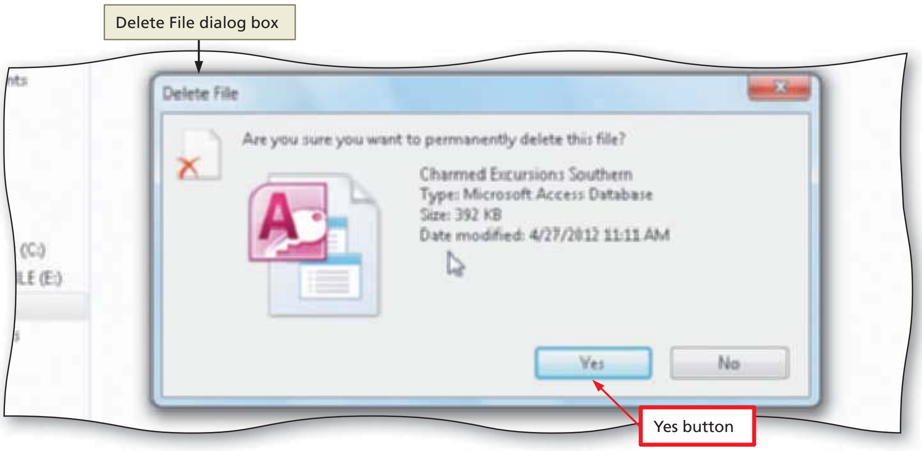
- Click Delete on the shortcut menu to display the Delete File dialog box (Figure 59).
- Click the Yes button (Delete File dialog box) to delete the selected file.

Q&A

Can I use this same technique to delete a folder?

Yes. Right-click the folder and then click Delete on the shortcut menu. When you delete a folder, all of the files and folders contained in the folder you are deleting, together with any files and folders on lower hierarchical levels, are deleted as well.

Delete File dialog box


Delete File
Yes
No

Are you sure you want to permanently delete this file?

Charmed Excursions Southern
Type: Microsoft Access Database
Size: 392 KB
Date modified: 4/27/2012 11:11 AM

Yes button

Figure 59

Other Ways

1. Select icon, press DELETE

Microsoft Office and Windows Help

At any time while you are using one of the Microsoft Office 2010 programs, such as Access, you can use Office Help to display information about all topics associated with the program. This section illustrates the use of Access Help. Help in other Office 2010 programs operates in a similar fashion.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

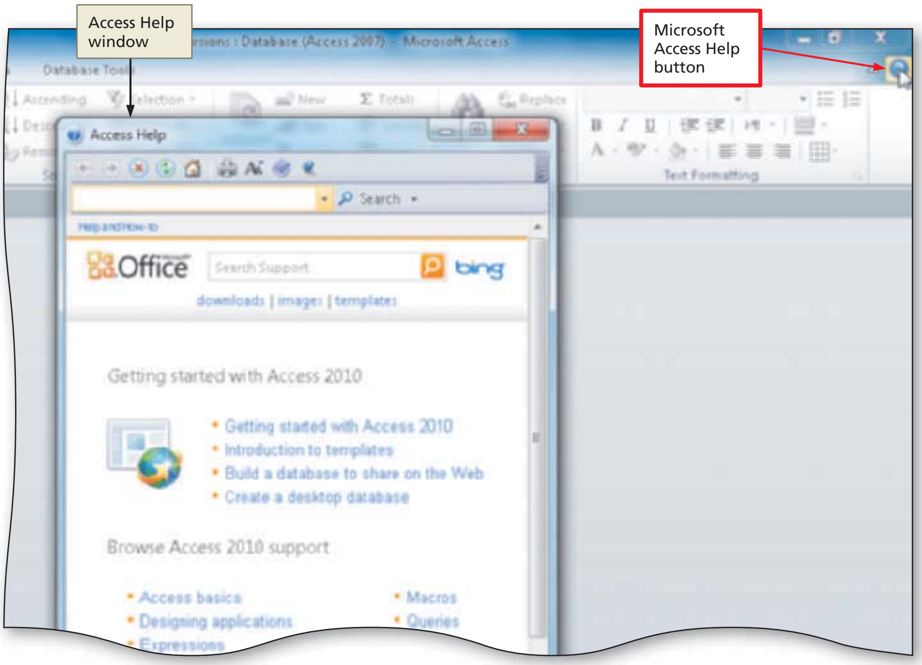
In Office 2010, Help is presented in a window that has Web-browser-style navigation buttons. Each Office 2010 program has its own Help home page, which is the starting Help page that is displayed in the Help window. If your computer is connected to the Internet, the contents of the Help page reflect both the local Help files installed on the computer and material from Microsoft's Web site.

To Open the Help Window in an Office Program

The following step opens the Access Help window. The step to open a Help window in other Office programs is similar.

1

- Start Access.
- Click the Microsoft Access Help button near the upper-right corner of the program window to open the Access Help window (Figure 60).


Access Help
Search
Office
Search Support
bing
downloads | images | templates
Getting started with Access 2010
Getting started with Access 2010
Introduction to templates
Build a database to share on the Web
Create a desktop database
Browse Access 2010 support
Access basics
Designing applications
Expressions
Macros
Queries
Text Formatting

Access Help window

Microsoft Access Help button

Figure 60

Other Ways

1. Press F1

Moving and Resizing Windows

Up to this point, this chapter has used minimized and maximized windows. At times, however, it is useful, or even necessary, to have more than one window open and visible on the screen at the same time. You can resize and move these open windows so that you can view different areas of and elements in the window. In the case of the Help window, for example, it could be covering document text in the Access window that you need to see.

To Move a Window by Dragging

You can move any open window that is not maximized to another location on the desktop by dragging the title bar of the window. The step on the next page drags the Access Help window to the top left of the desktop.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

1

- Drag the window title bar (the Access Help window title bar, in this case) so that the window moves to the top left of the desktop, as shown in Figure 61.

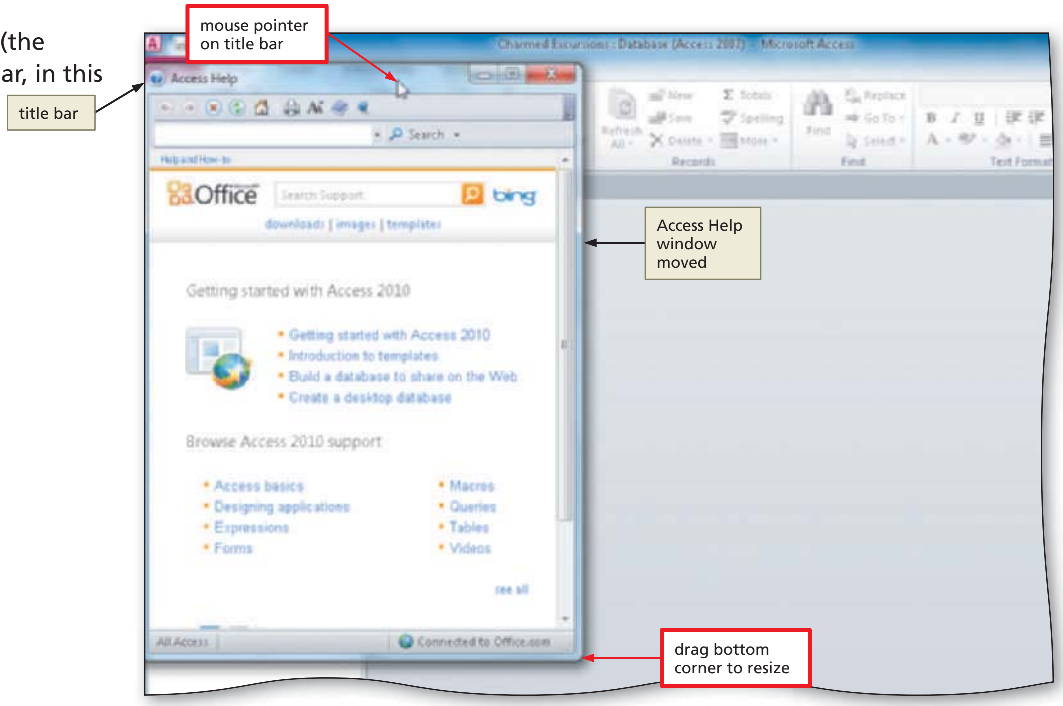

mouse pointer on title bar
title bar
Access Help window moved
drag bottom corner to resize
Charmed Excursions : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
Access Help
Search
Office
Search Support
bing
downloads | images | templates
Getting started with Access 2010
Getting started with Access 2010
Introduction to templates
Build a database to share on the Web
Create a desktop database
Browse Access 2010 support
Access basics
Designing applications
Expressions
Forms
Macros
Queries
Tables
Videos
see all
All Access
Connected to Office.com

Figure 61

Other Ways

1. Right-click title bar, click Move on shortcut menu, drag window

To Resize a Window by Dragging

Sometimes, information is not visible completely in a window. A method used to change the size of the window is to drag the window borders. The following step changes the size of the Access Help window by dragging its borders.

1

- Point to the lower-right corner of the window (the Access Help window, in this case) until the mouse pointer changes to a two-headed arrow.
- Drag the bottom border downward to display more of the active window (Figure 62).

Q&A Can I drag other borders on the window to enlarge or shrink the window?

Yes, you can drag the left, right, and top borders and any window corner to resize a window.

Q&A Will Windows 7 remember the new size of the window after I close it?

Yes. When you reopen the window, Windows 7 will display it at the same size it was when you closed it.

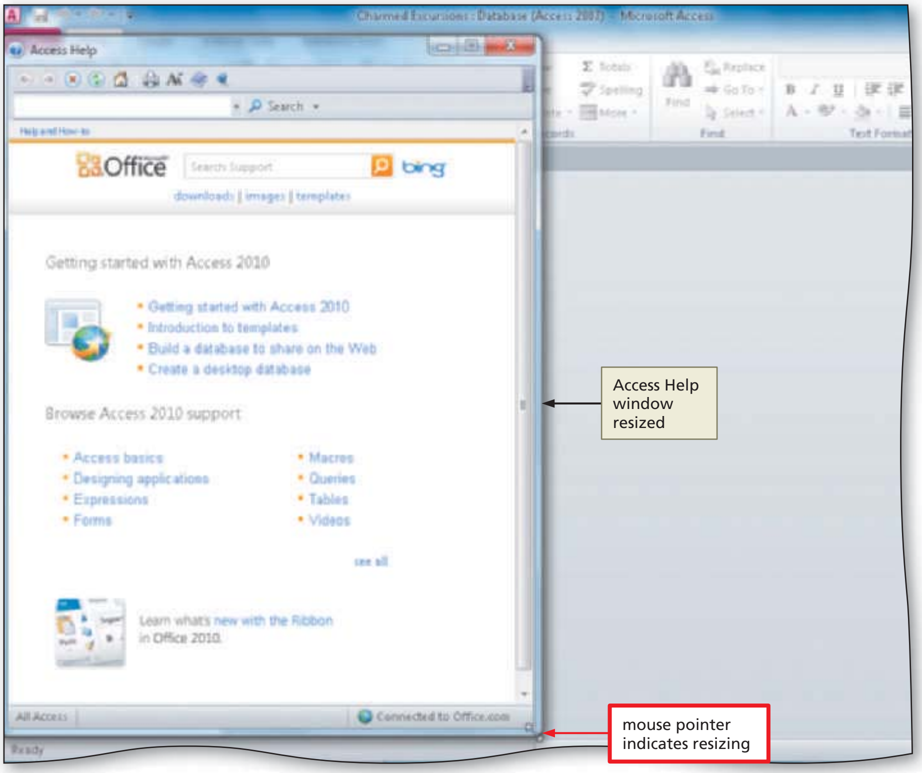

Access Help window resized
mouse pointer indicates resizing
Charmed Excursions : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
Access Help
Search
Office
Search Support
bing
downloads | images | templates
Getting started with Access 2010
Getting started with Access 2010
Introduction to templates
Build a database to share on the Web
Create a desktop database
Browse Access 2010 support
Access basics
Designing applications
Expressions
Forms
Macros
Queries
Tables
Videos
see all
Learn what's new with the Ribbon in Office 2010
All Access
Connected to Office.com
Ready

Figure 62

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Using Office Help

Once an Office program's Help window is open, several methods exist for navigating Help. You can search for help by using any of the three following methods from the Help window:

1. Enter search text in the 'Type words to search for' text box.
2. Click the links in the Help window.
3. Use the Table of Contents.

To Obtain Help Using the 'Type words to search for' Text Box

Assume for the following example that you want to know more about the Backstage view. The following steps use the 'Type words to search for' text box to obtain useful information about the Backstage view by entering the word, Backstage, as search text.

1

- Type `Backstage` in the 'Type words to search for' text box at the top of the Access Help window to enter the search text.
- Click the Search button arrow to display the Search menu (Figure 63).
- If it is not selected already, click All Access on the Search menu, so that Help performs the most complete search of the current program (Access, in this case). If All Access already is selected, click the Search button arrow again to close the Search menu.

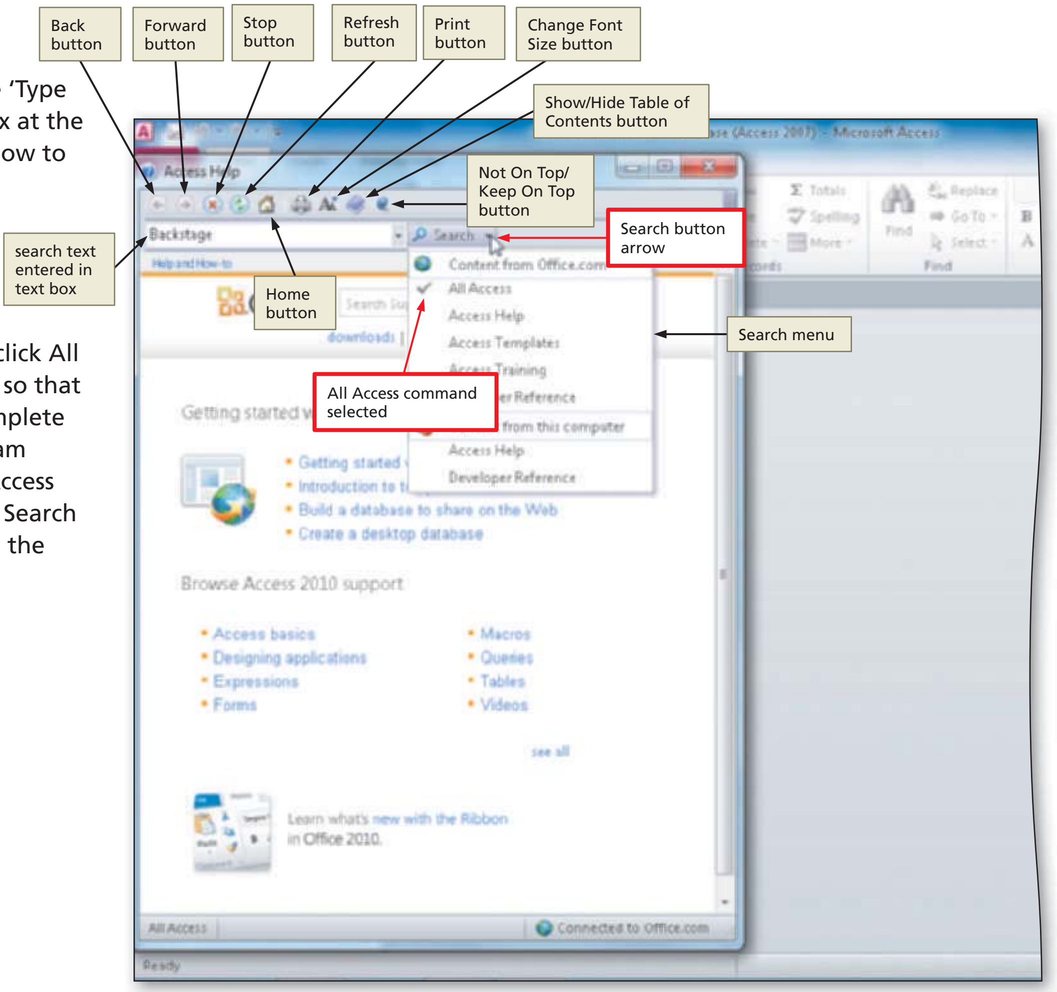

Back button
Forward button
Stop button
Refresh button
Print button
Change Font Size button
Show/Hide Table of Contents button
Not On Top/ Keep On Top button
Search button arrow
search text entered in text box
Home button
Search menu
All Access command selected
Access Help
Backstage
Search
Content from Office.com
All Access
Access Help
Access Templates
Access Training
Developer Reference
from this computer
Access Help
Developer Reference
Getting started
Browse Access 2010 support
Access basics
Designing applications
Expressions
Forms
Macros
Queries
Tables
Videos
see all
Learn what's new with the Ribbon in Office 2010.
All Access
Connected to Office.com
Ready

Figure 63

Q&A

Why select All Access on the Search menu?

Selecting All Access on the Search menu ensures that Access Help will search all possible sources for information about your search term. It will produce the most complete search results.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2

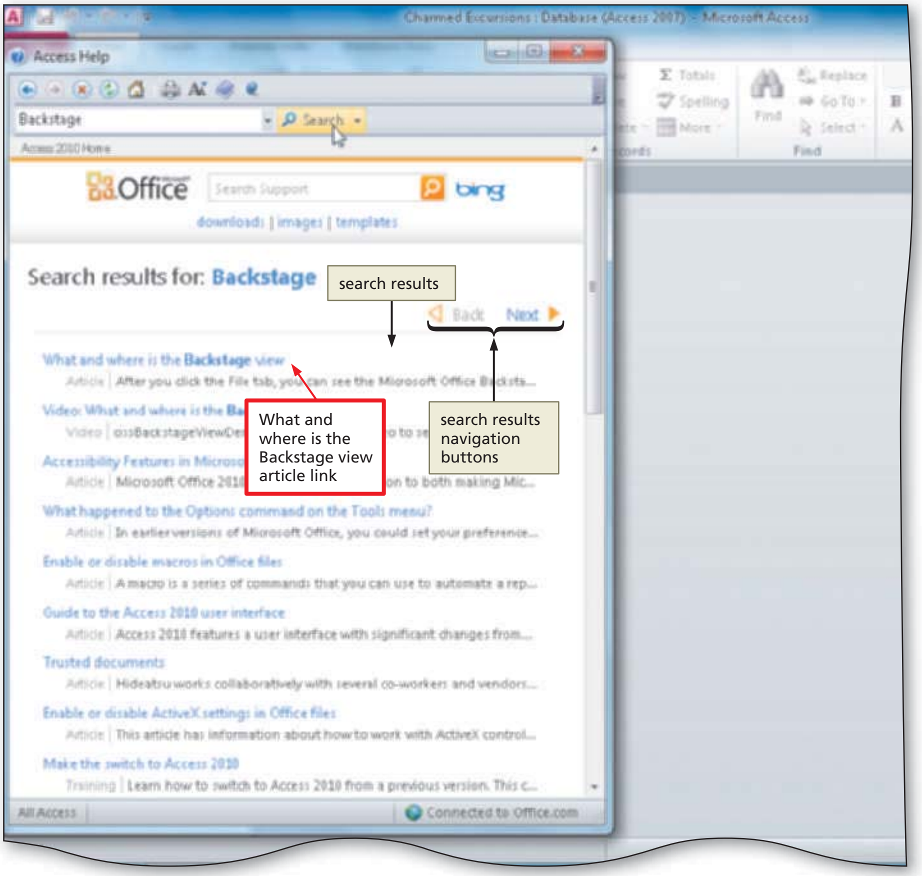
- Click the Search button to display the search results (Figure 64).

Q&A Why do my search results differ?

If you do not have an Internet connection, your results will reflect only the content of the Help files on your computer. When searching for help online, results also can change as material is added, deleted, and updated on the online Help Web pages maintained by Microsoft.

Q&A Why were my search results not very helpful?

When initiating a search, be sure to check the spelling of the search text; also, keep your search specific, with fewer than seven words, to return the most accurate results.


Charmed Excursions : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
Access Help
Backstage
Search
Access 2010 Home
Office
Search Support
bing
downloads | images | templates
search results
Back
Next
What and where is the Backstage view article link
search results navigation buttons
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
All Access
Connected to Office.com

Search results for: Backstage

What and where is the Backstage view
Article | After you click the File tab, you can see the Microsoft Office Backsta...

Video: What and where is the Ba
Video | ossBackstageViewDe

Accessibility Features in Microso
Article | Microsoft Office 2010

What happened to the Options command on the Tools menu?
Article | In earlier versions of Microsoft Office, you could set your preference...

Enable or disable macros in Office files
Article | A macro is a series of commands that you can use to automate a rep...

Guide to the Access 2010 user interface
Article | Access 2010 features a user interface with significant changes from...

Trusted documents
Article | Hideatsu works collaboratively with several co-workers and vendors...

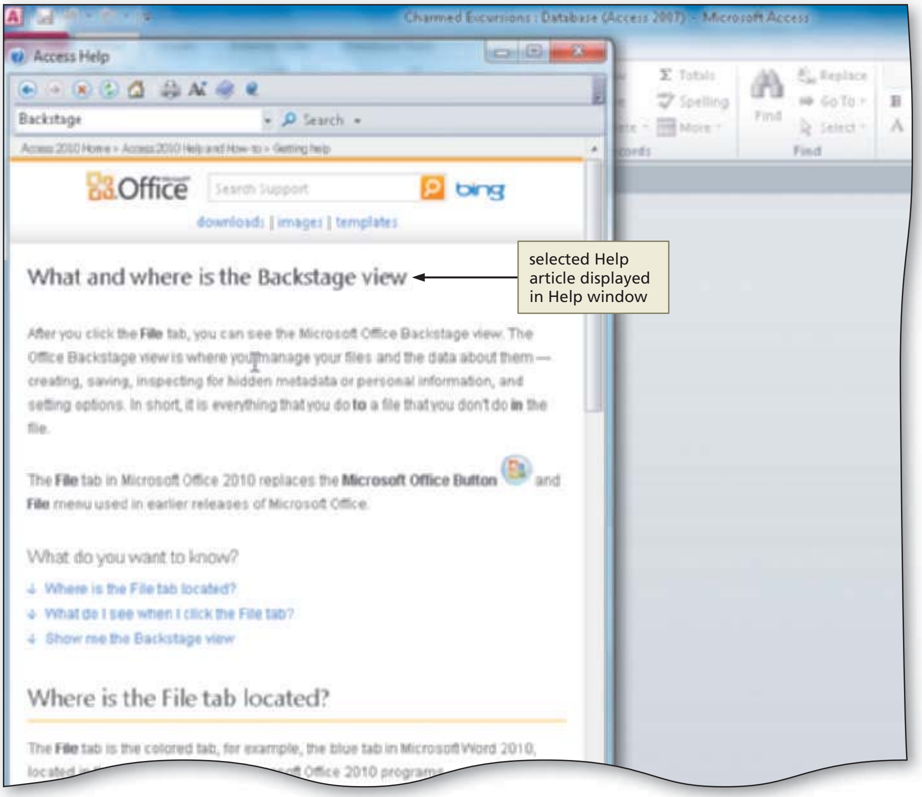
Enable or disable ActiveX settings in Office files
Article | This article has information about how to work with ActiveX control...

Make the switch to Access 2010
Training | Learn how to switch to Access 2010 from a previous version. This c...

Figure 64

3

- Click the 'What and where is the Backstage view' link to open the Help document associated with the selected topic (Figure 65).


Charmed Excursions : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
Access Help
Backstage
Search
Access 2010 Home > Access 2010 Help and How-to > Getting help
Office
Search Support
bing
downloads | images | templates
selected Help article displayed in Help window
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Replace
Go To
Select

What and where is the Backstage view

After you click the **File** tab, you can see the Microsoft Office Backstage view. The Office Backstage view is where you manage your files and the data about them — creating, saving, inspecting for hidden metadata or personal information, and setting options. In short, it is everything that you do **to** a file that you don't do **in** the file.

The **File** tab in Microsoft Office 2010 replaces the **Microsoft Office Button** and **File** menu used in earlier releases of Microsoft Office.

What do you want to know?

- Where is the File tab located?
- What do I see when I click the File tab?
- Show me the Backstage view

Where is the File tab located?

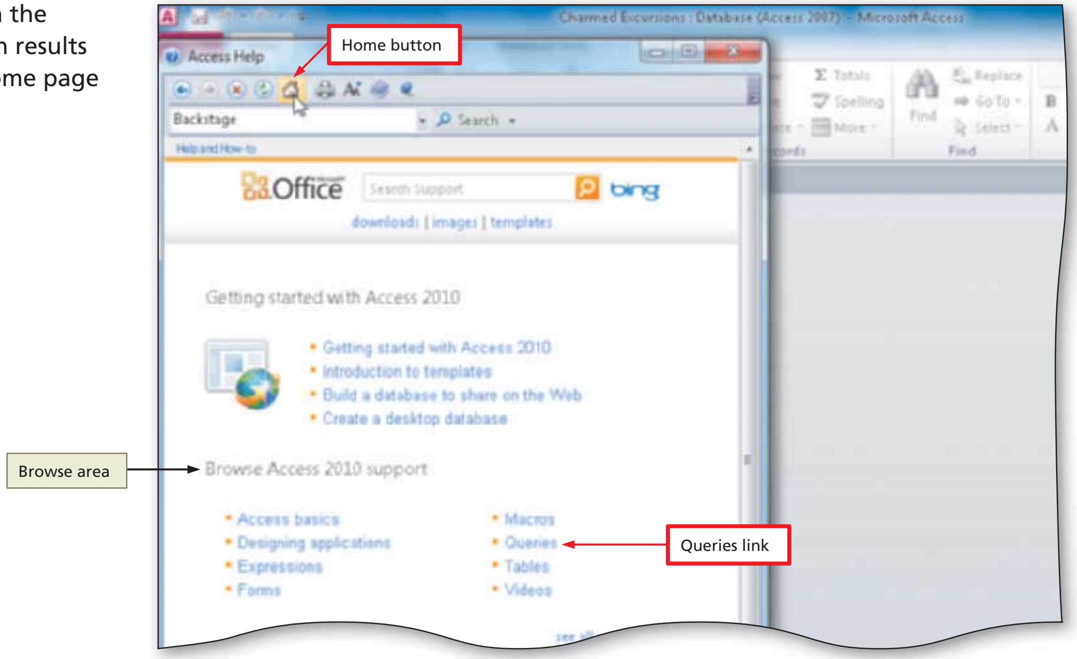
The **File** tab is the colored tab, for example, the blue tab in Microsoft Word 2010, located in ... Office 2010 programs.

Figure 65

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

4

- Click the Home button on the toolbar to clear the search results and redisplay the Help home page (Figure 66).


Charmed Excursions : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
Access Help
Home button
Backstage
Search
Help and How-to
Office
Search Support
bing
downloads | images | templates
Browse area
Queries link
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Replace
Go To
Select

Getting started with Access 2010

- Getting started with Access 2010
- Introduction to templates
- Build a database to share on the Web
- Create a desktop database

Browse Access 2010 support

- Access basics
- Designing applications
- Expressions
- Forms
- Macros
- Queries
- Tables
- Videos

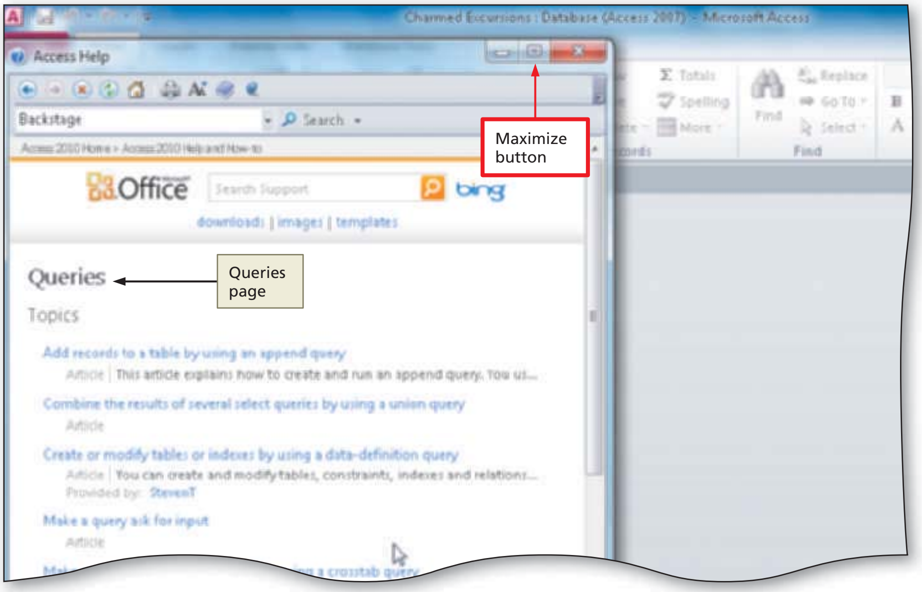
Figure 66

To Obtain Help Using the Help Links

If your topic of interest is listed in the Browse area of the Help window, you can click the link to begin browsing the Help categories instead of entering search text. You browse Help just as you would browse a Web site. If you know which category contains your Help information, you may want to use these links. The following step finds the Queries Help information using the category links from the Access Help home page.

1

- Click the Queries link on the Help home page (shown in Figure 66) to display the Queries page (Figure 67).


Charmed Excursions : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
Access Help
Maximize button
Backstage
Search
Access 2010 Home > Access 2010 Help and How-to
Office
Search Support
bing
downloads | images | templates
Queries page
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Replace
Go To
Select

Queries

Topics

Add records to a table by using an append query
Article | This article explains how to create and run an append query. You us...

Combine the results of several select queries by using a union query
Article

Create or modify tables or indexes by using a data-definition query
Article | You can create and modify tables, constraints, indexes and relations...
Provided by: StevenT

Make a query ask for input
Article

Figure 67

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Obtain Help Using the Help Table of Contents

A third way to find Help in Office programs is through the Help Table of Contents. You can browse through the Table of Contents to display information about a particular topic or to familiarize yourself with an Office program. The following steps access the Help information about fields by browsing through the Help Table of Contents.

1

- Click the Home button on the toolbar to display the Help home page.
- Click the Show Table of Contents button on the toolbar to display the Table of Contents pane on the left side of the Help window. If necessary, click the Maximize button on the Help title bar to maximize the window (Figure 68).

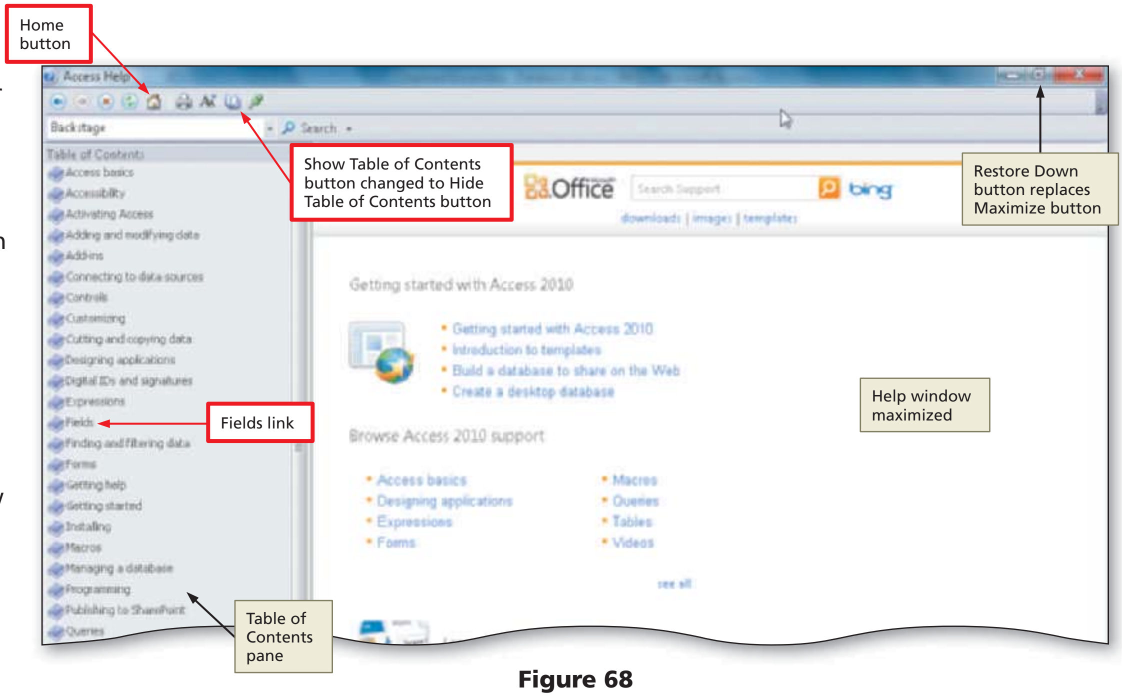

Home button
Show Table of Contents button changed to Hide Table of Contents button
Restore Down button replaces Maximize button
Help window maximized
Fields link
Table of Contents pane
Access Help
Backstage
Search
Table of Contents
Access basics
Accessibility
Activating Access
Adding and modifying data
Add-ins
Connecting to data sources
Controls
Customizing
Cutting and copying data
Designing applications
Digital IDs and signatures
Expressions
Fields
Finding and filtering data
Forms
Getting help
Getting started
Installing
Macros
Managing a database
Programming
Publishing to SharePoint
Queries
Office
Search Support
bing
downloads | images | templates
Getting started with Access 2010
Getting started with Access 2010
Introduction to templates
Build a database to share on the Web
Create a desktop database
Browse Access 2010 support
Access basics
Designing applications
Expressions
Forms
Macros
Queries
Tables
Videos
see all

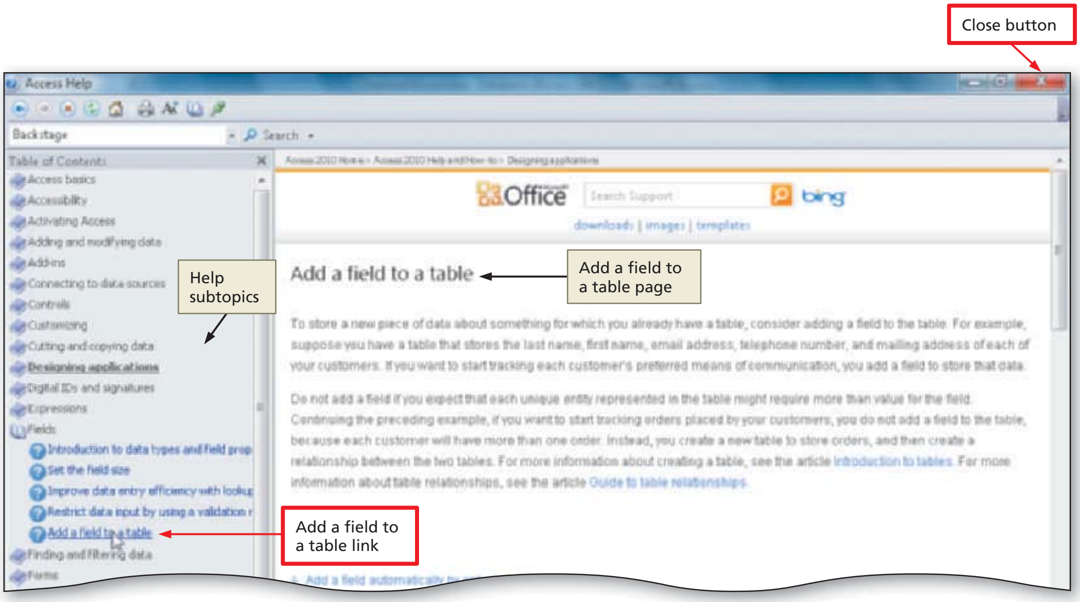
Figure 68

Q&A Why does the appearance of the Show Table of Contents button change?

When the Table of Contents is displayed in the Help window, the Hide Table of Contents button replaces the Show Table of Contents button.

2

- Click the Fields link in the Table of Contents pane to view a list of Help subtopics.
- Click the 'Add a field to a table' link in the Table of Contents pane to view the selected Help document in the right pane (Figure 69).
- After reviewing the page, click the Close button to quit Help.
- Click the Access Close button to quit Access.


Close button
Help subtopics
Add a field to a table page
Add a field to a table link
Access Help
Backstage
Search
Table of Contents
Access basics
Accessibility
Activating Access
Adding and modifying data
Add-ins
Connecting to data sources
Controls
Customizing
Cutting and copying data
Designing applications
Digital IDs and signatures
Expressions
Fields
Introduction to data types and field prop
Set the field size
Improve data entry efficiency with lookup
Restrict data input by using a validation r
Add a field to a table
Finding and filtering data
Forms
Access 2010 Home > Access 2010 Help and How-to > Designing applications
Office
Search Support
bing
downloads | images | templates
Add a field automatically by

Add a field to a table

To store a new piece of data about something for which you already have a table, consider adding a field to the table. For example, suppose you have a table that stores the last name, first name, email address, telephone number, and mailing address of each of your customers. If you want to start tracking each customer's preferred means of communication, you add a field to store that data.

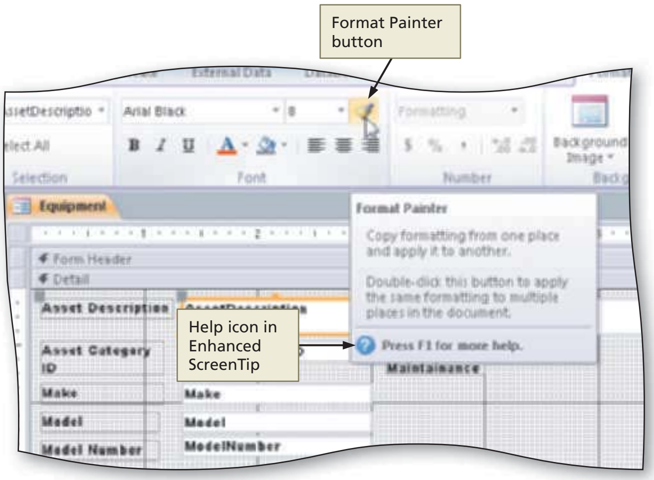
Do not add a field if you expect that each unique entity represented in the table might require more than value for the field. Continuing the preceding example, if you want to start tracking orders placed by your customers, you do not add a field to the table, because each customer will have more than one order. Instead, you create a new table to store orders, and then create a relationship between the two tables. For more information about creating a table, see the article Introduction to tables. For more information about table relationships, see the article Guide to table relationships.

Figure 69

Q&A How do I remove the Table of Contents pane when I am finished with it?

The Show Table of Contents button acts as a toggle. When the Table of Contents pane is visible, the button changes to Hide Table of Contents. Clicking it hides the Table of Contents pane and changes the button to Show Table of Contents.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.


Format Painter button
Help icon in Enhanced ScreenTip
Arial Black
Font
Number
Background Image
Equipment
Form Header
Detail
Asset Description
Asset Category ID
Make
Model
Model Number

Format Painter

Copy formatting from one place and apply it to another.

Double-click this button to apply the same formatting to multiple places in the document.

Press F1 for more help.

Figure 70

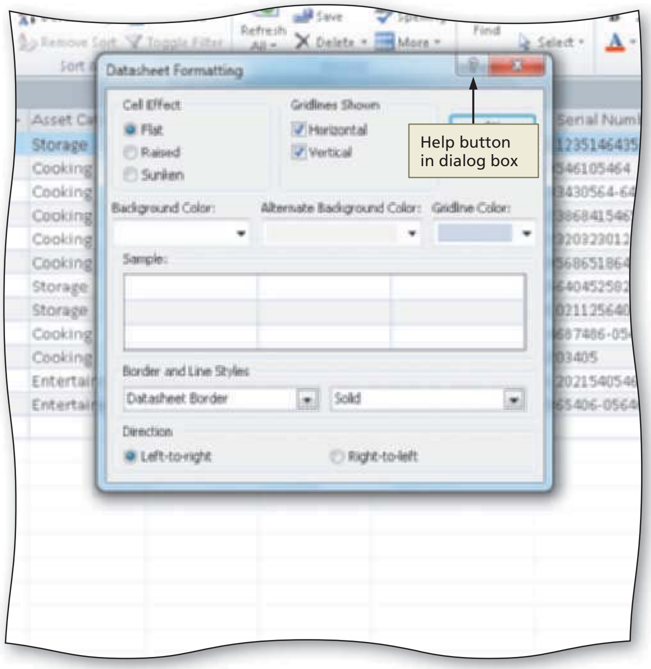

Help button in dialog box
Datasheet Formatting
Cell Effect
Flat
Raised
Sunken
Gridlines Shown
Horizontal
Vertical
Background Color:
Alternate Background Color:
Gridline Color:
Sample:
Border and Line Styles
Datasheet Border
Solid
Direction
Left-to-right
Right-to-left

Figure 71

Obtaining Help while Working in an Office Program

Help in Office programs, such as Access, provides you with the ability to obtain help directly, without the need to open the Help window and initiate a search. For example, you may be unsure about how a particular command works, or you may be presented with a dialog box that you are not sure how to use.

Figure 70 shows one option for obtaining help while working in Access. If you want to learn more about a command, point to the command button and wait for the Enhanced ScreenTip to appear. If the Help icon appears in the Enhanced ScreenTip, press the F1 key while pointing to the command to open the Help window associated with that command.

Figure 71 shows a dialog box that contains a Help button. Pressing the F1 key while the dialog box is displayed opens a Help window. The Help window contains help about that dialog box, if available. If no Help file is available for that particular dialog box, then the main Help window opens.

Using Windows Help and Support

One of the more powerful Windows 7 features is Windows Help and Support. **Windows Help and Support** is available when using Windows 7 or when using any Microsoft program running under Windows 7. This feature is designed to assist you in using Windows 7 or the various programs. Table 4 describes the content found in the Help and Support Center. The same methods used for searching Microsoft Office Help can be used in Windows Help and Support. The difference is that Windows Help and Support displays help for Windows 7, instead of for Microsoft Office.

Table 4 Windows Help and Support Center Content Areas

Area	Function
Find an answer quickly	This area contains instructions about how to do a quick search using the search box.
Not sure where to start?	This area displays three topics to help guide a user: How to get started with your computer, Learn about Windows Basics, and Browse Help topics. Clicking one of the options navigates to corresponding Help and Support pages.
More on the Windows website	This area contains links to online content from the Windows Web site. Clicking the links navigates to the corresponding Web pages on the Web site.

To Start Windows Help and Support

The steps on the next page start Windows Help and Support and display the Windows Help and Support window, containing links to more information about Windows 7.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

1

- Click the Start button on the taskbar to display the Start menu (Figure 72).

Q&A

Why are the programs that are displayed on the Start menu different?

Windows adds the programs you have used recently to the left pane on the Start menu. You have started Access while performing the steps in this chapter, so that program now is displayed on the Start menu.

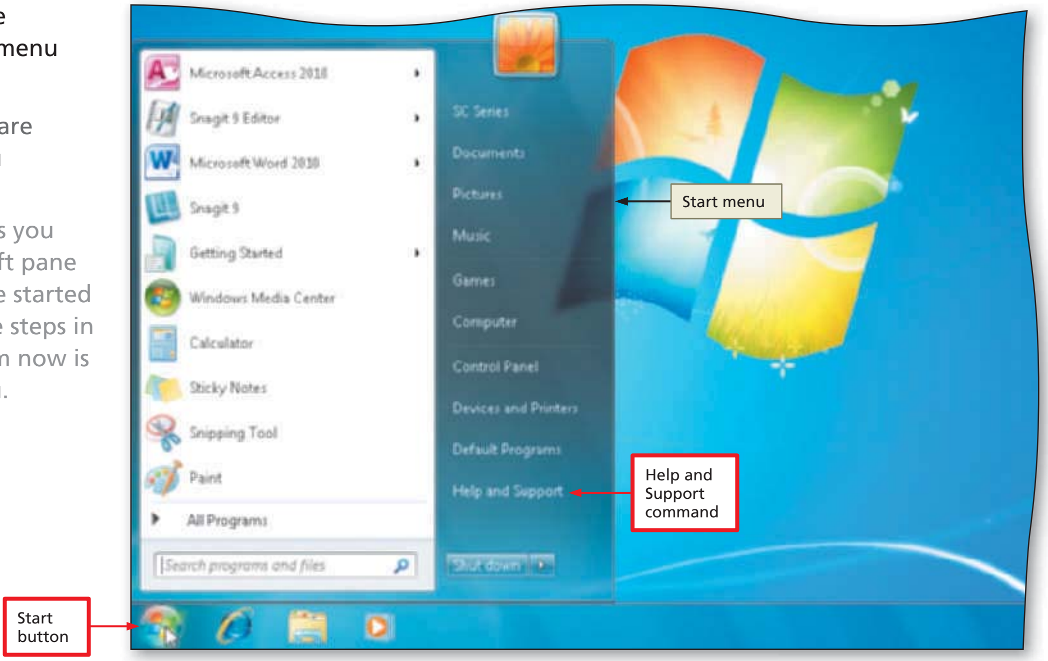
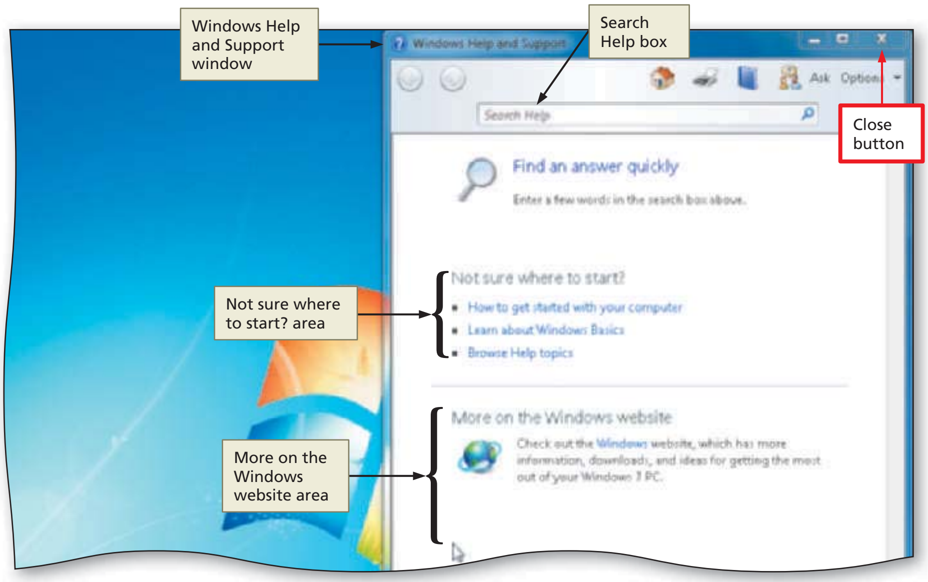

Microsoft Access 2010
Snagit 9 Editor
Microsoft Word 2010
Snagit 9
Getting Started
Windows Media Center
Calculator
Sticky Notes
Snipping Tool
Paint
All Programs
Search programs and files
SC Series
Documents
Pictures
Music
Games
Computer
Control Panel
Devices and Printers
Default Programs
Help and Support
Shut down
Start menu
Help and Support command
Start button

Figure 72

2

- Click Help and Support on the Start menu to open the Windows Help and Support window (Figure 73).
- After reviewing the Windows Help and Support window, click the Close button to quit Windows Help and Support.


Windows Help and Support window
Search Help box
Close button
Windows Help and Support
Ask
Options
Search Help
Not sure where to start? area
More on the Windows website area

Find an answer quickly

Enter a few words in the search box above.

Not sure where to start?

- How to get started with your computer
- Learn about Windows Basics
- Browse Help topics

More on the Windows website

Check out the Windows website, which has more information, downloads, and ideas for getting the most out of your Windows 7 PC.

Figure 73

Other Ways

1. Press CTRL+ESC, press RIGHT ARROW, press UP ARROW, press ENTER
2. Press WINDOWS+F1

Chapter Summary

In this chapter, you learned about the Windows 7 interface. You started Windows 7, were introduced to the components of the desktop, and learned several mouse operations. You opened, closed, moved, resized, minimized, maximized, and scrolled a window. You used folder windows to expand and collapse drives and folders, display drive and folder contents, create folders, and rename and then delete a file.

You also learned some basic features of Microsoft Access 2010. As part of this learning process, you discovered the common elements that exist among Microsoft Office programs.

Microsoft Office Help was demonstrated using Access, and you learned how to use the Access Help window. You were introduced to the Windows 7 Help and Support Center and learned how to use it to obtain more information about Windows 7.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

The items listed below include all of the new Windows 7 and Office 2010 skills you have learned in this chapter.

1. Log on to the Computer (OFF 6)
2. Start a Program Using the Start Menu (OFF 9)
3. Maximize a Window (OFF 12)
4. Create a Folder (OFF 13)
5. Create a Folder within a Folder (OFF 16)
6. Expand a Folder, Scroll through Folder Contents, and Collapse a Folder (OFF 17)
7. Switch from One Program to Another (OFF 18)
8. Create an Access Database (OFF 19)
9. Close an Office File Using the Backstage View (OFF 22)
10. Open an Existing Office File (OFF 26)
11. Display a Different Tab on the Ribbon (OFF 27)
12. Minimize, Display, and Restore the Ribbon (OFF 28)
13. Display and Use a Shortcut Menu (OFF 29)
14. Customize the Quick Access Toolbar (OFF 30)
15. Change the Screen Resolution (OFF 32)
16. Start a Program Using the Search Box (OFF 34)
17. Open a Recent Office File Using the Backstage View (OFF 36)
18. Create a New Blank Database from Windows Explorer (OFF 37)
19. Start a Program from Windows Explorer and Open a File (OFF 38)
20. Use Save Database As to Change the Name of a File (OFF 38)
21. Quit an Office Program (OFF 39)
22. Rename a File (OFF 39)
23. Move a File (OFF 40)
24. Delete a File (OFF 41)
25. Open the Help Window in an Office Program (OFF 42)
26. Move a Window by Dragging (OFF 42)
27. Resize a Window by Dragging (OFF 43)
28. Obtain Help Using the 'Type words to search for' Text Box (OFF 44)
29. Obtain Help Using the Help Links (OFF 46)
30. Obtain Help Using the Help Table of Contents (OFF 47)
31. Start Windows Help and Support (OFF 48)

SAM

If you have a SAM 2010 user profile, your instructor may have assigned an autogradable version of this assignment. If so, log into the SAM 2010 Web site at www.cengage.com/sam2010 to download the instruction and start files.

Learn It Online

Test your knowledge of chapter content and key terms.

Instructions: To complete the Learn It Online exercises, start your browser, click the Address bar, and then enter the Web address **`scsite.com/office2010/learn`**. When the Office 2010 Learn It Online page is displayed, click the link for the exercise you want to complete and then read the instructions.

Chapter Reinforcement TF, MC, and SA

A series of true/false, multiple choice, and short answer questions that test your knowledge of the chapter content.

Flash Cards

An interactive learning environment where you identify chapter key terms associated with displayed definitions.

Practice Test

A series of multiple choice questions that test your knowledge of chapter content and key terms.

Who Wants To Be a Computer Genius?

An interactive game that challenges your knowledge of chapter content in the style of a television quiz show.

Wheel of Terms

An interactive game that challenges your knowledge of chapter key terms in the style of the television show *Wheel of Fortune*.

Crossword Puzzle Challenge

A crossword puzzle that challenges your knowledge of key terms presented in the chapter.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Apply Your Knowledge

Reinforce the skills and apply the concepts you learned in this chapter.

Creating a Folder and a Document

Instructions: You will create an Access folder and then create an Access database and save it in the folder.

Perform the following tasks:

1. Connect a USB flash drive to an available USB port and then open the USB flash drive window.
2. Click the New folder button on the toolbar to display a new folder icon and text box for the folder name.
3. Type `Access` in the text box to name the folder. Press the ENTER key to create the folder on the USB flash drive.
4. Start Access.
5. Use the Blank database option to create a database with the name Apply 1 in the Access folder.
6. Close the database and quit Access.
7. Rename the database to Apply 2.
8. Submit the database in the format specified by your instructor.

Extend Your Knowledge

Extend the skills you learned in this chapter and experiment with new skills. You will use Help to complete the assignment.

Using Help

Instructions: Use Access Help to perform the following tasks.

Perform the following tasks:

1. Start Access.
2. Click the Microsoft Access Help button to open the Access Help window (Figure 74).
3. Search Access Help to answer the following questions.
   a. What are three features new to Access 2010?
   b. What type of training courses are available through Help?
   c. What are the steps to add a new group to the Ribbon?
   d. What are Application Parts?
   e. What are document properties?
   f. What is a template?
   g. How do you back up a database?
   h. What is the purpose of compacting and repairing a database?
   i. What is the purpose of the Navigation Pane?
4. Submit the answers from your searches in the format specified by your instructor.
5. Quit Access.

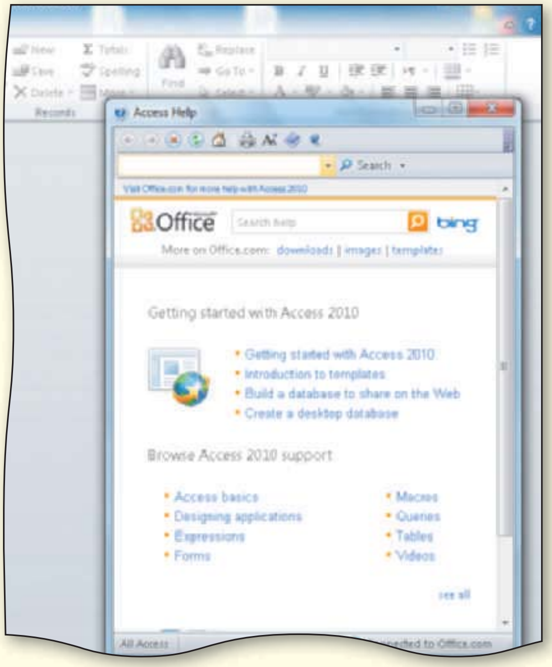

Access Help
Search
Visit Office.com for more help with Access 2010
Office
Search help
bing
More on Office.com: downloads | images | templates
Getting started with Access 2010
Getting started with Access 2010
Introduction to templates
Build a database to share on the Web
Create a desktop database
Browse Access 2010 support
Access basics
Designing applications
Expressions
Forms
Macros
Queries
Tables
Videos
see all
All Access

Figure 74

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Make It Right

Analyze a file structure and correct all errors and/or improve the design.

Organizing Vacation Photos

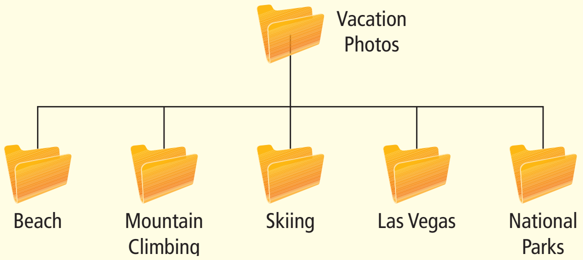


Figure 75

Note: To complete this assignment, you will be required to use the Data Files for Students. See the inside back cover of this book for instructions on downloading the Data Files for Students, or contact your instructor for information about accessing the required files.

Instructions: Traditionally, you have stored photos from past vacations together in one folder. The photos are becoming difficult to manage, and you now want to store them in appropriate folders. You will create the folder structure shown in Figure 75. You then will move the photos to the folders so that they will be organized properly.

1. Connect a USB flash drive to an available USB port to open the USB flash drive window.
2. Create the hierarchical folder structure shown in Figure 75.
3. Move one photo to each folder in the folder structure you created in Step 2. The five photos are available in the Data Files for Students.
4. Submit your work in the format specified by your instructor.

SAM

In the Lab

Use the guidelines, concepts, and skills presented in this chapter to increase your knowledge of Windows 7 and Access 2010. Labs are listed in order of increasing difficulty.

Lab 1: Using Windows Help and Support

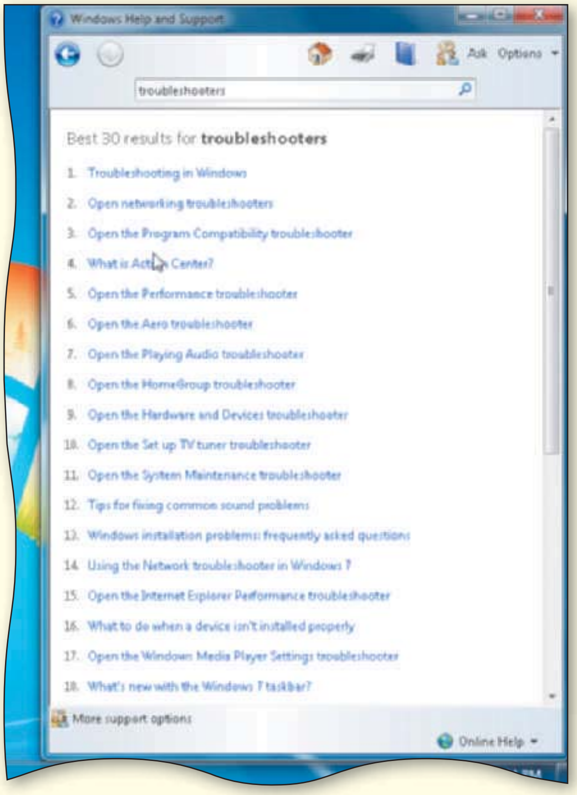
Problem: You have a few questions about using Windows 7 and would like to answer these questions using Windows Help and Support.

Instructions: Use Windows Help and Support to perform the following tasks:

1. Display the Start menu and then click Help and Support to start Windows Help and Support.
2. Use the Help and Support Content page to answer the following questions.
   a. How do you reduce computer screen flicker?
   b. Which dialog box do you use to change the appearance of the mouse pointer?
   c. How do you minimize all windows?
   d. What is a VPN?
3. Use the Search Help text box in Windows Help and Support to answer the following questions.
   a. How can you minimize all open windows on the desktop?
   b. How do you start a program using the Run command?
   c. What are the steps to add a toolbar to the taskbar?
   d. What wizard do you use to remove unwanted desktop icons?

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

4. The tools to solve a problem while using Windows 7 are called **troubleshooters**. Use Windows Help and Support to find the list of troubleshooters (Figure 76), and answer the following questions.
   a. What problems does the HomeGroup troubleshooter allow you to resolve?
   b. List five Windows 7 troubleshooters that are not listed in Figure 76.
5. Use Windows Help and Support to obtain information about software licensing and product activation, and answer the following questions.
   a. What is genuine Windows?
   b. What is activation?
   c. What steps are required to activate Windows?
   d. What steps are required to read the Microsoft Software License Terms?
   e. Can you legally make a second copy of Windows 7 for use at home, work, or on a mobile computer or device?
   f. What is registration?
6. Close the Windows Help and Support window.



Best 30 results for **troubleshooters**

1. Troubleshooting in Windows
2. Open networking troubleshooters
3. Open the Program Compatibility troubleshooter
4. What is Action Center?
5. Open the Performance troubleshooter
6. Open the Aero troubleshooter
7. Open the Playing Audio troubleshooter
8. Open the HomeGroup troubleshooter
9. Open the Hardware and Devices troubleshooter
10. Open the Set up TV tuner troubleshooter
11. Open the System Maintenance troubleshooter
12. Tips for fixing common sound problems
13. Windows installation problems: frequently asked questions
14. Using the Network troubleshooter in Windows 7
15. Open the Internet Explorer Performance troubleshooter
16. What to do when a device isn't installed properly
17. Open the Windows Media Player Settings troubleshooter
18. What's new with the Windows 7 taskbar?

Figure 76

In the Lab

Lab 2: Creating Folders for a Pet Supply Store

Problem: Your friend works for Pete's Pet Supplies. He would like to organize his files in relation to the types of pets available in the store. He has five main categories: dogs, cats, fish, birds, and exotic. You are to create a folder structure similar to Figure 77.

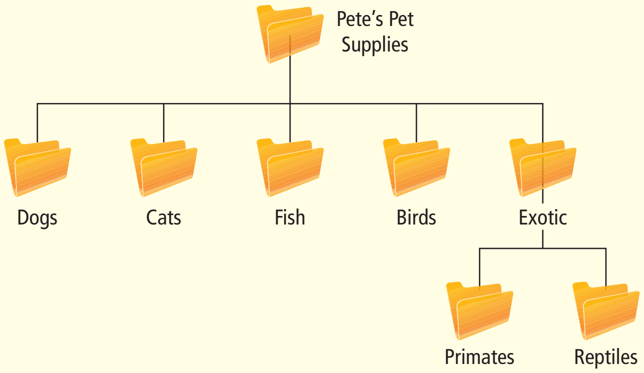


Figure 77

Instructions: Perform the following tasks:

1. Connect a USB flash drive to an available USB port and then open the USB flash drive window.
2. Create the main folder for Pete's Pet Supplies.
3. Navigate to the Pete's Pet Supplies folder.
4. Within the Pete's Pet Supplies folder, create a folder for each of the following: Dogs, Cats, Fish, Birds, and Exotic.
5. Within the Exotic folder, create two additional folders, one for Primates and the second for Reptiles.
6. Submit the assignment in the format specified by your instructor.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

In the Lab

Lab 3: Creating Access Databases in Appropriate Folders

Problem: You are taking a class that requires you to complete three Access chapters. You will save the work completed in each chapter in a different folder (Figure 78).

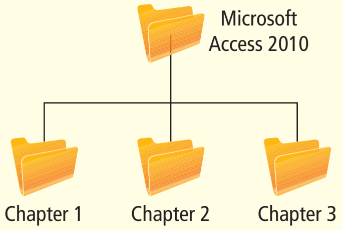


Figure 78

Instructions: Create the folders shown in Figure 78. Then, using Access, create three small databases to save in each folder.

1. Connect a USB flash drive to an available USB port and then open the USB flash drive window.
2. Create the folder structure shown in Figure 78.
3. Navigate to the Chapter 1 folder.
4. Create an Access database named My Chapter 1 Access Database, and then save it in the Chapter 1 folder.
5. Navigate to the Chapter 2 folder.
6. Create another Access database named My Chapter 2 Access Database, and then save it in the Chapter 2 folder.
7. Navigate to the Chapter 3 folder.
8. Create another Access database named My Chapter 3 Access Database, and then save it in the Chapter 3 folder.
9. Quit Access.
10. Submit the assignment in the format specified by your instructor.

Cases and Places

Apply your creative thinking and problem solving skills to design and implement a solution.

To complete these assignments, you may be required to use the Data Files for Students. See the inside back cover of this book for instructions on downloading the Data Files for Students, or contact your instructor for information about accessing the required files.

1: Creating Beginning Files for Classes

Academic

You are taking the following classes: Introduction to Engineering, Beginning Psychology, Introduction to Biology, and Accounting. Create folders for each of the classes. Use the following folder names: Engineering, Psychology, Biology, and Accounting, when creating the folder structure. In the Engineering folder, use Access to create a database with the name of the class. In the Psychology folder, use Access to create a database named Behavioral Observations. In the Biology folder, use Access to create a database named Research. In the Accounting folder, create an Access database with the name, Tax Information. Use the concepts and techniques presented in this chapter to create the folders and files.

2: Using Help

Personal

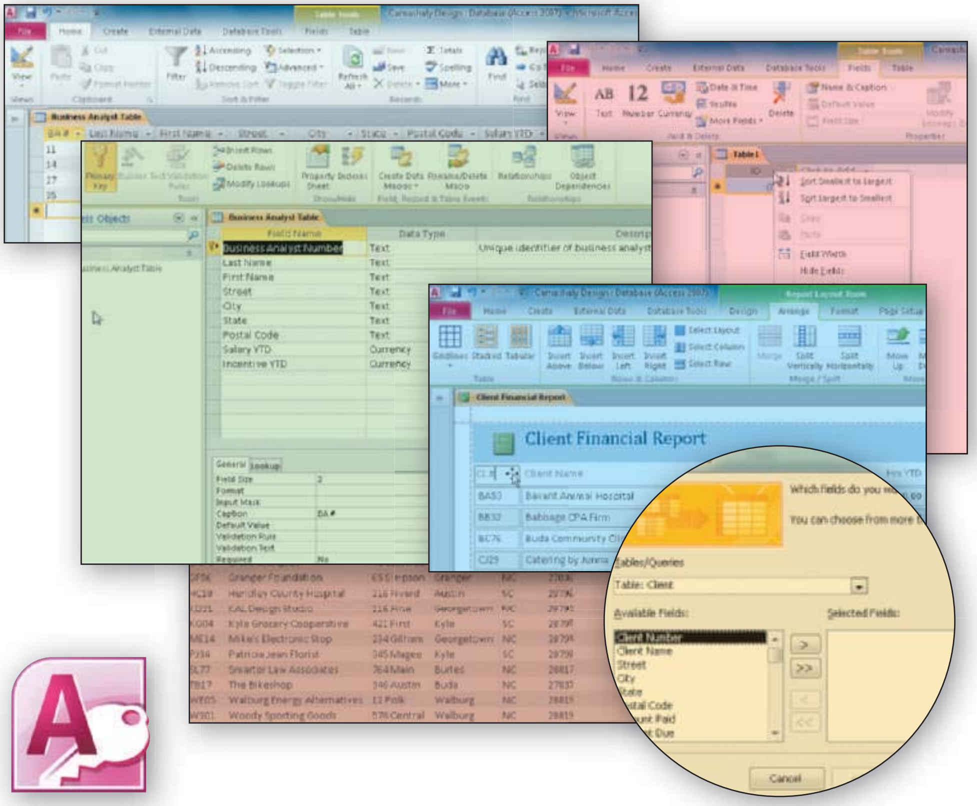
Your parents enjoy working and playing games on their home computers. Your mother uses a notebook computer downstairs, and your father uses a desktop computer upstairs. They expressed interest in sharing files between their computers and sharing a single printer, so you offered to research various home networking options. Start Windows Help and Support, and search Help using the keywords, home networking. Use the link for installing a printer on a home network. Print the main steps for installing a printer. Use the link for setting up a HomeGroup and then print the main steps for creating a HomeGroup Access database. Use the concepts and techniques presented in this chapter to use Help.

3: Creating Folders

Professional

Your boss at the bookstore where you work part-time has asked for help with organizing her files. After looking through the files, you decided upon a file structure for her to use, including the following folders: books, magazines, tapes, DVDs, and general merchandise. Within the books folder, create folders for hardback and paperback books. Within magazines, create folders for special issues and periodicals. In the tapes folder, create folders for celebrity and major release. In the DVDs folder, create a folder for book to DVD. In the general merchandise folder, create folders for novelties, posters, and games. Use the concepts and techniques presented in this chapter to create the folders.

1 Databases and Database Objects: An Introduction



Objectives

You will have mastered the material in this chapter when you can:

- Design a database to satisfy a collection of requirements
- Describe the features of the Access window
- Create a database
- Create tables in Datasheet and Design views
- Add records to a table
- Close a database
- Open a database
- Print the contents of a table
- Create and use a query
- Create and use a form
- Create and print custom reports
- Modify a report in Layout view

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

1 Databases and Database Objects: An Introduction

Introduction

The term **database** describes a collection of data organized in a manner that allows access, retrieval, and use of that data. Microsoft Access 2010, usually referred to as simply Access, is a database management system. A **database management system**, such as Access, is software that allows you to use a computer to create a database; add, change, and delete data in the database; ask and answer questions concerning the data in the database; and create forms and reports using the data in the database.

Project Planning Guidelines

The process of developing a database that communicates specific information requires careful analysis and planning. As a starting point, establish why the database is needed. Once the purpose is determined, analyze the intended users of the database and their unique needs. Then, gather information about the topic and decide what to include in the database. Finally, determine the database design and style that will be most successful at delivering the message. Details of these guidelines are provided in Appendix A. In addition, each project in this book provides practical applications of these planning considerations.

Project — Database Creation

Camashaly Design Group is a small company that provides custom marketing solutions for the service, nonprofit, and retail sectors. Alyssa Morgan, Camden Scott, and Ashton James started the business after they graduated from a local university. The three owners, all computer graphics design majors and business minors, worked on a service learning project during college that produced a Web site for a nonprofit organization. Alyssa, Camden, and Ashton worked well together. Upon researching the local area for competing businesses, they decided to form their own company. The company specializes in designing and maintaining Web sites and using social networking Web sites for online marketing. They also conduct market research and develop printed media. Camashaly already has received one award for its design work. Camashaly is also recognized for its efforts in providing work opportunities to individuals who want flexible schedules and to student interns.

BTW

BTWs
For a complete list of the BTWs found in the margins of this book, visit the Access 2010 BTW Web page (scsite.com/ac2010/btw).

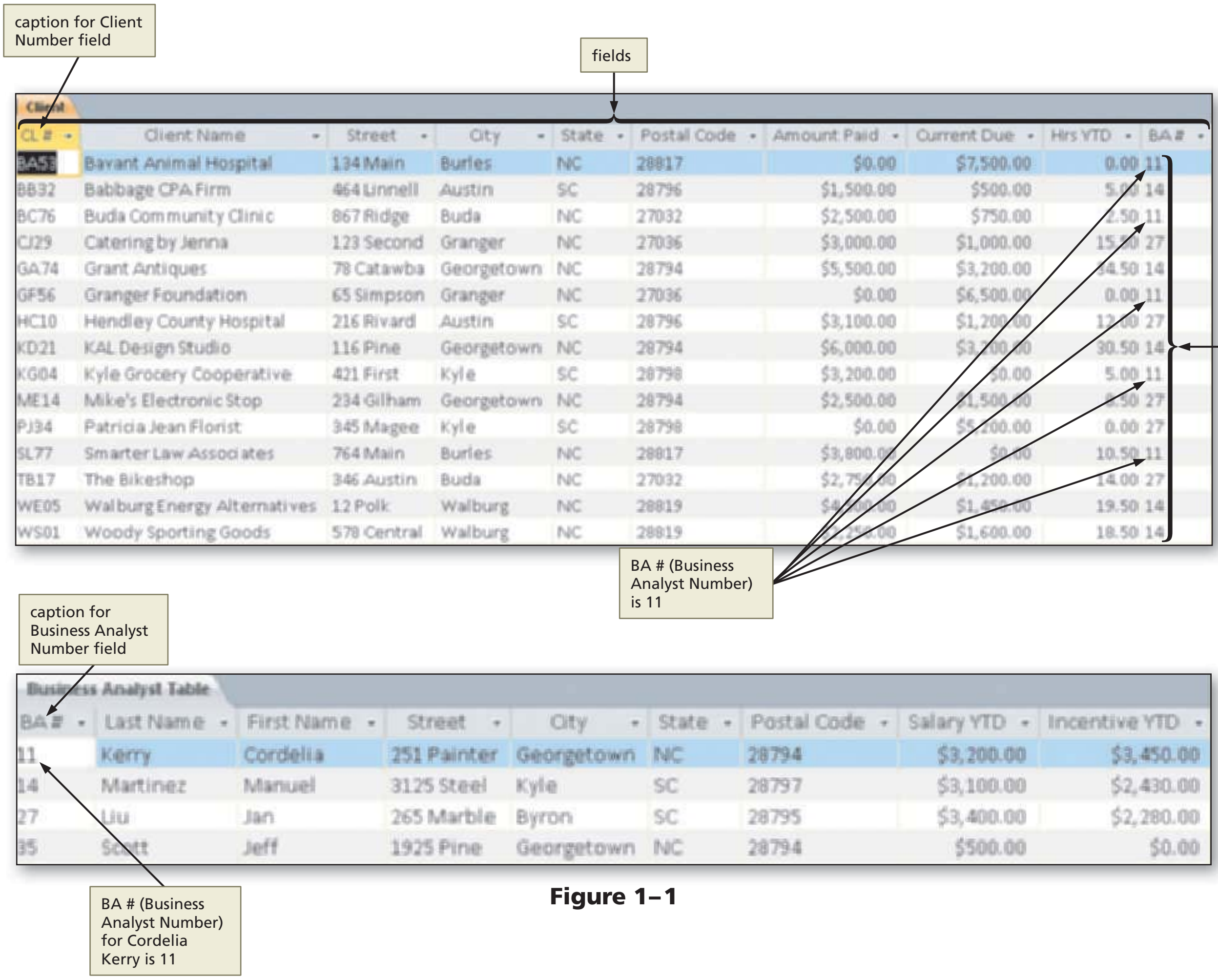
Camashaly uses business analysts to work collaboratively with clients. Business analysts are employees who translate business requirements into marketing specifications and serve as the interface between clients and Camashaly. Business analysts are paid a base salary and can earn incentive pay for maintaining and expanding client relationships.

Camashaly charges a one-time fee for Web site development. Clients can pay for Web site maintenance by contracting for a specified number of hours or can pay for maintenance on an hour-by-hour basis. Other fees vary depending on the specific scope of work.

To ensure that operations run smoothly, Camashaly organizes data on its clients and business analysts in a database managed by Access. In this way, Camashaly keeps its data current and accurate while the owners can analyze the data for trends and produce a variety of useful reports. In this chapter, you will create the Camashaly database.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

In a **relational database** such as those maintained by Access, a database consists of a collection of tables, each of which contains information on a specific subject. Figure 1–1 shows the database for Camashaly Design. It consists of two tables: the Client table (Figure 1–1a) contains information about the clients to whom Camashaly provides services, and the Business Analyst table (Figure 1–1b) contains information about the business analysts to whom these clients are assigned.


caption for Client Number field
fields
records
BA # (Business Analyst Number) is 11
caption for Business Analyst Number field
BA # (Business Analyst Number) for Cordelia Kerry is 11
Client
Business Analyst Table

CL #	Client Name	Street	City	State	Postal Code	Amount Paid	Current Due	Hrs YTD	BA #
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	134 Main	Burles	NC	28817	$0.00	$7,500.00	0.00	11
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	464 Linnell	Austin	SC	28796	$1,500.00	$500.00	5.00	14
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	867 Ridge	Buda	NC	27032	$2,500.00	$750.00	2.50	11
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	123 Second	Granger	NC	27036	$3,000.00	$1,000.00	15.50	27
GA74	Grant Antiques	78 Catawba	Georgetown	NC	28794	$5,500.00	$3,200.00	34.50	14
GF56	Granger Foundation	65 Simpson	Granger	NC	27036	$0.00	$6,500.00	0.00	11
HC10	Hendley County Hospital	216 Rivard	Austin	SC	28796	$3,100.00	$1,200.00	12.00	27
KD21	KAL Design Studio	116 Pine	Georgetown	NC	28794	$6,000.00	$3,200.00	30.50	14
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	421 First	Kyle	SC	28798	$3,200.00	$0.00	5.00	11
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	234 Gilham	Georgetown	NC	28794	$2,500.00	$1,500.00	8.50	27
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	345 Magee	Kyle	SC	28798	$0.00	$5,200.00	0.00	27
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	764 Main	Burles	NC	28817	$3,800.00	$0.00	10.50	11
TB17	The Bikeshop	346 Austin	Buda	NC	27032	$2,750.00	$1,200.00	14.00	27
WE05	Walburg Energy Alternatives	12 Polk	Walburg	NC	28819	$4,500.00	$1,450.00	19.50	14
WS01	Woody Sporting Goods	578 Central	Walburg	NC	28819	$2,250.00	$1,600.00	18.50	14

(a) Client table

BA #	Last Name	First Name	Street	City	State	Postal Code	Salary YTD	Incentive YTD
11	Kerry	Cordelia	251 Painter	Georgetown	NC	28794	$3,200.00	$3,450.00
14	Martinez	Manuel	3125 Steel	Kyle	SC	28797	$3,100.00	$2,430.00
27	Liu	Jan	265 Marble	Byron	SC	28795	$3,400.00	$2,280.00
35	Scott	Jeff	1925 Pine	Georgetown	NC	28794	$500.00	$0.00

(b) Business Analyst table

Figure 1–1

The rows in the tables are called **records**. A record contains information about a given person, product, or event. A row in the Client table, for example, contains information about a specific client, such as the client's name, address information, and other data.

The columns in the tables are called fields. A **field** contains a specific piece of information within a record. In the Client table, for example, the fourth field, City, contains the name of the city where the client is located.

The first field in the Client table is CL #, which is an abbreviation for Client Number. Camashaly Design assigns each client a client number. As is common to the way in which many organizations format client numbers, Camashaly Design calls it a number, although it actually contains letters. The Camashaly client numbers consist of two uppercase letters followed by a two-digit number.

The client numbers are unique; that is, no two clients are assigned the same number. Such a field can be used as a **unique identifier**. A unique identifier, as its name suggests, is a way of uniquely identifying each record in the database. A given client number will appear only in a single record in the table. Only one record exists, for example, in which the client number is BB32. A unique identifier also is called a **primary key**. Thus, the Client Number field is the primary key for the Client table.

The next eight fields in the Client table are Client Name, Street, City, State, Postal Code, Amount Paid, Current Due, and Hrs YTD, which is an abbreviation for Contract Hours YTD. YTD is an abbreviation for year to date. The Amount Paid column contains the amount that the client has paid Camashaly Design YTD prior to the current period. The Current Due column contains the amount due to Camashaly for the current period. The Hrs YTD column contains the number of hours the client has contracted for Web site maintenance so far this year. For example, client BB32 is Babbage CPA Firm. The address is 464 Linnell in Austin, South Carolina. The postal code is 28796. The client has paid $1,500.00 for services so far this year. The amount due for the current period is $500.00. The client has contracted for 5.00 hours of Web site maintenance.

Camashaly assigns a single business analyst to work with each client. The last column in the Client table, BA #, which is an abbreviation for Business Analyst Number, gives the number of the client's business analyst.

The first field in the Business Analyst table is also BA #, an abbreviation for Business Analyst Number. The business analyst numbers are unique, so the Business Analyst Number field is the primary key of the Business Analyst table.

The other fields in the Business Analyst table are Last Name, First Name, Street, City, State, Postal Code, Salary YTD, and Incentive YTD. The Salary YTD field gives the salary paid to the analyst thus far this year. The Incentive YTD gives the incentive for which the analyst qualified thus far this year. For example, business analyst 14 is Manuel Martinez. His address is 3125 Steel in Kyle, South Carolina. The Postal Code is 28797. So far this year, he has been paid $3,100.00 in salary. He has earned $2,430.00 in incentive pay.

The business analyst number appears in both the Client table and the Business Analyst table, and relates clients and business analysts. For example, in the Client table, you see that the business analyst number for client Babbage CPA Firm is 14. To find the name of this business analyst, look for the row in the Business Analyst table that contains 14 in the BA # column. After you have found it, you know the client is assigned to Manuel Martinez. To find all the clients assigned to Cordelia Kerry, you would first look in the Business Analyst table to find that her number is 11. You would then look through the Client table for all the clients that contain 11 in the BA # column. Her clients are BA53 (Bavant Animal Hospital), BC76 (Buda Community Clinic), GF56 (Granger Foundation), KG04 (Kyle Grocery Cooperative), and SL77 (Smarter Law Associates).

The last business analyst in the Business Analyst table, Jeff Scott, has not been assigned any clients yet; therefore, his business analyst number, 35, does not appear on any row in the Client table.

Overview

As you read this chapter, you will learn how to create the database shown in Figure 1–1 by performing these general tasks:

- Design the database.
- Create a new blank database.
- Create a table and add the records.
- Preview and print the contents of a table.
- Create a second table and import the records.
- Create a simple query.
- Create a simple form.
- Create and modify a report.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Plan Ahead

Database Design Guidelines

Database design refers to the arrangement of data into tables and fields. In the example in this chapter, the design is specified, but in many cases, you will have to determine the design based on what you want the system to accomplish.

When designing a database to satisfy a given set of requirements, the actions you take and the decisions you make will determine the tables and fields that will be included in the database. As you create a database, such as the one shown in Figure 1–1 on page AC 3, you should follow these general guidelines:

1. **Identify the tables.** Examine the requirements for the database to identify the main objects that are involved. There will be a table for each object you identify.

   In one database, for example, the main objects might be departments and employees. Thus, there would be two tables: one for departments and the other for employees. In another database, the main objects might be clients and business analysts. In this case, there also would be two tables: one for clients and the other for business analysts. In still another database, the main objects might be books, publishers, and authors. This database would require three tables: one for books, a second for publishers, and a third for authors.

2. **Determine the primary keys.** Recall that the primary key is the unique identifier for records in the table. For each table, determine the unique identifier. In a Department table, for example, the unique identifier might be the Department Code. For a Book table, the unique identifier might be the ISBN.

3. **Determine the additional fields.** The primary key will be a field or combination of fields in a table. A table typically will contain many additional fields, each of which contains a type of data. Examine the project requirements to determine these additional fields. For example, in an Employee table, the additional fields might include such fields as Employee Name, Street Address, City, State, Postal Code, Date Hired, Salary, and so on.

4. **Determine relationships between the tables.** Examine the list of tables you have created to see which tables are related. When you determine that two tables are related, include matching fields in the two tables. For example, in a database containing employees and departments, there is a relationship between the two tables because one department can have many employees assigned to it. Department Code could be the matching field in the two tables.

5. **Determine data types for the fields.** For each field, determine the type of data the field can contain. One field, for example, might contain only numbers. Another field might contain currency amounts, while a third field might contain only dates. Some fields contain text data, meaning any combination of letters, numbers, and special characters (!, ;, ‘, &, and so on). For example, in an Employee table, the Date Hired field would contain dates, the Salary field would contain currency amounts, and the Hours Worked field would contain numbers. The other fields in the Employee table would contain text data, such as Employee Name and Department Code.

6. **Identify and remove any unwanted redundancy.** Redundancy is the storing of a piece of data in more than one place. Redundancy usually, but not always, causes problems, such as wasted space, difficulties with update, and possible data inconsistency. Examine each table you have created to see if it contains redundancy and, if so, determine whether the redundancy causes the problems described. If it does, remove the redundancy by splitting the table into two tables. For example, you might have a single table of employees. In addition to typical employee data (name, address, earnings, and so on), the table might contain Department Number and Department Name. If so, the Department Name could repeat multiple times. Every employee whose department number is 12, for example, would have the same department name. It would be better to split the table into two tables: one for Employees and one for Department. In the Department table, the Department Name is stored only once.

7. **Determine a storage location for the database.** The database you have designed will be stored in a single file. You need to determine a location in which to store the file.

8. **Determine additional properties for fields.** Before creating the database, determine any other properties you should specify for the fields. These could include a field size, which is

(continued)

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Plan Ahead

(continued)

the maximum number of characters that can be stored in the field. If you want something other than the field name to appear at the top of a column (such as an abbreviation), you can change the caption to the desired heading. You also can add a description, which is a message that appears on the screen concerning a field whenever the field is selected.

9. **Determine the best method for distributing the database objects.** The traditional method of distributing database objects uses a printer to produce a hard copy of a table or report on paper. You also can distribute the table as an electronic image that mirrors the original table's appearance.

When necessary, more specific details concerning the above guidelines are presented at appropriate points in the chapter. The chapter also will identify the actions performed and decisions made regarding these guidelines during the creation of the database shown in Figure 1–1 on page AC 3.

Designing a Database

This section illustrates the database design process by showing how you would design the database for Camashaly Design from a set of requirements. In this section, you will use commonly accepted shorthand to represent the tables and fields that make up the database as well as the primary keys for the tables. For each table, you give the name of the table followed by a set of parentheses. Within the parentheses is a list of the fields in the table separated by columns. You underline the primary key. For example,

Product (Product Code, Description, On Hand, Price)

represents a table called Product. The Product table contains four fields: Product Code, Description, On Hand, and Price. The Product Code field is the primary key.

BTW

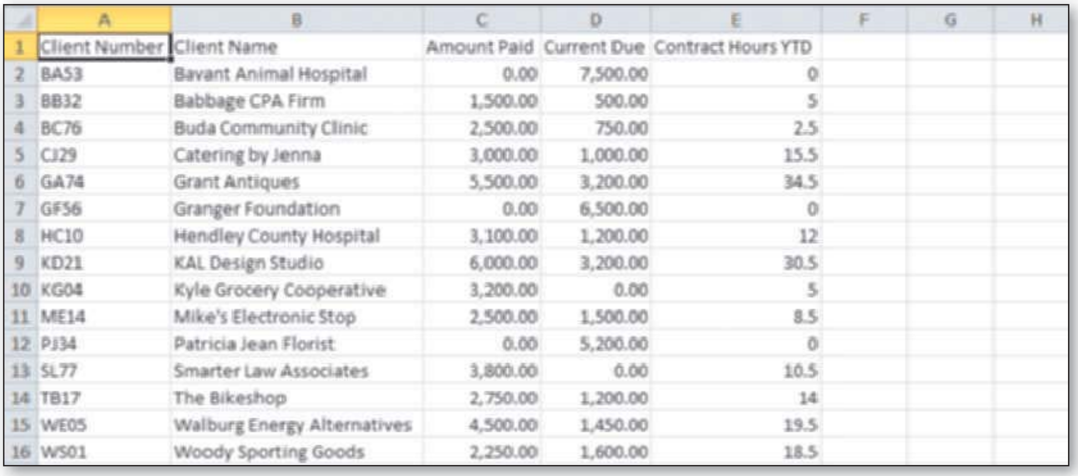
Determining Database Requirements
The determination of database requirements is part of a process known as systems analysis. A systems analyst examines existing and proposed documents, and examines organizational policies to determine exactly the type of data needs the database must support.

Database Requirements

The Camashaly Design database must maintain information on both clients and business analysts. The business currently keeps this data in two Word tables and two Excel workbooks, as shown in Figure 1–2. They use Word tables for address information and Excel workbooks for financial information.

Client Number	Client Name	Street	City	State	Postal Code
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	134 Main	Burles	NC	28817
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	464 Linnell	Austin	SC	28796
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	867 Ridge	Buda	NC	27032
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	123 Second	Granger	NC	27036
GA74	Grant Antiques	78 Catawba	Georgetown	NC	28794
GF56	Granger Foundation	65 Simpson	Granger	NC	27036
HC10	Hendley County Hospital	216 Rivard	Austin	SC	28796
KD21	KAL Design Studio	116 Pine	Georgetown	NC	28794
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	421 First	Kyle	SC	28798
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	234 Gilham	Georgetown	NC	28794
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	345 Magee	Kyle	SC	28798
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	764 Main	Burles	NC	28817
TB17	The Bikeshop	346 Austin	Buda	NC	27032
WE05	Walburg Energy Alternatives	12 Polk	Walburg	NC	28819
WS01	Woody Sporting Goods	578 Central	Walburg	NC	28819

Figure 1–2 (a) Client Address Information (Word Table)

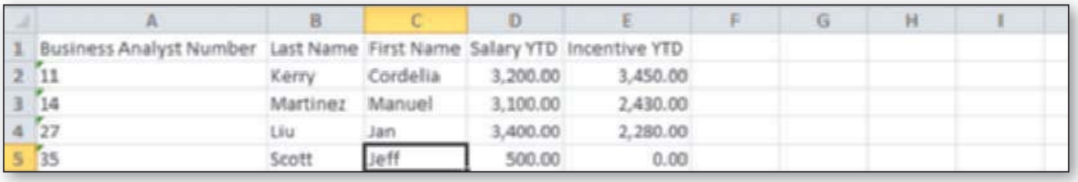


Client Number	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due	Contract Hours YTD
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	0.00	7,500.00	0
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	1,500.00	500.00	5
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	2,500.00	750.00	2.5
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	3,000.00	1,000.00	15.5
GA74	Grant Antiques	5,500.00	3,200.00	34.5
GF56	Granger Foundation	0.00	6,500.00	0
HC10	Hendley County Hospital	3,100.00	1,200.00	12
KD21	KAL Design Studio	6,000.00	3,200.00	30.5
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	3,200.00	0.00	5
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	2,500.00	1,500.00	8.5
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	0.00	5,200.00	0
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	3,800.00	0.00	10.5
TB17	The Bikeshop	2,750.00	1,200.00	14
WE05	Walburg Energy Alternatives	4,500.00	1,450.00	19.5
WS01	Woody Sporting Goods	2,250.00	1,600.00	18.5

Figure 1–2 (b) Client Financial Information (Excel Worksheet)

Business Analyst Number	Last Name	First Name	Street	City	State	Postal Code
11	Kerry	Cordelia	251 Painter	Georgetown	NC	28794
14	Martinez	Manuel	3125 Steel	Kyle	SC	28797
27	Liu	Jan	265 Marble	Byron	SC	28795
35	Scott	Jeff	1925 Pine	Georgetown	NC	28794

Figure 1–2 (c) Business Analyst Address Information (Word Table)



Business Analyst Number	Last Name	First Name	Salary YTD	Incentive YTD
11	Kerry	Cordelia	3,200.00	3,450.00
14	Martinez	Manuel	3,100.00	2,430.00
27	Liu	Jan	3,400.00	2,280.00
35	Scott	Jeff	500.00	0.00

Figure 1–2 (d) Business Analyst Financial Information (Excel Worksheet)

For clients, Camashaly needs to maintain address data. It currently keeps this address data in a Word table (Figure 1–2a). It also maintains financial data for each client. This includes the amount paid, current amount due, and contract hours YTD for the client. It keeps these amounts, along with the client name and number, in the Excel workbook shown in Figure 1–2b.

Camashaly keeps business analyst address data in a Word table, as shown in Figure 1–2c. Just as with clients, it keeps financial data for business analysts, including their salary YTD and incentive YTD, in a separate Excel workbook, as shown in Figure 1–2d.

Finally, it keeps track of which clients are assigned to which business analysts. Each client is assigned to a single business analyst, but each business analyst might be assigned many clients. Currently, for example, clients BA53 (Bavant Animal Hospital), BC76 (Buda Community Clinic), GF56 (Granger Foundation), KG04 (Kyle Grocery Cooperative), and SL77 (Smarter Law Associates) are assigned to business analyst 11 (Cordelia Kerry). Clients BB32 (Babbage CPA Firm), GA74 (Grant Antiques), KD21 (KAL Design Studio), WE05 (Walburg Energy Alternatives), and WS01 (Woody Sporting Goods) are assigned to business analyst 14 (Manuel Martinez). Clients CJ29 (Catering by Jenna), HC10 (Hendley County Hospital), ME14 (Mike's Electronic Stop), PJ34 (Patricia Jean Florist), and TB17 (The Bikeshop) are assigned to business analyst 27 (Jan Liu). Camashaly has an additional business analyst, Jeff Scott, whose number has been assigned as 35, but who has not yet been assigned any clients.

BTW

Additional Data for Camashaly

There are many other types of data that Camashaly could include in a database. For example, they might keep all employee information in a database as well as information on client contracts and an inventory of hardware and software.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Naming Tables and Fields

In designing your database, you must name the tables and fields. Thus, before beginning the design process, you must understand the rules Access applies to table and field names. These rules are:

1. Names can be up to 64 characters in length.
2. Names can contain letters, digits, and spaces, as well as most of the punctuation symbols.
3. Names cannot contain periods (.), exclamation points (!), accent graves (`), or square brackets ([ ]).
4. The same name cannot be used for two different fields in the same table.

The approach to naming tables and fields used in this text is to begin the names with an uppercase letter and to use lowercase for the other letters. In multiple-word names, each word begins with an uppercase letter, and there is a space between words (for example, Client Number). You should know that other approaches exist, all of which are acceptable in Access. Some people omit the space (ClientNumber). Still others use an underscore in place of the space (Client_Number). Finally, some use an underscore in place of a space, but use the same case for all letters (CLIENT_NUMBER or client_number).

BTW

Naming Files
The following characters cannot be used in a file name: question mark (?), quotation mark ("), slash (/), backslash (\ ), colon (:), asterisk (*), vertical bar (|), greater than symbol (>), and less than symbol (<).

Identifying the Tables

Now that you know the rules for naming tables and fields, you are ready to begin the design process. The first step is to identify the main objects involved in the requirements. For the Camashaly Design database, the main objects are clients and business analysts. This leads to two tables, which you must name. Reasonable names for these two tables are:

Client
Business Analyst

BTW

Naming Fields
Access 2010 has a number of reserved words, words that have a special meaning to Access. You cannot use these reserved words as field names. For example, Name is a reserved word and could not be used in the Client table to describe a client's name. For a complete list of reserved words in Access 2010, consult Access Help.

Determining the Primary Keys

The next step is to identify the fields that will be the unique identifiers, or primary keys. Client numbers uniquely identify clients, and business analyst numbers uniquely identify business analysts. Thus, the primary key for the Client table is the client number, and the primary key for the Business Analyst table is the business analyst number. Reasonable names for these fields would be Client Number and Business Analyst Number, respectively. Adding these primary keys to the tables gives:

Client (Client Number)
Business Analyst (Business Analyst Number)

Determining Additional Fields

After identifying the primary keys, you need to determine and name the additional fields. In addition to the client number, the Client Address Information shown in Figure 1–2a on page AC 6 contains the client name, street, city, state, and postal code. These would be fields in the Client table. The Client Financial Information shown in Figure 1–2b also contains the client number and client name, which are already included in the Client table. The financial information also contains the amount paid, current due, and contract hours YTD. Adding the amount paid, current due, and contract hours YTD fields to those already identified in the Client table and assigning reasonable names gives:

Client (Client Number, Client Name, Street, City, State, Postal Code,
Amount Paid, Current Due, Contract Hours YTD)

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Similarly, examining the Business Analyst Address Information in Figure 1–2c adds the last name, first name, street, city, state, and postal code fields to the Business Analyst table. In addition to the business analyst number, last name, and first name, the Business Analyst Financial Information in Figure 1–2d would add the salary YTD and Incentive YTD. Adding these fields to the Business Analyst table and assigning reasonable names gives:

Business Analyst (Business Analyst Number, Last Name, First Name, Street, City, State, Postal Code, Salary YTD, Incentive YTD)

Determining and Implementing Relationships Between the Tables

Plan Ahead

Determine relationships between the tables.
The most common type of relationship you will encounter between tables is the **one-to-many relationship**. This means that each row in the first table may be associated with many rows in the second table, but each row in the second table is associated with only one row in the first. The first table is called the "one" table and the second is called the "many" table. For example, there may be a relationship between departments and employees, in which each department can have many employees, but each employee is assigned to only one department. In this relationship, there would be two tables, Department and Employee. The Department table would be the "one" table in the relationship. The Employee table would be the "many" table.

To determine relationships between tables, you can follow these general guidelines:

- Identify the "one" table.
- Identify the "many" table.
- Include the primary key from the "one" table as a field in the "many" table.

According to the requirements, each client has one business analyst, but each business analyst can have many clients. Thus, the Business Analyst table is the "one" table, and the Client table is the "many" table. To implement this one-to-many relationship between business analysts and clients, add the Business Analyst Number field (the primary key of the Business Analyst table) to the Client table. This produces:

Client (Client Number, Client Name, Street, City, State, Postal Code, Amount Paid, Current Due, Contract Hours YTD, Business Analyst Number)
Business Analyst (Business Analyst Number, Last Name, First Name, Street, City, State, Postal Code, Salary YTD, Incentive YTD)

BTW

Database Design Language (DBDL)
DBDL is a commonly accepted shorthand representation for showing the structure of a relational database. You write the name of the table and then within parentheses you list all the columns in the table. If the columns continue beyond one line, indent the subsequent lines.

Determining Data Types for the Fields

Each field has a **data type**. This indicates the type of data that can be stored in the field. Three of the most commonly used data types are:

1. **Text** — The field can contain any characters. A maximum number of 255 characters is allowed in a field whose data type is Text.
2. **Number** — The field can contain only numbers. The numbers either can be positive or negative. Fields are assigned this type so they can be used in arithmetic operations. Fields that contain numbers but will not be used for arithmetic operations (such as postal codes) usually are assigned a data type of Text.
3. **Currency** — The field can contain only monetary data. The values will appear with currency symbols, such as dollar signs, commas, and decimal points, and with two digits following the decimal point. Like numeric fields, you can use currency fields in arithmetic operations. Access assigns a size to currency fields automatically.

Table 1–1 shows the other data types that are available in Access.

BTW

Data Types
Different database management systems have different available data types. Even data types that are essentially the same can have different names. The Currency data type in Access, for example, is referred to as Money in SQL Server.

Table 1–1 Additional Data Types

Data Type	Description
Memo	Field can store a variable amount of text or combinations of text and numbers where the total number of characters may exceed 255.
Date/Time	Field can store dates and times.
AutoNumber	Field can store a unique sequential number that Access assigns to a record. Access will increment the number by 1 as each new record is added.
Yes/No	Field can store only one of two values. The choices are Yes/No, True/False, or On/Off.
OLE Object	Field can store an OLE object, which is an object linked to or embedded in the table.
Hyperlink	Field can store text that can be used as a hyperlink address.
Attachment	Field can contain an attached file. Images, spreadsheets, documents, charts, and so on can be attached to this field in a record in the database. You can view and edit the attached file.
Calculated	Field specified as a calculation based on other fields. The value is not actually stored.

In the Client table, because the Client Number, Client Name, Street, City, and State can all contain letters, their data types should be Text. The data type for Postal Code is Text instead of Number because postal codes are not used in arithmetic operations; you do not add postal codes or find an average postal code, for example. The Amount Paid and Current Due fields both contain monetary data, so their data types should be Currency. The Contract Hours YTD field contains a number that is not a currency amount, so its data type should be Number.

Similarly, in the Business Analyst table, the data type for the Business Analyst Number, Last Name, First Name, Street, City, State, and Postal Code fields all should be Text. The Salary YTD and Incentive YTD fields both contain monetary amounts, so their data types should be Currency.

Fields whose data type is Number often require you to change the field size, which is the storage space assigned to the field by Access. Table 1–2 shows the possible field sizes for Number fields. If the size were Byte, Integer, or Long Integer, for example, only integers could be stored. If you try to store a value that has decimal places, such as 2.50, the portion to the right of the decimal point would be removed, giving a result of 2. To address this problem, you would change to a size such as Single.

Table 1–2 Field Sizes for Number Fields

Field Size	Description
Byte	Integer value in the range of 0 to 255
Integer	Integer value in the range of –32,768 to 32,767
Long Integer	Integer value in the range of –2,147,483,648 to 2,147,483,647
Single	Numeric values with decimal places to seven significant digits — requires 4 bytes of storage
Double	Numeric values with decimal places to more accuracy than Single — requires 8 bytes of storage
Replication ID	Special identifier required for replication
Decimal	Numeric values with decimal places to more accuracy than Single or Double — requires 12 bytes of storage.

Identifying and Removing Redundancy

Redundancy means storing the same fact in more than one place. It usually results from placing too many fields in a table — fields that really belong in separate tables — and often causes serious problems. If you had not realized there were two objects, clients and business

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

analysts, for example, you might have placed all the data in a single Client table. Figure 1–3 shows an example of a table that includes both client and business analyst information. Notice that the data for a given business analyst (number, name, address, and so on) occurs on more than one record. The data for analyst 11, Cordelia Kerry, is repeated in the figure.

Client Table

Client Number	Client Name	Street	...	Business Analyst Number	Last Name	First Name	...
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	134 Main	...	11	Kerry	Cordelia	...
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	464 Linnell	...	14	Martinez	Manuel	...
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	867 Ridge	...	11	Kerry	Cordelia	...
...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...

business analyst numbers are 11

name of business analyst 11 appears more than once

Figure 1–3

Storing this data on multiple records is an example of redundancy, which causes several problems, including:

1. Wasted storage space. The name of business analyst 11, Cordelia Kerry, for example, should be stored only once. Storing this fact several times is wasteful.
2. More difficult database updates. If, for example, Cordelia Kerry's name is spelled wrong and needs to be changed in the database, her name would need to be changed in several different places.
3. A possibility of inconsistent data. Nothing prohibits the business analyst's last name from being Kerry on client BA53's record and Bronson on client BC76's record. The data would be inconsistent. In both cases, the business analyst number is 11, but the last names are different.

The solution to the problem is to place the redundant data in a separate table, one in which the data no longer will be redundant. If, for example, you place the data for business analysts in a separate table (Figure 1–4), the data for each business analyst will appear only once.

Client Table

Client Number	Client Name	Street	...	Business Analyst Number
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	134 Main	...	11
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	464 Linnell	...	14
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	867 Ridge	...	11
...	...	...		...

business analyst numbers are 11

Business Analyst Table

Business Analyst Number	Last Name	First Name	...
11	Kerry	Cordelia	...
14	Martinez	Manuel	...
...	...		...

name of business analyst 11 appears only once

Figure 1–4

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

BTW

Postal Codes

Some organizations with customers throughout the country have a separate table of postal codes, cities, and states. When placing an order, you typically are asked for your postal code (or ZIP code), rather than city, state, and postal code. You then are asked to confirm that the city and state correspond to that postal code.

Notice that you need to have the business analyst number in both tables. Without it, there would be no way to tell which business analyst is associated with which client. The remaining business analyst data, however, was removed from the Client table and placed in the Business Analyst table. This new arrangement corrects the problems of redundancy in the following ways:

1. Because the data for each business analyst is stored only once, space is not wasted.
2. Changing the name of a business analyst is easy. You have only to change one row in the Business Analyst table.
3. Because the data for a business analyst is stored only once, inconsistent data cannot occur. Designing to omit redundancy will help you to produce good and valid database designs.

You should always examine your design to see if it contains redundancy. If it does, you should decide whether you need to remove the redundancy by creating a separate table.

If you examine your design, you'll see that there is one area of redundancy (see the data in Figure 1–1 on page AC 3). Cities and states are both repeated. Every client whose postal code is 28794, for example, has Georgetown as the city and NC as the state. To remove this redundancy, you would create a table whose primary key is Postal Code and that contains City and State as additional fields. City and State would be removed from the Client table. Having City, State, and Postal Code in a table is very common, however, and usually you would not take such action. No other redundancy exists in your tables.

For an introduction to Windows 7 and instruction about how to perform basic Windows 7 tasks, read the Office 2010 and Windows 7 chapter at the beginning of this book, where you can learn how to resize windows, change screen resolution, create folders, move and rename files, use Windows Help, and much more.

To Start Access

If you are using a computer to step through the project in this chapter and you want your screens to match the figures in this book, you should change your screen's resolution to 1024 × 768. For information about how to change a computer's resolution, refer to the Office 2010 and Windows 7 chapter at the beginning of this book.

The following steps, which assume Windows 7 is running, start Access based on a typical installation. You may need to ask your instructor how to start Access for your computer. For a detailed example of the procedure summarized below, refer to the Office 2010 and Windows 7 chapter.

1. Click the Start button on the Windows 7 taskbar to display the Start menu.
2. Type `Microsoft Access` as the search text in the 'Search programs and files' text box and watch the search results appear on the Start menu.
3. Click Microsoft Access 2010 in the search results on the Start menu to start Access and display the Backstage view for Access.
4. If the Access window is not maximized, click the Maximize button next to the Close button on its title bar to maximize the window.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Creating a Database

In Access, all the tables, reports, forms, and queries that you create are stored in a single file called a database. Thus, you first must create the database to hold the tables, reports, forms, and queries. You can use either the Blank database option or a template to create a new database. If you already know the tables and fields you want in your database, you would use the Blank database option. If not, you can use a template. Templates can guide you by suggesting some commonly used databases.

Plan Ahead

Determine a storage location for the database.
When creating a database, you must decide which storage medium to use.

If you always work on the same computer and have no need to transport your database to a different location, then your computer's hard drive will suffice as a storage location. It is a good idea, however, to save a backup copy of your database on a separate medium in case the file becomes corrupted or the computer's hard drive fails.

If you plan to work on your database in various locations or on multiple computers, then you can consider saving your projects on a portable medium, such as a USB flash drive or CD. The projects in this book are stored on a USB flash drive, which saves files quickly and reliably and can be reused. CDs are easily portable and serve as good backups for the final versions of projects because they generally can save files only one time.

For an introduction to Office 2010 and instruction about how to perform basic tasks in Office 2010 programs, read the Office 2010 and Windows 7 chapter at the beginning of this book, where you can learn how to start a program, use the Ribbon, save a file, open a file, quit a program, use Help, and much more.

To Create a Database

Because you already know the tables and fields you want in the Camashaly Design database, you would use the Blank database option rather than using a template. The following steps assume you already have created folders for storing your files, for example, a CIS 101 folder (for your class) that contains an Access folder (for your assignments). Thus, these steps save the document in the Access folder in the CIS 101 folder on a USB flash drive using the file name, Camashaly Design. For a detailed example of the procedure summarized below, refer to the Office 2010 and Windows 7 chapter at the beginning of this book.

1. With a USB flash drive connected to one of the computer's USB ports, ensure the New tab is selected in the Backstage view and that Blank database is selected in the New gallery.
2. Click the Browse button in the right pane of the New gallery to display the File New Database dialog box.
3. Type **`Camashaly Design`** in the File New Database dialog box to change the file name. Do not press the ENTER key after typing the file name.
4. Navigate to the desired save location (in this case, the Access folder in the CIS 101 folder [or your class folder] on the USB flash drive).
5. Click the OK button, which returns you to the New gallery. (Your screen may show Camashaly Design.accdb.)
6. Click the Create button in the right pane of the New gallery to create the database on the selected drive with the entered file name (Figure 1–5).

BTW

Q&As
For a complete list of the Q&As found in many of the step-by-step sequences in this book, visit the Access 2010 Q&A Web page (scsite.com/ac2010/qa).

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Q&A

The title bar for my Navigation Pane contains All Tables rather than All Access Objects, as in the figure. Is that a problem?

It is not a problem. The title bar indicates how the Navigation Pane is organized. You can carry out the steps in the text with either organization. To make your screens match the ones in the text, click the Navigation Pane arrow and then click Object Type.

Q&A

I do not have the Search bar that appears on the figure. Is that a problem?

It is not a problem. If your Navigation Pane does not display a Search bar and you want your screens to match the ones in the text, right-click the Navigation Pane title bar arrow to display a shortcut menu, and then click Search Bar.

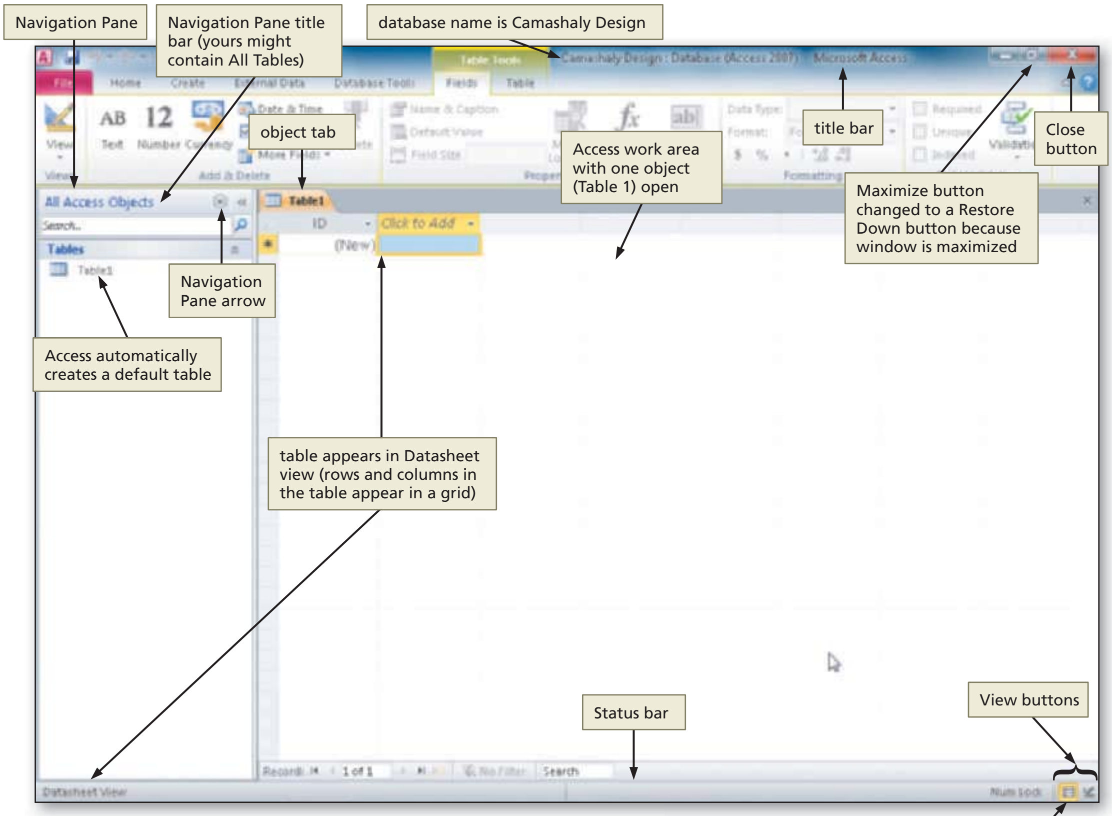

Navigation Pane
Navigation Pane title bar (yours might contain All Tables)
database name is Camashaly Design
object tab
title bar
Close button
Access work area with one object (Table 1) open
Maximize button changed to a Restore Down button because window is maximized
Navigation Pane arrow
Access automatically creates a default table
table appears in Datasheet view (rows and columns in the table appear in a grid)
Status bar
View buttons
Datasheet View button is selected

Figure 1–5

To Create a Database Using a Template

BTW

Available Templates
The Blank web database button on the New tab in the Backstage view allows you to create a database that you can publish to a SharePoint server running Access Services. Access 2010 also includes five Web-based templates. To display previously used templates, click the My templates button.

Ideally, you will design your own database, create a blank database, and then create the tables you have determined that your database should contain. If you are not sure what database design you will need, you could use a template. Templates can guide you by suggesting some commonly used databases. To create a database using a template, you would use the following steps.

1. After starting Access, be sure the Backstage view is open. If it is not, click File on the Ribbon to open it.
2. Click the New tab if it is not already selected.
3. Click Sample templates to display a list of templates stored locally or search Microsoft Office online for additional templates.
4. Click the template you want to use.
5. Enter a file name (or accept the suggested file name) and select a location for the database.
6. Click the Create button to create the database or the Download button to download the database and create the database, if necessary.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

The Access Window

The Access window consists of a variety of components to make your work more efficient and documents more professional. These include the Navigation Pane, Access work area, Ribbon, shortcut menus, and Quick Access Toolbar. Some of these components are common to other Microsoft Office 2010 programs; others are unique to Access.

Navigation Pane and Access Work Area

You work on objects such as tables, forms, and reports in the **Access work area**. In the work area in Figure 1–5, a single table, Table1, is open in the work area. **Object tabs** for the open objects appear at the top of the work area. If you have multiple objects open at the same time, you can select one of the open objects by clicking its tab. To the left of the work area is the Navigation Pane. The **Navigation Pane** contains a list of all the objects in the database. You use this pane to open an object. You also can customize the way objects are displayed in the Navigation Pane.

The **Status bar**, located at the bottom of the Access window, presents information about the database object, the progress of current tasks, and the status of certain commands and keys; it also provides controls for viewing the object. As you type text or perform certain commands, various indicators may appear on the Status bar. The left edge of the Status bar in Figure 1–5 shows that the table object is open in Datasheet view. Toward the right edge are View buttons, which you can use to change the view that currently is displayed.

Creating a Table

To create a table, you must describe the structure of the table to Access. That is, you must describe all the fields that make up the table and their characteristics. You must also indicate the primary key.

In Access, you can use two different views to create a table: Datasheet view and Design view. In **Datasheet view**, the data in the table is presented in rows and columns, similar to a spreadsheet. Although the main reason to use Datasheet view is to add or update records in a table, you can also use it to create a table or to later modify its structure. The other view, **Design view**, is only used to create a table or to modify the structure of the table.

As you might expect, Design view has more functionality for creating a table than Datasheet view. That is, there are certain actions that can only be performed in Design view. If creating your table requires such actions, you must use Design view. If not, you can choose either view. In this chapter, you will create the first table, the Business Analyst table, in Datasheet view. You will create the second table, the Client table, in Design view.

Whichever view you choose to use, before creating the table, you need to determine the names and data types of the fields that will make up the table. You already have determined the types for the Camashaly fields. You also need to determine additional properties for the fields.

BTW

The Ribbon and Screen Resolution

Access may change how the groups and buttons within the groups appear on the Ribbon, depending on the computer's screen resolution. Thus, your Ribbon may look different from the ones in this book if you are using a screen resolution other than 1024 × 768.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Plan Ahead

Determine additional properties for fields.

- **Determine if a special caption is warranted.** Normally, the field name will appear as the label for a field on a form or report and as the column name in Datasheet view. If you would rather have a different name appear, you can change the field's caption to the desired name. One common use of captions is to shorten the column heading. If the data in a column is considerably shorter than the column heading, you could change the caption to a shorter heading. This would enable you to reduce the width of the column and yet still be able to see the entire column heading.
- **Determine if a special description is warranted.** Determine whether to include a description that would appear in the Status bar whenever the field is selected.
- **Determine field sizes.** For Text fields, determine the field size; that is, the maximum number of characters that can be entered in the field. Users will be prohibited from entering a value that has more characters than the field size.
- **Determine formats.** Determine whether the data in the field should be formatted in any particular way. You could, for example, specify that a number field is to be formatted with precisely two decimal places.

BTW

Naming Tables

Database users typically have their own guidelines for naming tables. Some use the singular version of the object being described while others use the prefix tbl with a table name. This book uses the singular version of the object (Client, Business Analyst) but adds the word Table to the name for the Business Analyst table to illustrate another possible approach. Including the word Table can assist visually impaired users when viewing the Navigation Pane.

The results of these decisions for the fields in the Business Analyst table are shown in Table 1–3. The table also shows the data types and field sizes of the fields as well as any special properties that need to be changed. The Business Analyst Number field has a caption of BA #, enabling the width of the Business Analyst Number column to be reduced in the datasheet.

Table 1–3 Structure of Business Analyst Table

Field Name	Data Type	Field Size	Description
Business Analyst Number	Text	2	**Primary Key** **Description:** Business Analyst Number **Caption:** BA #
Last Name	Text	15	
First Name	Text	15	
Street	Text	15	
City	Text	15	
State	Text	2	
Postal Code	Text	5	
Salary YTD	Currency		
Incentive YTD	Currency		

To Modify the Primary Key

When you first create your database, Access automatically creates a table for you. You can immediately begin defining the fields. If, for any reason, you do not have this table or inadvertently delete it, you can create the table by clicking Create on the Ribbon and then clicking the Table button (Create tab | Tables group). In either case, you are ready to define the fields.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

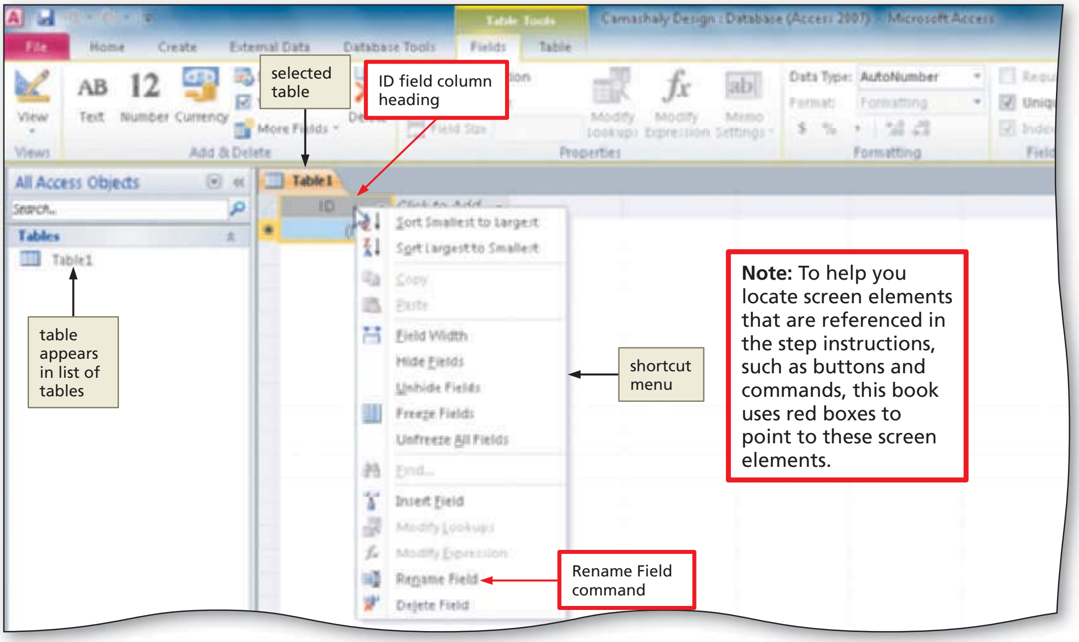
The following steps define the first field, the Business Analyst Number field, which is the primary key. Access has already created a primary key field, which it has named ID. Thus, the steps will change the name, data type, and other properties of this field to match the Business Analyst field in Table 1–3.

1

- Right-click the column heading for the ID field to display a shortcut menu (Figure 1–6).

Q&A Why does my shortcut menu look different?

You right-clicked within the column instead of right-clicking the column heading.


selected table
ID field column heading
Table1
ID
Sort Smallest to Largest
Sort Largest to Smallest
Copy
Paste
Field Width
Hide Fields
Unhide Fields
Freeze Fields
Unfreeze All Fields
Find...
Insert Field
Modify Lookups
Modify Expression
Rename Field
Delete Field
table appears in list of tables
shortcut menu
Rename Field command

Note: To help you locate screen elements that are referenced in the step instructions, such as buttons and commands, this book uses red boxes to point to these screen elements.

Figure 1–6

2

- Click Rename Field on the shortcut menu to highlight the current name.
- Type `Business Analyst Number` to assign a name to the new field.
- Click the white space immediately below the field name to complete the addition of the field (Figure 1–7).

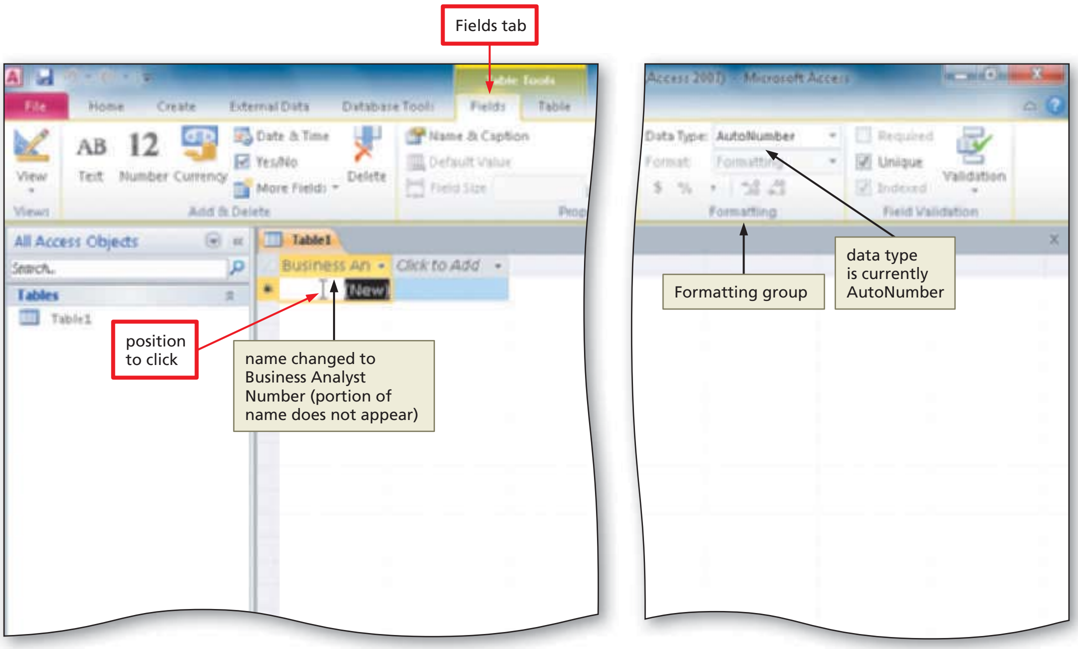

Fields tab
Business An
Click to Add
(New)
position to click
name changed to Business Analyst Number (portion of name does not appear)
Data Type: AutoNumber
Formatting group
data type is currently AutoNumber

Figure 1–7

Q&A Why doesn't the whole name appear?

The default column size is not large enough for Business Analyst Number to appear in its entirety. You will address this issue in later steps.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3

- Because the data type needs to be changed from AutoNumber to Text, click the Data Type box arrow (Table Tools Fields tab | Formatting group) to display a menu of available data types (Figure 1–8).

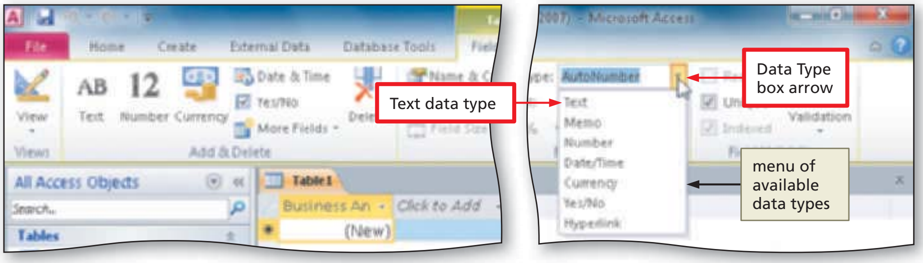

Text data type
Data Type box arrow
menu of available data types
AutoNumber
Text
Memo
Number
Date/Time
Currency
Yes/No
Hyperlink

Figure 1–8

4

- Click Text to select the data type for the field (Figure 1–9).

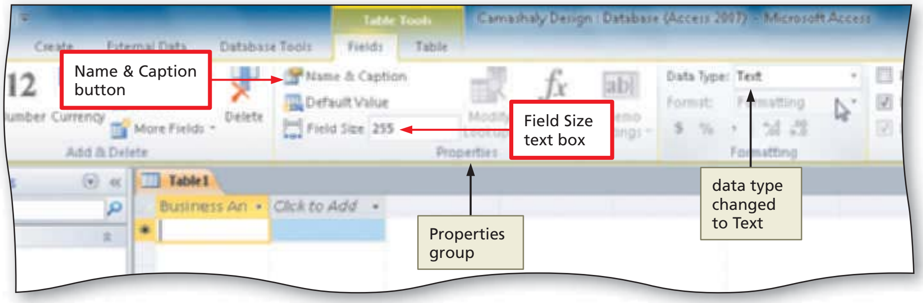
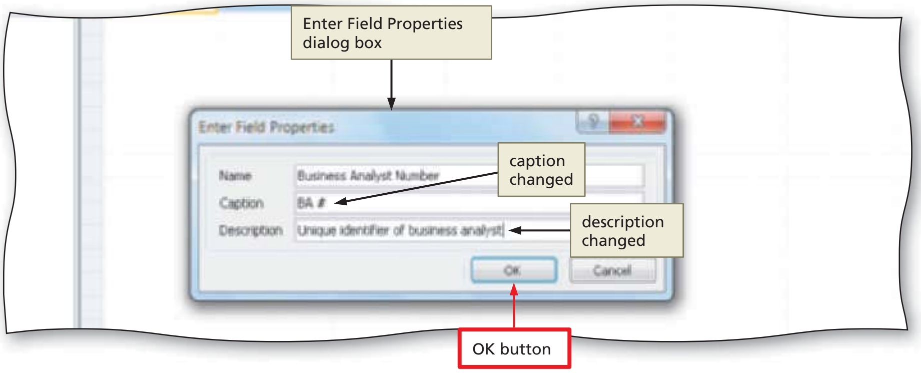

Name & Caption button
Field Size text box
data type changed to Text
Properties group
Data Type: Text
Field Size 255

Figure 1–9

5

- Click the Field Size text box (Table Tools Fields tab | Properties group) to select the current field size, use either the DELETE or BACKSPACE keys to erase the current field size, and then type **2** as the new field size.
- Click the Name & Caption button (Table Tools Fields tab | Properties group) to display the Enter Field Properties dialog box.
- Click the Caption text box (Enter Field Properties dialog box), and then type `BA #` as the caption.
- Click the Description text box, and then type `Unique identifier of business analyst` as the description (Figure 1–10).


Enter Field Properties dialog box
caption changed
description changed
OK button
Enter Field Properties
OK
Cancel

Name: Business Analyst Number
Caption: BA #
Description: Unique identifier of business analyst

Figure 1–10

6

- Click the OK button (Enter Field Properties dialog box) to change the caption and description (Figure 1–11).

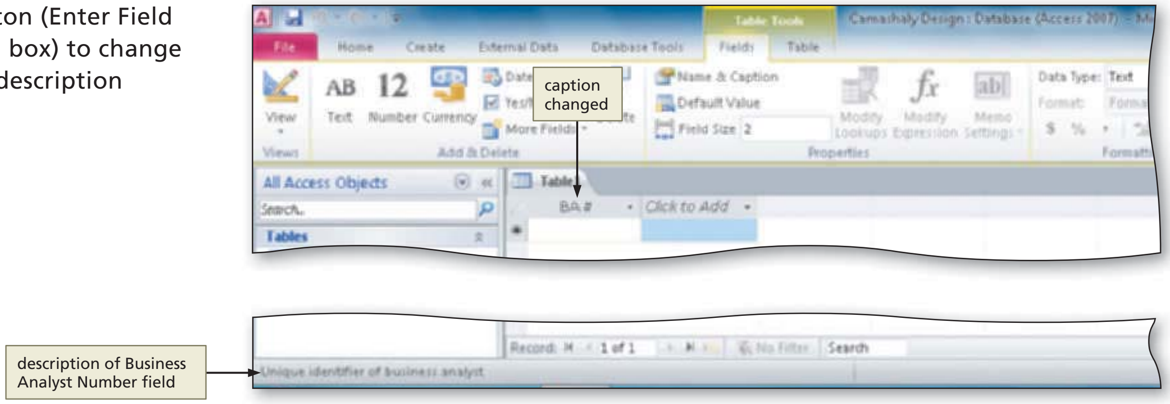

caption changed
description of Business Analyst Number field
BA #
Click to Add
Field Size 2
Unique identifier of business analyst

Figure 1–11

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Define the Remaining Fields in a Table

To define an additional field, you click the Click to Add column heading, select the data type, and then type the field name. This is different from the process you used to modify the ID field, which was an existing field. The following steps define the remaining fields shown in Table 1–3 on page AC 16.

1

- Click the Click to Add column heading to display a menu of available data types (Figure 1–12).

Q&A

Why don't I rename the field like I renamed the ID field?

The ID field was an existing field, created automatically by Access. For a new field, you need to click the Click to Add heading.

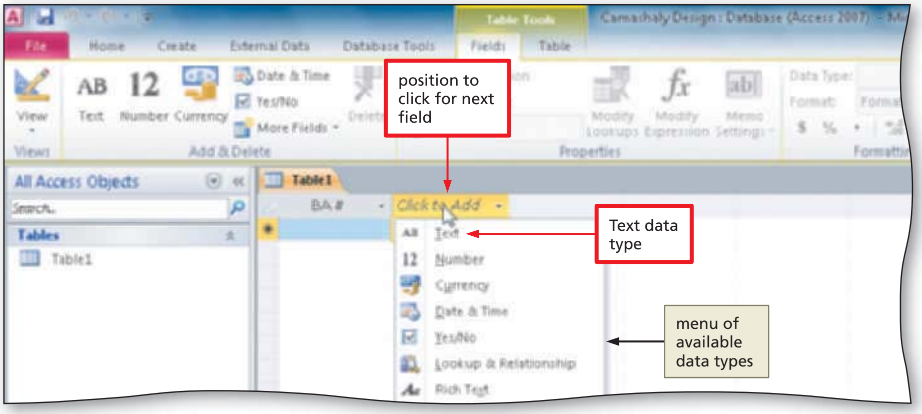

position to click for next field
Text data type
menu of available data types
Click to Add
Text
Number
Currency
Date & Time
Yes/No
Lookup & Relationship
Rich Text

Figure 1–12

2

- Click Text in the menu of available data types to select the Text data type.
- Type Last Name to enter a field name.
- Click the white space below the field name to complete the change of the name. Click the white space a second time to select the field (Figure 1–13).

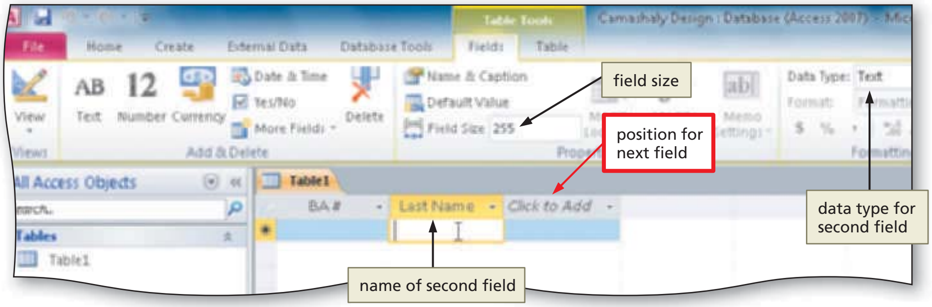

field size
position for next field
data type for second field
name of second field
Last Name
Click to Add

Figure 1–13

Q&A

I realized after I entered the field name that I selected the wrong data type. How can I correct it?

Click the Data Type box arrow and then select the correct type.

Q&A

I inadvertently clicked the white space before entering the field name. How can I correct the name?

Right-click the field name, click Rename Field on the shortcut menu, and then type the new name.

3

- Change the field size to 15 just as you changed the field size of the Business Analyst Number field.
- Using the same technique, add the remaining fields in the Business Analyst table. For the First Name, Street, City, State, and Postal Code fields, the Text data type is correct, but you will need to change the field size to match Table 1–3. For the Salary YTD and Incentive YTD fields, you need to change the data type to Currency. Before defining the Incentive YTD field, you may need to click the right scroll arrow to bring the column for the field to the screen (Figure 1–14).

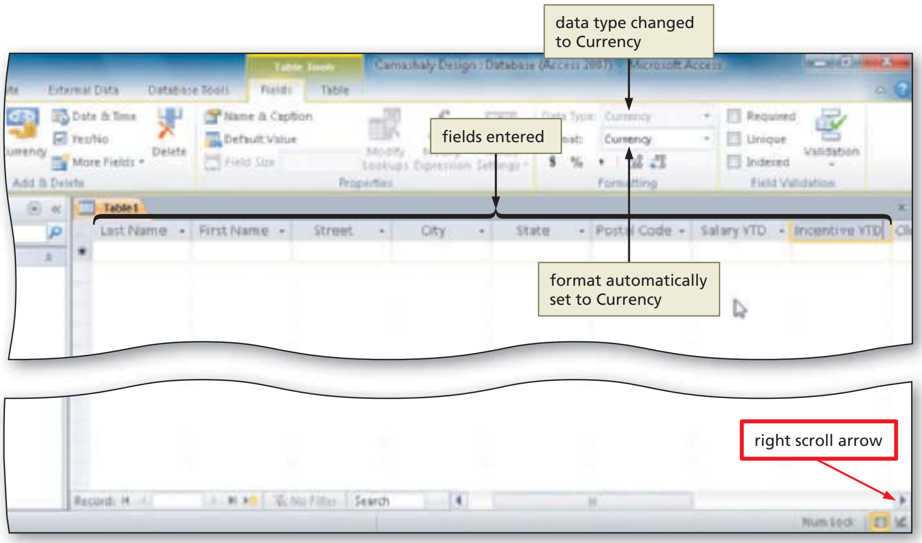

data type changed to Currency
fields entered
format automatically set to Currency
right scroll arrow
Last Name
First Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Salary YTD
Incentive YTD

Figure 1–14

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Q&A

Why does Currency appear twice?

The second Currency is the format, which indicates how the data will be displayed. For the Currency data type, Access automatically sets the format to Currency, which is usually what you would want. You could change it to something else, if desired, by clicking the arrow and selecting the desired format.

Q&A

I have an extra row between the row containing the field names and the row that begins with the asterisk. What happened? Is this a problem? If so, how do I fix it?

You inadvertently added a record to the table by pressing some key. Even pressing the SPACEBAR would add a record. You now have a record you do not want. To fix it, you need to delete the record, which you will do in Step 4.

4

- If you have an additional record between the field names and the asterisk, click the record selector (the box at the beginning of the record), press the DELETE key, and then click the Yes button when Access asks you if you want to delete the record.

Making Changes to the Structure

When creating a table, check the entries carefully to ensure they are correct. If you discover a mistake while still typing the entry, you can correct the error by repeatedly pressing the BACKSPACE key until the incorrect characters are removed. Then, type the correct characters. If you do not discover a mistake until later, you can use the following techniques to make the necessary changes to the structure:

- To undo your most recent change, click the Undo button on the Quick Access Toolbar. If there is nothing that Access can undo, this button will be dim, and clicking it will have no effect.
- To delete a field, right-click the column heading for the field (the position containing the field name), and then click Delete Field on the shortcut menu.
- To change the name of a field, right-click the column heading for the field, click Rename Field on the shortcut menu, and then type the desired field name.
- To insert a field as the last field, click the Click to Add column heading, click the appropriate data type on the menu of available data types, type the desired field name, and, if necessary, change the field size.
- To insert a field between existing fields, right-click the column heading for the field that will follow the new field, and then click Insert Field on the shortcut menu. Right-click the column heading for the field, click Rename Field on the shortcut menu, and then type the desired field name.
- To move a field, click the column heading for the field to be moved to select the field, and then drag the field to the desired position.

As an alternative to these steps, you may want to start over. To do so, click the Close button for the table, and then click the No button in the Microsoft Access dialog box. Click Create on the Ribbon and then click the Table button to create a table. You then can repeat the process you used earlier to define the fields in the table.

BTW

Currency Symbols

To show the symbol for the Euro (€) instead of the dollar sign, change the Format property for the field whose data type is currency. To change the default symbols for currency, change the settings in the operating system using the control panel.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Save a Table

The Business Analyst table structure now is complete. The final step is to save the table within the database. As part of the process, you will give the table a name. The following steps save the table, giving it the name, Business Analyst Table.

1

- Click the Save button on the Quick Access Toolbar to display the Save As dialog box (Figure 1–15).

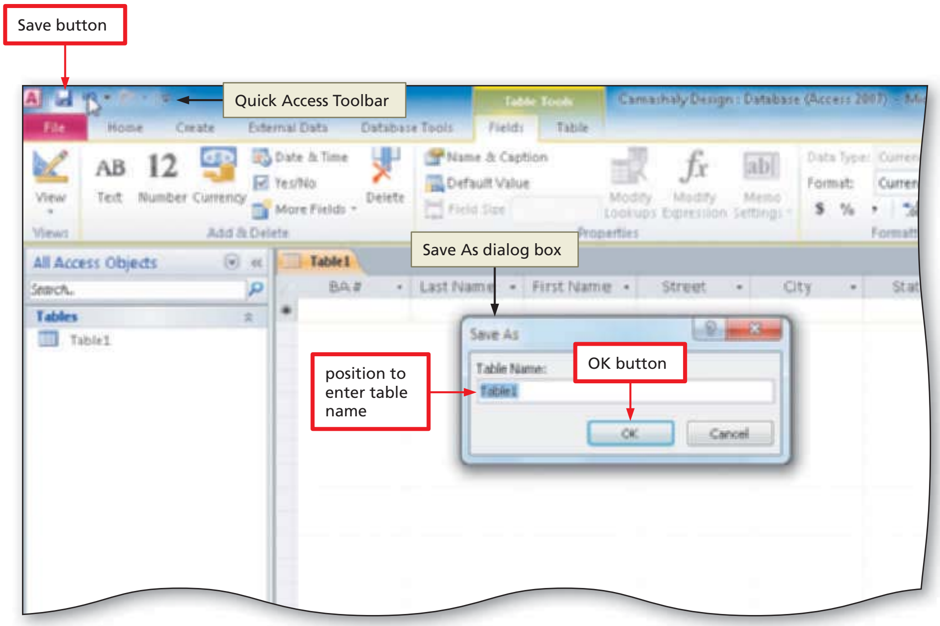

Save button
Quick Access Toolbar
Save As dialog box
position to enter table name
OK button
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Table Tools
Fields
Table
All Access Objects
Tables
Table1
Save As
Table Name:
Table1
OK
Cancel

Figure 1–15

2

- Type `Business Analyst Table` to change the name to be assigned to the table.
- Click the OK button (Save As dialog box) to save the table (Figure 1–16).

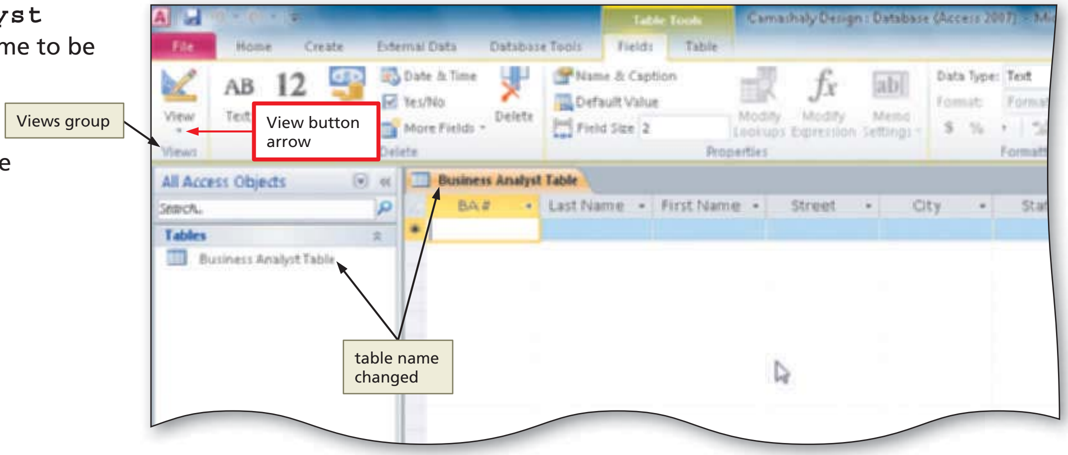

Views group
View button arrow
table name changed
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Table Tools
Fields
Table
All Access Objects
Tables
Business Analyst Table
BA #
Last Name
First Name
Street
City

Figure 1–16

Other Ways

1. Click File on the Ribbon, click Save in the Backstage view
2. Right-click tab for table, click Save on shortcut menu
3. Press CTRL+S

To View the Table in Design View

Even when creating a table in Datasheet view, Design view can be helpful. You should view the fields, data types, and properties to ensure you have entered them correctly. This viewing is easier to do in Design view. It is also easier to determine the primary key in Design view. The following steps view the structure of the Business Analyst Table in Design view so that you can verify the design is correct.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

1

- Click the View button arrow (Table Tools Fields tab | Views group) to display the View button menu (Figure 1–17).

Q&A

Could I just click the View button rather than the arrow?

Yes. Clicking the button is equivalent to clicking the command represented by the icon currently appearing on the button. Because the icon on the button in Figure 1–17 is the icon for Design view, clicking the button would display the table in Design view. If you are uncertain, you can always click the arrow and select from the menu.

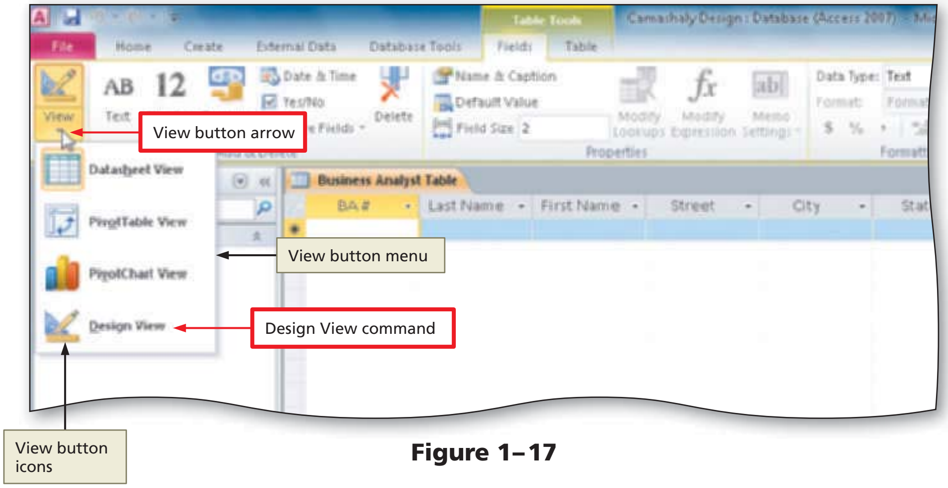
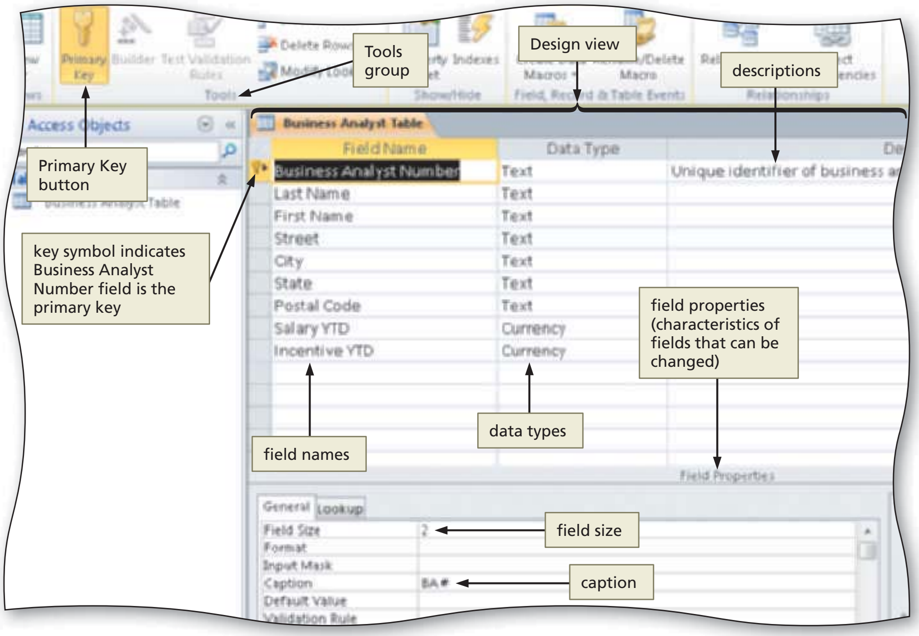

View button arrow
View button menu
Design View command
View button icons
Datasheet View
PivotTable View
PivotChart View
Design View
Business Analyst Table
BA #
Last Name
First Name
Street
City

Figure 1–17

2

- Click Design View on the View button menu to view the table in Design view (Figure 1–18).


Tools group
Design view
descriptions
Primary Key button
key symbol indicates Business Analyst Number field is the primary key
field properties (characteristics of fields that can be changed)
field names
data types
field size
caption
Access Objects
Business Analyst Table

Field Name	Data Type	Description
Business Analyst Number	Text	Unique identifier of business a
Last Name	Text	
First Name	Text	
Street	Text	
City	Text	
State	Text	
Postal Code	Text	
Salary YTD	Currency	
Incentive YTD	Currency	

Field Size: 2

Caption: BA #

Figure 1–18

Other Ways

1. Click Design View button on Status bar

Checking the Structure in Design View

You should use Design view to carefully check the entries you have made. In Figure 1–18, for example, you can see that the Business Analyst Number field is the primary key of the Business Analyst Table by the key symbol in front of the field name. If your table does not have a key symbol, you can click the Primary Key button (Table Tools Design tab | Tools group) to designate the field as the primary key. You also can check that the data type, the description, the field size, and the caption are all correct.

For the other fields, you can see the field name, data type, and description without taking any special action. To see the field size and/or caption for a field, click the field's **row selector**, the small box that precedes the field. Clicking the row selector for the Last Name field, for example, displays the field properties for the field (Figure 1–19). You then can check to see that the field size is correct. In addition, if the field has a caption, you can check to see if that is correct as well. If you find any mistakes, you can make the necessary corrections on this screen. When you have finished, you would click the Save button to save your changes.

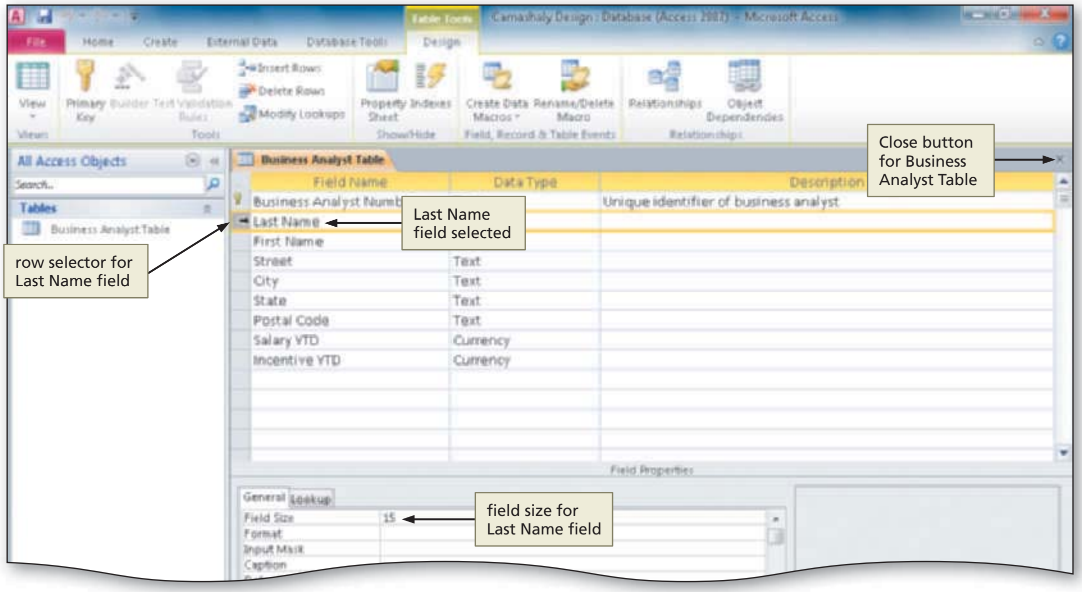
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Close the Table

Once you are sure that your entries are correct and you have saved your changes, you can close the table.

1

- Click the Close button for the Business Analyst Table to close the table (Figure 1–19).


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
Table Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
View
Primary Key
Builder
Test Validation Rules
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Modify Lookups
Property Sheet
Indexes
Create Data Macros
Rename/Delete Macro
Relationships
Object Dependencies
Views
Tools
Show/Hide
Field, Record & Table Events
Relationships
All Access Objects
Search...
Tables
Business Analyst Table
Close button for Business Analyst Table
Last Name field selected
row selector for Last Name field
Field Properties
General
Lookup
field size for Last Name field

Field Name	Data Type	Description
Business Analyst Numb		Unique identifier of business analyst
Last Name		
First Name		
Street	Text	
City	Text	
State	Text	
Postal Code	Text	
Salary YTD	Currency	
Incentive YTD	Currency	

Field Size	15
Format	
Input Mask	
Caption	

Figure 1–19

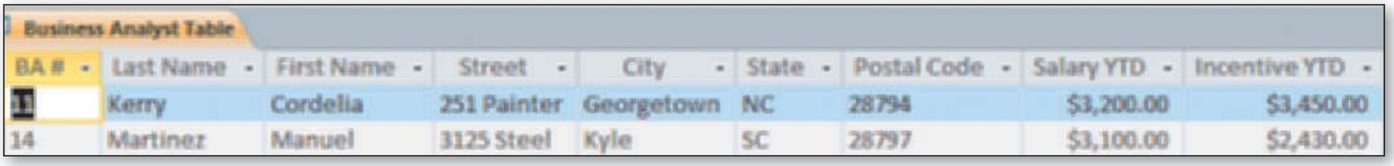
Other Ways

1. Right-click tab for table, click Close on shortcut menu

To Add Records to a Table

Creating a table by building the structure and saving the table is the first step in a two-step process. The second step is to add records to the table. To add records to a table, the table must be open. When making changes to tables, you work in Datasheet view. In Datasheet view, the table is represented as a collection of rows and columns called a **datasheet**.

You often add records in phases. For example, you might not have enough time to add all the records in one session. The following steps open the Business Analyst Table in Datasheet view and then add the first two records in the Business Analyst Table (Figure 1–20).


Business Analyst Table

BA #	Last Name	First Name	Street	City	State	Postal Code	Salary YTD	Incentive YTD
11	Kerry	Cordelia	251 Painter	Georgetown	NC	28794	$3,200.00	$3,450.00
14	Martinez	Manuel	3125 Steel	Kyle	SC	28797	$3,100.00	$2,430.00

Figure 1–20

1

- Right-click the Business Analyst Table in the Navigation Pane to display the shortcut menu (Figure 1–21).

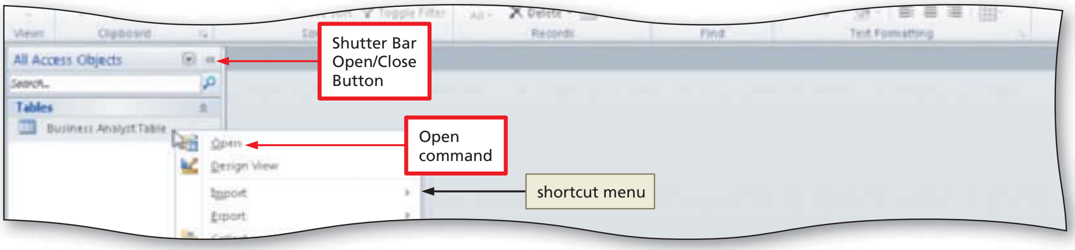

Views
Clipboard
Toggle Filter
Delete
Records
Find
Text Formatting
All Access Objects
Search...
Tables
Business Analyst Table
Shutter Bar Open/Close Button
Open
Design View
Import
Export
Open command
shortcut menu

Figure 1–21

2

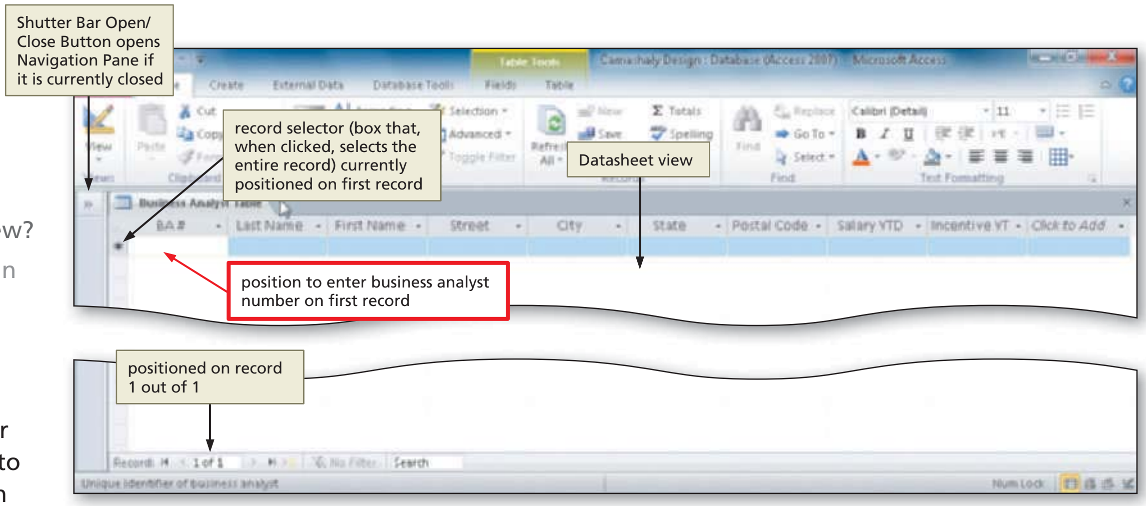
- Click Open on the shortcut menu to open the table in Datasheet view.

Q&A

What if I want to return to Design view?

You can open Design view by clicking Design View on the shortcut menu.

- Click the Shutter Bar Open/Close Button to close the Navigation Pane (Figure 1–22).


Shutter Bar Open/Close Button opens Navigation Pane if it is currently closed

record selector (box that, when clicked, selects the entire record) currently positioned on first record

Datasheet view

position to enter business analyst number on first record

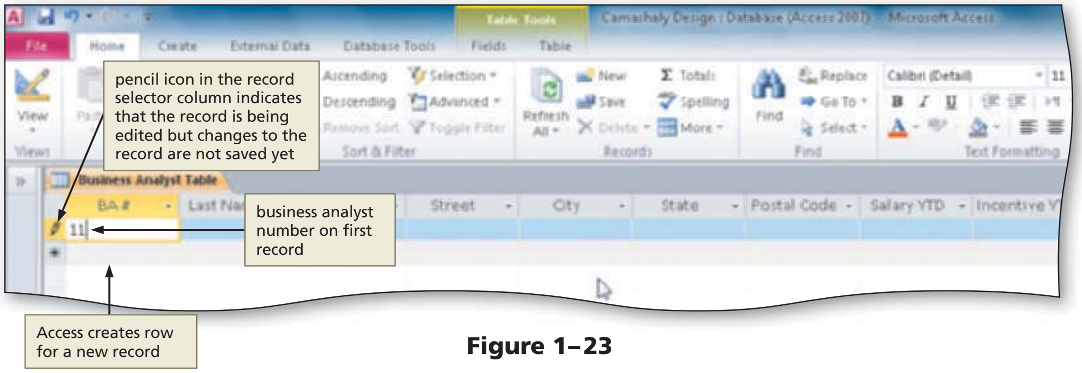
positioned on record 1 out of 1

Business Analyst Table
BA #
Last Name
First Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Salary YTD
Incentive YT
Click to Add
Record: 1 of 1
No Filter
Search
Unique identifier of business analyst
Num Lock

Figure 1–22

3

- Click the BA # field if necessary to display an insertion point, and type `11` to enter the first business analyst number (Figure 1–23).


pencil icon in the record selector column indicates that the record is being edited but changes to the record are not saved yet

business analyst number on first record

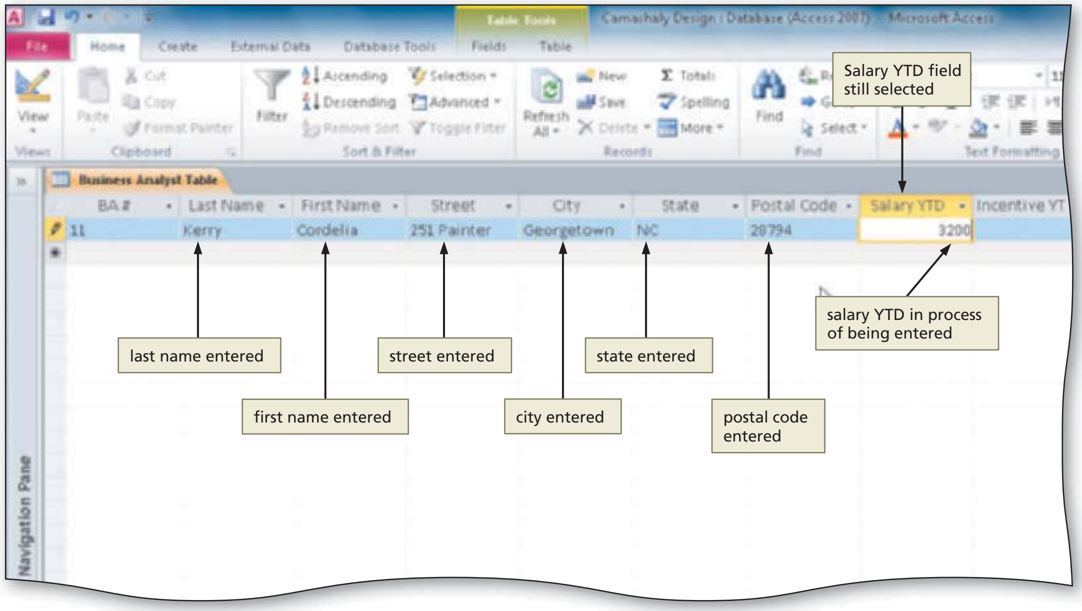
Access creates row for a new record

Table Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Fields
Table
Business Analyst Table
BA #
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Salary YTD
Incentive Y
11

Figure 1–23

4

- Press the TAB key to move to the next field.
- Enter the last name, first name, street, city, state, and postal code by typing the following entries, pressing the TAB key after each one: **`Kerry`** as the last name, **`Cordelia`** as the first name, **`251 Painter`** as the street, **`Georgetown`** as the city, **`NC`** as the state, and **`28794`** as the postal code.
- Type `3200` in the Salary YTD field (Figure 1–24).


Salary YTD field still selected

salary YTD in process of being entered

last name entered

street entered

state entered

first name entered

city entered

postal code entered

Table Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
Business Analyst Table
BA #
Last Name
First Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Salary YTD
Incentive YT
11
Kerry
Cordelia
251 Painter
Georgetown
NC
28794
3200
Navigation Pane

Figure 1–24

Q&A

Do I need to type a dollar sign?

You do not need to type dollar signs or commas. In addition, because the digits to the right of the decimal point are both zeros, you do not need to type either the decimal point or the zeros.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

5

- Press the TAB key to complete the entry for the field.
- Type **3450** in the Incentive YTD field, and then press the TAB key to complete the entry of the first record (Figure 1–25).

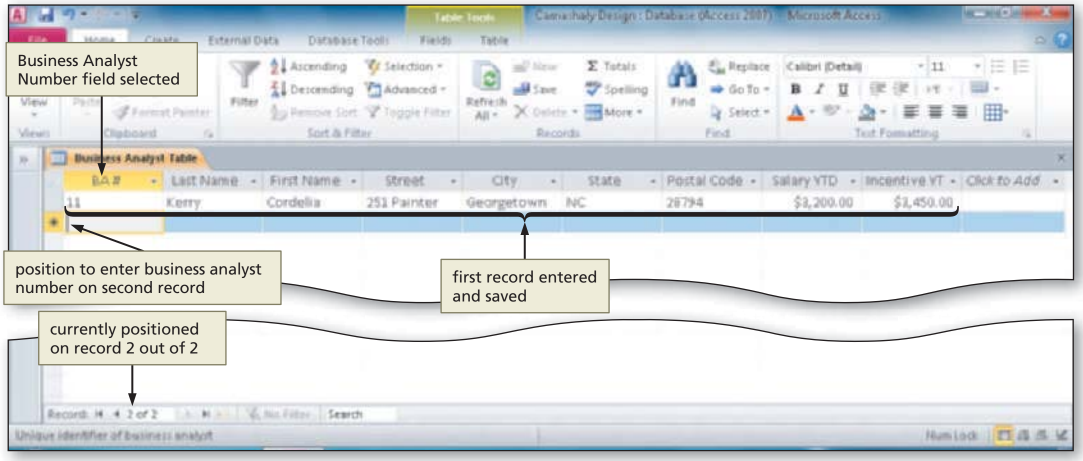


Table Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Fields
Table
View
Paste
Format Painter
Views
Clipboard
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Sort & Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Records
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Calibri (Detail)
11
Text Formatting
Business Analyst Table
Record: 2 of 2
No Filter
Search
Unique identifier of business analyst
Num Lock

BA #	Last Name	First Name	Street	City	State	Postal Code	Salary YTD	Incentive YT	Click to Add
11	Kerry	Cordelia	251 Painter	Georgetown	NC	28794	$3,200.00	$3,450.00	

Business Analyst Number field selected

position to enter business analyst number on second record

first record entered and saved

currently positioned on record 2 out of 2

Figure 1–25

Q&A How and when do I save the record?

As soon as you have entered or modified a record and moved to another record, the original record is saved. This is different from other applications. The rows entered in an Excel worksheet, for example, are not saved until the entire worksheet is saved.

6

- Use the techniques shown in Steps 3 through 5 to enter the data for the second record (Figure 1–26).

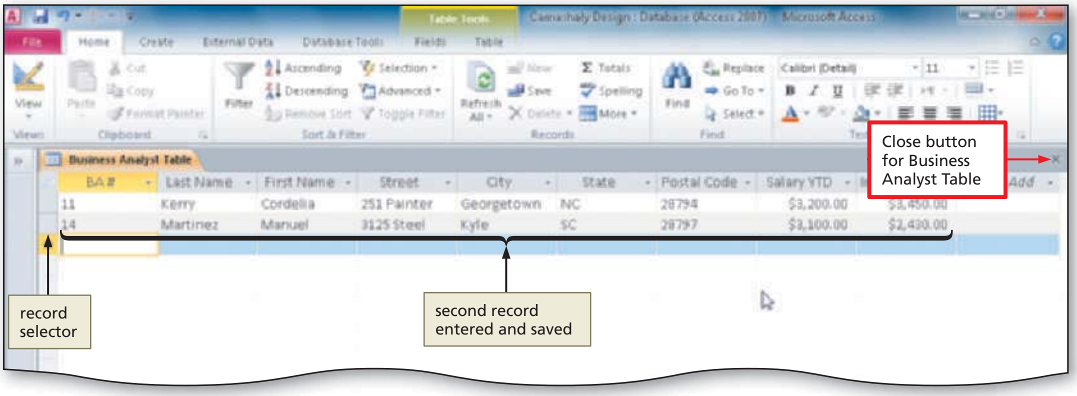


Table Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Fields
Table
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Views
Clipboard
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Sort & Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Records
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Calibri (Detail)
11
Business Analyst Table

BA #	Last Name	First Name	Street	City	State	Postal Code	Salary YTD	Incentive YT	Add
11	Kerry	Cordelia	251 Painter	Georgetown	NC	28794	$3,200.00	$3,450.00	
14	Martinez	Manuel	3125 Steel	Kyle	SC	28797	$3,100.00	$2,430.00	

Close button for Business Analyst Table

record selector

second record entered and saved

Figure 1–26

Experiment

- Click the Salary YTD field on either of the records. Be sure the Table Tools Fields tab is selected. Click the Format box arrow and then click each of the formats in the Format box menu to see the effect on the values in the Salary YTD field. When finished, click Currency in the Format box menu.

Making Changes to the Data

As you enter data, check your entries carefully to ensure they are correct. If you make a mistake and discover it before you press the TAB key, correct it by pressing the BACKSPACE key until the incorrect characters are removed, and then type the correct characters. If you do not discover a mistake until later, you can use the following techniques to make the necessary corrections to the data:

- To undo your most recent change, click the Undo button on the Quick Access Toolbar. If there is nothing that Access can undo, this button will be dimmed, and clicking it will have no effect.
- To add a record, click the New (blank) record button, click the position for the Business Analyst Number field on the first open record, and then add the record. Do not worry about it being in the correct position in the table. Access will reposition the record based on the primary key, in this case, the Business Analyst Number.

BTW **Adding Records**
You can add records in any order. When you close a table and re-open it, the records will be in order by primary key.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

- To delete a record, click the record selector, shown in Figure 1–26, for the record to be deleted. Then press the DELETE key to delete the record, and click the Yes button when Access asks you to verify that you do indeed want to delete the record.
- To change the contents of one or more fields in a record, the record must be on the screen. If it is not, use any appropriate technique, such as the UP ARROW and DOWN ARROW keys or the vertical scroll bar, to move to it. If the field you want to correct is not visible on the screen, use the horizontal scroll bar along the bottom of the screen to shift all the fields until the one you want appears. If the value in the field is currently highlighted, you can simply type the new value. If you would rather edit the existing value, you must have an insertion point in the field. You can place the insertion point by clicking in the field or by pressing F2. You then can use the arrow keys, the DELETE key, and the BACKSPACE key for making the correction. You also can use the INSERT key to switch between Insert and Overtype mode. When you have made the change, press the TAB key to move to the next field.

If you cannot determine how to correct the data, you may find that you are "stuck" on the record, in which case Access neither allows you to move to another record nor allows you to close the table until you have made the correction. If you encounter this situation, simply press the ESC key. Pressing the ESC key will remove from the screen the record you are trying to add. You then can move to any other record, close the table, or take any other action you desire.

To Close a Table

Now that you have created and saved the Business Analyst Table, you can close it. The following step closes the table.

1. Click the Close button for the Business Analyst Table, shown in Figure 1–26, to close the table (Figure 1–27).

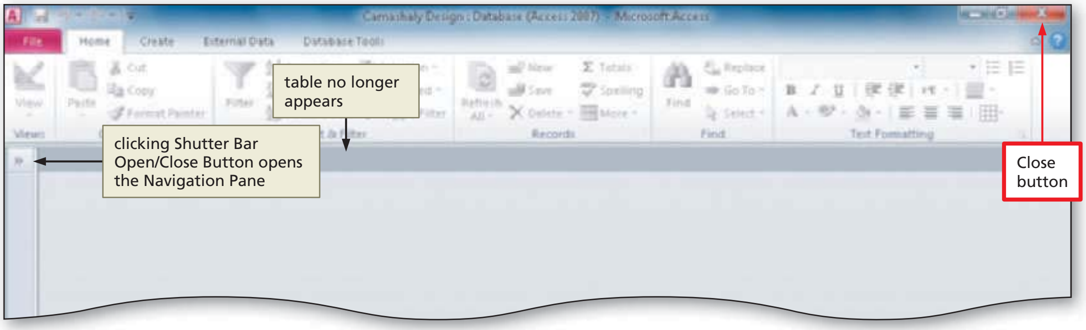

Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Views
Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Records
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Text Formatting
table no longer appears
clicking Shutter Bar Open/Close Button opens the Navigation Pane
Close button

Figure 1–27

To Quit Access

The following steps quit Access. For a detailed example of the procedure summarized below, refer to the Office 2010 and Windows 7 chapter at the beginning of this book.

1. Click the Close button on the right side of the title bar to quit Access.
2. If a Microsoft Access dialog box appears, click the Save button to save any changes made to the object since the last save.

Break Point: If you wish to take a break, this is a good place to do so. To resume at a later time, continue following the steps from this location forward.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Starting Access and Opening a Database

Once you have created and later closed a database, you will need to open it in the future in order to use it. Opening a database requires that Access is running on your computer.

To Start Access

1. Click the Start button on the Windows 7 taskbar to display the Start menu.
2. Type `Microsoft Access` as the search text in the 'Search programs and files' text box and watch the search results appear on the Start menu.
3. Click Microsoft Access 2010 in the search results on the Start menu to start Access.

To Open a Database from Access

Earlier in this chapter, you saved your database on a USB flash drive using the file name, Camashaly Design. The following steps open the Camashaly Design database from the Access folder in the CIS 101 folder on the USB flash drive. For a detailed example of the procedure summarized below, refer to the Office 2010 and Windows 7 chapter at the beginning of this book.

1. With your USB flash drive connected to one of the computer's USB ports, click File on the Ribbon to open the Backstage view, if necessary.
2. Click Open in the Backstage view to display the Open dialog box.
3. Navigate to the location of the file to be opened (in this case, the USB flash drive, then to the CIS 101 folder [or your class folder], and then to the Access folder).
4. Click Camashaly Design to select the file to be opened.
5. Click the Open button (Open dialog box) to open the selected file and display the opened database in the Access window.
6. If a Security Warning appears, click the Enable Content button (Figure 1–28).

BTW

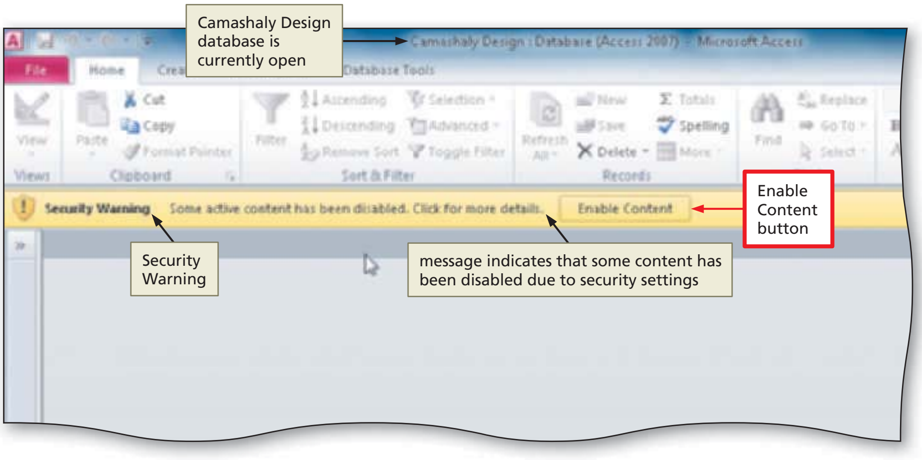
Organizing Files and Folders

You should organize and store files in folders so that you easily can find the files later. For a discussion of folders and detailed examples of creating folders, refer to the Office 2010 and Windows 7 chapter at the beginning of this book.

Q&A

When would I not want to enable the content?

You would want to disable the content if you suspected that your database might contain harmful content or damaging macros. Because you are the one who created the database and no one else has used it, you should have no such suspicions.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access

Security Warning Some active content has been disabled. Click for more details. Enable Content

Camashaly Design database is currently open
File
Home
Crea
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Views
Clipboard
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Sort & Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Records
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Enable Content button
Security Warning
message indicates that some content has been disabled due to security settings

Figure 1–28

Other Ways

1. Click File on the Ribbon, click Recent in the Backstage view, click file name

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

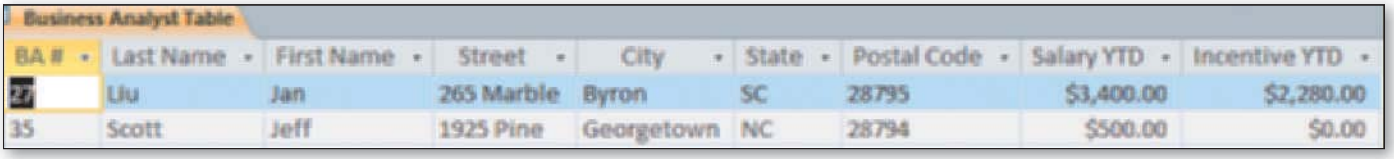
To Add Additional Records to a Table

You can add records to a table that already contains data using a process almost identical to that used to add records to an empty table. The only difference is that you place the insertion point after the last record before you enter the additional data. To do so, use the **Navigation buttons**, which are buttons used to move within a table, found near the lower-left corner of the screen when a table is open. The purpose of each of the Navigation buttons is described in Table 1–4.

Table 1–4 Navigation Buttons in Datasheet View

Button	Purpose
First record	Moves to the first record in the table
Previous record	Moves to the previous record
Next record	Moves to the next record
Last record	Moves to the last record in the table
New (blank) record	Moves to the end of the table to a position for entering a new record

The following steps add the remaining records (Figure 1–29) to the Business Analyst table.



Business Analyst Table

BA #	Last Name	First Name	Street	City	State	Postal Code	Salary YTD	Incentive YTD
27	Liu	Jan	265 Marble	Byron	SC	28795	$3,400.00	$2,280.00
35	Scott	Jeff	1925 Pine	Georgetown	NC	28794	$500.00	$0.00

Figure 1–29

1

- If the Navigation Pane is closed, click the Shutter Bar Open/Close Button, shown in Figure 1–27, to open the Navigation Pane (Figure 1–30).

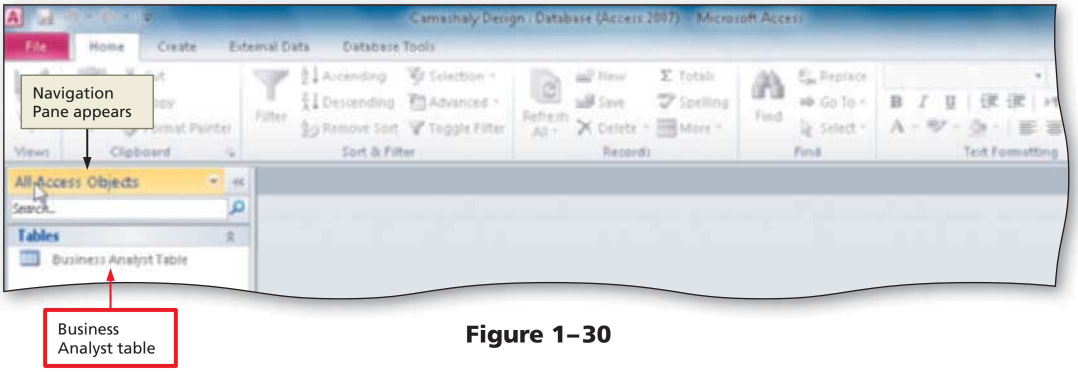

Navigation Pane appears
Business Analyst table

Figure 1–30

2

- Right-click the Business Analyst table in the Navigation Pane to display a shortcut menu.
- Click Open on the shortcut menu to open the table in Datasheet view.
- Close the Navigation Pane by clicking the Shutter Bar Open/Close Button (Figure 1–31).

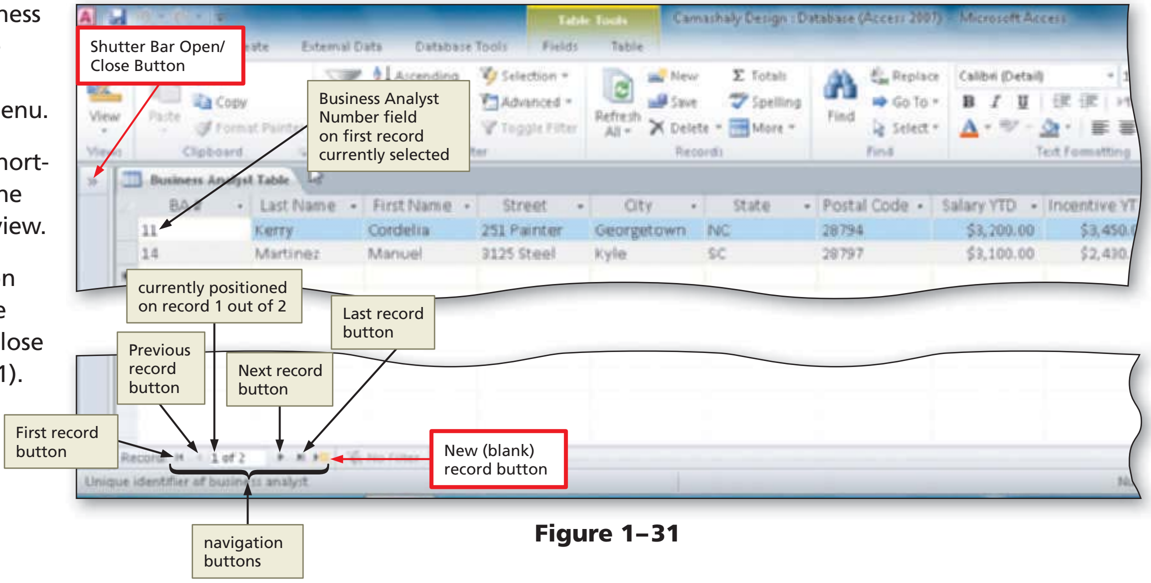

Shutter Bar Open/Close Button
Business Analyst Number field on first record currently selected
currently positioned on record 1 out of 2
Last record button
Previous record button
Next record button
First record button
New (blank) record button
navigation buttons

Figure 1–31

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3

- Click the New (blank) record button to move to a position to enter a new record (Figure 1–32).

Q&A

Could you just click the Business Analyst Number (BA #) on the first open record and then add the record?

Yes, but it's a good habit to use the New (blank) Record button. Once a table contains more records than will fit on the screen, it is easier to click the New (blank) record button.

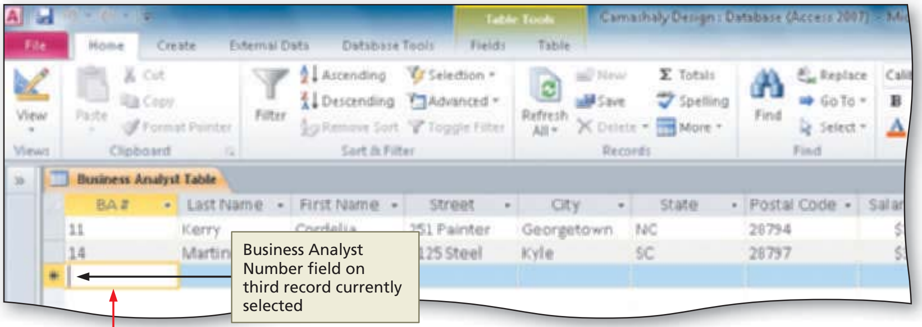


Table Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Fields
Table
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Find
Business Analyst Table

BA #	Last Name	First Name	Street	City	State	Postal Code
11	Kerry	Cordelia	251 Painter	Georgetown	NC	28794
14	Martin		3125 Steel	Kyle	SC	28797

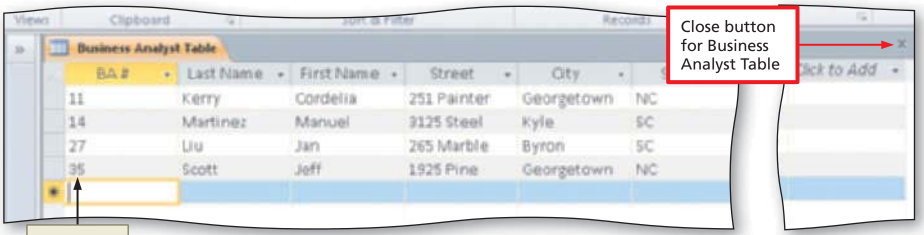
Business Analyst Number field on third record currently selected

position to type business analyst number for new record

Figure 1–32

4

- Add the records shown in Figure 1–29, using the same techniques you used to add the first two records (Figure 1–33).


Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Business Analyst Table
Click to Add

BA #	Last Name	First Name	Street	City	State
11	Kerry	Cordelia	251 Painter	Georgetown	NC
14	Martinez	Manuel	3125 Steel	Kyle	SC
27	Liu	Jan	265 Marble	Byron	SC
35	Scott	Jeff	1925 Pine	Georgetown	NC

Close button for Business Analyst Table

all records added

Figure 1–33

Other Ways

1. Click New button (Home tab | Records group)
2. Press CTRL+PLUS SIGN (+)

To Resize Columns in a Datasheet

Access assigns default column sizes, which do not always allow all the data in the field to appear. In some cases, the data might appear but not the entire field name. You can correct this problem by **resizing** the column (changing its size) in the datasheet. In some instances, you may want to reduce the size of a column. The State field, for example, is short enough that it does not require all the space on the screen that is allotted to it. Changing a column width changes the **layout**, or design, of a table.

The following steps resize the columns in the Business Analyst table and save the changes to the layout.

1

- Point to the right boundary of the field selector for the Business Analyst (BA #) field (Figure 1–34) so that the mouse pointer becomes a two-headed arrow.

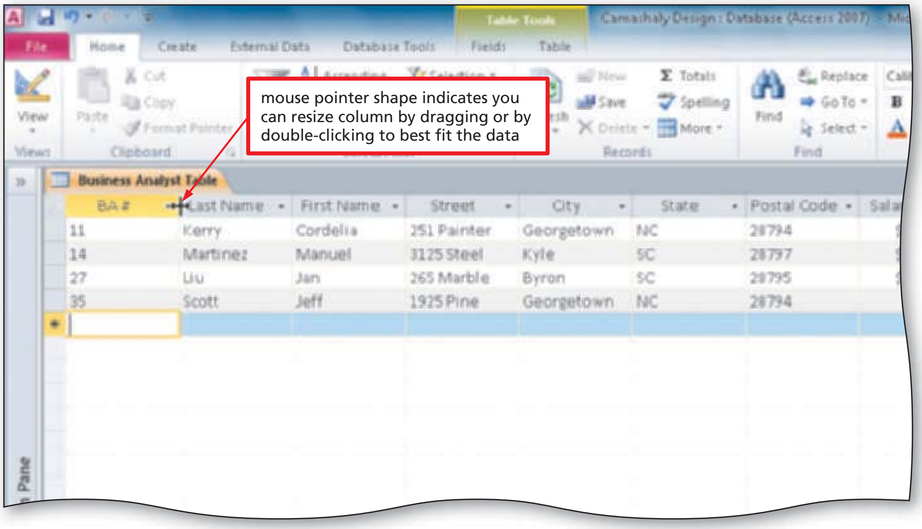


Table Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Fields
Table
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Views
Clipboard
Records
Find
Business Analyst Table
Navigation Pane

BA #	Last Name	First Name	Street	City	State	Postal Code
11	Kerry	Cordelia	251 Painter	Georgetown	NC	28794
14	Martinez	Manuel	3125 Steel	Kyle	SC	28797
27	Liu	Jan	265 Marble	Byron	SC	28795
35	Scott	Jeff	1925 Pine	Georgetown	NC	28794

mouse pointer shape indicates you can resize column by dragging or by double-clicking to best fit the data

Figure 1–34

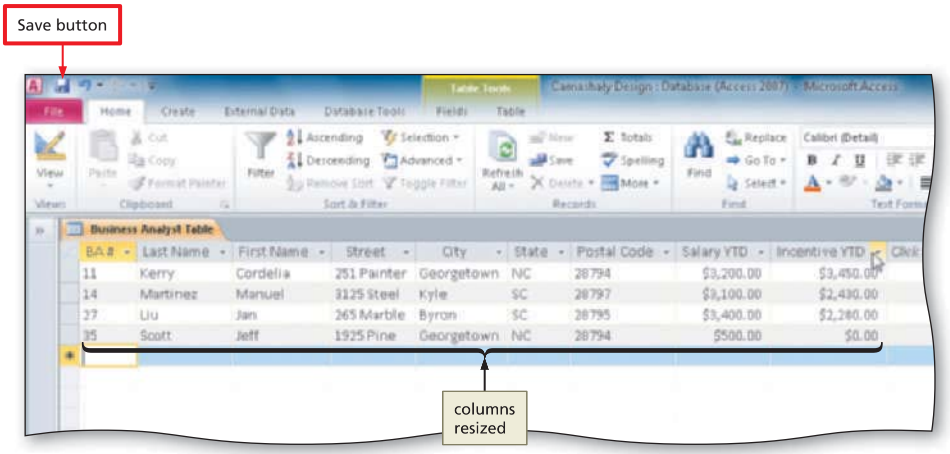
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2

- Double-click the right boundary of the field selector to resize the field so that it best fits the data.
- Use the same technique to resize all the other fields to best fit the data (Figure 1–35).

3

- Save the changes to the layout by clicking the Save button on the Quick Access Toolbar (Figure 1–35).
- Click the table's Close button (shown in Figure 1–33) to the table.



BA #	Last Name	First Name	Street	City	State	Postal Code	Salary YTD	Incentive YTD
11	Kerry	Cordelia	251 Painter	Georgetown	NC	28794	$3,200.00	$3,450.00
14	Martinez	Manuel	3125 Steel	Kyle	SC	28797	$3,100.00	$2,430.00
27	Liu	Jan	265 Marble	Byron	SC	28795	$3,400.00	$2,280.00
35	Scott	Jeff	1925 Pine	Georgetown	NC	28794	$500.00	$0.00

Figure 1–35

Q&A

What if I closed the table without saving the layout changes?

You would be asked if you want to save the changes.

Other Ways

1. Right-click field name, click Field Width

Plan Ahead

Determine the best method for distributing the database objects.

The traditional method of distributing database objects uses a printer to produce a hard copy of a table. A **hard copy** or **printout** is information that exists on a physical medium such as paper. For users who can receive fax documents, you can elect to print a hard copy on a remote fax machine. Hard copies can be useful for the following reasons:

- Many people prefer proofreading a hard copy of a document rather than viewing it on the screen to check for errors and readability.
- Hard copies can serve as reference material if your storage medium is lost or becomes corrupted and you need to re-create the document.

Instead of distributing a hard copy, users can choose to distribute the document as an electronic image that mirrors the original document's appearance. The electronic image of the document can be e-mailed, posted on a Web site, or copied to a portable medium such as a USB flash drive. Two popular electronic image formats, sometimes called fixed formats, are PDF by Adobe Systems and XPS by Microsoft. In Access, you can create PDF and XPS files through the External Data tab on the Ribbon. Electronic images of documents, such as PDF and XPS, can be useful for the following reasons.

- Users can view electronic images of documents without the software that created the original document (i.e., Access). Specifically, to view a PDF file, you use a program called Acrobat Reader, which can be downloaded free from Adobe's Web site. Similarly, to view an XPS file, you use a program called an XPS Viewer, which is included in the latest versions of Windows and Internet Explorer.
- Sending electronic documents saves paper and printer supplies. Society encourages users to contribute to **green computing**, which involves reducing the environmental waste generated when using a computer.

BTW

Changing Printers

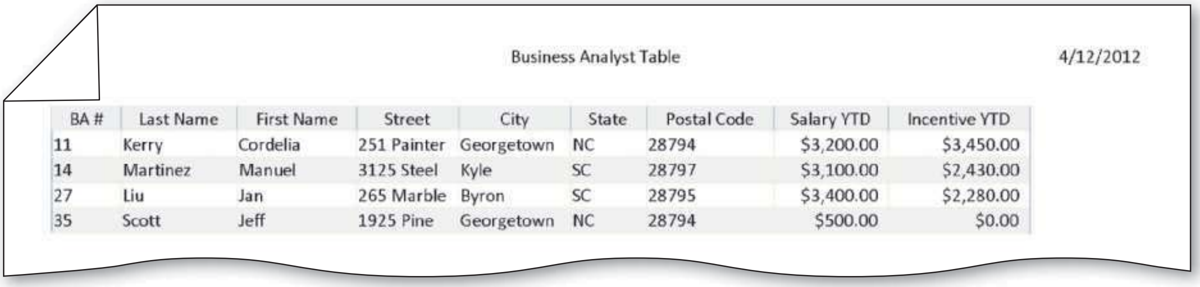
To change the default printer that appears in the Print dialog box, click File on the Ribbon, click the Print tab in the Backstage view, click Print in the Print gallery, then click the Name box arrow and select the desired printer.

Previewing and Printing the Contents of a Table

When working with a database, you often will need to print a copy of the table contents. Figure 1–36 shows a printed copy of the contents of the Business Analyst table. (Yours may look slightly different, depending on your printer.) Because the Business Analyst table is substantially wider than the screen, it also will be wider than the normal printed page in portrait orientation. **Portrait orientation** means the printout is across the width of the page. **Landscape orientation** means the printout is across the height of the page. Thus, to

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

print the wide database table, you might prefer to use landscape orientation. A convenient way to change to landscape orientation is to preview what the printed copy will look like by using Print Preview. This allows you to determine whether landscape orientation is necessary and, if it is, to change the orientation easily to landscape. In addition, you also can use Print Preview to determine whether any adjustments are necessary to the page margins.



Business Analyst Table 4/12/2012

BA #	Last Name	First Name	Street	City	State	Postal Code	Salary YTD	Incentive YTD
11	Kerry	Cordelia	251 Painter	Georgetown	NC	28794	$3,200.00	$3,450.00
14	Martinez	Manuel	3125 Steel	Kyle	SC	28797	$3,100.00	$2,430.00
27	Liu	Jan	265 Marble	Byron	SC	28795	$3,400.00	$2,280.00
35	Scott	Jeff	1925 Pine	Georgetown	NC	28794	$500.00	$0.00

Figure 1–36

To Preview and Print the Contents of a Table

The following steps use Print Preview to preview and then print the contents of the Business Analyst table.

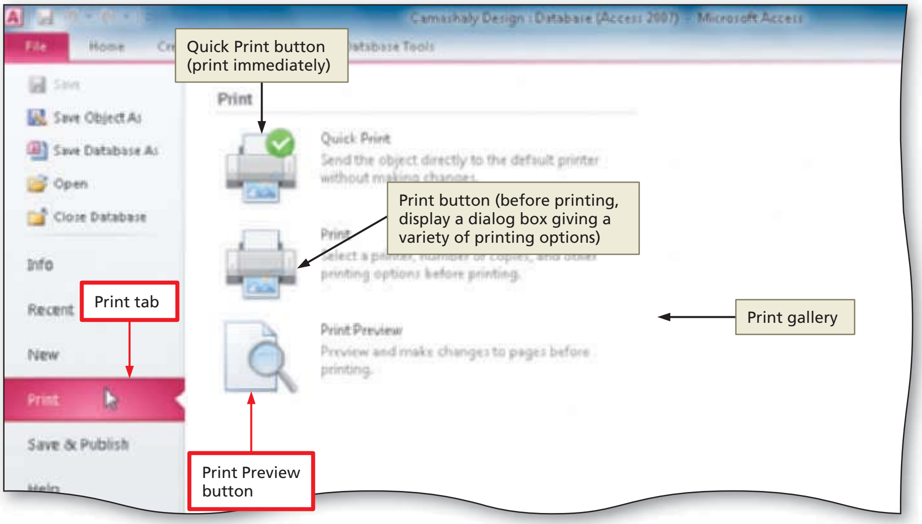
1

- If the Navigation Pane is closed, open the Navigation Pane by clicking the Shutter Bar Open/Close Button.
- Be sure the Business Analyst table is selected.

Q&A

Why do I have to be sure the Business Analyst table is selected? It is the only object in the database.

When the database contains only one object, you don't have to worry about selecting the object. Ensuring that the correct object is selected is a good habit to form, however, to make sure that the object you print is the one you want.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Database Tools
Save
Save Object As
Save Database As
Open
Close Database
Info
Recent
New
Print
Save & Publish
Help
Print
Quick Print
Print
Print Preview
Quick Print button (print immediately)
Print button (before printing, display a dialog box giving a variety of printing options)
Print tab
Print gallery
Print Preview button

Send the object directly to the default printer without making changes.

Select a printer, number of copies, and other printing options before printing.

Preview and make changes to pages before printing.

Figure 1–37

- Click File on the Ribbon to open the Backstage view.
- Click the Print tab in the Backstage view to display the Print gallery (Figure 1–37).

2

- Click the Print Preview button in the Print gallery to display a preview of what the table will look like when printed.
- Close the Navigation Pane to free up more of the screen for the preview (Figure 1–38).

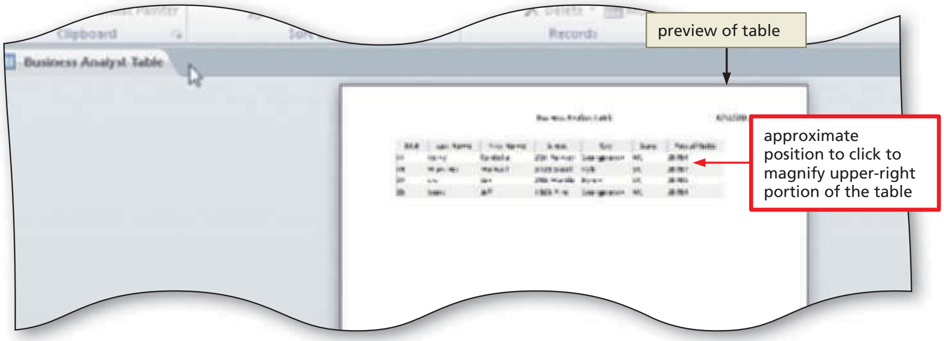

Clipboard
Records
Business Analyst Table
preview of table
approximate position to click to magnify upper-right portion of the table

Figure 1–38

Q&A

I can't read the table. Can I magnify a portion of the table?

Yes. Point the mouse pointer, whose shape will change to a magnifying glass, at the portion of the table that you want to magnify, and then click. You can return the view of the table to the one shown in the figure by clicking a second time.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

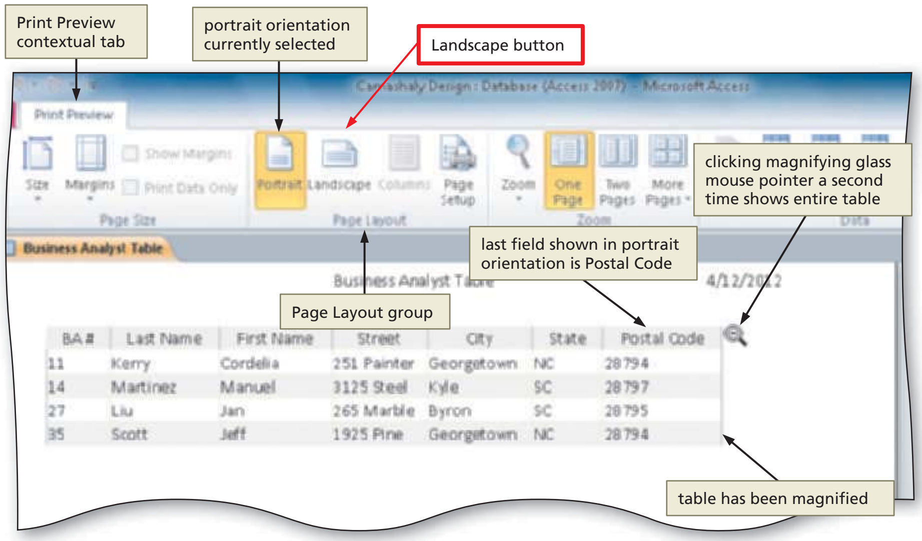
3

- Click the mouse pointer in the position shown in Figure 1–38 to magnify the upper-right section of the table (Figure 1–39).

Q&A

My table was already magnified in a different area. How can I see the area shown in the figure?

One way is to use the scroll bars to move to the desired portion of the table. You also can click the mouse pointer anywhere in the table to produce a screen like the one in Figure 1–38, and then click in the location shown in the figure.

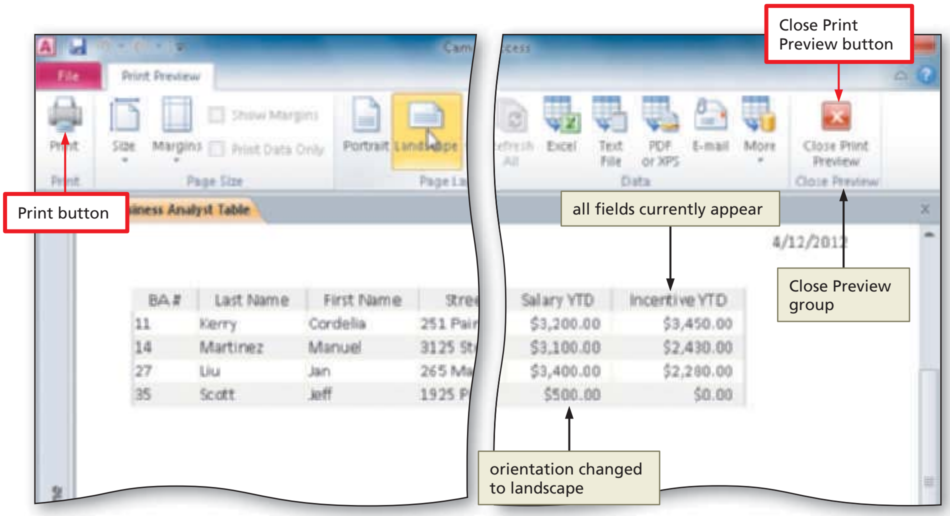

Print Preview contextual tab
portrait orientation currently selected
Landscape button
clicking magnifying glass mouse pointer a second time shows entire table
last field shown in portrait orientation is Postal Code
Page Layout group
table has been magnified
Business Analyst Table
4/12/2012

BA #	Last Name	First Name	Street	City	State	Postal Code
11	Kerry	Cordelia	251 Painter	Georgetown	NC	28794
14	Martinez	Manuel	3125 Steel	Kyle	SC	28797
27	Liu	Jan	265 Marble	Byron	SC	28795
35	Scott	Jeff	1925 Pine	Georgetown	NC	28794

Figure 1–39

4

- Click the Landscape button to change to landscape orientation (Figure 1–40).
- Click the Print button (Print Preview tab | Print group) to display the Print dialog box.
- Click the OK button (Print dialog box) to print the table.
- When the printer stops, retrieve the hard copy of the Business Analyst Table.
- Click the Close Print Preview button (Print Preview tab | Close Preview group) to close the Print Preview window.


Close Print Preview button
Print button
all fields currently appear
Close Preview group
orientation changed to landscape
Business Analyst Table
4/12/2012

BA #	Last Name	First Name	Stree	Salary YTD	Incentive YTD
11	Kerry	Cordelia	251 Pai	$3,200.00	$3,450.00
14	Martinez	Manuel	3125 St	$3,100.00	$2,430.00
27	Liu	Jan	265 Ma	$3,400.00	$2,280.00
35	Scott	Jeff	1925 P	$500.00	$0.00

Figure 1–40

Other Ways

1. Press CTRL+P, click OK button (Print dialog box)

Creating Additional Tables

The Camashaly Design database contains two tables, the Business Analyst table and the Client table. You still need to create the Client table and add records to it. You created the Business Analyst table in Datasheet view. You will create the Client table in Design view.

Recall that the fields for the Client table are Client Number, Client Name, Street, City, State, Postal Code, Amount Paid, Current Due, Contract Hours YTD, and Business Analyst Number. The details that must be entered for these fields are shown in Table 1–5. The Client Number is the primary key. The Client Number field and the Business Analyst Number fields have both descriptions and captions. The Contract Hours YTD has a caption.

Because the values in the Contract Hours YTD field have decimal places, only Single, Double, or Decimal would be possible field size choices. (See Table 1–2 on Page AC 10 for a description of the possible field sizes for Number fields.) The difference between these choices concerns the amount of accuracy. Double is more accurate than Single, for example,

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

but requires more storage space. Because the rates are only two decimal places, Single is a perfectly acceptable choice.

In addition to changing the field size for the Contract Hours YTD, you will also change the format to Fixed (a fixed number of decimal places) and the number of decimal places to 2.

Table 1–5 Structure of Client Table

Field Name	Data Type	Field Size	Notes
Client Number	Text	4	**Primary Key** **Description:** Client Number (two uppercase letters followed by 2-digit number) **Caption:** CL #
Client Name	Text	30	
Street	Text	15	
City	Text	15	
State	Text	2	
Postal Code	Text	5	
Amount Paid	Currency		
Current Due	Currency		
Contract Hours YTD	Number	Single	**Caption:** Hrs YTD **Format:** Fixed **Decimal Places:** 2
Business Analyst Number	Text	2	**Caption:** BA # **Description:** Business Analyst Number (number of business analyst for client)

To Create a Table in Design View

The next step in creating the table is to define the fields by specifying the required details in Design view. You will make entries in the Field Name, Data Type, and Description columns and enter additional information in the Field Properties box in the lower portion of the Table window. As you define the fields, the row selector (Figure 1–19 on page AC 23) indicates the field you currently are describing. Clicking the row selector selects the entire row. It is positioned on the first field, indicating Access is ready for you to enter the name of the first field in the Field Name column.

The following steps use Design view to define the fields in the table.

1

- Open the Navigation Pane.
- Click Create on the Ribbon to display the Create tab (Figure 1–41).

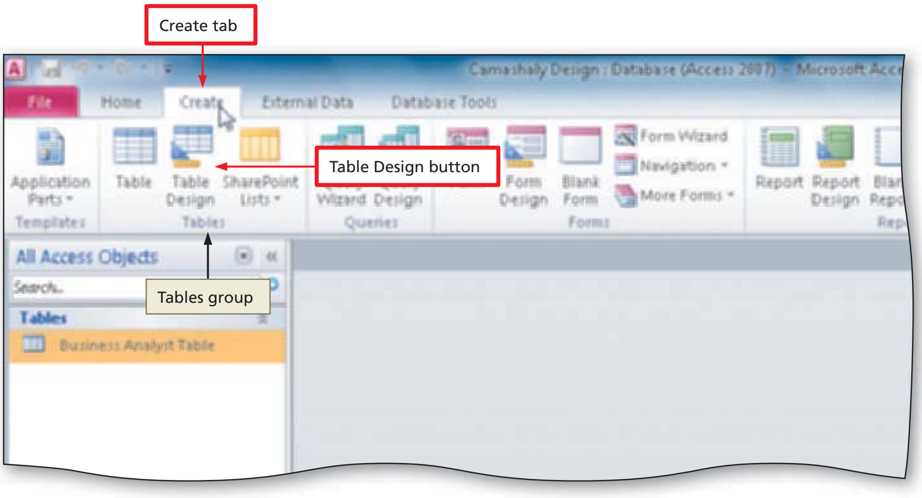

Create tab
Table Design button
Tables group
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Acce
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Application Parts
Table
Table Design
SharePoint Lists
Templates
Tables
Query Wizard
Query Design
Queries
Form
Form Design
Blank Form
Form Wizard
Navigation
More Forms
Forms
Report
Report Design
Blank Report
All Access Objects
Search...
Tables
Business Analyst Table

Figure 1–41

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2

- Click the Table Design button (Create tab | Tables group) to create a new table in Design view (Figure 1–42).

Q&A

Could I save the table now so I can assign it the name I want, rather than Table1?

You certainly could. Be aware, however, that you will still need to save it again once you have added all your fields.

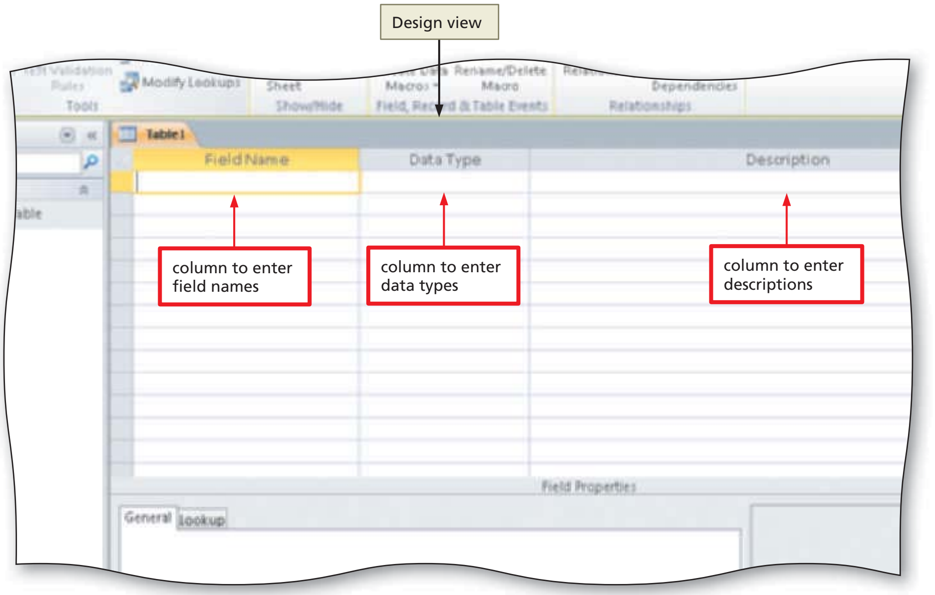

Design view
Table1
Field Name
Data Type
Description
column to enter field names
column to enter data types
column to enter descriptions
Field Properties
General
Lookup

Figure 1–42

3

- Type `Client Number` (the name of the first field) in the Field Name column and then press the TAB key to accept the field name and move to the Data Type column (Figure 1–43).

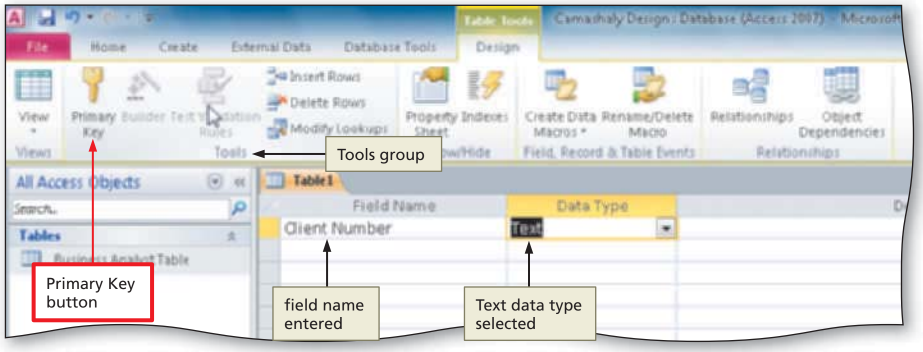


Table Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
View
Primary Key
Builder
Test Validation Rules
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Modify Lookups
Property Sheet
Indexes
Create Data Macros
Rename/Delete Macro
Relationships
Object Dependencies
Views
Tools
Show/Hide
Field, Record & Table Events
Relationships
Tools group
All Access Objects
Search...
Tables
Business Analyst Table
Primary Key button
Table1
Field Name
Data Type
Client Number
Text
field name entered
Text data type selected

Figure 1–43

4

- Click the Primary Key button (Table Tools Design tab | Tools group) to designate the Client Number field as the primary key (Figure 1–44).

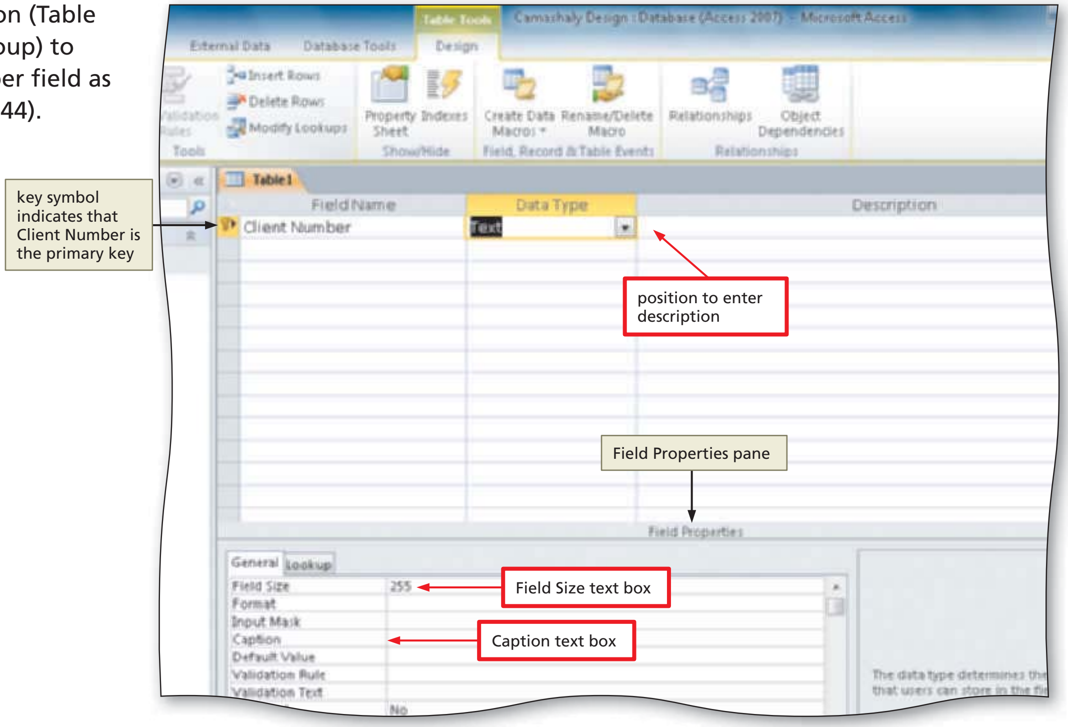


Table Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Modify Lookups
Property Sheet
Indexes
Create Data Macros
Rename/Delete Macro
Relationships
Object Dependencies
Tools
Show/Hide
Field, Record & Table Events
Relationships
Table1
key symbol indicates that Client Number is the primary key
Field Name
Data Type
Description
Client Number
Text
position to enter description
Field Properties pane
Field Properties
General
Lookup
Field Size
255
Field Size text box
Format
Input Mask
Caption
Caption text box
Default Value
Validation Rule
Validation Text
No
The data type determines the that users can store in the fi

Figure 1–44

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

5

- Press the TAB key to move to the Description column, and then type `Client Number (two uppercase letters followed by a two-digit number)` as the description.
- Click the Field Size text box in the Field Properties pane to produce an insertion point, use either the BACKSPACE or DELETE key as necessary to erase the current entry (255), and then type `4` to change the field size.
- Click the Caption text box to produce an insertion point, and then type `CL #` to enter a caption (Figure 1–45).

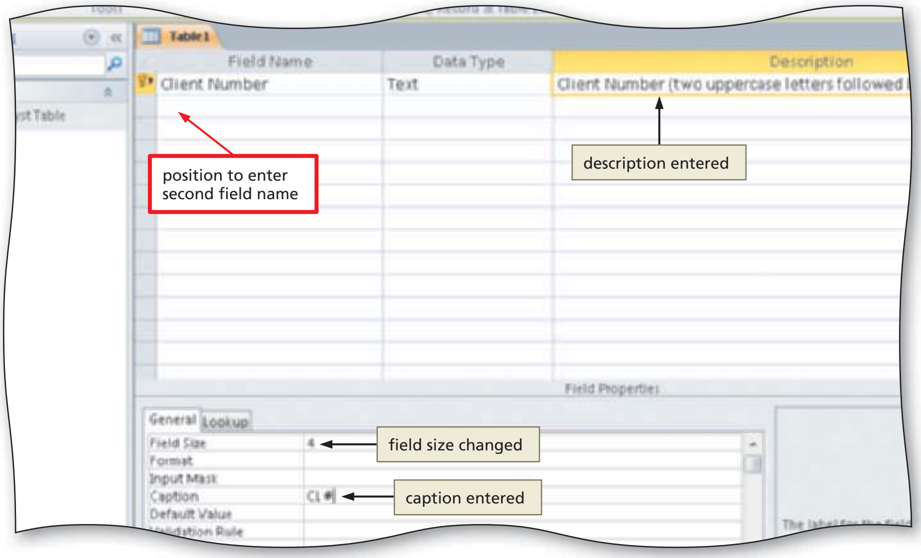

position to enter second field name
description entered
field size changed
caption entered

Figure 1–45

6

- Click the Field Name column on the second row to produce an insertion point and then make the entries for the Client Name field.
- Use the techniques illustrated in Steps 1 through 5 to make the entries for the remaining fields in the Client table structure, shown in Table 1–5 on page AC 33, up through and including the name of the Amount Paid field.
- Click the Data Type box arrow to display a menu of available data types (Figure 1–46).

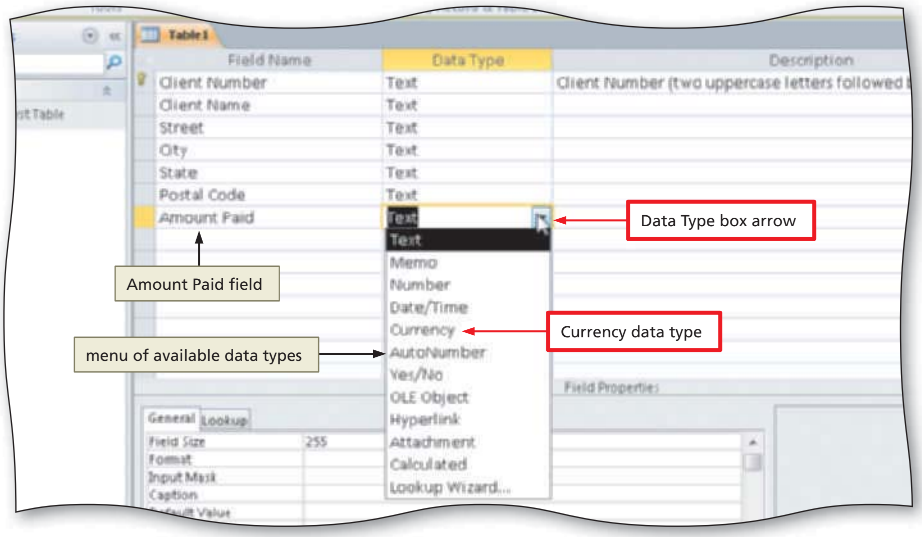

Data Type box arrow
Amount Paid field
Currency data type
menu of available data types

Figure 1–46

7

- Click Currency to select the data type.
- Enter the Current Due field and select the Currency data type.
- Enter the Contract Hours YTD field and select the Number data type (Figure 1–47).

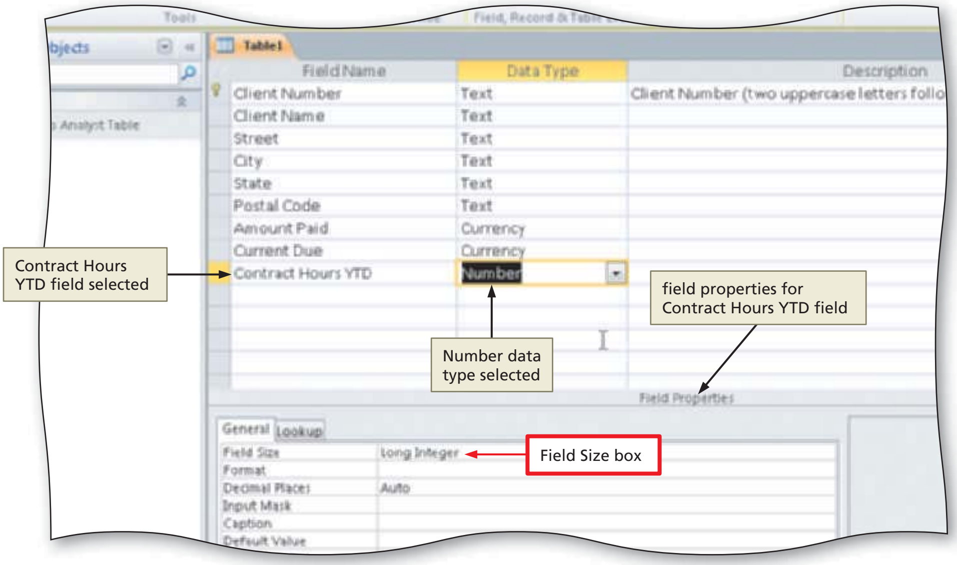
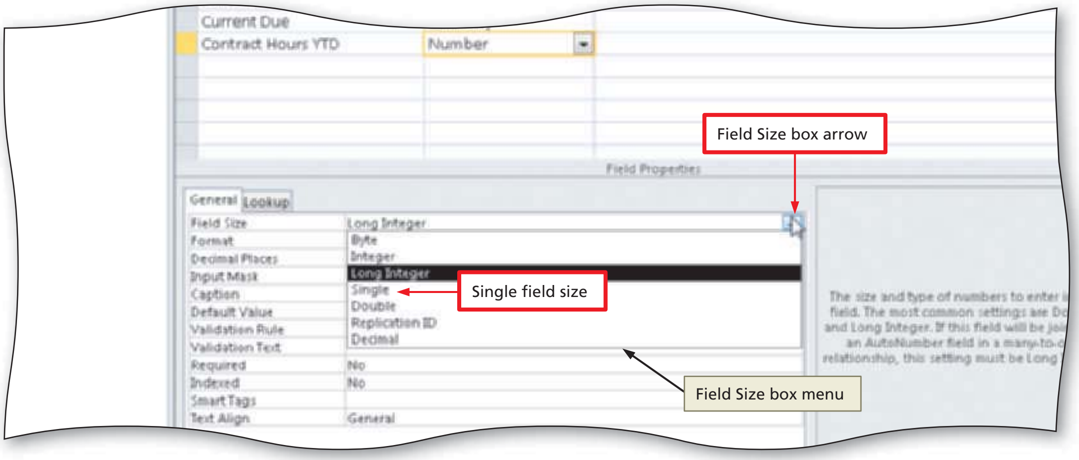

Contract Hours YTD field selected
field properties for Contract Hours YTD field
Number data type selected
Field Size box

Figure 1–47

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

8

- Click the Field Size box to display the Field Size box arrow.
- Click the Field Size box arrow to display the Field Size box menu (Figure 1–48).


Current Due
Field Size box arrow
Field Properties
General
Lookup
Byte
Integer
Long Integer
Single
Double
Replication ID
Decimal
Single field size
Field Size box menu

Contract Hours YTD Number

Field Size	Long Integer
Format	
Decimal Places	
Input Mask	
Caption	
Default Value	
Validation Rule	
Validation Text	
Required	No
Indexed	No
Smart Tags	
Text Align	General

The size and type of numbers to enter i field. The most common settings are Do and Long Integer. If this field will be joi an AutoNumber field in a many-to-o relationship, this setting must be Long

Figure 1–48

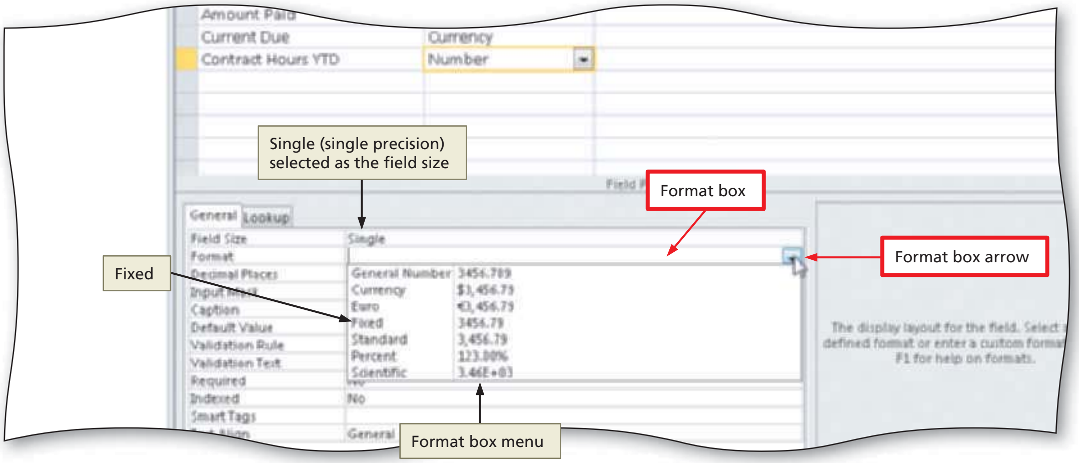
Q&A

What would happen if I left the field size set to Integer?

If the field size is Integer, no decimal places can be stored. Thus a value of 2.50 would be stored as 2. If you enter your hours and none of the values have decimal places, probably you did not change the field size.

9

- Click Single to select single precision as the field size.
- Click the Format box to display the Format box arrow.
- Click the Format box arrow to display the Format box menu (Figure 1–49).


Amount Paid
Single (single precision) selected as the field size
Field P
Format box
Format box arrow
Fixed
General
Lookup
General Number 3456.789
Currency $3,456.79
Euro €3,456.79
Fixed 3456.79
Standard 3,456.79
Percent 123.00%
Scientific 3.46E+03
Format box menu

Current Due Currency
Contract Hours YTD Number

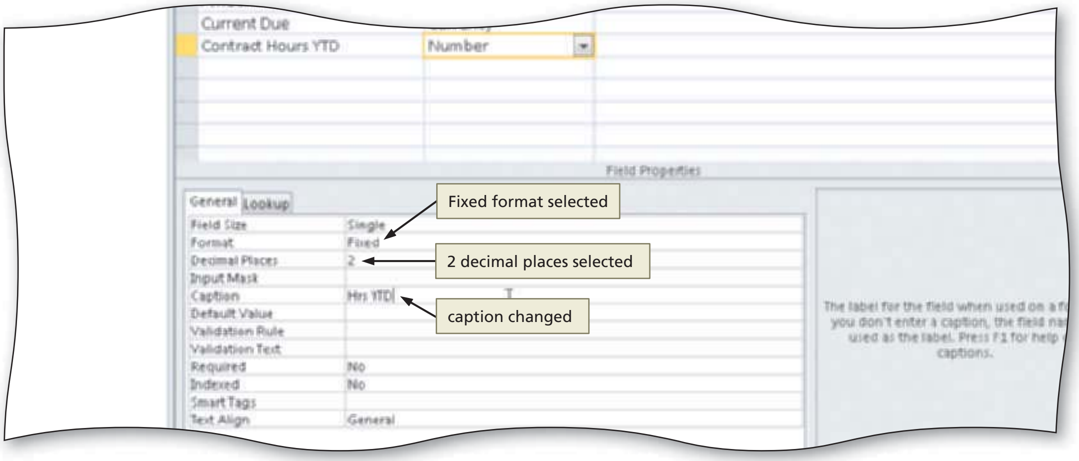
Field Size	Single
Format	
Decimal Places	
Input Mask	
Caption	
Default Value	
Validation Rule	
Validation Text	
Required	
Indexed	No
Smart Tags	
Text Align	General

The display layout for the field. Select defined format or enter a custom forma F1 for help on formats.

Figure 1–49

10

- Click Fixed to select fixed as the format.
- Click the Decimal Places box to display the Decimal Places box arrow.
- Click the Decimal Places box arrow to enter the number of decimal places.
- Click 2 to select 2 as the number of decimal places.


Current Due
Field Properties
General
Lookup
Fixed format selected
2 decimal places selected
caption changed

Contract Hours YTD Number

Field Size	Single
Format	Fixed
Decimal Places	2
Input Mask	
Caption	Hrs YTD
Default Value	
Validation Rule	
Validation Text	
Required	No
Indexed	No
Smart Tags	
Text Align	General

The label for the field when used on a f you don't enter a caption, the field na used as the label. Press F1 for help captions.

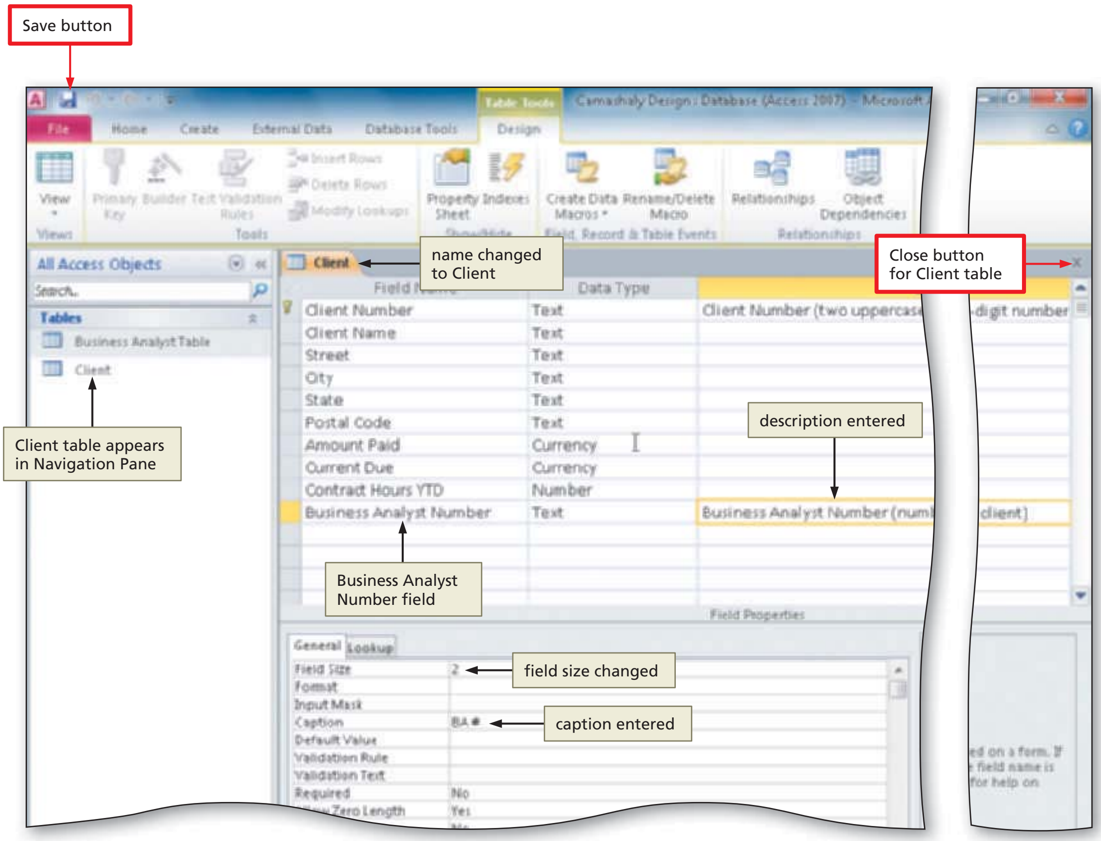
Figure 1–50

- Click the Caption text box to produce an insertion point, and then type `Hrs YTD` to enter a caption (Figure 1–50).

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

⑪

- Enter the Business Analyst Number field from Table 1–5. Be sure to change the description, field size, and caption to the ones shown in the table.
- Click the Save button on the Quick Access Toolbar to display the Save As dialog box, type Client as the name of the table, and then click the OK button (Save As dialog box) to save the table (Figure 1–51).



Field Name	Data Type	Description
Client Number	Text	Client Number (two uppercase -digit number
Client Name	Text	
Street	Text	
City	Text	
State	Text	
Postal Code	Text	
Amount Paid	Currency	
Current Due	Currency	
Contract Hours YTD	Number	
Business Analyst Number	Text	Business Analyst Number (num client)

Field Size	2
Format	
Input Mask	
Caption	BA #
Default Value	
Validation Rule	
Validation Text	
Required	No
Allow Zero Length	Yes

Figure 1–51

Other Ways

1. Press F6 to move between the upper pane and the lower pane in the Table Design window

Correcting Errors in the Structure

When creating a table, check the entries carefully to ensure they are correct. If you make a mistake and discover it before you press the TAB key, you can correct the error by repeatedly pressing the BACKSPACE key until the incorrect characters are removed. Then, type the correct characters. If you do not discover a mistake until later, you can click the entry, type the correct value, and then press the ENTER key. You can use the following techniques to make changes to the structure:

- If you accidentally add an extra field to the structure, select the field by clicking the row selector (the leftmost column on the row that contains the field to be deleted). Once you have selected the field, press the DELETE key. This will remove the field from the structure.
- If you forget to include a field, select the field that will follow the field you want to add by clicking the row selector, and then press the INSERT key. The remaining fields move down one row, making room for the missing field. Make the entries for the new field in the usual manner.
- If you made the wrong field a primary key field, click the correct primary key entry for the field and then click the Primary Key button (Table Tools Design tab | Tools group).
- To move a field, click the row selector for the field to be moved to select the field, and then drag the field to the desired position.

As an alternative to these steps, you may want to start over. To do so, click the Close button for the window containing the table, and then click the No button in the Microsoft Access dialog box. Click Create on the Ribbon and then click the Table Design button to create a table. You then can repeat the process you used earlier to define the fields in the table.

BTW

AutoCorrect Feature

The AutoCorrect feature of Access corrects common mistakes when entering text in a cell. AutoCorrect corrects two capital letters by changing the second letter to lowercase and capitalizes the first letter in the names of days. It also corrects more than 400 commonly misspelled words.

BTW

Other AutoCorrect Options

Using the Office AutoCorrect feature, you can create entries that will replace abbreviations with spelled-out names and phrases automatically. To specify AutoCorrect rules, click File to open the Backstage view, click Options, and then click Proofing in the Access Options dialog box.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Close the Table

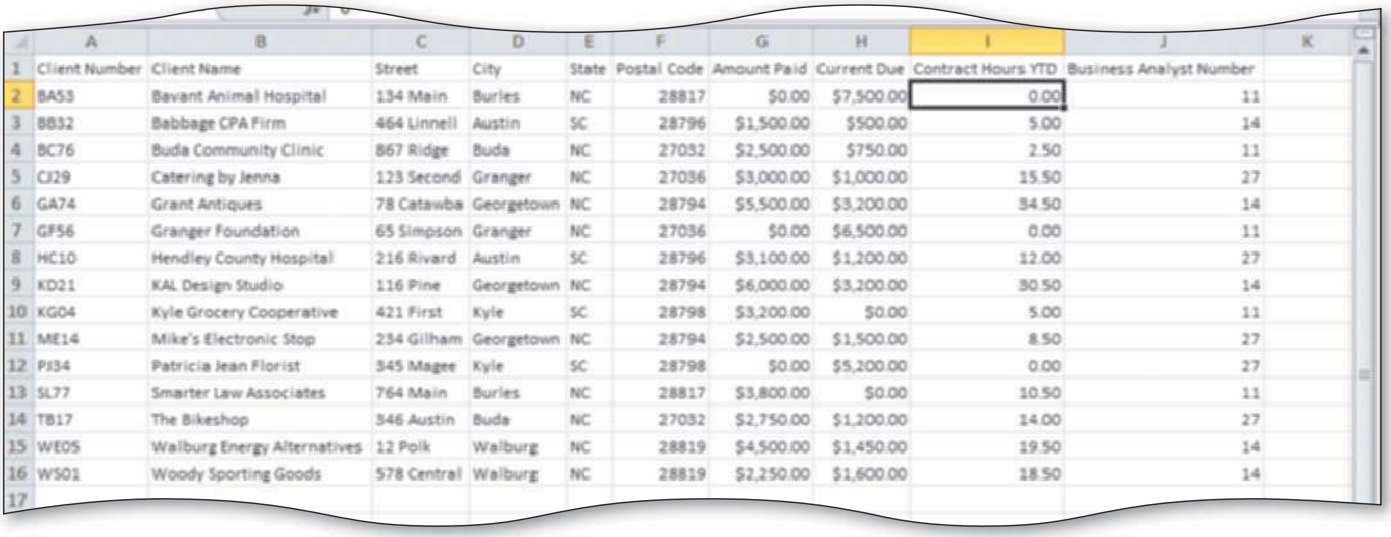
Now that you have completed and saved the Client table, you can close it. The following step closes the table.

1. Click the Close button for the Client table (see Figure 1–51) to close the table.

Importing Data from Other Applications to Access

Now that you have created the Client table, you could add the records to it just as you did with the Business Analyst table. Access provides an alternative, however, that is available because Camashaly Design has already stored the necessary data in an Excel workbook (Figure 1–52). The data is stored in the form of an Excel **list**; that is, the first row contains column headings describing the data in each of the columns, and the remaining rows contain the data. Camashaly can **import** the data, which means to make a copy of the data in a table in the Access database.

When importing data, you have two choices. You can create a new table, in which case the column headings in the worksheet become the field names in the table. Access will attempt to assign appropriate data types. You would need to review the data types, adjust field sizes, captions, descriptions, and formats after the data was imported. The other option is to add the records to an existing table. This method is appropriate if you have already created the table, provided the column headings in the worksheet match the field names in the table, as they do in the case of the Client table.



	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K
1	Client Number	Client Name	Street	City	State	Postal Code	Amount Paid	Current Due	Contract Hours YTD	Business Analyst Number	
2	BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	134 Main	Burles	NC	28817	$0.00	$7,500.00	0.00	11	
3	BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	464 Linnell	Austin	SC	28796	$1,500.00	$500.00	5.00	14	
4	BC76	Buda Community Clinic	867 Ridge	Buda	NC	27032	$2,500.00	$750.00	2.50	11	
5	CJ29	Catering by Jenna	123 Second	Granger	NC	27036	$3,000.00	$1,000.00	15.50	27	
6	GA74	Grant Antiques	78 Catawba	Georgetown	NC	28794	$5,500.00	$3,200.00	34.50	14	
7	GF56	Granger Foundation	65 Simpson	Granger	NC	27036	$0.00	$6,500.00	0.00	11	
8	HC10	Hendley County Hospital	216 Rivard	Austin	SC	28796	$3,100.00	$1,200.00	12.00	27	
9	KD21	KAL Design Studio	116 Pine	Georgetown	NC	28794	$6,000.00	$3,200.00	30.50	14	
10	KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	421 First	Kyle	SC	28798	$3,200.00	$0.00	5.00	11	
11	ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	234 Gilham	Georgetown	NC	28794	$2,500.00	$1,500.00	8.50	27	
12	PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	345 Magee	Kyle	SC	28798	$0.00	$5,200.00	0.00	27	
13	SL77	Smarter Law Associates	764 Main	Burles	NC	28817	$3,800.00	$0.00	10.50	11	
14	TB17	The Bikeshop	346 Austin	Buda	NC	27032	$2,750.00	$1,200.00	14.00	27	
15	WE05	Walburg Energy Alternatives	12 Polk	Walburg	NC	28819	$4,500.00	$1,450.00	19.50	14	
16	WS01	Woody Sporting Goods	578 Central	Walburg	NC	28819	$2,250.00	$1,600.00	18.50	14	
17											

Figure 1–52

The process of importing into an Access database uses a wizard. Specifically, if the data is imported from an Excel worksheet, the process will use the Import Spreadsheet Wizard. The wizard takes you through some basic steps, asking a few simple questions. After you have answered the questions, the wizard will import or link the data.

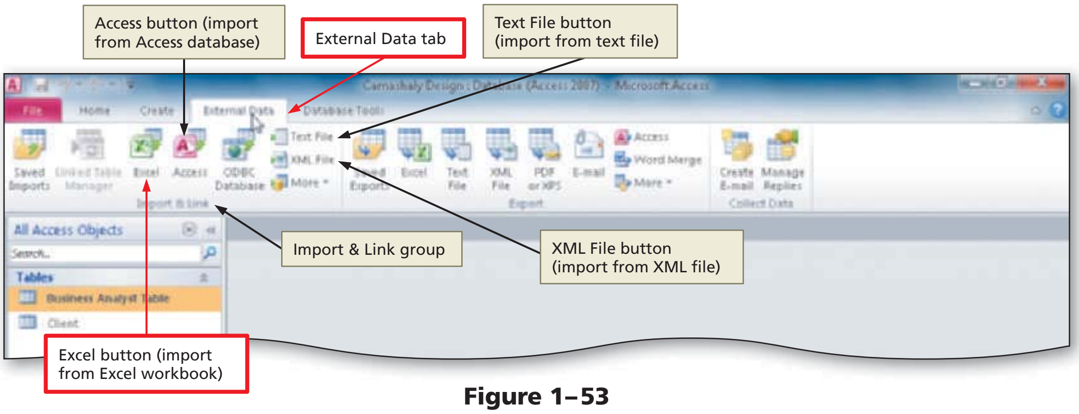
To Import an Excel Worksheet

To import the data in the Camashaly Client Data workbook, you use the Import Spreadsheet Wizard to place the rows from an Excel worksheet into an existing table. The following steps import the Camashaly Client Data Excel workbook, which is provided as a data file. See the inside back cover of this book for instructions on downloading the Data Files for Students, or contact your instructor for more information about accessing the required files.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

1

- Click External Data on the Ribbon to display the External Data tab (Figure 1–53).


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Saved Imports
Linked Table Manager
Excel
Access
ODBC Database
Text File
XML File
More
Import & Link
Saved Exports
Excel
Text File
XML File
PDF or XPS
E-mail
Access
Word Merge
More
Export
Create E-mail
Manage Replies
Collect Data
All Access Objects
Search...
Tables
Business Analyst Table
Client

Access button (import from Access database)

External Data tab

Text File button (import from text file)

Import & Link group

XML File button (import from XML file)

Excel button (import from Excel workbook)

Figure 1–53

2

- Click the Excel button (External Data tab | Import & Link group) to display the Get External Data – Excel Spreadsheet dialog box.
- Click the Browse button (Get External Data – Excel Spreadsheet dialog box) to display the File Open dialog box.
- Navigate to the USB flash drive (or the location of your data files).
- Double-click your USB flash drive, and then click Camashaly Client Data to select the file to be opened.
- Click the Open button (File Open dialog box), which will return you to the Get External Data dialog box with the Camashaly Client Data workbook selected.

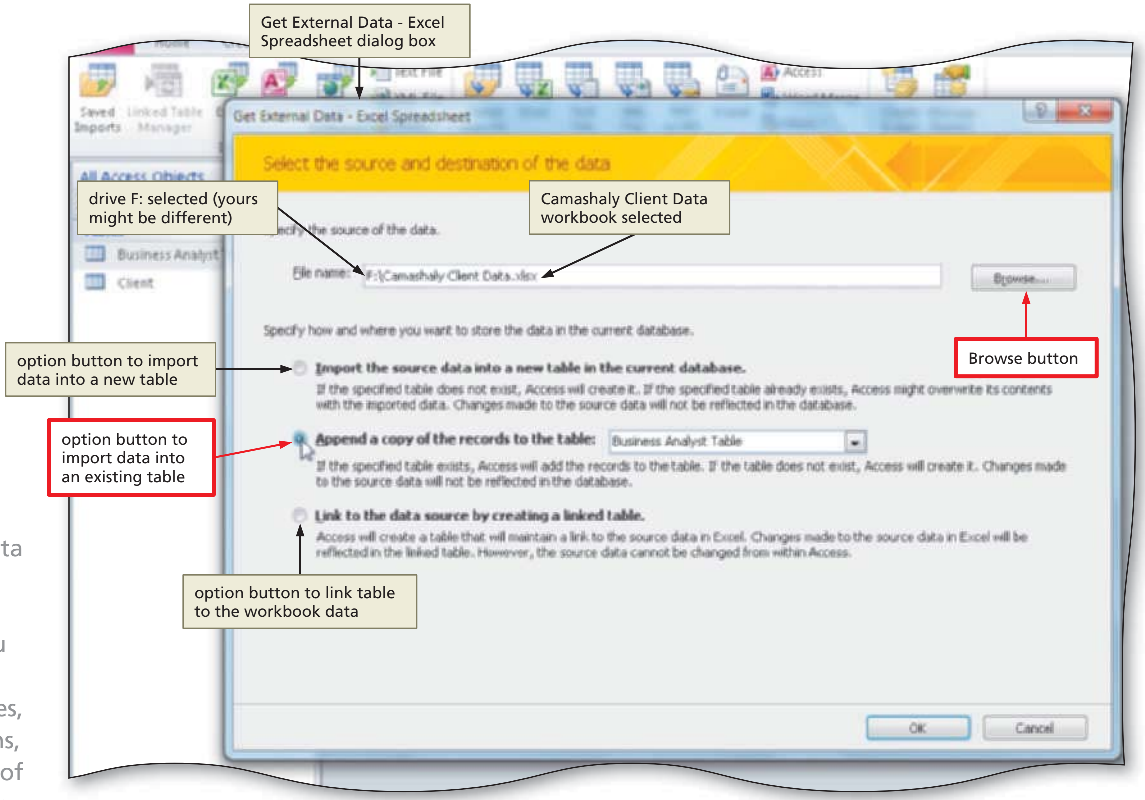
3

- Click the option button to append a copy of records to a table (Figure 1–54).

Q&A

What happens if I select the option button to import records into a new table?

Instead of the records being added to an existing table, they will be placed in a new table. Access will assign all the data types. You would then need to ensure they are correct. You also would need to change any field sizes, descriptions, captions, formats, or number of decimal places to the ones you want.


Saved Imports
Linked Table Manager
All Access Objects
Business Analyst
Client
Browse...
OK
Cancel

Get External Data - Excel Spreadsheet

Select the source and destination of the data

Specify the source of the data.

File name: F:\Camashaly Client Data.xlsx

Specify how and where you want to store the data in the current database.

○ **Import the source data into a new table in the current database.**

If the specified table does not exist, Access will create it. If the specified table already exists, Access might overwrite its contents with the imported data. Changes made to the source data will not be reflected in the database.

● **Append a copy of the records to the table:** Business Analyst Table

If the specified table exists, Access will add the records to the table. If the table does not exist, Access will create it. Changes made to the source data will not be reflected in the database.

○ **Link to the data source by creating a linked table.**

Access will create a table that will maintain a link to the source data in Excel. Changes made to the source data in Excel will be reflected in the linked table. However, the source data cannot be changed from within Access.

Get External Data - Excel Spreadsheet dialog box

drive F: selected (yours might be different)

Camashaly Client Data workbook selected

Browse button

option button to import data into a new table

option button to import data into an existing table

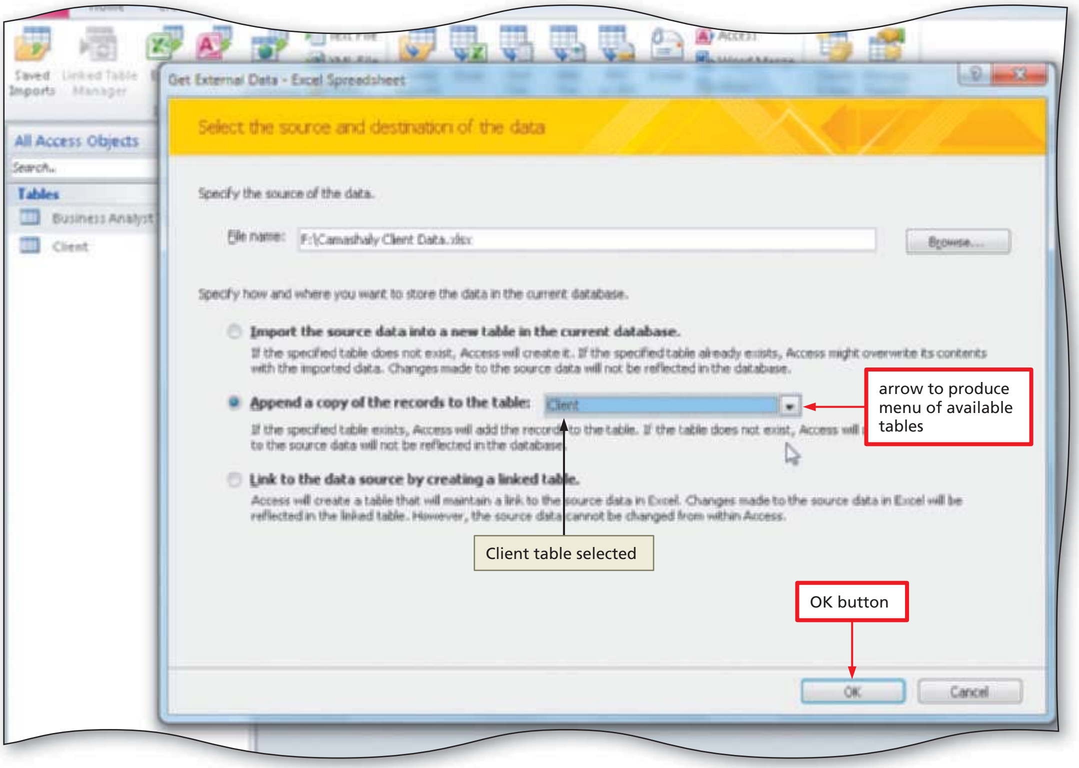
option button to link table to the workbook data

Figure 1–54

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

4

- Click the arrow to produce a menu of available tables.
- Click the Client table to select the table to which a copy of the records will be appended (Figure 1–55).


Saved Imports
Linked Table Manager
All Access Objects
Search...
Tables
Business Analyst
Client
Browse...
OK
Cancel
arrow to produce menu of available tables
Client table selected
OK button

Get External Data - Excel Spreadsheet

Select the source and destination of the data

Specify the source of the data.

File name: F:\Camashaly Client Data.xlsx

Specify how and where you want to store the data in the current database.

○ **Import the source data into a new table in the current database.**
If the specified table does not exist, Access will create it. If the specified table already exists, Access might overwrite its contents with the imported data. Changes made to the source data will not be reflected in the database.

● **Append a copy of the records to the table:** Client
If the specified table exists, Access will add the records to the table. If the table does not exist, Access will ... to the source data will not be reflected in the database.

○ **Link to the data source by creating a linked table.**
Access will create a table that will maintain a link to the source data in Excel. Changes made to the source data in Excel will be reflected in the linked table. However, the source data cannot be changed from within Access.

Figure 1–55

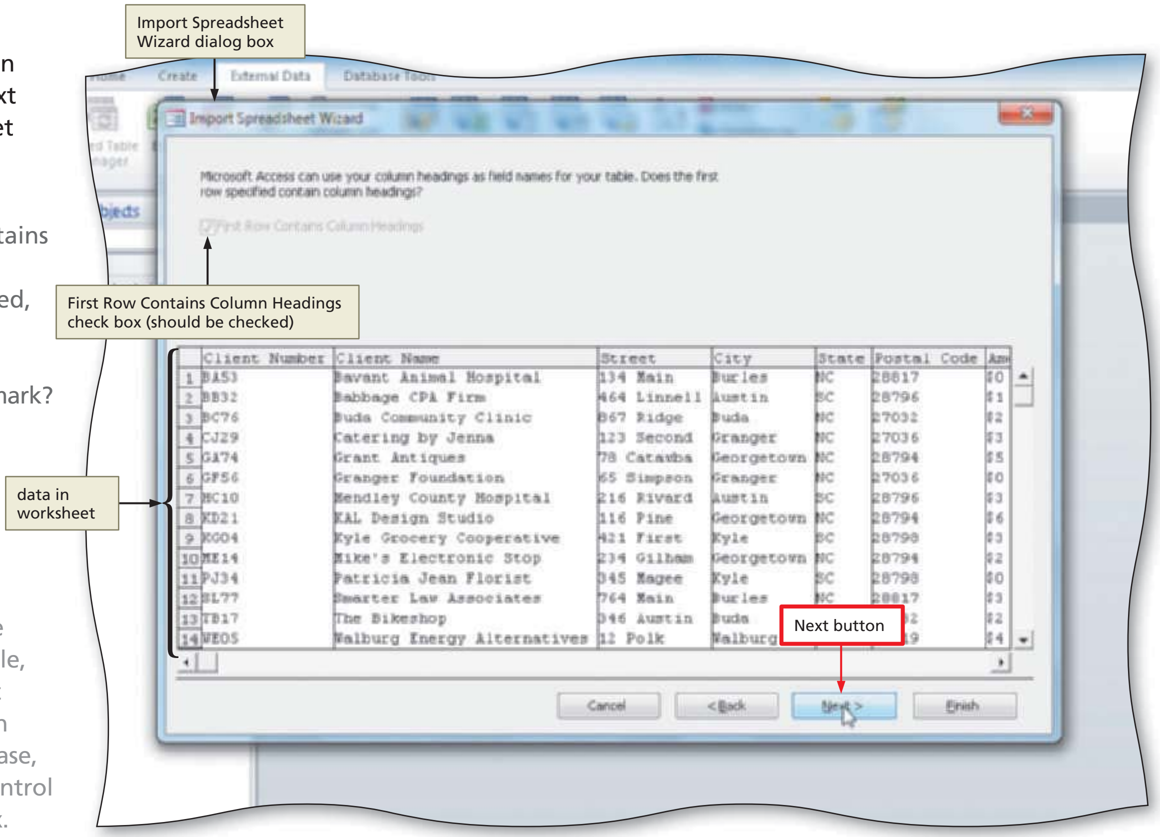
5

- Click the OK button to move to the next Import Spreadsheet Wizard screen (Figure 1–56).

Q&A

The First Row Contains Column Headings check box is checked, but it is dimmed. What if I want to remove the check mark?

When you are appending records to an existing table, the first row must contain column headings. If instead you were creating a new table, the first row might not contain column headings. In that case, you would have control over this check box.


Import Spreadsheet Wizard dialog box
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
First Row Contains Column Headings check box (should be checked)
data in worksheet
Next button
Cancel
< Back
Next >
Finish

Import Spreadsheet Wizard

Microsoft Access can use your column headings as field names for your table. Does the first row specified contain column headings?

☑ First Row Contains Column Headings

	Client Number	Client Name	Street	City	State	Postal Code	Am
1	BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	134 Main	Burles	NC	28817	$0
2	BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	464 Linnell	Austin	SC	28796	$1
3	BC76	Buda Community Clinic	867 Ridge	Buda	NC	27032	$2
4	CJ29	Catering by Jenna	123 Second	Granger	NC	27036	$3
5	GA74	Grant Antiques	78 Catawba	Georgetown	NC	28794	$5
6	GF56	Granger Foundation	65 Simpson	Granger	NC	27036	$0
7	HC10	Hendley County Hospital	216 Rivard	Austin	SC	28796	$3
8	KD21	KAL Design Studio	116 Pine	Georgetown	NC	28794	$6
9	KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	421 First	Kyle	SC	28798	$3
10	ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	234 Gilham	Georgetown	NC	28794	$2
11	PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	345 Magee	Kyle	SC	28798	$0
12	SL77	Smarter Law Associates	764 Main	Burles	NC	28817	$3
13	TB17	The Bikeshop	346 Austin	Buda	[illegible]	[illegible]	$2
14	WE05	Walburg Energy Alternatives	12 Polk	Walburg	[illegible]	[illegible]	$4

Figure 1–56

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

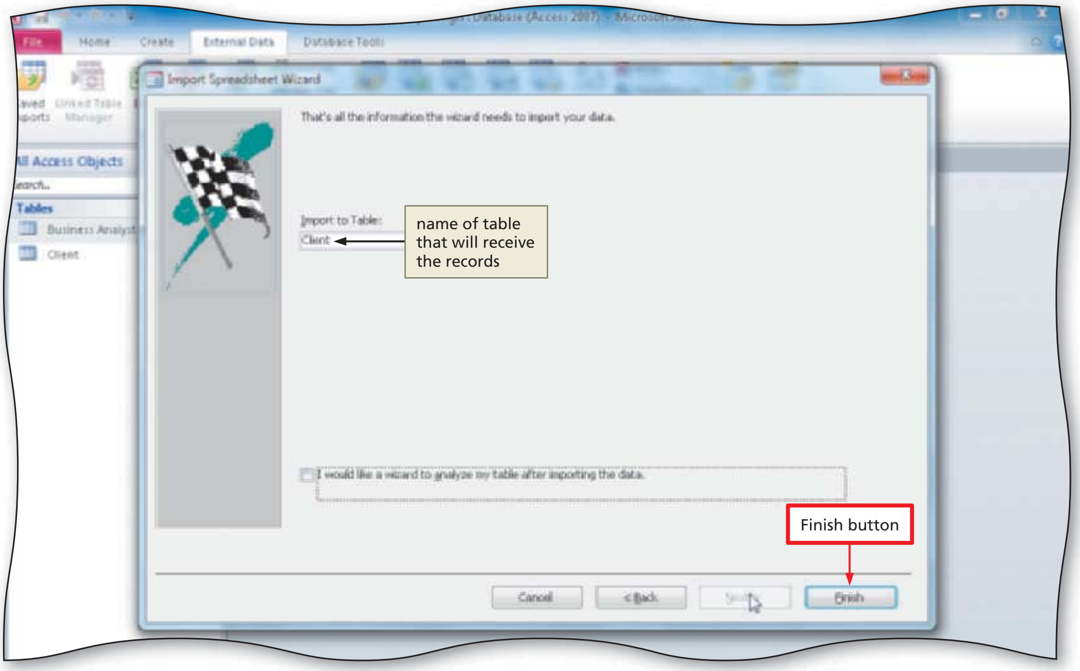
6

- Click the Next button to move to the next Import Spreadsheet Wizard screen (Figure 1–57).

Q&A

What happens if I later realize I have selected the wrong table?

If you have not yet clicked the Finish button, you can click the Back button to return to the screen where you selected the table, and then select the correct table.



Import Spreadsheet Wizard

That's all the information the wizard needs to import your data.

Import to Table: Client

☐ I would like a wizard to analyze my table after importing the data.

File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
name of table that will receive the records
Finish button
Cancel
< Back
Next >
Finish
All Access Objects
Tables
Business Analyst
Client

Figure 1–57

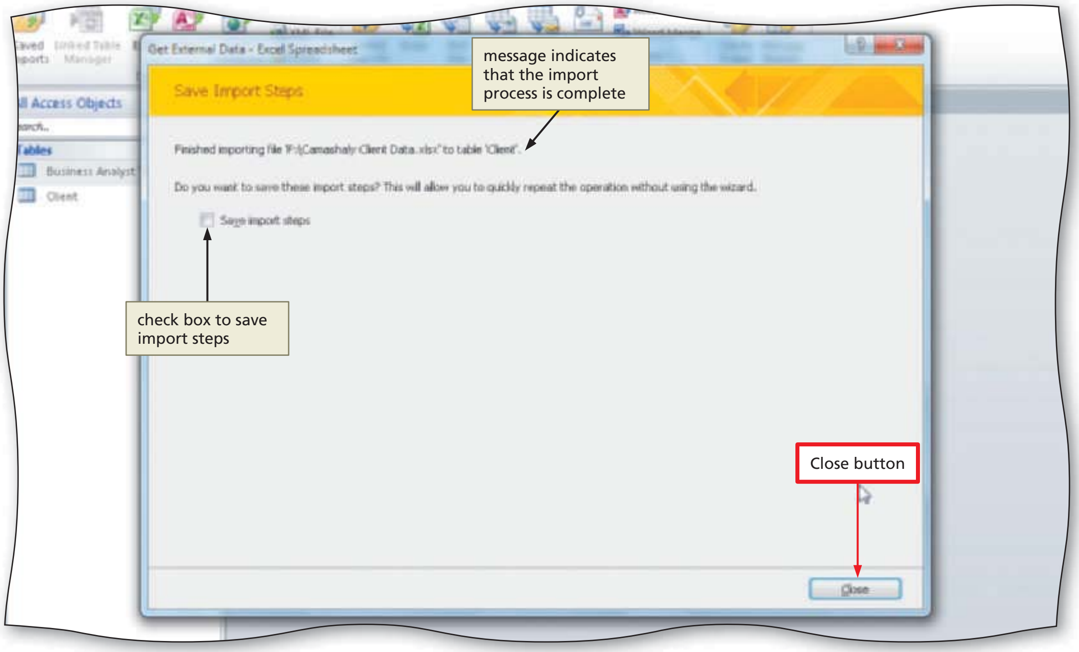
7

- Because the table name is correct, click the Finish button to import the data (Figure 1–58).

Q&A

I got an error message that stated that a particular field did not exist in the Client table. What did I do wrong? How do I fix it?

When you created the table, you did not name that particular field correctly. Open the table in Design view and change the field name to the correct name. Check other field names as well. When you are done, save and close the table. Then, repeat the import process.



Get External Data - Excel Spreadsheet

Save Import Steps

Finished importing file 'F:\Camashaly Client Data.xlsx' to table 'Client'.

Do you want to save these import steps? This will allow you to quickly repeat the operation without using the wizard.

☐ Save import steps

message indicates that the import process is complete
check box to save import steps
Close button
Close
All Access Objects
Tables
Business Analyst
Client

Figure 1–58

8

- Because you will not save the import steps, click the Close button.

Q&A

When would I save the import steps?

If you think you might need to repeat these steps in the future, you can save time by saving the steps.

Other Ways

1. Right-click table in Navigation Pane, click Import on shortcut menu.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

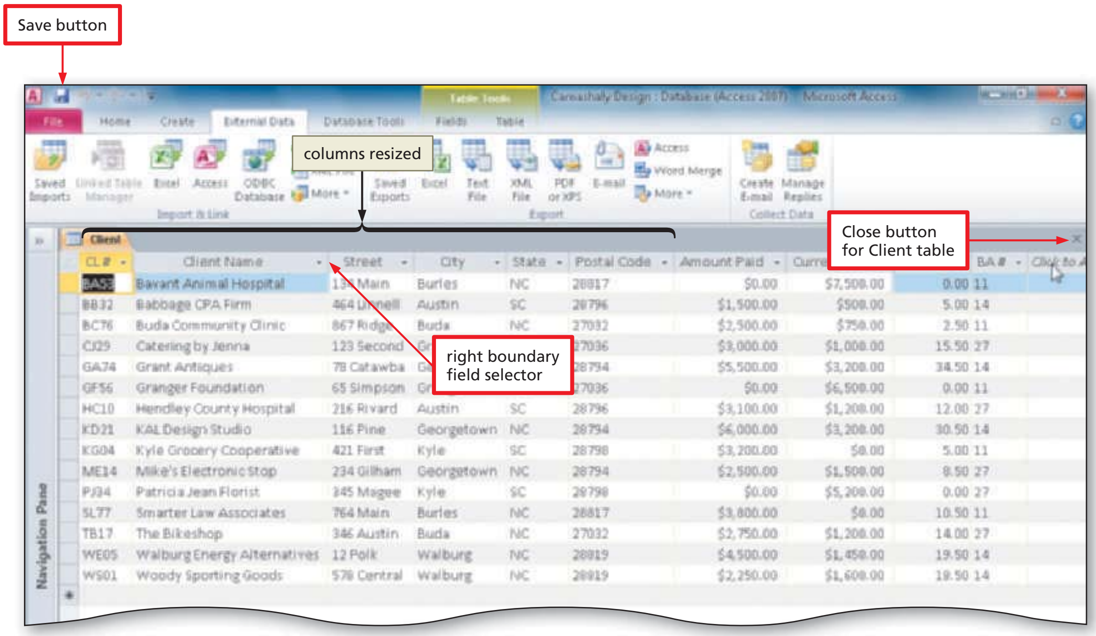
To Resize Columns in a Datasheet

You can resize the columns in the datasheet for the Client table just as you resized the columns in the datasheet for the Business Analyst table. The following steps resize the columns in the Client table to best fit the data.

BTW

Resizing Columns
To resize all columns in a datasheet to best fit simultaneously, select the column heading for the first column, hold down the SHIFT key and select the last column in the datasheet. Then, double-click the right boundary of any field selector.

1. Open the Client table in Datasheet view and then close the Navigation Pane.
2. Double-click the right boundary of the field selectors of each of the fields to resize the columns so that they best fit the data.
3. Save the changes to the layout by clicking the Save button on the Quick Access Toolbar (Figure 1–59).
4. Close the table.


Save button
columns resized
Close button for Client table
right boundary field selector
Table Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Fields
Table
Saved Imports
Linked Table Manager
Excel
Access
ODBC Database
More
Import & Link
Saved Exports
Excel
Text File
XML File
PDF or XPS
E-mail
Access
Word Merge
More
Export
Create E-mail
Manage Replies
Collect Data
Client
Navigation Pane
Click to Add

CL #	Client Name	Street	City	State	Postal Code	Amount Paid	Curre		BA #
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	13[illegible] Main	Burles	NC	28817	$0.00	$7,500.00	0.00	11
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	464 Linnell	Austin	SC	28796	$1,500.00	$500.00	5.00	14
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	867 Ridge	Buda	NC	27032	$2,500.00	$750.00	2.50	11
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	123 Second	Gr[illegible]	[illegible]	27036	$3,000.00	$1,000.00	15.50	27
GA74	Grant Antiques	78 Catawba	G[illegible]	[illegible]	28794	$5,500.00	$3,200.00	34.50	14
GF56	Granger Foundation	65 Simpson	Gr[illegible]	[illegible]	27036	$0.00	$6,500.00	0.00	11
HC10	Hendley County Hospital	216 Rivard	Austin	SC	28796	$3,100.00	$1,200.00	12.00	27
KD21	KAL Design Studio	116 Pine	Georgetown	NC	28794	$6,000.00	$3,200.00	30.50	14
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	421 First	Kyle	SC	28798	$3,200.00	$0.00	5.00	11
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	234 Gilham	Georgetown	NC	28794	$2,500.00	$1,500.00	8.50	27
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	345 Magee	Kyle	SC	28798	$0.00	$5,200.00	0.00	27
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	764 Main	Burles	NC	28817	$3,800.00	$0.00	10.50	11
TB17	The Bikeshop	346 Austin	Buda	NC	27032	$2,750.00	$1,200.00	14.00	27
WE05	Walburg Energy Alternatives	12 Polk	Walburg	NC	28819	$4,500.00	$1,450.00	19.50	14
WS01	Woody Sporting Goods	578 Central	Walburg	NC	28819	$2,250.00	$1,600.00	19.50	14

Figure 1–59

Break Point: If you wish to take a break, this is a good place to do so. You can quit Access now. To resume at a later time, start Access, open the database called Camashaly Design, and continue following the steps from this location forward.

Additional Database Objects

A computerized database such as Access contains many types of objects. Tables are the objects you use to store and manipulate data. Access supports other important types of objects as well; each of these objects has a specific purpose that assists in maximizing the benefits of a database. Through queries (questions), Access makes it possible to ask complex questions concerning the data in the database and then receive instant answers. Access also allows the user to produce attractive and useful forms for viewing and updating data. Additionally, Access includes report creation tools that make it easy to produce sophisticated reports for presenting data.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

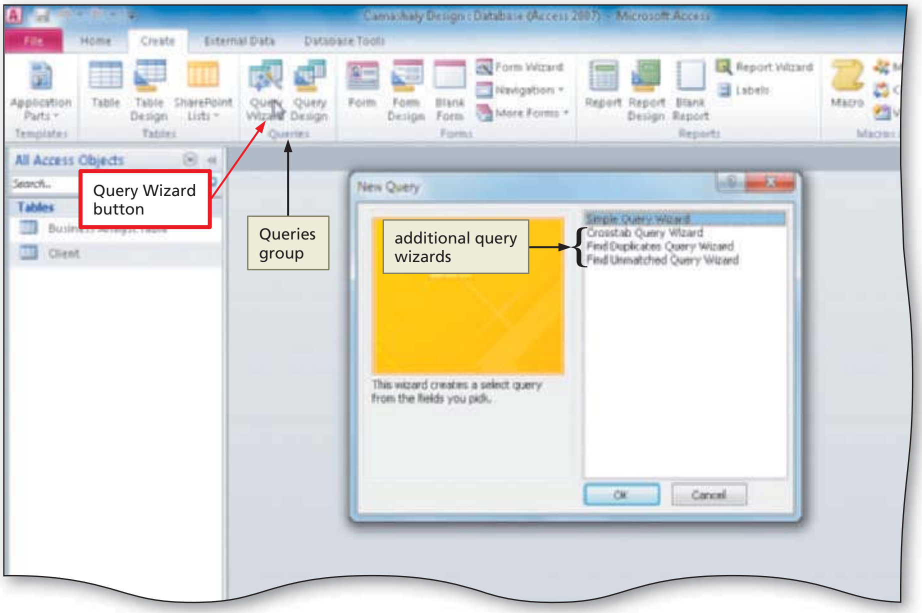
To Use the Simple Query Wizard to Create a Query

Queries are simply questions, the answers to which are in the database. Access contains a powerful query feature that helps you find the answers to a wide variety of questions. Once you have examined the question you want to ask to determine the fields involved in the question, you can begin creating the query. If there are no restrictions involved in the query, nor any special order or calculations, you can use the Simple Query Wizard.

The following steps use the Simple Query Wizard to create a query that Camashaly Design might use to obtain financial information on its clients. The query displays the number, name, amount paid, current due, contract hours YTD, and business analyst number of all clients.

1

- If the Navigation Pane is closed, click the Shutter Bar Open/Close Button to open the Navigation Pane.
- Be sure the Client table is selected.
- Click Create on the Ribbon to display the Create tab.
- Click the Query Wizard button (Create tab | Queries group) to display the New Query dialog box (Figure 1–60).


Query Wizard button
Queries group
additional query wizards
New Query
Simple Query Wizard
Crosstab Query Wizard
Find Duplicates Query Wizard
Find Unmatched Query Wizard
OK
Cancel

This wizard creates a select query from the fields you pick.

Figure 1–60

2

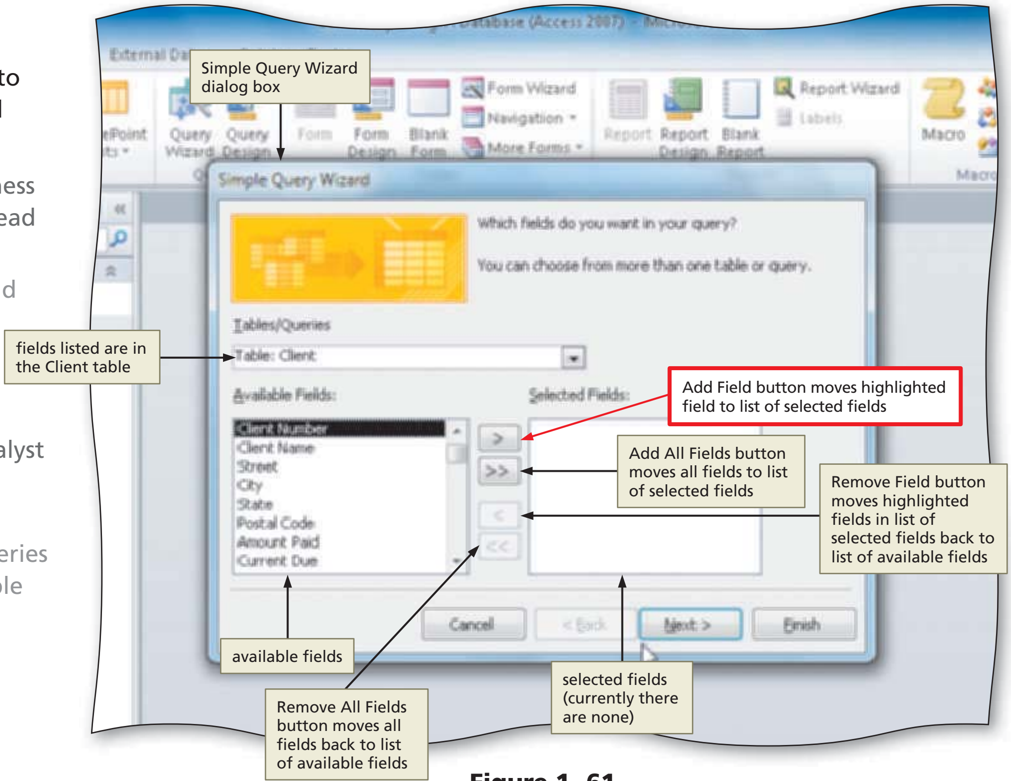
- Be sure Simple Query Wizard is selected, and then click the OK button (New Query dialog box) to display the Simple Query Wizard dialog box (Figure 1–61).

Q&A What would happen if the Business Analyst Table were selected instead of the Client table?

The list of available fields would contain fields from the Business Analyst Table rather than the Client table.

Q&A If the list contained Business Analyst Table fields, how could I make it contain Client table fields?

Click the arrow in the Tables/Queries box and then click the Client table in the list that appears.


Simple Query Wizard dialog box
Simple Query Wizard
fields listed are in the Client table
Add Field button moves highlighted field to list of selected fields
Add All Fields button moves all fields to list of selected fields
Remove Field button moves highlighted fields in list of selected fields back to list of available fields
available fields
Remove All Fields button moves all fields back to list of available fields
selected fields (currently there are none)
Tables/Queries
Available Fields:
Selected Fields:
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Amount Paid
Current Due
Cancel
< Back
Next >
Finish

Which fields do you want in your query?

You can choose from more than one table or query.

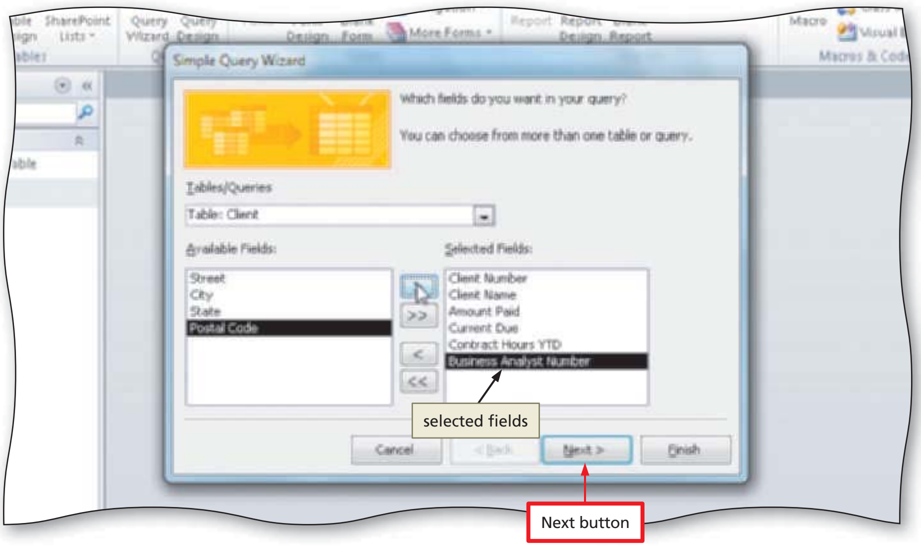
Table: Client

Figure 1–61

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3

- With the Client Number field selected, click the Add Field button to add the field to the query.
- With the Client Name field selected, click the Add Field button a second time to add the field.
- Click the Amount Paid field, and then click the Add Field button to add the field.
- In a similar fashion, add the Current Due, Contract Hours YTD, and Business Analyst Number fields (Figure 1–62).


Simple Query Wizard

Which fields do you want in your query?

You can choose from more than one table or query.

Tables/Queries: Table: Client

Available Fields: Street, City, State, Postal Code

Selected Fields: Client Number, Client Name, Amount Paid, Current Due, Contract Hours YTD, Business Analyst Number

selected fields
Next button
Cancel
< Back
Next >
Finish

Figure 1–62

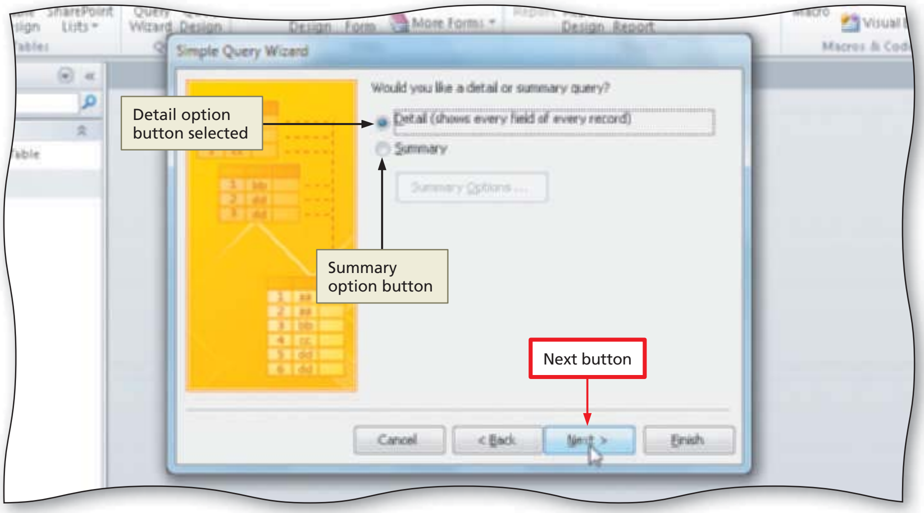
4

- Click the Next button to move to the next screen.
- Ensure that the Detail (shows every field of every record) option button is selected (Figure 1–63).

Q&A

What is the difference between Detail and Summary?

Detail shows all the records and fields. Summary only shows computations (for example, the total amount paid).


Simple Query Wizard

Would you like a detail or summary query?

● Detail (shows every field of every record)

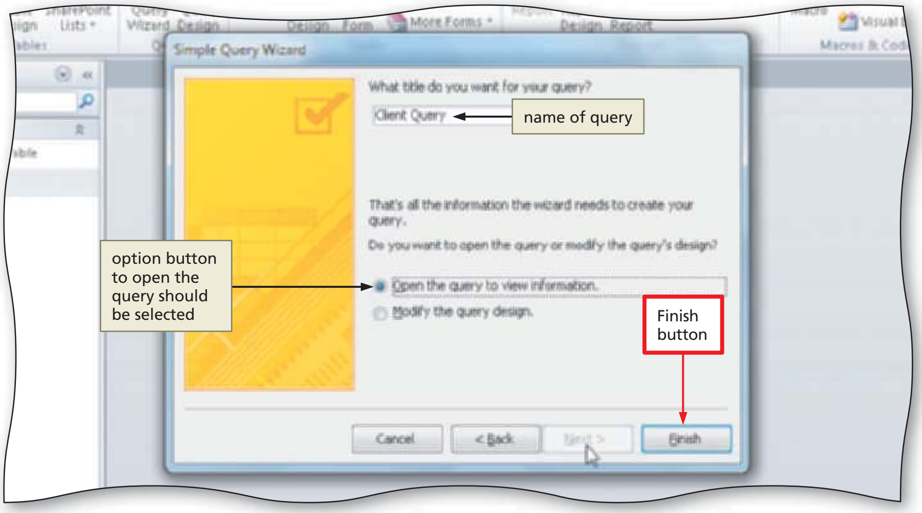
○ Summary

Detail option button selected
Summary option button
Summary Options...
Next button
Cancel
< Back
Next >
Finish

Figure 1–63

5

- Click the Next button to move to the next screen.
- Ensure the title of the query is Client Query (Figure 1–64).


Simple Query Wizard

What title do you want for your query?

Client Query

That's all the information the wizard needs to create your query.

Do you want to open the query or modify the query's design?

● Open the query to view information.

○ Modify the query design.

name of query
option button to open the query should be selected
Finish button
Cancel
< Back
Next >
Finish

Figure 1–64

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

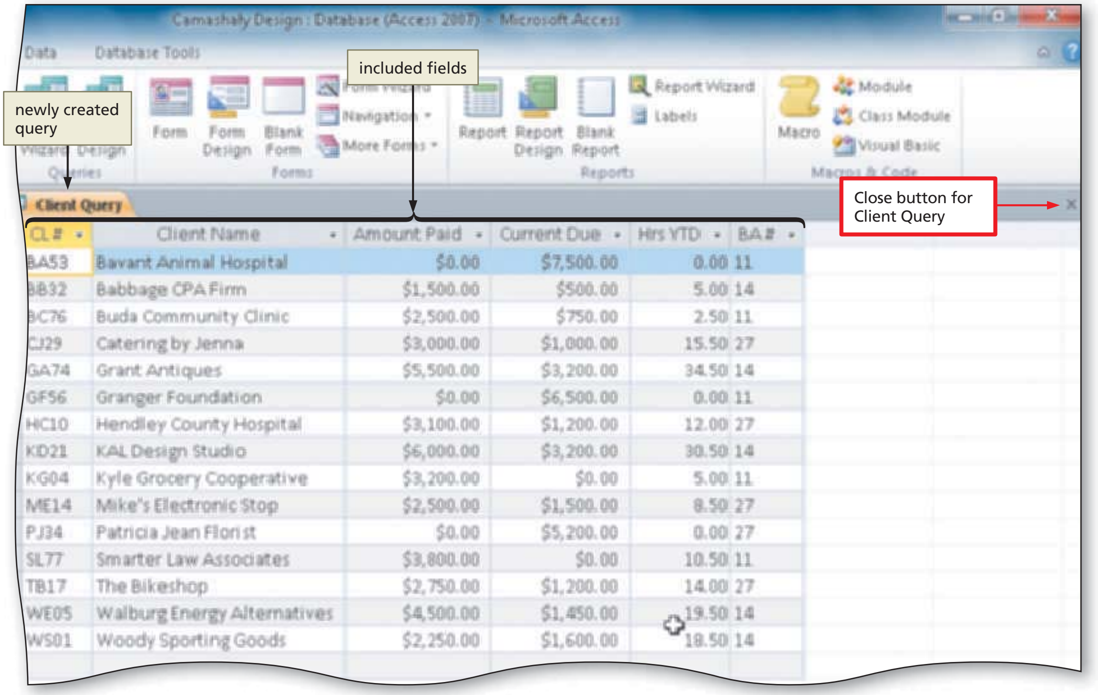
6

- Click the Finish button to create the query (Figure 1–65).
- Click the Close button for the Client Query to remove the query results from the screen.

Q&A

If I want to use this query in the future, do I need to save the query?

Normally you would. The one exception is a query created by the wizard. The wizard automatically saves the query it creates.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
Data
Database Tools
newly created query
included fields
Close button for Client Query
Wizard Design
Queries
Form
Form Design
Blank Form
Form Wizard
Navigation
More Forms
Forms
Report
Report Design
Blank Report
Report Wizard
Labels
Reports
Macro
Module
Class Module
Visual Basic
Macros & Code
Client Query

CL #	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due	Hrs YTD	BA #
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	$0.00	$7,500.00	0.00	11
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	$1,500.00	$500.00	5.00	14
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	$2,500.00	$750.00	2.50	11
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	$3,000.00	$1,000.00	15.50	27
GA74	Grant Antiques	$5,500.00	$3,200.00	34.50	14
GF56	Granger Foundation	$0.00	$6,500.00	0.00	11
HC10	Hendley County Hospital	$3,100.00	$1,200.00	12.00	27
KD21	KAL Design Studio	$6,000.00	$3,200.00	30.50	14
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	$3,200.00	$0.00	5.00	11
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	$2,500.00	$1,500.00	8.50	27
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	$0.00	$5,200.00	0.00	27
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	$3,800.00	$0.00	10.50	11
TB17	The Bikeshop	$2,750.00	$1,200.00	14.00	27
WE05	Walburg Energy Alternatives	$4,500.00	$1,450.00	19.50	14
WS01	Woody Sporting Goods	$2,250.00	$1,600.00	18.50	14

Figure 1–65

Using Queries

After you have created and saved a query, Access stores it as a database object and makes it available for use in a variety of ways:

- To view the results of the query, open it by right-clicking the query in the Navigation Pane and clicking Open on the shortcut menu.
- To print the results with the query open, click File on the Ribbon, click the Print tab, and then click either Print or Quick Print.
- If you want to change the design of the query, right-click the query in the Navigation Pane and then click Design View on the shortcut menu to open the query in Design view.
- To print the query without first opening it, be sure the query is selected in the Navigation Pane and click File on the Ribbon, click the Print tab, and then click either Print or Quick Print.

You can switch between views of a query using the View button (Home tab | Views group). Clicking the arrow in the bottom of the button produces the View button menu. You then click the desired view in the menu. The two query views you will use in this chapter are Datasheet view (see the results) and Design view (change the design). You also can click the top part of the View button, in which case, you will switch to the view identified by the icon on the button. In the figure, the button contains the icon for Design view, so clicking the button would change to Design view. For the most part, the icon on the button represents the view you want, so you can usually simply click the button.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Use a Criterion in a Query

After you have determined the fields to be included in a query, you will determine whether there are any restrictions on the records that are to be included. For example, you might only want to include those clients whose business analyst number is 14. In such a case, you need to enter the 14 as a **criterion**, which is a condition that the records to be included must satisfy. To do so, you will open the query in Design view, enter the criterion below the appropriate field, and then view the results of the query. The following steps enter a criterion to include only the clients of business analyst 14 and then view the query results.

1

- Right-click the Client Query in the Navigation Pane to produce a shortcut menu (Figure 1–66).

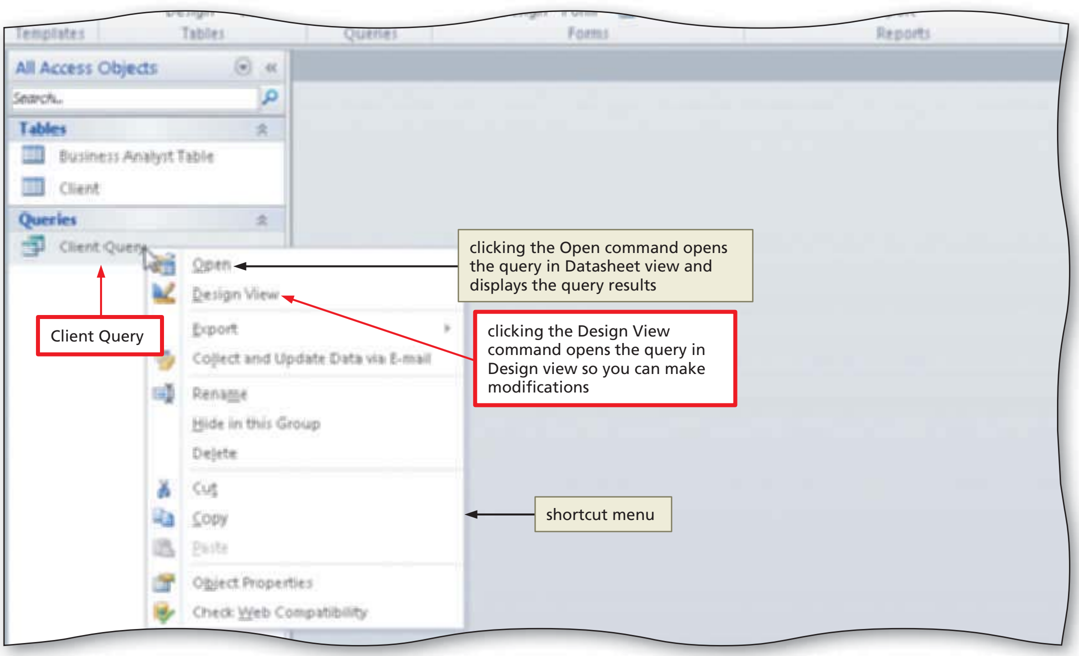

All Access Objects
Search...
Tables
Business Analyst Table
Client
Queries
Client Query
Open
Design View
Export
Collect and Update Data via E-mail
Rename
Hide in this Group
Delete
Cut
Copy
Paste
Object Properties
Check Web Compatibility
Client Query
clicking the Open command opens the query in Datasheet view and displays the query results
clicking the Design View command opens the query in Design view so you can make modifications
shortcut menu

Figure 1–66

2

- Click Design View on the shortcut menu to open the query in Design view (Figure 1–67).

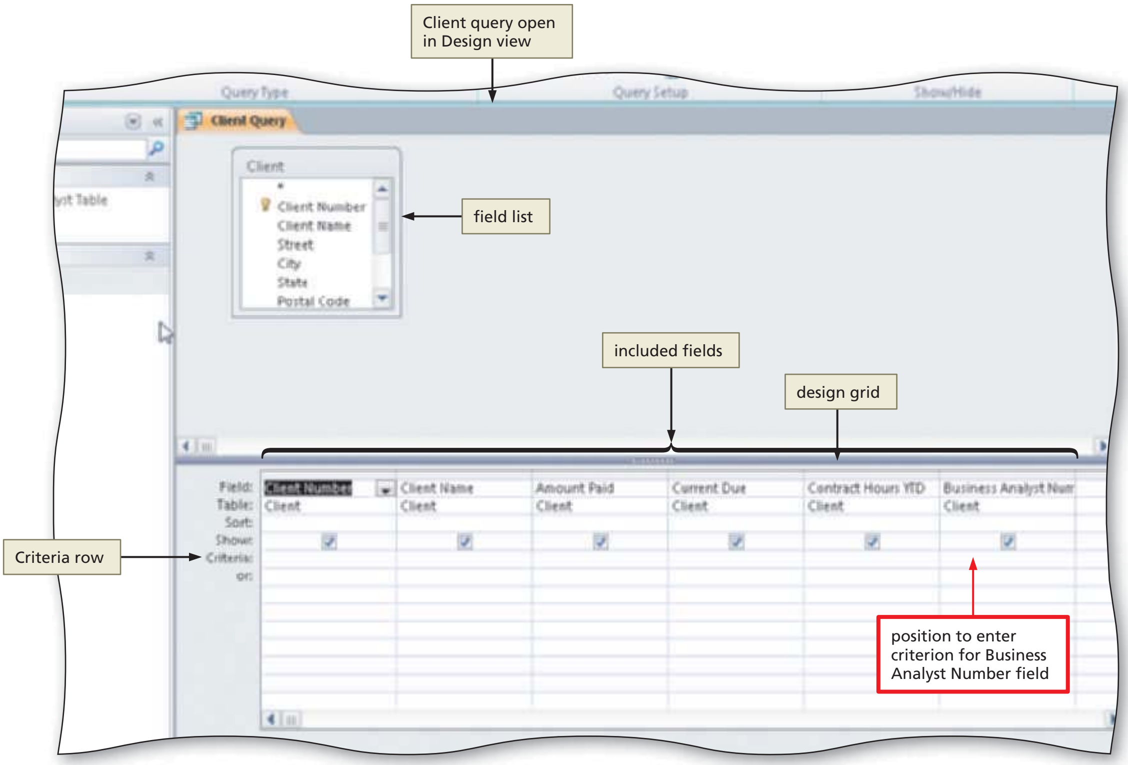

Client query open in Design view
Query Type
Query Setup
Show/Hide
Client Query
Client
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
field list
included fields
design grid
Field:
Table:
Sort:
Show:
Criteria:
or:
Client Number
Client Name
Amount Paid
Current Due
Contract Hours YTD
Business Analyst Num
Client
Criteria row
position to enter criterion for Business Analyst Number field

Figure 1–67

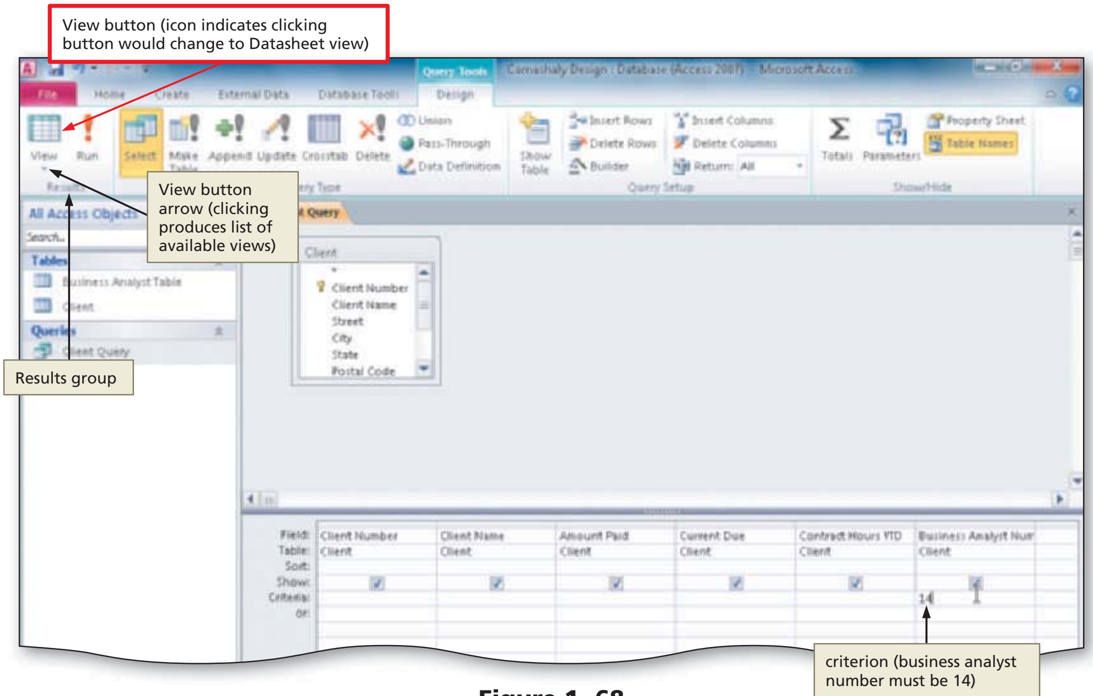
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3

- Click the Criteria row in the Business Analyst Number column of the grid, and then type `14` as the criterion (Figure 1–68).

Q&A The Business Analyst Number field is a text field. Do I need to enclose the value for a text field in quotation marks?

You could, but it is not necessary, because Access inserts the quotation marks for you automatically.


View button (icon indicates clicking button would change to Datasheet view)

View button arrow (clicking produces list of available views)

Results group

criterion (business analyst number must be 14)

Query Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
View
Run
Select
Make Table
Append
Update
Crosstab
Delete
Union
Pass-Through
Data Definition
Show Table
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Builder
Insert Columns
Delete Columns
Return: All
Totals
Parameters
Property Sheet
Table Names
Results
Query Type
Query Setup
Show/Hide
All Access Objects
Search...
Tables
Business Analyst Table
Client
Queries
Client Query
Client Query
Client
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code

Field:	Client Number	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due	Contract Hours YTD	Business Analyst Nur
Table:	Client	Client	Client	Client	Client	Client
Sort:						
Show:	☑	☑	☑	☑	☑	☑
Criteria:						14
or:						

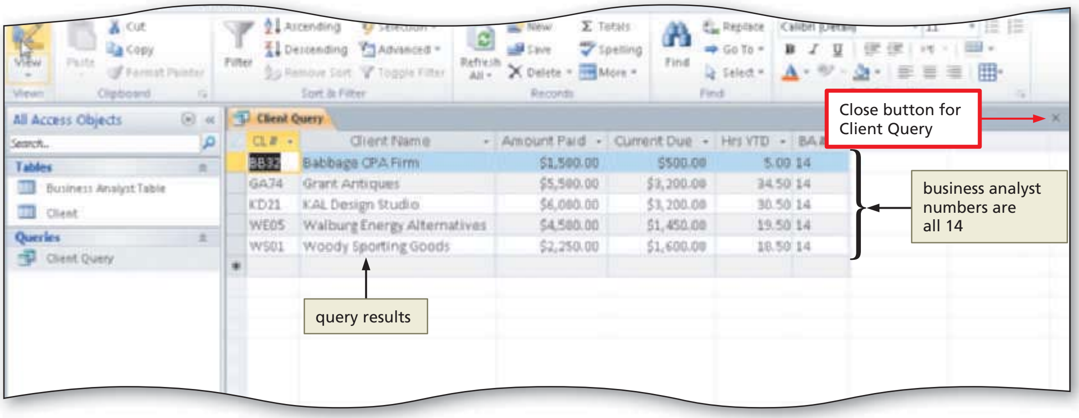
Figure 1–68

4

- Click the View button to display the query results in Datasheet view (Figure 1–69).

Q&A Could I click the View button arrow and then click Datasheet view?

Yes, if the icon representing the view you want appears on the View button; however, it is easier just to click the button.


Close button for Client Query

business analyst numbers are all 14

query results

View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Views
Clipboard
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Sort & Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Records
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Find
Calibri (Detail)
All Access Objects
Search...
Tables
Business Analyst Table
Client
Queries
Client Query
Client Query

CL #	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due	Hrs YTD	BA #
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	$1,500.00	$500.00	5.00	14
GA74	Grant Antiques	$5,500.00	$3,200.00	34.50	14
KD21	KAL Design Studio	$6,000.00	$3,200.00	30.50	14
WE05	Walburg Energy Alternatives	$4,500.00	$1,450.00	19.50	14
WS01	Woody Sporting Goods	$2,250.00	$1,600.00	10.50	14

Figure 1–69

5

- Click the Close button for the Client Query to close the query.
- When asked if you want to save your changes, click the No button.

Q&A If I saved the query, what would happen the next time I ran the query?

You would see only clients of business analyst 14.

Q&A Could I save the query with another name?

Yes. To save the query with another name, click File on the Ribbon, click Save Object As, enter a new file name in the Save As dialog box and click OK (Save As dialog box).

Other Ways

1. Click Run button (Query Tools Design tab | Results group)
2. Click Datasheet View button on Status bar

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Print the Results of a Query

The following steps print the results of a saved query.

1. With the Client Query selected in the Navigation Pane, click File on the Ribbon to open the Backstage view.
2. Click the Print tab in the Backstage view to display the Print gallery.
3. Click the Quick Print button to print the query.

Creating and Using Forms

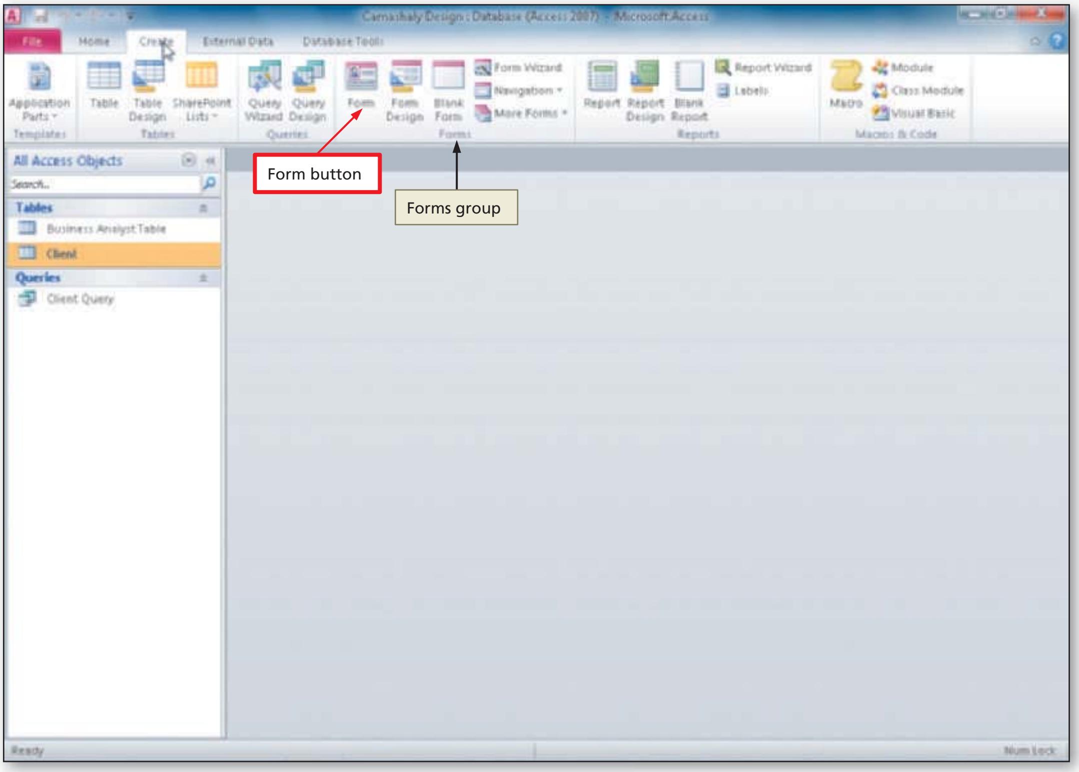
In Datasheet view, you can view many records at once. If there are many fields, however, only some of the fields in each record might be visible at a time. In **Form view**, where data is displayed in a form on the screen, you usually can see all the fields, but only for one record.

To Create a Form

Like a paper form, a **form** in a database is a formatted document with fields that contain data. Forms allow you to view and maintain data. Forms also can be used to print data, but reports are more commonly used for that purpose. The simplest type of form in Access is one that includes all the fields in a table stacked one above the other. The following steps create a form, use the form to view records, and then save the form.

1

- Select the Client table in the Navigation Pane.
- If necessary, click Create on the Ribbon to display the Create tab (Figure 1–70).


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Application Parts
Templates
Table
Table Design
SharePoint Lists
Tables
Query Wizard
Query Design
Queries
Form
Form Design
Blank Form
Form Wizard
Navigation
More Forms
Forms
Report
Report Design
Blank Report
Report Wizard
Labels
Reports
Macro
Module
Class Module
Visual Basic
Macros & Code
All Access Objects
Search...
Tables
Business Analyst Table
Client
Queries
Client Query
Ready
Num Lock

Form button

Forms group

Figure 1–70

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

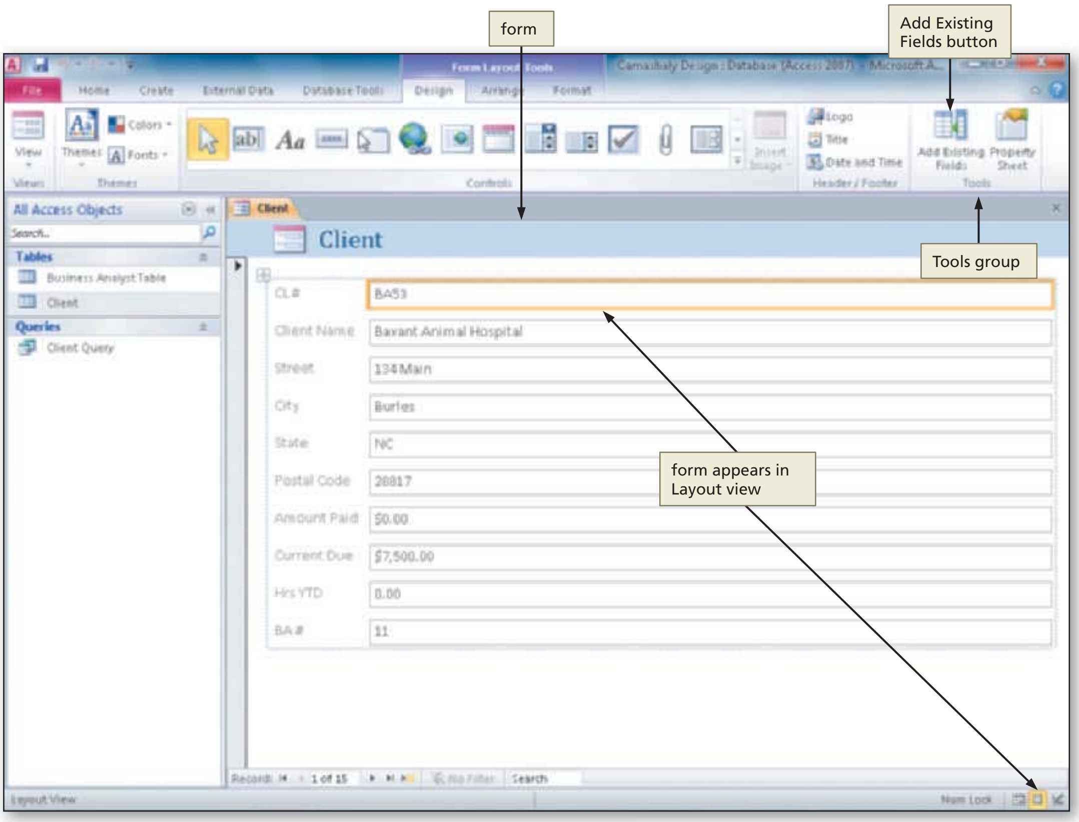
2

- Click the Form button (Create tab | Forms group) to create a simple form (Figure 1–71).

Q&A

A Field list appeared on my screen. What should I do?

Click the Add Existing Fields button (Form Layout Tools Design tab | Tools group) to remove the Field list from the screen.



CL #	BA53
Client Name	Bavant Animal Hospital
Street	134 Main
City	Burles
State	NC
Postal Code	28817
Amount Paid	$0.00
Current Due	$7,500.00
Hrs YTD	0.00
BA #	11

Figure 1–71

3

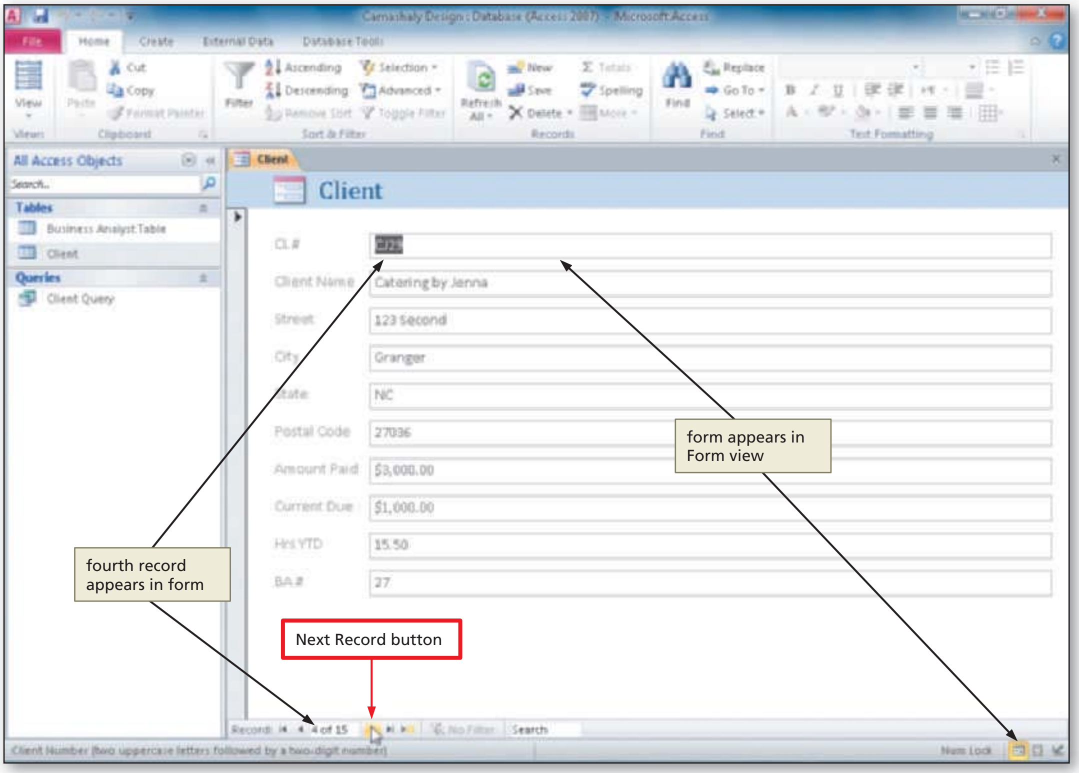
- If the form appears in Layout view, click the Form View button on the Access Status bar to display the form in Form view.

Q&A

How can I recognize Layout view?

Access identifies Layout view in three ways. The left side of the Status bar will contain the words Layout View; there will be shading around the outside of the selected field in the form; and the Layout View button will be selected on the right side of the Status bar.

- Click the Next Record button three times to move to record 4 (Figure 1–72).



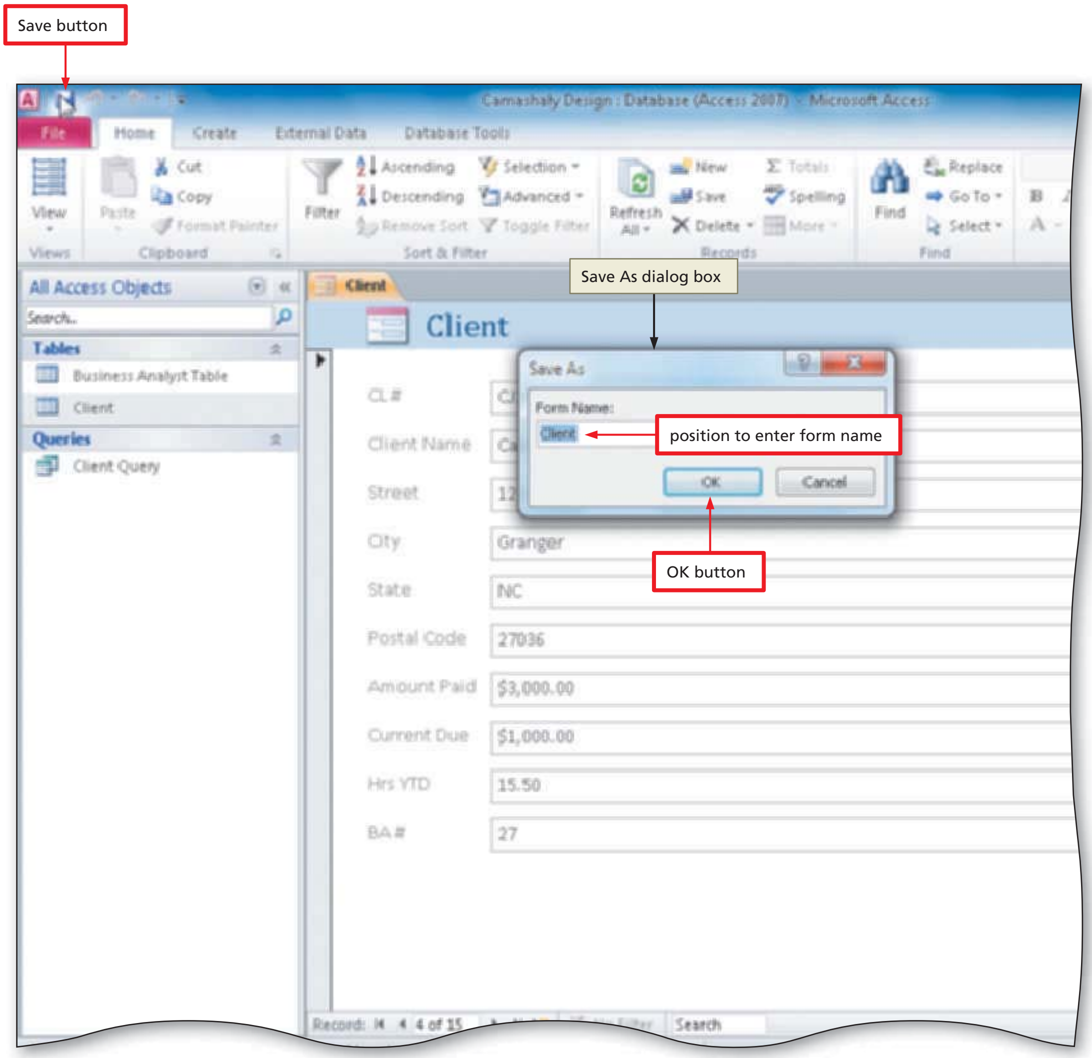
CL #	CJ29
Client Name	Catering by Jenna
Street	123 Second
City	Granger
State	NC
Postal Code	27036
Amount Paid	$3,000.00
Current Due	$1,000.00
Hrs YTD	15.50
BA #	27

Figure 1–72

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

4

- Click the Save button on the Quick Access Toolbar to display the Save As dialog box (Figure 1–73).


Save button
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Find
All Access Objects
Search...
Tables
Business Analyst Table
Client
Queries
Client Query
Client
Save As dialog box
Save As
Form Name:
position to enter form name
OK
Cancel
OK button
Record: 4 of 15
Search

Form Name: Client

CL#
Client Name
Street
City Granger
State NC
Postal Code 27036
Amount Paid $3,000.00
Current Due $1,000.00
Hrs YTD 15.50
BA# 27

Figure 1–73

Q&A

Did I have to click the Next Record button before saving?

No. The only reason you were asked to click the button was so that you could experience navigation within the form.

5

- Type `Client Form` as the form name, and then click the OK button to save the form.
- Click the Close button for the form to close the form.

Other Ways

1. Click View button (Form Layout Tools Design tab | Views group)

Using a Form

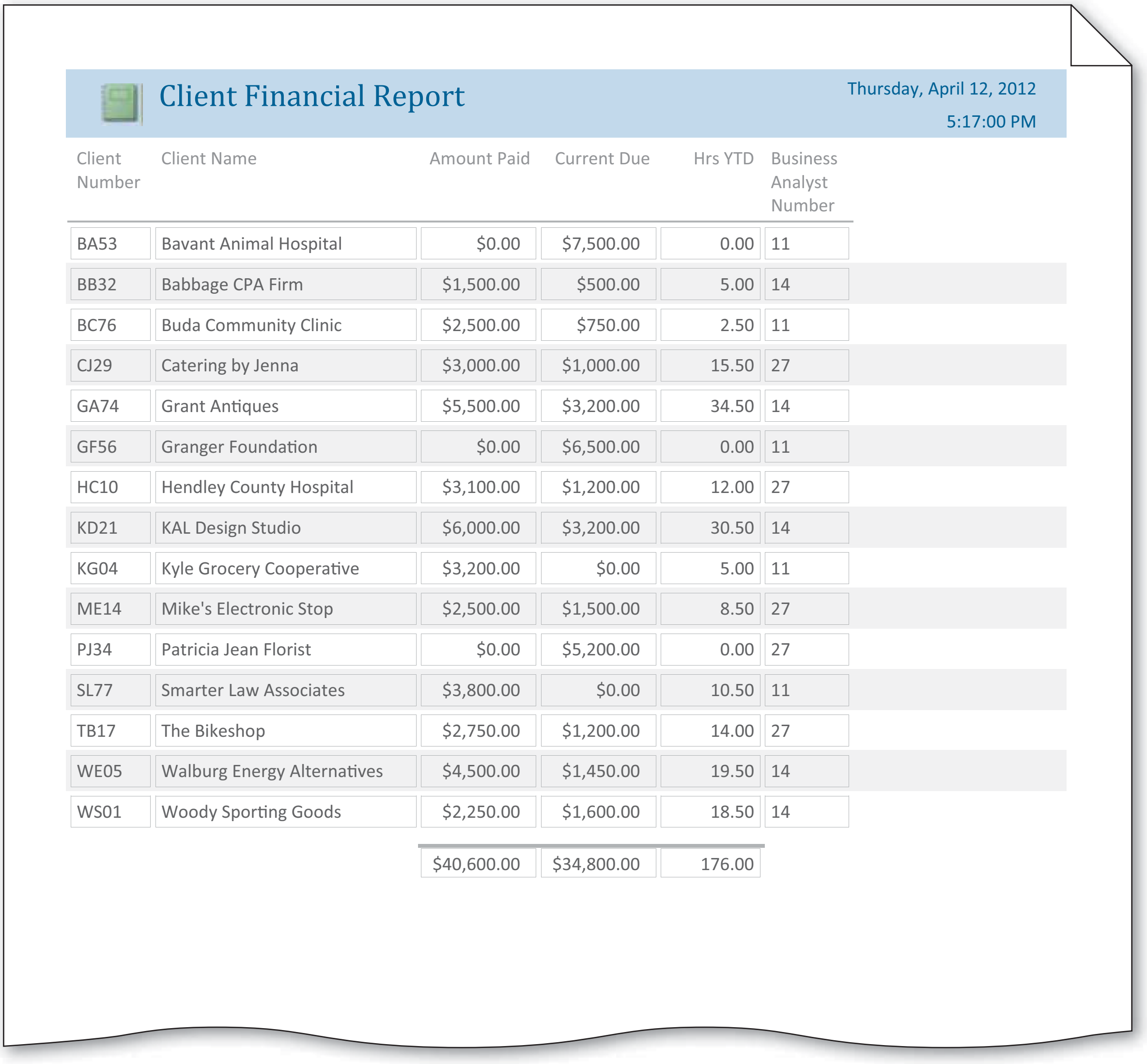
After you have saved a form, you can use it at anytime by right-clicking the form in the Navigation Pane and then clicking Open in the shortcut menu. In addition to viewing data in the form, you can also use it to enter or update data, a process that is very similar to updating data using a datasheet. If you plan to use the form to enter or revise data, you must ensure you are viewing the form in Form view.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Break Point: If you wish to take a break, this is a good place to do so. You can quit Access now. To resume at a later time, start Access, open the database called Camashaly Design, and continue following the steps from this location forward.

Creating and Printing Reports

Camashaly Design wants to create the Client Financial Report shown in Figure 1–74. Just as you can create a form containing all fields by clicking a single button, you can click a button to create a report containing all the fields. Doing so will not match the report shown in Figure 1–74, however, which does not contain all the fields. Some of the column headings are different. In addition, some of the headings in the report in Figure 1–74 are split over multiple lines, whereas the ones in the report created by clicking the button will not be split. Fortunately, you can later modify the report design to make it precisely match the figure. To do so, you use Layout view for the report.



Client Financial Report

Thursday, April 12, 2012

5:17:00 PM

Client Number	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due	Hrs YTD	Business Analyst Number
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	$0.00	$7,500.00	0.00	11
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	$1,500.00	$500.00	5.00	14
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	$2,500.00	$750.00	2.50	11
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	$3,000.00	$1,000.00	15.50	27
GA74	Grant Antiques	$5,500.00	$3,200.00	34.50	14
GF56	Granger Foundation	$0.00	$6,500.00	0.00	11
HC10	Hendley County Hospital	$3,100.00	$1,200.00	12.00	27
KD21	KAL Design Studio	$6,000.00	$3,200.00	30.50	14
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	$3,200.00	$0.00	5.00	11
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	$2,500.00	$1,500.00	8.50	27
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	$0.00	$5,200.00	0.00	27
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	$3,800.00	$0.00	10.50	11
TB17	The Bikeshop	$2,750.00	$1,200.00	14.00	27
WE05	Walburg Energy Alternatives	$4,500.00	$1,450.00	19.50	14
WS01	Woody Sporting Goods	$2,250.00	$1,600.00	18.50	14
		$40,600.00	$34,800.00	176.00	

Figure 1–74

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Create a Report

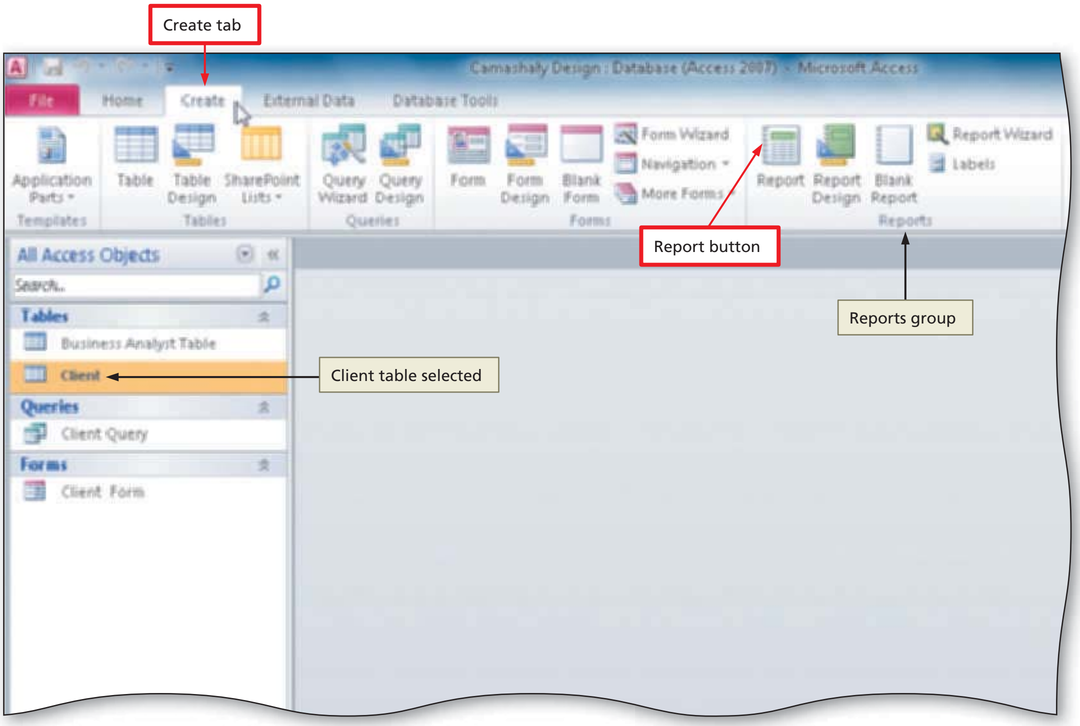
You will first create a report containing all fields. The following steps create and save the initial report. They also modify the report title.

1

- Be sure the Client table is selected in the Navigation Pane.
- Click Create on the Ribbon to display the Create tab (Figure 1–75).

Q&A Why do I need to select the Client table prior to clicking Create on the Ribbon?

You don't need to select it at that point. You do need to select it prior to clicking the Report button at the next step because Access will include all the fields in whichever table or query is currently selected.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Application Parts
Table
Table Design
SharePoint Lists
Templates
Tables
Query Wizard
Query Design
Queries
Form
Form Design
Blank Form
Form Wizard
Navigation
More Forms
Forms
Report
Report Design
Blank Report
Report Wizard
Labels
Reports
All Access Objects
Search...
Tables
Business Analyst Table
Client
Queries
Client Query
Forms
Client Form

Create tab

Report button

Reports group

Client table selected

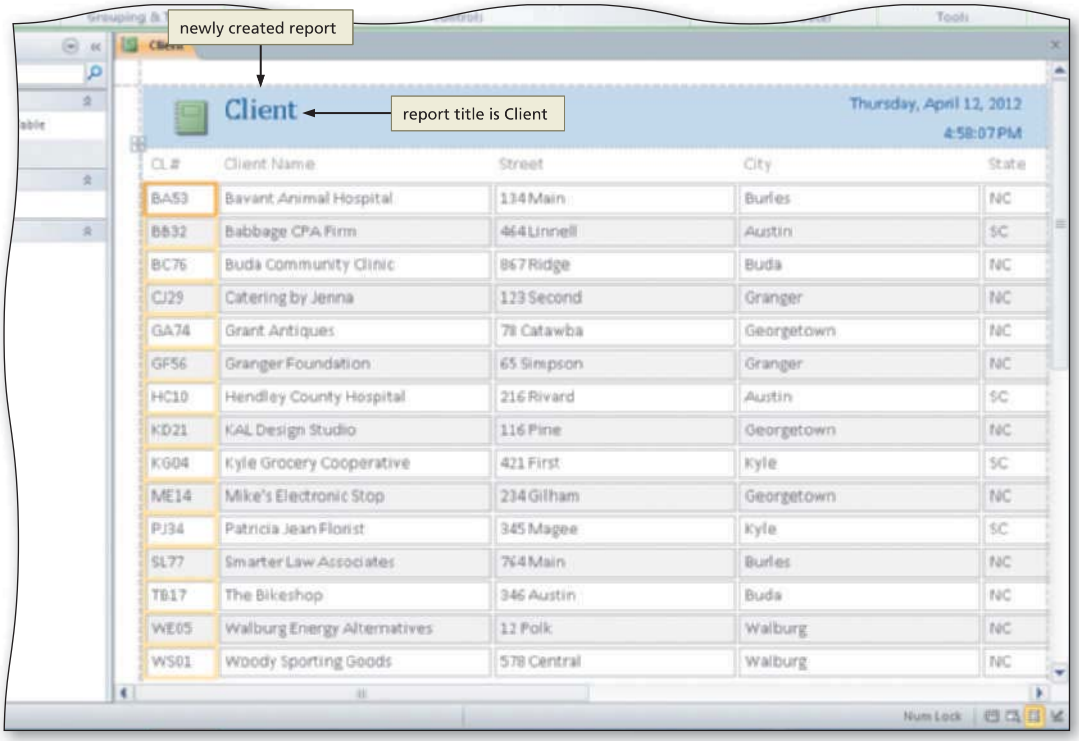
Figure 1–75

2

- Click the Report button (Create tab | Reports group) to create the report (Figure 1–76).

Q&A Why is the report title Client?

Access automatically assigns the name of the table or query as the title. It also automatically includes the date. You can change either of these later.


Client
Num Lock

newly created report

report title is Client

Client

Thursday, April 12, 2012
4:58:07 PM

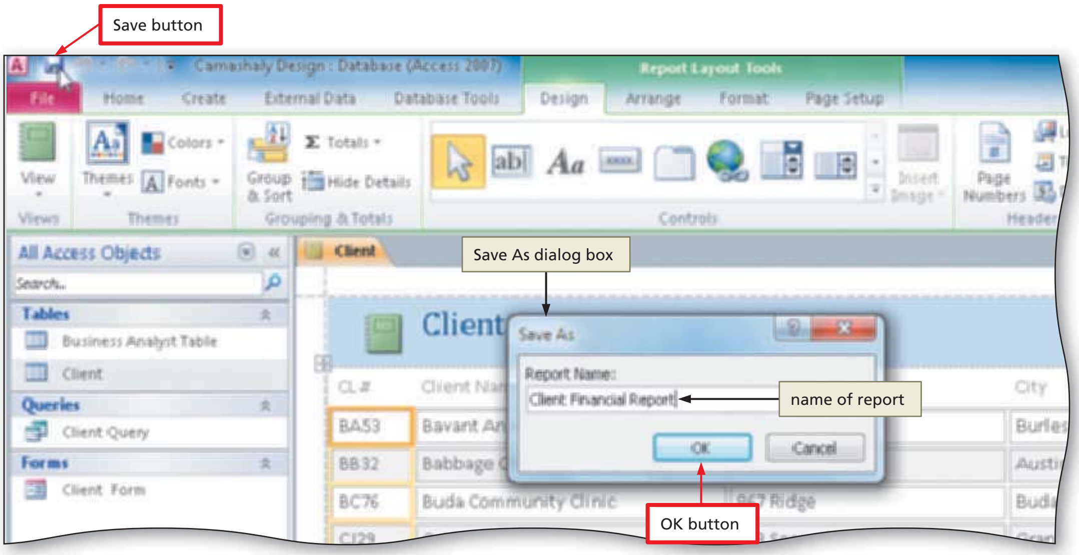
CL #	Client Name	Street	City	State
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	134 Main	Burles	NC
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	464 Linnell	Austin	SC
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	867 Ridge	Buda	NC
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	123 Second	Granger	NC
GA74	Grant Antiques	78 Catawba	Georgetown	NC
GF56	Granger Foundation	65 Simpson	Granger	NC
HC10	Hendley County Hospital	216 Rivard	Austin	SC
KD21	KAL Design Studio	116 Pine	Georgetown	NC
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	421 First	Kyle	SC
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	234 Gilham	Georgetown	NC
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	345 Magee	Kyle	SC
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	764 Main	Burles	NC
TB17	The Bikeshop	346 Austin	Buda	NC
WE05	Walburg Energy Alternatives	12 Polk	Walburg	NC
WS01	Woody Sporting Goods	578 Central	Walburg	NC

Figure 1–76

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3

- Click the Save button on the Quick Access Toolbar to display the Save As dialog box and then type `Client Financial Report` as the name of the report (Figure 1–77).


Save button

Save As dialog box

name of report

OK button

Report Name: Client Financial Report

Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
Report Layout Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
View
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Group & Sort
Totals
Hide Details
Grouping & Totals
Controls
Insert Image
Page Numbers
Header
All Access Objects
Search...
Tables
Business Analyst Table
Client
Queries
Client Query
Forms
Client Form
Client
Save As
OK
Cancel
CL #
Client Name
City
BA53
BB32
BC76
Buda Community Clinic
867 Ridge

Figure 1–77

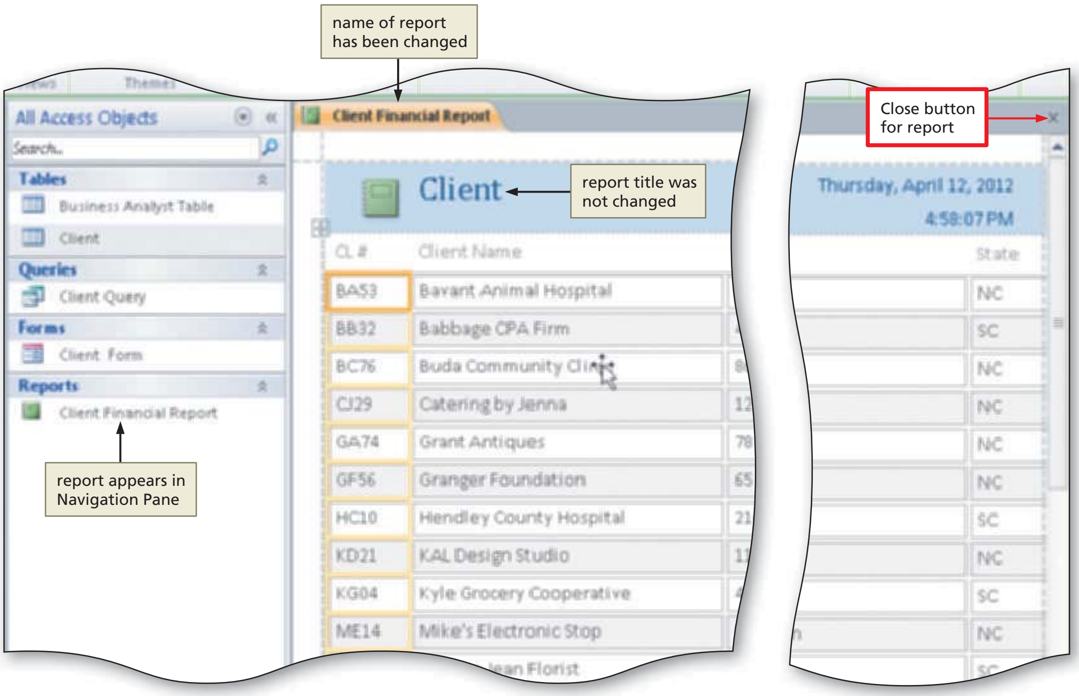
4

- Click the OK button (Save As dialog box) to save the report (Figure 1–78).

Q&A

The name of the report changed. Why didn't the report title also change?

The report title just happens to begin with the same name as the report. If you change the name of the report, Access will not change the report title. You can change it at any time to any title you like.


name of report has been changed

report title was not changed

report appears in Navigation Pane

Close button for report

All Access Objects
Search...
Tables
Business Analyst Table
Client
Queries
Client Query
Forms
Client Form
Reports
Client Financial Report
Client Financial Report
Client
Thursday, April 12, 2012
4:58:07 PM
CL #
Client Name
State
BA53
Bavant Animal Hospital
NC
BB32
Babbage CPA Firm
SC
BC76
Buda Community Clinic
NC
CJ29
Catering by Jenna
NC
GA74
Grant Antiques
NC
GF56
Granger Foundation
NC
HC10
Hendley County Hospital
SC
KD21
KAL Design Studio
NC
KG04
Kyle Grocery Cooperative
SC
ME14
Mike's Electronic Stop
NC

Figure 1–78

5

- Close the report by clicking its Close button.

Using Layout View in a Report

When working with a report in Access, there are four different ways to view the report. They are Report view, Print Preview, Layout view, and Design view. Report view shows the report on the screen. Print Preview shows the report as it will appear when printed. Layout view is similar to Report view in that it shows the report on the screen, but it also allows you to make changes to the report. It is usually the easiest way to make such changes. Design view also allows you to make changes, but it does not show you the actual report. It is most useful when the changes you need to make are especially complex. In this chapter, you will use Layout view to modify the report.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Modify Column Headings and Resize Columns

To make the report match the one in Figure 1–74, you need to change the title, remove some columns, modify the column headings, and also resize the columns. The following steps use Layout view to make the necessary modifications to the report.

1

- Right-click Client Financial Report in the Navigation Pane, and then click Layout View on the shortcut menu to open the report in Layout view.
- If a Field list appears, click the Add Existing Fields button (Report Layout Tools Design tab | Tools group) to remove the Field list from the screen.
- Close the Navigation Pane.
- Click the report title once to select it.
- Click the report title a second time to produce an insertion point (Figure 1–79).

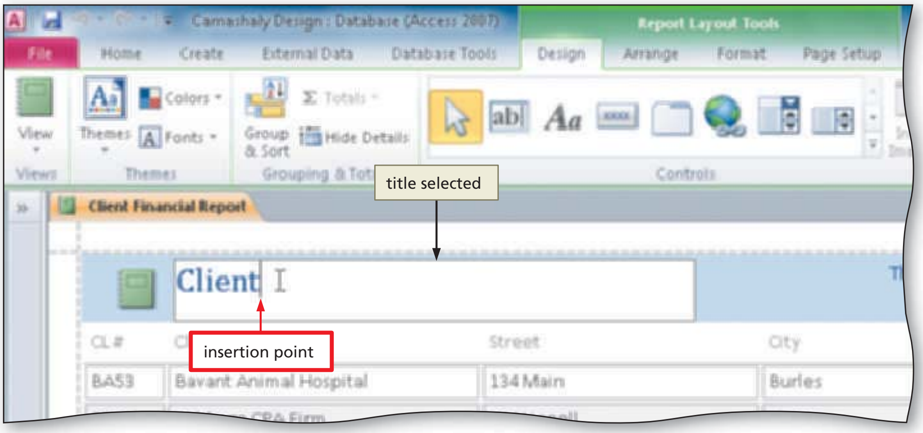

title selected
insertion point
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
Report Layout Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
View
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Group & Sort
Totals
Hide Details
Views
Grouping & Totals
Controls
Client Financial Report
Client
CL #
Street
City
BA53
Bavant Animal Hospital
134 Main
Burles

Figure 1–79

Q&A I clicked at a different position in the title and my insertion point is in the middle of Client. How do I produce an insertion point at the position shown in the figure?

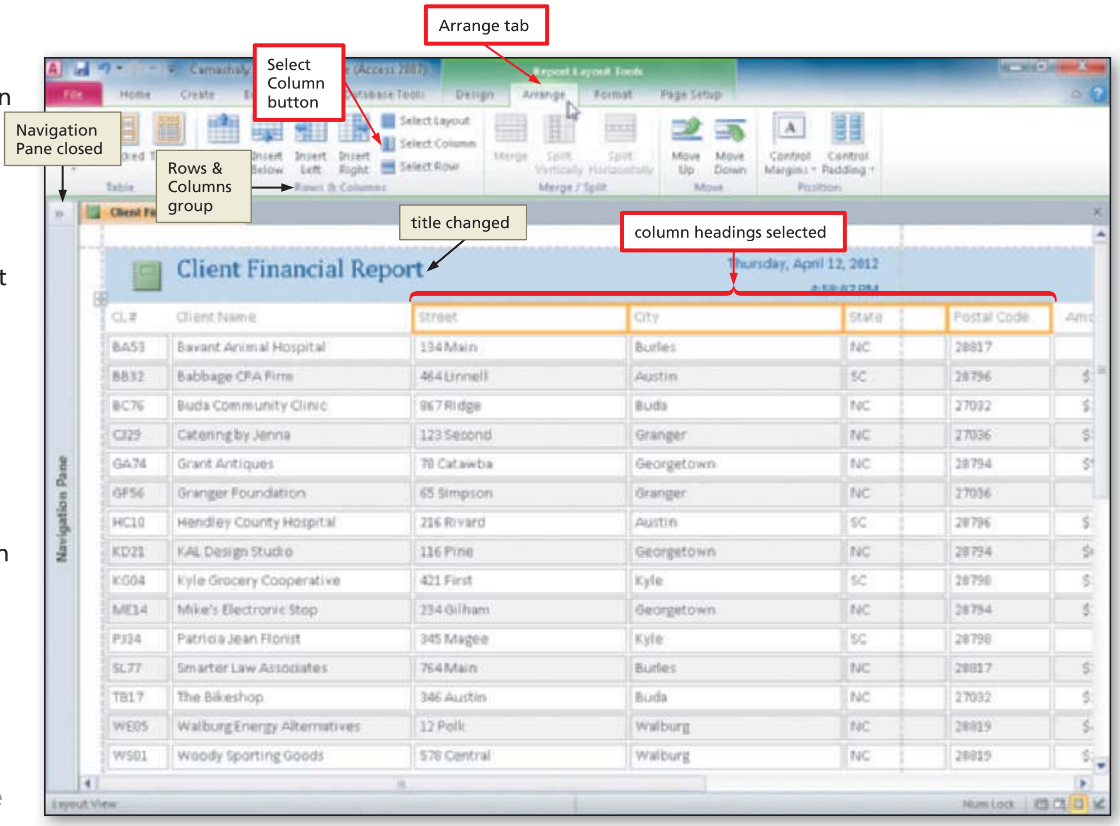
You can use the RIGHT ARROW key to move the insertion point to the position in the figure or you can click the desired position.

2

- Press the SPACEBAR to insert a space and then type `Financial Report` to complete the title.
- Click the column heading for the Street field to select it.
- Hold the SHIFT key down and then click the column headings for the City field, the State field, and the Postal Code fields to select multiple column headings.

Q&A What happens if I don't hold the SHIFT key down?

As soon as you click the column heading, it will be the only one that is selected. To select multiple objects, you need to hold the SHIFT key down for every object after the first one.


Arrange tab
Select Column button
Navigation Pane closed
Rows & Columns group
title changed
column headings selected
Report Layout Tools
File
Home
Create
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
Insert Below
Insert Left
Insert Right
Select Layout
Select Column
Select Row
Rows & Columns
Merge
Split Vertically
Split Horizontally
Merge / Split
Move Up
Move Down
Move
Control Margins
Control Padding
Position
Navigation Pane
Client Financial Report
Thursday, April 12, 2012
Layout View
Num Lock

CL #	Client Name	Street	City	State	Postal Code
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	134 Main	Burles	NC	28817
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	464 Linnell	Austin	SC	28796
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	867 Ridge	Buda	NC	27032
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	123 Second	Granger	NC	27036
GA74	Grant Antiques	78 Catawba	Georgetown	NC	28794
GF56	Granger Foundation	65 Simpson	Granger	NC	27036
HC10	Hendley County Hospital	216 Rivard	Austin	SC	28796
KD21	KAL Design Studio	116 Pine	Georgetown	NC	28794
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	421 First	Kyle	SC	28798
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	234 Gilham	Georgetown	NC	28794
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	345 Magee	Kyle	SC	28798
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	764 Main	Burles	NC	28817
TB17	The Bikeshop	346 Austin	Buda	NC	27032
WE05	Walburg Energy Alternatives	12 Polk	Walburg	NC	28819
WS01	Woody Sporting Goods	578 Central	Walburg	NC	28819

Figure 1–80

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Q&A I selected the wrong collection of objects. What should I do?

You can click somewhere else on the report so that the objects you want are not selected, and then begin the process again. Alternatively, you can repeatedly click the Undo button on the Quick Access Toolbar to undo your selections. Once you have done so, you can select the objects you want.

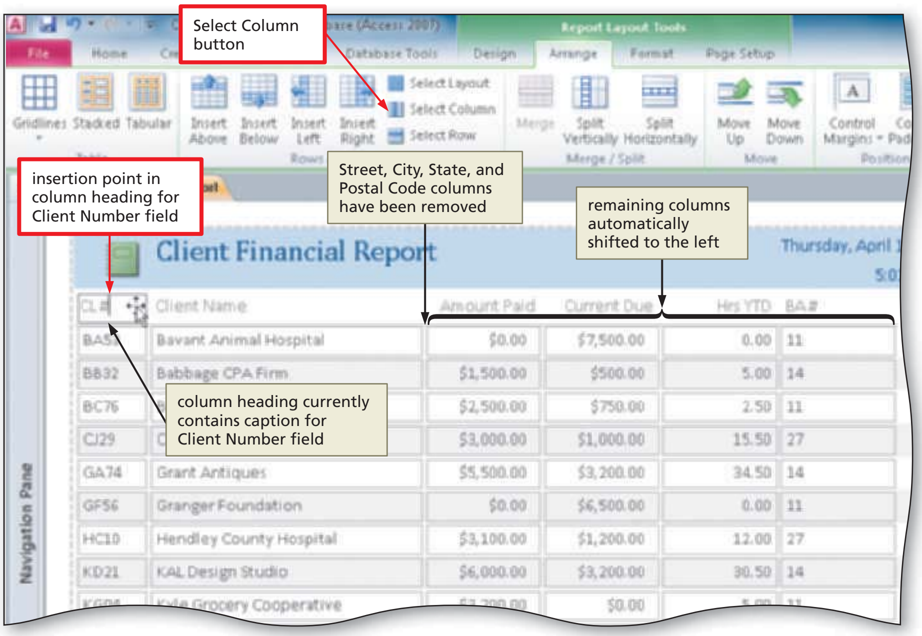
- Click Arrange on the Ribbon to display the Arrange tab (Figure 1–80).

3

- Click the Select Column button (Report Layout Tools Arrange tab | Rows & Columns group) to select the entire columns corresponding to the column headings you selected in the previous step.
- Press the DELETE key to delete the columns.
- Click the column heading for the Client Number field twice, once to select it and the second time to produce an insertion point (Figure 1–81).

Q&A I inadvertently selected the wrong field. What should I do?

Click somewhere outside the various fields to deselect the one you have selected. Then, click the Client Number field twice.


Report Layout Tools
File
Home
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
Gridlines
Stacked
Tabular
Insert Above
Insert Below
Insert Left
Insert Right
Select Layout
Select Column
Select Row
Merge
Split Vertically
Split Horizontally
Move Up
Move Down
Control Margins
Merge / Split
Move
Navigation Pane
Client Financial Report
Thursday, April

Select Column button

insertion point in column heading for Client Number field

Street, City, State, and Postal Code columns have been removed

remaining columns automatically shifted to the left

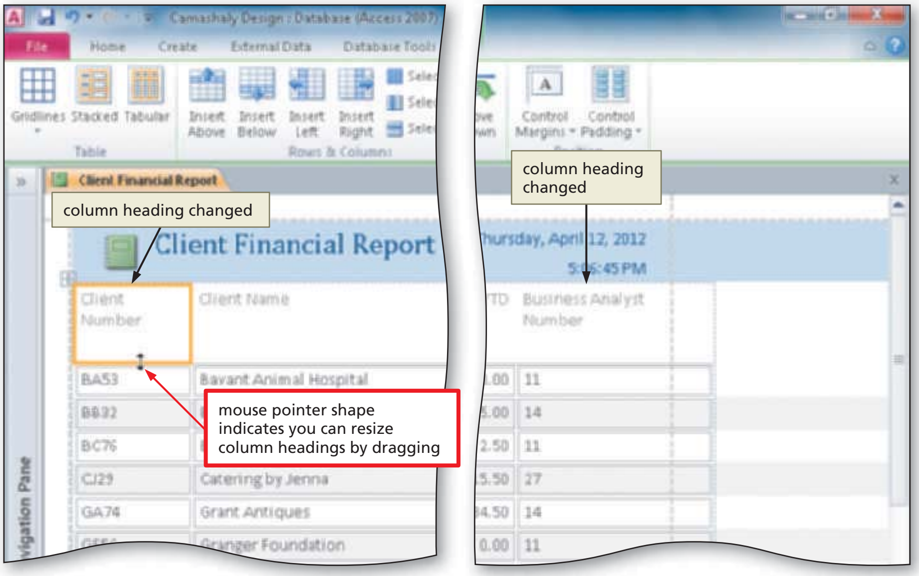
column heading currently contains caption for Client Number field

CL#	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due	Hrs YTD	BA#
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	$0.00	$7,500.00	0.00	11
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	$1,500.00	$500.00	5.00	14
BC76		$2,500.00	$750.00	2.50	11
CJ29	C	$3,000.00	$1,000.00	15.50	27
GA74	Grant Antiques	$5,500.00	$3,200.00	34.50	14
GF56	Granger Foundation	$0.00	$6,500.00	0.00	11
HC10	Hendley County Hospital	$3,100.00	$1,200.00	12.00	27
KD21	KAL Design Studio	$6,000.00	$3,200.00	30.50	14
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative		$0.00		11

Figure 1–81

4

- Use the DELETE or BACKSPACE keys as necessary to erase the current entry and then type `Client Number` as the new entry.
- Click the heading for the Business Analyst Number field twice, erase the current entry, and then type `Business Analyst Number` as the new entry.
- Click the Client Number field heading to select it, point to the lower boundary of the heading for the Client Number field so that the mouse pointer changes to a two-headed arrow and then drag the lower boundary to the approximate position shown in Figure 1–82 to expand the column headings.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Gridlines
Stacked
Tabular
Insert Above
Insert Below
Insert Left
Insert Right
Table
Rows & Columns
Control Margins
Control Padding
Client Financial Report
Navigation Pane
Client Financial Report
Thursday, April 12, 2012
5:06:45 PM
Client Number
Client Name
Business Analyst Number
BA53
BB32
BC76
CJ29
GA74
Bavant Animal Hospital
Catering by Jenna
Grant Antiques
Granger Foundation

column heading changed

column heading changed

mouse pointer shape indicates you can resize column headings by dragging

Figure 1–82

Q&A Do I have to be exact?

No. If you are in a slightly different position, your report would look a little different from the one in the figure, but the difference would not be significant.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

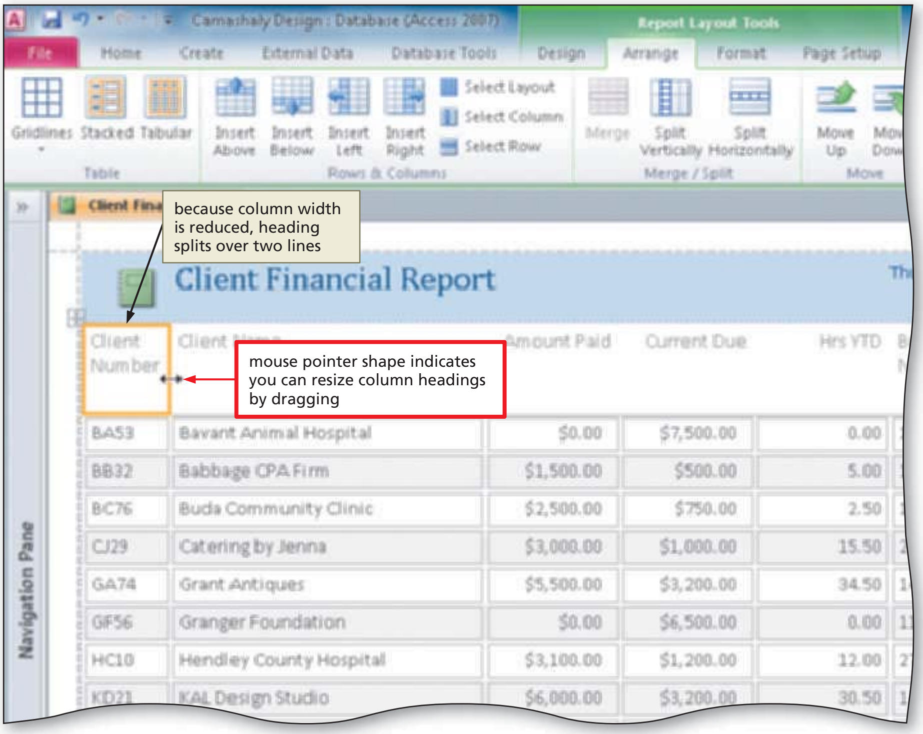
5

- Point to the right boundary of the heading for the Client Number field so that the mouse pointer changes to a two-headed arrow and then drag the right boundary to the approximate position shown in Figure 1–83 to reduce the width of the column.

Q&A

Do I have to be exact?

No. Again, if you are in a slightly different position, the difference between your report and the one in the figure would not be significant.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
Report Layout Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
Gridlines
Stacked
Tabular
Insert Above
Insert Below
Insert Left
Insert Right
Select Layout
Select Column
Select Row
Merge
Split Vertically
Split Horizontally
Move Up
Table
Rows & Columns
Merge / Split
Move
Navigation Pane

because column width is reduced, heading splits over two lines

mouse pointer shape indicates you can resize column headings by dragging

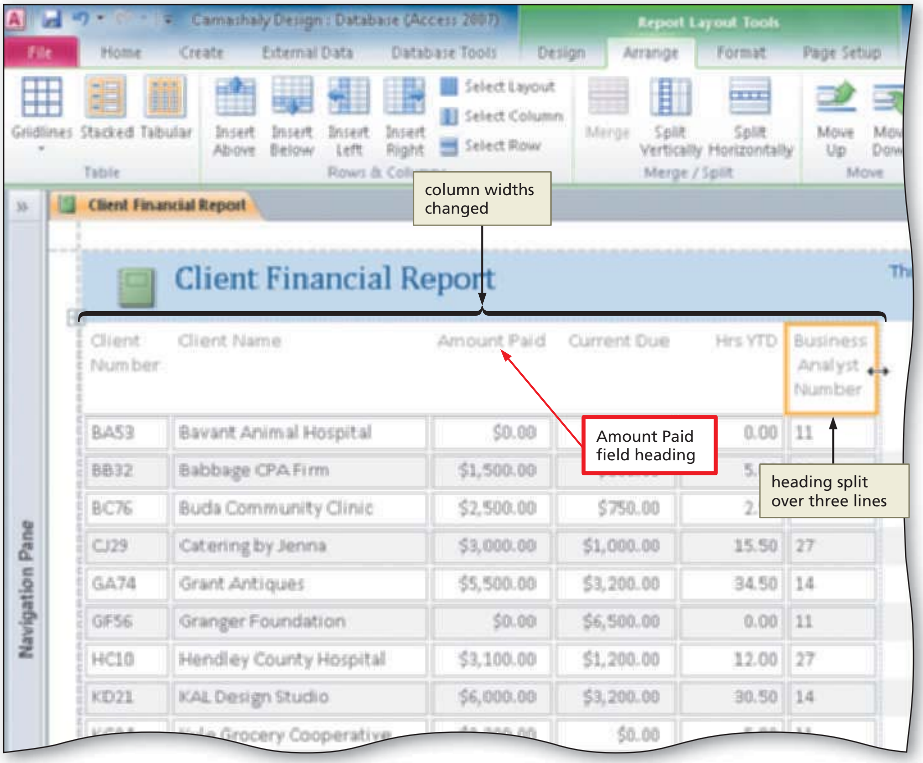
Client Financial Report

Client Number	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due	Hrs YTD
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	$0.00	$7,500.00	0.00
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	$1,500.00	$500.00	5.00
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	$2,500.00	$750.00	2.50
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	$3,000.00	$1,000.00	15.50
GA74	Grant Antiques	$5,500.00	$3,200.00	34.50
GF56	Granger Foundation	$0.00	$6,500.00	0.00
HC10	Hendley County Hospital	$3,100.00	$1,200.00	12.00
KD21	KAL Design Studio	$6,000.00	$3,200.00	30.50

Figure 1–83

6

- Using the same technique, resize the other columns to the sizes shown in Figure 1–84.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
Report Layout Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
Gridlines
Stacked
Tabular
Insert Above
Insert Below
Insert Left
Insert Right
Select Layout
Select Column
Select Row
Merge
Split Vertically
Split Horizontally
Move Up
Table
Rows & Columns
Merge / Split
Move
Client Financial Report
Navigation Pane

column widths changed

Amount Paid field heading

heading split over three lines

Client Financial Report

Client Number	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due	Hrs YTD	Business Analyst Number
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	$0.00		0.00	11
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	$1,500.00			
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	$2,500.00	$750.00		
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	$3,000.00	$1,000.00	15.50	27
GA74	Grant Antiques	$5,500.00	$3,200.00	34.50	14
GF56	Granger Foundation	$0.00	$6,500.00	0.00	11
HC10	Hendley County Hospital	$3,100.00	$1,200.00	12.00	27
KD21	KAL Design Studio	$6,000.00	$3,200.00	30.50	14
	Kyle Grocery Cooperative		$0.00		

Figure 1–84

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Add Totals to a Report

The report in Figure 1–74 contains totals for the Amount Paid, Current Due, and Hrs YTD columns. You can use Layout view to add these totals. The following steps use Layout view to include totals for these three columns.

1

- Click the Amount Paid field heading (shown in Figure 1–84) to select the field.

Q&A Do I have to click the heading? Could I click the field on one of the records?

You do not have to click the heading. You also could click the Amount Paid field on any record.

- Click Design on the Ribbon to display the Design tab.
- Click the Totals button (Report Layout Tools Design tab | Grouping & Totals group) to display the list of available calculations (Figure 1–85).

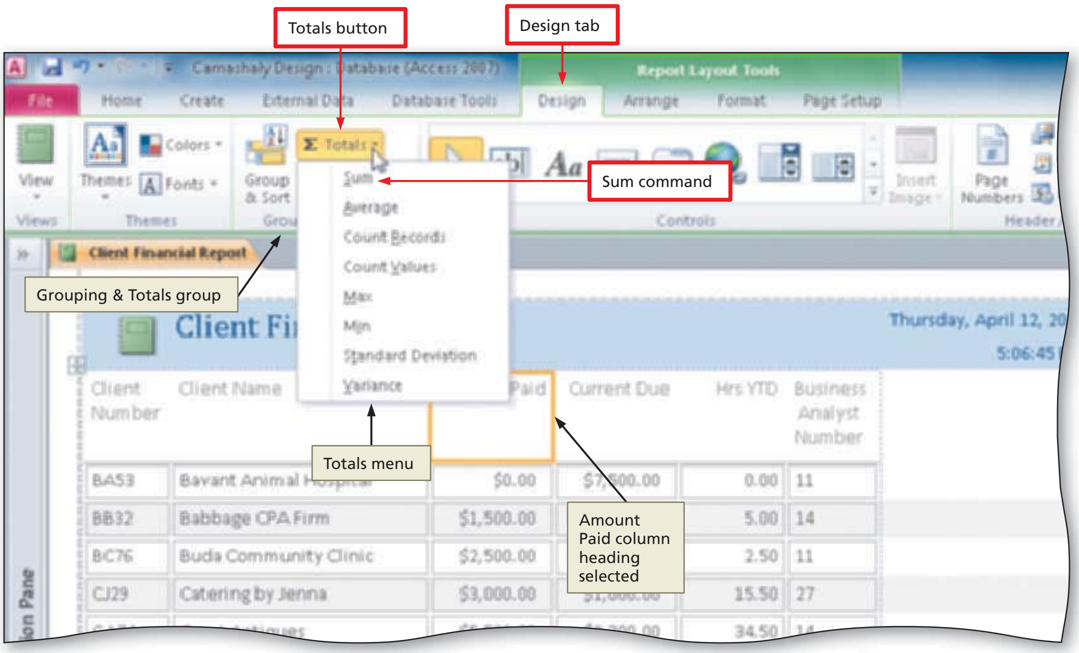

Totals button
Design tab
Sum command
Grouping & Totals group
Totals menu
Amount Paid column heading selected
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
Report Layout Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
Totals
Sum
Average
Count Records
Count Values
Max
Min
Standard Deviation
Variance
Client Financial Report
Client Number
Client Name
Paid
Current Due
Hrs YTD
Business Analyst Number

Figure 1–85

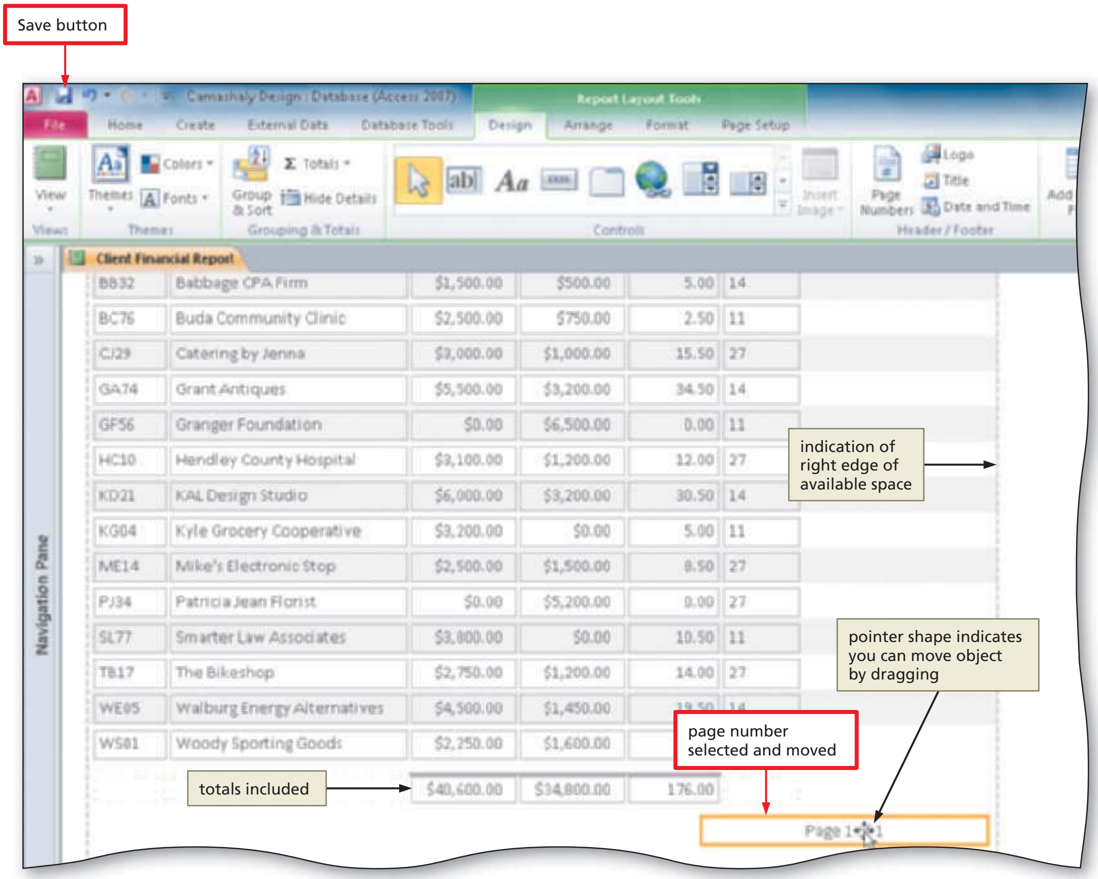
2

- Click Sum to calculate the sum of the amount of paid values.

Q&A Is Sum the same as Total?

Yes.

- Using the same technique, add totals for the Current Due and Hrs YTD columns.
- Scroll down to the bottom of the report to verify that the totals are included. If necessary, expand the size of the total controls so they appear completely.
- Click the Page number to select it and then drag it to the approximate position shown in Figure 1–86.


Save button
indication of right edge of available space
pointer shape indicates you can move object by dragging
page number selected and moved
totals included
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
Report Layout Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
Client Financial Report
Navigation Pane
Page 1 of 1

BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	$1,500.00	$500.00	5.00	14
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	$2,500.00	$750.00	2.50	11
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	$3,000.00	$1,000.00	15.50	27
GA74	Grant Antiques	$5,500.00	$3,200.00	34.50	14
GF56	Granger Foundation	$0.00	$6,500.00	0.00	11
HC10	Hendley County Hospital	$3,100.00	$1,200.00	12.00	27
KD21	KAL Design Studio	$6,000.00	$3,200.00	30.50	14
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	$3,200.00	$0.00	5.00	11
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	$2,500.00	$1,500.00	8.50	27
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	$0.00	$5,200.00	0.00	27
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	$3,800.00	$0.00	10.50	11
TB17	The Bikeshop	$2,750.00	$1,200.00	14.00	27
WE05	Walburg Energy Alternatives	$4,500.00	$1,450.00	19.50	14
WS01	Woody Sporting Goods	$2,250.00	$1,600.00	[illegible]	[illegible]
		$40,600.00	$34,800.00	176.00	

Figure 1–86

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Q&A

Why did I need to move the page number?

The dotted line near the right-hand edge of the screen indicates the right-hand border of the available space on the printed page, based on whatever margins and orientation are currently selected. A portion of the page number extends beyond this border. By moving the page number, it no longer extends beyond the border.

3

- Click the Save button on the Quick Access Toolbar to save your changes to the report layout.
- Close the report.

To Print a Report

The following steps print the report.

1. With the Client Financial Report selected in the Navigation Pane, click File on the Ribbon to open the Backstage view.
2. Click the Print tab in the Backstage view to display the Print gallery.
3. Click the Quick Print button to print the report.

Q&A

How can I print multiple copies of my report?

Click File on the Ribbon to open the Backstage view. Click the Print tab, click Print in the Print gallery to display the Print dialog box, increase the number in the Number of Copies box, and then click the OK button (Print dialog box).

Q&A

How can I print a range of pages rather than printing the whole report?

Click File on the Ribbon to open the Backstage view. Click the Print tab, click Print in the Print gallery to display the Print dialog box, click the Pages option button in the Print Range area, enter the desired page range, and then click the OK button (Print dialog box).

BTW

Tabbed Documents Versus Overlapping Windows

By default, Access 2010 displays database objects in tabbed documents instead of overlapping windows. If your database is in overlapping windows mode, click File on the Ribbon, click Options in the Backstage view, click Current Database in the Access Options dialog box, and select the Display Document Tabs check box and the Tabbed Documents option button.

Database Properties

Access helps you organize and identify your databases by using **database properties**, which are the details about a file. Database properties, also known as **metadata**, can include such information as the file's author, title, or subject. **Keywords** are words or phrases that further describe the database. For example, a class name or database topic can describe the file's purpose or content.

Five different types of document properties exist, but the more common ones used in this book are standard and automatically updated properties. **Standard properties** are associated with all Microsoft Office documents and include author, title, and subject. **Automatically updated properties** include file system properties, such as the date you create or change a file, and statistics, such as the file size.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Change Database Properties

The Database Properties dialog box contains areas where you can view and enter database properties. You can view and change information in this dialog box at anytime while you are working on your database. It is a good idea to add your name and class name as database properties. You also can add keywords that further describe your database. The following steps use the Properties dialog box to change database properties.

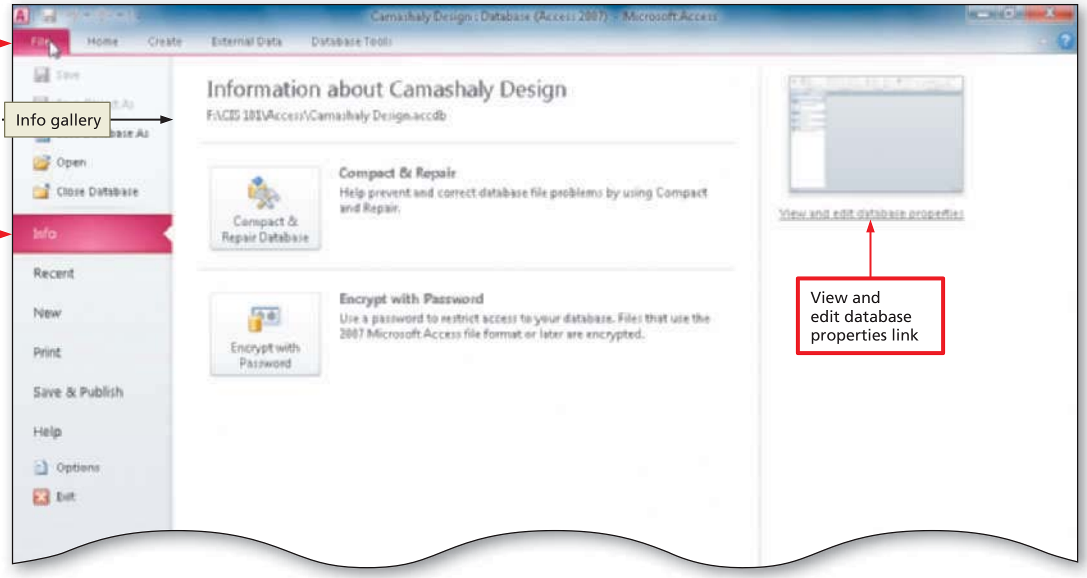
1

- Click File on the Ribbon to open the Backstage view.
- If necessary, click the Info tab in the Backstage view to display the Information gallery (Figure 1–87).

Q&A

How do I close the Backstage view?

Click File on the Ribbon or click the preview of the document in the Information gallery to return to the Access database window.


File tab
Info gallery
Info tab
View and edit database properties link
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Save
Save Database As
Open
Close Database
Info
Recent
New
Print
Save & Publish
Help
Options
Exit
Compact & Repair Database
Encrypt with Password
View and edit database properties

Information about Camashaly Design

F:\CIS 101\Access\Camashaly Design.accdb

Compact & Repair

Help prevent and correct database file problems by using Compact and Repair.

Encrypt with Password

Use a password to restrict access to your database. Files that use the 2007 Microsoft Access file format or later are encrypted.

Figure 1–87

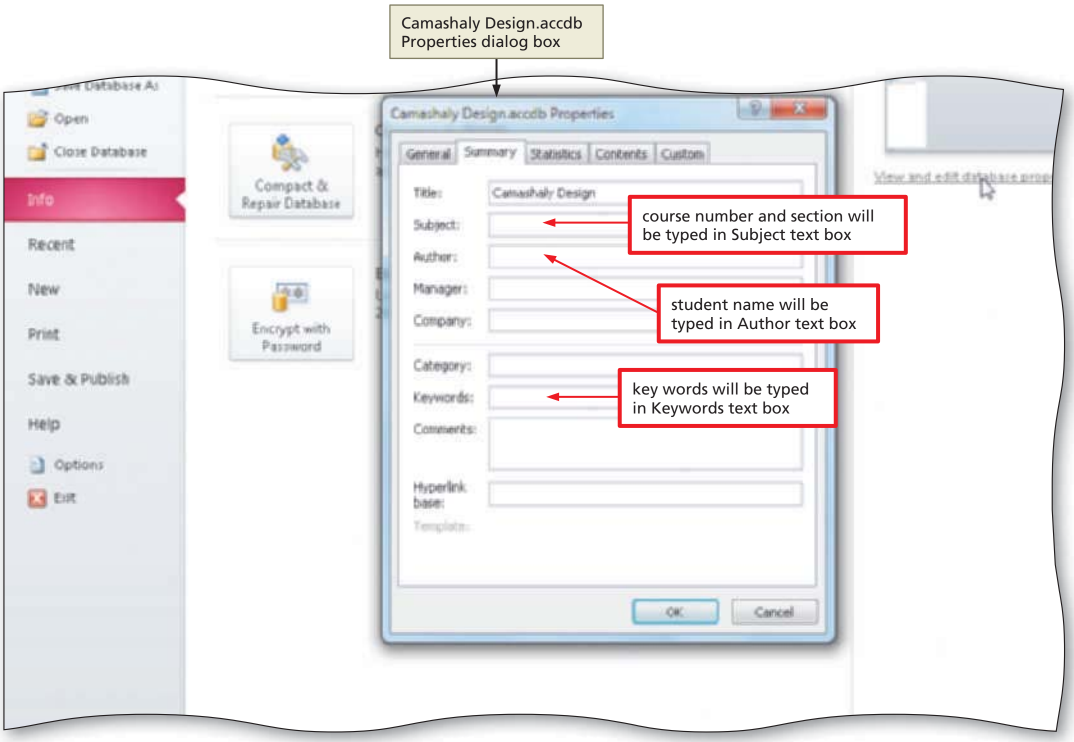
2

- Click the 'View and edit database properties' link in the right pane of the Info gallery to display the Camashaly Design.accdb Properties dialog box (Figure 1–88).

Q&A

Why are some of the database properties in my Properties dialog box already filled in?

The person who installed Microsoft Office 2010 on your computer or network may have set or customized the properties.


Camashaly Design.accdb Properties dialog box
course number and section will be typed in Subject text box
student name will be typed in Author text box
key words will be typed in Keywords text box
Save Database As
Open
Close Database
Info
Recent
New
Print
Save & Publish
Help
Options
Exit
Compact & Repair Database
Encrypt with Password
View and edit database properties
Camashaly Design.accdb Properties
General
Summary
Statistics
Contents
Custom
Subject:
Author:
Manager:
Company:
Category:
Keywords:
Comments:
Hyperlink base:
Template:
OK
Cancel

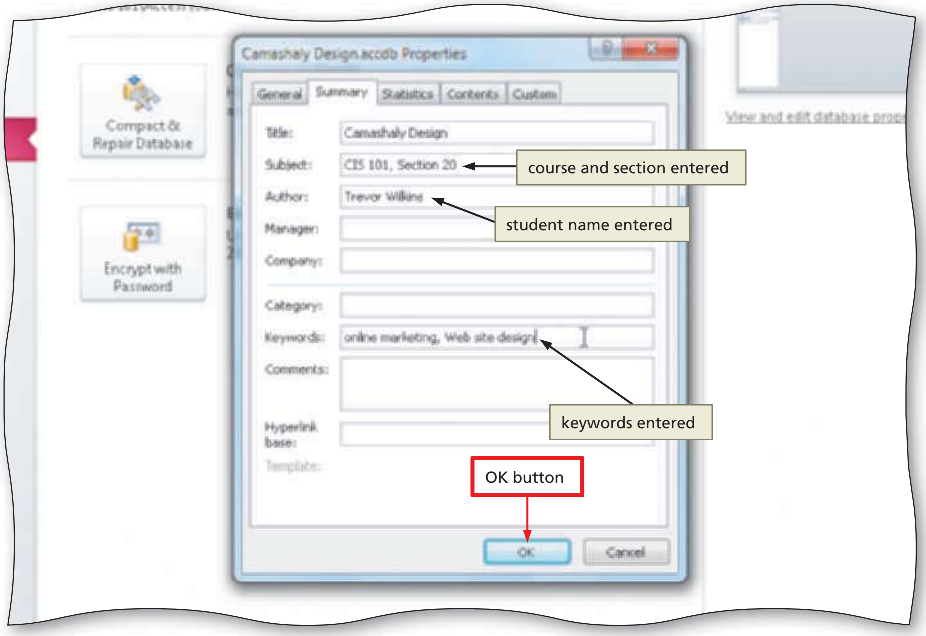
Title: Camashaly Design

Figure 1–88

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3

- If necessary, click the Summary tab.
- Click the Subject text box, if necessary delete any existing text, and then type **`CIS 101, Section 20`** as the Subject property.
- Click the Author text box and then type **`Trevor Wilkins`** as the Author property. If a name already is displayed in the Author text box, delete it before typing the new name.
- Click the Keywords text box, if necessary delete any existing text, and then type **`online marketing, Web site design`** as the Keywords property (Figure 1–89).


Camashaly Design.accdb Properties

Title: Camashaly Design

Subject: CIS 101, Section 20

Author: Trevor Wilkins

Manager:

Company:

Category:

Keywords: online marketing, Web site design

Comments:

Hyperlink base:

Template:

Figure 1–89

Q&A

What types of properties does Access collect automatically?

Access records such details as when the database was created, when it was last modified, total editing time, and the various objects contained in the database.

4

- Click the OK button to save your changes and remove the Camashaly Design.accdb Properties dialog box from the screen.

To Quit Access

The following steps quit Access.

1. Click the Close button on the right side of the title bar to quit Access.
2. If a Microsoft Access dialog box appears, click the Save button to save any changes made to the object since the last save.

Special Database Operations

The special operations involved in maintaining a database are backup, recovery, compacting a database, and repairing a database.

Backup and Recovery

It is possible to damage or destroy a database. Users can enter data that is incorrect; programs that are updating the database can end abnormally during an update; a hardware problem can occur; and so on. After any such event has occurred, the database may contain invalid data. It even might be totally destroyed.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Obviously, you cannot allow a situation in which data has been damaged or destroyed to go uncorrected. You must somehow return the database to a correct state. This process is called recovery; that is, you **recover** the database.

The simplest approach to recovery involves periodically making a copy of the database (called a **backup copy** or a **save copy**). This is referred to as **backing up** the database. If a problem occurs, you correct the problem by copying this backup copy over the actual database, often referred to as the **live database**.

To back up the database that is currently open, you use the Back Up Database command on the Save & Publish tab in the Backstage view. In the process, Access suggests a name that is a combination of the database name and the current date. For example, if you back up the Camashaly Design database on April 20, 2012, Access will suggest the name, Camashaly Design_2012-04-20. You can change this name if you desire, although it is a good idea to use this name. By doing so, it will be easy to distinguish between all the backup copies you have made to determine which is the most recent. In addition, if you discover that a critical problem occurred on April 18, 2012, you may want to go back to the most recent backup before April 18. If, for example, the database was not backed up on April 17 but was backed up on April 16, you would use Camashaly Design_2012-04-16.

TO BACK UP A DATABASE

You would use the following steps to back up a database to a file on a hard disk or high-capacity removable disk.

1. Open the database to be backed up.
2. Click File on the Ribbon to open the Backstage view, and then click the Save & Publish tab.
3. With Save Database As selected in the File Types area, click Back Up Database in the Save Database As area, and then click the Save As button.
4. Selected the desired location in the Save As box. If you do not want the name Access has suggested, enter the desired name in the File name text box.
5. Click the Save button to back up the database.

Access creates a backup copy with the desired name in the desired location. Should you ever need to recover the database using this backup copy, you can simply copy it over the live version.

Compacting and Repairing a Database

As you add more data to a database, it naturally grows larger. When you delete an object (records, tables, forms, or queries), the space previously occupied by the object does not become available for additional objects. Instead, the additional objects are given new space; that is, space that was not already allocated. To remove this wasted space from the database, you must **compact** the database. The same option that compacts the database also repairs problems that might have occurred in the database.

TO COMPACT AND REPAIR A DATABASE

You would use the following steps to compact and repair a database.

1. Open the database to be compacted.
2. Click File on the Ribbon to open the Backstage view, and then, if necessary, select the Info tab.
3. Click the Compact & Repair Database button in the Information gallery to compact and repair the database.

The database now is the compacted form of the original.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Additional Operations

Additional special operations include opening another database, closing a database without exiting Access, and saving a database with another name. They also include deleting a table (or other object) as well as renaming an object. Finally, you can change properties of a table or other object, such as the object's description.

When you open another database, Access will automatically close the database that previously was open. Before deleting or renaming an object, you should ensure that the object has no dependent objects; that is, other objects that depend on the object you want to delete.

BTW **Access Help**
At any time while using Access, you can find answers to questions and display information about various topics through Help. Used properly, this form of assistance can increase your productivity and reduce your frustrations by minimizing the time you spend learning how to use Access. For instruction about Access Help and exercises that will help you gain confidence in using it, read the Office 2010 and Windows 7 chapter at the beginning of this book.

TO OPEN ANOTHER DATABASE

To open another database, you would use the following steps.

1. Click File on the Ribbon to open the Backstage view.
2. Click Open.
3. Select the database to be opened.
4. Click the Open button.

TO CLOSE A DATABASE WITHOUT EXITING ACCESS

You would use the following steps to close a database without quitting Access.

1. Click File on the Ribbon to open the Backstage view.
2. Click Close Database.

BTW **Certification**
The Microsoft Office Specialist (MOS) program provides an opportunity for you to obtain a valuable industry credential — proof that you have the Access 2010 skills required by employers. For more information, visit the Access 2010 Certification Web page (scsite.com/ac2010/cert).

TO SAVE A DATABASE WITH ANOTHER NAME

To save a database with another name, you would use the following steps.

1. Click File on the Ribbon to open the Backstage view, and then select the Save & Publish tab.
2. With Save Database As selected in the File Types area and Access Database selected in the Save Database As area, click the Save As button.
3. Enter a name and select a location for the new version.
4. Click the Save button.

TO DELETE A TABLE OR OTHER OBJECT IN THE DATABASE

You would use the following steps to delete a database object.

1. Right-click the object in the Navigation Pane.
2. Click Delete on the shortcut menu.
3. Click the Yes button in the Microsoft Access dialog box.

BTW **Quick Reference**
For a table that lists how to complete the tasks covered in this book using the mouse, Ribbon, shortcut menu, and keyboard, see the Quick Reference Summary at the back of this book, or visit the Access 2010 Quick Reference Web page (scsite.com/ac2010/qr).

TO RENAME AN OBJECT IN THE DATABASE

You would use the following steps to rename a database object.

1. Right-click the object in the Navigation Pane.
2. Click Rename on the shortcut menu.
3. Type the new name and press the ENTER key.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Chapter Summary

In this chapter you have learned to design a database, create an Access database, create tables and add records to them, print the contents of tables, create queries, create forms, and create reports. You also have learned how to change database properties. The items listed below include all the new Access skills you have learned in this chapter.

1. Start Access (AC 12)
2. Create a Database (AC 13)
3. Create a Database Using a Template (AC 14)
4. Modify the Primary Key (AC 16)
5. Define the Remaining Fields in a Table (AC 19)
6. Save a Table (AC 21)
7. View the Table in Design View (AC 21)
8. Close the Table (AC 23)
9. Add Records to a Table (AC 23)
10. Quit Access (AC 26)
11. Open a Database from Access (AC 27)
12. Add Additional Records to a Table (AC 28)
13. Resize Columns in a Datasheet (AC 29)
14. Preview and Print the Contents of a Table (AC 31)
15. Create a Table in Design View (AC 33)
16. Import an Excel Worksheet (AC 38)
17. Use the Simple Query Wizard to Create a Query (AC 43)
18. Use a Criterion in a Query (AC 46)
19. Print the Results of a Query (AC 48)
20. Create a Form (AC 48)
21. Create a Report (AC 52)
22. Modify Column Headings and Resize Columns (AC 54)
23. Add Totals to a Report (AC 57)
24. Change Database Properties (AC 59)
25. Back Up a Database (AC 61)
26. Compact and Repair a Database (AC 61)
27. Open Another Database (AC 62)
28. Close a Database without Exiting Access (AC 62)
29. Save a Database with Another Name (AC 62)
30. Delete a Table or Other Object in the Database (AC 62)
31. Rename an Object in the Database (AC 62)

SAM

If you have a SAM 2010 user profile, your instructor may have assigned an autogradable version of this assignment. If so, log into the SAM 2010 Web site at www.cengage.com/sam2010 to download the instruction and start files.

Learn It Online

Test your knowledge of chapter content and key terms.

Instructions: To complete the Learn It Online exercises, start your browser, click the Address bar, and then enter the Web address **`scsite.com/ac2010/learn`**. When the Access 2010 Learn It Online page is displayed, click the link for the exercise you want to complete and then read the instructions.

Chapter Reinforcement TF, MC, and SA

A series of true/false, multiple choice, and short answer questions that test your knowledge of the chapter content.

Flash Cards

An interactive learning environment where you identify chapter key terms associated with displayed definitions.

Practice Test

A series of multiple choice questions that test your knowledge of chapter content and key terms.

Who Wants To Be a Computer Genius?

An interactive game that challenges your knowledge of chapter content in the style of a television quiz show.

Wheel of Terms

An interactive game that challenges your knowledge of chapter key terms in the style of the television show *Wheel of Fortune*.

Crossword Puzzle Challenge

A crossword puzzle that challenges your knowledge of key terms presented in the chapter.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Apply Your Knowledge

Reinforce the skills and apply the concepts you learned in this chapter.

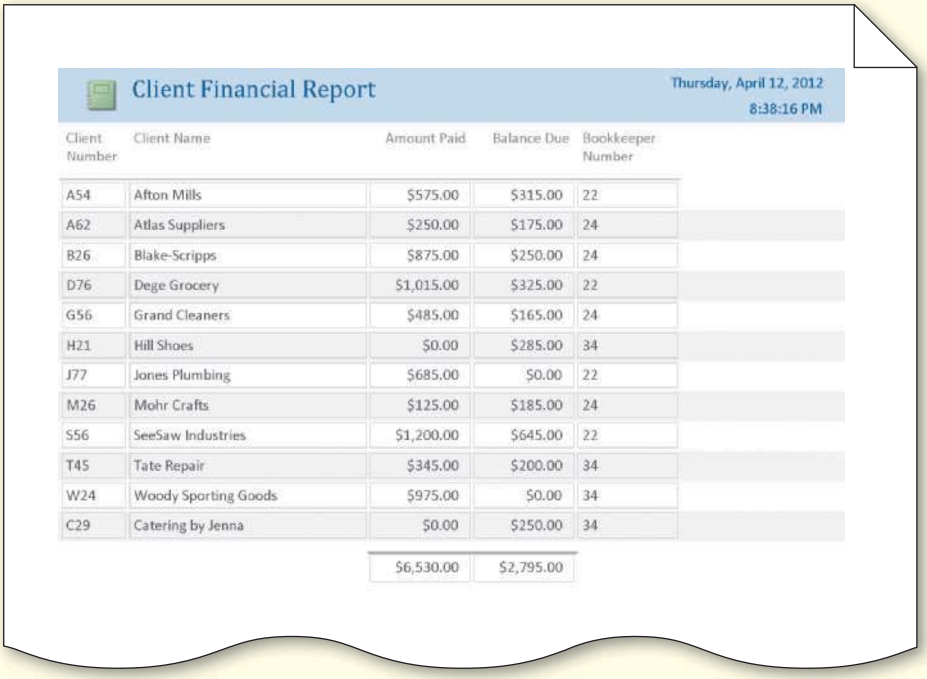
Adding a Caption, Creating a Query, Creating a Form, and Creating a Report

Instructions: Start Access. Open the Babbage CPA Firm database. See the inside back cover of this book for instructions for downloading the Data Files for Students, or see your instructor for information on accessing the files required in this book.

The Babbage CPA Firm employs bookkeepers who maintain the books for those clients who need bookkeeping services. The Babbage CPA Firm has a database that keeps track of its bookkeepers and clients. Each client is assigned to a single bookkeeper, but each bookkeeper may be assigned many clients. The database has two tables. The Client table contains data on the clients who use the bookkeeping services of the Babbage CPA Firm. The Bookkeeper table contains data on the bookkeepers employed by Babbage CPA Firm.

Perform the following tasks:

1. Open the Bookkeeper table in Design view and add BKR # as the caption for Bookkeeper Number. Save the changes to the table.
2. Open the Bookkeeper table in Datasheet view and resize all columns to best fit the data. Save the changes to the layout of the table.
3. Use the Simple Query Wizard to create a query for the Client table that contains the Client Number, Client Name, Amount Paid, and Balance Due. Use the name, Client Query, for the query.
4. Create a simple form for the Bookkeeper table. Use the name, Bookkeeper, for the form.
5. Close the Bookkeeper form.
6. Create the report shown in Figure 1–90 for the Client table. The report includes totals for both the Amount Paid and Balance Due fields. Be sure the totals appear completely. You might need to expand the size of the controls. Move the page number so that it is within the margins.
7. Compact the database.
8. Back up the database.
9. Change the database properties, as specified by your instructor. Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.



Client Financial Report

Thursday, April 12, 2012
8:38:16 PM

Client Number	Client Name	Amount Paid	Balance Due	Bookkeeper Number
A54	Afton Mills	$575.00	$315.00	22
A62	Atlas Suppliers	$250.00	$175.00	24
B26	Blake-Scripps	$875.00	$250.00	24
D76	Dege Grocery	$1,015.00	$325.00	22
G56	Grand Cleaners	$485.00	$165.00	24
H21	Hill Shoes	$0.00	$285.00	34
J77	Jones Plumbing	$685.00	$0.00	22
M26	Mohr Crafts	$125.00	$185.00	24
S56	SeeSaw Industries	$1,200.00	$645.00	22
T45	Tate Repair	$345.00	$200.00	34
W24	Woody Sporting Goods	$975.00	$0.00	34
C29	Catering by Jenna	$0.00	$250.00	34
		$6,530.00	$2,795.00	

Figure 1–90

Extend Your Knowledge

Extend the skills you learned in this chapter and experiment with new skills. You may need to use Help to complete the assignment.

Using a Database Template to Create a Students Database

Instructions: Access includes a number of templates that you can use to create a beginning database that can be modified to meet your specific needs. You will create a Students database using the Students template. The database includes sample tables, queries, forms, and reports. You will change the database and create the Student Birthdays Query, shown in Figure 1–91.

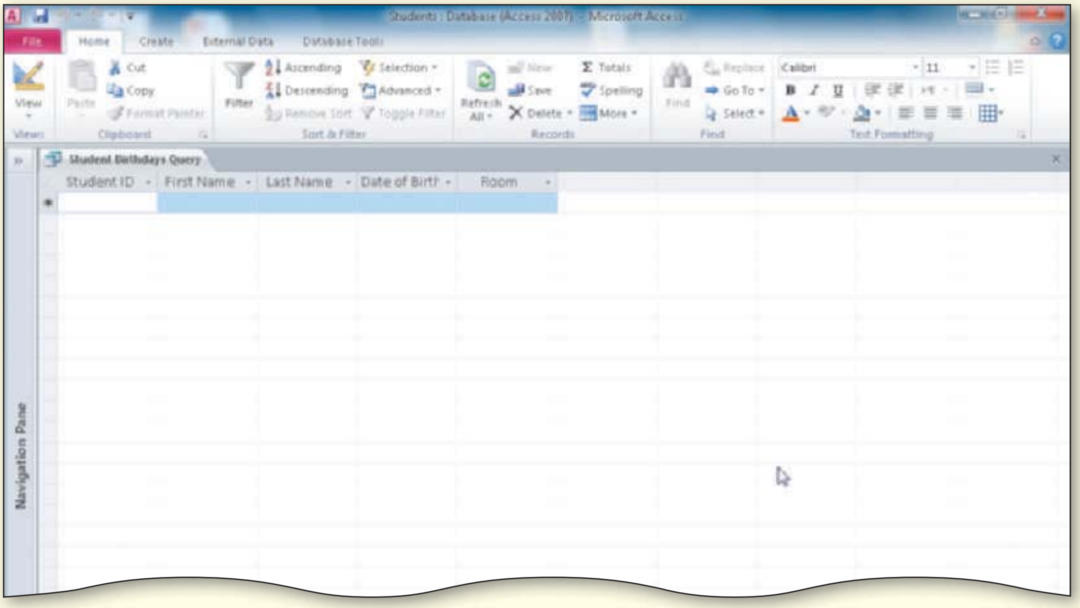

Students : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Clipboard
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Sort & Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Records
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Calibri
11
Text Formatting
Navigation Pane
Student Birthdays Query
Student ID
First Name
Last Name
Date of Birth
Room

Figure 1–91

Perform the following tasks:

1. Start Access.
2. With a USB flash drive connected to one of the computer's USB ports, ensure the New tab is selected in the Backstage view and select Sample templates in the New gallery.
3. Select the Students template and create a new database on your USB drive with the file name, Students.
4. Close the Student List form and change the organization of the Navigation Pane to Tables and Related Views .
5. Delete the Student Details form.
6. Use the Query Wizard to create the query shown in Figure 1–91. Save the query as Student Birthdays Query.
7. Open the Student Phone List in Layout view and use the tools on the Format tab to make the Student Phone List title bold and change the font size to 24. Delete the control containing the time.
8. Save your changes to the report.
9. Compact the database.
10. Change the database properties, as specified by your instructor. Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Make It Right

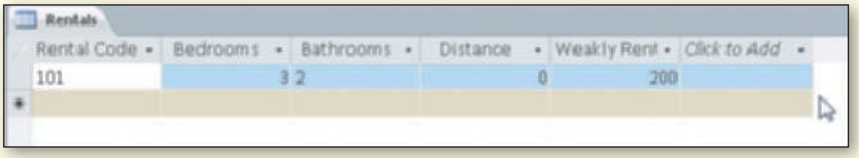
Analyze a database and correct all errors and/or improve the design.

Correcting Errors in the Table Structure

Instructions: Start Access. Open the Beach Rentals database. See the inside back cover of this book for instructions for downloading the Data Files for Students, or see your instructor for information on accessing the files required in this book.

Beach Rentals is a database containing information on rental properties available at a beach resort. The Rentals table shown in Figure 1–92 contains a number of errors in the table structure. You are to correct these errors before any additional records can be added to the table. The Rental Code field is a Text field that contains a maximum of three characters. The field Address was omitted from the table. The Address field is a Text field with a maximum of 20 characters. It should appear after Rental Code. Only whole numbers should be allowed in the Bedrooms and Bathrooms fields. The column heading Weakly Rental is misspelled, and the field should contain monetary values. The Distance field represents the walking distance from the beach; the field should display two decimal places. The table name should be Rental Units, not Rentals.

Change the database properties, as specified by your instructor. Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.



Rental Code	Bedrooms	Bathrooms	Distance	Weakly Rent	Click to Add
101	3	2	0	200	

Figure 1–92

In the Lab

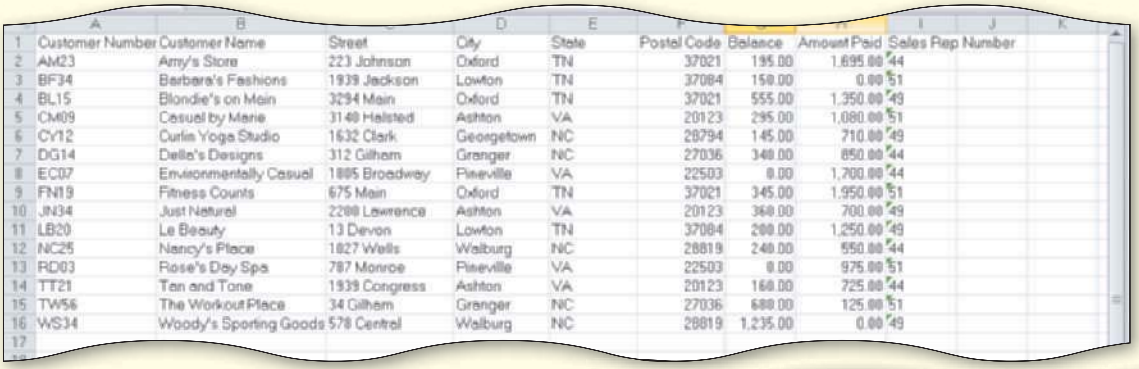
Design, create, modify, and/or use a database using the guidelines, concepts, and skills presented in this chapter. Labs are listed in order of increasing difficulty.

Lab 1: Creating Objects for the ECO Clothesline Database

Problem: ECO Clothesline is a local company that designs and manufactures eco-friendly casual wear, yoga clothing, and fitness apparel. All clothes are made from earth-friendly fabrics, such as bamboo, hemp, organic cotton, and natural silk. The company recently decided to store its customer and sales rep data in a database. Each customer is assigned to a single sales rep, but each sales rep may be assigned many customers. The database and the Customer table have been created, but there is no data in the Customer table. The Sales Rep table has not been created. The company plans to import the Customer data from an Excel workbook, shown in Figure 1–93a. The other Excel workbook (Figure 1–93b) contains information on the sales representatives that ECO employs. ECO would like to finish storing this data in a database and has asked for your help.

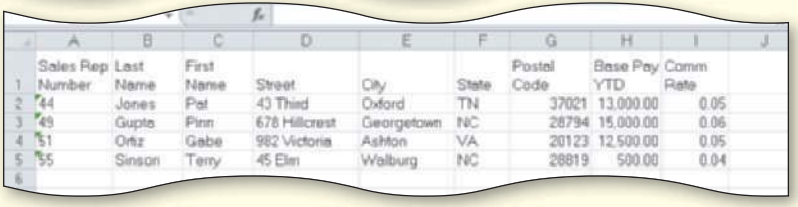
Instructions: Perform the following tasks: Start Access and open the ECO Clothesline database. See the inside back cover of this book for instructions for downloading the Data Files for Students, or see your instructor for information on accessing the files required in this book.

1. Import the Lab 1-1 Customer Data workbook into the Customer table.
2. Add the captions Cust # to the Customer Number field and SR # to the Sales Rep Number field in the Customer table and save the changes.
3. Open the Customer table in Datasheet view and resize the columns to best fit the data. Save the changes to the layout of the table.
4. Use Datasheet view to create a table in which to store the data related to sales reps. Use the name Sales Rep for the table. The fields and the data for the Sales Rep table are shown in Figure 1–93b.



Customer Number	Customer Name	Street	City	State	Postal Code	Balance	Amount Paid	Sales Rep Number
AM23	Amy's Store	223 Johnson	Oxford	TN	37021	195.00	1,695.00	44
BF34	Barbara's Fashions	1939 Jackson	Lowton	TN	37084	150.00	0.00	51
BL15	Blondie's on Main	3294 Main	Oxford	TN	37021	555.00	1,350.00	49
CM09	Casual by Marie	3140 Halsted	Ashton	VA	20123	295.00	1,080.00	51
CY12	Curlin Yoga Studio	1632 Clark	Georgetown	NC	28794	145.00	710.00	49
DG14	Della's Designs	312 Gilham	Granger	NC	27036	340.00	850.00	44
EC07	Environmentally Casual	1805 Broadway	Pineville	VA	22503	0.00	1,700.00	44
FN19	Fitness Counts	675 Main	Oxford	TN	37021	345.00	1,950.00	51
JN34	Just Natural	2200 Lawrence	Ashton	VA	20123	360.00	700.00	49
LB20	Le Beauty	13 Devon	Lowton	TN	37084	200.00	1,250.00	49
NC25	Nancy's Place	1827 Wells	Walburg	NC	28819	240.00	550.00	44
RD03	Rose's Day Spa	787 Monroe	Pineville	VA	22503	0.00	975.00	51
TT21	Tan and Tone	1939 Congress	Ashton	VA	20123	160.00	725.00	44
TW56	The Workout Place	34 Gilham	Granger	NC	27036	680.00	125.00	51
WS34	Woody's Sporting Goods	578 Central	Walburg	NC	28819	1,235.00	0.00	49

(a) Customer Data (Excel Workbook)



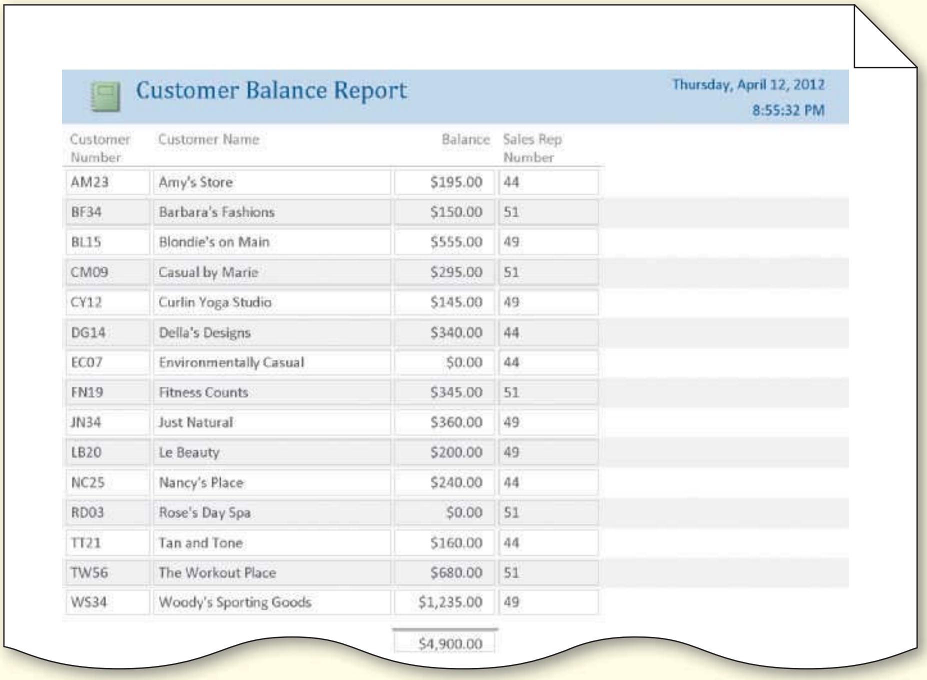
Sales Rep Number	Last Name	First Name	Street	City	State	Postal Code	Base Pay YTD	Comm Rate
44	Jones	Pat	43 Third	Oxford	TN	37021	13,000.00	0.05
49	Gupta	Pinn	678 Hillcrest	Georgetown	NC	28794	15,000.00	0.06
51	Ortiz	Gabe	982 Victoria	Ashton	VA	20123	12,500.00	0.05
55	Sinson	Terry	45 Elm	Walburg	NC	28819	500.00	0.04

(b) Sales Rep Data (Excel Workbook)

Figure 1–93

The primary key for the Sales Rep table is Sales Rep Number. Assign the caption SR # to the Sales Rep Number field. Comm Rate is a Number field, and Base Pay YTD is a Currency data type. The field size for Sales Rep Number is 2. The State field size is 2, and the Postal Code field size is 5. All other text fields have a field size of 15.

5. Open the Sales Rep table in Design view and change the field size for the Comm Rate field to Single, the format to Fixed, and the Decimal Places to 2.
6. Add the data shown in Figure 1–93b to the Sales Rep table. Resize the columns to best fit the data. Save the changes to the layout of the table.
7. Create a query using the Simple Query Wizard for the Customer table that displays the Customer Number, Customer Name, Balance, Amount Paid, and Sales Rep Number fields. Use the name Customer Query.
8. Create and save the report shown in Figure 1–94 for the Customer table. The report should include Customer Number, Customer Name, Balance, and Sales Rep Number fields. Include a total for the Balance field.
9. Change the database properties, as specified by your instructor. Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.



Customer Balance Report

Thursday, April 12, 2012
8:55:32 PM

Customer Number	Customer Name	Balance	Sales Rep Number
AM23	Amy's Store	$195.00	44
BF34	Barbara's Fashions	$150.00	51
BL15	Blondie's on Main	$555.00	49
CM09	Casual by Marie	$295.00	51
CY12	Curlin Yoga Studio	$145.00	49
DG14	Della's Designs	$340.00	44
EC07	Environmentally Casual	$0.00	44
FN19	Fitness Counts	$345.00	51
JN34	Just Natural	$360.00	49
LB20	Le Beauty	$200.00	49
NC25	Nancy's Place	$240.00	44
RD03	Rose's Day Spa	$0.00	51
TT21	Tan and Tone	$160.00	44
TW56	The Workout Place	$680.00	51
WS34	Woody's Sporting Goods	$1,235.00	49
		$4,900.00	

Figure 1–94

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

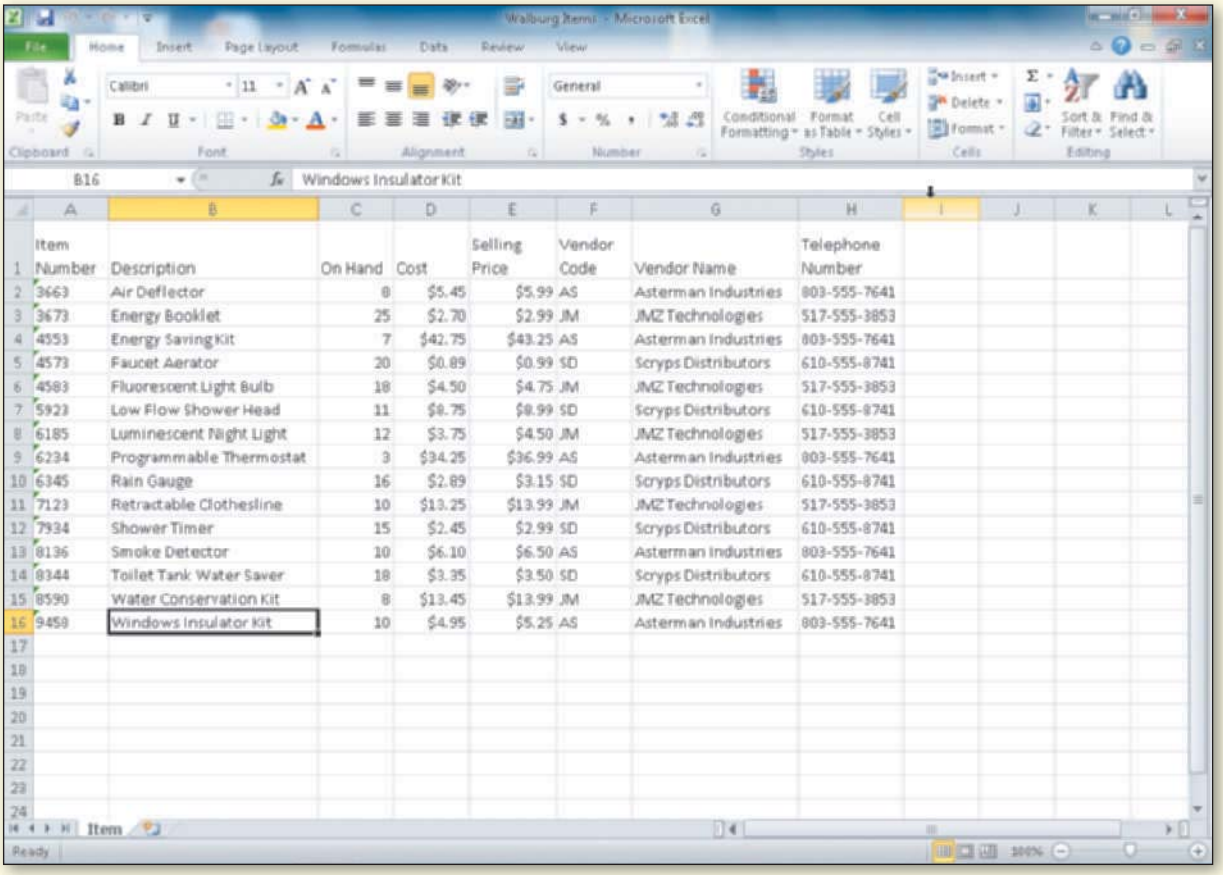
In the Lab

Lab 2: Creating the Walburg Energy Alternatives Database

Problem: Walburg Energy Alternatives is a nonprofit organization that promotes the use of energy alternatives such as solar power and wind power. The organization provides a variety of services and funds itself through donations. Recently, the organization decided to sell a small number of items in its education center to help fund programs. The store purchases the items from vendors that deal in energy-saving products. Currently, the information about the items and vendors is stored in the Excel workbook shown in Figure 1–95. Each item is assigned to a single vendor, but each vendor may be assigned many items. You volunteer part-time at the store, and the store manager has asked you to create a database that will store the item and vendor information. You have already determined that you need two tables in which to store the information: an Item table and a Vendor table.

Instructions: Perform the following tasks:

1. Design a new database in which to store all the objects related to the items for sale. Call the database Walburg Energy Alternatives.
2. Use the information shown in the Excel workbook in Figure 1–95 to determine the primary keys and determine additional fields. Then, determine the relationships between tables, the data types, and the field sizes.
3. Create the Item table using the information shown in Figure 1–95.
4. Create the Vendor table using the information shown in Figure 1–95. Be sure that the field size for the Vendor Code in the Item table is identical to the field size for the Vendor Code in the Vendor table. Add the caption, Phone, for the Telephone Number field.



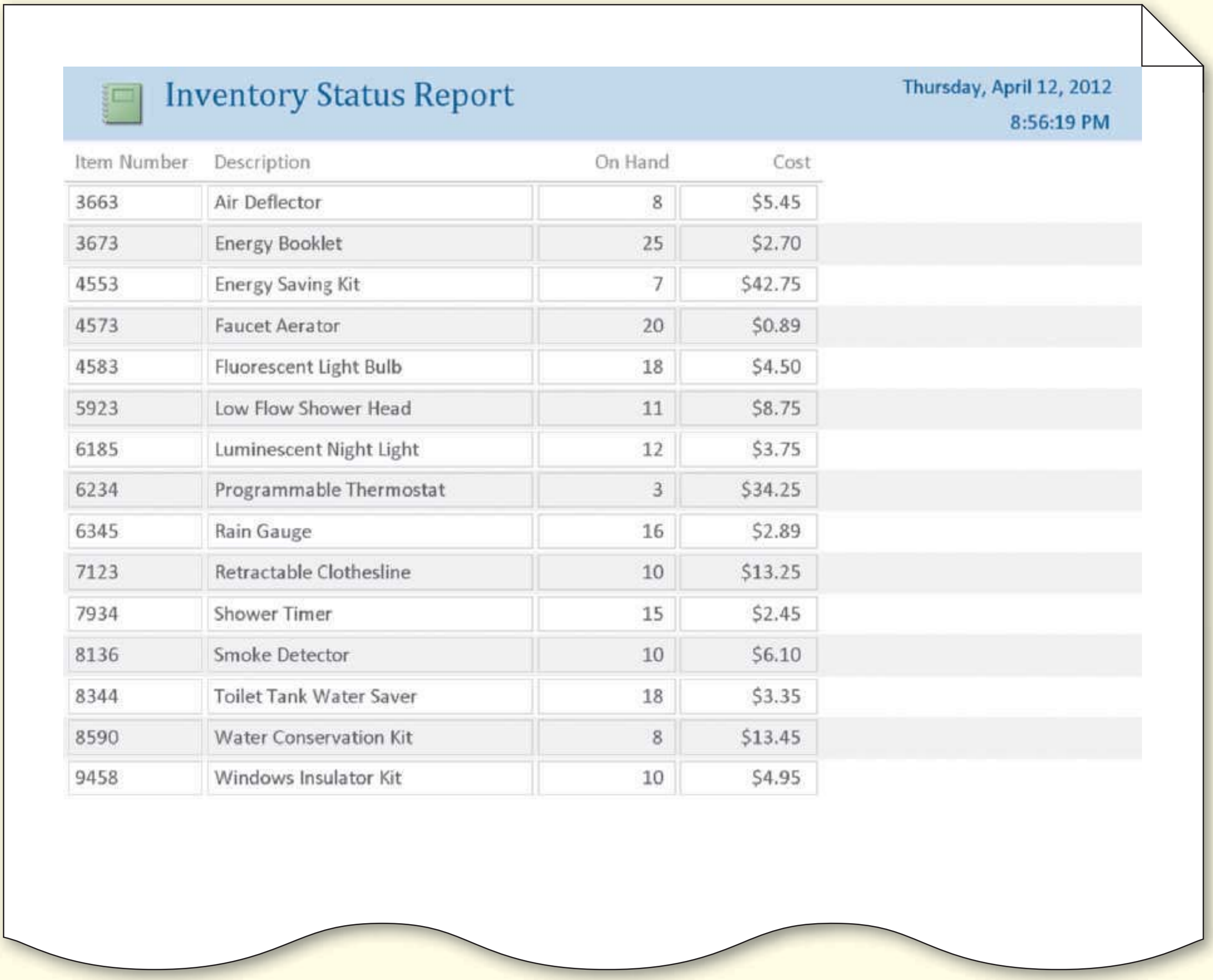
Windows Insulator Kit

Item Number	Description	On Hand	Cost	Selling Price	Vendor Code	Vendor Name	Telephone Number
3663	Air Deflector	8	$5.45	$5.99	AS	Asterman Industries	803-555-7641
3673	Energy Booklet	25	$2.70	$2.99	JM	JMZ Technologies	517-555-3853
4553	Energy Saving Kit	7	$42.75	$43.25	AS	Asterman Industries	803-555-7641
4573	Faucet Aerator	20	$0.89	$0.99	SD	Scryps Distributors	610-555-8741
4583	Fluorescent Light Bulb	18	$4.50	$4.75	JM	JMZ Technologies	517-555-3853
5923	Low Flow Shower Head	11	$8.75	$8.99	SD	Scryps Distributors	610-555-8741
6185	Luminescent Night Light	12	$3.75	$4.50	JM	JMZ Technologies	517-555-3853
6234	Programmable Thermostat	3	$34.25	$36.99	AS	Asterman Industries	803-555-7641
6345	Rain Gauge	16	$2.89	$3.15	SD	Scryps Distributors	610-555-8741
7123	Retractable Clothesline	10	$13.25	$13.99	JM	JMZ Technologies	517-555-3853
7934	Shower Timer	15	$2.45	$2.99	SD	Scryps Distributors	610-555-8741
8136	Smoke Detector	10	$6.10	$6.50	AS	Asterman Industries	803-555-7641
8344	Toilet Tank Water Saver	18	$3.35	$3.50	SD	Scryps Distributors	610-555-8741
8590	Water Conservation Kit	8	$13.45	$13.99	JM	JMZ Technologies	517-555-3853
9458	Windows Insulator Kit	10	$4.95	$5.25	AS	Asterman Industries	803-555-7641

Figure 1–95

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

5. Add the appropriate data to the Item table. Resize the columns to best fit the data and save the changes to the layout.
6. Add the appropriate data to the Vendor table. Resize the columns to best fit the data and save the changes to the layout.
7. Create a query for the Item table. Include the Item Number, Description, Cost, Selling Price, and Vendor Code in the query. Save the query as Item Query.
8. Open the Item Query and add a criterion to limit retrieval to those items supplied by Scryps Distributors. Save the query as Item-Scryps Query.
9. Create a simple form for the Item table. Use the name, Item, for the form.
10. Create the report shown in Figure 1–96 for the Item table. Do not add any totals.
11. Change the database properties, as specified by your instructor. Submit the database in the format specified by your instructor.



Inventory Status Report

Thursday, April 12, 2012
8:56:19 PM

Item Number	Description	On Hand	Cost
3663	Air Deflector	8	$5.45
3673	Energy Booklet	25	$2.70
4553	Energy Saving Kit	7	$42.75
4573	Faucet Aerator	20	$0.89
4583	Fluorescent Light Bulb	18	$4.50
5923	Low Flow Shower Head	11	$8.75
6185	Luminescent Night Light	12	$3.75
6234	Programmable Thermostat	3	$34.25
6345	Rain Gauge	16	$2.89
7123	Retractable Clothesline	10	$13.25
7934	Shower Timer	15	$2.45
8136	Smoke Detector	10	$6.10
8344	Toilet Tank Water Saver	18	$3.35
8590	Water Conservation Kit	8	$13.45
9458	Windows Insulator Kit	10	$4.95

Figure 1–96

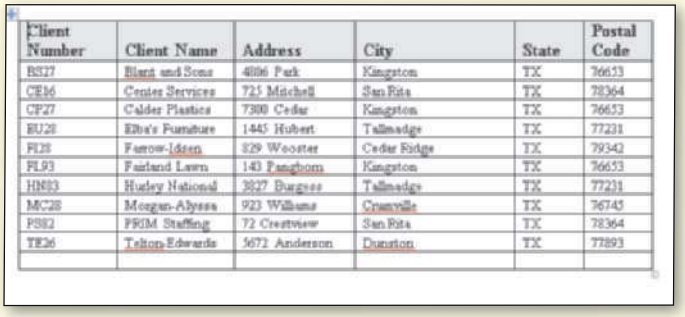
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

In the Lab

Lab 3: Creating the Philamar Training Database

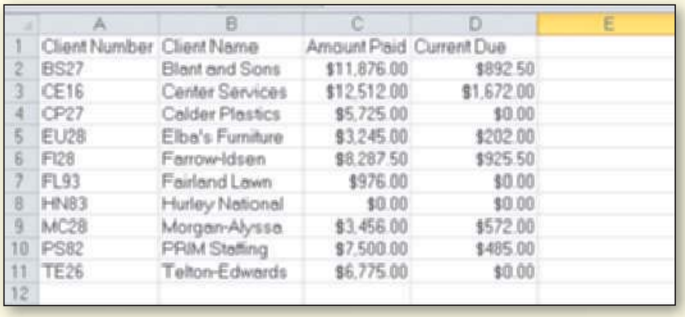
Problem: Philamar Training provides business processes and information technology training to various companies and organizations. Philamar employs trainers who work with individual companies to determine training needs and then conduct the training. Currently, Philamar keeps data on clients and trainers in two Word documents and two Excel workbooks. Philamar also keeps track of which clients are assigned to which trainers. Each client is assigned to a single trainer, but each trainer might be assigned many clients. Currently, clients BS27, FI28, and MC28 are assigned to trainer 42, Belinda Perry. Clients CE16, CP27, FL93, HN83, and TE26 are assigned to trainer 48, Michael Stevens. Clients EU28 and PS82 are assigned to trainer 53, Manuel Gonzalez. Philamar has an additional trainer, Marty Danville, who has been assigned trainer number 67, but who has not yet been assigned any clients.

Instructions: Using the data shown in Figure 1–97 and the information in the previous paragraph, design the Philamar Training database. The data shown in Figure 1–97 is included in the Data Files for Students in the following files: Lab 1-3a.docx, Lab 1-3b.docx, Lab 1-3c.xlsx, and Lab 1-3d.xlsx. Use the database design guidelines in this chapter to help you in the design process.



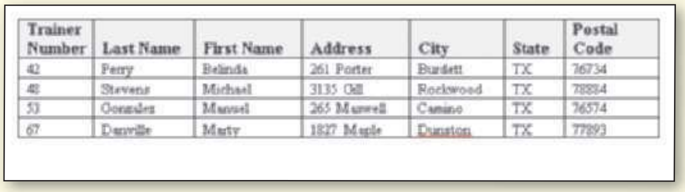
Client Number	Client Name	Address	City	State	Postal Code
BS27	Blant and Sons	4806 Park	Kingston	TX	76653
CE16	Center Services	725 Mitchell	San Rita	TX	78364
CP27	Calder Plastics	7300 Cedar	Kingston	TX	76653
EU28	Elba's Furniture	1445 Hubert	Tallmadge	TX	77231
FI28	Farrow-Idsen	829 Wooster	Cedar Ridge	TX	79342
FL93	Fairland Lawn	143 Pangborn	Kingston	TX	76653
HN83	Hurley National	3827 Burgess	Tallmadge	TX	77231
MC28	Morgan-Alyssa	923 Williams	Crumville	TX	76745
PS82	PRIM Staffing	72 Crestview	San Rita	TX	78364
TE26	Telton-Edwards	5672 Anderson	Dunston	TX	77893

(a) Client Address Information (Word Table)



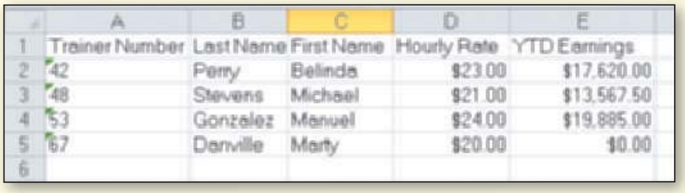
	A	B	C	D	E
1	Client Number	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due	
2	BS27	Blant and Sons	$11,876.00	$892.50	
3	CE16	Center Services	$12,512.00	$1,672.00	
4	CP27	Calder Plastics	$5,725.00	$0.00	
5	EU28	Elba's Furniture	$3,245.00	$202.00	
6	FI28	Farrow-Idsen	$8,287.50	$925.50	
7	FL93	Fairland Lawn	$976.00	$0.00	
8	HN83	Hurley National	$0.00	$0.00	
9	MC28	Morgan-Alyssa	$3,456.00	$572.00	
10	PS82	PRIM Staffing	$7,500.00	$485.00	
11	TE26	Telton-Edwards	$6,775.00	$0.00	
12					

(c) Client Financial Information (Excel Workbook)



Trainer Number	Last Name	First Name	Address	City	State	Postal Code
42	Perry	Belinda	261 Porter	Burdett	TX	76734
48	Stevens	Michael	3135 Gill	Rockwood	TX	78884
53	Gonzalez	Manuel	265 Maxwell	Camino	TX	76574
67	Danville	Marty	1827 Maple	Dunston	TX	77893

(b) Trainer Address Information (Word Table)



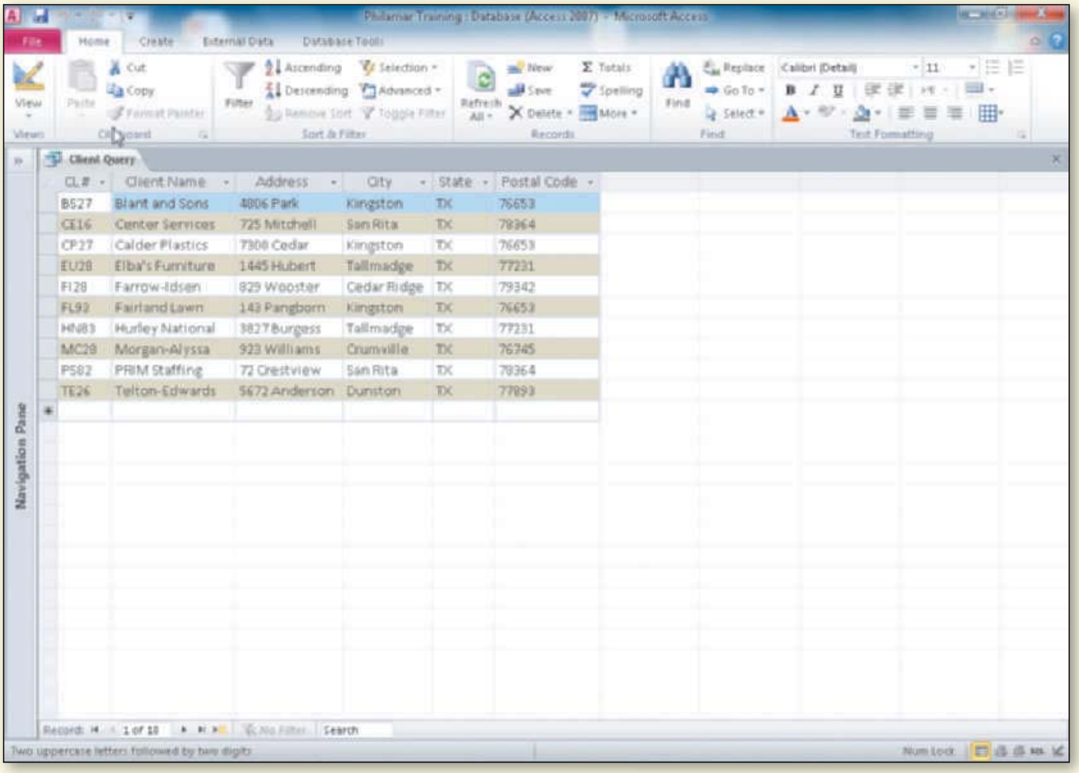
	A	B	C	D	E
1	Trainer Number	Last Name	First Name	Hourly Rate	YTD Earnings
2	42	Perry	Belinda	$23.00	$17,620.00
3	48	Stevens	Michael	$21.00	$13,567.50
4	53	Gonzalez	Manuel	$24.00	$19,885.00
5	67	Danville	Marty	$20.00	$0.00
6					

(d) Trainer Financial Information (Excel Workbook)

Figure 1–97

When you have completed the database design, create the database, create the tables, and add the data to the appropriate tables. Be sure to determine the correct data types and field sizes.

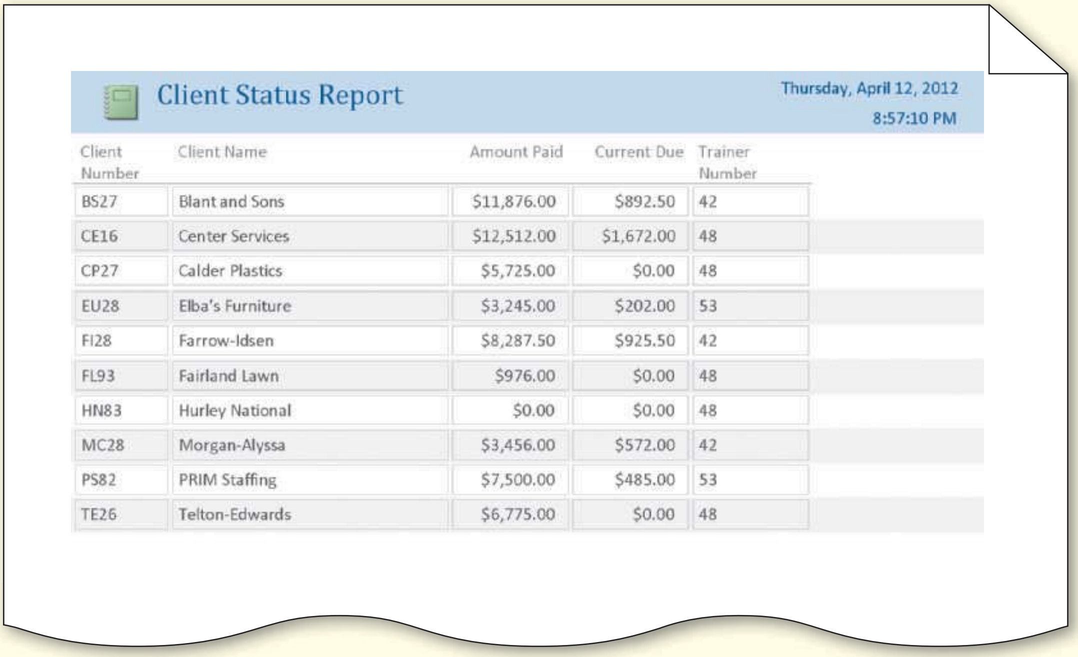
Finally, prepare the Client Query shown in Figure 1–98 and the Client Status Report shown in Figure 1–99. The report does not include totals. Change the database properties, as specified by your instructor. Submit the database in the format specified by your instructor.


Philamar Training : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Calibri (Detail)
11
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Find
Text Formatting
Client Query
Navigation Pane
Record: 1 of 10
No Filter
Search
Num Lock

CL #	Client Name	Address	City	State	Postal Code
BS27	Blant and Sons	4806 Park	Kingston	TX	76653
CE16	Center Services	725 Mitchell	San Rita	TX	78364
CP27	Calder Plastics	7300 Cedar	Kingston	TX	76653
EU28	Elba's Furniture	1445 Hubert	Tallmadge	TX	77231
FI28	Farrow-Idsen	829 Wooster	Cedar Ridge	TX	79342
FL93	Fairland Lawn	143 Pangborn	Kingston	TX	76653
HN83	Hurley National	3827 Burgess	Tallmadge	TX	77231
MC28	Morgan-Alyssa	923 Williams	Crumville	TX	76745
PS82	PRIM Staffing	72 Crestview	San Rita	TX	78364
TE26	Telton-Edwards	5672 Anderson	Dunston	TX	77893

Two uppercase letters followed by two digits

Figure 1–98



Client Status Report

Thursday, April 12, 2012
8:57:10 PM

Client Number	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due	Trainer Number
BS27	Blant and Sons	$11,876.00	$892.50	42
CE16	Center Services	$12,512.00	$1,672.00	48
CP27	Calder Plastics	$5,725.00	$0.00	48
EU28	Elba's Furniture	$3,245.00	$202.00	53
FI28	Farrow-Idsen	$8,287.50	$925.50	42
FL93	Fairland Lawn	$976.00	$0.00	48
HN83	Hurley National	$0.00	$0.00	48
MC28	Morgan-Alyssa	$3,456.00	$572.00	42
PS82	PRIM Staffing	$7,500.00	$485.00	53
TE26	Telton-Edwards	$6,775.00	$0.00	48

Figure 1–99

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Cases and Places

Apply your creative thinking and problem solving skills to design and implement a solution.

See the inside back cover of this book for instructions for downloading the Data Files for Students, or see your instructor for information on accessing the files required in this book.

1: Design and Create an Advertising Database

Academic

You are a Marketing major currently doing an internship with the Chamber of Commerce in a local city. The Chamber publishes a Newcomer's Guide that contains advertisements from local businesses. Ad reps contact the businesses to arrange for advertising. Each advertiser is assigned to a single ad rep, but each ad rep may be assigned many advertisers. The Chamber would like your help in creating a database of advertisers and advertising representatives.

Based on the information in the Case 1-1 Chamber of Commerce workbook, use the concepts and techniques presented in this chapter to design and create a database to store the data that the Chamber needs. Submit your assignment in the format specified by your instructor.

2: Design and Create a Consignment Database

Personal

You are involved in a volunteer organization that provides clothing and school supplies to needy children. Recently, the Board of Directors decided to open a consignment shop as a way to raise additional funds. In a consignment shop, individuals bring in unwanted items, and the shop sells the items. Proceeds are split between the seller and the shop. The database must keep track of the items for sale in the shop as well as maintain data on the sellers. Each item is assigned to a single seller, but each seller may be assigned many items. The Board has asked you to create a database to store information about the consignment items.

Use the concepts and techniques presented in this chapter to design and create a database to store the consignment data. Then create the necessary tables and enter the data from the Case 1-2 Consignment workbook. Create an Available Items Report that lists the item number, description, price, and seller code. Submit your assignment in the format specified by your instructor.

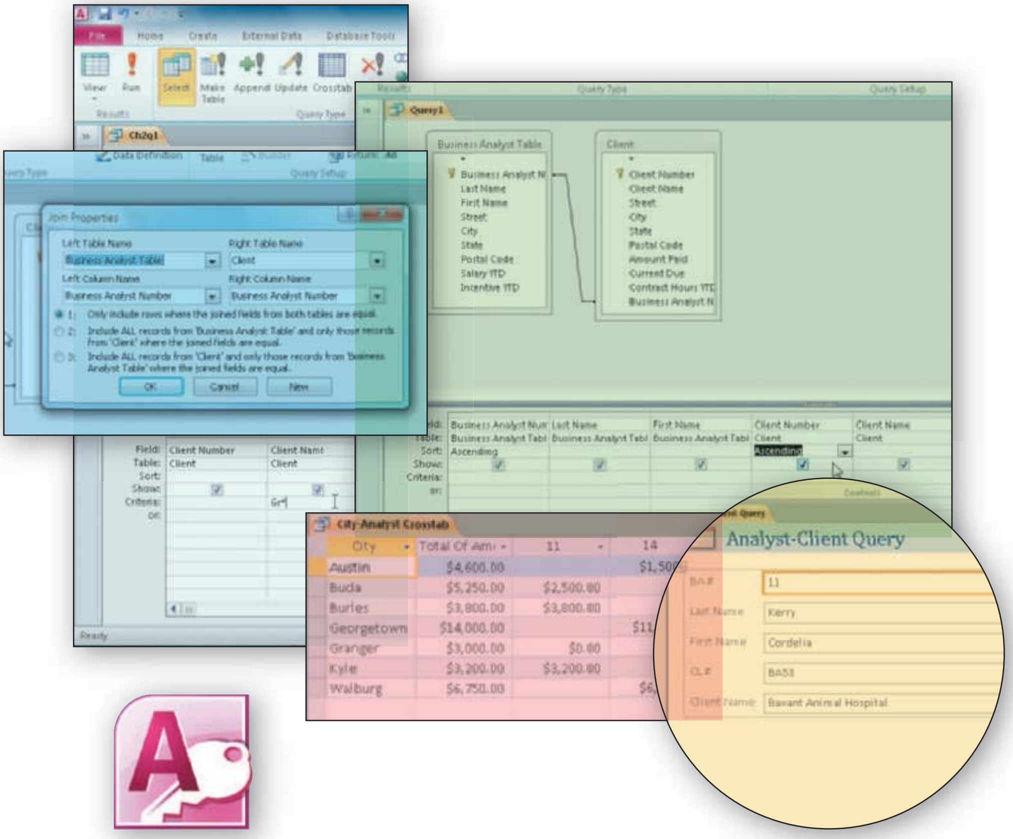
3: Design and Create a Senior Care Database

Professional

You are co-owner of a company, Senior Care, that provides nonmedical services to older adults who need assistance with daily living. Helpers will drive individuals to appointments, do the grocery shopping, fill prescriptions, help with personal care, and provide companionship. Each client is assigned to a single helper, but each helper may be assigned many clients. The other owners have asked you to create a database of clients and helpers. Use the concepts and techniques presented in this chapter to design and create a database to meet Senior Care needs. Then create the necessary tables and enter the data from the Case 1-3 Senior Care workbook. Create a Client Report that lists each client's client number, client last name, client first name, balance, and helper number. Submit your assignment in the format specified by your instructor.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2 Querying a Database



Objectives

You will have mastered the material in this chapter when you can:

- Create queries using Design view
- Include fields in the design grid
- Use text and numeric data in criteria
- Save a query and use the saved query
- Create and use parameter queries
- Use compound criteria in queries
- Sort data in queries
- Join tables in queries
- Create a report and a form from a query
- Export data from a query to another application
- Perform calculations and calculate statistics in queries
- Create crosstab queries
- Customize the Navigation Pane

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2 Querying a Database

Introduction

One of the primary benefits of using a database management system such as Access is the ability to find answers to questions related to data stored in the database. When you pose a question to Access, or any other database management system, the question is called a query. A **query** is simply a question presented in a way that Access can process.

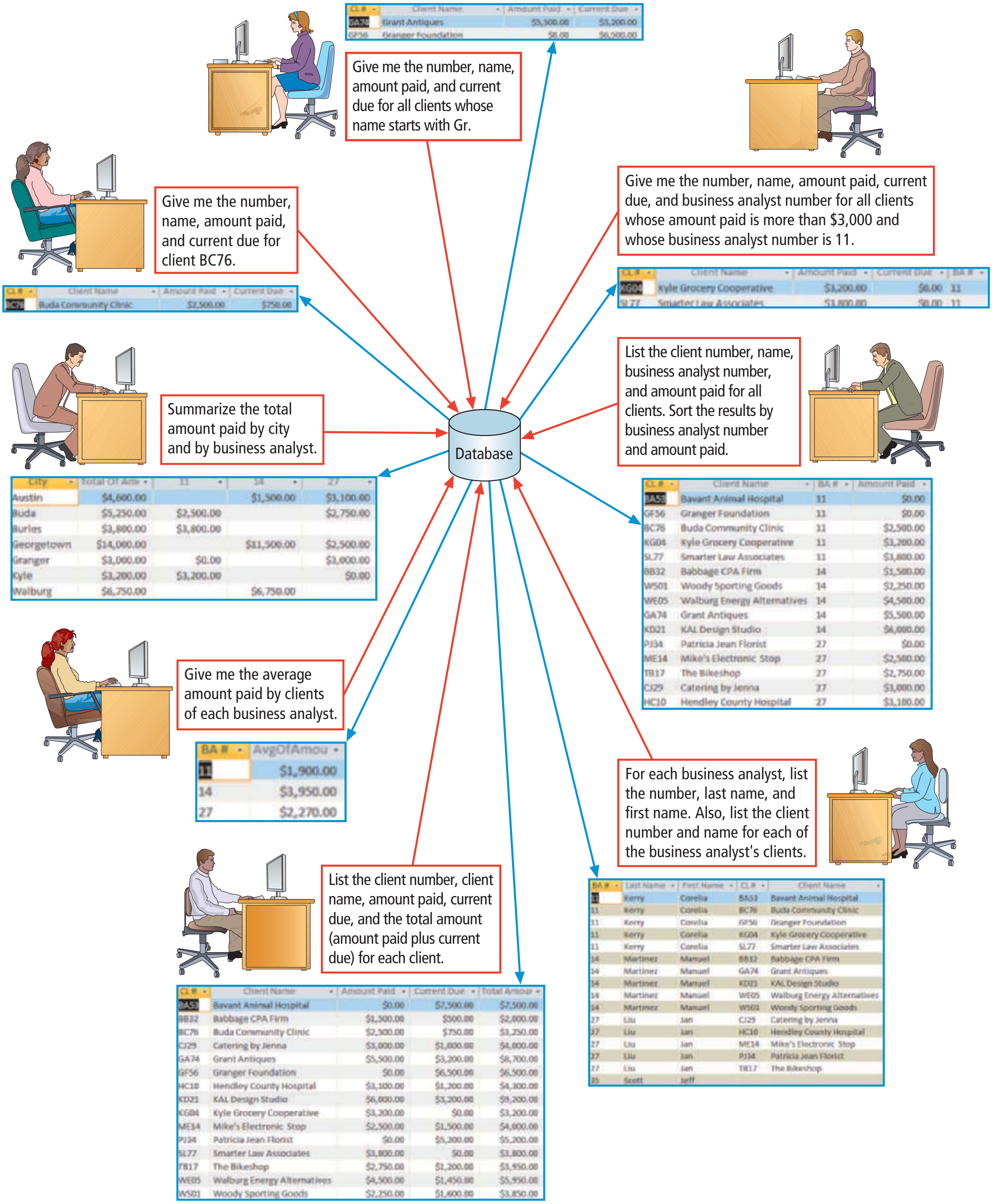
Thus, to find the answer to a question, you first create a corresponding query using the techniques illustrated in this chapter. After you have created the query, you instruct Access to display the query results, that is, to perform the steps necessary to obtain the answer. Access then displays the answer in Datasheet view.

Project — Querying a Database

Organizations and individuals achieve several benefits from storing data in a database and using Access to manage the database. One of the most important benefits is the capability of easily finding the answers to questions and requests such as those shown in Figure 2–1 and the following, which concern the data in the Camashaly Design database:

1. What are the number, name, amount paid, and current due for client BC76?
2. What are the number, name, amount paid, and current due for all clients whose name starts with Gr?
3. Give me the number, name, amount paid, current due, and business analyst number for all clients whose amount paid is more than $3,000 and whose business analyst number is 11.
4. List the client number, name, business analyst number, and amount paid for all clients. Sort the results by business analyst number and amount paid.
5. For each business analyst, list the number, last name, and first name. Also, list the client number and name for each of the business analyst's clients.
6. List the client number, client name, amount paid, current due, and the total amount (amount paid plus current due) for each client.
7. Give me the average amount paid by clients of each business analyst.
8. Summarize the total amount paid by city and by business analyst.

In addition to these questions, Camashaly Design managers need to find information about clients located in a specific city, but they want to enter a different city each time they ask the question. The company can use a parameter query to accomplish this task. Camashaly Design managers also want to summarize data in a specific way, and they can use a crosstab query to present the data in the desired form.



Give me the number, name, amount paid, and current due for all clients whose name starts with Gr.

CL #	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due
GA74	Grant Antiques	$5,500.00	$3,200.00
GF56	Granger Foundation	$0.00	$6,500.00

Give me the number, name, amount paid, and current due for client BC76.

CL #	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	$2,500.00	$750.00

Give me the number, name, amount paid, current due, and business analyst number for all clients whose amount paid is more than $3,000 and whose business analyst number is 11.

CL #	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due	BA #
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	$3,200.00	$0.00	11
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	$3,800.00	$0.00	11

Summarize the total amount paid by city and by business analyst.

City	Total Of Am	11	14	27
Austin	$4,600.00		$1,500.00	$3,100.00
Buda	$5,250.00	$2,500.00		$2,750.00
Burles	$3,800.00	$3,800.00		
Georgetown	$14,000.00		$11,500.00	$2,500.00
Granger	$3,000.00	$0.00		$3,000.00
Kyle	$3,200.00	$3,200.00		$0.00
Walburg	$6,750.00		$6,750.00	

List the client number, name, business analyst number, and amount paid for all clients. Sort the results by business analyst number and amount paid.

CL #	Client Name	BA #	Amount Paid
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	11	$0.00
GF56	Granger Foundation	11	$0.00
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	11	$2,500.00
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	11	$3,200.00
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	11	$3,800.00
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	14	$1,500.00
WS01	Woody Sporting Goods	14	$2,250.00
WE05	Walburg Energy Alternatives	14	$4,500.00
GA74	Grant Antiques	14	$5,500.00
KD21	KAL Design Studio	14	$6,000.00
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	27	$0.00
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	27	$2,500.00
TB17	The Bikeshop	27	$2,750.00
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	27	$3,000.00
HC10	Hendley County Hospital	27	$3,100.00

Give me the average amount paid by clients of each business analyst.

BA #	AvgOfAmou
11	$1,900.00
14	$3,950.00
27	$2,270.00

For each business analyst, list the number, last name, and first name. Also, list the client number and name for each of the business analyst's clients.

BA #	Last Name	First Name	CL #	Client Name
11	Kerry	Corelia	BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital
11	Kerry	Corelia	BC76	Buda Community Clinic
11	Kerry	Corelia	GF56	Granger Foundation
11	Kerry	Corelia	KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative
11	Kerry	Corelia	SL77	Smarter Law Associates
14	Martinez	Manuel	BB32	Babbage CPA Firm
14	Martinez	Manuel	GA74	Grant Antiques
14	Martinez	Manuel	KD21	KAL Design Studio
14	Martinez	Manuel	WE05	Walburg Energy Alternatives
14	Martinez	Manuel	WS01	Woody Sporting Goods
27	Liu	Jan	CJ29	Catering by Jenna
27	Liu	Jan	HC10	Hendley County Hospital
27	Liu	Jan	ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop
27	Liu	Jan	PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist
27	Liu	Jan	TB17	The Bikeshop
35	Scott	Jeff		

List the client number, client name, amount paid, current due, and the total amount (amount paid plus current due) for each client.

CL #	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due	Total Amour
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	$0.00	$7,500.00	$7,500.00
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	$1,500.00	$500.00	$2,000.00
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	$2,500.00	$750.00	$3,250.00
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	$3,000.00	$1,000.00	$4,000.00
GA74	Grant Antiques	$5,500.00	$3,200.00	$8,700.00
GF56	Granger Foundation	$0.00	$6,500.00	$6,500.00
HC10	Hendley County Hospital	$3,100.00	$1,200.00	$4,300.00
KD21	KAL Design Studio	$6,000.00	$3,200.00	$9,200.00
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	$3,200.00	$0.00	$3,200.00
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	$2,500.00	$1,500.00	$4,000.00
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	$0.00	$5,200.00	$5,200.00
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	$3,800.00	$0.00	$3,800.00
TB17	The Bikeshop	$2,750.00	$1,200.00	$3,950.00
WE05	Walburg Energy Alternatives	$4,500.00	$1,450.00	$5,950.00
WS01	Woody Sporting Goods	$2,250.00	$1,600.00	$3,850.00

Figure 2–1

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Overview

As you read this chapter, you will learn how to query a database by performing these general tasks:

- Create queries using Design view.
- Use criteria in queries.
- Create and use parameter queries.
- Sort data in queries.
- Join tables in queries.
- Create reports and forms from a query.
- Export data from a query.
- Perform calculations in queries.
- Create crosstab queries.

Plan Ahead

Query Design Decisions

When posing a question to Access, you must design an appropriate query. In the process of designing a query, the decisions you make will determine the fields, tables, criteria, order, and special calculations included in the query. To design a query, you can follow these general guidelines:

1. **Identify the fields.** Examine the question or request to determine which fields from the tables in the database are involved. Examine the contents of these fields to make sure you understand the data type and format for storing the data.
2. **Identify restrictions.** Unless the question or request calls for the inclusion of all records, determine the restrictions or the conditions records must satisfy to be included in the results.
3. **Determine whether special order is required.** Examine the question or request to determine whether the results must appear in some specific order.
4. **Determine whether more than one table is required.** If all the fields identified in Step 1 are in the same table, no special action is required. If this is not the case, identify all tables represented by those fields.
5. **Determine whether calculations are required.** Examine the question or request to determine whether, in addition to the fields determined in Step 1, calculations must be included. Such calculations include individual record calculations (for example, adding the values in two fields) or group calculations (for example, finding the total of the values in a particular field for all the records).
6. **If data is to be summarized, determine whether a crosstab query would be appropriate.** If data is to be grouped by two different types of information, you can use a crosstab query. You will need to identify the two types of information. One of the types will form the row headings and the other will form the column headings in the query results.

When necessary, more specific details concerning the decisions and/or actions are presented at appropriate points in the chapter. The chapter also will identify the use of these guidelines in creating queries such as those shown in Figure 2–1.

BTW

Designing Queries

Before creating queries, examine the contents of the tables involved. You need to know the data type for each field and how the data for the field is stored. If a query includes a state, for example, you need to know whether state is stored as the two-character abbreviation or as the full state name.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Start Access

The following steps, which assume Windows 7 is running, start Access based on a typical installation. You may need to ask your instructor how to start Access for your computer. For a detailed example of the procedure summarized below, refer to the Office 2010 and Windows 7 chapter at the beginning of this book.

1. Click the Start button on the Windows 7 taskbar to display the Start menu.
2. Type **`Microsoft Access`** as the search text in the 'Search programs and files' text box and watch the search results appear on the Start menu.
3. Click Microsoft Access 2010 in the search results on the Start menu to start Access.
4. If the Access window is not maximized, click the Maximize button next to the Close button on its title bar to maximize the window.

For an introduction to Windows 7 and instruction about how to perform basic Windows 7 tasks, read the Office 2010 and Windows 7 chapter at the beginning of this book, where you can learn how to resize windows, change screen resolution, create folders, move and rename files, use Windows Help, and much more.

To Open a Database from Access

In the previous chapter, you saved your database on a USB flash drive using the file name, Camashaly Design. The following steps open the Camashaly Design database from the Access folder in the CIS 101 folder on the USB flash drive. For a detailed example of the procedure summarized below, refer to the Office 2010 and Windows 7 chapter at the beginning of this book.

1. With your USB flash drive connected to one of the computer's USB ports, click File on the Ribbon to open the Backstage view, if necessary.
2. Click Open in the Backstage view to display the Open dialog box.
3. Navigate to the location of the file to be opened (in this case, the USB flash drive, then to the CIS 101 folder [or your class folder], and then to the Access folder).
4. Click Camashaly Design to select the file to be opened.
5. Click the Open button (Open dialog box) to open the selected file and display the opened database in the Access window.
6. If a Security Warning appears, click the Enable Content option button.

For an introduction to Office 2010 and instruction about how to perform basic tasks in Office 2010 programs, read the Office 2010 and Windows 7 chapter at the beginning of this book, where you can learn how to start a program, use the Ribbon, save a file, open a file, quit a program, use Help, and much more.

Creating Queries

Queries are simply questions, the answers to which are in the database. Access contains a powerful query feature. Through the use of this feature, you can find the answers to a wide variety of complex questions.

BTW

Q&As

For a complete list of the Q&As found in many of the step-by-step sequences in this book, visit the Access 2010 Q&A Web page (scsite.com/ac2010/qa).

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

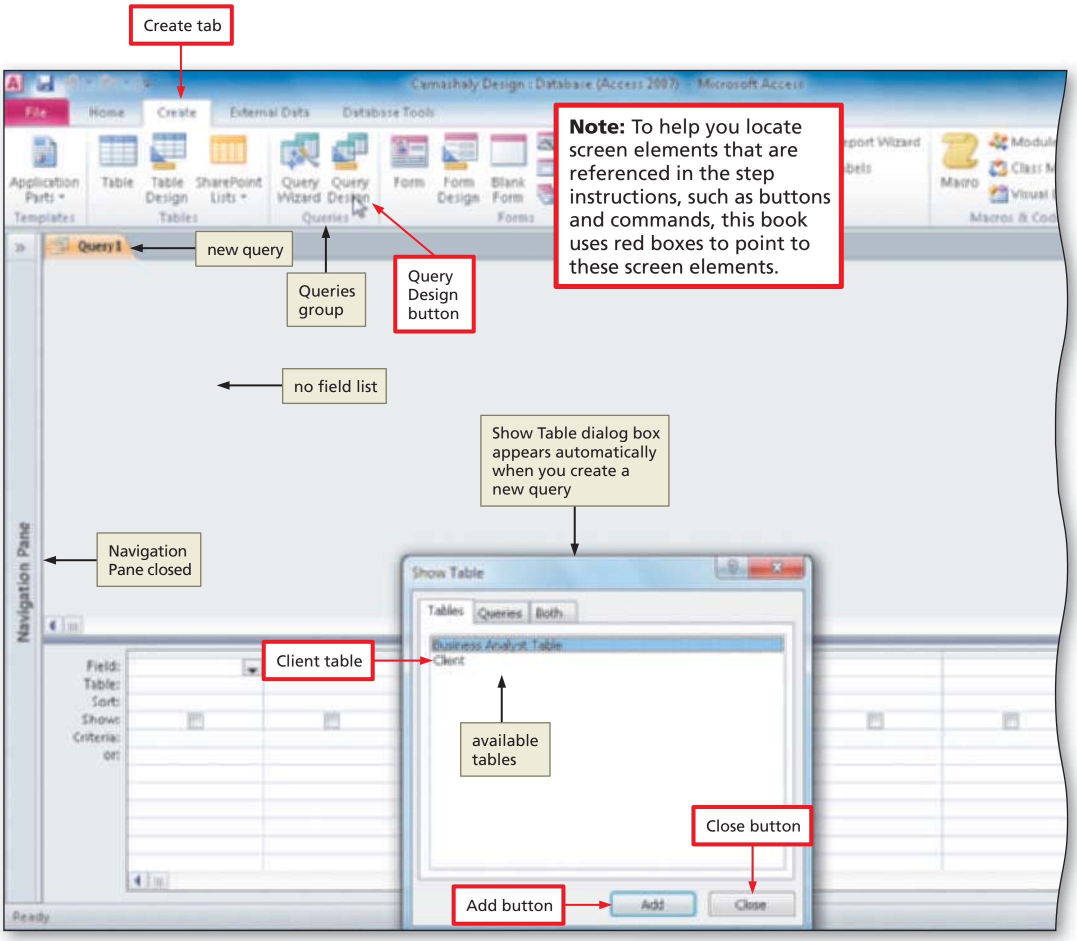
Note: In this chapter, you will save each query example. When you use a query for another task, such as to create a form or report, you will assign a specific name to a query; for example, Analyst-Client Query. In situations in which you will not use the query again, you will assign a name using a convention that includes the chapter number and a query number; for example, Ch2q1. Queries are numbered consecutively.

To Create a Query in Design View

Most of the time, you will use Design view to create queries. Once you have created a new query in Design view, you can specify fields, criteria, sorting, calculations, and so on. The following steps create a new query in Design view.

1

- Close the Navigation Pane.
- Click Create on the Ribbon to display the Create tab.
- Click the Query Design button (Create tab | Queries group) to create a new query (Figure 2–2).


Create tab
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Application Parts
Table
Table Design
SharePoint Lists
Query Wizard
Query Design
Form
Form Design
Blank Form
Macro
Templates
Tables
Queries
Forms
Macros & Code
Query1
new query
Queries group
Query Design button
no field list
Show Table dialog box appears automatically when you create a new query
Navigation Pane
Navigation Pane closed
Field:
Table:
Sort:
Show:
Criteria:
or:
Client table
Show Table
Tables
Queries
Both
Business Analyst Table
Client
available tables
Close button
Add button
Add
Close
Ready

Note: To help you locate screen elements that are referenced in the step instructions, such as buttons and commands, this book uses red boxes to point to these screen elements.

Figure 2–2

Q&A

Is it necessary to close the Navigation Pane?

No. It gives you more room for the query, however, so it is usually a good practice to hide it.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2

- Click the Client table (Show Table dialog box) to select the table.
- Click the Add button to add the selected table to the query.
- Click the Close button to remove the dialog box from the screen.

Q&A

What if I inadvertently add the wrong table?

Right-click the table that you added in error and click Remove Table on the shortcut menu. You also can just close the query, indicate that you don't want to save it, and then start over.

- Drag the lower edge of the field list down far enough so all fields in the table appear (Figure 2–3).

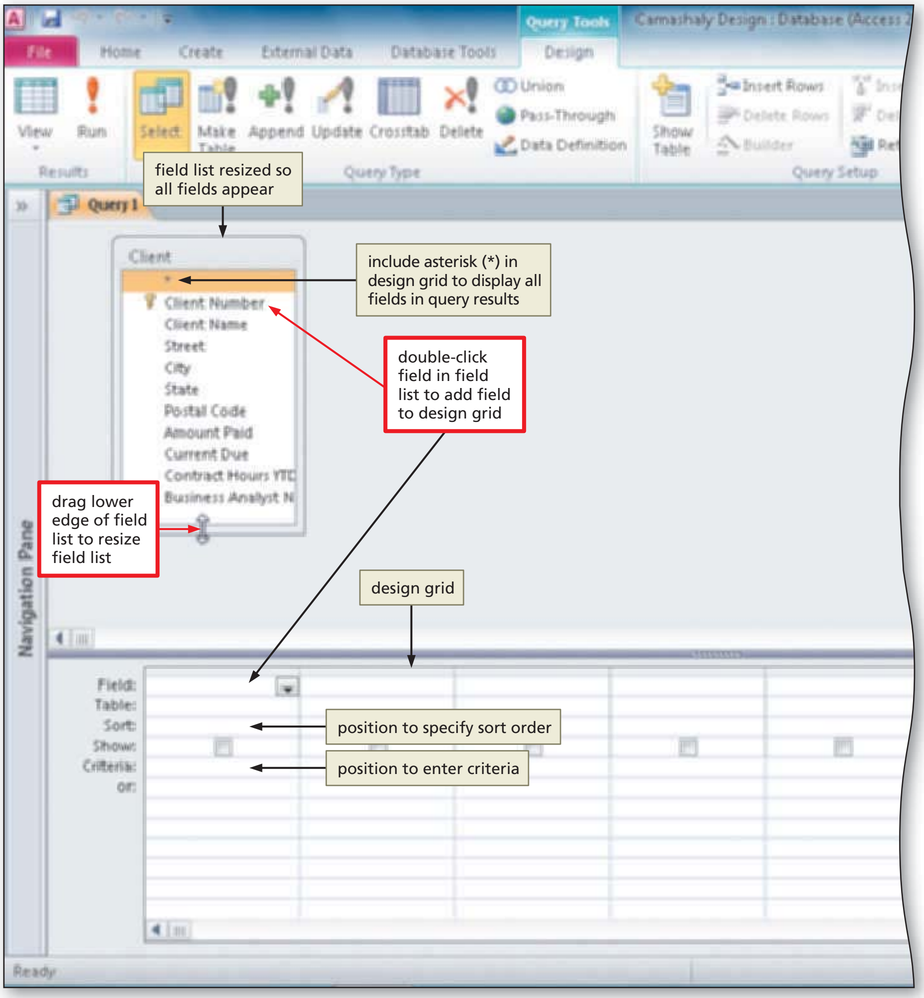

field list resized so all fields appear
include asterisk (*) in design grid to display all fields in query results
double-click field in field list to add field to design grid
drag lower edge of field list to resize field list
design grid
position to specify sort order
position to enter criteria
Query Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
View
Run
Select
Make Table
Append
Update
Crosstab
Delete
Union
Pass-Through
Data Definition
Show Table
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Builder
Results
Query Type
Query Setup
Query 1
Client
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Amount Paid
Current Due
Contract Hours YTD
Business Analyst N
Navigation Pane
Field:
Table:
Sort:
Show:
Criteria:
or:
Ready

Figure 2–3

Q&A

How do I drag the lower edge?

Point to the lower edge, press and hold the left mouse button, move the mouse pointer to the new position for the lower edge, and then release the left mouse button. While the mouse pointer points to the lower edge of the field list, its shape changes to a two-headed arrow.

Q&A

Is it essential that I resize the field list?

No. You can always scroll through the list of fields using the scroll bar. It is usually more convenient to resize the field list so all fields appear.

To Add Fields to the Design Grid

Once you have a new query displayed in Design view, you are ready to make entries in the design grid, located in the lower pane of the window. You add the fields you want included in the query to the Field row in the grid. Only the fields that appear in the design grid will be included in the results of the query. The following steps begin the creation of a query that Camashaly Design might use to obtain the client number, client name, amount paid, and current due for a particular client. The following step selects the appropriate fields for the query.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

1

- Double-click the Client Number field in the field list to add the field to the query.

Q&A

What if I add the wrong field?

Click just above the field name in the design grid to select the column and then press the DELETE key to remove the field.

- Double-click the Client Name field in the field list to add the field to the query.
- Add the Amount Paid field to the query.
- Add the Current Due field to the query (Figure 2–4).

Q&A

What if I want to include all fields? Do I have to add each field individually?

No. Instead of adding individual fields, you can double-click the asterisk (*) to add the asterisk to the design grid. The asterisk is a shortcut indicating all fields are to be included.

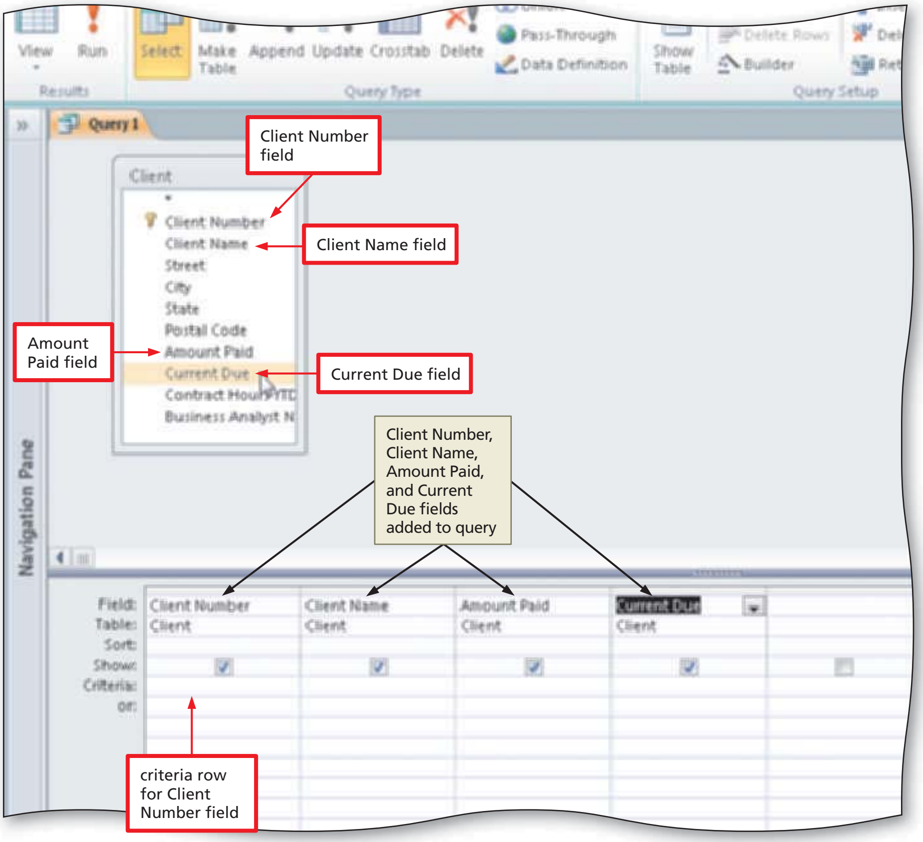

View
Run
Results
Select
Make Table
Append
Update
Crosstab
Delete
Pass-Through
Data Definition
Query Type
Show Table
Delete Rows
Builder
Query Setup
Query 1
Navigation Pane
Client
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Amount Paid
Current Due
Contract Hours YTD
Business Analyst N
Field:
Table:
Sort:
Show:
Criteria:
or:
Client Number
Client Name
Amount Paid
Current Due
Client
Client Number field
Client Name field
Amount Paid field
Current Due field
Client Number, Client Name, Amount Paid, and Current Due fields added to query
criteria row for Client Number field

Figure 2–4

BTW

The Ribbon and Screen Resolution

Access may change how the groups and buttons within the groups appear on the Ribbon, depending on the computer's screen resolution. Thus, your Ribbon may look different from the ones in this book if you are using a screen resolution other than 1024 × 768.

Determining Criteria

When you use queries, usually you are looking for those records that satisfy some criterion. In the simple query you created in the previous chapter, for example, you entered a criterion to restrict the records that were included to those on which the business analyst number is 14. In another query, you might want the name, amount paid, and current due amounts of the client whose number is BC76, for example, or of those clients whose names start with the letters, Gr. You enter criteria in the Criteria row in the design grid below the field name to which the criterion applies. For example, to indicate that the client number must be BC76, you first must add the Client Number field to the design grid. You then would type BC76 in the Criteria row below the Client Number field.

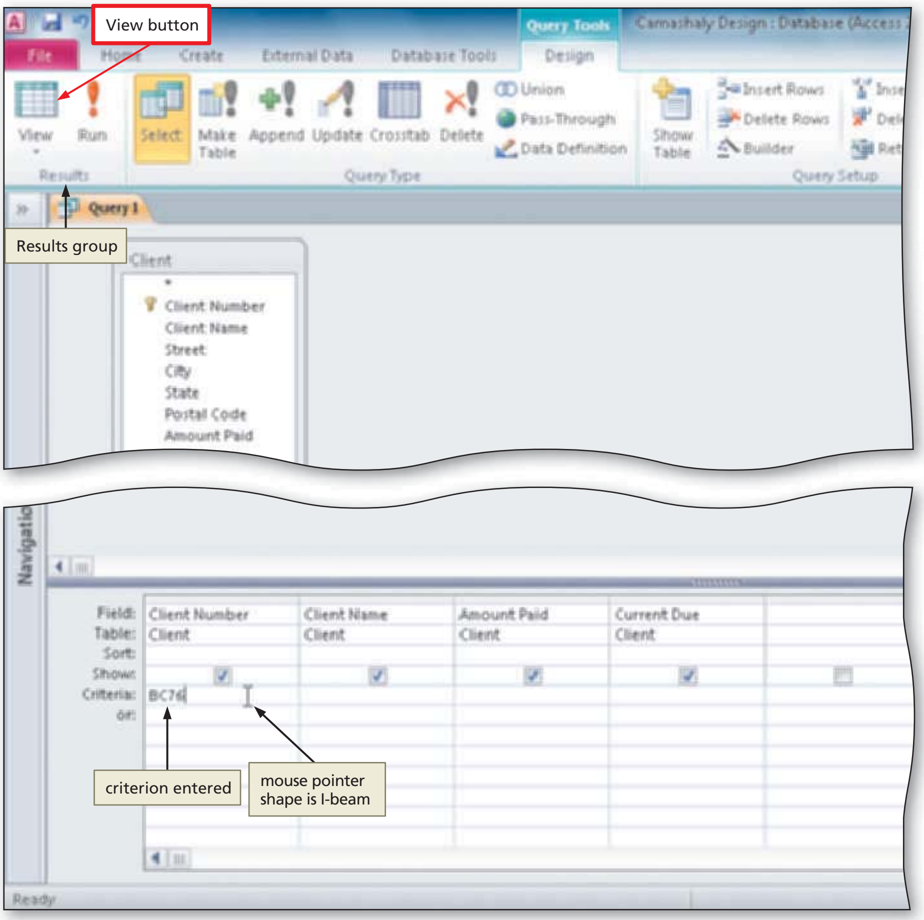
To Use Text Data in a Criterion

To use **text data** (data in a field whose data type is Text) in criteria, simply type the text in the Criteria row below the corresponding field name. The following steps finish the creation of a query that Camashaly Design might use to obtain the client number, client name, amount paid, and current due amount of client BC76. These steps add the appropriate criterion so that only the desired client will appear in the results. The steps also save the query.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

1

- Click the Criteria row for the Client Number field to produce an insertion point.
- Type `BC76` as the criterion (Figure 2–5).


View button
Results group
criterion entered
mouse pointer shape is I-beam
Query Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
View
Run
Select
Make Table
Append
Update
Crosstab
Delete
Union
Pass-Through
Data Definition
Show Table
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Builder
Results
Query Type
Query Setup
Query1
Client
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Amount Paid
Navigation
Ready

Field:	Client Number	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due	
Table:	Client	Client	Client	Client	
Sort:					
Show:	☑	☑	☑	☑	☐
Criteria:	BC76				
or:					

Figure 2–5

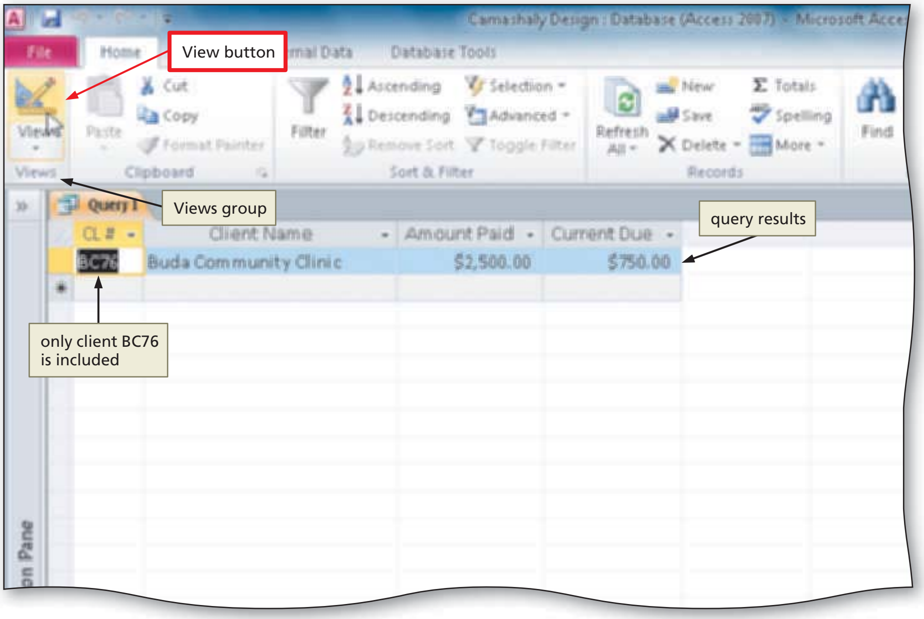
2

- Click the View button (Query Tools Design tab | Results group) to display the query results (Figure 2–6).

Q&A

I noticed that there is a View button on both the Home tab and the Design tab. Do they both have the same effect?

Yes. Use whichever one you find most convenient.


View button
Views group
query results
only client BC76 is included
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Acce
File
Home
nal Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Query1
on Pane

CL #	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	$2,500.00	$750.00

Figure 2–6

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3

- Click the Save button on the Quick Access Toolbar to display the Save As dialog box.
- Type `Ch2q1` as the name of the query (Figure 2–7).

Q&A

Can I also save from Design view?

Yes. You can save the query when you view it in Design view just as you can save the query when you view the query results in Datasheet view.

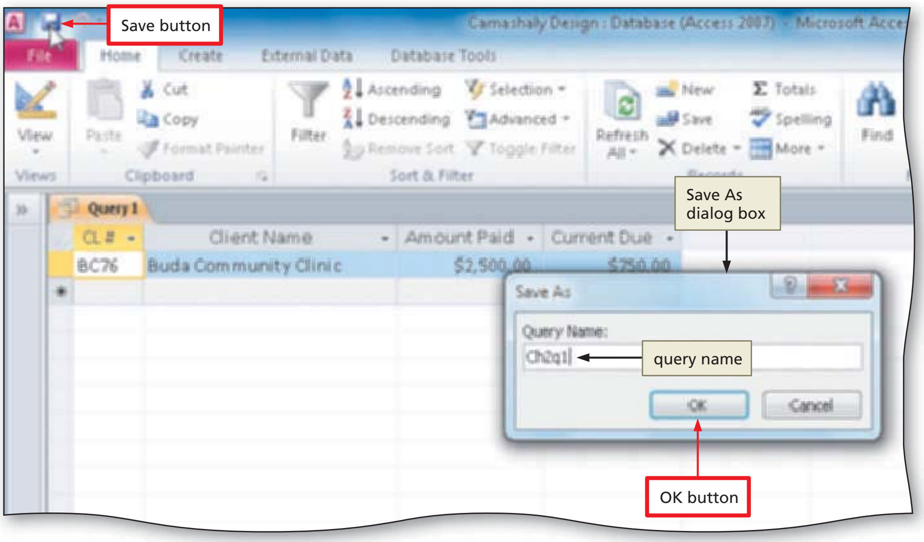

Save button
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Acce
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Query1
CL #
Client Name
Amount Paid
Current Due
BC76
Buda Community Clinic
$2,500.00
$750.00
Save As dialog box
Save As
Query Name:
Ch2q1
query name
OK
Cancel
OK button

Figure 2–7

4

- Click the OK button (Save As dialog box) to save the query (Figure 2–8).

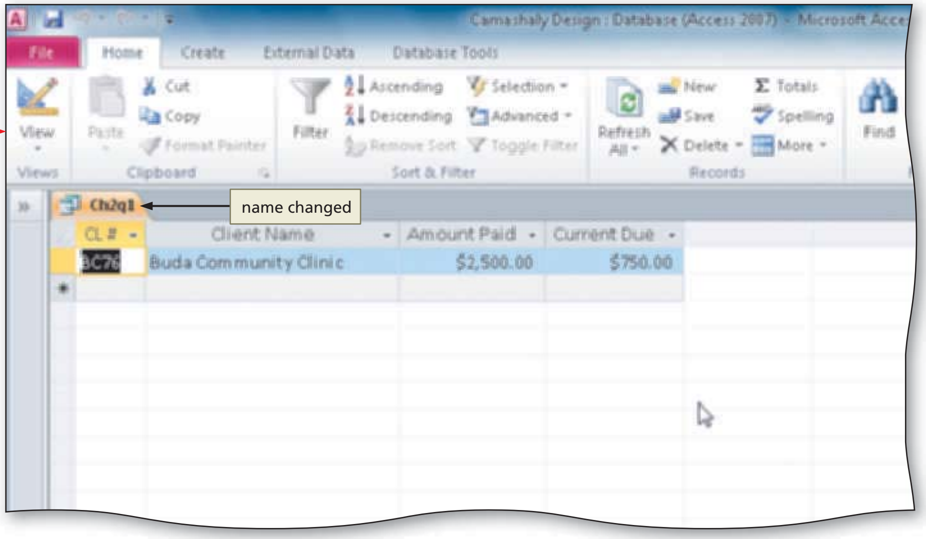

View button
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Acce
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Ch2q1
name changed
CL #
Client Name
Amount Paid
Current Due
BC76
Buda Community Clinic
$2,500.00
$750.00

Figure 2–8

Other Ways

1. Right-click query tab, click Save on shortcut menu

Using Saved Queries

After you have created and saved a query, you can use it in a variety of ways:

- To view the results of the query that is not currently open, open it by right-clicking the query in the Navigation Pane and clicking Open on the shortcut menu.
- If you want to change the design of the query that is already open, return to Design view and make the changes.
- If you want to change the design of the query that is not currently open, right-click the query in the Navigation Pane and then click Design View on the shortcut menu to open the query in Design view.
- To print the results with the query open, click File on the Ribbon, click the Print tab in the Backstage view, and then click Quick Print.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

- To print the query without first opening it, be sure the query is selected in the Navigation Pane and click File on the Ribbon, click the Print tab in the Backstage view, and then click Quick Print.
- You can switch between views of a query using the View button (Home tab | Views group). Clicking the arrow at the bottom of the button produces the View button menu. You then click the desired view in the menu. The two query views you use in this chapter are Datasheet view (see the results) and Design view (change the design). You can click the top part of the View button, in which case, you will switch to the view identified by the icon on the button. In the figure, the button contains the icon for Design view, so clicking the button would change to Design view. For the most part, the icon on the button represents the view you want, so you can usually simply click the button.

BTW

BTWs
For a complete list of the BTWs found in the margins of this book, visit the Access 2010 BTW Web page (scsite.com/ac2010/btw).

To Use a Wildcard

Microsoft Access supports wildcards. **Wildcards** are symbols that represent any character or combination of characters. One common wildcard, the **asterisk** (*), represents any collection of characters. Thus Gr* represents the letters, Gr, followed by any collection of characters. Another wildcard symbol is the **question mark** (?), which represents any individual character. Thus T?m represents the letter, T, followed by any single character, followed by the letter, m; a search might return the names Tim or Tom.

The following steps modify the previous query so that Camashaly Design can select only those clients whose names begin with Gr. Because you do not know how many characters will follow the Gr, the asterisk wildcard symbol is appropriate. The steps also save the query with a new name using the Save As command.

1

- Click the View button (Home tab | Views group) to return to Design view.
- If necessary, click the Criteria row below the Client Number field to produce an insertion point.

Q&A

The text I entered now has quotation marks surrounding it. What happened?

Criteria for text data needs to be enclosed in quotation marks. You do not have to type the quotation marks; Access adds them automatically.

- Use the DELETE or BACKSPACE key as necessary to delete the current entry.
- Click the Criteria row below the Client Name field to produce an insertion point.
- Type `Gr*` as the criterion (Figure 2–9).

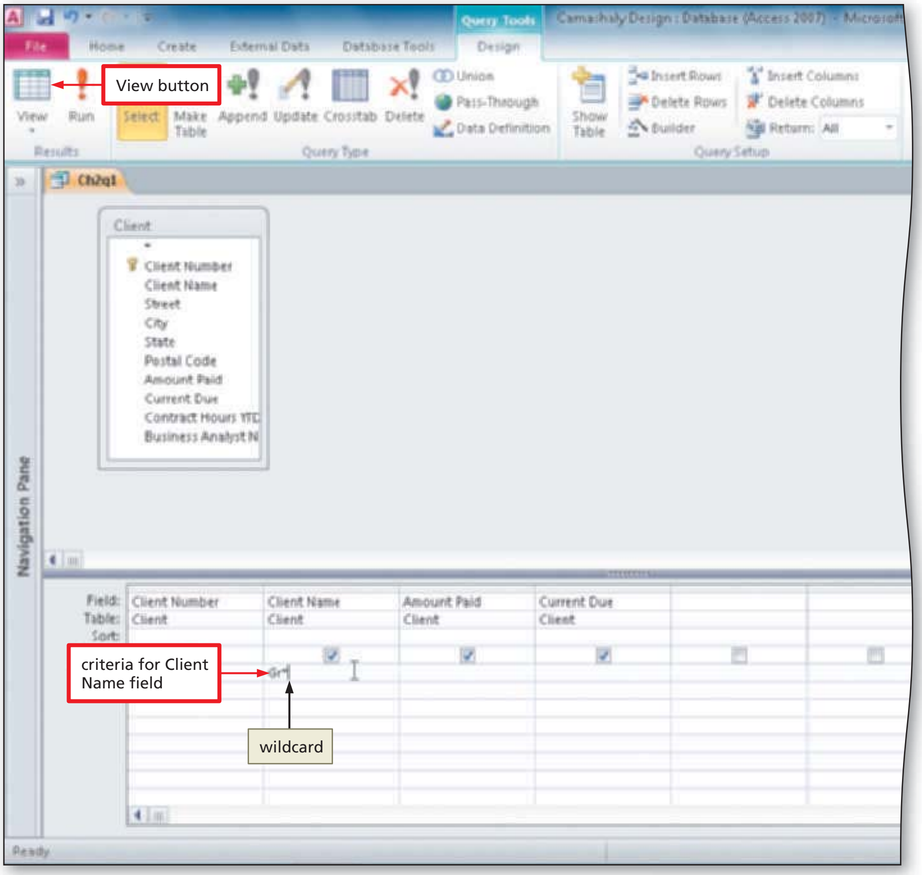

View button
criteria for Client Name field
wildcard
Query Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
View
Run
Select
Make Table
Append
Update
Crosstab
Delete
Union
Pass-Through
Data Definition
Show Table
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Builder
Insert Columns
Delete Columns
Return: All
Results
Query Type
Query Setup
Ch2q1
Navigation Pane
Client
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Amount Paid
Current Due
Contract Hours YTD
Business Analyst N
Field:
Table:
Sort:
Client Number
Client
Client Name
Client
Amount Paid
Client
Current Due
Client
Gr*
Ready

Figure 2–9

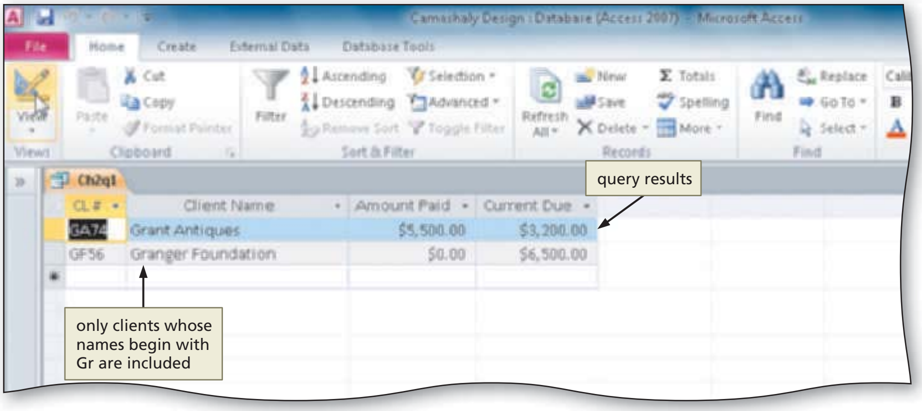
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2

- View the query results by clicking the View button (Query Tools Design tab | Results group) (Figure 2–10).

Experiment

- Vary the case of the letters in the criteria and view the results to determine whether case makes a difference when entering a wildcard.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Find
Ch2q1
CL #
Client Name
Amount Paid
Current Due
GA74
Grant Antiques
$5,500.00
$3,200.00
GF56
Granger Foundation
$0.00
$6,500.00

query results

only clients whose names begin with Gr are included

Figure 2–10

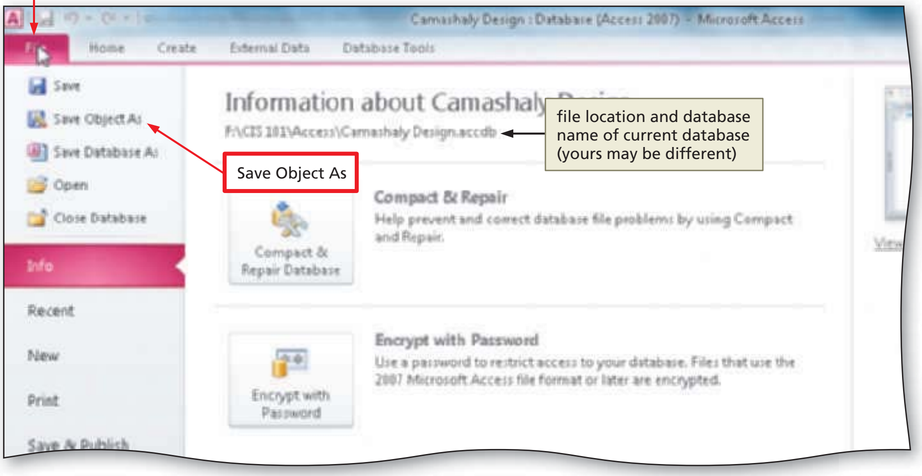
3

- Click File on the Ribbon to open the Backstage view (Figure 2–11).

Q&A Why can't I just click the Save button on the Quick Access Toolbar like I did when I saved the previous query?

If you did, you would replace the previous query with the version you just created. Because you want to save both the previous query and the new one, you need to save the new version with a different name. To do so, you must use Save Object As, which is available through the Backstage view.

File tab


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Save
Save Object As
Save Database As
Open
Close Database
Info
Recent
New
Print
Save & Publish
Information about Camashaly Design
F:\CIS 101\Access\Camashaly Design.accdb
Compact & Repair Database
Compact & Repair
Help prevent and correct database file problems by using Compact and Repair.
Encrypt with Password
Encrypt with Password
Use a password to restrict access to your database. Files that use the 2007 Microsoft Access file format or later are encrypted.
View

file location and database name of current database (yours may be different)

Save Object As

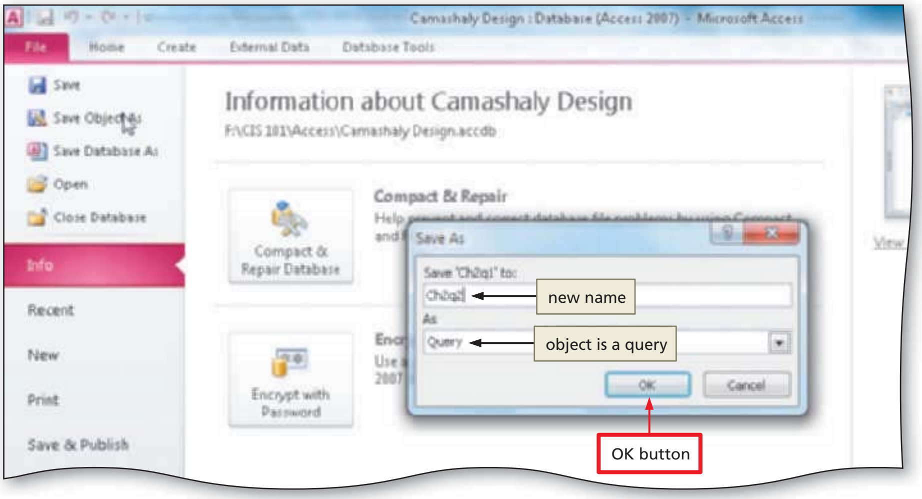
Figure 2–11

4

- Click Save Object As in the Backstage view to display the Save As dialog box.
- Type `Ch2q2` as the name for the saved query (Figure 2–12).

Q&A The current entry in the As text box is Query. Could I save the query as some other type of object?

Although you usually would want to save the query as another query, you also can save it as a form or report by changing the entry in the As text box. If you do, Access would create either a simple form or a simple report for the query.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Save
Save Object As
Save Database As
Open
Close Database
Info
Recent
New
Print
Save & Publish
Information about Camashaly Design
F:\CIS 101\Access\Camashaly Design.accdb
Compact & Repair Database
Compact & Repair
Encrypt with Password
Save As
OK
Cancel
View

Save 'Ch2q1' to:
Ch2q2
As
Query

new name

object is a query

OK button

Figure 2–12

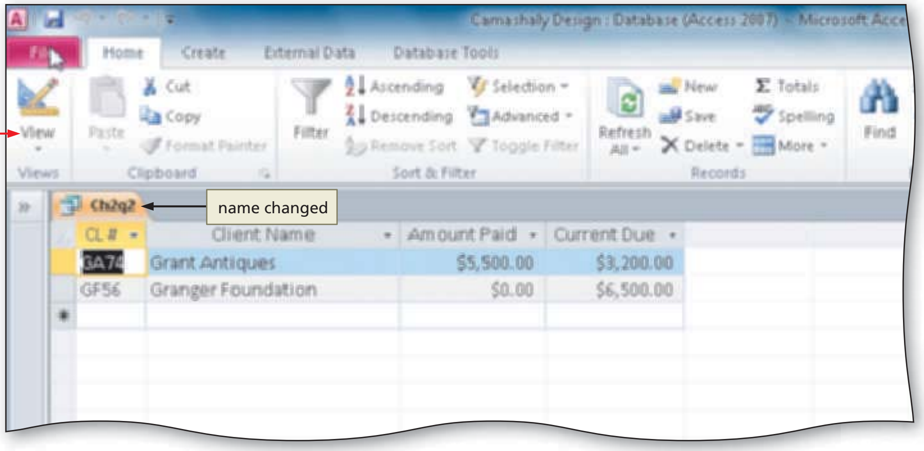
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

5

- Click the OK button (Save As dialog box) to save the query with the new name, and then click File on the Ribbon to close the Backstage view (Figure 2–13).

Q&A How can I tell that the query was saved with the new name?

The new name will appear on the tab.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Acce
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Views
Clipboard
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Sort & Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Records
Find
Ch2q2

View button

name changed

CL #	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due
GA74	Grant Antiques	$5,500.00	$3,200.00
GF56	Granger Foundation	$0.00	$6,500.00

Figure 2–13

To Use Criteria for a Field Not Included in the Results

In some cases, you might require criteria for a particular field that should not appear in the results of the query. For example, you may want to see the client number, client name, address, and amount paid for all clients located in Georgetown. The criteria involve the City field, but you do not want to include the City field in the results.

To enter a criterion for the City field, it must be included in the design grid. Normally, this also would mean it would appear in the results. To prevent this from happening, remove the check mark from its Show check box in the Show row of the grid.

The following steps modify the previous query so that Camashaly Design can select only those clients located in Georgetown. Camashaly does not want the city to appear in the results, however. The steps also save the query with a new name.

1

- Click the View button (Home tab | Views group), shown in Figure 2–13, to return to Design view.

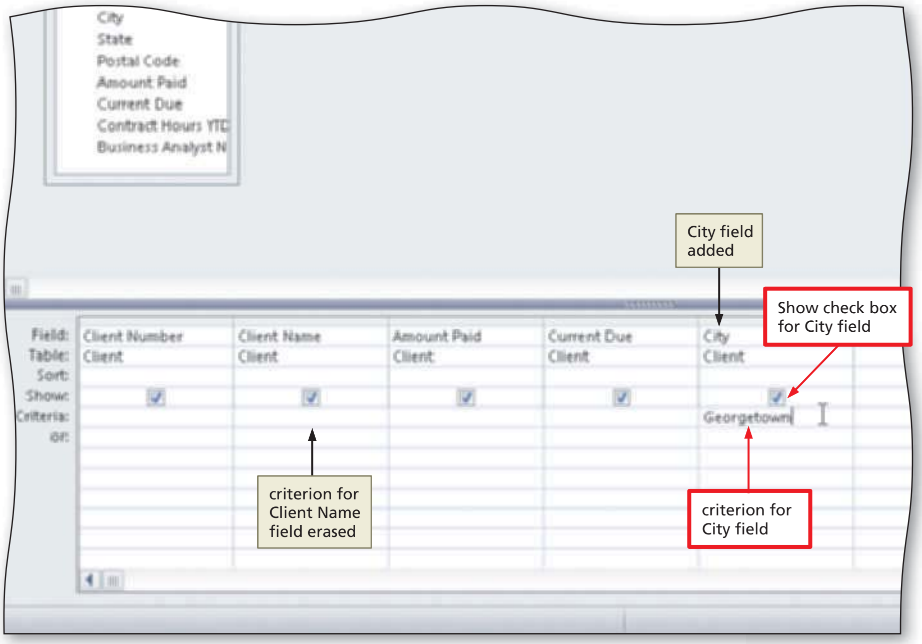
Q&A The text I entered is now preceded by the word, Like. What happened?

Criteria including wildcards need to be preceded by the word, Like. You do not have to type the word, Like, however. Access adds it automatically to any criterion involving a wildcard.

- Erase the criterion in the Client Name field.

- Add the City field to the query.

- Type `Georgetown` as the criterion for the City field (Figure 2–14).


City
State
Postal Code
Amount Paid
Current Due
Contract Hours YTD
Business Analyst N

City field added

Show check box for City field

criterion for Client Name field erased

criterion for City field

Field:	Client Number	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due	City
Table:	Client	Client	Client	Client	Client
Sort:					
Show:	☑	☑	☑	☑	☑
Criteria:					Georgetown
or:					

Figure 2–14

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

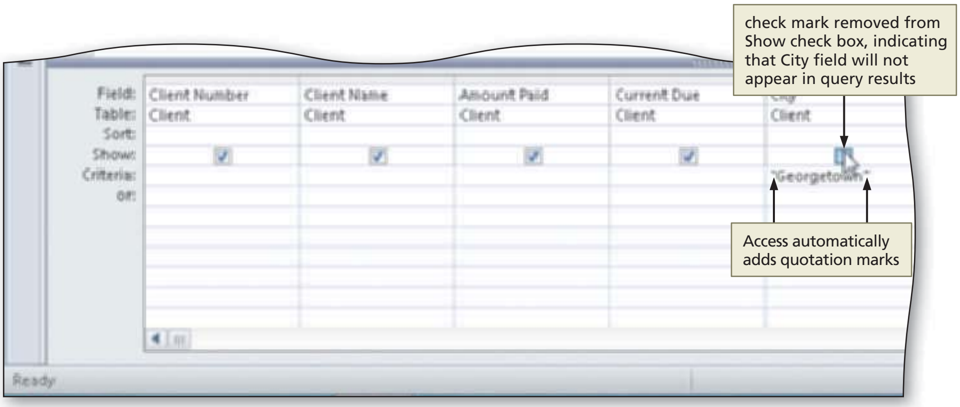
2

- Click the Show check box for the City field to remove the check mark (Figure 2–15).

Q&A

Could I have removed the check mark before entering the criterion?

Yes. The order in which you perform the two operations does not matter.


Field:
Table:
Sort:
Show:
Criteria:
or:
Client Number
Client
Client Name
Client
Amount Paid
Client
Current Due
Client
City
Client
"Georgetown"
Ready

check mark removed from Show check box, indicating that City field will not appear in query results

Access automatically adds quotation marks

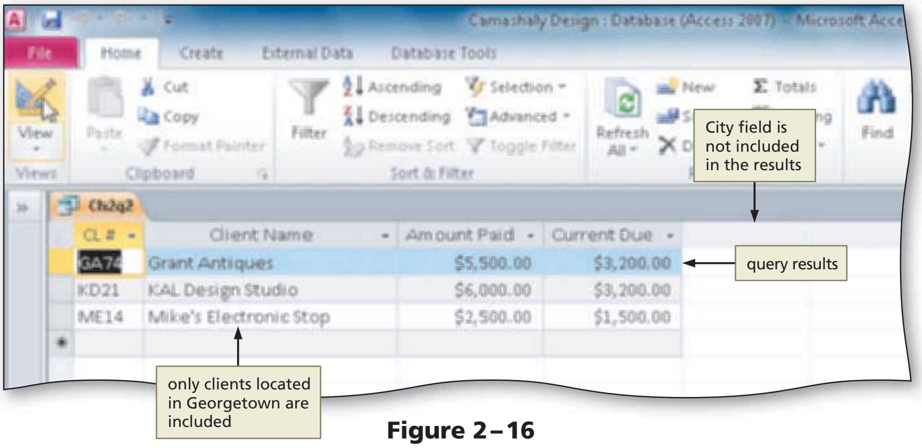
Figure 2–15

3

- View the query results (Figure 2–16).

Experiment

- Click the View button to return to Design view, enter a different city name, and view the results. Repeat this process with a variety of city names, including at least one city name that is not in the database. When finished, change the criterion back to Georgetown.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Acce
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Views
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Clipboard
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Sort & Filter
Refresh All
New
Totals
Find
Ch2q2

CL #	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due
GA74	Grant Antiques	$5,500.00	$3,200.00
KD21	KAL Design Studio	$6,000.00	$3,200.00
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	$2,500.00	$1,500.00

City field is not included in the results

query results

only clients located in Georgetown are included

Figure 2–16

4

- Click File on the Ribbon to open the Backstage view.
- Click Save Object As in the Backstage view to display the Save As dialog box.
- Type `Ch2q3` as the name for the saved query.
- Click the OK button (Save As dialog box) to save the query with the new name.
- Click File on the Ribbon to close the Backstage view.

BTW

Queries: Query-by-Example
Query-By-Example, often referred to as QBE, was a query language first proposed in the mid-1970s. In this approach, users asked questions by filling in a table on the screen. The Access approach to queries is based on Query-By-Example.

Creating a Parameter Query

If you wanted to find clients located in Kyle instead of Georgetown, you would either have to create a new query or modify the existing query by replacing Georgetown with Kyle as the criterion. Rather than giving a specific criterion when you first create the query, on occasion, you may want to be able to enter part of the criterion when you view the query results and then have the appropriate results appear. For example, to include all the clients located in Kyle, you could enter Kyle as a criterion in the City field. From that point on, every time you ran the query, only the clients in Kyle would appear.

A better way is to allow the user to enter the city at the time the user wants to view the results. Thus, a user could view the query results, enter Kyle as the city, and then see all the clients in Kyle. Later, the user could use the same query but enter Georgetown as the city, and then see all the clients in Georgetown.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To enable this flexibility, you create a **parameter query**, which is a query that prompts for input whenever it is used. You enter a parameter (prompt for the user), rather than a specific value as the criterion. You create one by enclosing a value in a criterion in square brackets. It is important that the value in the brackets does not match the name of any field. If you enter a field name in square brackets, Access assumes you want that particular field and does not prompt the user for input. To prompt the user to enter the city name as the input, you could place [Enter City] as the criterion in the City field.

To Create and View a Parameter Query

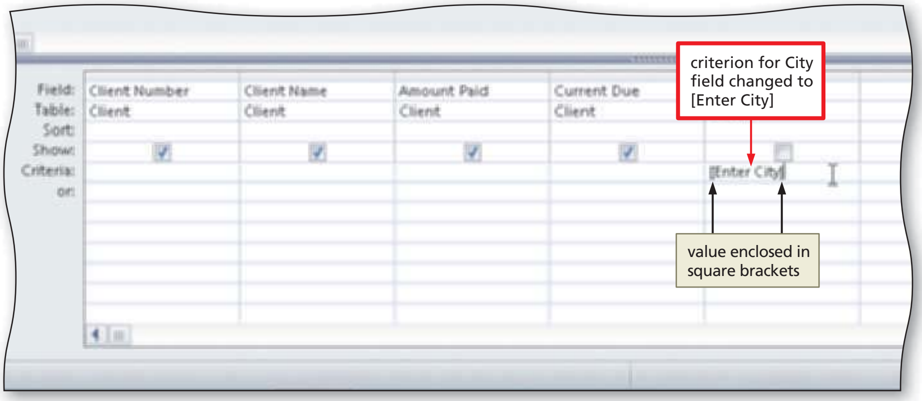
The following steps create a parameter query that will prompt the users at Camashaly to enter a city, and then display the client number, name, address, and amount paid for all clients located in that city. The steps also save the query with a new name.

1

- Return to Design view.
- Erase the current criterion in the City column, and then type `[Enter City]` as the new criterion (Figure 2–17).

Q&A What is the purpose of the square brackets?

The square brackets indicate that the text entered is not text that the value in the column must match. Without the brackets, Access would search for records on which the city is Enter City.



Field:	Client Number	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due	
Table:	Client	Client	Client	Client	
Sort:					
Show:	☑	☑	☑	☑	☐
Criteria:					[Enter City]
or:					

criterion for City field changed to [Enter City]

value enclosed in square brackets

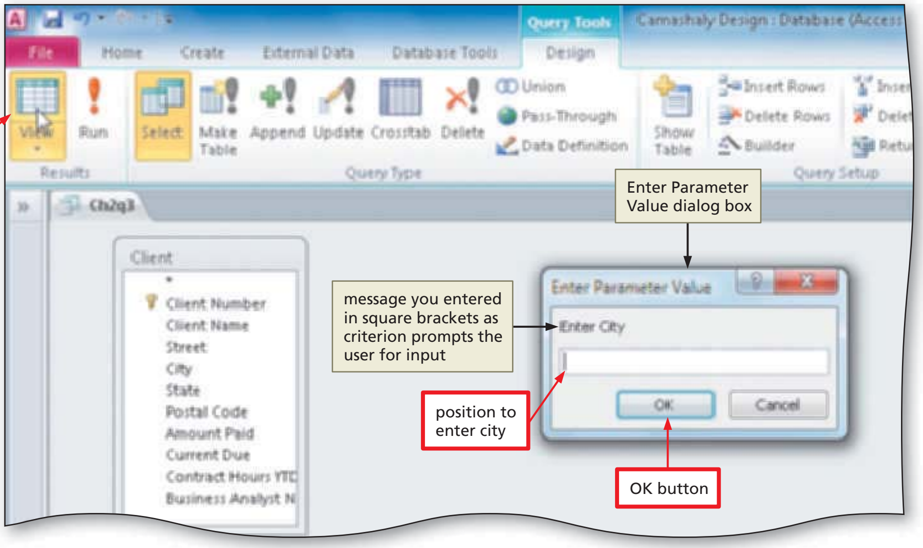
Figure 2–17

Q&A What if I typed a field name in the square brackets?

Access would simply use the value in that field. To create a parameter query, you must not use a field name in the square brackets.

2

- Click the View button (Query Tools Design tab | Results group) to display the Enter Parameter Value dialog box (Figure 2–18).


Query Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
View
Run
Select
Make Table
Append
Update
Crosstab
Delete
Union
Pass-Through
Data Definition
Show Table
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Builder
Results
Query Type
Query Setup
Ch2q3
Client
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Amount Paid
Current Due
Contract Hours YTD
Business Analyst N
Enter Parameter Value
Enter City
OK
Cancel

View button

Enter Parameter Value dialog box

message you entered in square brackets as criterion prompts the user for input

position to enter city

OK button

Figure 2–18

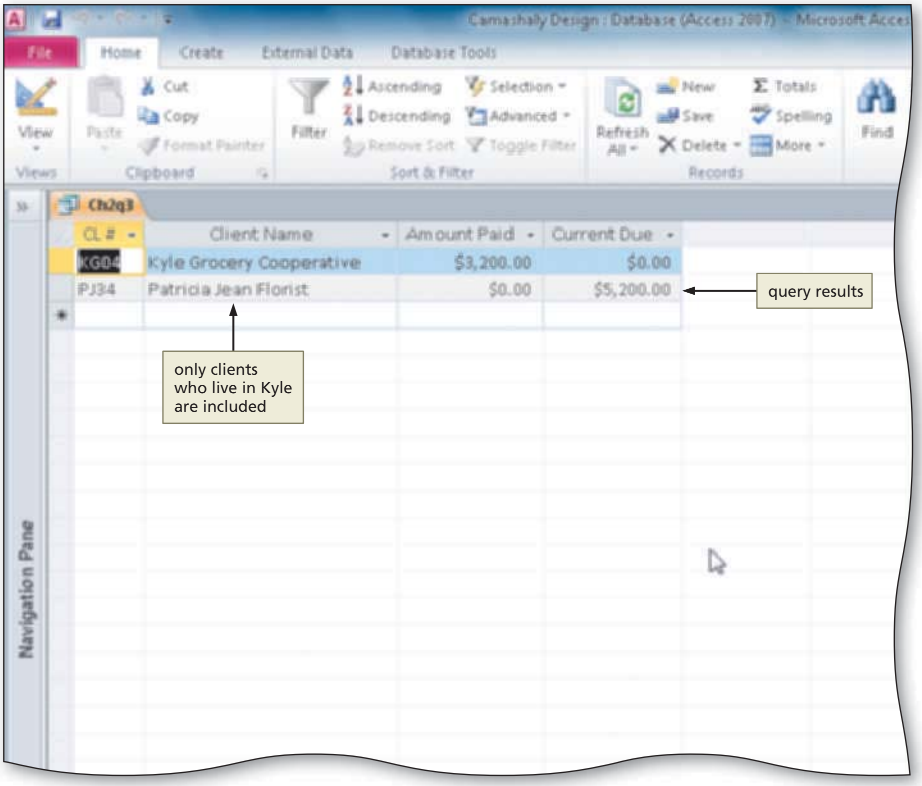
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3

- Type `Kyle` as the parameter value in the Enter City text box and then click the OK button (Enter Parameter Value dialog box) to close the dialog box and view the query (Figure 2–19).

Experiment

- Try other characters between the square brackets. In each case, view the results. When finished, change the characters between the square brackets back to Enter City.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Ch2q3
Navigation Pane

CL #	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	$3,200.00	$0.00
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	$0.00	$5,200.00

query results

only clients who live in Kyle are included

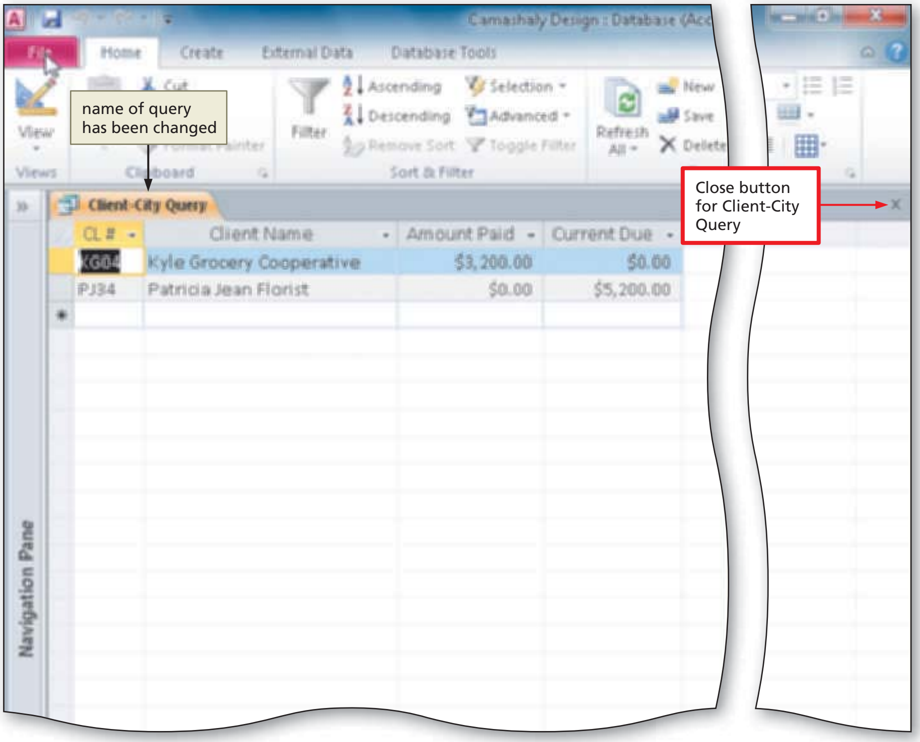
Figure 2–19

4

- Click File on the Ribbon to open the Backstage view.
- Click Save Object As in the Backstage view to display the Save As dialog box.
- Type `Client-City Query` as the name for the saved query.
- Click the OK button (Save As dialog box) to save the query with the new name and then click File on the Ribbon (Figure 2–20).

5

- Click the Close button for the Client-City query to close the query.


Camashaly Design : Database (Acc
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Cut
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Client-City Query
Navigation Pane

CL #	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	$3,200.00	$0.00
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	$0.00	$5,200.00

name of query has been changed

Close button for Client-City Query

Figure 2–20

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Break Point: If you wish to take a break, this is a good place to do so. You can quit Access now. To resume at a later time, start Access, open the database called Camashaly Design, and continue following the steps from this location forward.

To Use a Parameter Query

You use a parameter query like any other saved query. You can open it or you can print the query results. In either case, Access prompts you to supply a value for the parameter each time you use the query. As with other queries, the query always uses the data that is currently in the table. Thus, if changes have been made to the data since the last time you ran the query, the results of the query may be different, even if you enter the same value for the parameter. The following steps use the parameter query named Client-City Query.

1

- Open the Navigation Pane.
- Right-click the Client-City Query to produce a shortcut menu.
- Click Open on the shortcut menu to open the query and display the Enter Parameter Value dialog box (Figure 2–21).

Q&A The title bar for my Navigation Pane contains Tables and Related Views rather than All Access Objects as it did in Chapter 1. What should I do?

Click the Navigation Pane arrow and then click All Access Objects.

Q&A I do not have the Search bar at the top of the Navigation Pane that I had in Chapter 1. What should I do?

Right-click the Navigation Pane title bar arrow to display a shortcut menu, and then click Search Bar.

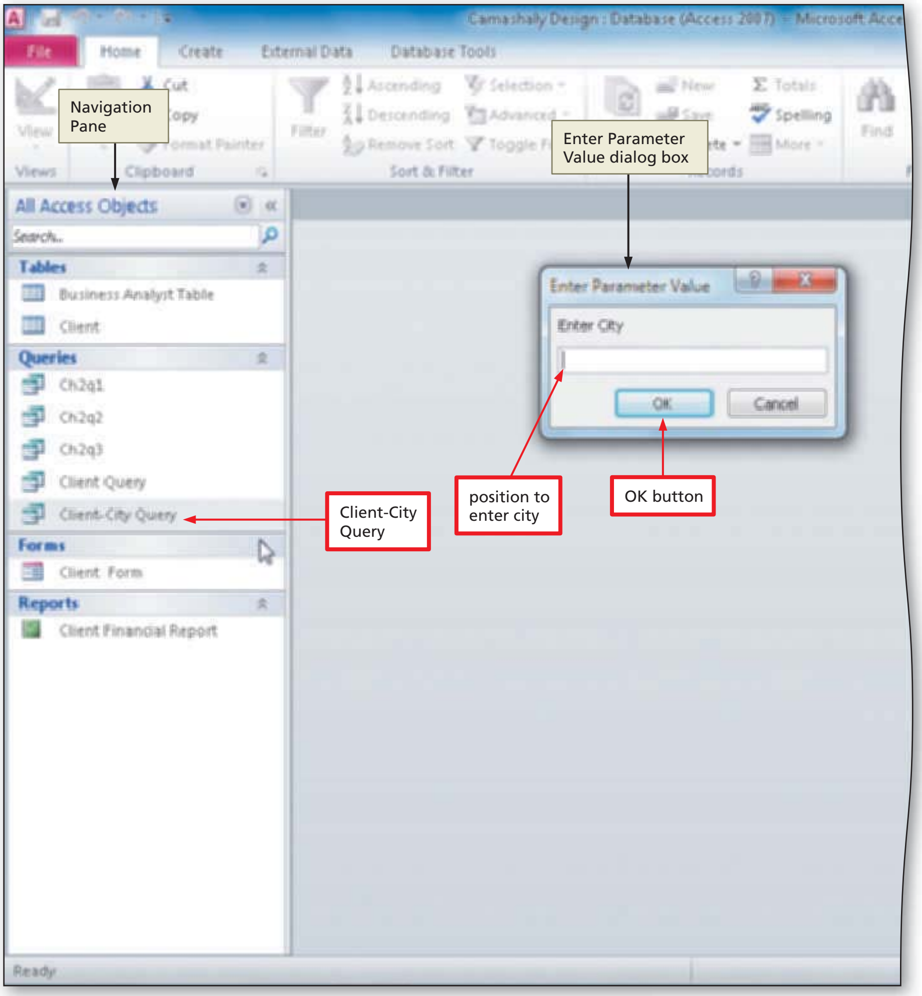

Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Acce
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Navigation Pane
Enter Parameter Value dialog box
All Access Objects
Search...
Tables
Business Analyst Table
Client
Queries
Ch2q1
Ch2q2
Ch2q3
Client Query
Client-City Query
Forms
Client Form
Reports
Client Financial Report
Enter Parameter Value
Enter City
OK
Cancel
Client-City Query
position to enter city
OK button
Ready

Figure 2–21

2

- Type `Kyle` in the Enter City text box, and then click the OK button (Enter Parameter Value dialog box) to display the results using Kyle as the city, as shown in Figure 2–20.
- Close the query.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Use a Number in a Criterion

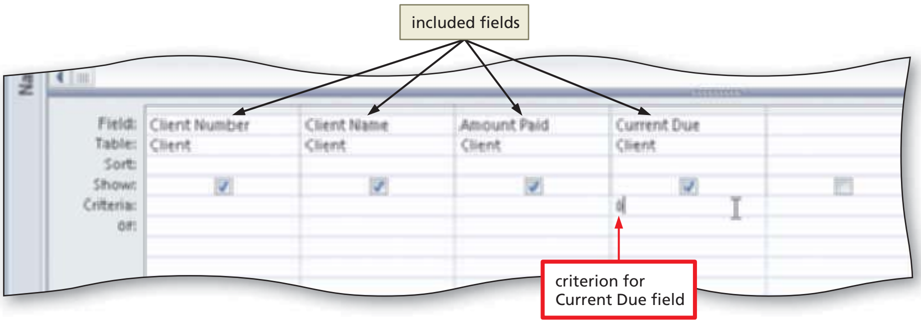
To enter a number in a criterion, type the number without any dollar signs or commas. The following steps create a query that Camashaly Design might use to display all clients whose current due amount is $0. The steps also save the query with a new name.

1

- Close the Navigation Pane.
- Click Create on the Ribbon to display the Create tab.
- Click the Query Design button (Create tab | Queries group) to create a new query.
- Click the Client table (Show Table dialog box) to select the table.
- Click the Add button to add the selected table to the query.
- Click the Close button to remove the dialog box from the screen.
- Drag the lower edge of the field list down far enough so all fields in the field list are displayed.
- Include the Client Number, Client Name, Amount Paid, and Current Due fields in the query.
- Type 0 as the criterion for the Current Due field (Figure 2–22).

Q&A Do I need to enter a dollar sign and decimal point?

No. Access will interpret 0 as $0 because the data type for the Current Due field is currency.



Field:	Client Number	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due	
Table:	Client	Client	Client	Client	
Sort:					
Show:	☑	☑	☑	☑	☐
Criteria:				0	
or:					

included fields

criterion for Current Due field

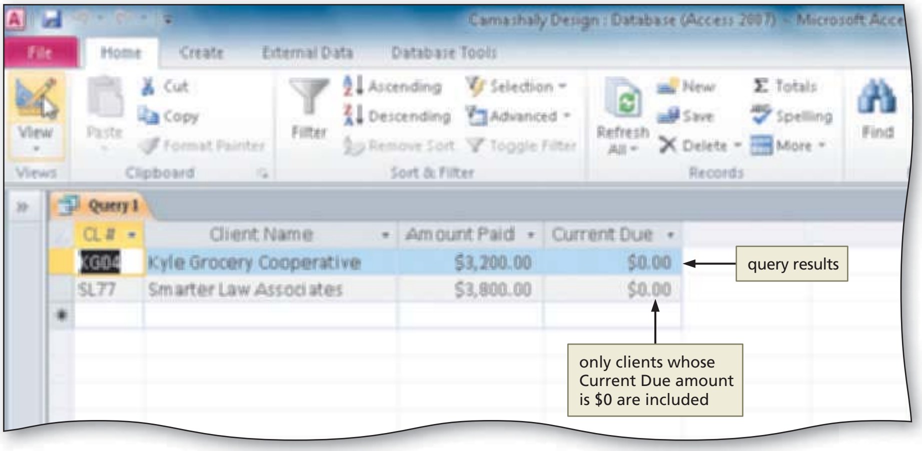
Figure 2–22

2

- View the query results (Figure 2–23).

Q&A Why did Access display the results as $0.00 when I only entered 0?

Access uses the format for the field to determine how to display the result. In this case, the format indicated that Access should include the dollar sign, decimal point, and two decimal places.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Acce
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Views
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Clipboard
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Sort & Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Records
Find
Query1

CL #	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	$3,200.00	$0.00
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	$3,800.00	$0.00

query results

only clients whose Current Due amount is $0 are included

Figure 2–23

3

- Save the query as Ch2q4.

Q&A How do I know when to use the Save button to save a query or use the Backstage view to perform a Save As?

If you are saving a new query, the simplest way is to use the Save button on the Quick Access Toolbar. If you are saving changes to a previously saved query but do not want to change the name, use the Save button. If you want to save a previously saved query with a new name, you must use the Backstage view and perform a Save Object As.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

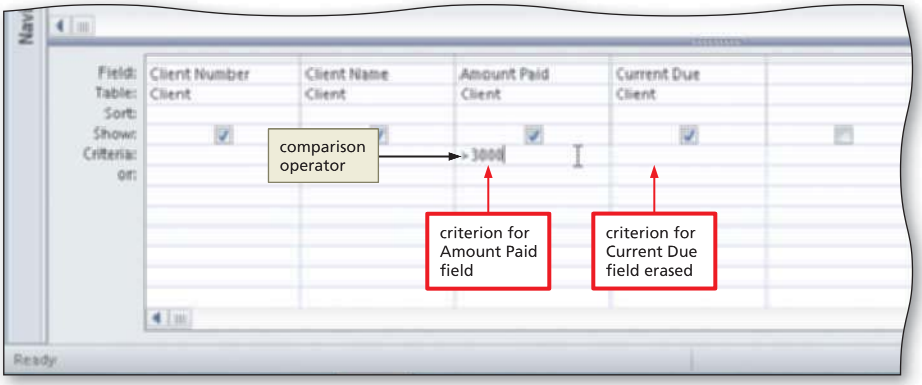
To Use a Comparison Operator in a Criterion

Unless you specify otherwise, Access assumes that the criteria you enter involve equality (exact matches). In the last query, for example, you were requesting those clients whose current due amount is equal to 0 (zero). If you want something other than an exact match, you must enter the appropriate **comparison operator**. The comparison operators are > (greater than), < (less than), >= (greater than or equal to), <= (less than or equal to), and NOT (not equal to).

The following steps use the > operator to create a query that Camashaly Design might use to find all clients whose amount paid is more than $3,000. The steps also save the query with a new name.

1

- Return to Design view.
- Erase the 0 in the Current Due column.
- Type **>3000** as the criterion for the Amount Paid field (Figure 2–24).



Field:	Client Number	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due
Table:	Client	Client	Client	Client
Sort:				
Show:	☑	☑	☑	☑
Criteria:			>3000	
or:				

comparison operator

criterion for Amount Paid field

criterion for Current Due field erased

Figure 2–24

2

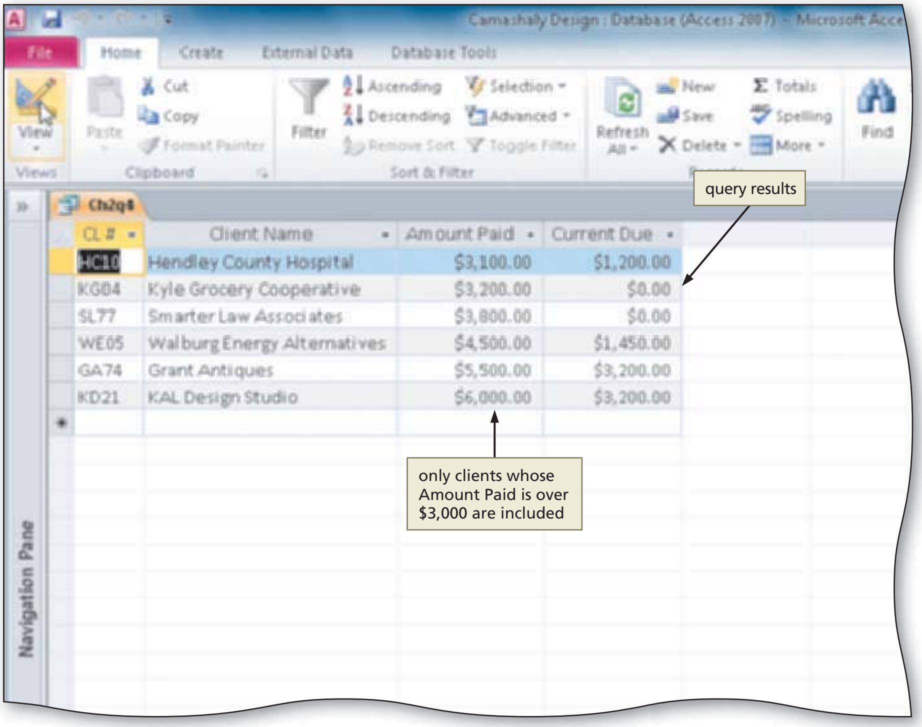
- View the query results (Figure 2–25).

Experiment

- Return to Design view. Try a different criterion involving a comparison operator in the Amount Paid field and view the results. When finished, return to Design view, enter the original criterion (>3000) in the Amount Paid field, and view the results.

3

- Save the query as Ch2q5.



Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Acce
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Ch2q5
Navigation Pane

CL #	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due
HC10	Hendley County Hospital	$3,100.00	$1,200.00
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	$3,200.00	$0.00
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	$3,800.00	$0.00
WE05	Walburg Energy Alternatives	$4,500.00	$1,450.00
GA74	Grant Antiques	$5,500.00	$3,200.00
KD21	KAL Design Studio	$6,000.00	$3,200.00

query results

only clients whose Amount Paid is over $3,000 are included

Figure 2–25

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Using Compound Criteria

Often you will have more than one criterion that the data for which you are searching must satisfy. This type of criterion is called a **compound criterion**. Two types of compound criteria exist.

In an **AND criterion**, each individual criterion must be true in order for the compound criterion to be true. For example, an AND criterion would allow you to find those clients that have an amount paid greater than $3,000 and whose business analyst is business analyst 11.

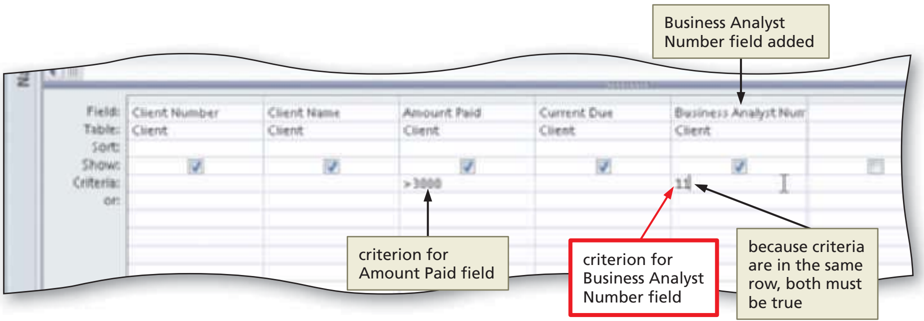
Conversely, an **OR criterion** is true provided either individual criterion is true. An OR criterion would allow you to find those clients that have an amount paid greater than $3,000 and also those clients whose business analyst is business analyst 11 — either one criterion or the other is true. In this case, any client whose amount paid is greater than $3,000 would be included in the answer, regardless of whether the client's business analyst is business analyst 11. Likewise, any client whose business analyst is business analyst 11 would be included, regardless of whether the client had an amount paid greater than $3,000.

To Use a Compound Criterion Involving AND

To combine criteria with AND, place the criteria on the same row of the design grid. The following steps use an AND criterion to enable Camashaly to find those clients whose amount paid is greater than $3,000 and whose business analyst is analyst 11. The steps also save the query with a new name.

1

- Return to Design view.
- Include the Business Analyst Number field in the query.
- Type `11` as the criterion for the Business Analyst Number field (Figure 2–26).



Field:	Client Number	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due	Business Analyst Num	
Table:	Client	Client	Client	Client	Client	
Sort:						
Show:	☑	☑	☑	☑	☑	☐
Criteria:			>3000		11	
or:						

Business Analyst Number field added

criterion for Amount Paid field

criterion for Business Analyst Number field

because criteria are in the same row, both must be true

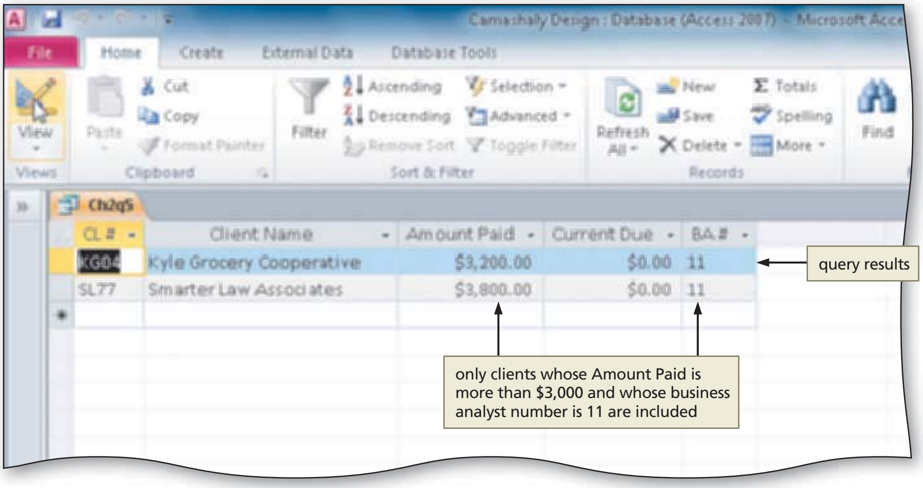
Figure 2–26

2

- View the query results (Figure 2–27).

3

- Save the query as Ch2q6.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Acce
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Ch2q5

CL #	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due	BA #
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	$3,200.00	$0.00	11
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	$3,800.00	$0.00	11

query results

only clients whose Amount Paid is more than $3,000 and whose business analyst number is 11 are included

Figure 2–27

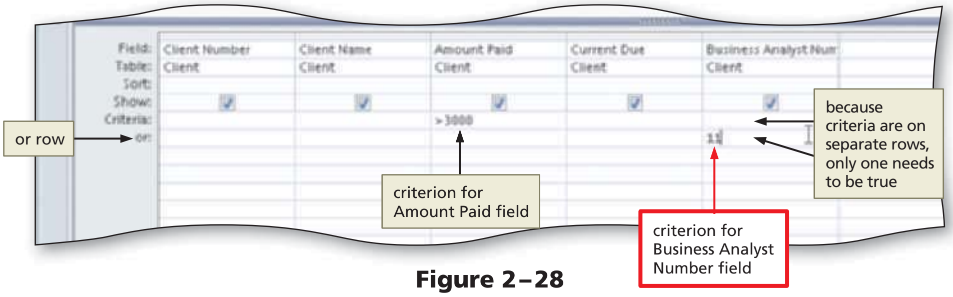
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Use a Compound Criterion Involving OR

To combine criteria with OR, the criteria must go on separate rows in the Criteria area of the grid. The following steps use an OR criterion to enable Camashaly to find those clients whose amount paid is greater than $3,000 or whose business analyst is analyst 11 (or both). The steps also save the query with a new name.

1

- Return to Design view.
- If necessary, click the Criteria entry for the Business Analyst Number field and then use the BACKSPACE key or the DELETE key to erase the entry (“11”).
- Click the or row (the row below the Criteria row) for the Business Analyst Number field and then type `11` as the entry (Figure 2–28).



Field:	Client Number	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due	Business Analyst Num
Table:	Client	Client	Client	Client	Client
Sort:					
Show:	☑	☑	☑	☑	☑
Criteria:			>3000		
or:					11

or row
criterion for Amount Paid field
criterion for Business Analyst Number field
because criteria are on separate rows, only one needs to be true

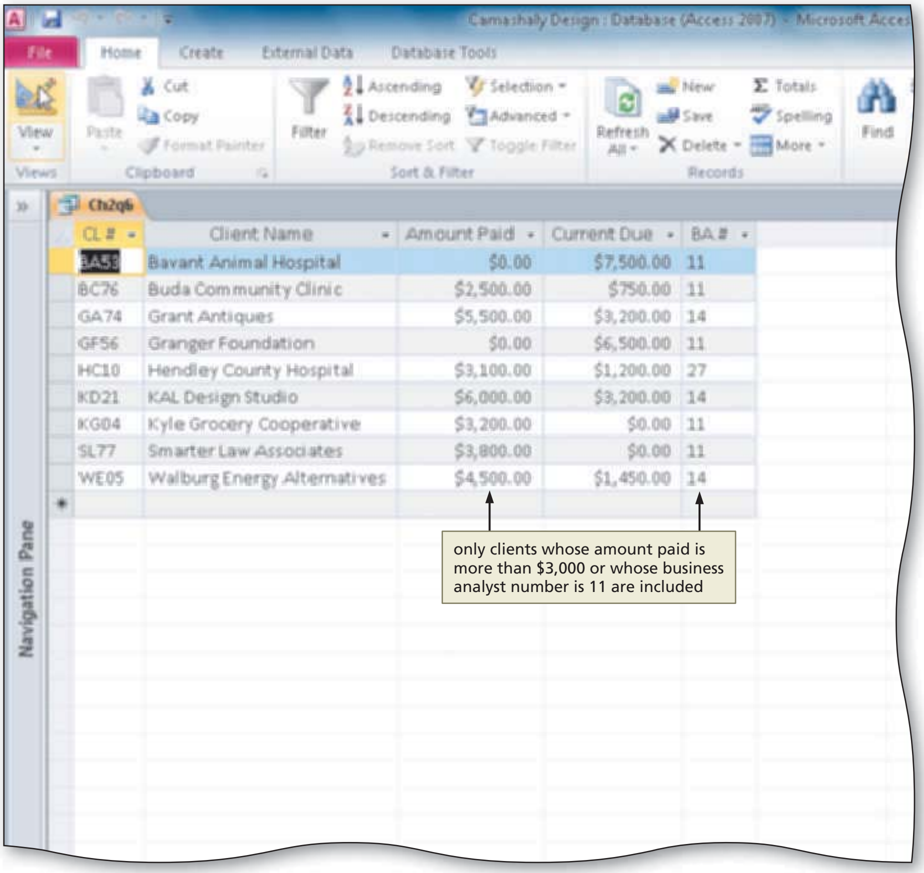
Figure 2–28

2

- View the query results (Figure 2–29).

3

- Save the query as Ch2q7.



Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Acces
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Views
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Clipboard
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Sort & Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Records
Find
Navigation Pane
Ch2q6

CL #	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due	BA #
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	$0.00	$7,500.00	11
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	$2,500.00	$750.00	11
GA74	Grant Antiques	$5,500.00	$3,200.00	14
GF56	Granger Foundation	$0.00	$6,500.00	11
HC10	Hendley County Hospital	$3,100.00	$1,200.00	27
KD21	KAL Design Studio	$6,000.00	$3,200.00	14
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	$3,200.00	$0.00	11
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	$3,800.00	$0.00	11
WE05	Walburg Energy Alternatives	$4,500.00	$1,450.00	14

only clients whose amount paid is more than $3,000 or whose business analyst number is 11 are included

Figure 2–29

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Special Criteria

There are three special criteria you can use in queries:

1. If you want to create a criterion involving a range of values in a single field, you can use the **AND operator**. You place the word AND between the individual conditions. For example, if you wanted to find all clients whose amount paid is >= $1,000 and <= $4,000, you would enter `>= 1000 AND <= 4000` as the criterion in the Amount Paid column.
2. You can select values in a given range by using the **BETWEEN operator**. This is often an alternative to the AND operator. For example, to find all clients whose amount paid is between $1,000 and $4,000, inclusive, you would enter `BETWEEN 1000 AND 4000` as the criterion in the Amount Paid column.
3. You can select values in a list by using the **IN operator**. You follow the word IN with the list of values in parentheses. For example, to find clients whose business analyst number is 11 or 14 using the IN operator, you would enter `IN ("11","14")` as the criterion in the Business Analyst Number column. Unlike when you enter a simple criterion, you must enclose text values in quotation marks.

Sorting

In some queries, the order in which the records appear is irrelevant. All you need to be concerned about are the records that appear in the results. It does not matter which one is first or which one is last.

In other queries, however, the order can be very important. You may want to see the cities in which clients are located and would like them arranged alphabetically. Perhaps you want to see the clients listed by business analyst number. Further, within all the clients of any given business analyst, you might want them to be listed by amount paid from largest amount to smallest.

To order the records in a query result in a particular way, you **sort** the records. The field or fields on which the records are sorted is called the **sort key**. If you are sorting on more than one field (such as sorting by amount paid within business analyst number), the more important field (Business Analyst Number) is called the **major key** (also called the **primary sort key**) and the less important field (Amount Paid) is called the **minor key** (also called the **secondary sort key**).

To sort in Microsoft Access, specify the sort order in the Sort row of the design grid below the field that is the sort key. If you specify more than one sort key, the sort key on the left will be the major sort key, and the one on the right will be the minor key.

The following are guidelines related to sorting in queries.

BTW

Sorting Data in a Query
When sorting data in a query, the records in the underlying tables (the tables on which the query is based) are not actually rearranged. Instead, the DBMS determines the most efficient method of simply displaying the records in the requested order. The records in the underlying tables remain in their original order.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Determine whether special order is required.
Examine the query or request to see if it contains words, such as order or sort, that would imply that the order of the query results is important. If so, you need to sort the query.

- **Determine the sort key(s).** If sorting is required, identify the field or fields on which the results are to be sorted. In the request, look for language such as ordered by or sort the results by, both of which would indicate that the specified field is a sort key.
- **If using two sort keys, determine major and minor key.** If you are using two sort keys, determine which one is the more important, or the major key. Look for language such as sort by amount paid within business analyst number, which implies that the overall order is by business analyst number. Thus, the Business Analyst Number field would be the major sort key and the Amount Paid field would be the minor sort key.
- **Determine sort order.** Words such as increasing, ascending, or low-to-high imply Ascending order. Words such as decreasing, descending, or high-to-low imply Descending order. Sorting in alphabetical order implies Ascending order. If there are no words to imply a particular order, you would typically use Ascending.
- **Determine restrictions.** Examine the query or request to see if there are any special restrictions. One common restriction is to exclude duplicates. Another common restriction is to list only a certain number of records, for example, to list only the first five records.

Plan Ahead

To Clear the Design Grid

If the fields you want to include in the next query are different from those in the previous query, it is usually simpler to start with a clear grid, one with no fields already in the design grid. You always can clear the entries in the design grid by closing the query and then starting over. A simpler approach to clearing the entries is to select all the entries and then press the DELETE key. The following steps return to Design view and clear the design grid.

1

- Return to Design view.
- Click just above the Client Number column heading in the grid to select the column.

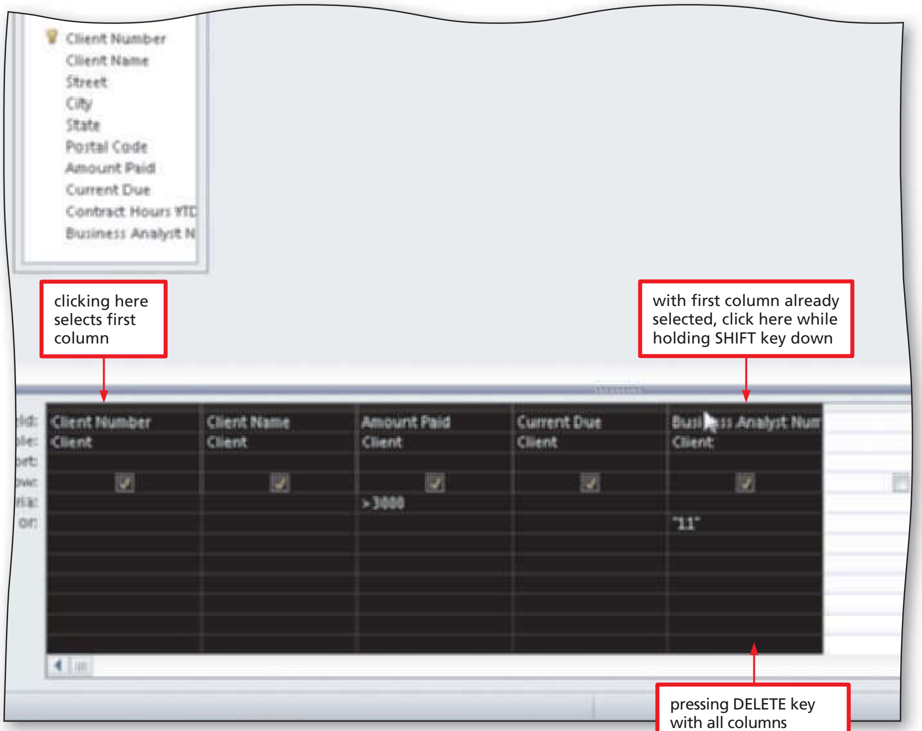
Q&A I clicked above the column heading, but the column is not selected. What should I do?

You didn't point to the correct location. Be sure the mouse pointer changes into a down-pointing arrow and then click again.

- Hold the SHIFT key down and click just above the Business Analyst Number column heading to select all the columns (Figure 2–30).

2

- Press the DELETE key to clear the design grid.



clicking here selects first column

with first column already selected, click here while holding SHIFT key down

pressing DELETE key with all columns selected clears the grid

Figure 2–30

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Sort Data in a Query

After determining in the design process that a query is to be sorted, you will need to specify the sort key to Access. The following steps sort the cities in the Client table by indicating that the City field is to be sorted. The steps specify Ascending sort order.

1

- Include the City field in the design grid.
- Click the Sort row below the City field, and then click the Sort row arrow to display a menu of possible sort orders (Figure 2–31).

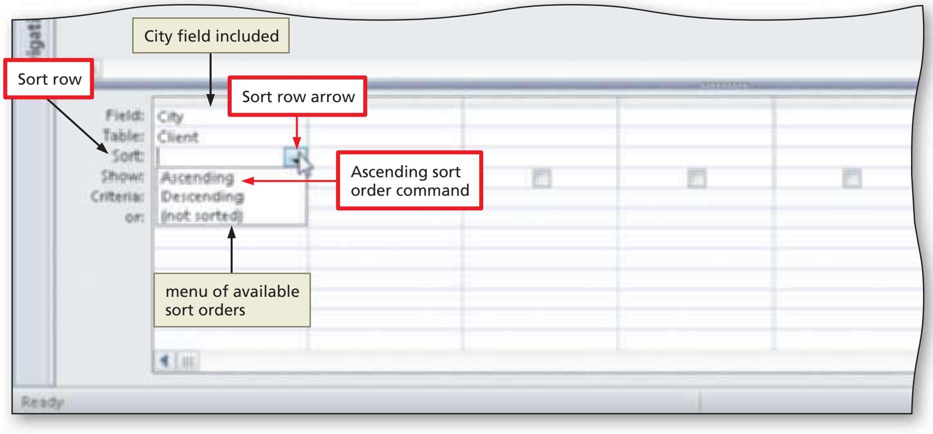

City field included
Sort row
Sort row arrow
Ascending sort order command
menu of available sort orders
Field: City
Table: Client
Sort:
Show:
Criteria:
or:
Ascending
Descending
(not sorted)
Ready

Figure 2–31

2

- Click Ascending to select the sort order (Figure 2–32).

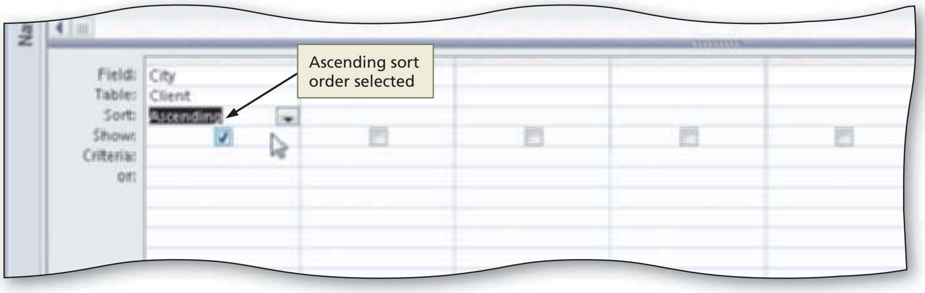

Ascending sort order selected
Field: City
Table: Client
Sort: Ascending
Show:
Criteria:
or:

Figure 2–32

3

- View the query results (Figure 2–33).

Experiment

- Return to Design view and change the sort order to Descending. View the results. Return to Design view and change the sort order back to Ascending. View the results.

Q&A

Why do some cities appear more than once?

More than one client is located in those cities.

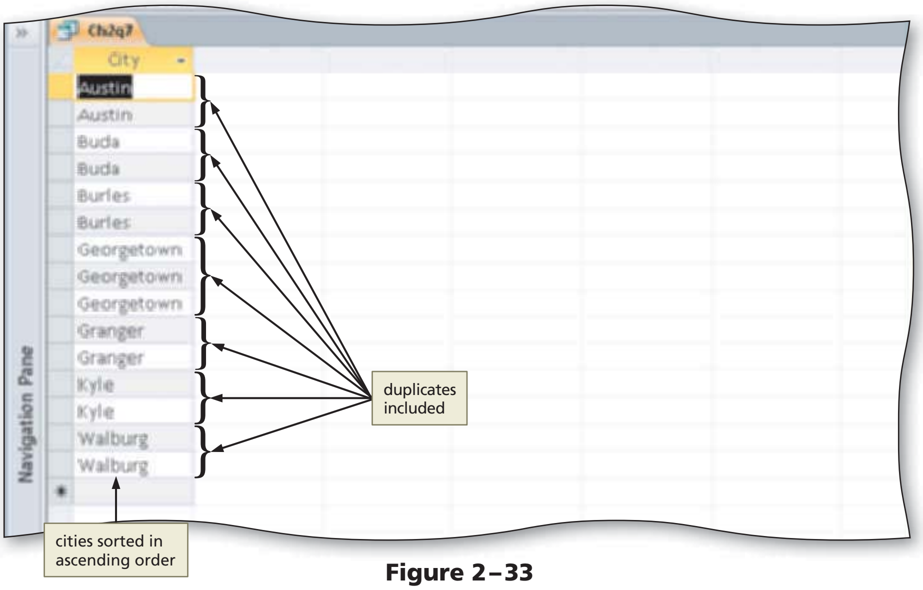

Ch2q7
City
Austin
Austin
Buda
Buda
Burles
Burles
Georgetown
Georgetown
Georgetown
Granger
Granger
Kyle
Kyle
Walburg
Walburg
Navigation Pane
duplicates included
cities sorted in ascending order

Figure 2–33

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Omit Duplicates

When you sort data, duplicates normally are included. In Figure 2–33, for example, Austin appeared twice, as did Buda, Burles, Granger, Kyle, and Walburg. Georgetown appeared three times. These duplicates do not add any value, so you should eliminate them from the results. To eliminate duplicates, display the query's property sheet. A **property sheet** is a window containing the various properties of the object. To omit duplicates, you will use the property sheet to change the Unique Values property from No to Yes.

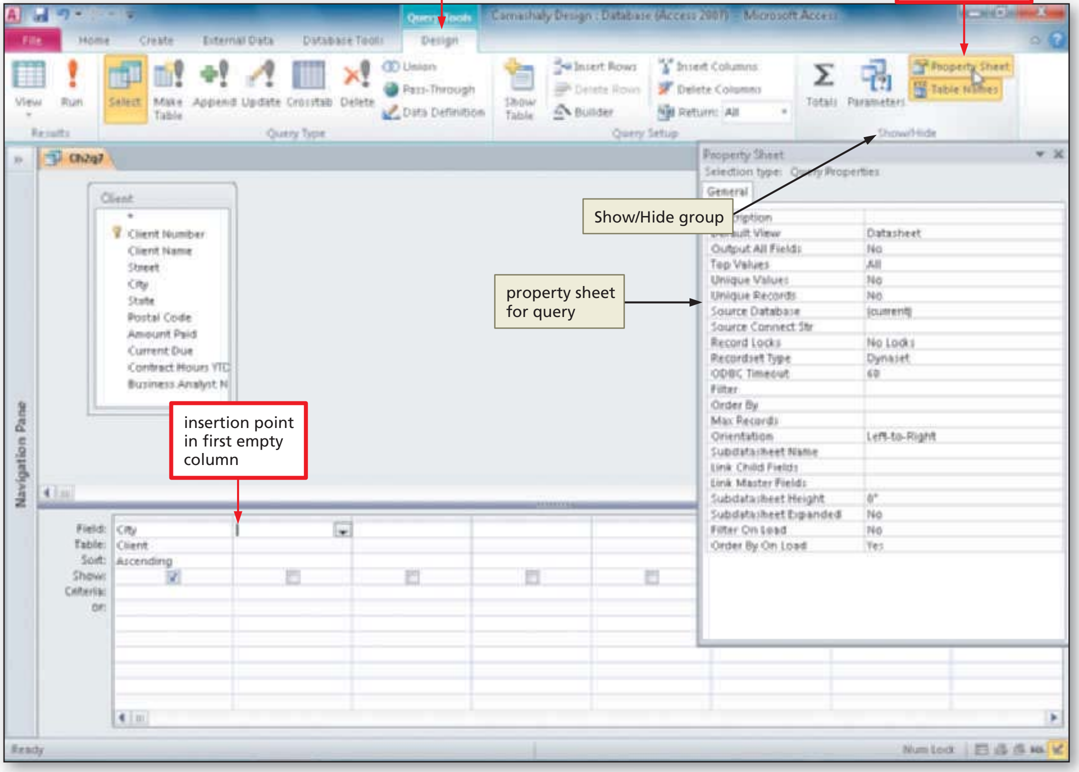
The following steps create a query that Camashaly Design might use to obtain a sorted list of the cities in the Client table in which each city is listed only once. The steps also save the query with a new name.

1

- Return to Design view.
- Click the second field (the empty field to the right of City) in the design grid.
- If necessary, click Design on the Ribbon to display the Design tab.
- Click the Property Sheet button (Query Tools Design tab | Show/Hide group) to display the property sheet (Figure 2–34).

Q&A My property sheet looks different. What should I do?

If your sheet looks different, you clicked the wrong place and will have to close the property sheet and repeat this step.


Query Tools Design tab
Property Sheet button
Show/Hide group
property sheet for query
insertion point in first empty column
Client
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Amount Paid
Current Due
Contract Hours YTD
Business Analyst N
Ch2q7
Navigation Pane
Ready
Num Lock

Field: City
Table: Client
Sort: Ascending

Property Sheet
Selection type: Query Properties
General

Description	
Default View	Datasheet
Output All Fields	No
Top Values	All
Unique Values	No
Unique Records	No
Source Database	(current)
Source Connect Str	
Record Locks	No Locks
Recordset Type	Dynaset
ODBC Timeout	60
Filter	
Order By	
Max Records	
Orientation	Left-to-Right
Subdatasheet Name	
Link Child Fields	
Link Master Fields	
Subdatasheet Height	0"
Subdatasheet Expanded	No
Filter On Load	No
Order By On Load	Yes

Figure 2–34

2

- Click the Unique Values property box, and then click the arrow that appears to produce a list of available choices (Figure 2–35).

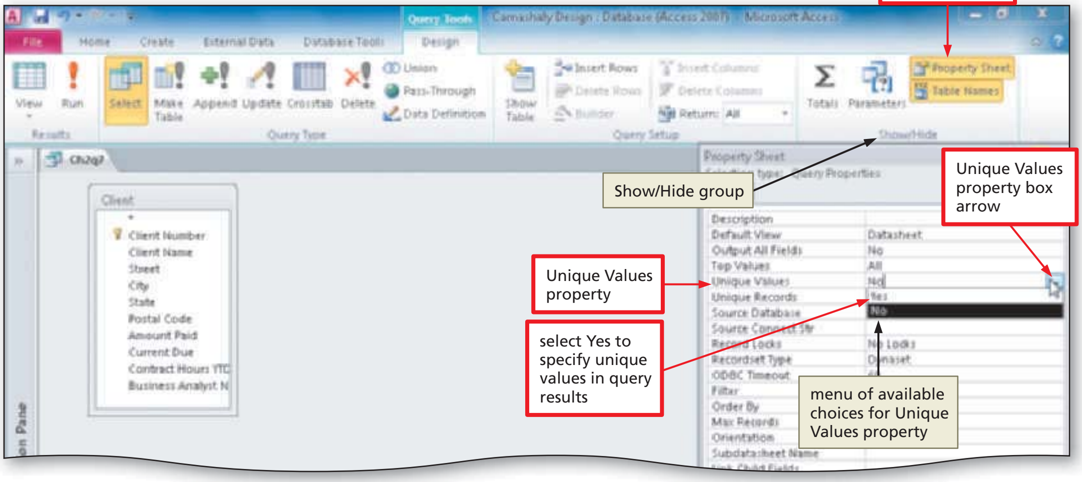

Property Sheet button
Show/Hide group
Unique Values property box arrow
Unique Values property
select Yes to specify unique values in query results
menu of available choices for Unique Values property
Yes
No

Figure 2–35

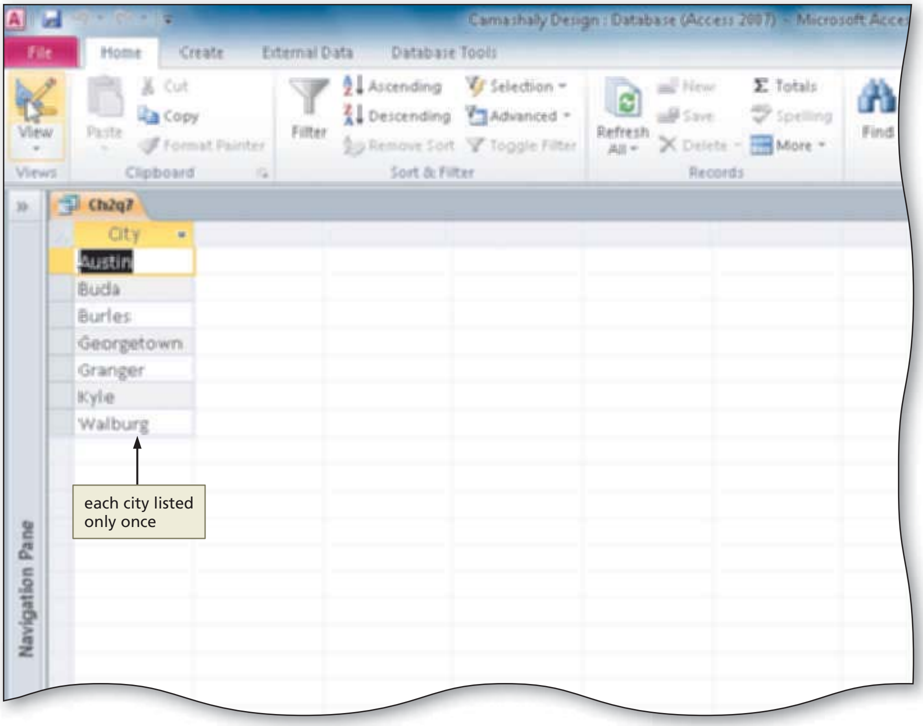
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3

- Click Yes and then close the Query Properties property sheet by clicking the Property Sheet button (Query Tools Design tab | Show / Hide group) a second time.
- View the query results (Figure 2–36).

4

- Save the query as Ch2q8.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Navigation Pane
Ch2q7

City
Austin
Buda
Burles
Georgetown
Granger
Kyle
Walburg

each city listed only once

Figure 2–36

Other Ways

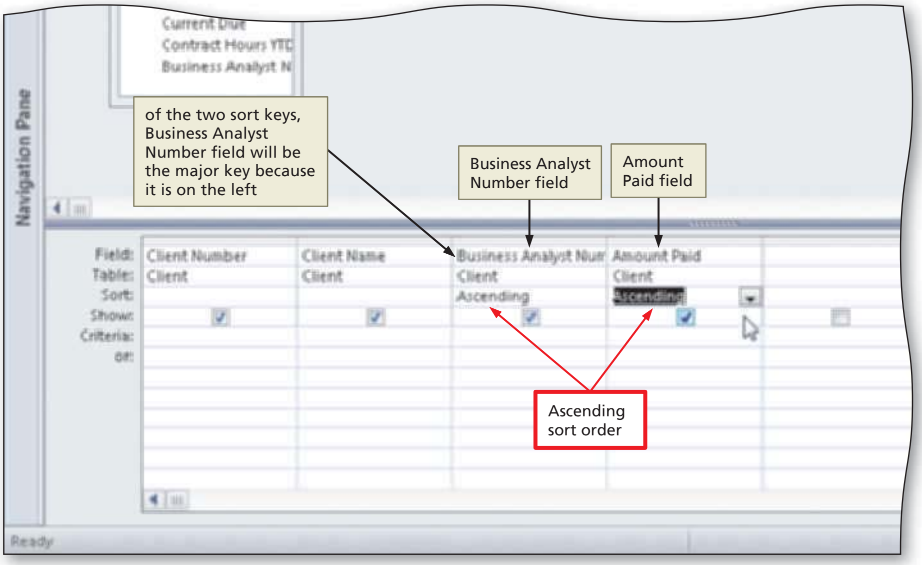
1. Right-click second field in design grid, click Properties on shortcut menu

To Sort on Multiple Keys

The following steps sort on multiple keys. Specifically, Camashaly needs the data to be sorted by amount paid (low to high) within business analyst number, which means that the Business Analyst Number field is the major key and the Amount Paid field is the minor key. The steps also save the query with a new name.

1

- Return to Design view. Clear the design grid by clicking the first column in the grid, and then pressing the DELETE key to clear the design grid.
- In the following order, include the Client Number, Client Name, Business Analyst Number, and Amount Paid fields in the query.
- Select Ascending as the sort order for both the Business Analyst Number field and the Amount Paid field (Figure 2–37).


Current Due
Contract Hours YTD
Business Analyst N
Navigation Pane
Ready

Field:	Client Number	Client Name	Business Analyst Nur	Amount Paid
Table:	Client	Client	Client	Client
Sort:			Ascending	Ascending
Show:	☑	☑	☑	☑
Criteria:				
or:				

of the two sort keys, Business Analyst Number field will be the major key because it is on the left

Business Analyst Number field

Amount Paid field

Ascending sort order

Figure 2–37

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2

- View the query results (Figure 2–38).

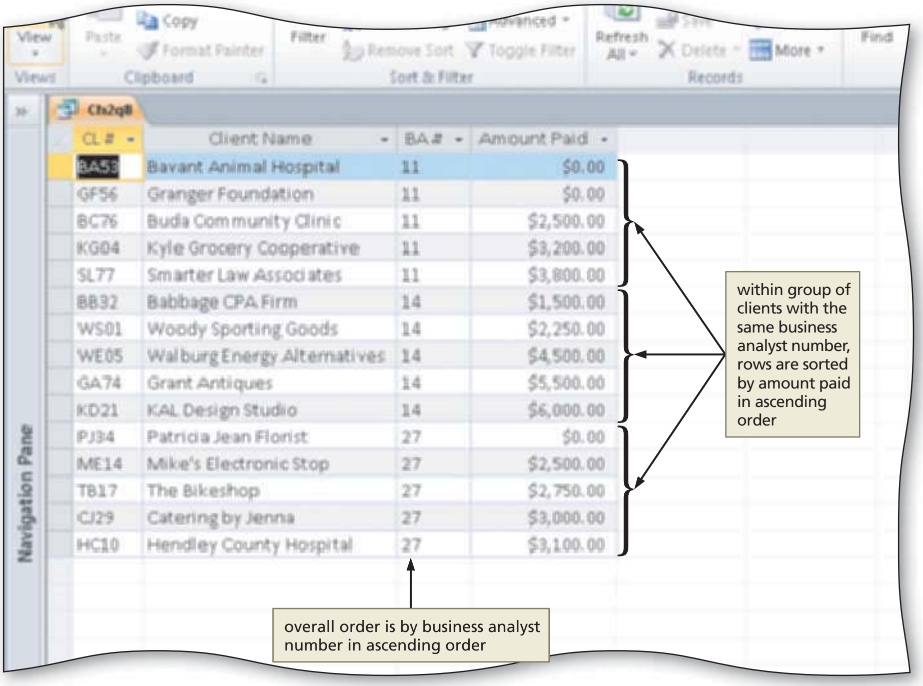
Experiment

- Return to Design view and try other sort combinations for the Business Analyst Number and Amount Paid fields, such as Ascending for Business Analyst Number and Descending for Amount Paid. In each case, view the results to see the effect of the changes. When finished, select Ascending as the sort order for both fields.

Q&A

What if the Amount Paid field is to the left of the Business Analyst Number field?

It is important to remember that the major sort key must appear to the left of the minor sort key in the design grid. If you attempted to sort by amount paid within business analyst number, but placed the Amount Paid field to the left of the Business Analyst Number field, your results would be incorrect.



View
Views
Paste
Copy
Format Painter
Clipboard
Filter
Remove Sort
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Sort & Filter
Refresh All
Save
Delete
More
Records
Find
Navigation Pane
Ch2q8

CL #	Client Name	BA #	Amount Paid
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	11	$0.00
GF56	Granger Foundation	11	$0.00
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	11	$2,500.00
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	11	$3,200.00
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	11	$3,800.00
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	14	$1,500.00
WS01	Woody Sporting Goods	14	$2,250.00
WE05	Walburg Energy Alternatives	14	$4,500.00
GA74	Grant Antiques	14	$5,500.00
KD21	KAL Design Studio	14	$6,000.00
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	27	$0.00
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	27	$2,500.00
TB17	The Bikeshop	27	$2,750.00
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	27	$3,000.00
HC10	Hendley County Hospital	27	$3,100.00

within group of clients with the same business analyst number, rows are sorted by amount paid in ascending order

overall order is by business analyst number in ascending order

Figure 2–38

3

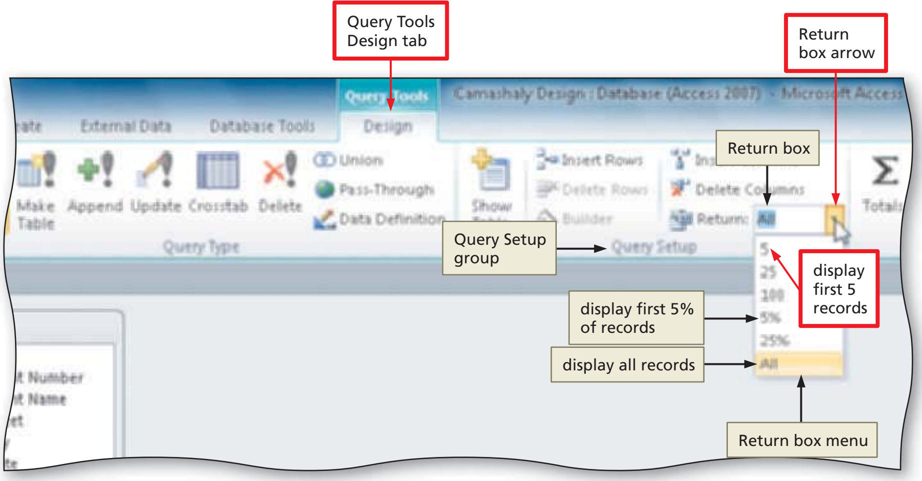
- Save the query as Ch2q9.

To Create a Top-Values Query

Rather than show all the results of a query, you may want to show only a specified number of records or a percentage of records. Creating a **top-values query** allows you to quantify the results. When you sort records, you can limit results to those records having the highest (descending sort) or lowest (ascending sort) values. To do so, first create a query that sorts the data in the desired order. Next, use the Return box on the Design tab to change the number of records to be included from All to the desired number or percentage. The following steps create a query for Camashaly Design that shows only the first five records that were included in the results of the previous query. The steps also save the resulting query with a new name.

1

- Return to Design view.
- If necessary, click Design on the Ribbon to display the Design tab.
- Click the Return box arrow (Query Tools Design tab | Query Setup group) to display the Return box menu (Figure 2–39).



Query Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Make Table
Append
Update
Crosstab
Delete
Union
Pass-Through
Data Definition
Query Type
Show Table
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Builder
Insert Columns
Delete Columns
Return: All
Query Setup
Totals
5
25
100
5%
25%
All
Number
Name

Query Tools Design tab

Return box arrow

Return box

Query Setup group

display first 5 records

display first 5% of records

display all records

Return box menu

Figure 2–39

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

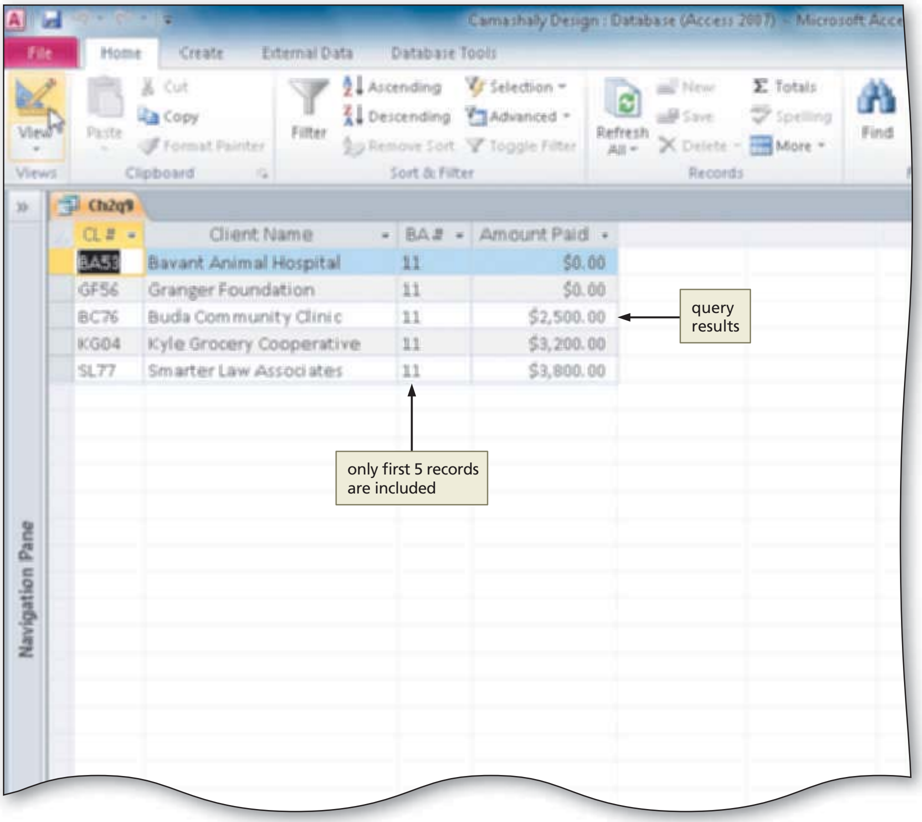
2

- Click 5 in the Return box menu to specify that the query results should contain the first five rows.

Q&A Could I have typed the 5? What about other numbers that do not appear in the list?

Yes, you could have typed the 5. For numbers not appearing in the list, you must type the number.

- View the query results (Figure 2–40).


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Acce
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Views
Clipboard
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Sort & Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Records
Find
Ch2q9
Navigation Pane

CL #	Client Name	BA #	Amount Paid
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	11	$0.00
GF56	Granger Foundation	11	$0.00
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	11	$2,500.00
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	11	$3,200.00
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	11	$3,800.00

query results

only first 5 records are included

Figure 2–40

3

- Save the query as Ch2q10.
- Close the query.

Q&A Do I need to close the query before creating my next query?

Not necessarily. When you use a top-values query, however, it is important to change the value in the Return box back to All. If you do not change the Return value back to All, the previous value will remain in effect. Consequently, you might not get all the records you should in the next query. A good practice whenever you use a top-values query is to close the query as soon as you are done. That way, you will begin your next query from scratch, which guarantees that the value is reset to All.

Break Point: If you wish to take a break, this is a good place to do so. You can quit Access now. To resume at a later time, start Access, open the database called Camashaly Design, and continue following the steps from this location forward.

BTW

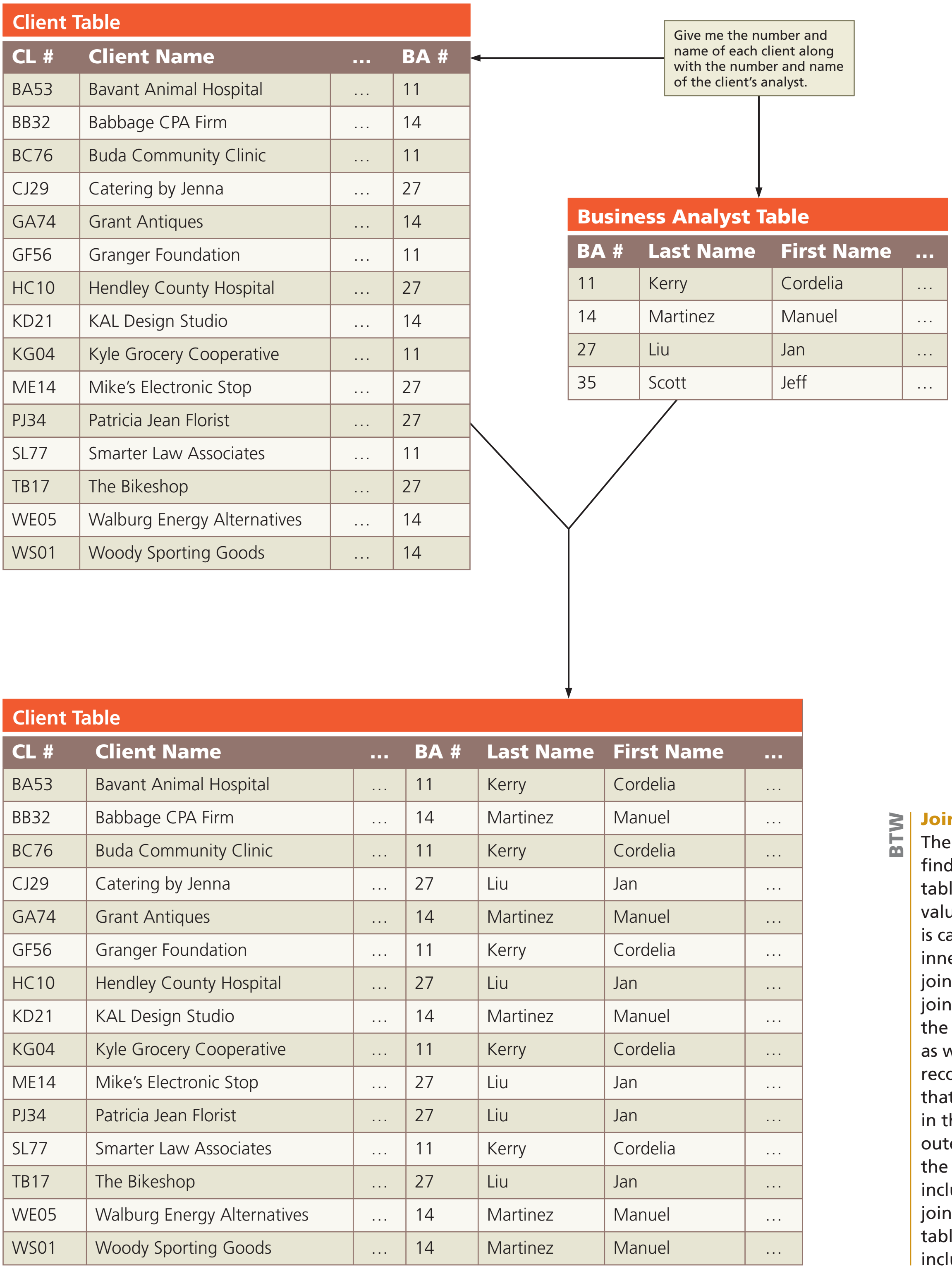
Join Line
If you do not get a join line automatically, there may be a problem with one of your table designs. Open each table in Design view and make sure that the data types are the same for the matching field in both tables and that one of the matching fields is the primary key in a table. Correct these errors and create the query again.

Joining Tables

In designing a query, you need to determine whether more than one table is required. If the question being asked involves data from both the Client and Business Analyst tables, for example, both tables are required for the query. For example, a query may require listing the number and name of each client along with the number and name of the client's business analyst. The client's name is in the Client table, whereas the business analyst's name is in the Business Analyst Table. Thus, this query cannot be completed using a single table; both the Client and Business Analyst tables are required. You need to **join** the tables; that is, to find records in the two tables that have identical

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

values in matching fields (Figure 2–41). In this example, you need to find records in the Client table and the Business Analyst table that have the same value in the Business Analyst Number fields.



Client Table

CL #	Client Name	…	BA #
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	…	11
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	…	14
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	…	11
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	…	27
GA74	Grant Antiques	…	14
GF56	Granger Foundation	…	11
HC10	Hendley County Hospital	…	27
KD21	KAL Design Studio	…	14
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	…	11
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	…	27
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	…	27
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	…	11
TB17	The Bikeshop	…	27
WE05	Walburg Energy Alternatives	…	14
WS01	Woody Sporting Goods	…	14

Give me the number and name of each client along with the number and name of the client's analyst.

Business Analyst Table

BA #	Last Name	First Name	…
11	Kerry	Cordelia	…
14	Martinez	Manuel	…
27	Liu	Jan	…
35	Scott	Jeff	…

Client Table

CL #	Client Name	…	BA #	Last Name	First Name	…
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	…	11	Kerry	Cordelia	…
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	…	14	Martinez	Manuel	…
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	…	11	Kerry	Cordelia	…
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	…	27	Liu	Jan	…
GA74	Grant Antiques	…	14	Martinez	Manuel	…
GF56	Granger Foundation	…	11	Kerry	Cordelia	…
HC10	Hendley County Hospital	…	27	Liu	Jan	…
KD21	KAL Design Studio	…	14	Martinez	Manuel	…
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	…	11	Kerry	Cordelia	…
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	…	27	Liu	Jan	…
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	…	27	Liu	Jan	…
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	…	11	Kerry	Cordelia	…
TB17	The Bikeshop	…	27	Liu	Jan	…
WE05	Walburg Energy Alternatives	…	14	Martinez	Manuel	…
WS01	Woody Sporting Goods	…	14	Martinez	Manuel	…

Figure 2–41

BTW

Join Types
The type of join that finds records from both tables that have identical values in matching fields is called an inner join. An inner join is the default join in Access. Outer joins are used to show all the records in one table as well as the common records; that is, the records that share the same value in the join field. In a left outer join, all rows from the table on the left are included. In a right outer join, all rows from the table on the right are included.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

The following are guidelines related to joining tables.

Plan Ahead

Determine whether more than one table is required.
Examine the query or request to see if all the fields involved in the request are in one table. If the fields are in two (or more) tables, you need to join the tables.

- **Determine the matching fields.** If joining is required, identify the matching fields in the two tables that have identical values. Look for the same column name in the two tables or for column names that are similar.
- **Determine whether sorting is required.** Queries that join tables often are used as the basis for a report. If this is the case, it may be necessary to sort the results. For example, the Analyst-Client Report is based on a query that joins the Business Analyst and Client tables. The query is sorted by business analyst number and client number.
- **Determine restrictions.** Examine the query or request to see if there are any special restrictions. For example, the user may only want clients whose current due amount is $0.00.
- **Determine join properties.** Examine the query or request to see if you only want records from both tables that have identical values in matching fields. If you want to see records in one of the tables that do not have identical values, then you need to change the join properties.

To Join Tables

If you have determined in the design process that you need to join tables, you will first bring field lists for both tables to the upper pane of the Query window while working in Design view. Access will draw a line, called a **join line**, between matching fields in the two tables, indicating that the tables are related. You then can select fields from either table. Access joins the tables automatically.

The first step is to create a new query and add the Business Analyst Table to the query. Then, add the Client table to the query. A join line will appear, connecting the Business Analyst Number fields in the two field lists. This join line indicates how the tables are related, that is, linked through these matching fields. If the names of the matching fields differ from one table to the other, Access will not insert the line. You can insert it manually, however, by clicking one of the two matching fields and dragging the mouse pointer to the other matching field.

The following steps create a query that Camashaly Design might use to display information from both the Client table and the Business Analyst Table.

1

- Click Create on the Ribbon to display the Create tab.
- Click the Query Design button (Create tab | Queries group) to create a new query.
- If necessary, click the Business Analyst Table (Show Table dialog box) to select the table.
- Click the Add button (Show Table dialog box) to add a field list for the Business Analyst Table to the query (Figure 2–42).

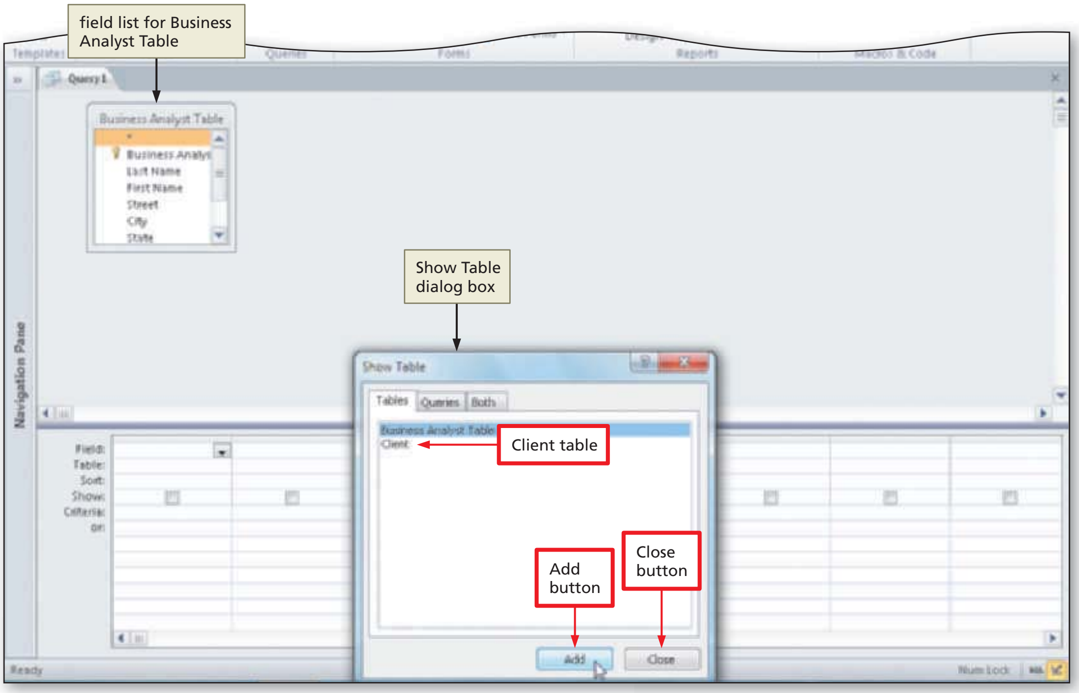


Figure 2–42

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2

- Click the Client table (Show Table dialog box).
- Click the Add button (Show Table dialog box) to add a field list for the Client table.
- Close the Show Table dialog box by clicking the Close button.
- Expand the size of the two field lists so all the fields in the Business Analyst and Client tables appear (Figure 2–43).

Q&A I didn't get a join line. What should I do?

Ensure that the names of the matching fields are exactly the same, the data types are the same, and the matching field is the primary key in one of the two tables. If all of these are true and you still don't have a join line, you can produce one by pointing to one of the matching fields, pressing the left mouse button, dragging to the other matching field, and releasing the left mouse button.

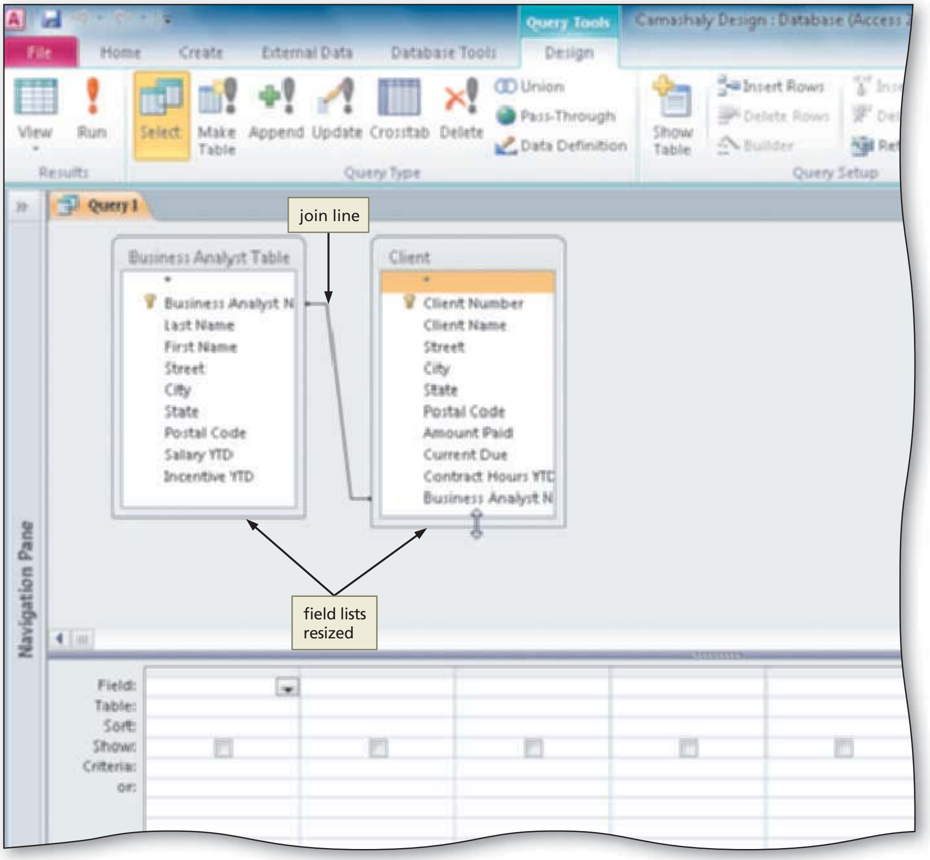
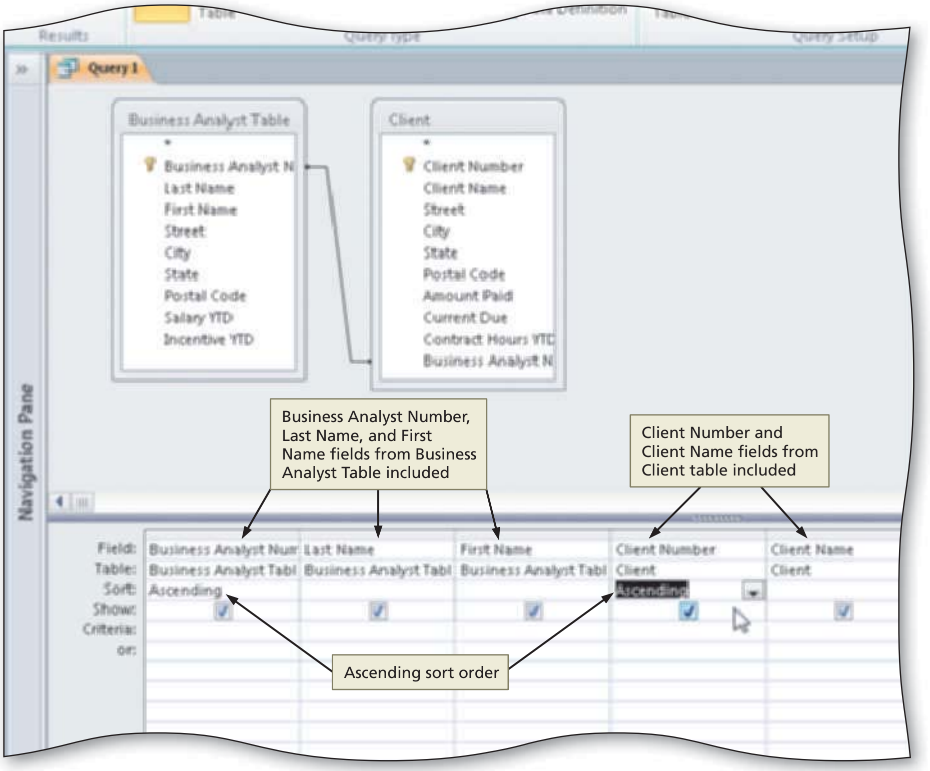

join line
field lists resized

Figure 2–43

3

- In the design grid, include the Business Analyst Number, Last Name, and First Name fields from the Business Analyst Table as well as the Client Number and Client Name fields from the Client table.
- Select Ascending as the sort order for both the Business Analyst Number field and the Client Number field (Figure 2–44).


Business Analyst Number, Last Name, and First Name fields from Business Analyst Table included
Client Number and Client Name fields from Client table included
Ascending sort order

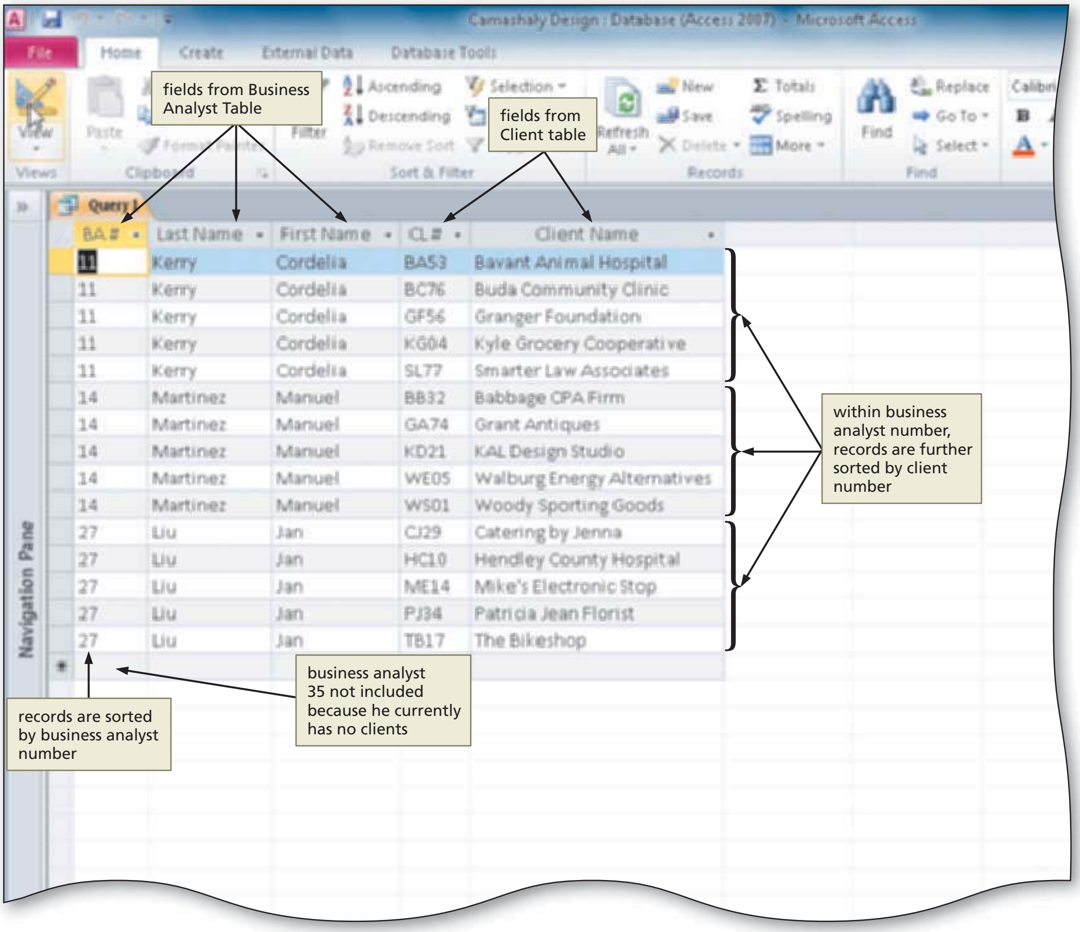
Field:	Business Analyst Num	Last Name	First Name	Client Number	Client Name
Table:	Business Analyst Tabl	Business Analyst Tabl	Business Analyst Tabl	Client	Client
Sort:	Ascending			Ascending	
Show:	☑	☑	☑	☑	☑
Criteria:					
or:					

Figure 2–44

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

4

- View the query results (Figure 2–45).


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Find
Query1
Navigation Pane

BA #	Last Name	First Name	CL #	Client Name
11	Kerry	Cordelia	BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital
11	Kerry	Cordelia	BC76	Buda Community Clinic
11	Kerry	Cordelia	GF56	Granger Foundation
11	Kerry	Cordelia	KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative
11	Kerry	Cordelia	SL77	Smarter Law Associates
14	Martinez	Manuel	BB32	Babbage CPA Firm
14	Martinez	Manuel	GA74	Grant Antiques
14	Martinez	Manuel	KD21	KAL Design Studio
14	Martinez	Manuel	WE05	Walburg Energy Alternatives
14	Martinez	Manuel	WS01	Woody Sporting Goods
27	Liu	Jan	CJ29	Catering by Jenna
27	Liu	Jan	HC10	Hendley County Hospital
27	Liu	Jan	ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop
27	Liu	Jan	PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist
27	Liu	Jan	TB17	The Bikeshop

fields from Business Analyst Table

fields from Client table

within business analyst number, records are further sorted by client number

business analyst 35 not included because he currently has no clients

records are sorted by business analyst number

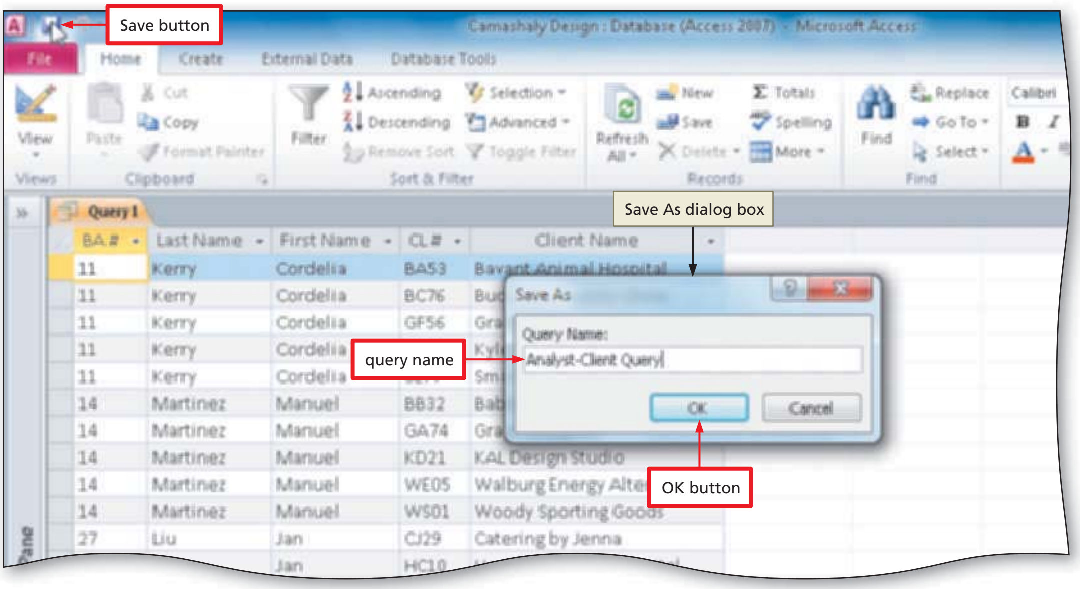
Figure 2–45

5

- Click the Save button on the Quick Access Toolbar to display the Save As dialog box.
- Type `Analyst-Client Query` as the query name (Figure 2–46).

6

- Click the OK button (Save As dialog box) to save the query.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Query1
Save As
OK
Cancel

Query Name: Analyst-Client Query

Save button

Save As dialog box

query name

OK button

Figure 2–46

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Change Join Properties

Normally, records that do not match do not appear in the results of a join query. For example, a business analyst such as Jeff Scott, for whom no clients currently exist, would not appear in the results. To cause such a record to be displayed, you need to change the **join properties**, which are the properties that indicate which records appear in a join. The following steps change the join properties of the Analyst-Client Query so that Camashaly can include all business analysts in the results, rather than only those analysts who have already been assigned clients.

1

- Return to Design view.
- Right-click the join line to produce a shortcut menu (Figure 2–47).

Q&A

I don't see Join Properties on my shortcut menu. What should I do?

If Join Properties does not appear on your shortcut menu, you did not point to the appropriate portion of the join line. You will need to point to the correct (middle) portion and right-click again.

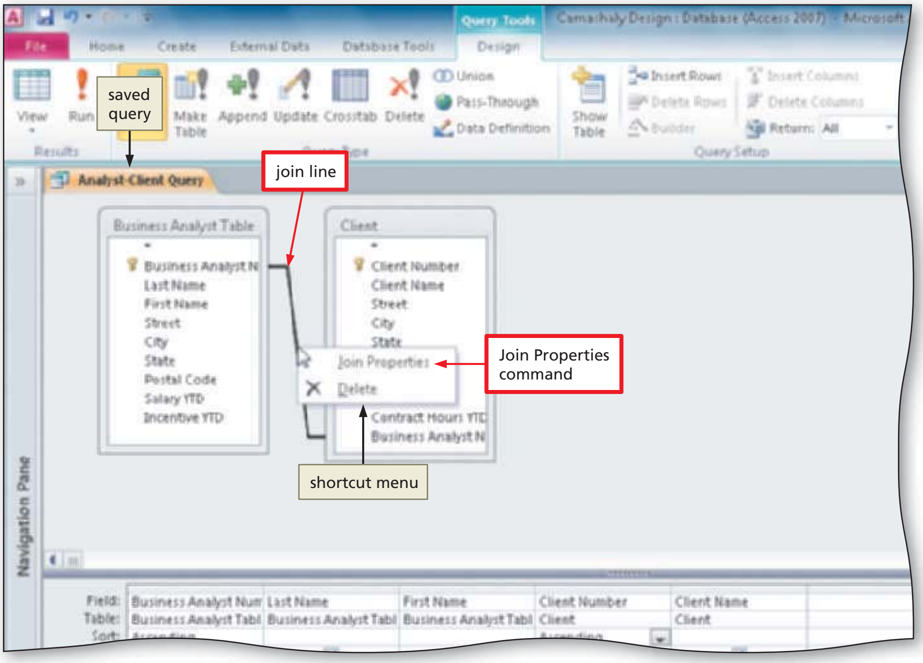
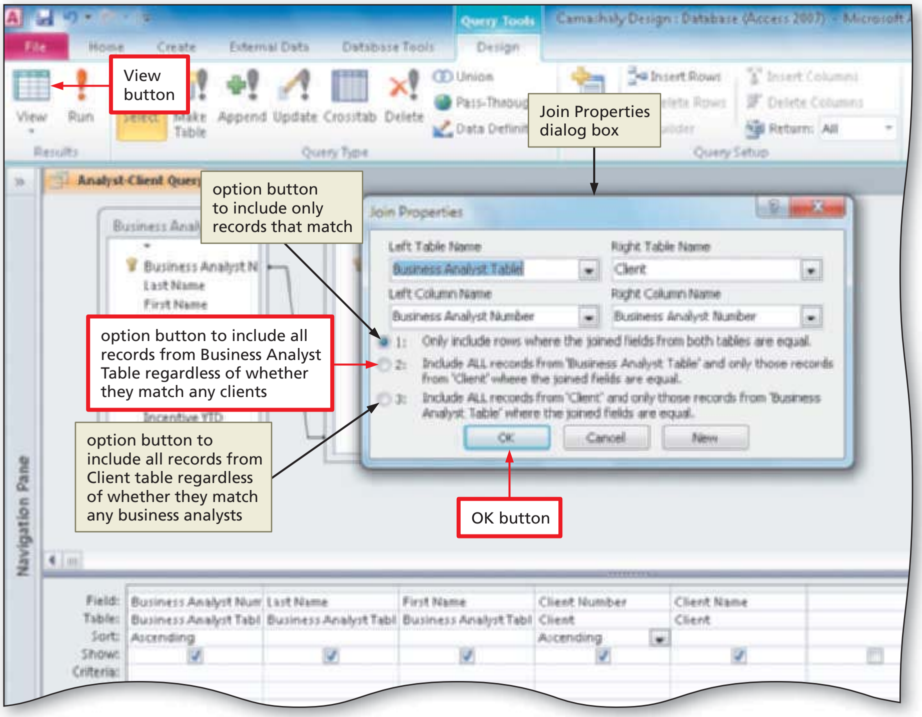

saved query
join line
Join Properties command
shortcut menu
Analyst-Client Query
Business Analyst Table
Client
Join Properties
Delete
Navigation Pane

Figure 2–47

2

- Click Join Properties on the shortcut menu to display the Join Properties dialog box (Figure 2–48).


View button
Join Properties dialog box
option button to include only records that match
option button to include all records from Business Analyst Table regardless of whether they match any clients
option button to include all records from Client table regardless of whether they match any business analysts
OK button
Navigation Pane

Join Properties

Left Table Name: Business Analyst Table
Right Table Name: Client
Left Column Name: Business Analyst Number
Right Column Name: Business Analyst Number

● 1: Only include rows where the joined fields from both tables are equal.
○ 2: Include ALL records from 'Business Analyst Table' and only those records from 'Client' where the joined fields are equal.
○ 3: Include ALL records from 'Client' and only those records from 'Business Analyst Table' where the joined fields are equal.

OK | Cancel | New

Figure 2–48

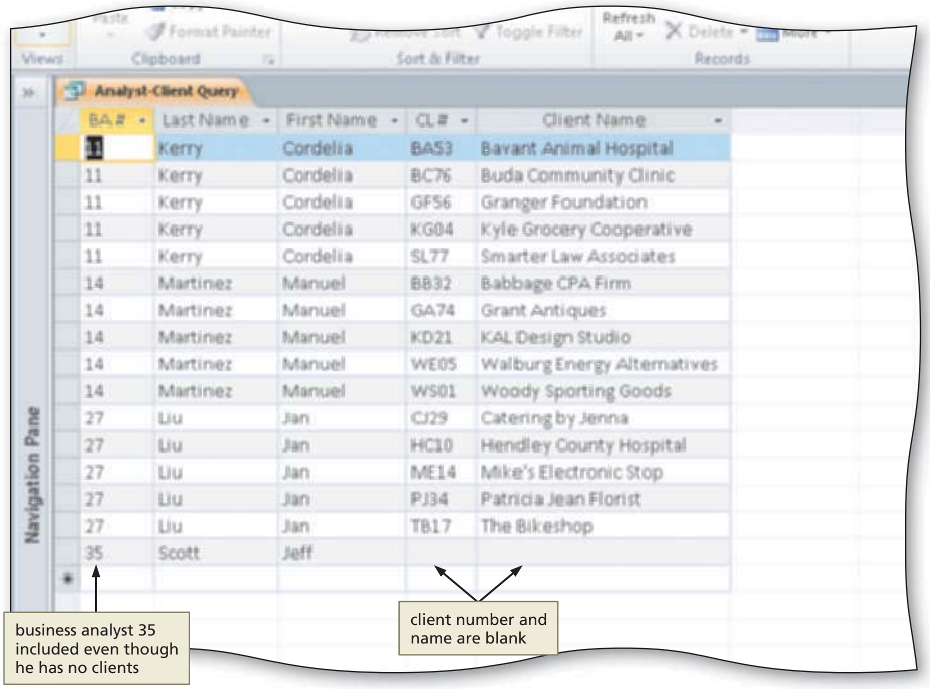
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3

- Click option button 2 (Join Properties dialog box) to include all records from the Business Analyst Table regardless of whether they match any clients.
- Click the OK button (Join Properties dialog box) to modify the join properties.
- View the query results (Figure 2–49).

Experiment

- Return to Design view, change the Join properties, and select option button 3. View the results to see the effect of this option. When done, return to Design view, change the Join properties, and once again select option button 2.



BA #	Last Name	First Name	CL #	Client Name
11	Kerry	Cordelia	BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital
11	Kerry	Cordelia	BC76	Buda Community Clinic
11	Kerry	Cordelia	GF56	Granger Foundation
11	Kerry	Cordelia	KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative
11	Kerry	Cordelia	SL77	Smarter Law Associates
14	Martinez	Manuel	BB32	Babbage CPA Firm
14	Martinez	Manuel	GA74	Grant Antiques
14	Martinez	Manuel	KD21	KAL Design Studio
14	Martinez	Manuel	WE05	Walburg Energy Alternatives
14	Martinez	Manuel	WS01	Woody Sporting Goods
27	Liu	Jan	CJ29	Catering by Jenna
27	Liu	Jan	HC10	Hendley County Hospital
27	Liu	Jan	ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop
27	Liu	Jan	PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist
27	Liu	Jan	TB17	The Bikeshop
35	Scott	Jeff		

business analyst 35 included even though he has no clients

client number and name are blank

Figure 2–49

4

- Click the Save button on the Quick Access Toolbar to save the changes to the query.
- Close the Analyst-Client Query.

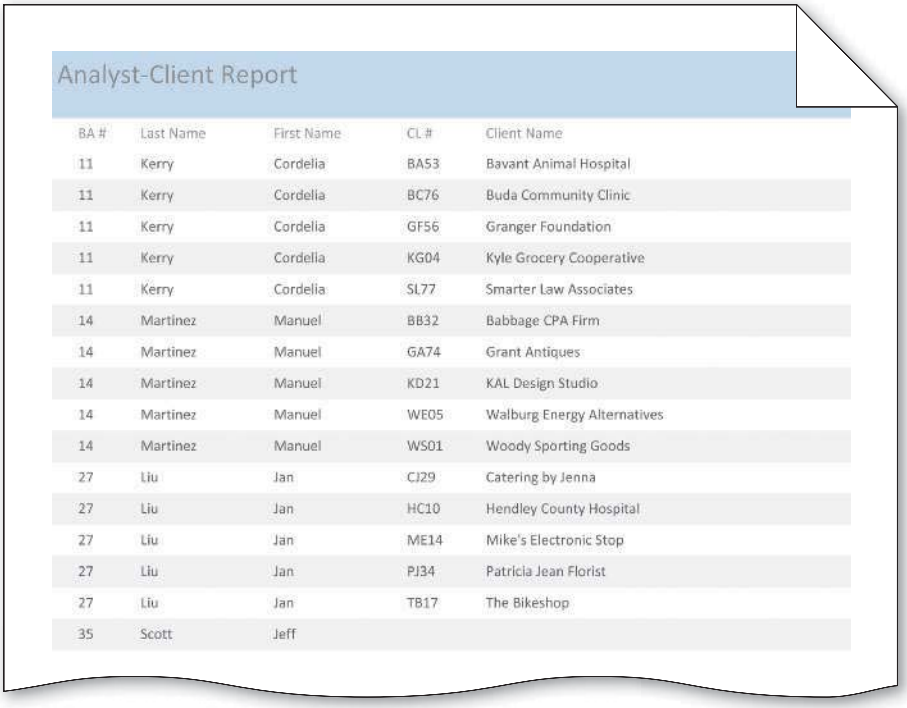
Q&A

I see a dialog box that asks if I want to save the query. What should I do?

Click the OK button to save the query.

To Create a Report Involving a Join

The following steps use the Report Wizard to create the report for Camashaly Design that is shown in Figure 2–50.



Analyst-Client Report

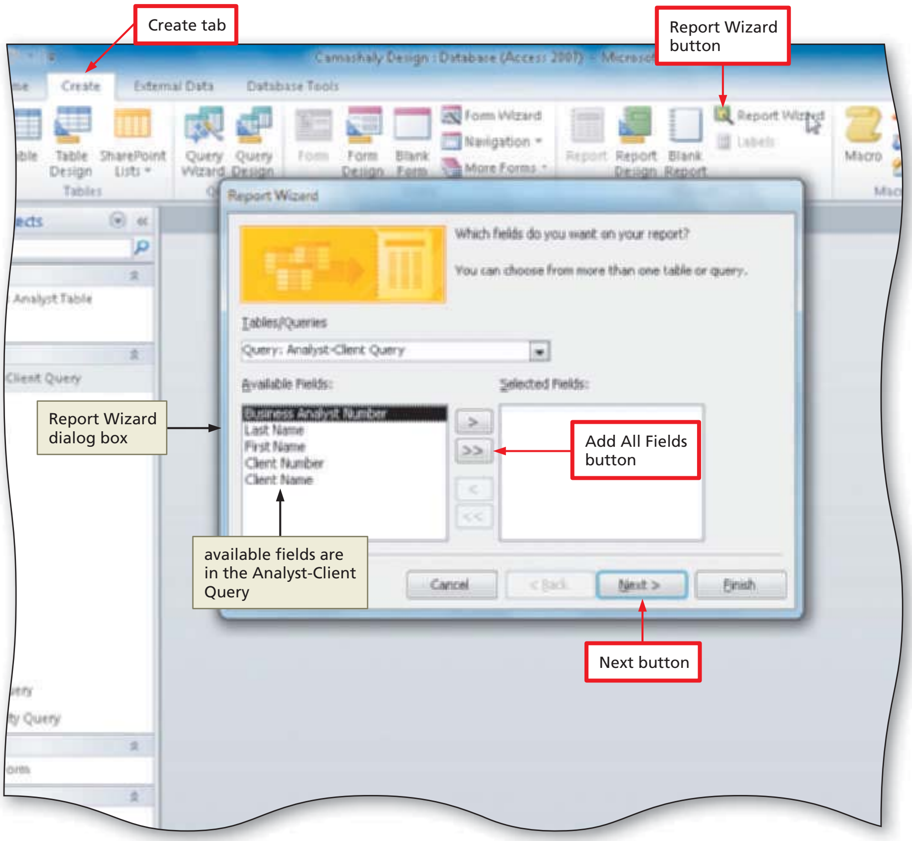
BA #	Last Name	First Name	CL #	Client Name
11	Kerry	Cordelia	BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital
11	Kerry	Cordelia	BC76	Buda Community Clinic
11	Kerry	Cordelia	GF56	Granger Foundation
11	Kerry	Cordelia	KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative
11	Kerry	Cordelia	SL77	Smarter Law Associates
14	Martinez	Manuel	BB32	Babbage CPA Firm
14	Martinez	Manuel	GA74	Grant Antiques
14	Martinez	Manuel	KD21	KAL Design Studio
14	Martinez	Manuel	WE05	Walburg Energy Alternatives
14	Martinez	Manuel	WS01	Woody Sporting Goods
27	Liu	Jan	CJ29	Catering by Jenna
27	Liu	Jan	HC10	Hendley County Hospital
27	Liu	Jan	ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop
27	Liu	Jan	PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist
27	Liu	Jan	TB17	The Bikeshop
35	Scott	Jeff		

Figure 2–50

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

1

- Open the Navigation Pane, and then select the Analyst-Client Query in the Navigation Pane.
- Click Create on the Ribbon to display the Create tab.
- Click the Report Wizard button (Create tab | Reports group) to display the Report Wizard dialog box (Figure 2–51).



Create tab

Report Wizard button

Report Wizard dialog box

Add All Fields button

available fields are in the Analyst-Client Query

Next button

Report Wizard

Which fields do you want on your report?

You can choose from more than one table or query.

Tables/Queries: Query: Analyst-Client Query

Available Fields:
Business Analyst Number
Last Name
First Name
Client Number
Client Name

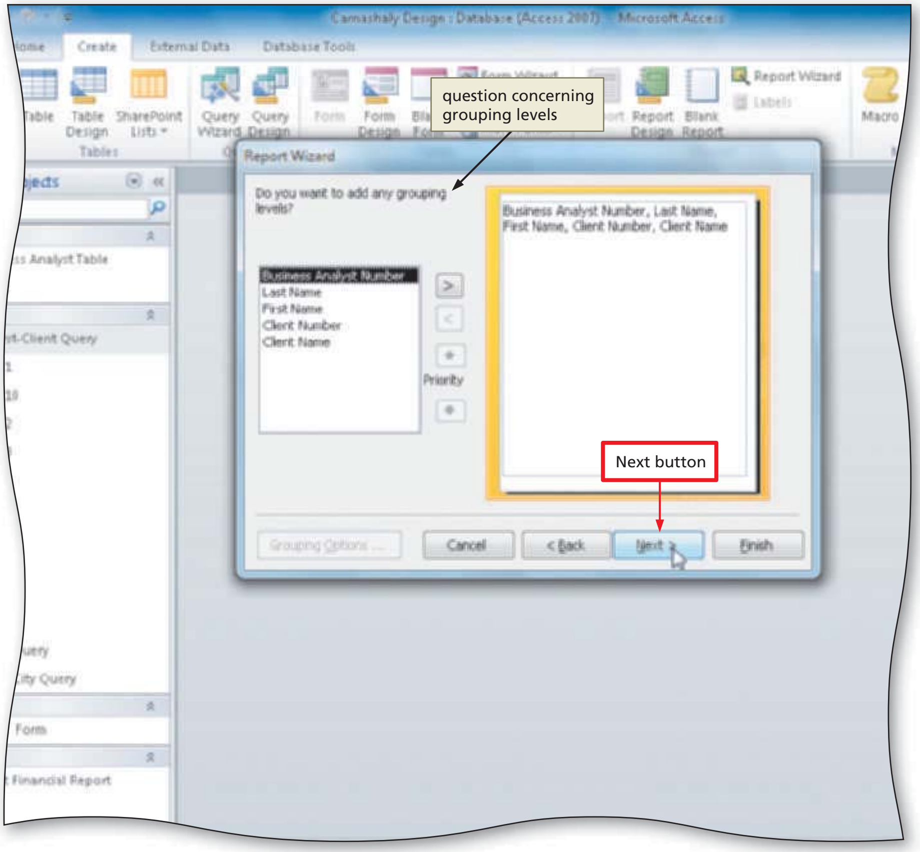
Selected Fields:

Create
External Data
Database Tools
Table Design
SharePoint Lists
Query Wizard
Query Design
Form
Form Design
Blank Form
Form Wizard
Navigation
More Forms
Report
Report Design
Blank Report
Report Wizard
Labels
Macro
>
>>
<
<<
Cancel
< Back
Next >
Finish

Figure 2–51

2

- Click the Add All Fields button (Report Wizard dialog box) to add all the fields in the Analyst-Client Query.
- Click the Next button to display the next Report Wizard screen (Figure 2–52).



question concerning grouping levels

Next button

Report Wizard

Do you want to add any grouping levels?

Business Analyst Number
Last Name
First Name
Client Number
Client Name

Business Analyst Number, Last Name, First Name, Client Number, Client Name

Create
External Data
Database Tools
Report Wizard
Labels
Macro
>
<
Priority
Grouping Options ...
Cancel
< Back
Next >
Finish

Figure 2–52

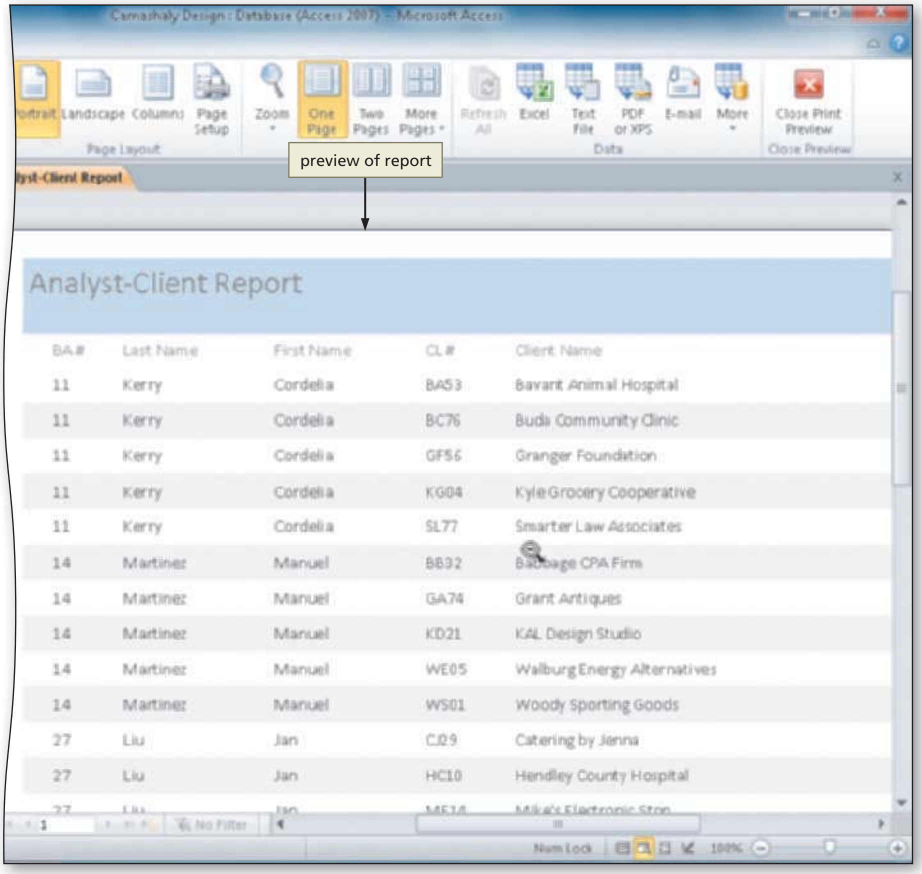
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3

- Because you will not specify any grouping, click the Next button in the Report Wizard dialog box to display the next Report Wizard screen.
- Because you already specified the sort order in the query, click the Next button again to display the next Report Wizard screen.
- Make sure that Tabular is selected as the Layout and Portrait is selected as the Orientation.
- Click the Next button to display the next Report Wizard screen.
- Erase the current title, and then type **`Analyst-Client Report`** as the new title.
- Click the Finish button to produce the report (Figure 2–53).

4

- Close the Analyst-Client Report.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
Portrait
Landscape
Columns
Page Setup
Page Layout
Zoom
One Page
Two Pages
More Pages
Refresh All
Excel
Text File
PDF or XPS
E-mail
More
Data
Close Print Preview
Close Preview
lyst-Client Report
No Filter
Num Lock
100%

preview of report

Analyst-Client Report

BA #	Last Name	First Name	CL #	Client Name
11	Kerry	Cordelia	BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital
11	Kerry	Cordelia	BC76	Buda Community Clinic
11	Kerry	Cordelia	GF56	Granger Foundation
11	Kerry	Cordelia	KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative
11	Kerry	Cordelia	SL77	Smarter Law Associates
14	Martinez	Manuel	BB32	Babbage CPA Firm
14	Martinez	Manuel	GA74	Grant Antiques
14	Martinez	Manuel	KD21	KAL Design Studio
14	Martinez	Manuel	WE05	Walburg Energy Alternatives
14	Martinez	Manuel	WS01	Woody Sporting Goods
27	Liu	Jan	CJ29	Catering by Jenna
27	Liu	Jan	HC10	Hendley County Hospital

Figure 2–53

To Print a Report

The following steps print a hard copy of the report.

1 With the Analyst-Client Report selected in the Navigation Pane, click File on the Ribbon to open the Backstage view.

2 Click the Print tab in the Backstage view to display the Print gallery.

3 Click the Quick Print button to print the report.

Creating a Form for a Query

In the previous chapter, you created a form for the Client table. You also can create a form for a query. Recall that a **form** in a database is a formatted document with fields that contain data. Forms allow you to view and maintain data.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Create a Form for a Query

The following steps create a form and then save the form.

1

- If necessary, select the Analyst-Client Query in the Navigation Pane.
- Click Create on the Ribbon to display the Create tab (Figure 2–54).

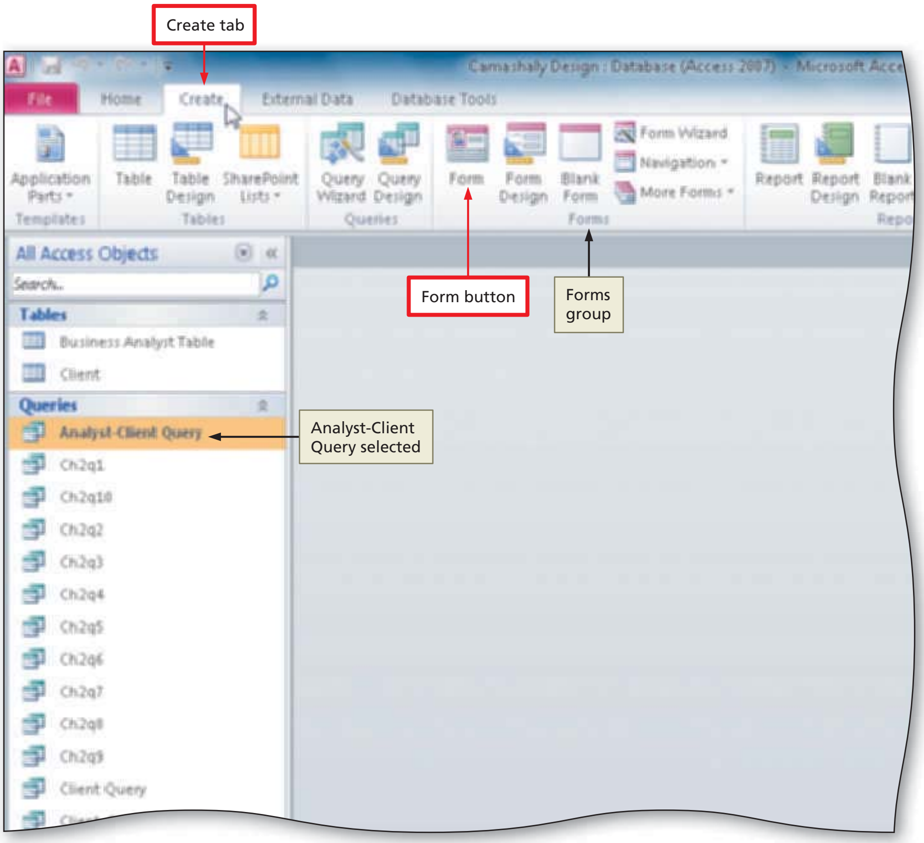
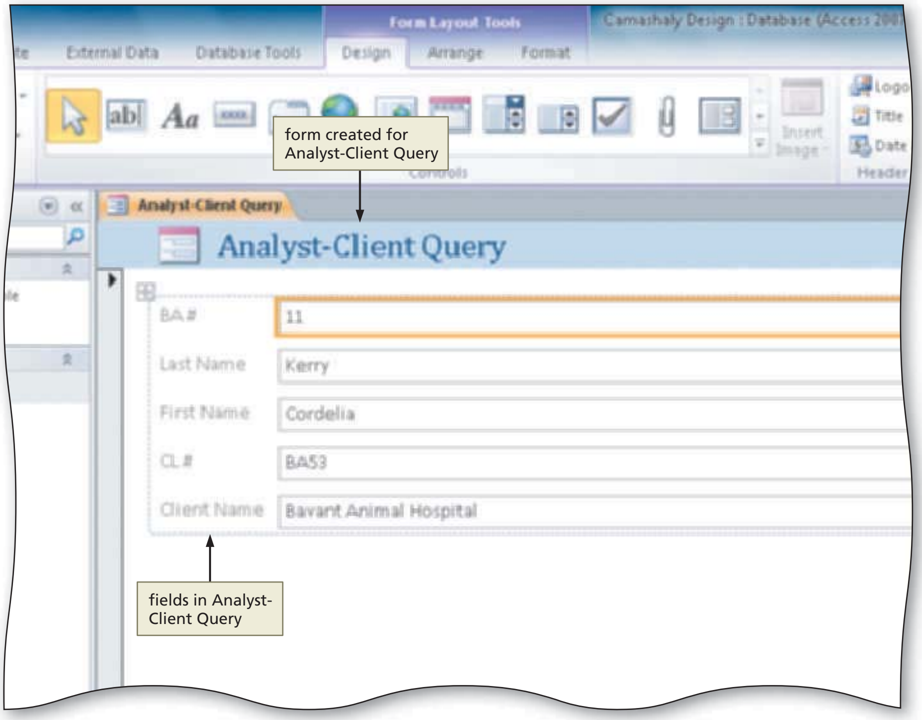

Create tab
Form button
Forms group
Analyst-Client Query selected
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Application Parts
Table
Table Design
SharePoint Lists
Query Wizard
Query Design
Form
Form Design
Blank Form
Form Wizard
Navigation
More Forms
Report
Report Design
Blank Report
Templates
Tables
Queries
Forms
All Access Objects
Search...
Tables
Business Analyst Table
Client
Queries
Analyst-Client Query
Ch2q1
Ch2q10
Ch2q2
Ch2q3
Ch2q4
Ch2q5
Ch2q6
Ch2q7
Ch2q8
Ch2q9
Client Query

Figure 2–54

2

- Click the Form button (Create tab | Forms group) to create a simple form (Figure 2–55).


form created for Analyst-Client Query
fields in Analyst-Client Query
Form Layout Tools
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Controls
Insert Image
Logo
Title
Date
Header
Analyst-Client Query

Analyst-Client Query

BA #	11
Last Name	Kerry
First Name	Cordelia
CL #	BA53
Client Name	Bavant Animal Hospital

Figure 2–55

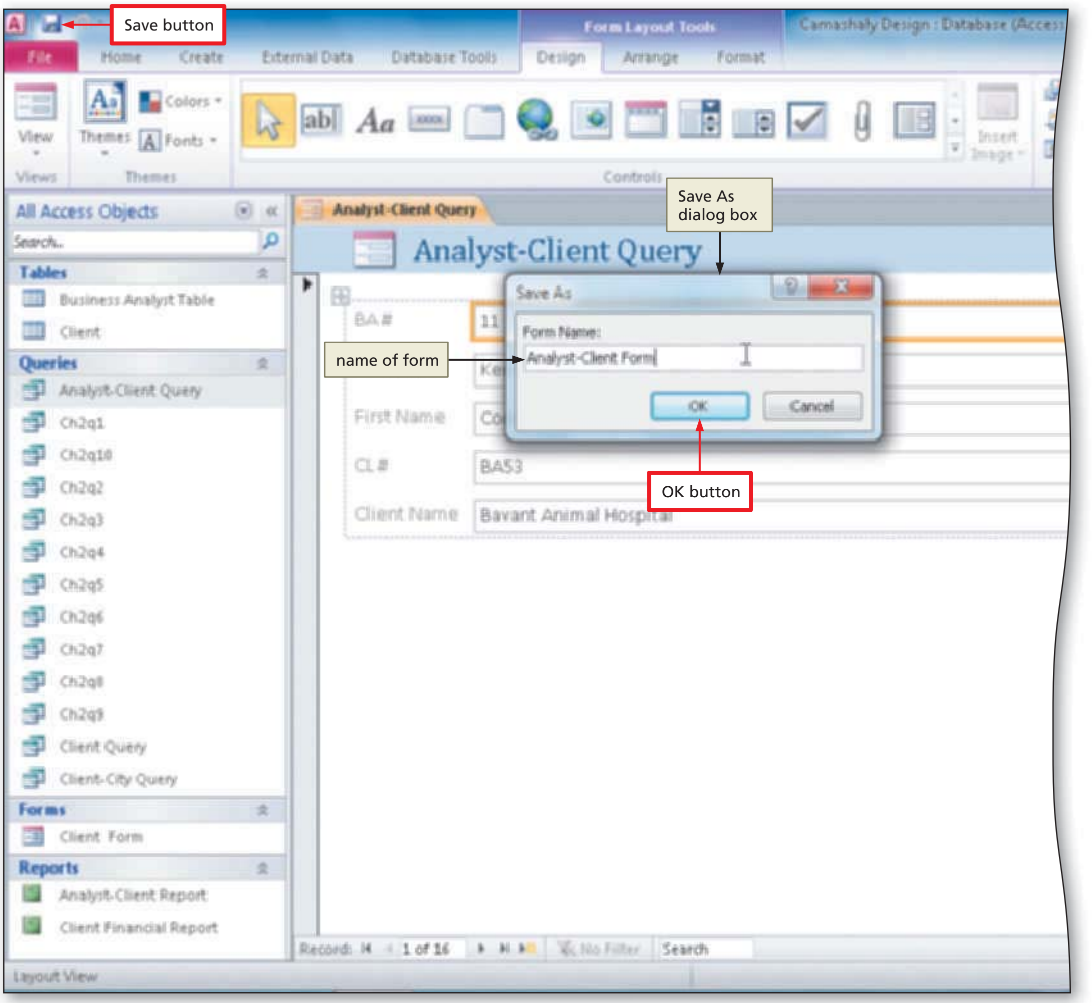
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3

- Click the Save button on the Quick Access Toolbar to display the Save As dialog box.
- Type `Analyst-Client Form` as the form name (Figure 2–56).

4

- Click the OK button to save the form.
- Click the Close button for the form to close the form.


Save button
Save As dialog box
name of form
OK button
Form Layout Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
View
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Views
Themes
Controls
Insert Image
All Access Objects
Search...
Tables
Business Analyst Table
Client
Queries
Analyst-Client Query
Ch2q1
Ch2q10
Ch2q2
Ch2q3
Ch2q4
Ch2q5
Ch2q6
Ch2q7
Ch2q8
Ch2q9
Client Query
Client-City Query
Forms
Client Form
Reports
Analyst-Client Report
Client Financial Report
Analyst-Client Query
Save As
OK
Cancel
Record: 1 of 16
No Filter
Search
Layout View

Analyst-Client Query

Form Name: Analyst-Client Form

BA # 11

First Name Co

CL # BA53

Client Name Bavant Animal Hospital

Figure 2–56

BTW

Exporting Data
You frequently need to export data so that it can be used in other applications and by other users in an organization. For example, the Accounting department might require financial data in an Excel format to perform certain financial functions. Marketing might require a list of client names and addresses in Word or RTF format for sales purposes.

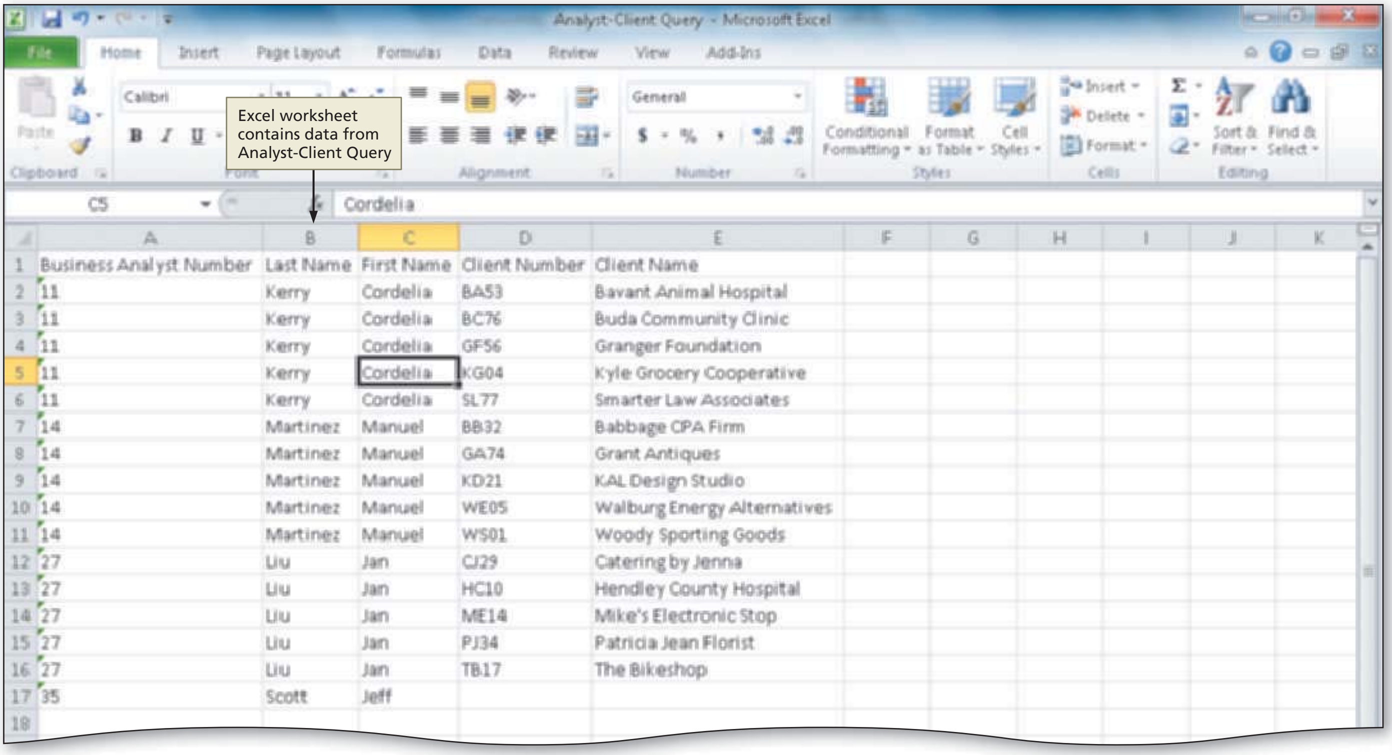
Using a Form

After you have saved a form, you can use it at any time by right-clicking the form in the Navigation Pane and then clicking Open on the shortcut menu. If you plan to use the form to enter data, you must ensure you are viewing the form in Form view.

Exporting Data from Access to Other Applications

You can **export**, or copy, data from an Access database so that another application (for example, Excel or Word) can use the data. The application that will receive the data determines the export process to be used. You can export to text files in a variety of formats. For applications to which you cannot directly export data, you often can export an appropriately formatted text file that the other application can import. Figure 2–57 shows the Analyst-Client Query exported to Excel.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.


Analyst-Client Query - Microsoft Excel
File
Home
Insert
Page Layout
Formulas
Data
Review
View
Add-Ins
Paste
Clipboard
Calibri
Font
Alignment
General
Number
Conditional Formatting
Format as Table
Cell Styles
Styles
Insert
Delete
Format
Cells
Sort & Filter
Find & Select
Editing
C5
Cordelia

Excel worksheet contains data from Analyst-Client Query

	A	B	C	D	E
1	Business Analyst Number	Last Name	First Name	Client Number	Client Name
2	11	Kerry	Cordelia	BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital
3	11	Kerry	Cordelia	BC76	Buda Community Clinic
4	11	Kerry	Cordelia	GF56	Granger Foundation
5	11	Kerry	Cordelia	KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative
6	11	Kerry	Cordelia	SL77	Smarter Law Associates
7	14	Martinez	Manuel	BB32	Babbage CPA Firm
8	14	Martinez	Manuel	GA74	Grant Antiques
9	14	Martinez	Manuel	KD21	KAL Design Studio
10	14	Martinez	Manuel	WE05	Walburg Energy Alternatives
11	14	Martinez	Manuel	WS01	Woody Sporting Goods
12	27	Liu	Jan	CJ29	Catering by Jenna
13	27	Liu	Jan	HC10	Hendley County Hospital
14	27	Liu	Jan	ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop
15	27	Liu	Jan	PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist
16	27	Liu	Jan	TB17	The Bikeshop
17	35	Scott	Jeff		
18					

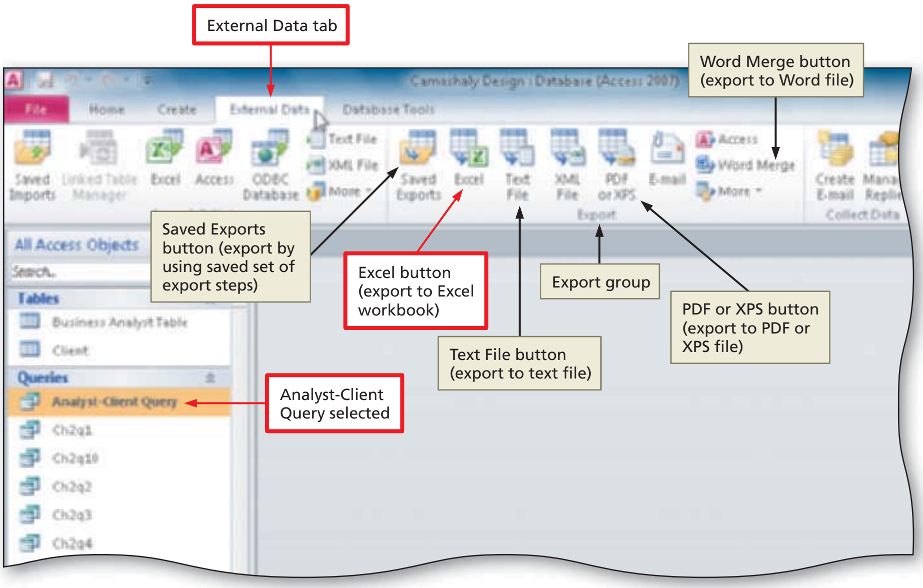
Figure 2–57

To Export Data to Excel

For Camashaly Design to make the Analyst-Client Query available to Excel users, it needs to export the data. To export data to Excel, select the table or query to be exported, and then click the Excel button in the Export group on the External data tab. The following steps export the Analyst-Client Query to Excel and save the export steps. By saving the export steps, you could easily repeat the export process whenever you like without going through all the following steps. You would use the saved steps to export data in the future by clicking the Saved Exports button (External Data tab | Export group) and then selecting the steps you saved.

1

- Click the Analyst-Client Query in the Navigation Pane to select it.
- Click External Data on the Ribbon to display the External Data tab (Figure 2–58).


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Saved Imports
Linked Table Manager
Excel
Access
ODBC Database
Text File
XML File
More
Saved Exports
Excel
Text File
XML File
PDF or XPS
E-mail
Access
Word Merge
More
Export
Create E-mail
Manage Replies
Collect Data
All Access Objects
Search...
Tables
Business Analyst Table
Client
Queries
Analyst-Client Query
Ch2q1
Ch2q10
Ch2q2
Ch2q3
Ch2q4

External Data tab

Word Merge button (export to Word file)

Saved Exports button (export by using saved set of export steps)

Excel button (export to Excel workbook)

Export group

PDF or XPS button (export to PDF or XPS file)

Text File button (export to text file)

Analyst-Client Query selected

Figure 2–58

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2

- Click the Excel button (External Data tab | Export group) to display the Export - Excel Spreadsheet dialog box.
- Click the Browse button (Export - Excel Spreadsheet dialog box) to display the File Save dialog box, and select your USB flash drive as the file location.
- Be sure the file name is Analyst-Client Query and then click the Save button (File Save dialog box) (Figure 2–59).

Q&A Did I need to browse?

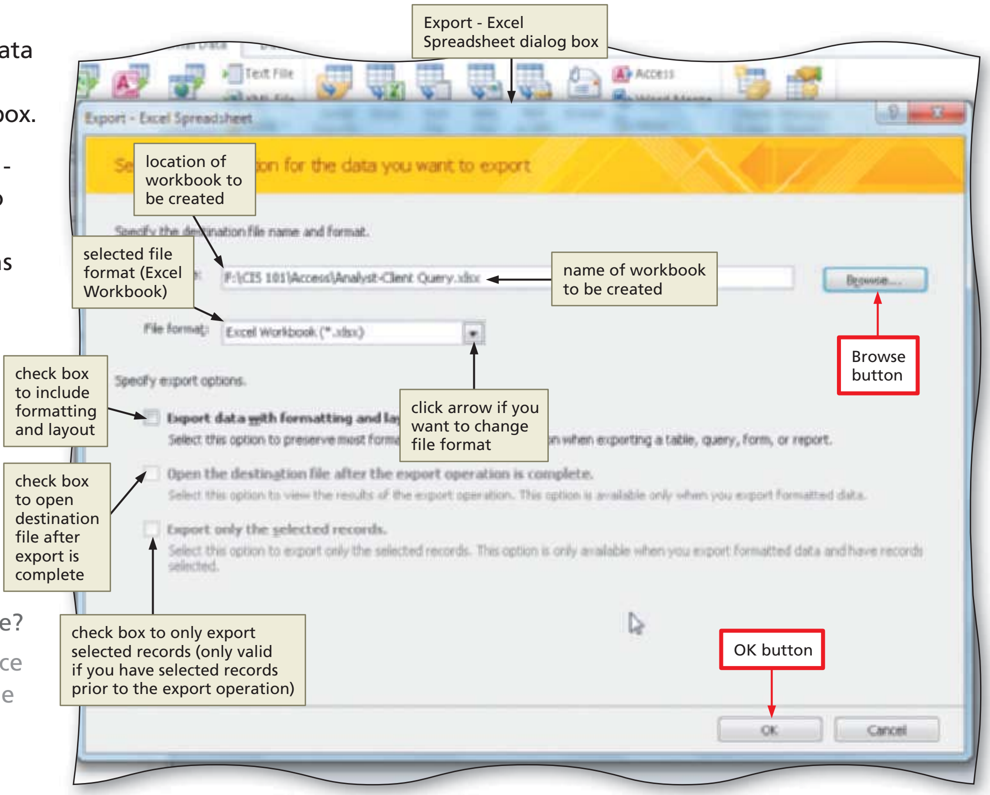
No. You could type the appropriate file location.

Q&A Could I change the name of the file?

You could change it. Simply replace the current file name with the one you want.

Q&A What if the file I want to export already exists?

Access will indicate that the file already exists and ask if you want to replace it. If you click the Yes button, the file you export will replace the old file. If you click the No button, you must either change the name of the export file or cancel the process.



Export - Excel Spreadsheet dialog box

location of workbook to be created

selected file format (Excel Workbook)

name of workbook to be created

Browse button

check box to include formatting and layout

click arrow if you want to change file format

check box to open destination file after export is complete

check box to only export selected records (only valid if you have selected records prior to the export operation)

OK button

Specify the destination file name and format.

F:\CIS 101\Access\Analyst-Client Query.xlsx

File format: Excel Workbook (*.xlsx)

Specify export options.

☐ Export data with formatting and la

Select this option to preserve most forma … n when exporting a table, query, form, or report.

☐ Open the destination file after the export operation is complete.

Select this option to view the results of the export operation. This option is available only when you export formatted data.

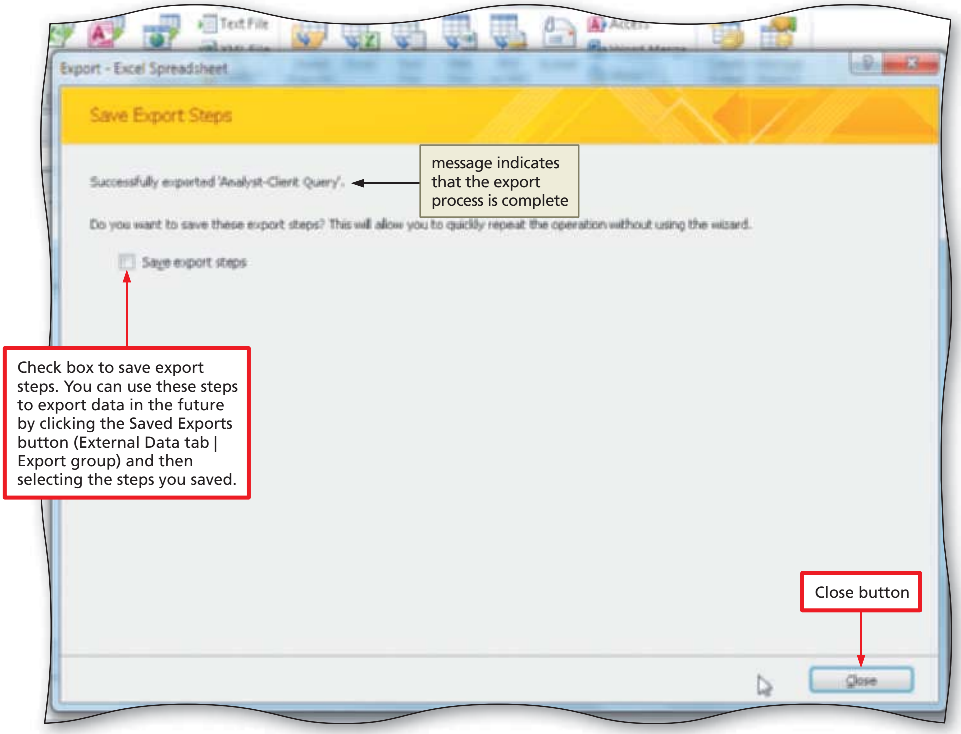
☐ Export only the selected records.

Select this option to export only the selected records. This option is only available when you export formatted data and have records selected.

Figure 2–59

3

- Click the OK button (Export - Excel Spreadsheet dialog box) to export the data (Figure 2–60).



message indicates that the export process is complete

Check box to save export steps. You can use these steps to export data in the future by clicking the Saved Exports button (External Data tab | Export group) and then selecting the steps you saved.

Close button

Successfully exported 'Analyst-Client Query'.

Do you want to save these export steps? This will allow you to quickly repeat the operation without using the wizard.

☐ Save export steps

Figure 2–60

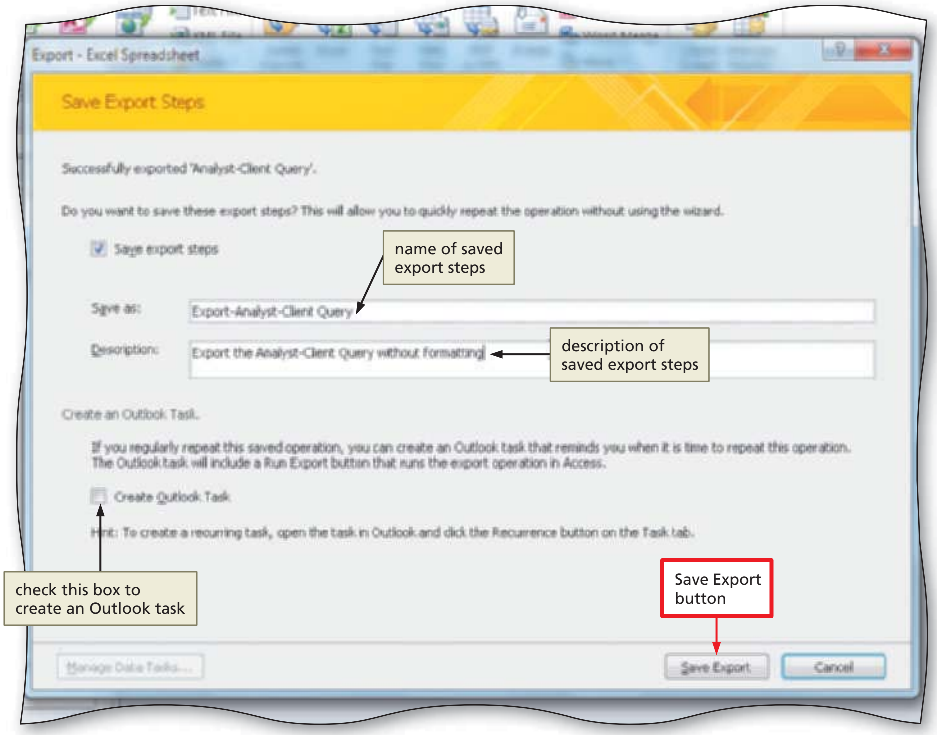
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

4

- Click the ‘Save export steps’ check box (Export - Excel Spreadsheet dialog box) to display the Save export steps options.
- If necessary, type `Export-Analyst-Client Query` in the Save as text box.
- Type `Export the Analyst-Client Query without formatting` in the Description text box (Figure 2–61).

5

- Click the Save Export button (Export - Excel Spreadsheet dialog box) to save the export steps.



Successfully exported 'Analyst-Client Query'.

Do you want to save these export steps? This will allow you to quickly repeat the operation without using the wizard.

☑ Save export steps

Save as: Export-Analyst-Client Query

Description: Export the Analyst-Client Query without formatting

Create an Outlook Task.

If you regularly repeat this saved operation, you can create an Outlook task that reminds you when it is time to repeat this operation. The Outlook task will include a Run Export button that runs the export operation in Access.

☐ Create Outlook Task

Hint: To create a recurring task, open the task in Outlook and click the Recurrence button on the Task tab.

Figure 2–61

Other Ways

1. Right-click database object in Navigation Pane, click Export

TO EXPORT DATA TO WORD

It is not possible to export data to the standard Word format. It is possible, however, to export the data as a rich text format (RTF) file, which Word can access. To export data from a query or table to an RTF file, you would use the following steps.

1. With the query or table to be exported selected in the Navigation Pane, click the More button (External Data tab | Export group) and then click Word on the More menu to display the Export - RTF File dialog box.
2. Select the name and location for the file to be created.
3. Click the Save button, and then click the OK button to export the data.
4. Save the export steps if you want, or simply click the Close button in the Export - RTF File dialog box to close the dialog box without saving the export steps.

Text Files

You also can export to text files. Text files contain unformatted characters, including alphanumeric characters, and some special characters, such as tabs, carriage returns, and line feeds.

In **delimited files**, each record is on a separate line, and the fields are separated by a special character, called the **delimiter**. Common delimiters are tabs, semicolons, commas, and spaces. You also can choose any other value that does not appear within the field contents. The comma-separated values (CSV) file often used in Excel is an example of a delimited file.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

In **fixed-width files**, the width of any field is the same on every record. For example, if the width of the first field on the first record is 12 characters, the width of the first field on every other record also must be 12 characters.

To Export Data to a Text File

When exporting data to a text file, you can choose to export the data with formatting and layout. This option preserves much of the formatting and layout in tables, queries, forms, and reports. For forms and reports, this is the only option.

If you do not need to preserve the formatting, you can choose either delimited or fixed-width as the format for the exported file. The most common option, especially if formatting is not an issue, is delimited. You can choose the delimiter and also whether to include field names on the first row. In many cases, delimiting with a comma and including the field names is a good choice.

To export data from a table or query to a comma-delimited file in which the first row contains the column headings, you would use the following steps.

1. With the query or table to be exported selected in the Navigation Pane, click the Text File button (External Data tab | Export group) to display the Export - Text File dialog box.
2. Select the name and location for the file to be created.
3. If you need to preserve formatting and layout, be sure the 'Export data with formatting and layout' check box is checked. If you do not need to preserve formatting and layout, make sure the check box is not checked. Once you have made your selection, click the OK button in the Export - Text File dialog box.
4. To create a delimited file, be sure the Delimited option button is selected in the Export Text Wizard dialog box. To create a fixed-width file, be sure the Fixed Width option button is selected. Once you have made your selection, click the Next button.
5. a. If you are exporting to a delimited file, choose the delimiter that you want to separate your fields, such as a comma. Decide whether to include field names on the first row and, if so, click the Include Field Names on First Row check box. If you want to select a text qualifier, select it in the Text Qualifier list. When you have made your selections, click the Next button.
   b. If you are exporting to a fixed-width file, review the position of the vertical lines that separate your fields. If any lines are not positioned correctly, follow the directions on the screen to reposition them. When you have finished, click the Next button.
6. Click the Finish button to export the data.
7. Save the export steps if you want, or simply click the Close button in the Export - Text File dialog box to close the dialog box without saving the export steps.

BTW

Saving Export Steps
Because query results are based on the data in the underlying tables, a change to an underlying table would result in a new query answer. For example, if the last name for business analyst 11 changed from Kerry to Smith, the change would be made in the Business Analyst Table. If you run the Analyst-Client Query again and export the query using the saved export steps, the Excel workbook would show the changed name.

Adding Criteria to a Join Query

Sometimes you will want to join tables, but you will not want to include all possible records. For example, you would like to create a report showing only those clients whose amount paid is greater than $3,000. In such cases, you will relate the tables and include fields just as you did before. You also will include criteria. To include only those clients whose amount paid is more than $3,000.00, you will include >3000 as a criterion for the Amount Paid field.

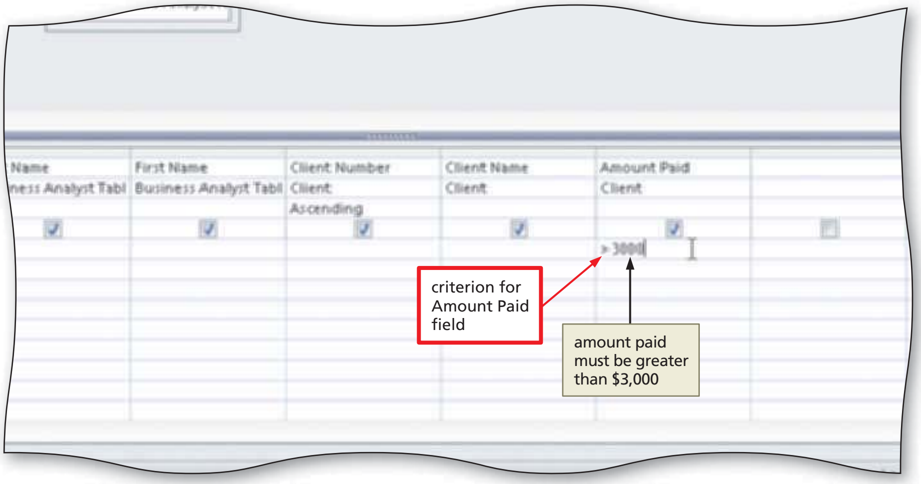
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Restrict the Records in a Join

The following steps modify the Analyst-Client Query so that the results for Camashaly Design only include those clients whose amount paid is more than $3,000.

1

- Open the Analyst-Client Query in Design view and close the Navigation Pane.
- Add the Amount Paid field to the query.
- Type >3000 as the criterion for the Amount Paid field (Figure 2–62).



Name	First Name	Client Number	Client Name	Amount Paid	
ness Analyst Tabl	Business Analyst Tabl	Client	Client	Client	
		Ascending			
☑	☑	☑	☑	☑	☐
				>3000	

criterion for Amount Paid field
amount paid must be greater than $3,000

Figure 2–62

2

- View the query results (Figure 2–63).

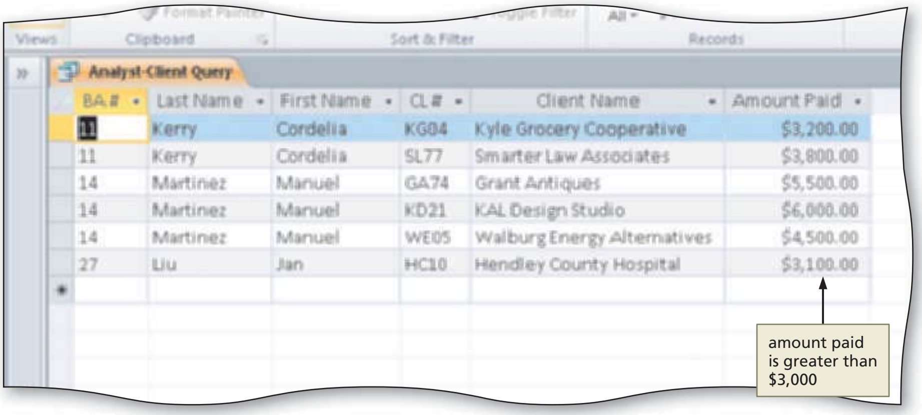
3

- Close the query.
- When asked if you want to save your changes, click the No button.

Q&A

What if I saved the changes?

The next time you used this query, you would only see clients whose amount paid is more than $3,000.



BA #	Last Name	First Name	CL #	Client Name	Amount Paid
11	Kerry	Cordelia	KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	$3,200.00
11	Kerry	Cordelia	SL77	Smarter Law Associates	$3,800.00
14	Martinez	Manuel	GA74	Grant Antiques	$5,500.00
14	Martinez	Manuel	KD21	KAL Design Studio	$6,000.00
14	Martinez	Manuel	WE05	Walburg Energy Alternatives	$4,500.00
27	Liu	Jan	HC10	Hendley County Hospital	$3,100.00

Figure 2–63

Calculations

If you have determined that a special calculation is required for a query, you then need to determine whether the calculation is an individual record calculation (for example, adding the values in two fields) or a group calculation (for example, finding the total of the values in a particular field on all the records).

Camashaly Design may want to know the total amount (amount paid and current due) from each client. This would seem to pose a problem because the Client table does not include a field for total amount. You can calculate it, however, because the total amount is equal to the amount paid plus the current due. A field that can be computed from other fields is called a **calculated field** or a **computed field**. A calculated field is an individual record calculation because each calculation only involves fields in a single record.

BTW

Expression Builder

Access includes a tool to help you create complex expressions. If you click Build on the shortcut menu (see Figure 2–64), Access displays the Expression Builder dialog box, which includes an expression box, operator buttons, and expression elements. You can type parts of the expression directly and paste operator buttons and expression elements into the box. You also can use functions in expressions.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Camashaly also may want to calculate the average amount paid for the clients of each business analyst. That is, they may want the average for the clients of business analyst 11, the average for the clients of business analyst 14, and so on. This type of calculation is called a **group calculation** because each calculation involves groups of records. In this example, the clients of business analyst 11 would form one group, the clients of business analyst 14 would be a second group, and the clients of business analyst 27 would form a third group.

The following are guidelines related to calculations in queries.

Plan Ahead

Determine whether calculations are required.
Examine the query or request to see if there are special calculations to be included. Look for words such as total, sum, compute, or calculate.

- **Determine a name for the calculated field.** If calculations are required, decide on the name for the field. Assign a name that helps identify the contents of the field. For example, if you are adding the cost of a number of items, the name Total Cost would be appropriate. The name, also called an **alias**, becomes the column name when the query is run.
- **Determine the format for the calculated field.** Determine how the calculated field should appear. If the calculation involves monetary amounts, you would use the currency format. If the calculated value contains decimals, determine how many decimal places to display.

To Use a Calculated Field in a Query

If you have determined that you need a calculated field in a query, you enter a name, or alias, for the calculated field, a colon, and then the calculation in one of the columns in the Field row of the design grid for the query. Any fields included in the expression must be enclosed in square brackets ([ ]). For example, for the total amount, you will type Total Amount:[Amount Paid]+[Current Due] as the expression.

You can type the expression directly into the Field row. You will not be able to see the entire entry, however, because the Field row is not large enough. The preferred way is to select the column in the Field row and then use the Zoom command on its shortcut menu. When Access displays the Zoom dialog box, you can enter the expression.

You are not restricted to addition in calculations. You can use subtraction (–), multiplication (*), or division (/). You also can include parentheses in your calculations to indicate which calculations should be done first.

The following steps create a query that Camashaly Design might use to obtain financial information on its clients, including the total amount (amount paid + current due), which is a calculated field.

1

- Create a query with a field list for the Client table.
- Add the Client Number, Client Name, Amount Paid, and Current Due fields to the query.
- Right-click the Field row in the first open column in the design grid to display a shortcut menu (Figure 2–64).

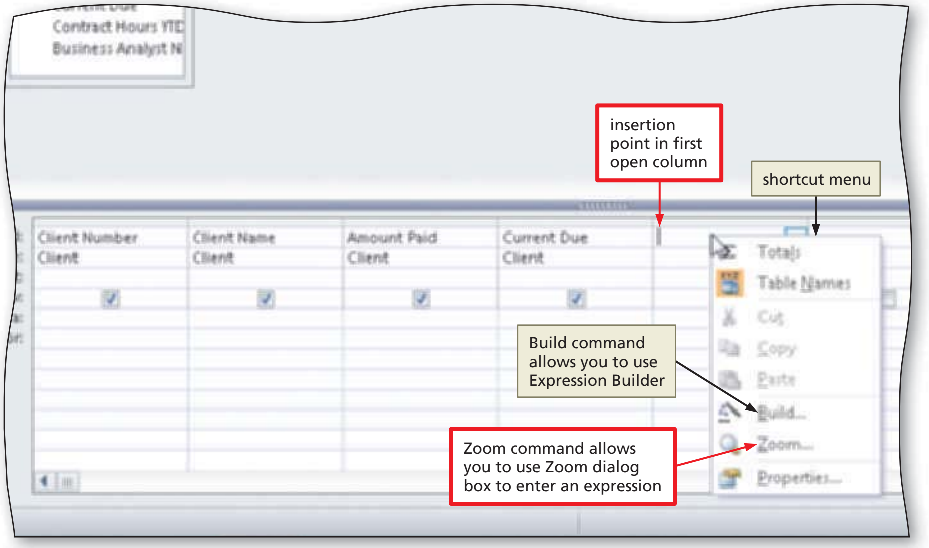


Figure 2–64

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

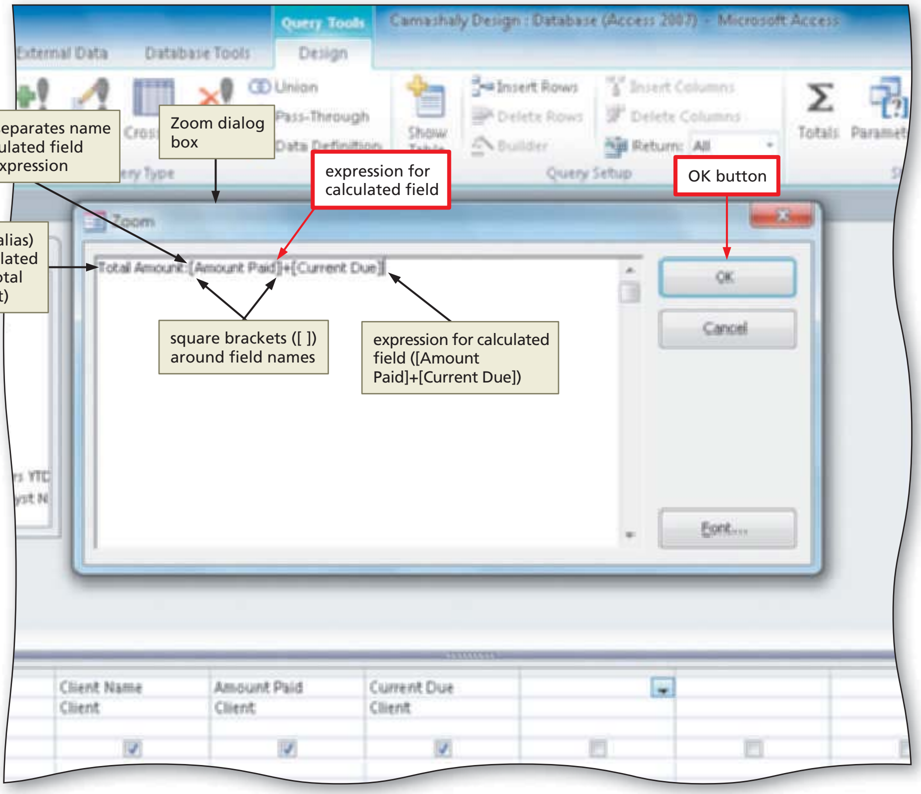
2

- Click Zoom on the shortcut menu to display the Zoom dialog box.
- Type `Total Amount: [Amount Paid]+ [Current Due]` in the Zoom dialog box (Figure 2–65).

Q&A

Do I always need to put square brackets around field names?

If the field name does not contain spaces, square brackets are technically not necessary, although it is still acceptable to use the brackets. It is a good practice, however, to get in the habit of using the brackets.


colon separates name of calculated field from expression

Zoom dialog box

expression for calculated field

OK button

Name (alias) of calculated field (Total Amount)

square brackets ([ ]) around field names

expression for calculated field ([Amount Paid]+[Current Due])

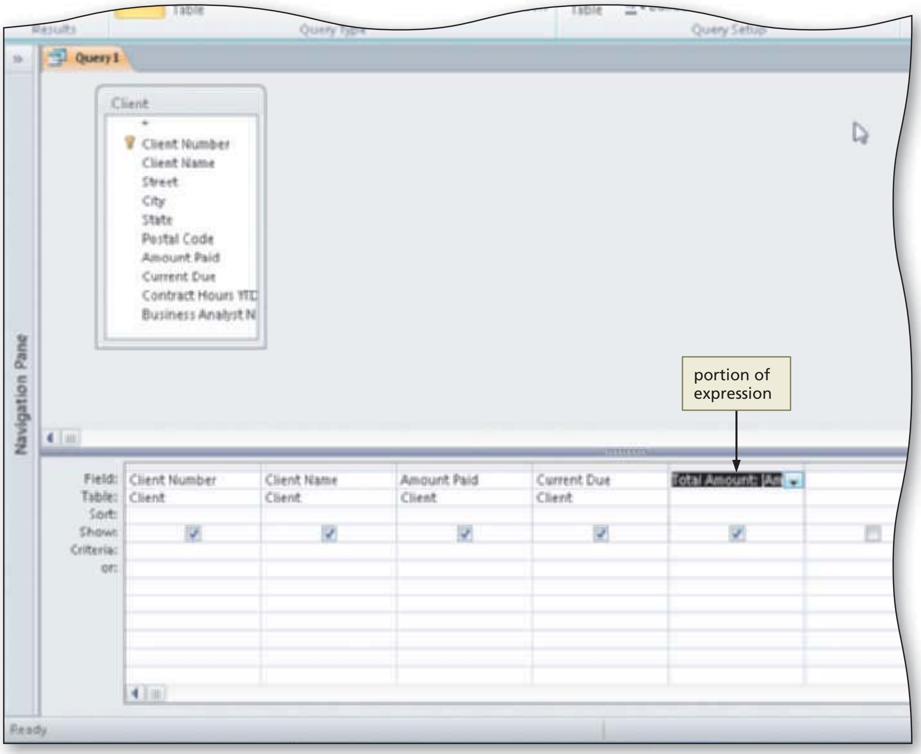
Total Amount: [Amount Paid]+[Current Due]

Query Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Union
Pass-Through
Data Definition
Show Table
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Builder
Insert Columns
Delete Columns
Return: All
Query Setup
Totals
Parameters
Zoom
OK
Cancel
Font...
Client Name
Client
Amount Paid
Client
Current Due
Client

Figure 2–65

3

- Click the OK button (Zoom dialog box) to enter the expression (Figure 2–66).


portion of expression

Results
Query Type
Query Setup
Query1
Client
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Amount Paid
Current Due
Contract Hours YTD
Business Analyst N
Navigation Pane
Field:
Table:
Sort:
Show:
Criteria:
or:
Client Number
Client
Client Name
Client
Amount Paid
Client
Current Due
Client
Total Amount: [Am
Ready

Figure 2–66

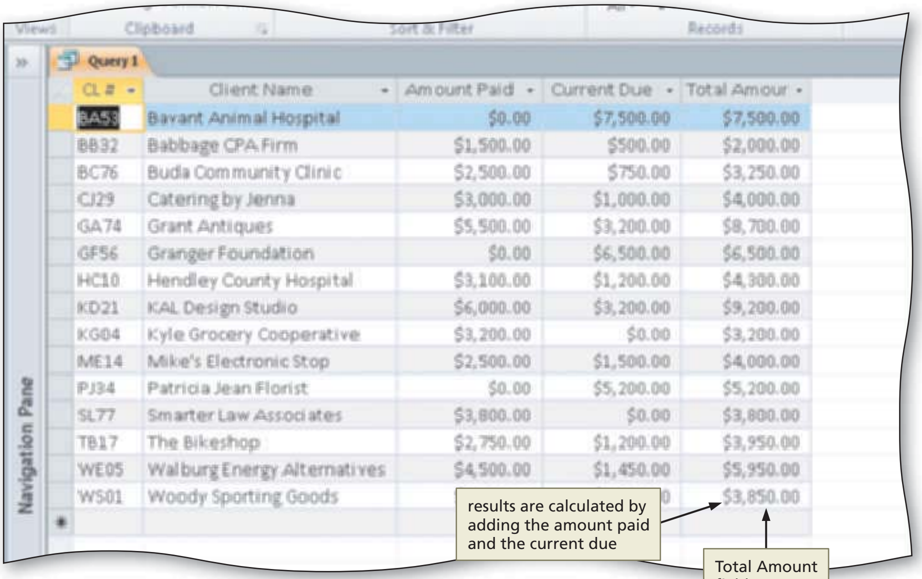
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

4

- View the query results (Figure 2–67).

Experiment

- Return to Design view and try other expressions. In at least one case, omit the Total Amount and the colon. In at least one case, intentionally misspell a field name. In each case, view the results to see the effect of your changes. When finished, reenter the original expression.


Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Query 1
Navigation Pane
results are calculated by adding the amount paid and the current due
Total Amount field

CL #	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due	Total Amour
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	$0.00	$7,500.00	$7,500.00
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	$1,500.00	$500.00	$2,000.00
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	$2,500.00	$750.00	$3,250.00
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	$3,000.00	$1,000.00	$4,000.00
GA74	Grant Antiques	$5,500.00	$3,200.00	$8,700.00
GF56	Granger Foundation	$0.00	$6,500.00	$6,500.00
HC10	Hendley County Hospital	$3,100.00	$1,200.00	$4,300.00
KD21	KAL Design Studio	$6,000.00	$3,200.00	$9,200.00
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	$3,200.00	$0.00	$3,200.00
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	$2,500.00	$1,500.00	$4,000.00
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	$0.00	$5,200.00	$5,200.00
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	$3,800.00	$0.00	$3,800.00
TB17	The Bikeshop	$2,750.00	$1,200.00	$3,950.00
WE05	Walburg Energy Alternatives	$4,500.00	$1,450.00	$5,950.00
WS01	Woody Sporting Goods			$3,850.00

Figure 2–67

Other Ways

1. Press SHIFT+F2

To Change a Caption

You can change the way items appear in the results of a query by changing their format. You also can change a query result's heading at the top of a column by changing the caption. Just as when you omitted duplicates, you will make this change by using a property sheet. In the property sheet, you can change the desired property, such as the format, the number of decimal places, or the caption. The following steps change the caption of the Amount Paid field to Paid and the caption of the Current Due field to Due. The steps also save the query with a new name.

1

- Return to Design view.
- If necessary, click Design on the Ribbon to display the Design tab.
- Click the Amount Paid field in the design grid, and then click the Property Sheet button (Query Tools Design tab | Show/Hide group) to display the properties for the Amount Paid field.
- Click the Caption box, and then type `Paid` as the caption (Figure 2–68).

Q&A

My property sheet looks different. What should I do?

If your sheet looks different, you clicked the wrong place and will have to close the property sheet and repeat this step.

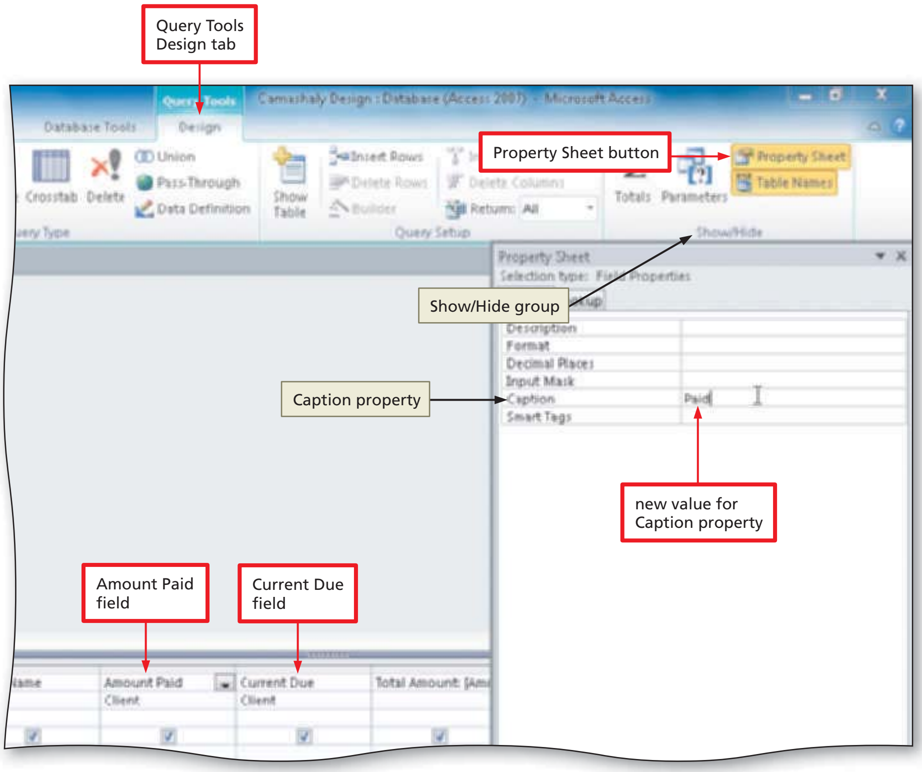
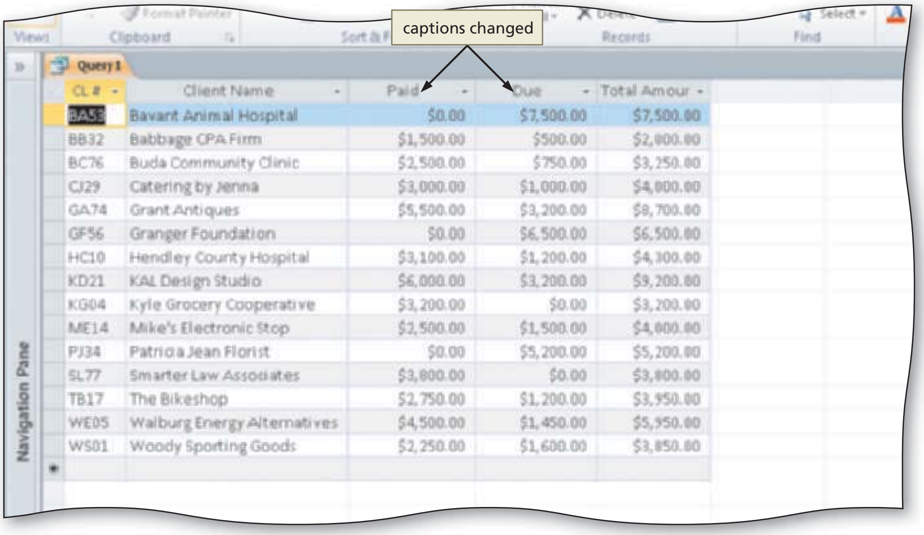

Query Tools Design tab
Query Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
Database Tools
Design
Crosstab
Delete
Union
Pass-Through
Data Definition
Show Table
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Builder
Delete Columns
Return: All
Query Setup
Totals
Parameters
Property Sheet button
Property Sheet
Table Names
Show/Hide
Show/Hide group
Property Sheet
Selection type: Field Properties
Description
Format
Decimal Places
Input Mask
Caption
Smart Tags
Caption property
Paid
new value for Caption property
Amount Paid field
Current Due field
Amount Paid
Client
Current Due
Client
Total Amount: [Am

Figure 2–68

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2

- Close the property sheet by clicking the Property Sheet button a second time.
- Click the Current Due field in the design grid, and then click the Property Sheet button (Query Tools Design tab | Show/Hide group).
- Click the Caption box, and then type `Due` as the caption.
- Close the Property Sheet by clicking the Property Sheet button a second time.
- View the query results (Figure 2–69).


captions changed
Views
Clipboard
Format Painter
Sort & F
Records
Find
Select
Query1
Navigation Pane

CL #	Client Name	Paid	Due	Total Amour
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	$0.00	$7,500.00	$7,500.00
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	$1,500.00	$500.00	$2,000.00
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	$2,500.00	$750.00	$3,250.00
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	$3,000.00	$1,000.00	$4,000.00
GA74	Grant Antiques	$5,500.00	$3,200.00	$8,700.00
GF56	Granger Foundation	$0.00	$6,500.00	$6,500.00
HC10	Hendley County Hospital	$3,100.00	$1,200.00	$4,300.00
KD21	KAL Design Studio	$6,000.00	$3,200.00	$9,200.00
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	$3,200.00	$0.00	$3,200.00
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	$2,500.00	$1,500.00	$4,000.00
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	$0.00	$5,200.00	$5,200.00
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	$3,800.00	$0.00	$3,800.00
TB17	The Bikeshop	$2,750.00	$1,200.00	$3,950.00
WE05	Walburg Energy Alternatives	$4,500.00	$1,450.00	$5,950.00
WS01	Woody Sporting Goods	$2,250.00	$1,600.00	$3,850.00

Figure 2–69

3

- Save the query as Ch2q11.
- Close the query.

Other Ways

1. Right-click field in design grid, click Properties on shortcut menu

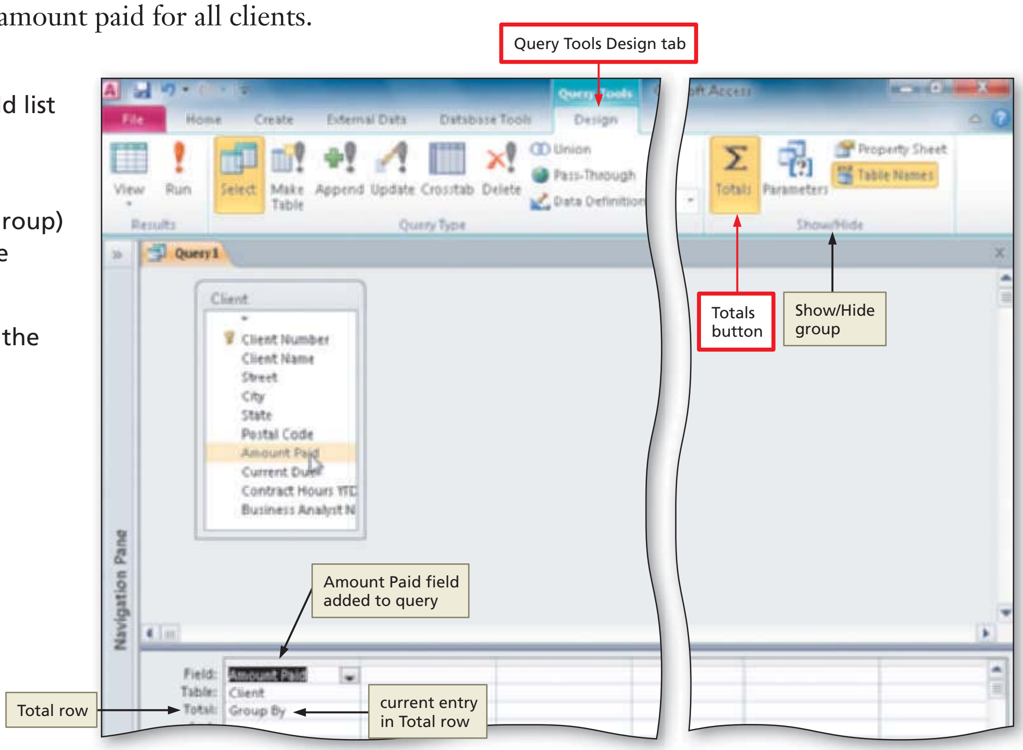
To Calculate Statistics

For group calculations, Microsoft Access supports several built-in statistics: COUNT (count of the number of records), SUM (total), AVG (average), MAX (largest value), MIN (smallest value), STDEV (standard deviation), VAR (variance), FIRST (first value), and LAST (last value). These statistics are called aggregate functions. An **aggregate function** is a function that performs some mathematical function against a group of records. To use any of these aggregate functions in a query, you include it in the Total row in the design grid. The Total row usually does not appear in the grid. To include it, click the Totals button on the Design tab.

The following steps create a new query for the Client table. The steps include the Total row in the design grid, and then calculate the average amount paid for all clients.

1

- Create a new query with a field list for the Client table.
- Click the Totals button (Query Tools Design tab | Show/Hide group) to include the Total row in the design grid.
- Add the Amount Paid field to the query (Figure 2–70).


Query Tools Design tab
Query Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
View
Run
Select
Make Table
Append
Update
Crosstab
Delete
Union
Pass-Through
Data Definition
Results
Query Type
Totals
Parameters
Property Sheet
Table Names
Show/Hide
Totals button
Show/Hide group
Query1
Navigation Pane
Client
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Amount Paid
Current Due
Contract Hours YTD
Business Analyst N
Amount Paid field added to query
Total row
current entry in Total row

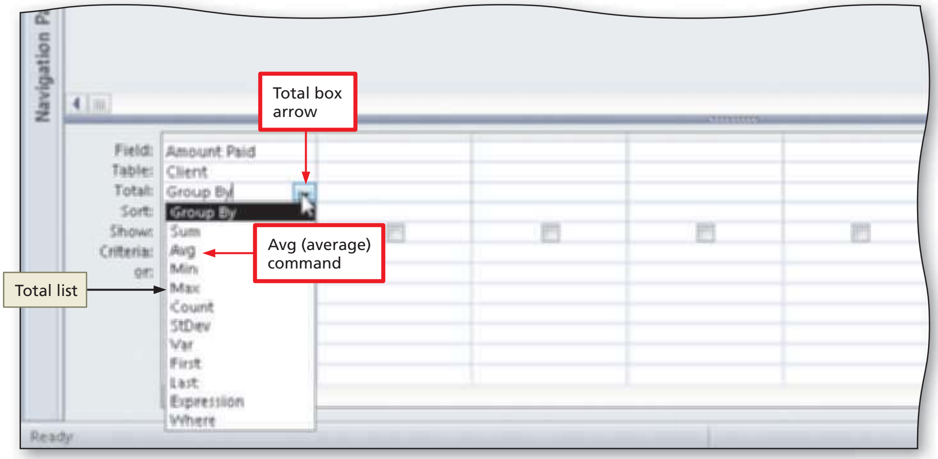
Field: Amount Paid
Table: Client
Total: Group By

Figure 2–70

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2

- Click the Total row in the Amount Paid column to display the Total box arrow.
- Click the Total box arrow to display the Total list (Figure 2–71).


Field: Amount Paid
Table: Client
Total: Group By

Navigation P
Group By
Sum
Avg
Min
Max
Count
StDev
Var
First
Last
Expression
Where
Sort:
Show:
Criteria:
or:
Ready

Total box arrow

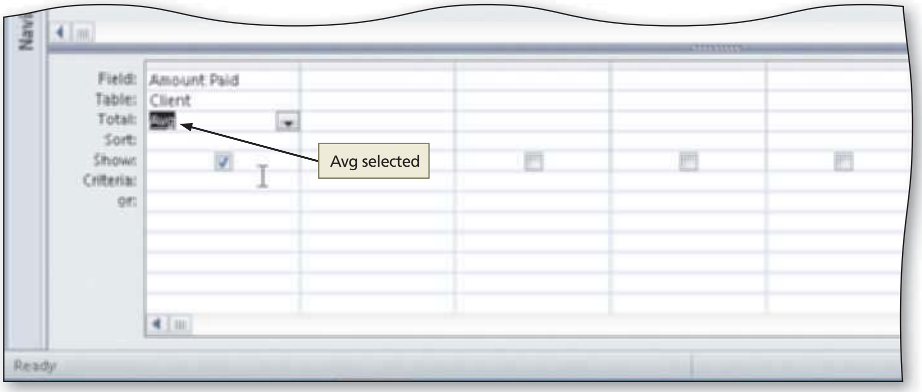
Avg (average) command

Total list

Figure 2–71

3

- Click Avg to select the calculation that Access is to perform (Figure 2–72).


Field: Amount Paid
Table: Client
Total: Avg

Navi
Sort:
Show:
Criteria:
or:
Ready

Avg selected

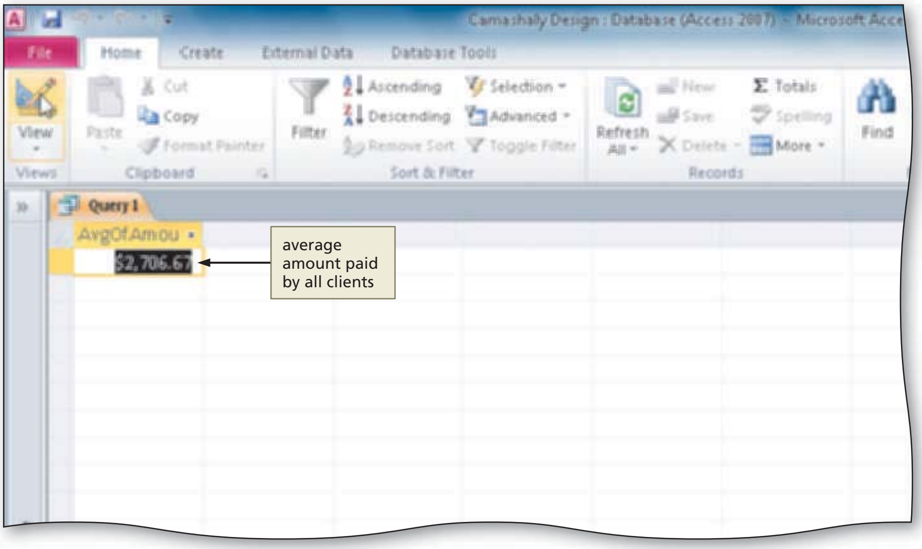
Figure 2–72

4

- View the query results (Figure 2–73).

Experiment

- Return to Design view and try other aggregate functions. In each case, view the results to see the effect of your selection. When finished, select Avg once again.


Query1
AvgOfAmou
$2,706.67

Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Acce
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records

average amount paid by all clients

Figure 2–73

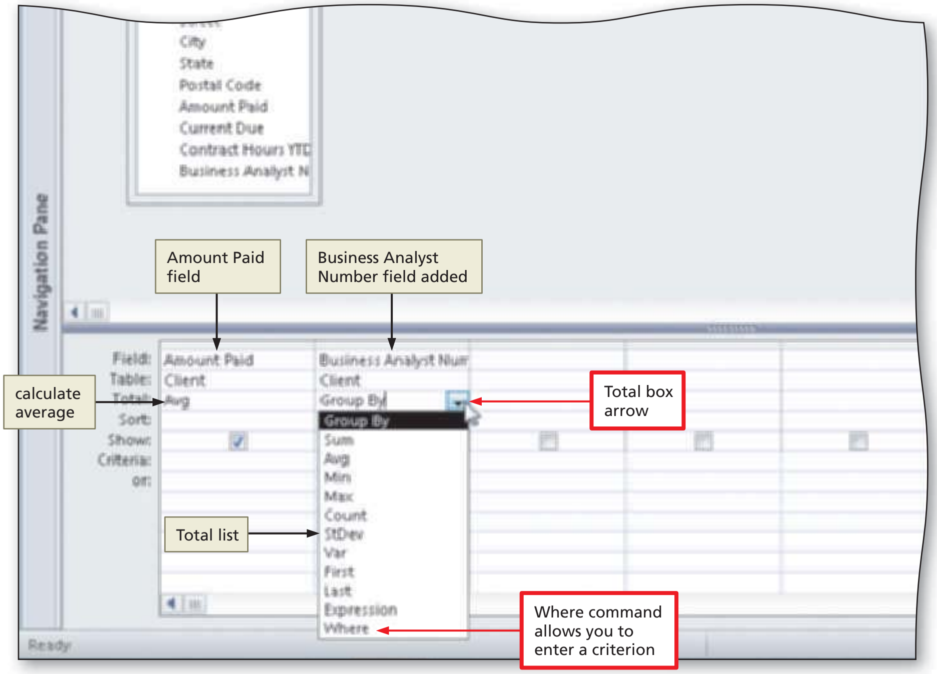
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Use Criteria in Calculating Statistics

Sometimes calculating statistics for all the records in the table is appropriate. In other cases, however, you will need to calculate the statistics for only those records that satisfy certain criteria. To enter a criterion in a field, first you select Where as the entry in the Total row for the field, and then enter the criterion in the Criteria row. The following steps use this technique to calculate the average amount paid for clients of business analyst 11. The steps also save the query with a new name.

1

- Return to Design view.
- Include the Business Analyst Number field in the design grid.
- Click the Total box arrow in the Business Analyst Number column to produce a Total list (Figure 2–74).



Field:	Amount Paid	Business Analyst Num
Table:	Client	Client
Total:	Avg	Group By
Sort:		
Show:	☑	
Criteria:		
or:		

City
State
Postal Code
Amount Paid
Current Due
Contract Hours YTD
Business Analyst N
Navigation Pane
Group By
Sum
Avg
Min
Max
Count
StDev
Var
First
Last
Expression
Where
Ready

Amount Paid field

Business Analyst Number field added

calculate average

Total box arrow

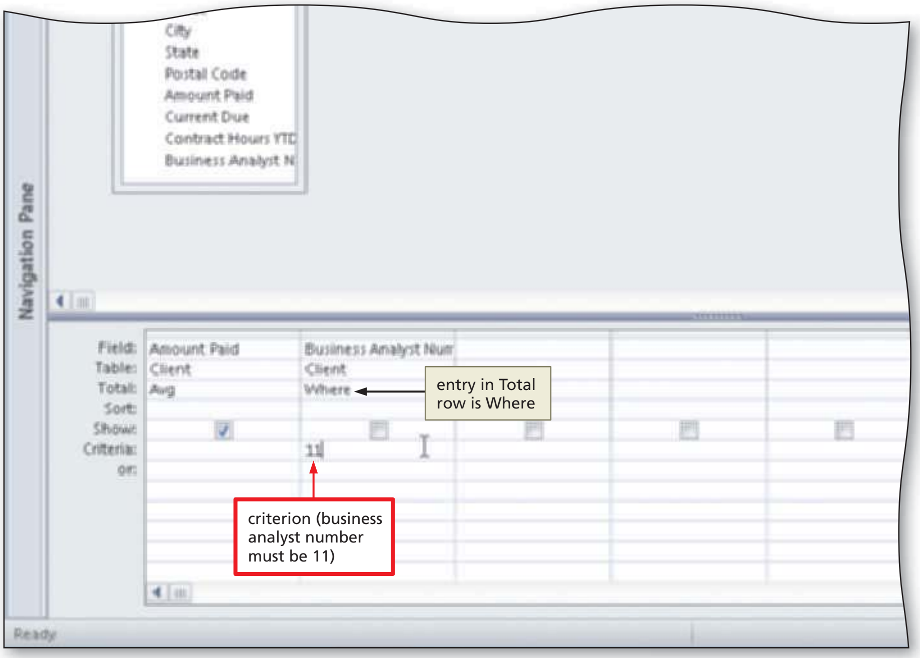
Total list

Where command allows you to enter a criterion

Figure 2–74

2

- Click Where.
- Type `11` as the criterion for the Business Analyst Number field (Figure 2–75).



Field:	Amount Paid	Business Analyst Num
Table:	Client	Client
Total:	Avg	Where
Sort:		
Show:	☑	☐
Criteria:		11
or:		

City
State
Postal Code
Amount Paid
Current Due
Contract Hours YTD
Business Analyst N
Navigation Pane
Ready

entry in Total row is Where

criterion (business analyst number must be 11)

Figure 2–75

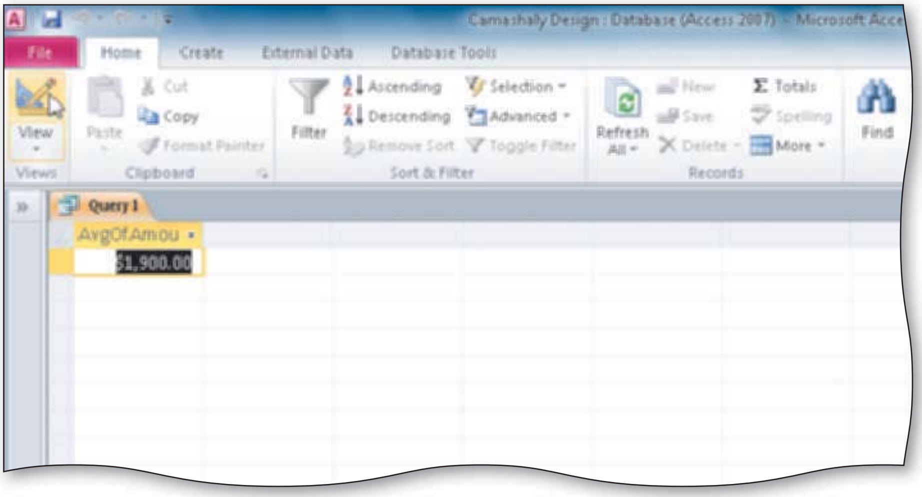
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3

- View the query results (Figure 2–76).

4

- Save the query as Ch2q12.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Acce
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Views
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Clipboard
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Sort & Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Records
Find
Query1

AvgOfAmou
$1,900.00

Figure 2–76

To Use Grouping

Another way statistics often are used is in combination with grouping; that is, statistics are calculated for groups of records. You may, for example, need to calculate the average amount paid for the clients of each business analyst. You will want the average for the clients of business analyst 11, the average for clients of business analyst 14, and so on.

Grouping means creating groups of records that share some common characteristic. In grouping by Business Analyst Number, for example, the clients of business analyst 11 would form one group, the clients of business analyst 14 would form a second, and the clients of business analyst 27 would form a third group. The calculations then are made for each group. To indicate grouping in Access, select Group By as the entry in the Total row for the field to be used for grouping.

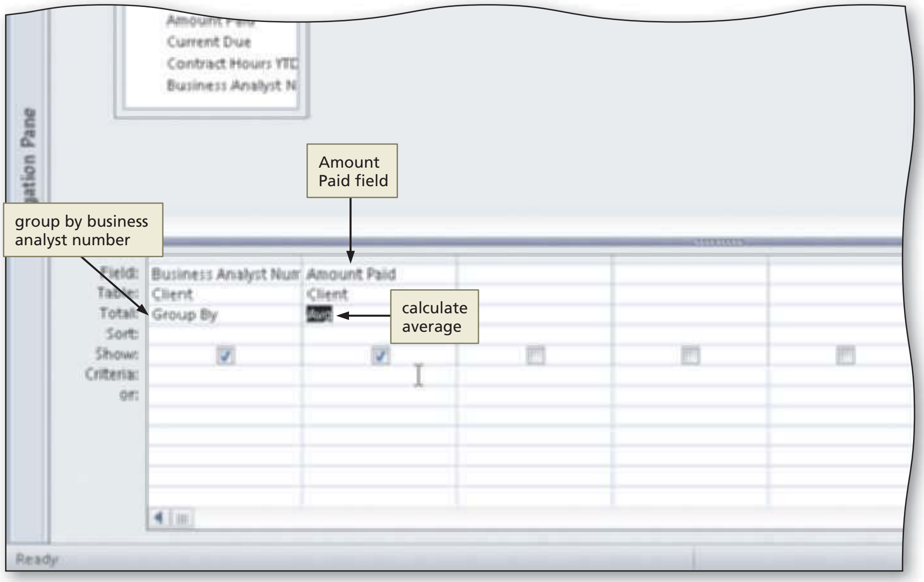
The following steps create a query that calculates the average amount paid for clients of each business analyst at Camashaly Design. The steps also save the query with a new name.

1

- Return to Design view and clear the design grid.
- Include the Business Analyst Number field in the query.
- Include the Amount Paid field in the query.
- Select Avg as the calculation in the Total row for the Amount Paid field (Figure 2–77).

Q&A Why didn't I need to change the entry in the Total row for the Business Analyst Number field?

Group By, which is the initial entry in the Total row when you add a field, is correct. Thus, you didn't need to change the entry.


Amount Paid
Current Due
Contract Hours YTD
Business Analyst N
Navigation Pane
Ready

Field:	Business Analyst Num	Amount Paid
Table:	Client	Client
Total:	Group By	Avg
Sort:		
Show:	☑	☑
Criteria:		
or:		

Amount Paid field

group by business analyst number

calculate average

Figure 2–77

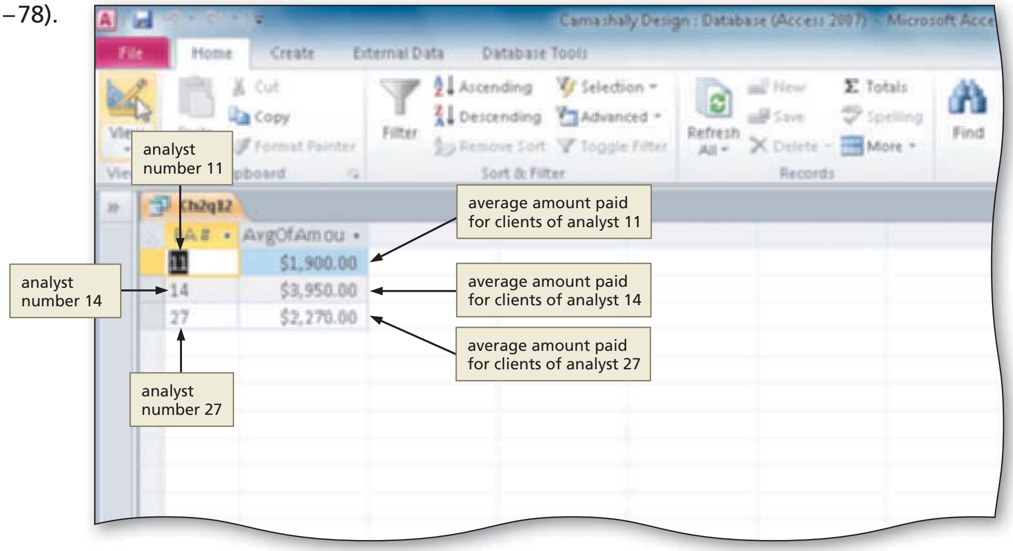
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2

- View the query results (Figure 2–78).

3

- Save the query as Ch2q13.
- Close the query.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Acce
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Clipboard
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Sort & Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Records
Find
Ch2q12

BA #	AvgOfAmou
11	$1,900.00
14	$3,950.00
27	$2,270.00

analyst number 11

analyst number 14

analyst number 27

average amount paid for clients of analyst 11

average amount paid for clients of analyst 14

average amount paid for clients of analyst 27

Figure 2–78

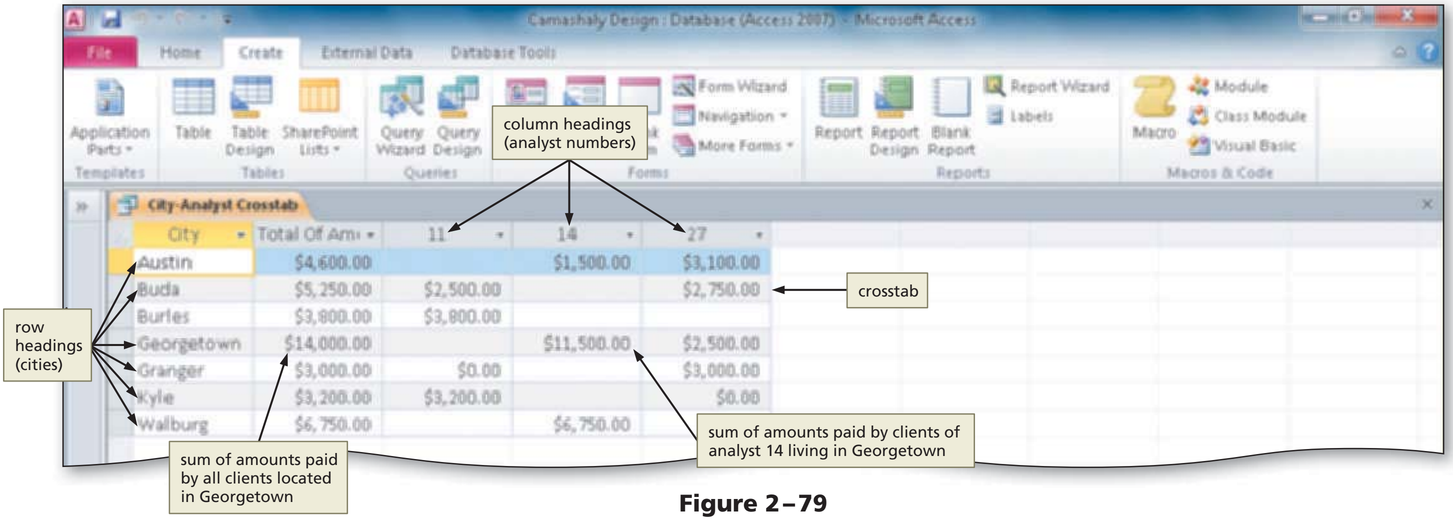
Crosstab Queries

A crosstab query calculates a statistic (for example, sum, average, or count) for data that is grouped by two different types of information. One of the types will appear down the side of the resulting datasheet, and the other will appear across the top. Crosstab queries are useful for summarizing data by category or group.

For example, if you have determined that a query must summarize the sum of the amounts paid grouped by both city and business analyst number, you could have cities as the row headings, that is, down the side. You could have business analyst numbers as the column headings, that is, across the top. The entries within the datasheet represent the total of the amounts paid. Figure 2–79 shows a crosstab in which the total of amount paid is grouped by both city and business analyst number with cities down the left side and business analyst numbers across the top. For example, the entry in the row labeled Georgetown and in the column labeled 14 represents the total of the amount paid by all clients of business analyst 14 who are located in Georgetown.

BTW

Certification
The Microsoft Office Specialist (MOS) program provides an opportunity for you to obtain a valuable industry credential — proof that you have the Access 2010 skills required by employers. For more information, visit the Access 2010 Certification Web page (scsite.com/ac2010/cert).


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Application Parts
Templates
Table
Table Design
SharePoint Lists
Tables
Query Wizard
Query Design
Queries
Form Wizard
Navigation
More Forms
Forms
Report
Report Design
Blank Report
Report Wizard
Labels
Reports
Macro
Module
Class Module
Visual Basic
Macros & Code
City-Analyst Crosstab

City	Total Of Am	11	14	27
Austin	$4,600.00		$1,500.00	$3,100.00
Buda	$5,250.00	$2,500.00		$2,750.00
Burles	$3,800.00	$3,800.00		
Georgetown	$14,000.00		$11,500.00	$2,500.00
Granger	$3,000.00	$0.00		$3,000.00
Kyle	$3,200.00	$3,200.00		$0.00
Walburg	$6,750.00		$6,750.00	

column headings (analyst numbers)

crosstab

row headings (cities)

sum of amounts paid by all clients located in Georgetown

sum of amounts paid by clients of analyst 14 living in Georgetown

Figure 2–79

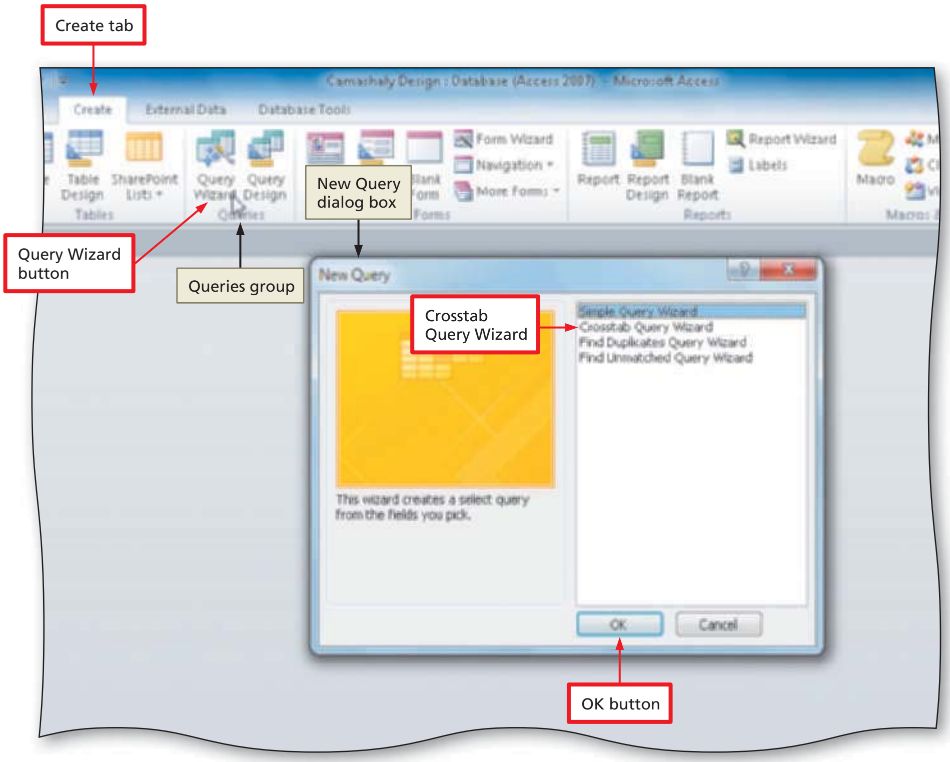
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Create a Crosstab Query

The following steps use the Crosstab Query Wizard to create a crosstab query for Camashaly Design that summarizes financial information by city and business analyst.

1

- Click Create on the Ribbon to display the Create tab.
- Click the Query Wizard button (Create tab | Queries group) to display the New Query dialog box (Figure 2–80).

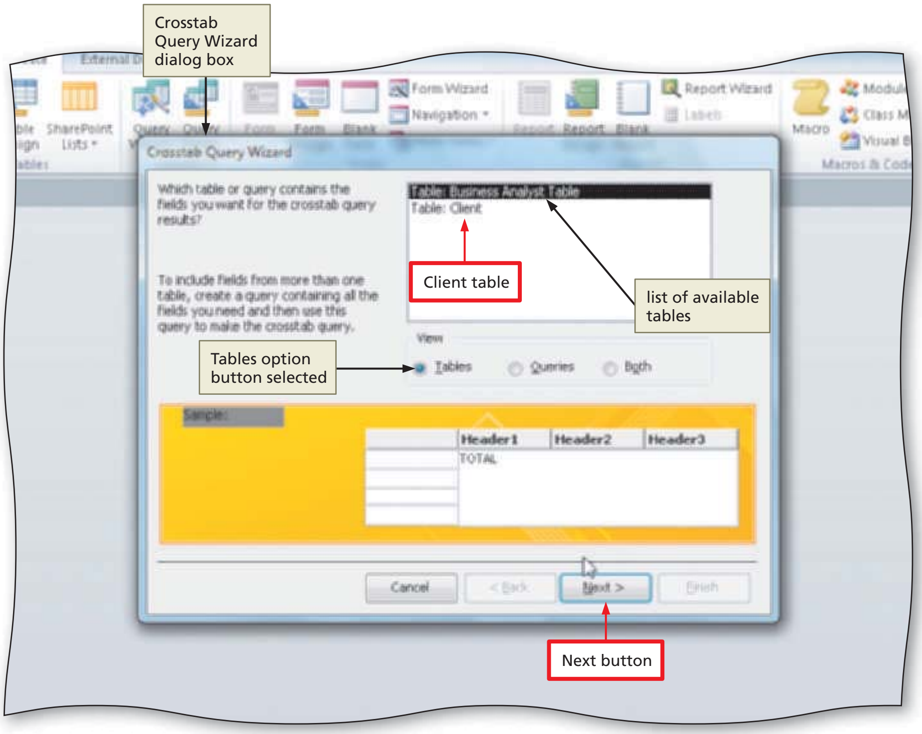

Create tab
Query Wizard button
Queries group
New Query dialog box
Crosstab Query Wizard
OK button
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Table Design
SharePoint Lists
Tables
Query Wizard
Query Design
Queries
Form Wizard
Navigation
More Forms
Forms
Report
Report Design
Blank Report
Report Wizard
Labels
Reports
Macro
Macros &
New Query
Simple Query Wizard
Crosstab Query Wizard
Find Duplicates Query Wizard
Find Unmatched Query Wizard
OK
Cancel

This wizard creates a select query from the fields you pick.

Figure 2–80

2

- Click Crosstab Query Wizard (New Query dialog box).
- Click the OK button to display the Crosstab Query Wizard dialog box (Figure 2–81).


Crosstab Query Wizard dialog box
Client table
list of available tables
Tables option button selected
Next button
Crosstab Query Wizard
Table: Business Analyst Table
Table: Client
View
Tables
Queries
Both
Sample:
Header1
Header2
Header3
TOTAL
Cancel
< Back
Next >
Finish

Which table or query contains the fields you want for the crosstab query results?

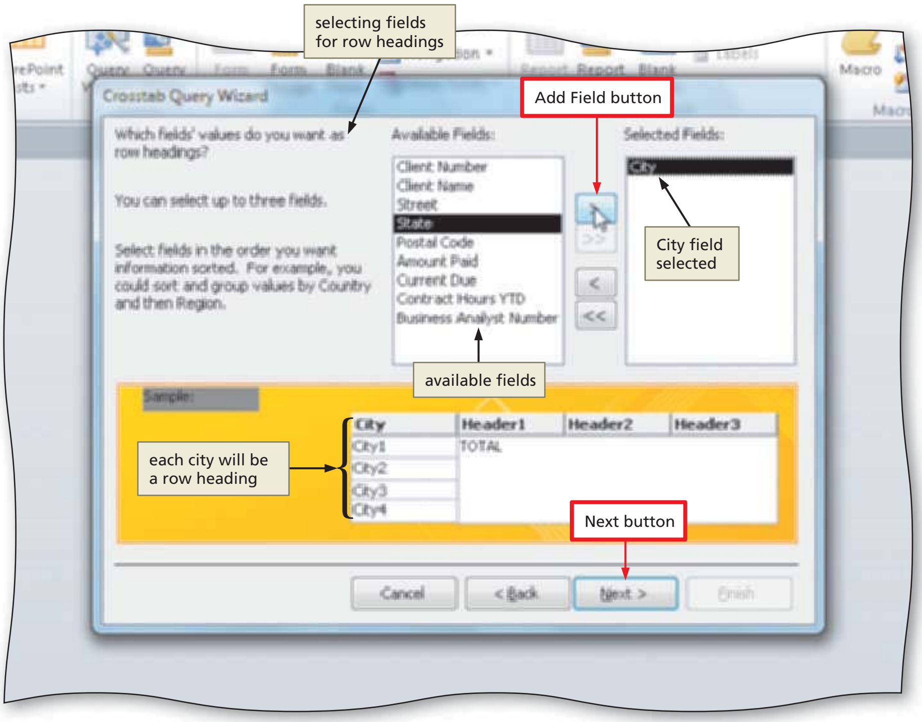
To include fields from more than one table, create a query containing all the fields you need and then use this query to make the crosstab query.

Figure 2–81

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3

- With the Tables option button selected, click Table: Client to select the Client table, and then click the Next button to display the next Crosstab Query Wizard screen.
- Click the City field, and then click the Add Field button to select the City field for row headings (Figure 2–82).


Crosstab Query Wizard

Which fields' values do you want as row headings?

You can select up to three fields.

Select fields in the order you want information sorted. For example, you could sort and group values by Country and then Region.

Available Fields:
Client Number
Client Name
Street
State
Postal Code
Amount Paid
Current Due
Contract Hours YTD
Business Analyst Number
Selected Fields:
City
Sample:
City
Header1
Header2
Header3
City1
City2
City3
City4
TOTAL
Cancel
< Back
Next >
Finish

selecting fields for row headings

Add Field button

City field selected

available fields

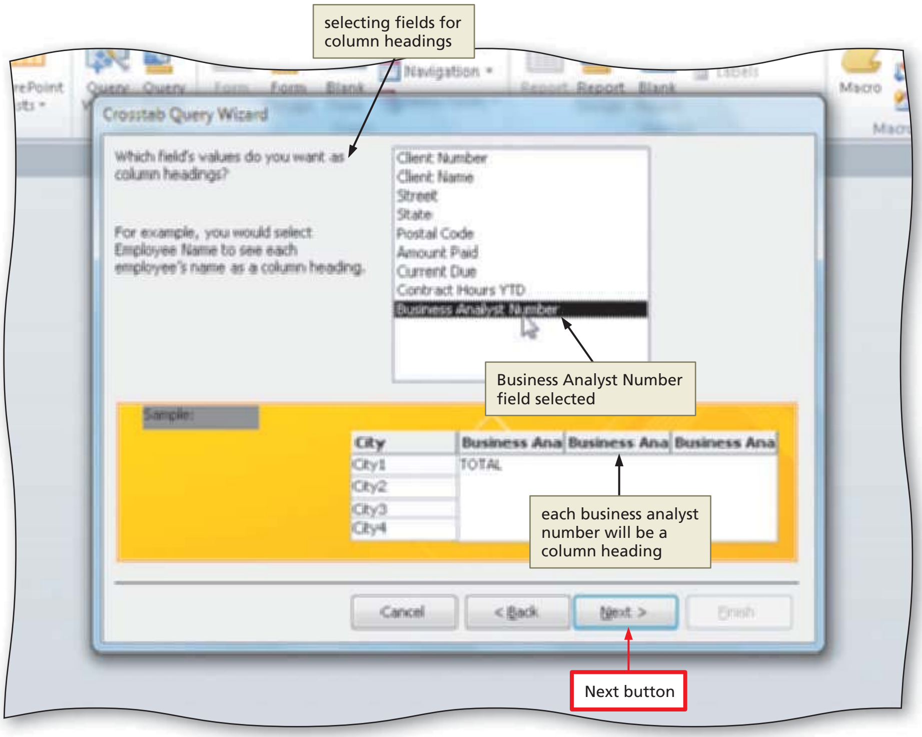
each city will be a row heading

Next button

Figure 2–82

4

- Click the Next button to display the next Crosstab Query Wizard screen.
- Click the Business Analyst Number field to select the Business Analyst Number field for column headings (Figure 2–83).


Crosstab Query Wizard

Which field's values do you want as column headings?

For example, you would select Employee Name to see each employee's name as a column heading.

Client Number
Client Name
Street
State
Postal Code
Amount Paid
Current Due
Contract Hours YTD
Business Analyst Number
Sample:
City
Business Ana
Business Ana
Business Ana
City1
City2
City3
City4
TOTAL
Cancel
< Back
Next >
Finish

selecting fields for column headings

Business Analyst Number field selected

each business analyst number will be a column heading

Next button

Figure 2–83

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

5

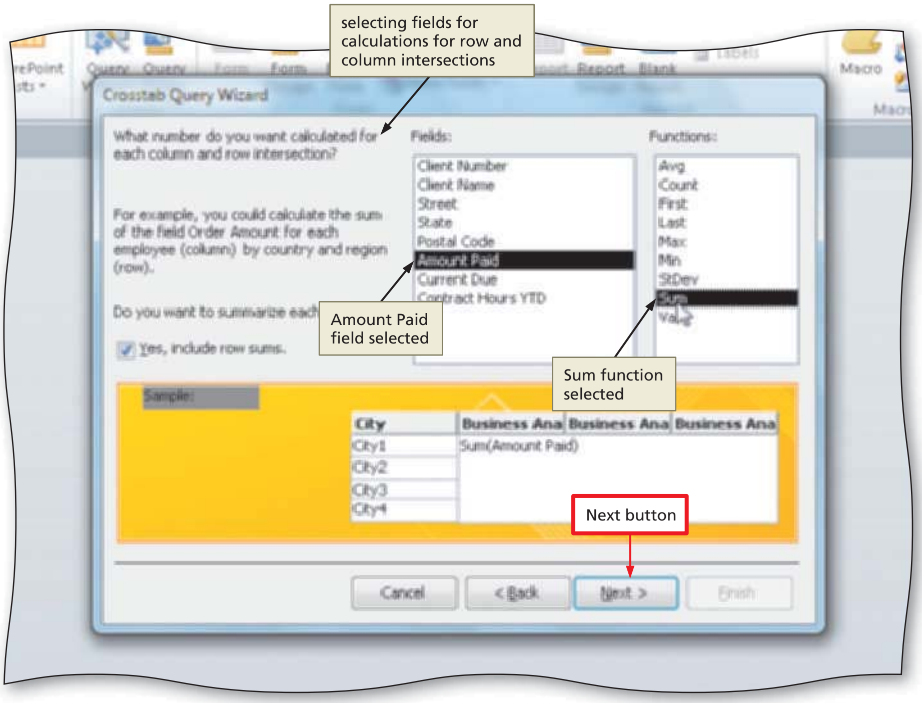
- Click the Next button to display the next Crosstab Query Wizard screen.
- Click the Amount Paid field to select the Amount Paid field for calculations.

Experiment

- Click other fields. For each field, examine the list of calculations that are available. When finished, click the Amount Paid field again.
- Click Sum to select Sum as the calculation to be performed (Figure 2–84).

Q&A My list of functions is different. What did I do wrong?

Either you clicked the wrong field, or the Amount Paid field has the wrong data type. For example, if you mistakenly assigned it the Text data type, you would not see Sum in the list of available calculations.


selecting fields for calculations for row and column intersections
Amount Paid field selected
Sum function selected
Next button
Cancel
< Back
Next >
Finish

Crosstab Query Wizard

What number do you want calculated for each column and row intersection?

For example, you could calculate the sum of the field Order Amount for each employee (column) by country and region (row).

Do you want to summarize each row?

☑ Yes, include row sums.

Fields:
Client Number
Client Name
Street
State
Postal Code
Amount Paid
Current Due
Contract Hours YTD

Functions:
Avg
Count
First
Last
Max
Min
StDev
Sum
Var

Sample:

City	Business Ana	Business Ana	Business Ana
City1	Sum(Amount Paid)		
City2			
City3			
City4			

Figure 2–84

6

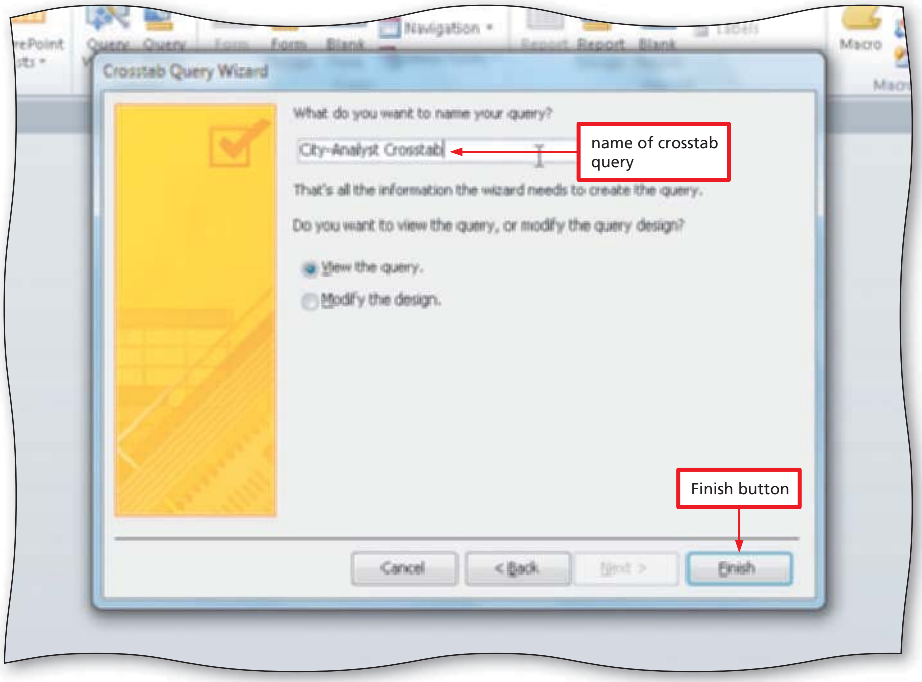
- Click the Next button to display the next Crosstab Query Wizard screen.
- Type `City-Analyst Crosstab` as the name of the query (Figure 2–85).

7

- Click the Finish button to produce the crosstab shown in Figure 2–79 on Page AC 123.
- Close the query.

Q&A If I want to view the crosstab at some future date, can I just open the query?

Yes.



Crosstab Query Wizard

What do you want to name your query?

City-Analyst Crosstab

That's all the information the wizard needs to create the query.

Do you want to view the query, or modify the query design?

● View the query.

○ Modify the design.

Figure 2–85

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Customize the Navigation Pane

Currently, the entries in the Navigation Pane are organized by object type. That is, all the tables are together, all the queries are together, and so on. You might want to change the way the information is organized. For example, you might want to have the Navigation Pane organized by table, with all the queries, forms, and reports associated with a particular table appearing after the name of the table. You also can use the Search bar to restrict the objects that appear to only those that have a certain collection of characters in their name. For example, if you entered the letters, Cl, only those objects containing Cl somewhere within the name will be included.

The following steps change the organization of the Navigation Pane. They also use the Search bar to restrict the objects that appear.

1

- If necessary, click the Shutter Bar Open/Close Button to open the Navigation Pane.
- Click the Navigation Pane arrow to produce the Navigation Pane menu (Figure 2–86).

2

- Click Tables and Related Views to organize the Navigation Pane by table rather than by the type of object (Figure 2–87).

3

- Click the Navigation Pane arrow to produce the Navigation Pane menu.
- Click Object Type to once again organize the Navigation Pane by object type.

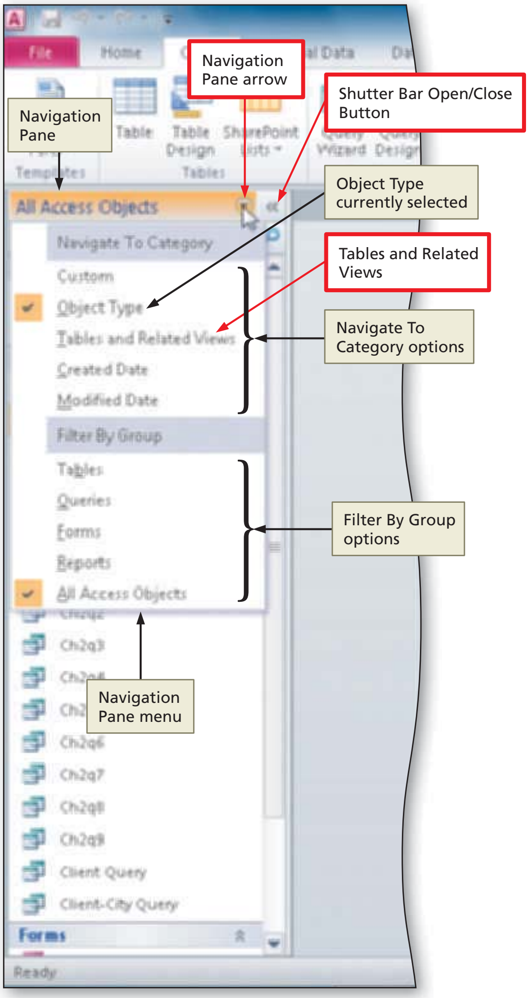

File
Home
Navigation Pane arrow
Navigation Pane
Shutter Bar Open/Close Button
Table
Table Design
SharePoint Lists
Query Wizard
Query Design
Templates
Tables
Object Type currently selected
All Access Objects
Navigate To Category
Custom
Object Type
Tables and Related Views
Tables and Related Views
Created Date
Modified Date
Navigate To Category options
Filter By Group
Tables
Queries
Forms
Reports
All Access Objects
Filter By Group options
Ch2q3
Ch2q4
Ch2q6
Ch2q7
Ch2q8
Ch2q9
Navigation Pane menu
Client Query
Client-City Query
Forms
Ready

Figure 2–86

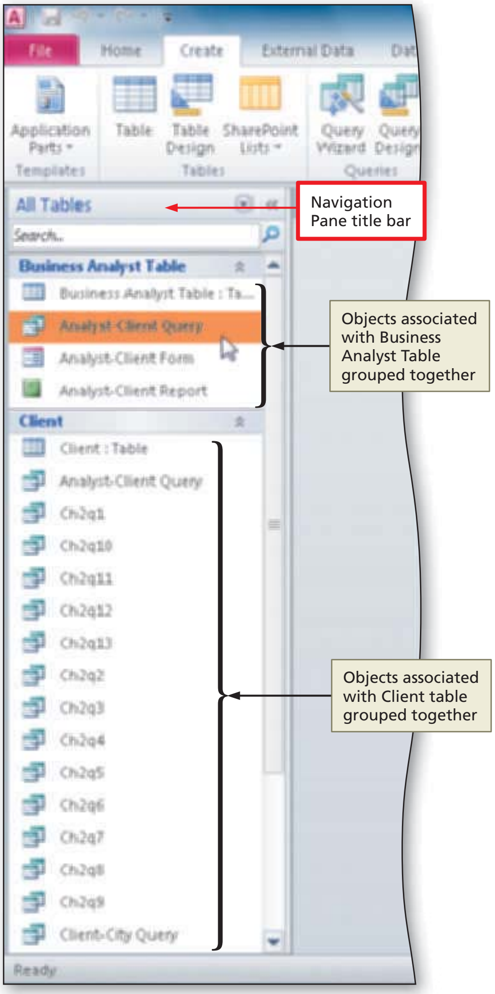

File
Home
Create
External Data
Application Parts
Table
Table Design
SharePoint Lists
Query Wizard
Query Design
Templates
Tables
Queries
All Tables
Navigation Pane title bar
Search...
Business Analyst Table
Business Analyst Table : Ta...
Analyst-Client Query
Analyst-Client Form
Analyst-Client Report
Objects associated with Business Analyst Table grouped together
Client
Client : Table
Analyst-Client Query
Ch2q1
Ch2q10
Ch2q11
Ch2q12
Ch2q13
Ch2q2
Ch2q3
Ch2q4
Ch2q5
Ch2q6
Ch2q7
Ch2q8
Ch2q9
Client-City Query
Objects associated with Client table grouped together
Ready

Figure 2–87

Experiment

- Select different Navigate To Category options to see the effect of the option. With each option you select, select different Filter By Group options to see the effect of the filtering. When you have finished experimenting, select the Object Type Navigate To Category option and the All Access Objects Filter By Group option.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

④

- If the Search bar does not appear, right-click the Navigation Pane and click Search Bar on the shortcut menu.
- Click in the Search bar box to produce an insertion point.
- Type `Cl` as the search string to restrict the objects displayed to only those containing the desired string (Figure 2–88).

⑤

- Click the Clear Search String button to remove the search string and redisplay all objects.

Q&A

Did I have to click the button to redisplay all objects? Couldn't I have simply erased the current string to achieve the same result?

You didn't have to click the button. You could have used the DELETE or BACKSPACE keys to erase the current search string.

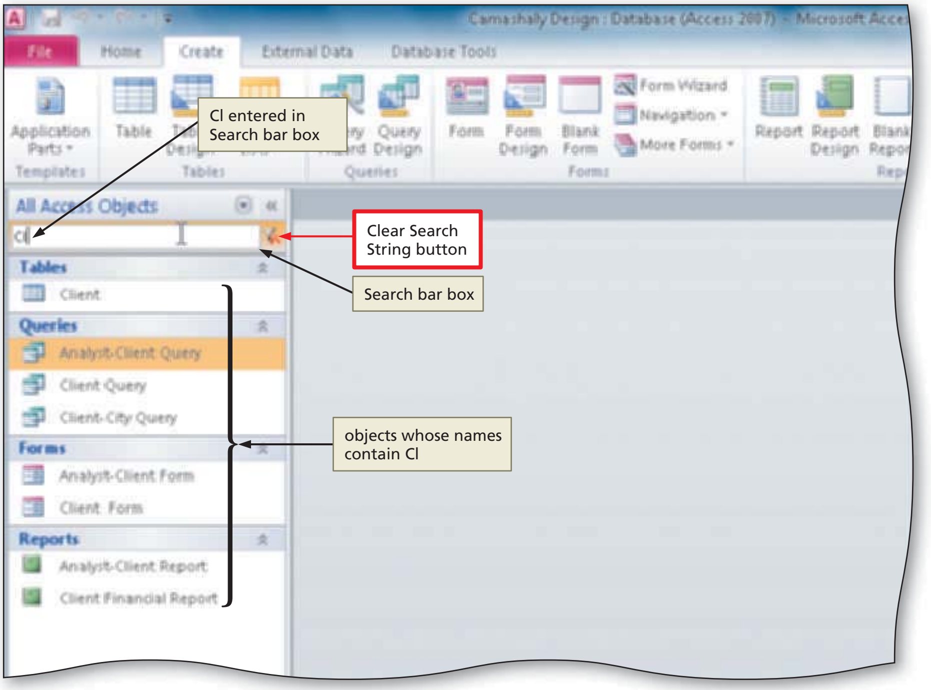


Figure 2–88

BTW

Quick Reference

For a table that lists how to complete the tasks covered in this book using the mouse, Ribbon, shortcut menu, and keyboard, see the Quick Reference Summary at the back of this book, or visit the Access 2010 Quick Reference Web page (scsite.com/ac2010/qr).

To Quit Access

The following steps quit Access.

① Click the Close button on the right side of the title bar to quit Access.

② If a Microsoft Access dialog box appears, click the Save button to save any changes made to the object since the last save.

Chapter Summary

In this chapter you have learned to create queries, enter fields, enter criteria, use text and numeric data in queries, use wildcards, use compound criteria, create parameter queries, sort data in queries, join tables in queries, perform calculations in queries, and create crosstab queries. You also learned to create a report and a form that used a query, to export a query, and to customize the Navigation Pane. The items listed below include all the new Access skills you have learned in this chapter.

1. Create a Query in Design View (AC 78)
2. Add Fields to the Design Grid (AC 79)
3. Use Text Data in a Criterion (AC 80)
4. Use a Wildcard (AC 83)
5. Use Criteria for a Field Not Included in the Results (AC 85)
6. Create and View a Parameter Query (AC 87)
7. Use a Parameter Query (AC 89)
8. Use a Number in a Criterion (AC 90)
9. Use a Comparison Operator in a Criterion (AC 91)
10. Use a Compound Criterion Involving AND (AC 92)
11. Use a Compound Criterion Involving OR (AC 93)
12. Clear the Design Grid (AC 95)
13. Sort Data in a Query (AC 96)
14. Omit Duplicates (AC 97)
15. Sort on Multiple Keys (AC 98)
16. Create a Top-Values Query (AC 99)
17. Join Tables (AC 102)
18. Change Join Properties (AC 105)
19. Create a Report Involving a Join (AC 106)

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

20. Create a Form for a Query (AC 109)
21. Export Data to Excel (AC 111)
22. Export Data to Word (AC 113)
23. Export Data to a Text File (AC 114)
24. Restrict the Records in a Join (AC 115)
25. Use a Calculated Field in a Query (AC 116)
26. Change a Caption (AC 118)
27. Calculate Statistics (AC 119)
28. Use Criteria in Calculating Statistics (AC 121)
29. Use Grouping (AC 122)
30. Create a Crosstab Query (AC 124)
31. Customize the Navigation Pane (AC 127)

If you have a SAM 2010 user profile, your instructor may have assigned an autogradable version of this assignment. If so, log into the SAM 2010 Web site at www.cengage.com/sam2010 to download the instruction and start files.

Learn It Online

Test your knowledge of chapter content and key terms.

Instructions: To complete the Learn It Online exercises, start your browser, click the Address bar, and then enter the Web address **`scsite.com/ac2010/learn`**. When the Access 2010 Learn It Online page is displayed, click the link for the exercise you want to complete and then read the instructions.

Chapter Reinforcement TF, MC, and SA

A series of true/false, multiple choice, and short answer questions that test your knowledge of the chapter content.

Flash Cards

An interactive learning environment where you identify chapter key terms associated with displayed definitions.

Practice Test

A series of multiple choice questions that test your knowledge of chapter content and key terms.

Who Wants To Be a Computer Genius?

An interactive game that challenges your knowledge of chapter content in the style of a television quiz show.

Wheel of Terms

An interactive game that challenges your knowledge of chapter key terms in the style of the television show *Wheel of Fortune*.

Crossword Puzzle Challenge

A crossword puzzle that challenges your knowledge of key terms presented in the chapter.

Apply Your Knowledge

Reinforce the skills and apply the concepts you learned in this chapter.

Using Wildcards in a Query, Creating a Parameter Query, Joining Tables, and Creating a Report

Instructions: Start Access. Open the Babbage CPA Firm database that you modified in Apply Your Knowledge in Chapter 1 on page AC 64. (If you did not complete this exercise, see your instructor for a copy of the modified database.)

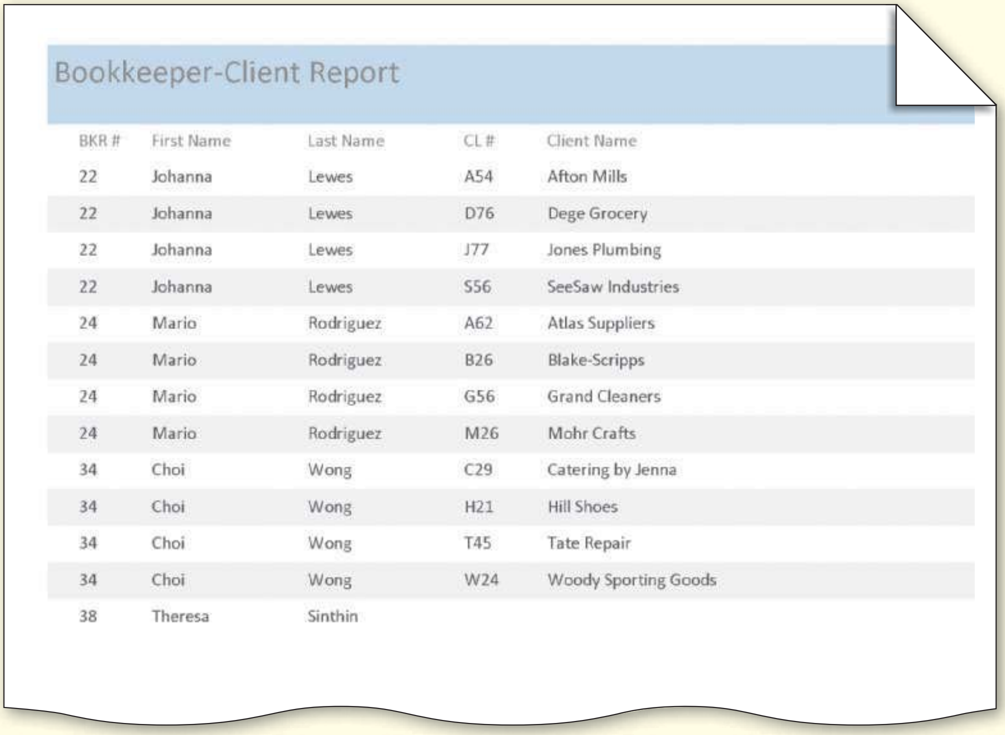
Perform the following tasks:

1. Create a query for the Client table and add the Client Number, Client Name, City, and Amount Paid fields to the design grid. Find all clients who live in cities that start with Bu. Save the query as Apply 2 Step 1 Query.

Continued >

Apply Your Knowledge *continued*

2. Create a query for the Client table and add the Client Number, Client Name, Bookkeeper Number, and Balance Due fields to the design grid. Sort the records in descending order by Balance Due. Add a criterion for the Bookkeeper Number field that allows the user to enter a different bookkeeper each time the query is run. Save the query as Apply 2 Step 2 Query.
3. Create a query that joins the Bookkeeper and the Client tables. Add the Bookkeeper Number, First Name, and Last Name fields from the Bookkeeper table and the Client Number and Client Name fields from the Client table. Sort the records in ascending order by Bookkeeper Number and Client Number. All bookkeepers should appear in the result, even if they currently have no clients. Save the query as Bookkeeper-Client Query.
4. Create the report shown in Figure 2–89. The report uses the Bookkeeper-Client Query.



Bookkeeper-Client Report

BKR #	First Name	Last Name	CL #	Client Name
22	Johanna	Lewes	A54	Afton Mills
22	Johanna	Lewes	D76	Dege Grocery
22	Johanna	Lewes	J77	Jones Plumbing
22	Johanna	Lewes	S56	SeeSaw Industries
24	Mario	Rodriguez	A62	Atlas Suppliers
24	Mario	Rodriguez	B26	Blake-Scripps
24	Mario	Rodriguez	G56	Grand Cleaners
24	Mario	Rodriguez	M26	Mohr Crafts
34	Choi	Wong	C29	Catering by Jenna
34	Choi	Wong	H21	Hill Shoes
34	Choi	Wong	T45	Tate Repair
34	Choi	Wong	W24	Woody Sporting Goods
38	Theresa	Sinthin		

Figure 2–89

5. Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

Extend Your Knowledge

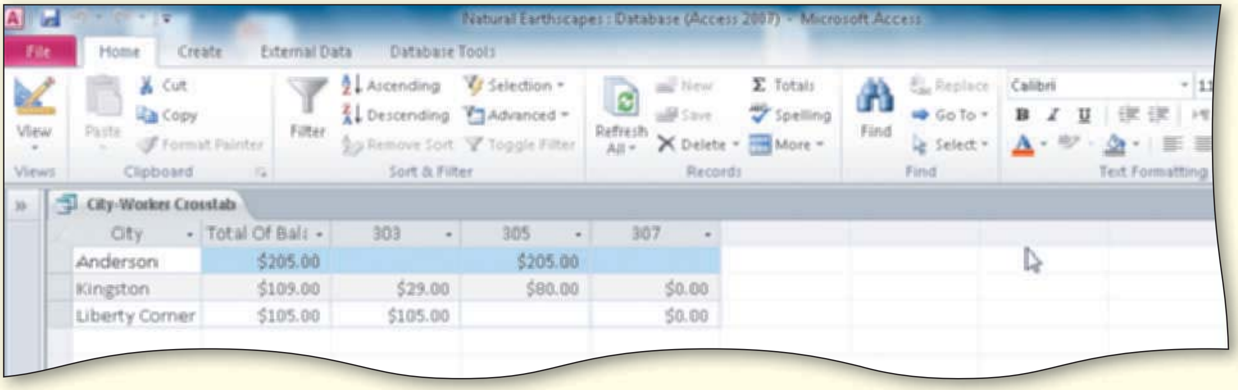
Extend the skills you learned in this chapter and experiment with new skills. You may need to use Help to complete the assignment.

Creating Crosstab Queries, Creating Queries Using Criteria, and Exporting a Query

Instructions: Start Access. Open the Natural Earthscapes database. See the inside back cover of this book for instructions for downloading the Data Files for Students, or see your instructor for information on accessing the files required in this book.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Natural Earthscapes is a small landscaping company that specializes in landscaping with native plants. The owners have created an Access database in which to store information about the customers they serve and the workers they employ. You will create the crosstab shown in Figure 2–90. You also will query the database using specified criteria.


Natural Earthscapes : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Views
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Clipboard
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Sort & Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Records
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Find
Calibri
Text Formatting
City-Worker Crosstab

City	Total Of Bal:	303	305	307
Anderson	$205.00		$205.00	
Kingston	$109.00	$29.00	$80.00	$0.00
Liberty Corner	$105.00	$105.00		$0.00

Figure 2–90

Perform the following tasks:

1. Create the crosstab query shown in Figure 2–90. The crosstab query groups the total of customers' balances by city and worker number.
2. Create a query to find all customers who do not live in Kingston. Include the Customer Number, Last Name, Balance, and Amount Paid fields in the design grid. Save the query as Extend 2 Step 2 Query.
3. Create a query to find all customers where the customer's first name is either Frances or Francis. Include the Customer Number, Last Name, First Name, Street, and City fields in the query results. Save the query as Extend 2 Step 3 Query.
4. Create a query to find all customers where the worker number is 303 or 305 and the balance is greater than $40.00. Include the Customer Number, Last Name, First Name, Balance, and Worker Number fields in the design grid. Use the IN operator in your query design. Save the query as Extend 2 Step 4 Query.
5. Export the City-Worker Crosstab as a Word file with the name City-Worker Crosstab.rtf and save the export steps.
6. Open the Customer table and change the balance for AB10 to $90.
7. Use the saved export steps to export the City-Worker Crosstab again. When asked if you want to replace the existing file, click Yes.
8. Change the database properties, as specified by your instructor. Submit the revised database and the exported RTF file in the format specified by your instructor.

Make It Right

Analyze a database and correct all errors and/or improve the design.

Correcting Errors in the Query Design

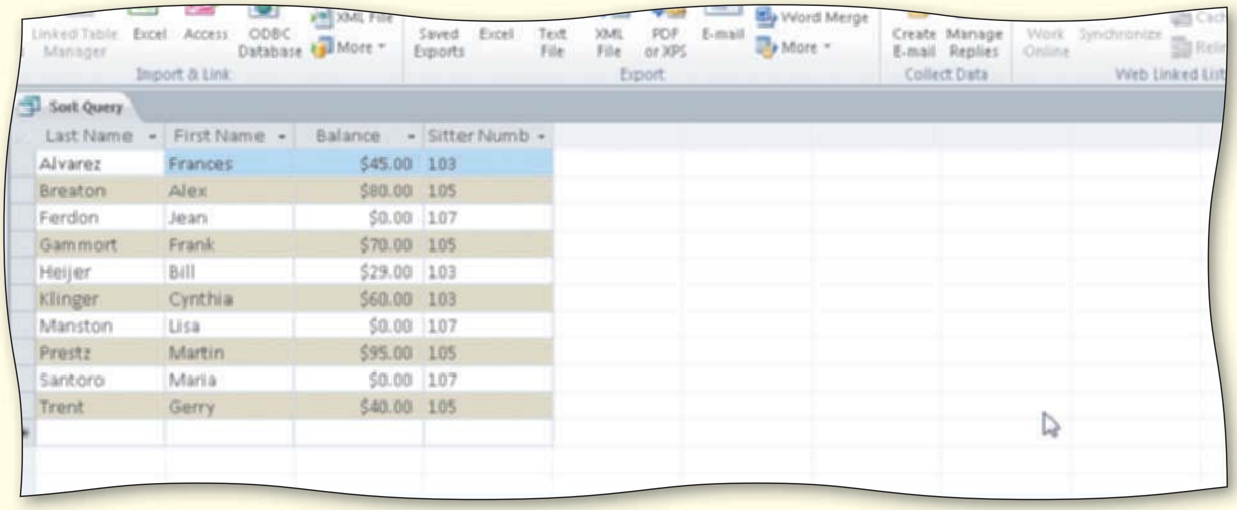
Instructions: Start Access. Open the Retired Pet Sitters database. See the inside back cover of this book for instructions for downloading the Data Files for Students, or see your instructor for information on accessing the files required in this book.

Continued >

Make It Right *continued*

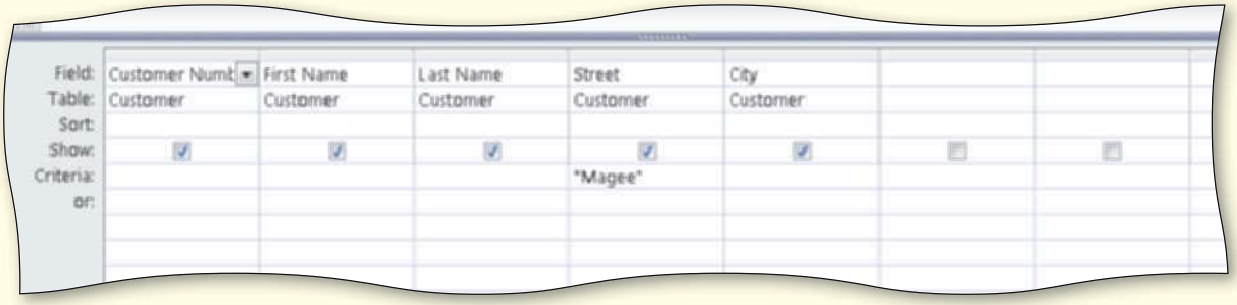
Retired Pet Sitters is a database maintained by a small pet-sitting business. The queries shown in Figure 2–91 contain a number of errors that need to be corrected before the queries run properly. The query shown in Figure 2–91a displays the query results in the proper order (Last Name, First Name, Balance, Sitter Number), but it is sorted incorrectly. The query results should be sorted by last name within sitter number in ascending order. Also, the caption for the Balance field should be Owed. Save the query with your changes.

When you try to run the query shown in Figure 2–91b, you get 0 results. You are trying to find all customers who live on Magee. Correct the error and save the query with your changes.



Last Name	First Name	Balance	Sitter Numb
Alvarez	Frances	$45.00	103
Breaton	Alex	$80.00	105
Ferdon	Jean	$0.00	107
Gammort	Frank	$70.00	105
Heijer	Bill	$29.00	103
Klinger	Cynthia	$60.00	103
Manston	Lisa	$0.00	107
Prestz	Martin	$95.00	105
Santoro	Maria	$0.00	107
Trent	Gerry	$40.00	105

Figure 2–91 (a) Incorrect Sort Query



Field:	Customer Numb	First Name	Last Name	Street	City		
Table:	Customer	Customer	Customer	Customer	Customer		
Sort:							
Show:	☑	☑	☑	☑	☑	☐	☐
Criteria:				"Magee"			
or:							

Figure 2–91 (b) Incorrect Criteria Query

Change the database properties, as specified by your instructor. Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

In the Lab

Design, create, modify, and/or use a database following the guidelines, concepts, and skills presented in this chapter. The assignments are listed in order of increasing difficulty.

Lab 1: Querying the ECO Clothesline Database

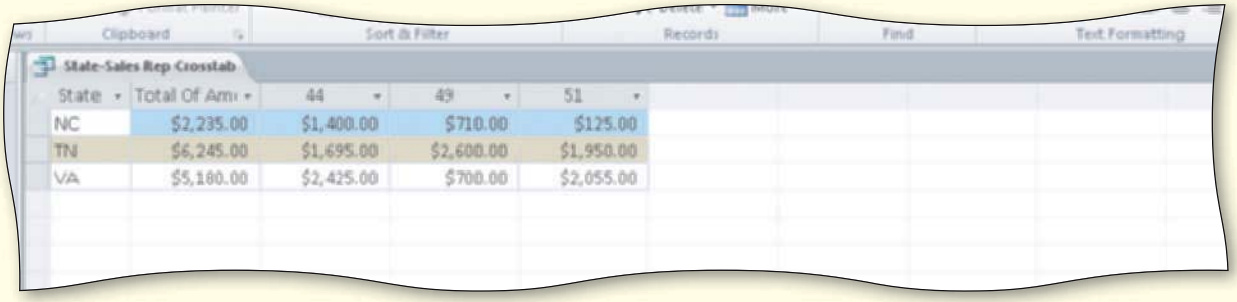
Problem: The management of ECO Clothesline has determined a number of questions it wants the database management system to answer. You must obtain answers to the questions posed by management.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Instructions: Use the database modified in the In the Lab 1 of Chapter 1 on page AC 66 for this assignment, or see your instructor for information on accessing the files required for this book.

Perform the following tasks:

1. Open the ECO Clothesline database and create a new query for the Customer table that includes the Customer Number, Customer Name, Amount Paid, and Sales Rep Number fields in the design grid for all customers where the sales rep number is 49. Save the query as Lab 2-1 Step 1 Query.
2. Create a query that includes the Customer Number, Customer Name, and Amount Paid fields for all customers located in Virginia (VA) with a paid amount greater than $1,000.00. Save the query as Lab 2-1 Step 2 Query.
3. Create a query that includes the Customer Number, Customer Name, Street, and City fields for all customers whose names begin with T. Save the query as Lab 2-1 Step 3 Query.
4. Create a query that lists all cities in ascending order. Each city should appear only once. Save the query as Lab 2-1 Step 4 Query.
5. Create a query that allows the user to enter the city to search when the query is run. The query results should display the Customer Number, Customer Name, Balance, and Amount Paid fields. Test the query by searching for those records where the client is located in Ashton. Save the query as Lab 2-1 Step 5 Query.
6. Include the Customer Number, Customer Name, and Balance fields in the design grid. Sort the records in descending order by the Balance field. Display only the top 25 percent of the records in the query result. Save the query as Lab 2-1 Step 6 Query.
7. Join the Sales Rep and the Customer table. Include the Sales Rep Number, First Name, and Last Name fields from the Sales Rep table. Include the Customer Number, Customer Name, and Balance from the Customer table. Sort the records in ascending order by sales rep's last name and customer name. All sales reps should appear in the result even if they currently have no customers. Save the query as Lab 2-1 Step 7 Query.
8. Open the Lab 2-1 Step 7 Query in Design view and remove the Sales Rep table. Add the Amount Paid field to the design grid. Calculate the total of the balance and amount paid amounts. Assign the alias Total Amount to the calculated field. Change the caption for the Balance field to Due. Save the query as Lab 2-1 Step 8 Query.
9. Create a query to display the average balance amount for all customers. Save the query as Lab 2-1 Step 9 Query.
10. Create a query to display the average balance amount for sales rep 51. Save the query as Lab 2-1 Step 10 Query.
11. Create a query to display the average balance amount for each sales rep. Save the query as Lab 2-1 Step 11 Query.
12. Create the crosstab shown in Figure 2–92. The crosstab groups the total of customers' amount paid amounts by state and sales rep number. Save the crosstab as State-Sales Rep Crosstab.
13. Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.



State	Total Of Am	44	49	51
NC	$2,235.00	$1,400.00	$710.00	$125.00
TN	$6,245.00	$1,695.00	$2,600.00	$1,950.00
VA	$5,180.00	$2,425.00	$700.00	$2,055.00

Figure 2–92

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

In the Lab

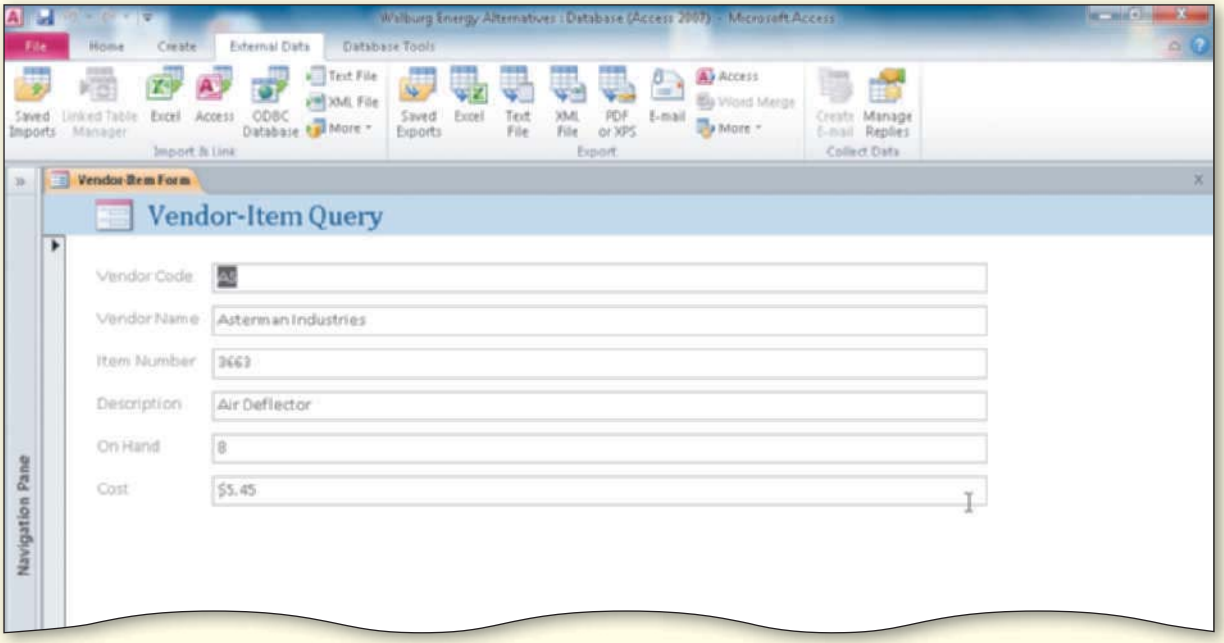
Lab 2: Querying the Walburg Energy Alternatives Database

Problem: The manager of the Walburg Energy Alternatives store has determined a number of questions he wants the database management system to answer. You must obtain answers to the questions posed by the manager.

Instructions: Use the database created in the In the Lab 2 of Chapter 1 on page AC 67 for this assignment, or see your instructor for information on accessing the files required for this book.

Perform the following tasks:

1. Open the Walburg Energy Alternatives database and create a query that includes all fields and all records in the Item table. There should be only one column in the design grid. Name the query Lab 2-2 Step 1 Query.
2. Create a query that includes the Item Number, Description, Cost, and Vendor Code fields for all items where the vendor code is JM. Save the query as Lab 2-2 Step 2 Query.
3. Create a query that includes the Item Number and Description fields for all items where the description starts with the letters, En. Save the query as Lab 2-2 Step 3 Query.
4. Create a query that includes the Item Number and Description fields for all items with a cost less than $4.00. Save the query as Lab 2-2 Step 4 Query.
5. Create a query that includes the Item Number and Description fields for all items with a selling price greater than $20.00. Save the query as Lab 2-2 Step 5 Query.
6. Create a query that includes all fields for all items with a vendor code of AS and where the number on hand is fewer than 10. Save the query as Lab 2-2 Step 6 Query.
7. Create a query that includes all fields for all items that have a selling price greater than $10.00 or a vendor code of JM. Save the query as Lab 2-2 Step 7 Query.
8. Join the Vendor table and the Item table. Include the Vendor Code and Vendor Name fields from the Vendor table and the Item Number, Description, On Hand, and Cost fields from the Item table. Sort the records in ascending order by item number within vendor code. Save the query as Vendor-Item Query.
9. Create the form shown in Figure 2–93. The form uses the Vendor-Item Query.


Walburg Energy Alternatives : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Saved Imports
Linked Table Manager
Excel
Access
ODBC Database
Text File
XML File
More
Import & Link
Saved Exports
Excel
Text File
XML File
PDF or XPS
E-mail
Access
Word Merge
More
Export
Create E-mail
Manage Replies
Collect Data
Vendor-Item Form
Navigation Pane

Vendor-Item Query

Vendor Code	AS
Vendor Name	Asterman Industries
Item Number	3663
Description	Air Deflector
On Hand	8
Cost	$5.45

Figure 2–93

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

10. Create a query that includes the Item Number, Description, On Hand, and Cost fields. Calculate the inventory value (on hand*cost) for all records in the table. Assign the alias Inventory Value to the calculated field. Change the caption for the On Hand column to In Stock. Format the Inventory Value field as currency with two decimal places. Sort the records in descending order by inventory value. Save the query as Lab 2-2 Step 10 Query.
11. Create a query that calculates and displays the average cost of all items. Save the query as Lab 2-2 Step 11 Query.
12. Create a query that calculates and displays the average cost of items grouped by vendor code. Save the query as Lab 2-2 Step 12 Query.
13. Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

In the Lab

Lab 3: Querying the Philamar Training Database

Problem: The management of Philamar Training has determined a number of questions it wants the database management system to answer. You must obtain answers to the questions posed by management.

Instructions: Use the database created in the In the Lab 3 of Chapter 1 on page AC 70 for this assignment, or see your instructor for information on accessing the files required for this book. For Part 1 and Part 3, save each query using a format similar to the following: Lab 2-3 Part 1a Query, Lab 2-3 Part 3a Query, and so on. Submit the revised database and the Trainer-Client Query.xlsx file in the format specified by your instructor.

Instructions Part 1: Create a new query for the Client table and include the Client Number, Client Name, Amount Paid, and Current Due fields in the design grid. Create queries that answer the following questions: (a) Which clients' names begin with F? (b) Which clients are located in Kingston? (c) Which clients have a current due amount of $0.00? (d) Which clients have an amount paid amount between $5,000.00 and $10,000.00? (e) Which two clients have the highest current due amounts? (f) For each client, what is the total of the current due and amount paid?

Instructions Part 2: Join the Trainer and the Client table. In the design grid, include the Trainer Number, First Name, and Last Name from the Trainer table and the Client Number, Client Name, and Amount Paid from the Client table. Sort the records in ascending order by trainer number and client number. All trainers should appear in the result, even if they currently have no clients. Save the query as Trainer-Client Query. Export the query to Excel and save the export steps.

Instructions Part 3: Create queries to calculate the following statistics: (a) What is the average current due amount for clients assigned to trainer 42? (b) What is the total current due amount for all clients? (c) What is the total amount paid for each trainer?

Cases and Places

Apply your creative thinking and problem solving skills to design and implement a solution.

Note: To complete these assignments, you may be required to use the Data Files for Students. See the inside back cover of this book for instructions on downloading the Data Files for Students, or contact your instructor for information about accessing the required files.

1: Querying the Chamber of Commerce Database

Academic

Use the Chamber of Commerce database you created in Cases and Places 1 in Chapter 1 on page AC 72 for this assignment. Use the concepts and techniques presented in this chapter to create queries for the following:

a. Find the advertiser name and address of all advertisers located on Main.

Continued >

Cases and Places *continued*

b. Find the advertiser number, advertiser name, balance, and amount paid for all advertisers whose balance is greater than $300 or whose amount paid is $0.00.
c. Find the total of the balance and amount paid amounts for each advertiser. Show the advertiser number, advertiser name, and total amount. Sort the results in descending order by total.
d. Find the advertiser number, advertiser name, balance, and amount paid for all advertisers whose balance is between $200 and $500.
e. Create a parameter query for the Advertiser table that will allow the user to enter a different postal code each time the query is run. The user should see all fields in the query result.
f. Find the ad rep for each advertiser. List the ad rep number, last name, first name, advertiser number, advertiser name, and balance. Sort the results in ascending order by ad rep number and advertiser number.
g. Determine the total of the balance amounts and amount paid amounts for all advertisers.

Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

2: Querying the Consignment Database

Personal

Use the Consignment database you created in Cases and Places 2 in Chapter 1 on page AC 72 for this assignment. Use the concepts and techniques presented in this chapter to create queries for the following:

a. Find the item number and description of all items that contain the word, Table.
b. Find the item number, description, condition, and date of the item that has the earliest posting date.
c. Find the total price (price*quantity) of each item available for sale. Show the item number, item description, and total price.
d. Find the seller of each item. Show the seller's first name and last name as well as the item description, price, quantity, and date posted. Sort the results by item description within seller last name.
e. Create a report based on the query you created in Step d. Include all fields in the report.
f. Modify the query you created in Step d to restrict retrieval to those items with a price greater than $50.00.
g. Find all items posted between March 1, 2012, and March 4, 2012. The user should see all fields in the query result.

Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

3: Querying the Senior Care Database

Professional

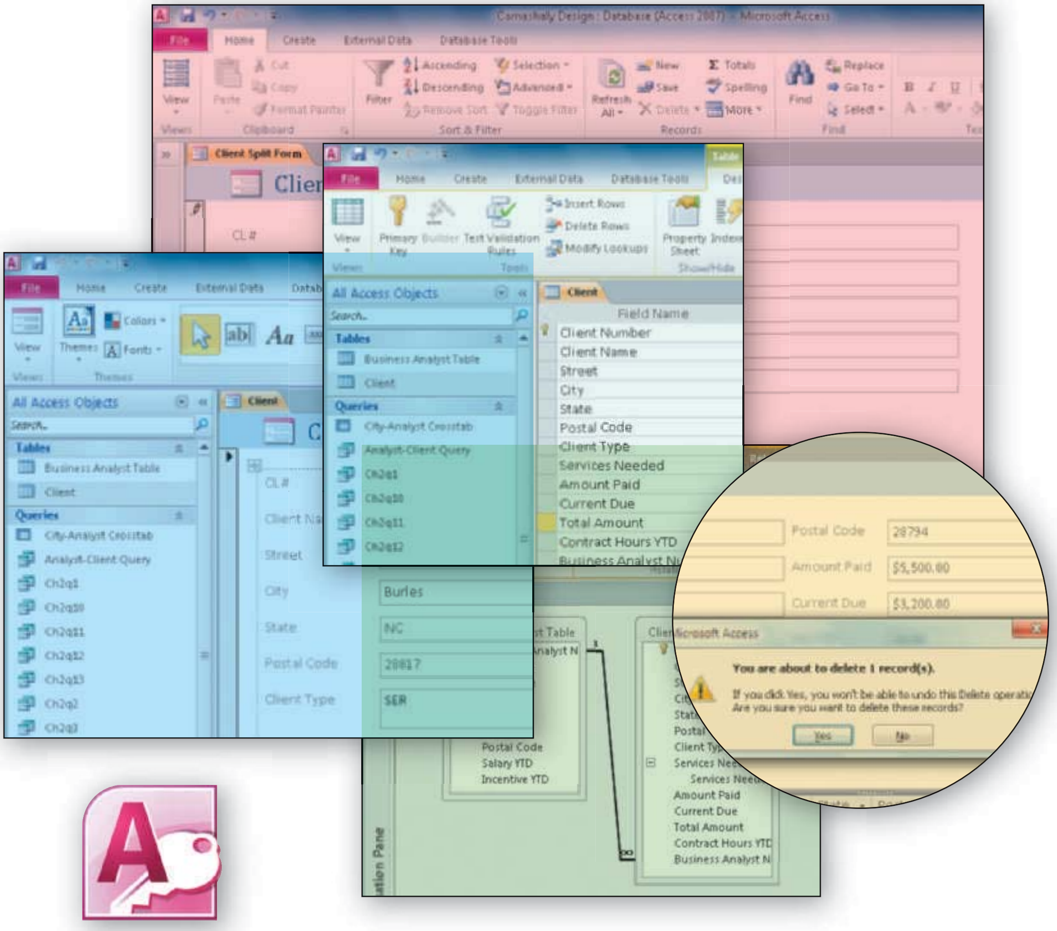
Use the Senior Care database you created in Cases and Places 3 in Chapter 1 on page AC 72 for this assignment. Use the concepts and techniques presented in this chapter to create queries for the following:

a. Find the first name, last name, and address of all clients where the street name begins with the letter U.
b. Find the client number, last name, first name, balance, and amount paid for all clients whose balance is $0.00 or whose amount paid is $0.00.
c. Find the total of the balance and amount paid amounts for each client. Show the client number, client last name, client first name, and total amount. Sort the results in descending order by total.
d. Find the helper for each client. List the helper number, helper last name, helper first name, client number, client last name, and client first name. Sort the results in ascending order by helper number and client number.
e. Create a report for the query created in Step d. Include all fields except the helper first name in the report. Create a form for the query created in Step d.
f. Export the query created in Step d as a text file.
g. Find the highest and lowest balances.

Submit the exported text file and revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3 Maintaining a Database


Client Split Form
All Access Objects
Tables
Business Analyst Table
Client
Queries
City-Analyst Crosstab
Analyst-Client Query
Field Name
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Client Type
Services Needed
Amount Paid
Current Due
Total Amount
Contract Hours YTD
Microsoft Access
Yes
No

You are about to delete 1 record(s).

If you click Yes, you won't be able to undo this Delete operati
Are you sure you want to delete these records?

Objectives

You will have mastered the material in this chapter when you can:

- Add, change, and delete records
- Search for records
- Filter records
- Update a table design
- Use action queries to update records
- Use delete queries to delete records
- Specify validation rules, default values, and formats
- Create and use single-valued lookup fields
- Create and use multivalued lookup fields
- Add new fields to an existing report
- Format a datasheet
- Specify referential integrity
- Use a subdatasheet
- Sort records

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3

Maintaining a Database

Introduction

Once a database has been created and loaded with data, it must be maintained. **Maintaining the database** means modifying the data to keep it up to date by adding new records, changing the data for existing records, and deleting records. Updating can include mass updates or mass deletions, that is, updates to, or deletions of, many records at the same time.

BTW

Database Backup

If you are doing mass changes to a database, be sure to back up the database prior to doing the updates.

Maintenance of a database also can involve the need to **restructure the database** periodically, that is, to change the database structure. Restructuring can include adding new fields to a table, changing the characteristics of existing fields, and removing existing fields. Restructuring also includes the creation of validation rules and referential integrity. Validation rules ensure the validity of the data in the database, whereas referential integrity ensures the validity of the relationships. Maintaining a database also can include filtering records, a process that ensures that only the records that satisfy some criterion appear when viewing and updating the data in a table. Changing the appearance of a datasheet is a maintenance activity.

Project — Maintaining a Database

BTW

The Ribbon and Screen Resolution

Access may change how the groups and buttons within the groups appear on the Ribbon, depending on the computer's screen resolution. Thus, your Ribbon may look different from the ones in this book if you are using a screen resolution other than 1024 × 768.

Camashaly Design faces the task of keeping its database up to date. As the company takes on new clients and business analysts, it will need to add new records, make changes to existing records, and delete records. Camashaly believes that it can serve its clients better by changing the structure of the database to categorize the clients by type. The company will do this by adding a Client Type field to the Client table. Business analysts believe they can maintain better client relationships if the database includes the services that are of interest to clients. The company will do so by adding a Services Needed field to the Client table. Because clients may need more than one service, this field will be a multivalued field, which is a field that can store multiple values or entries. Along with these changes, Camashaly staff wants to change the appearance of a datasheet when displaying data.

Camashaly would like the ability to make mass updates, that is, to update or delete many records in a single operation. It wants rules that make sure users can enter only valid, or appropriate, data into the database. Camashaly also wants to ensure that the database cannot contain the name of a client who is not associated with a specific business analyst. A final goal for Camashaly is to improve the efficiency of certain types of processing, specifically, sorting and retrieving data.

Figure 3–1 summarizes some of the various types of activities involved in maintaining the Camashaly Design database.

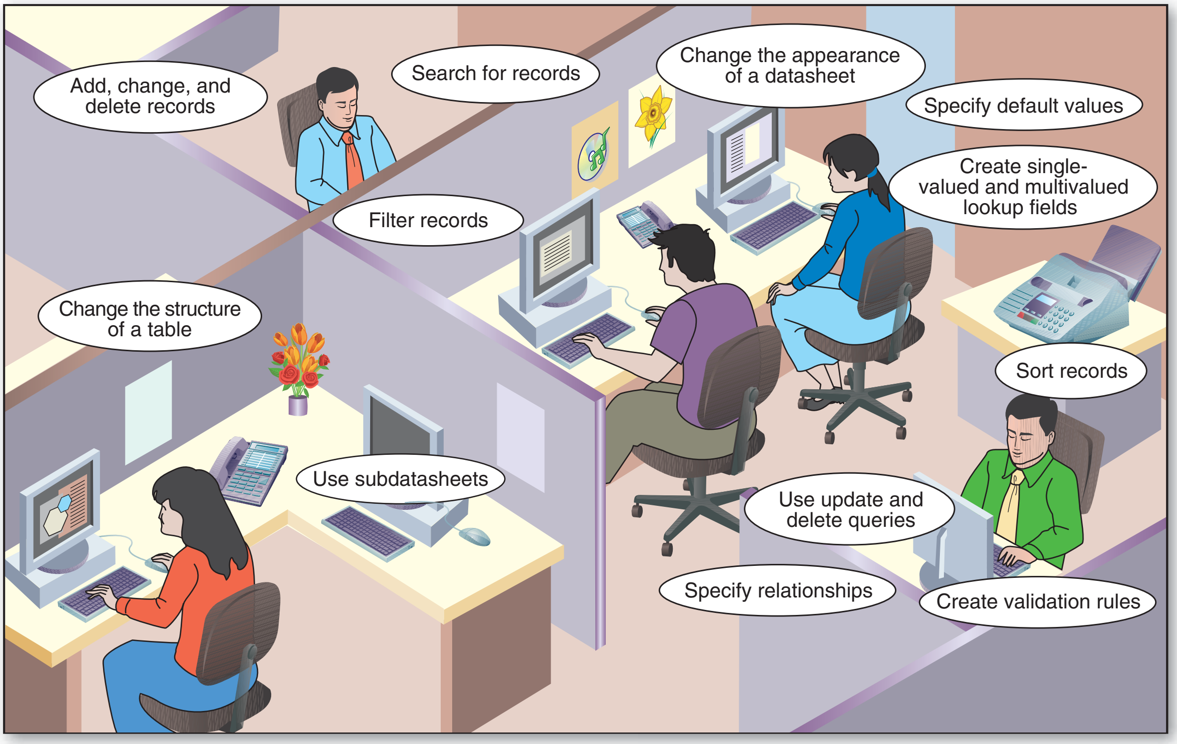

Add, change, and delete records
Search for records
Change the appearance of a datasheet
Specify default values
Create single-valued and multivalued lookup fields
Filter records
Change the structure of a table
Sort records
Use subdatasheets
Use update and delete queries
Specify relationships
Create validation rules

Figure 3–1

Overview

As you read through this chapter, you will learn how to maintain a database by performing these general tasks:

- Add, change, and delete records.
- Filter records so that only those records that satisfy some criterion appear in a datasheet or form.
- Change the structure of a table.
- Make mass changes to a table.
- Create validation rules to ensure that the database contains only valid data.
- Use single-valued and multivalued lookup fields.
- Update forms and reports to reflect changes to the table structure.
- Change the appearance of a datasheet.
- Enforce relationships by creating referential integrity.
- Order records.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Plan Ahead

Database Maintenance Decisions

When maintaining a database in Access, you must consider how the database is being used and how it could be improved. The decisions you make will affect the modification of records, fields, default settings, formatting, and table relationships. To maintain a database, you should follow these general guidelines:

1. **Determine when it is necessary to add, change, or delete records in a database.** Decide how often updates are necessary. You might need to update the database on a regular schedule, or only as needed, depending on your needs. Also determine whether to make the updates to individual records or whether mass updates would be more efficient.
2. **Determine whether you should filter records.** For each situation where a user will be working with a table in the database, examine whether it might be desirable to have the records filtered, that is, to have only those records that satisfy some criterion appear.
3. **Determine whether additional fields are necessary or whether existing fields should be deleted.** Have there been any changes to the initial requirements that would require the addition of a field (or fields) to one of the tables? If so, you will need to add the field to the appropriate table. Also, now that the database has been in operation for a period of time, determine whether all the fields actually are being used. If some fields are not in use, verify that they are, in fact, no longer needed. If so, you can delete the field from the table.
4. **Determine whether validation rules, default values, and formats are necessary.** Can you improve the accuracy of the data entry process by enforcing data validation? What values are allowed for a particular field? For example, client name data should not be allowed in a city field. Are there some fields in which one particular value is used more than another? You can control the values that are entered in a field by modifying the table design to include default values, formats, and validation rules.
5. **Determine whether changes to the format of a datasheet are desirable.** Do you want to modify the appearance of the Datasheet view of your tables? It is a good idea to be consistent throughout all your tables except in special circumstances.
6. **Identify related tables in order to implement relationships between the tables.** Examine the database design you created earlier to identify related tables. Is there a one-to-many relationship between the tables? If so, which table is the one table? Which table is the many table? For each pair of related tables, you will need to make decisions about the implementation of the relationship between the tables.

When necessary, more specific details concerning the above decisions and/or actions are presented at appropriate points in the chapter. The chapter also will identify the use of these guidelines in database maintenance tasks such as those shown in Figure 3–1.

To Start Access

For an introduction to Windows 7 and instruction about how to perform basic Windows 7 tasks, read the Office 2010 and Windows 7 chapter at the beginning of this book, where you can learn how to resize windows, change screen resolution, create folders, move and rename files, use Windows Help, and much more.

The following steps, which assume Windows 7 is running, start Access based on a typical installation. You may need to ask your instructor how to start Access for your computer. For a detailed example of the procedure summarized below, refer to the Office 2010 and Windows 7 chapter at the beginning of this book.

1. Click the Start button on the Windows 7 taskbar to display the Start menu.
2. Type `Microsoft Access` as the search text in the 'Search programs and files' text box and watch the search results appear on the Start menu.
3. Click Microsoft Access 2010 in the search results on the Start menu to start Access.
4. If the Access window is not maximized, click the Maximize button next to the Close button on its title bar to maximize the window.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Open a Database from Access

In Chapter 1, you created and saved your database on a USB flash drive using the file name, Camashaly Design. The following steps open the Camashaly Design database from the Access folder in the CIS 101 folder on the USB flash drive. For a detailed example of the procedure summarized below, refer to the Office 2010 and Windows 7 chapter at the beginning of this book.

1. With your USB flash drive connected to one of the computer's USB ports, click File on the Ribbon to open the Backstage view.
2. Click Open in the Backstage view to display the Open dialog box.
3. Navigate to the location of the file to be opened (in this case, the USB flash drive, then to the CIS 101 folder [or your class folder], and then to the Access folder).
4. Click Camashaly Design to select the file to be opened.
5. Click the Open button (Open dialog box) to open the selected file and display the opened database in the Access window.
6. If a Security Warning appears, click the Enable Content option button.

For an introduction to Office 2010 and instruction about how to perform basic tasks in Office 2010 programs, read the Office 2010 and Windows 7 chapter at the beginning of this book, where you can learn how to start a program, use the Ribbon, save a file, open a file, quit a program, use Help, and much more.

Updating Records

Keeping the data in a database up to date requires updating records in three ways: adding new records, changing the data in existing records, and deleting existing records.

Adding Records

In Chapter 1, you added records to a database using Datasheet view; that is, as you added records, the records appeared on the screen in a datasheet. The data looked like a table. When you need to add additional records, you can use the same techniques.

In Chapter 1, you used a simple form to view records. You also can use a **split form**, a form that allows you to simultaneously view both simple form and datasheet views of the data. You can use either portion of a split form to add or update records. To add new records, change existing records, or delete records, you use the same techniques you used in Datasheet view.

BTW

Q&As

For a complete list of the Q&As found in many of the step-by-step sequences in this book, visit the Access 2010 Q&A Web page (scsite.com/ac2010/qa).

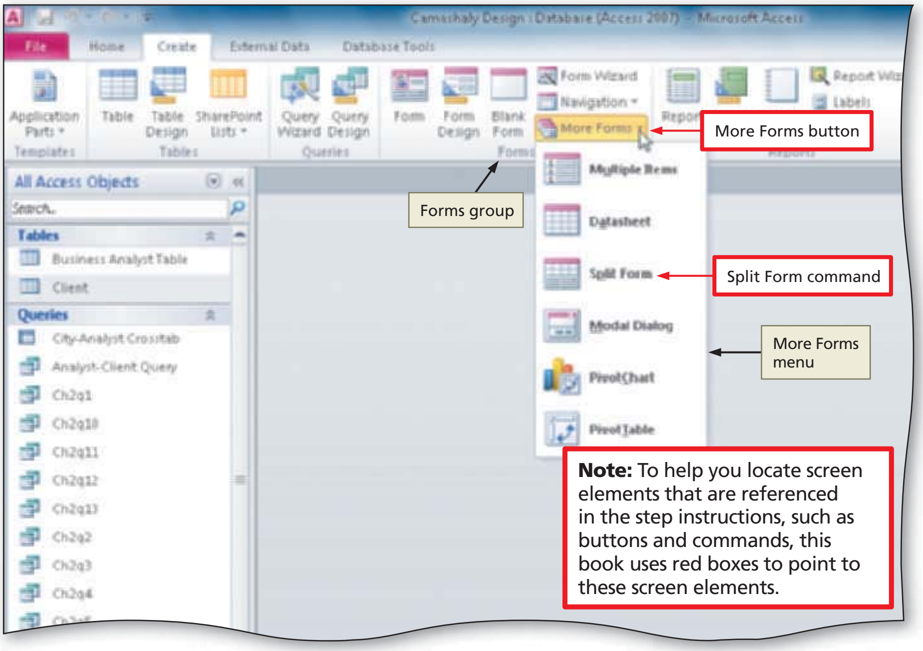
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Create a Split Form

The following steps create a split form.

1

- Open the Navigation Pane if it is currently closed.
- If necessary, click the Client table in the Navigation Pane to select it.
- Click Create on the Ribbon to display the Create tab.
- Click the More Forms button (Create tab | Forms group) to display the More Forms menu (Figure 3–2).


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Application Parts
Templates
Table
Table Design
SharePoint Lists
Tables
Query Wizard
Query Design
Queries
Form
Form Design
Blank Form
Forms
Form Wizard
Navigation
More Forms
Report Wizard
Labels
Reports
All Access Objects
Search...
Tables
Business Analyst Table
Client
Queries
City-Analyst Crosstab
Analyst-Client Query
Ch2q1
Ch2q10
Ch2q11
Ch2q12
Ch2q13
Ch2q2
Ch2q3
Ch2q4
Multiple Items
Datasheet
Split Form
Modal Dialog
PivotChart
PivotTable

More Forms button

Forms group

Split Form command

More Forms menu

Note: To help you locate screen elements that are referenced in the step instructions, such as buttons and commands, this book uses red boxes to point to these screen elements.

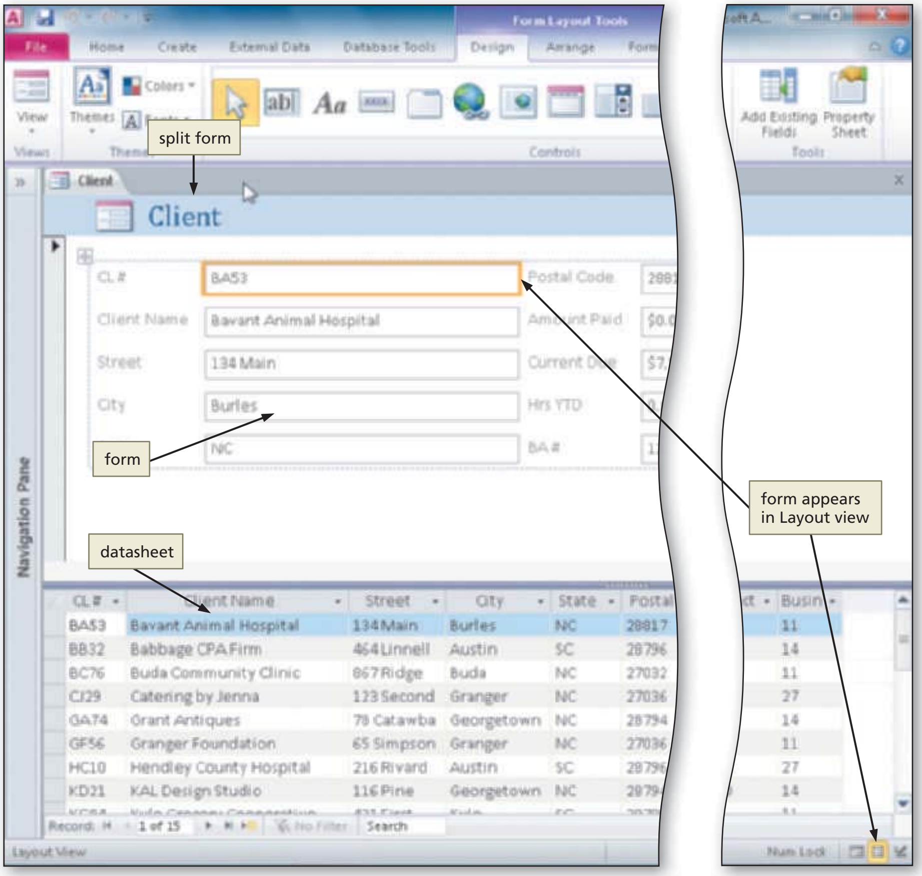
Figure 3–2

2

- Click Split Form to create a split form.
- Close the Navigation Pane (Figure 3–3).

Q&A Is the form automatically saved the way the report was created when I used the Report Wizard?

No. You will need to take specific actions if you want to save the form.


Form Layout Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
View
Views
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Themes
Controls
Add Existing Fields
Property Sheet
Tools
Navigation Pane
Client
Record: 1 of 15
No Filter
Search
Layout View
Num Lock

split form

Client

CL # BA53

Client Name Bavant Animal Hospital

Street 134 Main

City Burles

NC

Postal Code 2881

Amount Paid $0.0

Current Due $7,

Hrs YTD 0.

BA # 1

form

datasheet

form appears in Layout view

CL #	Client Name	Street	City	State	Postal	Busin
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	134 Main	Burles	NC	28817	11
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	464 Linnell	Austin	SC	28796	14
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	867 Ridge	Buda	NC	27032	11
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	123 Second	Granger	NC	27036	27
GA74	Grant Antiques	78 Catawba	Georgetown	NC	28794	14
GF56	Granger Foundation	65 Simpson	Granger	NC	27036	11
HC10	Hendley County Hospital	216 Rivard	Austin	SC	28796	27
KD21	KAL Design Studio	116 Pine	Georgetown	NC	2879	14

Figure 3–3

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3

- If the form appears in Layout view, click the Form View button on the Access Status bar to display the form in Form view (Figure 3–4).

Experiment

- Click the various Navigation buttons (First record, Next record, Previous record, Last record, and New (blank) record) to see each button's effect. Click the Current Record box, change the record number, and press the ENTER key to see how to move to a specific record.

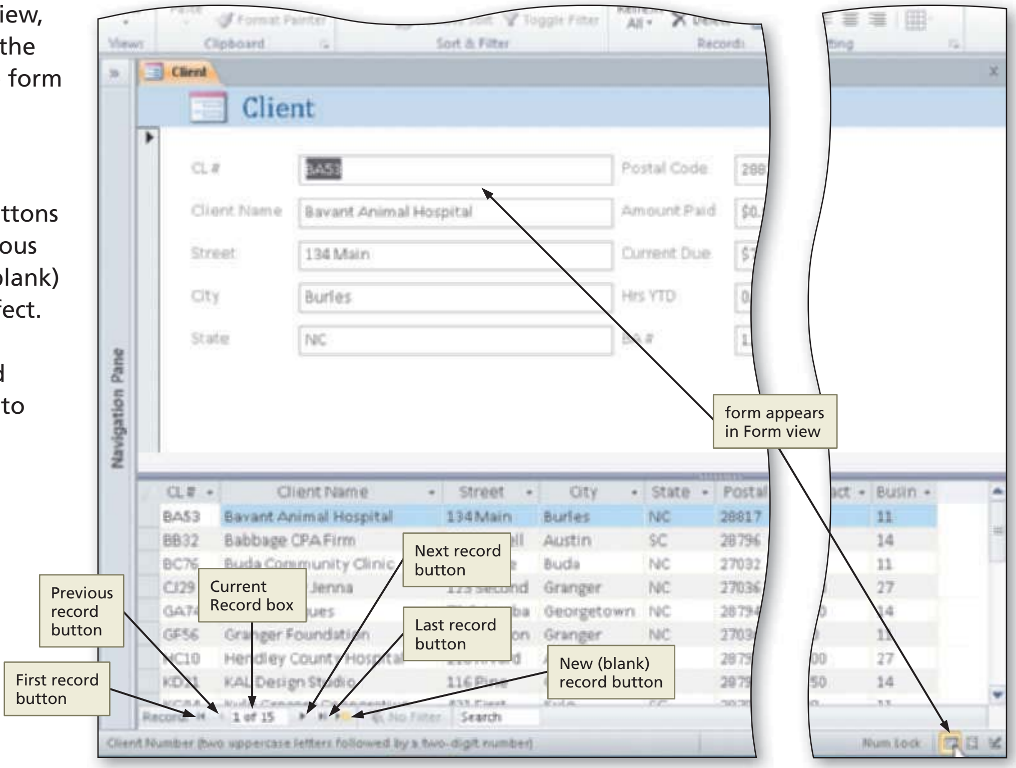

form appears in Form view
Next record button
Current Record box
Previous record button
Last record button
New (blank) record button
First record button

Figure 3–4

4

- Click the Save button on the Quick Access Toolbar to display the Save As dialog box.
- Type `Client Split Form` as the form name (Figure 3–5).

5

- Click the OK button (Save As dialog box) to save the form.

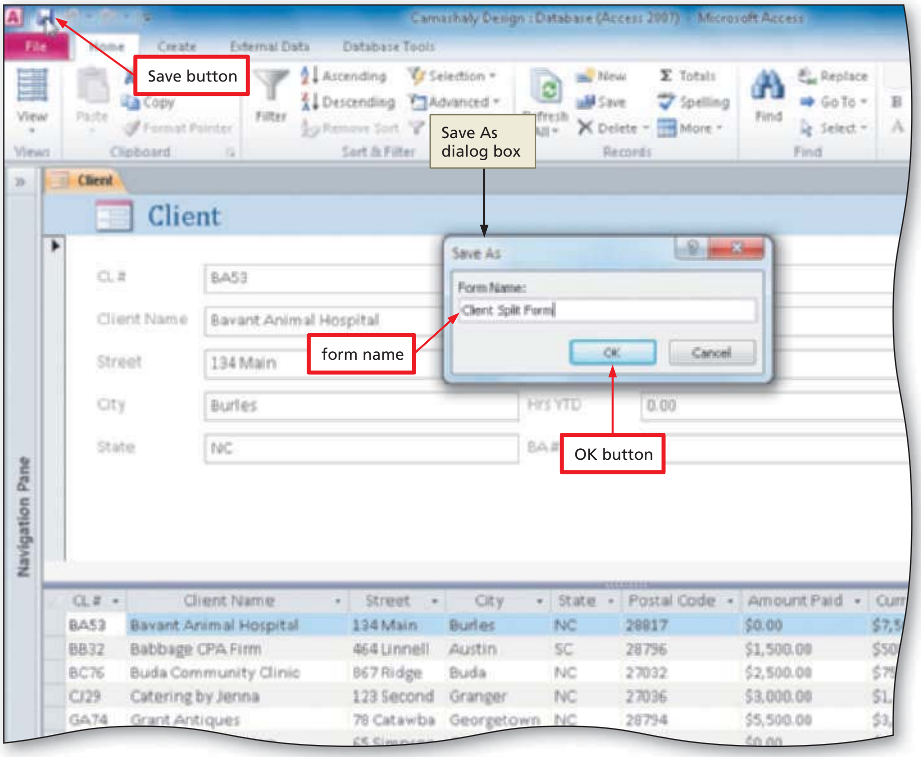

Save button
Save As dialog box
form name
OK button

Figure 3–5

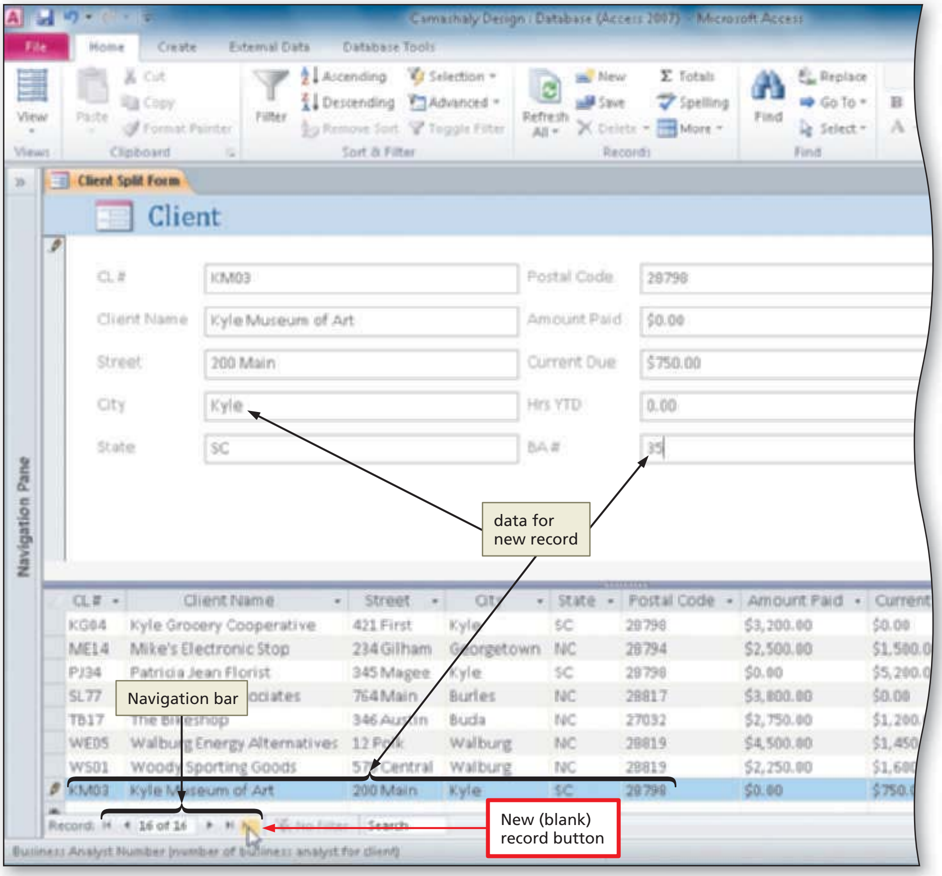
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Use a Form to Add Records

Once a form or split form is open in Form view, you can add records using the same techniques you used to add records in Datasheet view. The changes you make on the form are automatically made on the datasheet. You do not need to take any special action. The following steps use the split form that you just created to add records.

1

- Click the 'New (blank) record' button on the Navigation bar to enter a new record, and then type the data for the new record, as shown in Figure 3–6. Press the TAB key after typing the data in each field, except after typing the data for the final field (Business Analyst Number).


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Find
Navigation Pane
Client Split Form
Client
data for new record
Navigation bar
New (blank) record button
Record: 16 of 16
No Filter
Search

CL #	KM03	Postal Code	28798
Client Name	Kyle Museum of Art	Amount Paid	$0.00
Street	200 Main	Current Due	$750.00
City	Kyle	Hrs YTD	0.00
State	SC	BA #	35

CL #	Client Name	Street	City	State	Postal Code	Amount Paid	Current
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	421 First	Kyle	SC	28798	$3,200.00	$0.00
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	234 Gilham	Georgetown	NC	28794	$2,500.00	$1,580.0
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	345 Magee	Kyle	SC	28798	$0.00	$5,200.0
SL77	[illegible]ociates	764 Main	Burles	NC	28817	$3,800.00	$0.00
TB17	The Bikeshop	346 Austin	Buda	NC	27032	$2,750.00	$1,200.
WE05	Walburg Energy Alternatives	12 Polk	Walburg	NC	28819	$4,500.00	$1,450
WS01	Woody Sporting Goods	578 Central	Walburg	NC	28819	$2,250.00	$1,600
KM03	Kyle Museum of Art	200 Main	Kyle	SC	28798	$0.00	$750.0

Business Analyst Number (number of business analyst for client)

Figure 3–6

2

- Press the TAB key to complete the entry of the record.
- Close the form.

Other Ways

1. Click New button (Home tab | Records group)
2. Press CTRL+PLUS SIGN (+)

To Search for a Record

In the database environment, **searching** means looking for records that satisfy some criteria. Looking for the client whose number is GF56 is an example of searching. The queries in Chapter 2 also were examples of searching. Access had to locate those records that satisfied the criteria.

However, you can perform a search in Form view or Datasheet view without creating a query. To update client GF56, for example, first you need to find the client.

The following steps show how to search for the client whose number is GF56.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

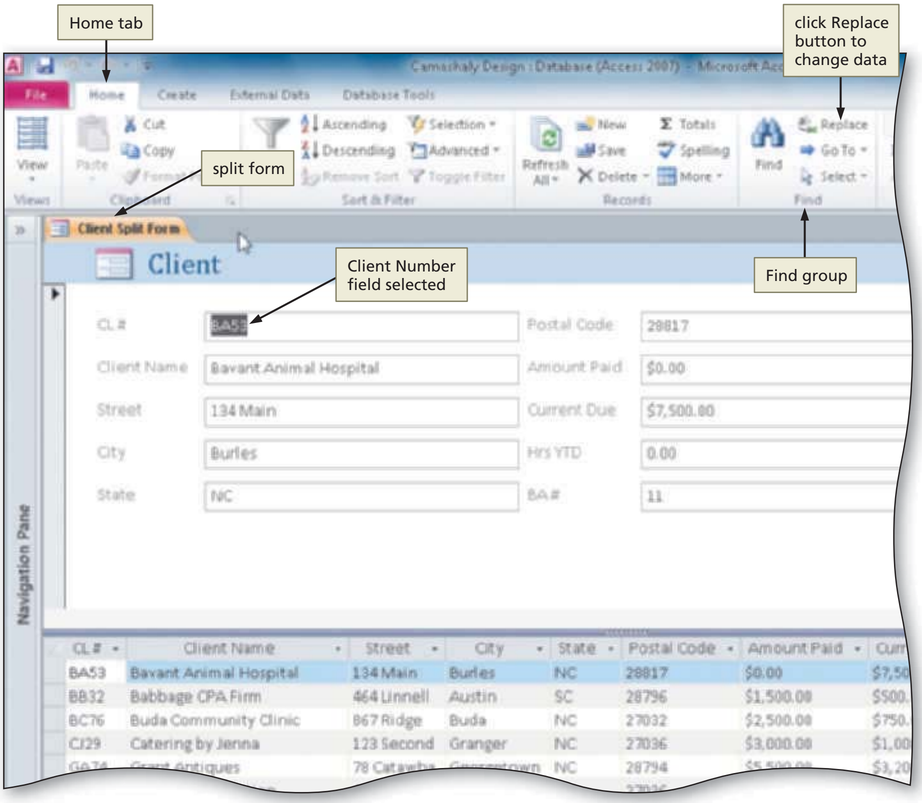
1

- Open the Navigation Pane.
- Scroll down in the Navigation Pane, if necessary, so that Client Split Form appears on your screen, right-click Client Split Form to display a shortcut menu, and then click Open on the shortcut menu to open the form in Form view.

Q&A Which command on the shortcut menu gives me Form view? I see both Layout View and Design View, but no option for Form View.

The Open command opens the form in Form view.

- Close the Navigation Pane (Figure 3–7).



Home tab
click Replace button to change data
split form
Client Number field selected
Find group
Client Split Form
Client
Navigation Pane

CL # BA53
Client Name Bavant Animal Hospital
Street 134 Main
City Burles
State NC
Postal Code 28817
Amount Paid $0.00
Current Due $7,500.00
Hrs YTD 0.00
BA # 11

CL #	Client Name	Street	City	State	Postal Code	Amount Paid	Curr
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	134 Main	Burles	NC	28817	$0.00	$7,50
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	464 Linnell	Austin	SC	28796	$1,500.00	$500.
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	867 Ridge	Buda	NC	27032	$2,500.00	$750.
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	123 Second	Granger	NC	27036	$3,000.00	$1,00
GA74	Grant Antiques	78 Catawba	Georgetown	NC	28794	$5,500.00	$3,20

Figure 3–7

2

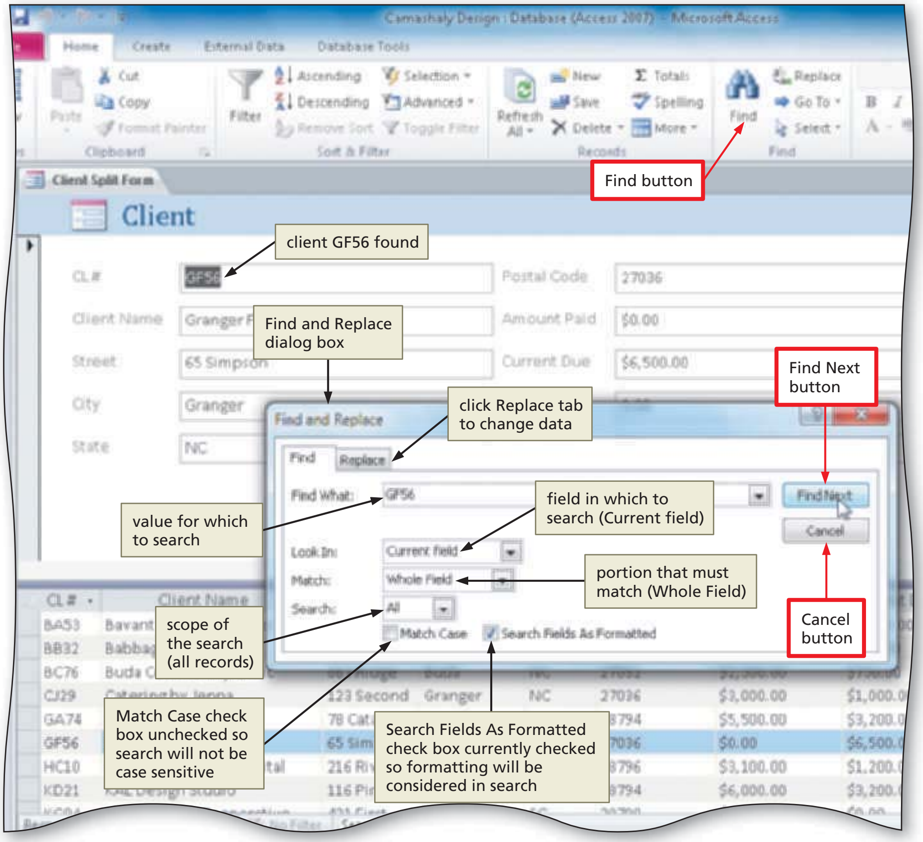
- Click the Find button (Home tab | Find group) to display the Find and Replace dialog box.
- Type GF56 in the Find What text box (Find and Replace dialog box).
- Click the Find Next button to find client GF56 (Figure 3–8).

Q&A Can I find records in Datasheet view or in Form view?

Yes. You use the same process to find records whether you are viewing the data with a split form, in Datasheet view, or in Form view.

Experiment

- Find records using other client numbers. Try to find a record using a client number that does not exist. Click in a different field and try to find records based on the value in that field. Try to use wildcards just as you did in queries. When done, once again locate client GF56.



Find button
client GF56 found
Find and Replace dialog box
click Replace tab to change data
Find Next button
value for which to search
field in which to search (Current field)
portion that must match (Whole Field)
scope of the search (all records)
Cancel button
Match Case check box unchecked so search will not be case sensitive
Search Fields As Formatted check box currently checked so formatting will be considered in search
Find and Replace
Find
Replace
Find Next
Cancel

Find What: GF56
Look In: Current field
Match: Whole Field
Search: All
☐ Match Case ☑ Search Fields As Formatted

Figure 3–8

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3

- Click the Cancel button (Find and Replace dialog box) to remove the dialog box from the screen.

Q&A Why does the button in the dialog box read, Find Next, rather than simply Find?

In some cases, after locating a record that satisfies a criterion, you might need to find the next record that satisfies the same criterion. For example, if you just found the first client whose business analyst number is 14, you then may want to find the second such client, then the third, and so on. To do so, click the Find Next button. You will not need to retype the value each time.

Q&A Can I replace one value with another using this dialog box?

Yes. Either click the Replace button (Home tab | Find group) or click the Replace tab in the Find and Replace dialog box. You then can enter both the value to find and the new value.

BTW

BTWs

For a complete list of the BTWs found in the margins of this book, visit the Access 2010 BTW Web page (scsite.com/ac2010/btw).

Other Ways

1. Press CTRL+F

To Update the Contents of a Record

After locating the record to be changed, select the field to be changed by clicking the field. You also can press the TAB key repeatedly until the desired field is selected. Then make the appropriate changes. (Clicking the field automatically produces an insertion point. If you use the TAB key, you will need to press F2 to produce an insertion point.)

The following step uses Form view to change the name of client GF56 from Granger Foundation to Granger Family Foundation.

1

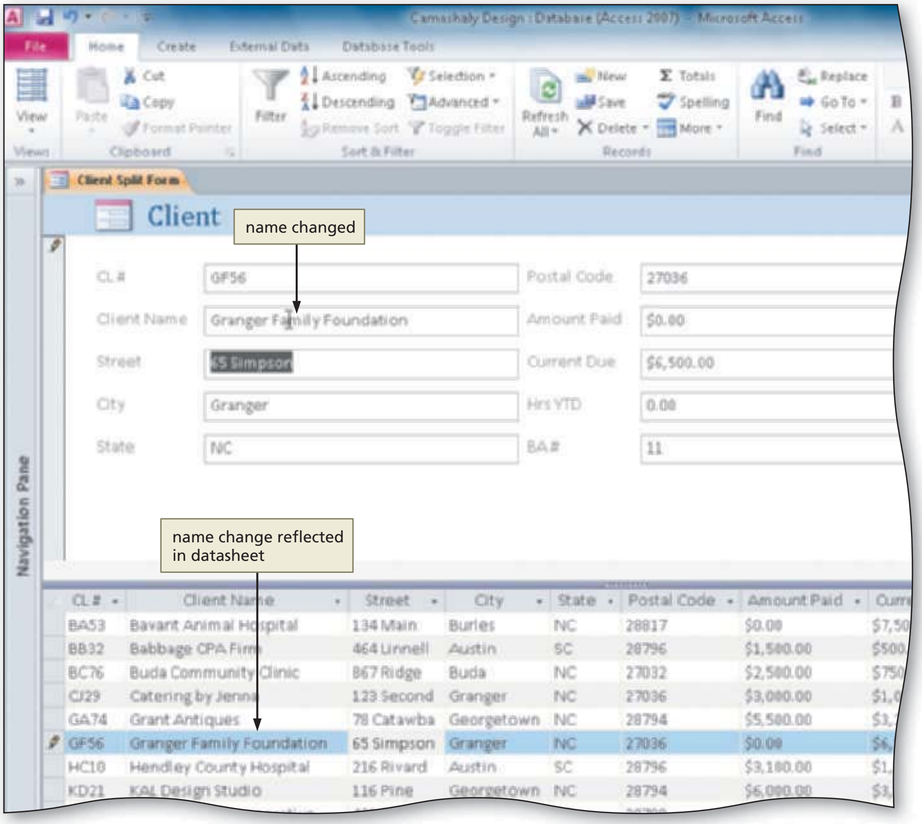
- Click in the Client Name field in the form for client GF56 immediately to the left of the F in the word, Foundation.
- Type the word `Family` before the word, Foundation, and then press the SPACEBAR to insert a space.
- Press the TAB key to complete the change and move to the next field (Figure 3–9).

Q&A Could I have changed the contents of the field in the datasheet portion of the split form?

Yes. You will first need to ensure the record to be changed appears in the datasheet. You then can change the value just as in the form.

Q&A Do I need to save my change?

No. Once you move to another record or close this form, the change to the name will become permanent.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Find
Client Split Form
Navigation Pane
Client

name changed

CL #	GF56	Postal Code	27036
Client Name	Granger Family Foundation	Amount Paid	$0.00
Street	65 Simpson	Current Due	$6,500.00
City	Granger	Hrs YTD	0.00
State	NC	BA #	11

name change reflected in datasheet

CL #	Client Name	Street	City	State	Postal Code	Amount Paid	Curr
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	134 Main	Burles	NC	28817	$0.00	$7,50
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	464 Linnell	Austin	SC	28796	$1,500.00	$500
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	867 Ridge	Buda	NC	27032	$2,500.00	$750
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	123 Second	Granger	NC	27036	$3,000.00	$1,
GA74	Grant Antiques	78 Catawba	Georgetown	NC	28794	$5,500.00	$1,
GF56	Granger Family Foundation	65 Simpson	Granger	NC	27036	$0.00	$6,
HC10	Hendley County Hospital	216 Rivard	Austin	SC	28796	$3,100.00	$1,
KD21	KAL Design Studio	116 Pine	Georgetown	NC	28794	$6,000.00	$3,

Figure 3–9

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Delete a Record

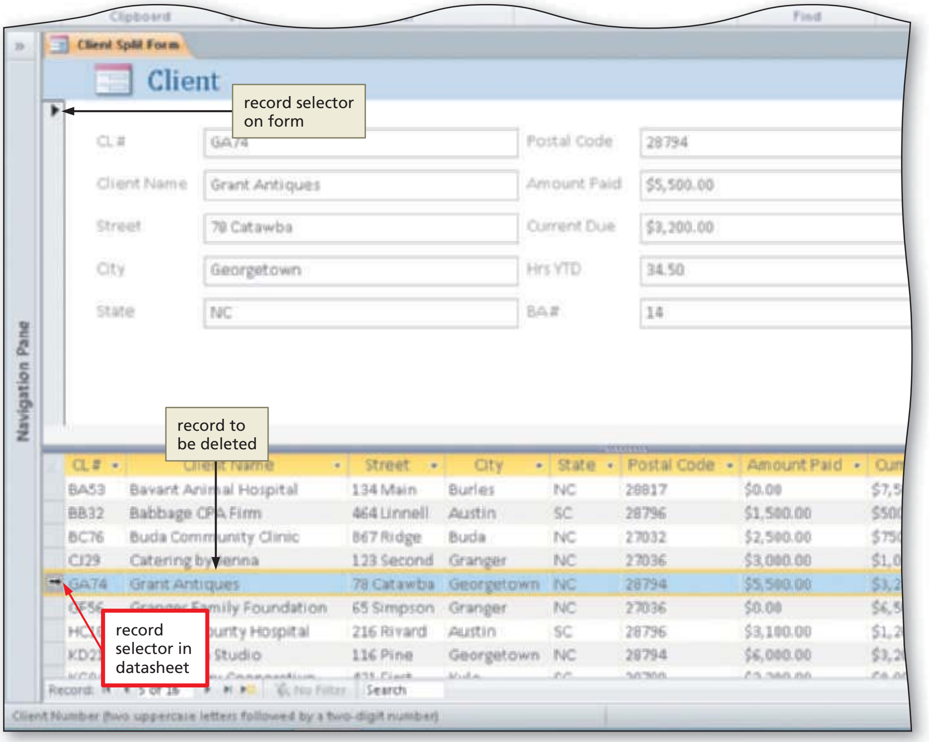
When records no longer are needed, delete the records (remove them) from the table. If client GA74 no longer is served by Camashaly Design and its final payment has been received, the record can be deleted. The following steps delete client GA74.

1

- With the Client Split Form open, click the record selector in the datasheet, the small box that appears to the left of the first field of the record on which the client number is GA74 to select the record (Figure 3–10).

Q&A That technique works in the datasheet portion. How do I select the record in the form portion?

With the desired record appearing in the form, click the record selector (the triangle in front of the record) to select the entire record.


Clipboard
Find
Client Split Form
Client
record selector on form
record to be deleted
record selector in datasheet
Navigation Pane
Record: 5 of 15
No Filter
Search

CL #	GA74	Postal Code	28794
Client Name	Grant Antiques	Amount Paid	$5,500.00
Street	78 Catawba	Current Due	$3,200.00
City	Georgetown	Hrs YTD	34.50
State	NC	BA #	14

CL #	Client Name	Street	City	State	Postal Code	Amount Paid	Cur
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	134 Main	Burles	NC	28817	$0.00	$7,5
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	464 Linnell	Austin	SC	28796	$1,500.00	$500
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	867 Ridge	Buda	NC	27032	$2,500.00	$750
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	123 Second	Granger	NC	27036	$3,000.00	$1,0
GA74	Grant Antiques	78 Catawba	Georgetown	NC	28794	$5,500.00	$3,2
GF56	Granger Family Foundation	65 Simpson	Granger	NC	27036	$0.00	$4,5
HC	unty Hospital	216 Rivard	Austin	SC	28796	$3,100.00	$1,2
KD2	Studio	116 Pine	Georgetown	NC	28794	$6,000.00	$3,2

Client Number (two uppercase letters followed by a two-digit number)

Figure 3–10

2

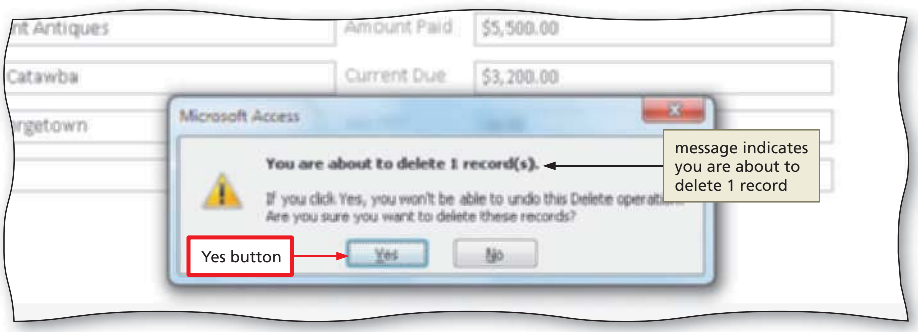
- Press the DELETE key to delete the record (Figure 3–11).

3

- Click the Yes button to complete the deletion.
- Close the Client Split Form.

Other Ways

1. Click Delete button (Home tab | Records group)


nt Antiques
Amount Paid
$5,500.00
Catawba
Current Due
$3,200.00
rgetown
Microsoft Access
message indicates you are about to delete 1 record
Yes button
Yes
No

You are about to delete 1 record(s).

If you click Yes, you won't be able to undo this Delete operat...
Are you sure you want to delete these records?

Figure 3–11

Filtering Records

You can use the Find button in either Datasheet view or Form view to locate a record quickly that satisfies some criterion (for example, the client number is GF56). All records appear, however, not just the record or records that satisfy the criterion. To have only the record or records that satisfy the criterion appear, use a **filter**. Four types of filters are available: Filter By Selection, Common Filters, Filter By Form, and Advanced Filter/Sort. You can use a filter in either Datasheet view or Form view.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Plan Ahead

Determine whether to filter records.

If you determine that it is desirable to have only those records that satisfy some criterion appear, you have two choices: You can create a query or create a filter. The following guidelines apply to this decision.

- If you think that you will frequently want to display records that satisfy precisely this same criterion, you should consider creating a query whose results only contain the records that satisfy the criterion. To display those records in the future, simply open the query.
- If you are viewing data in a datasheet or form and decide you want to restrict the records to be included, it is easier to create a filter than a query. You can create and use the filter while you are viewing the data.
- If you have created a filter that you would like to be able to use again, you can save the filter as a query.

Once you have decided to use a filter, you need to decide which type of filter to use.

- If your criterion for filtering is that the value in a particular field matches or does not match a certain specific value, you can use Filter By Selection.
- If your criterion only involves a single field but is more complex (for example, the criterion specifies that the value in the field begins with a certain collection of letters) you can use a common filter.
- If your criterion involves more than one field, use Filter By Form.
- If your criterion involves more than a single And or Or, or if it involves sorting, you will probably find it simpler to use Advanced Filter/Sort.

BTW

Filter By Selection

If you want to search a field for a collection of characters, select the characters, and then click the Selection button arrow. For example, to find all cities in the Client table that contain the characters, ge, select the characters in the City field, click the Selection button arrow, then click Contains "ge" on the Selection button menu. Access filters the Client table and returns records where the city is either Georgetown or Granger.

To Use Filter By Selection

The simplest type of filter is called Filter By Selection. To use Filter By Selection, you give Access an example of the data you want by selecting the data within the table. You then choose the option you want on the Selection menu. For example, if you only want to display those clients located in Burles, Filter By Selection is appropriate. The following steps use Filter By Selection in Datasheet view to display only the records for clients in Burles.

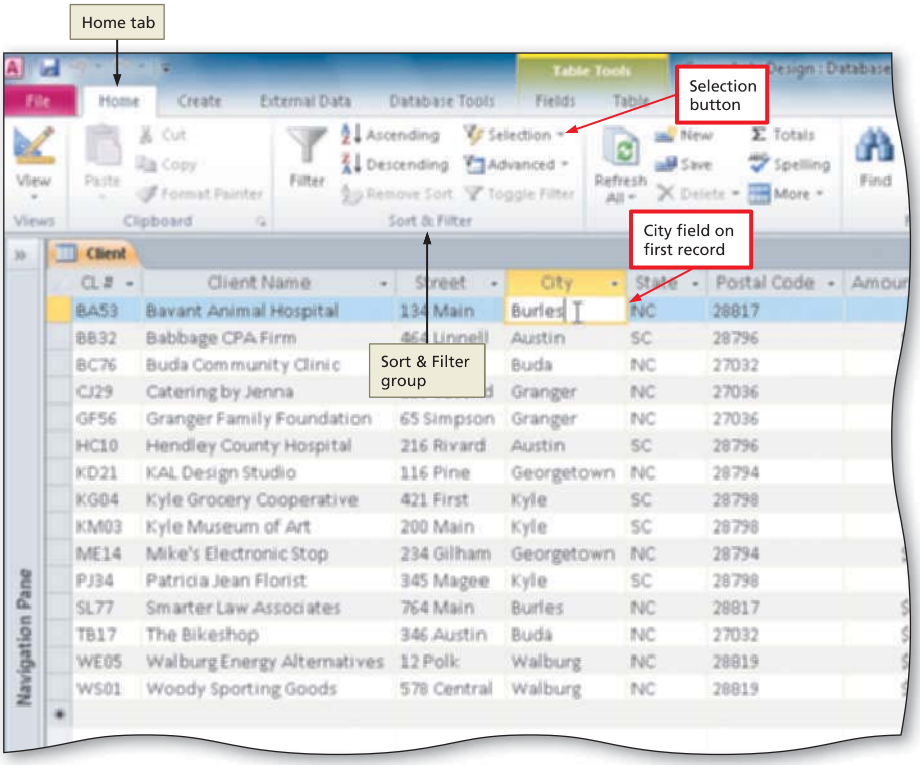
1

- Open the Navigation Pane.
- Open the Client table, and close the Navigation Pane.
- Click the City field on the first record to select the city on that record as the city (Figure 3–12).

Q&A

Could I have selected the City field on another record where the city is also Burles to select the same city?

Yes. It does not matter which record you select as long as the city is Burles.



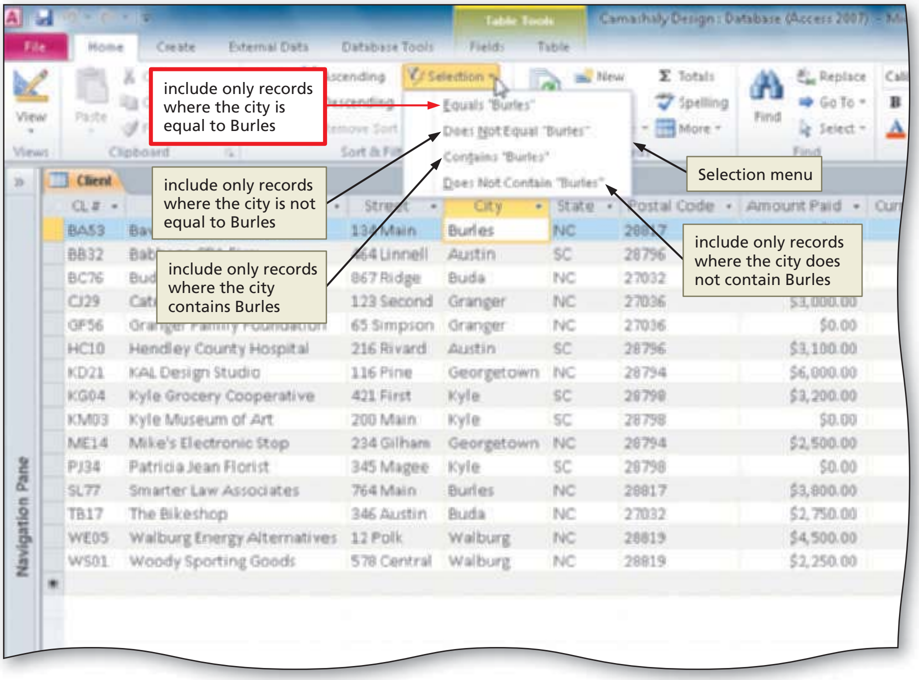
CL #	Client Name	Street	City	State	Postal Code
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	134 Main	Burles	NC	28817
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	464 Linnell	Austin	SC	28796
BC76	Buda Community Clinic		Buda	NC	27032
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	[illegible]	Granger	NC	27036
GF56	Granger Family Foundation	65 Simpson	Granger	NC	27036
HC10	Hendley County Hospital	216 Rivard	Austin	SC	28796
KD21	KAL Design Studio	116 Pine	Georgetown	NC	28794
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	421 First	Kyle	SC	28798
KM03	Kyle Museum of Art	200 Main	Kyle	SC	28798
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	234 Gilham	Georgetown	NC	28794
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	345 Magee	Kyle	SC	28798
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	764 Main	Burles	NC	28817
TB17	The Bikeshop	346 Austin	Buda	NC	27032
WE05	Walburg Energy Alternatives	12 Polk	Walburg	NC	28819
WS01	Woody Sporting Goods	578 Central	Walburg	NC	28819

Figure 3–12

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2

- Click the Selection button (Home tab | Sort & Filter group) to display the Selection menu (Figure 3–13).


include only records where the city is equal to Burles
Selection
Equals "Burles"
Does Not Equal "Burles"
Contains "Burles"
Does Not Contain "Burles"
Selection menu
include only records where the city is not equal to Burles
include only records where the city contains Burles
include only records where the city does not contain Burles
Client
Navigation Pane

CL #		Street	City	State	Postal Code	Amount Paid
BA53	Bav	134 Main	Burles	NC	28817	
BB32	Bab	464 Linnell	Austin	SC	28796	
BC76	Bud	867 Ridge	Buda	NC	27032	
CJ29	Cat	123 Second	Granger	NC	27036	$3,000.00
GF56	Granger Family Foundation	65 Simpson	Granger	NC	27036	$0.00
HC10	Hendley County Hospital	216 Rivard	Austin	SC	28796	$3,100.00
KD21	KAL Design Studio	116 Pine	Georgetown	NC	28794	$6,000.00
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	421 First	Kyle	SC	28798	$3,200.00
KM03	Kyle Museum of Art	200 Main	Kyle	SC	28798	$0.00
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	234 Gilham	Georgetown	NC	28794	$2,500.00
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	345 Magee	Kyle	SC	28798	$0.00
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	764 Main	Burles	NC	28817	$3,800.00
TB17	The Bikeshop	346 Austin	Buda	NC	27032	$2,750.00
WE05	Walburg Energy Alternatives	12 Polk	Walburg	NC	28819	$4,500.00
WS01	Woody Sporting Goods	578 Central	Walburg	NC	28819	$2,250.00

Figure 3–13

3

- Click Equals "Burles" to select only those clients whose city is Burles (Figure 3–14).

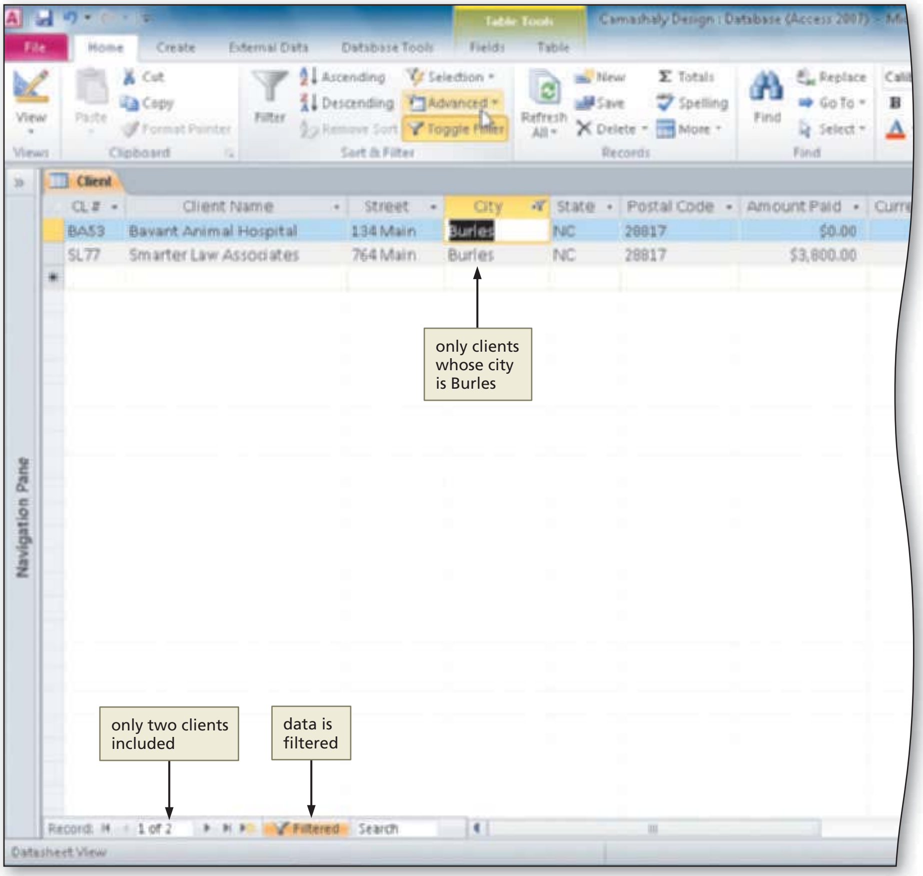
Q&A

Can I also filter in Form view?

Yes. Filtering works the same whether you are viewing the data with split form, in Datasheet view, or in Form view.

Experiment

- Try each of the other values in the Selection menu to see their effect. When done, once again select those clients whose city is Burles.


File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Fields
Table
Table Tools
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Client
only clients whose city is Burles
only two clients included
data is filtered
Record: 1 of 2
Filtered
Search
Datasheet View
Navigation Pane

CL #	Client Name	Street	City	State	Postal Code	Amount Paid
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	134 Main	Burles	NC	28817	$0.00
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	764 Main	Burles	NC	28817	$3,800.00

Figure 3–14

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Toggle a Filter

The Toggle Filter button toggles between filtered and unfiltered displays of the records in the table. That is, if only filtered records currently appear, clicking the Toggle Filter button will redisplay all records. If all records are currently displayed and there is a filter that is in effect, clicking the Toggle Filter button will display only the filtered records. If no filter is active, the Toggle Filter button will be dimmed, so clicking it would have no effect.

The following step toggles the filter to redisplay all records.

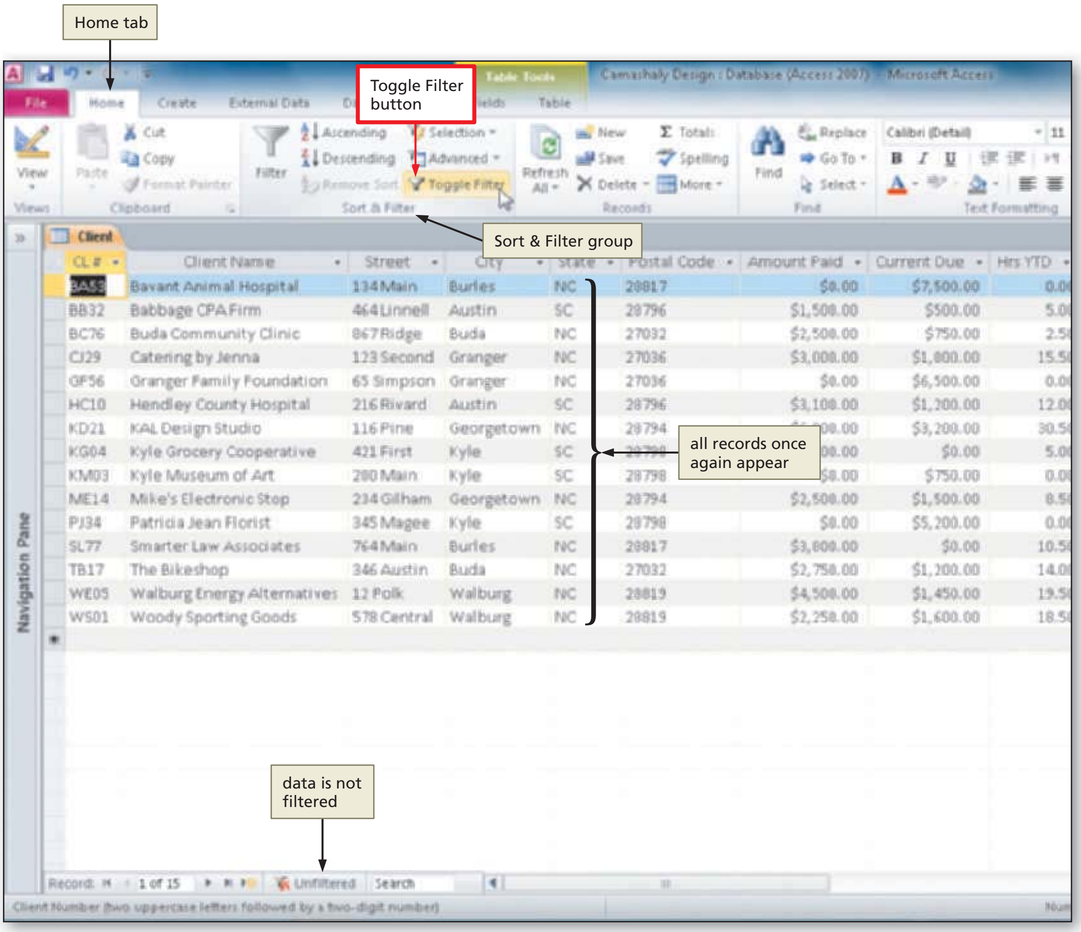
1

- Click the Toggle Filter button (Home tab | Sort & Filter group) to toggle the filter and redisplay all records (Figure 3–15).

Q&A

Does that action clear the filter?

No. The filter is still in place. If you click the Toggle Filter button a second time, you will again see only the filtered records.



CL #	Client Name	Street	City	State	Postal Code	Amount Paid	Current Due	Hrs YTD
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	134 Main	Burles	NC	28817	$0.00	$7,500.00	0.0
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	464 Linnell	Austin	SC	28796	$1,500.00	$500.00	5.0
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	867 Ridge	Buda	NC	27032	$2,500.00	$750.00	2.5
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	123 Second	Granger	NC	27036	$3,000.00	$1,000.00	15.5
GF56	Granger Family Foundation	65 Simpson	Granger	NC	27036	$0.00	$6,500.00	0.0
HC10	Hendley County Hospital	216 Rivard	Austin	SC	28796	$3,100.00	$1,200.00	12.0
KD21	KAL Design Studio	116 Pine	Georgetown	NC	28794	[illegible]	$3,200.00	30.5
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	421 First	Kyle	SC	[illegible]	[illegible]	$0.00	5.0
KM03	Kyle Museum of Art	200 Main	Kyle	SC	28798	[illegible]	$750.00	0.0
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	234 Gilham	Georgetown	NC	28794	$2,500.00	$1,500.00	8.5
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	345 Magee	Kyle	SC	28798	$0.00	$5,200.00	0.0
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	764 Main	Burles	NC	28817	$3,800.00	$0.00	10.5
TB17	The Bikeshop	346 Austin	Buda	NC	27032	$2,750.00	$1,200.00	14.0
WE05	Walburg Energy Alternatives	12 Polk	Walburg	NC	28819	$4,500.00	$1,450.00	19.5
WS01	Woody Sporting Goods	578 Central	Walburg	NC	28819	$2,250.00	$1,600.00	18.5

Client Number (two uppercase letters followed by a two-digit number)

Figure 3–15

To Clear a Filter

Once you have finished using a filter, you can clear the filter. After doing so, you no longer will be able to use the filter by clicking the Toggle Filter button. The following steps clear the filter.

1. Click the Advanced button (Home tab | Sort & Filter group) to display the Advanced menu.
2. Click Clear All Filters on the Advanced menu.

To Use a Common Filter

You can filter individual fields by clicking the arrow to the right of the field name and using one of the common filters that are available for the field. If you have determined you want to include those clients whose city begins with G, Filter By Selection would not be appropriate. You could instead use the common filter for the field that would include only those records whose city begins with a particular value. The following steps use this common filter to include only those clients whose city begins with G.

1

- Click the City arrow to display the common filter menu.
- Point to the Text Filters command to display the custom text filters (Figure 3–16).

Q&A I selected the City field and then clicked the Filter button on the Home tab | Sort & Filter group. My screen looks the same. Is this right?

Yes. That is another legitimate way to display the common filter menu.

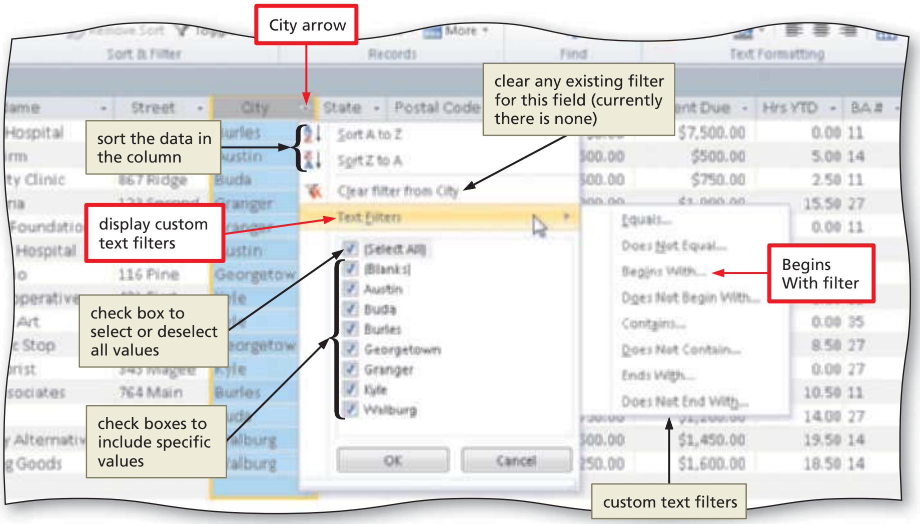

City arrow
sort the data in the column
Sort A to Z
Sort Z to A
clear any existing filter for this field (currently there is none)
Clear filter from City
display custom text filters
Text Filters
check box to select or deselect all values
(Select All)
(Blanks)
Austin
Buda
Burles
Georgetown
Granger
Kyle
Walburg
check boxes to include specific values
OK
Cancel
Equals...
Does Not Equal...
Begins With...
Begins With filter
Does Not Begin With...
Contains...
Does Not Contain...
Ends With...
Does Not End With...
custom text filters

Figure 3–16

2

- Click Begins With to display the Custom Filter dialog box.
- Type G as the 'City begins with' value (Figure 3–17).

Q&A If I wanted certain cities included, could I use the check boxes?

Yes. Be sure the cities you want are the only ones checked.

Experiment

- Try other options in the common filter menu to see their effects. When done, once again select those clients whose city begins with G.

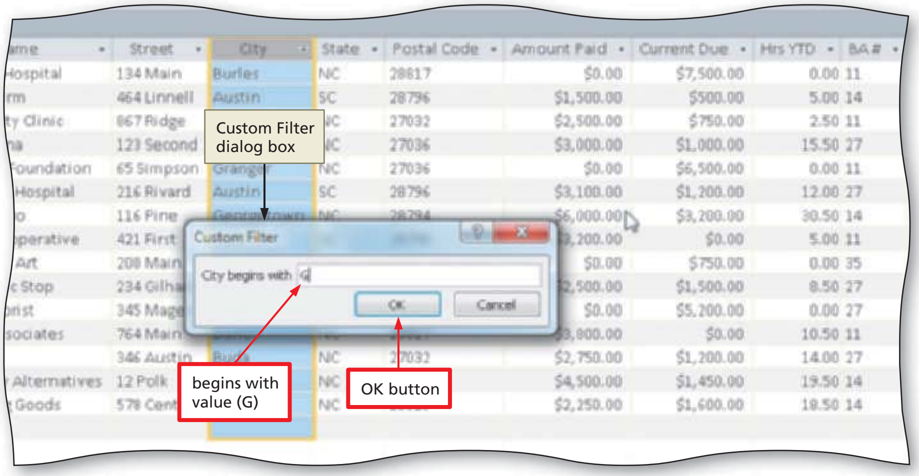

Custom Filter dialog box
Custom Filter
City begins with G
OK
Cancel
begins with value (G)
OK button

Figure 3–17

3

- Click the OK button to filter the records (Figure 3–18).

Q&A Can I use the same technique in Form view?

In Form view, you would need to click the field and then click the Filter button to display the Common Filter menu. The rest of the process would be the same.

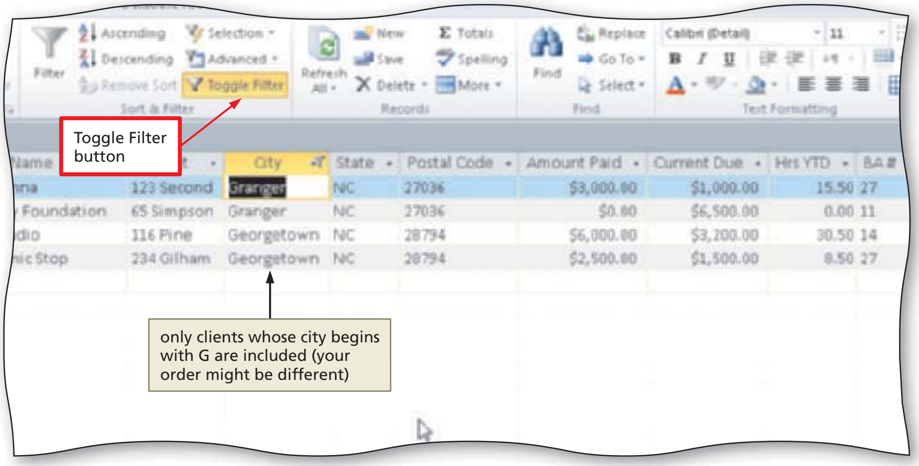

Toggle Filter button
Toggle Filter
only clients whose city begins with G are included (your order might be different)

Figure 3–18

4

- Click the Toggle Filter button (Home tab | Sort & Filter group) to toggle the filter and redisplay all records.

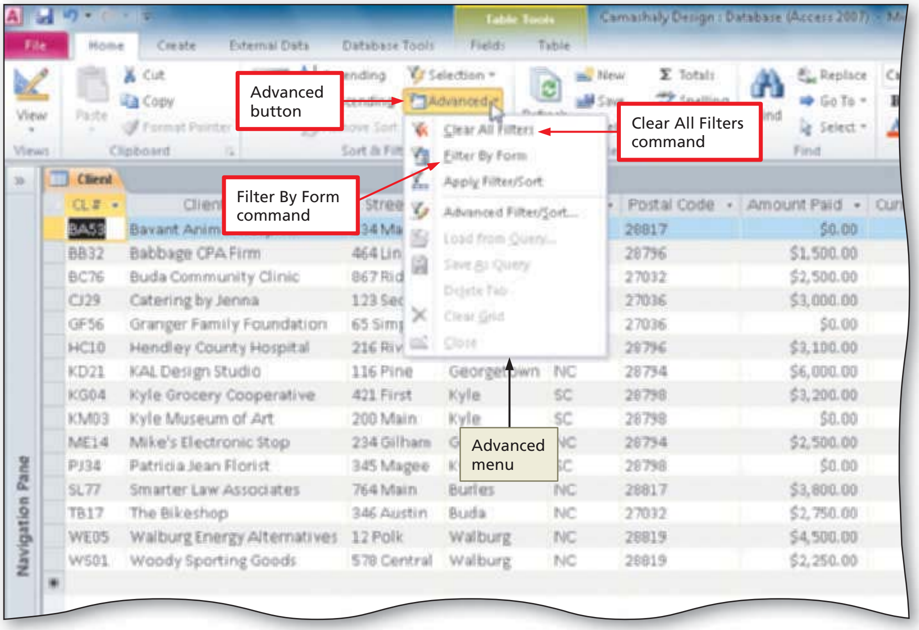
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Use Filter By Form

Filter By Selection and the common filter method you just used are quick and easy ways to filter by the value in a single field. For more complex criteria, however, these methods are not appropriate. Filter by Form allows you to filter based on multiple criteria, for example, to find only those clients whose postal code is 27036 and whose amount paid is 0. The following steps use Filter by Form to restrict the records that appear.

1

- Click the Advanced button (Home tab | Sort & Filter group) to display the Advanced menu (Figure 3–19).



Advanced button
Clear All Filters command
Filter By Form command
Advanced menu
Clear All Filters
Filter By Form
Apply Filter/Sort
Advanced Filter/Sort...
Load from Query...
Save As Query
Delete Tab
Clear Grid
Close

CL #	Clien	Stree			Postal Code	Amount Paid
BA53	Bavant Anim	34 Ma			28817	$0.00
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	464 Lin			28796	$1,500.00
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	867 Rid			27032	$2,500.00
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	123 Sec			27036	$3,000.00
GF56	Granger Family Foundation	65 Simp			27036	$0.00
HC10	Hendley County Hospital	216 Riv			28796	$3,100.00
KD21	KAL Design Studio	116 Pine	Georgetown	NC	28794	$6,000.00
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	421 First	Kyle	SC	28798	$3,200.00
KM03	Kyle Museum of Art	200 Main	Kyle	SC	28798	$0.00
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	234 Gilham	G	NC	28794	$2,500.00
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	345 Magee	K	SC	28798	$0.00
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	764 Main	Burles	NC	28817	$3,800.00
TB17	The Bikeshop	346 Austin	Buda	NC	27032	$2,750.00
WE05	Walburg Energy Alternatives	12 Polk	Walburg	NC	28819	$4,500.00
WS01	Woody Sporting Goods	578 Central	Walburg	NC	28819	$2,250.00

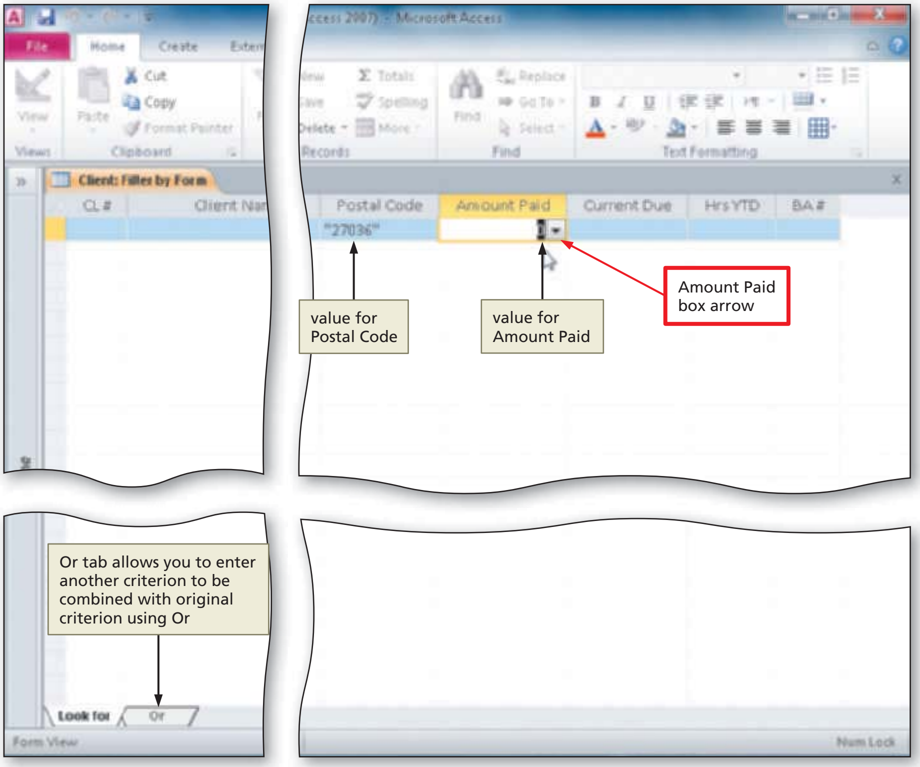
Figure 3–19

2

- Click Clear All Filters on the Advanced menu to clear the existing filter.
- Click the Advanced button again to display the Advanced menu a second time.
- Click Filter By Form on the Advanced menu.
- Click the blank row in the Postal Code field, click the arrow that appears, and then click 27036.
- Click the Amount Paid field, click the arrow that appears, and then click 0 (Figure 3–20).

Q&A Is there any difference in the process if I am viewing a table in Form view rather than in Datasheet view?

In Form view, you will make your entries in a form rather than a datasheet. Otherwise, the process is the same.



Client: Filter by Form
value for Postal Code
value for Amount Paid
Amount Paid box arrow
Or tab allows you to enter another criterion to be combined with original criterion using Or
Look for
Or

CL #	Client Nar	Postal Code	Amount Paid	Current Due	Hrs YTD	BA #
		"27036"	0			

Figure 3–20

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

- Click the Toggle Filter button (Home tab | Sort & Filter group) to apply the filter (Figure 3–21).

Experiment

- Select Filter by Form again and enter different criteria. In each case, toggle the filter to see the effect of your selection. When done, once again select those clients whose postal code is 27036 and whose amount paid is $0.

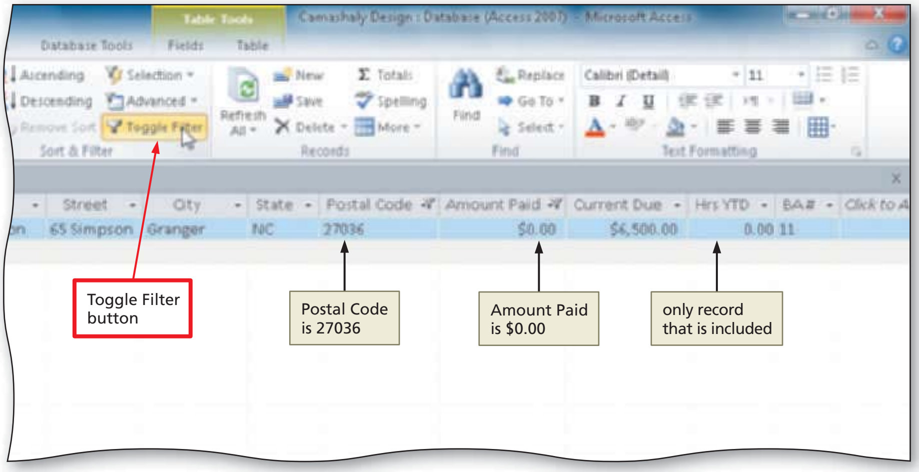

Toggle Filter button
Postal Code is 27036
Amount Paid is $0.00
only record that is included

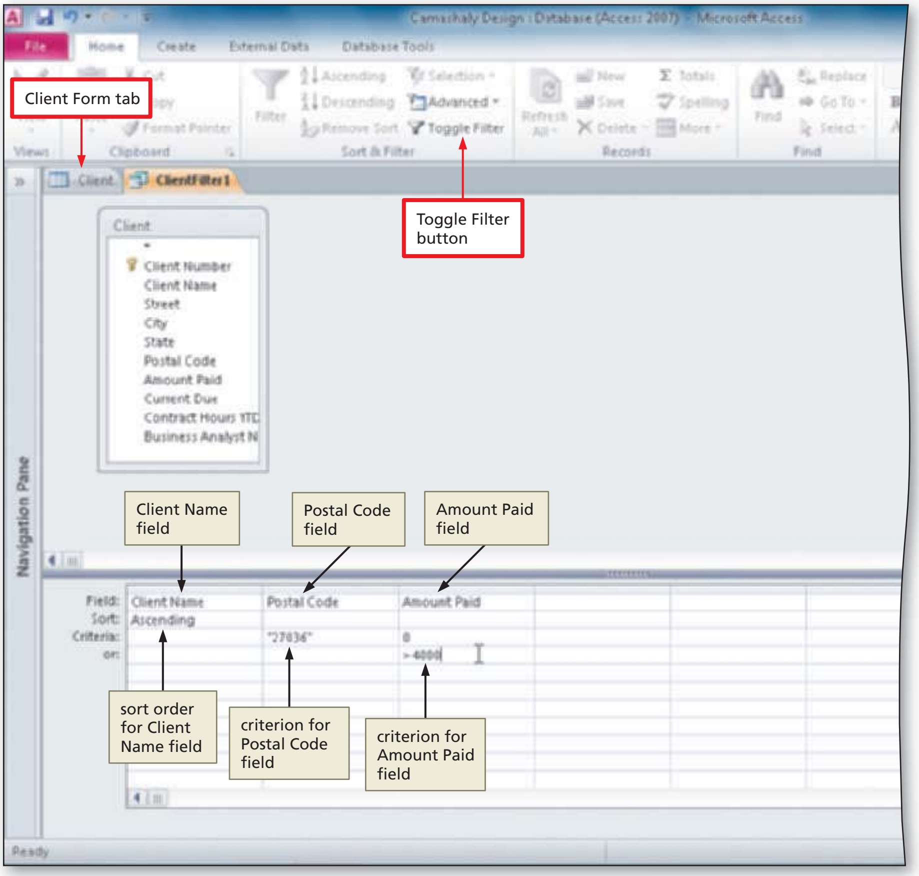
Figure 3–21

To Use Advanced Filter/Sort

In some cases, your criteria may be too complex even for Filter By Form. You might decide you want to include any client for which the postal code is 27036 and the amount paid is $0. Additionally, you might want to include any client whose amount paid is greater than $4,000, no matter where the client is located. Further, you might want to have the results sorted by name. To filter records using complex criteria, you need to use Advanced Filter/Sort, as in the following steps.

1

- Click the Advanced button (Home tab | Sort & Filter group) to display the Advanced menu, and then click Clear All Filters on the Advanced menu to clear the existing filter.
- Click the Advanced button to display the Advanced menu a second time.
- Click Advanced Filter/Sort on the Advanced menu.
- Expand the size of the field list so all the fields in the Client table appear.
- Include the Client Name field and select Ascending as the sort order to specify the order in which the filtered records will appear.
- Include the Postal Code field and enter `27036` as the criterion.
- Include the Amount Paid field and enter `0` as the criterion in the Criteria row and `>4000` as the criterion in the or row (Figure 3–22).


Client Form tab
Toggle Filter button
Client Name field
Postal Code field
Amount Paid field
sort order for Client Name field
criterion for Postal Code field
criterion for Amount Paid field

Field:	Client Name	Postal Code	Amount Paid
Sort:	Ascending		
Criteria:		"27036"	0
or:			>4000

Figure 3–22

2

- Click the Toggle Filter button (Home tab | Sort & Filter group) to toggle the filter so that only records that satisfy the criteria will appear (Figure 3–23).

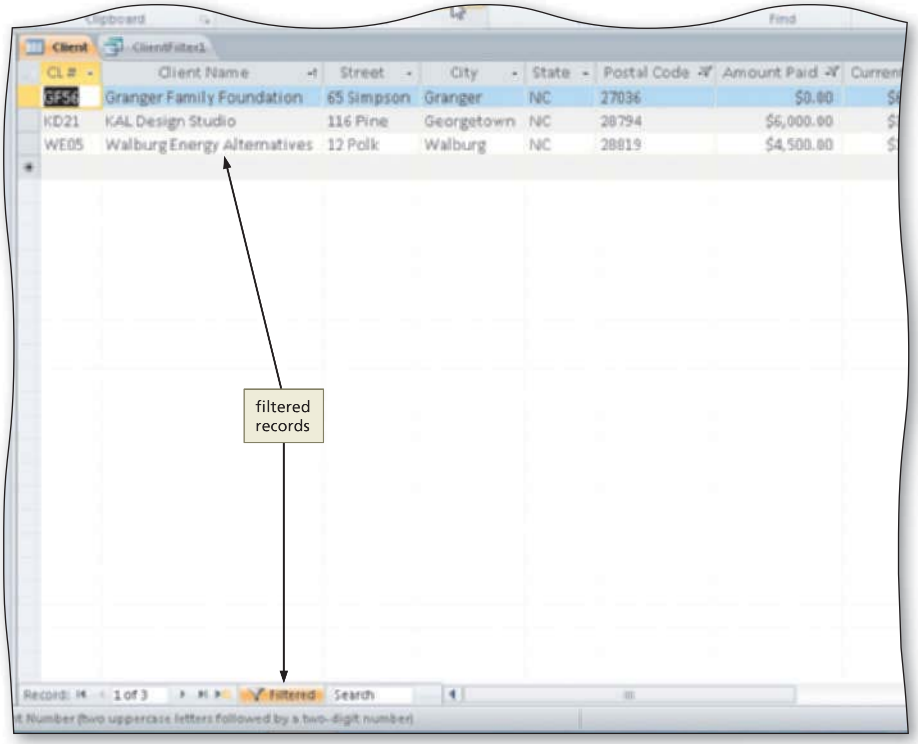
Q&A

Why are those particular records included?

The first record is included because the postal code is 27036 and the amount paid is $0.00. The other two records are included because the amount paid is over $4,000.

Experiment

- Select Advanced Filter/Sort again and enter different sorting options and criteria. In each case, toggle the filter to see the effect of your selection. When done, change back to the sorting options and criteria you entered in Step 1.



CL #	Client Name	Street	City	State	Postal Code	Amount Paid	Curren
GF56	Granger Family Foundation	65 Simpson	Granger	NC	27036	$0.00	$
KD21	KAL Design Studio	116 Pine	Georgetown	NC	28794	$6,000.00	$
WE05	Walburg Energy Alternatives	12 Polk	Walburg	NC	28819	$4,500.00	$

t Number (two uppercase letters followed by a two-digit number)

Figure 3–23

3

- Close the Client table. When asked if you want to save your changes, click the No button.

Q&A

Shouldn't I have cleared all filters before closing the table?

If you are closing a table and not saving the changes, it is not necessary to clear the filter. No filter will be active when you next open the table.

Filters and Queries

Now that you are familiar with how filters work, you might notice similarities between filters and queries. Filters and queries are related in three ways.

1. You can apply a filter to the results of a query just as you can apply a filter to a table.
2. When you have created a filter using Advanced Filter/Sort, you can save the filter settings as a query by using the Save as Query command on the Advanced menu.
3. You can restore filter settings that you previously saved in a query by using the Load from Query command on the Advanced menu.

BTW

Using Wildcards in Filters

Both the question mark (?) and the asterisk (*) wildcards can be used in filters created using Advanced Filter/Sort.

Break Point: If you wish to take a break, this is a good place to do so. You can quit Access now. To resume at a later time, start Access, open the database called Camashaly Design, and continue following the steps from this location forward.

Changing the Database Structure

When you initially create a database, you define its **structure**; that is, you assign names and types to all the fields. In many cases, the structure you first define will not continue to be appropriate as you use the database.

Perhaps a field currently in the table no longer is necessary. If no one ever uses a particular field, it is not needed in the table. Because it is occupying space and serving no useful purpose, you should remove it from the table. You also would need to delete the field from any forms, reports, or queries that include it.

BTW

Moving a Field in a Table Structure

If you add a field to a table and later realize the field is in the wrong location, you can move the field. To do so, click the row selector for the field and then drag the field to the new location.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

More commonly, an organization will find that it needs to maintain additional information that was not anticipated at the time the database was first designed. The organization's own requirements may have changed. In addition, outside regulations that the organization must satisfy may change as well. Either case requires the addition of fields to an existing table.

Although you can make some changes to the database structure in Datasheet view, it is usually easier and better to make these changes in Design view.

BTW

Changing Data Types
It is possible to change the data type for a field that already contains data. Before you change a data type, however, you should consider what effect the change will have on other database objects, such as forms, queries, and reports. For example, you could convert a Text field to a Memo field if you find that you do not have enough space to store the data that you need. You also could convert a Number field to a Currency field or vice versa.

TO DELETE A FIELD

If a field in one of your tables no longer is needed, you should delete the field; for example, it may serve no useful purpose, or it may have been included by mistake. To delete a field, you would use the following steps.

1. Open the table in Design view.
2. Click the row selector for the field to be deleted.
3. Press the DELETE key.
4. When Access displays the dialog box requesting confirmation that you want to delete the field, click the Yes button.

To Add a New Field

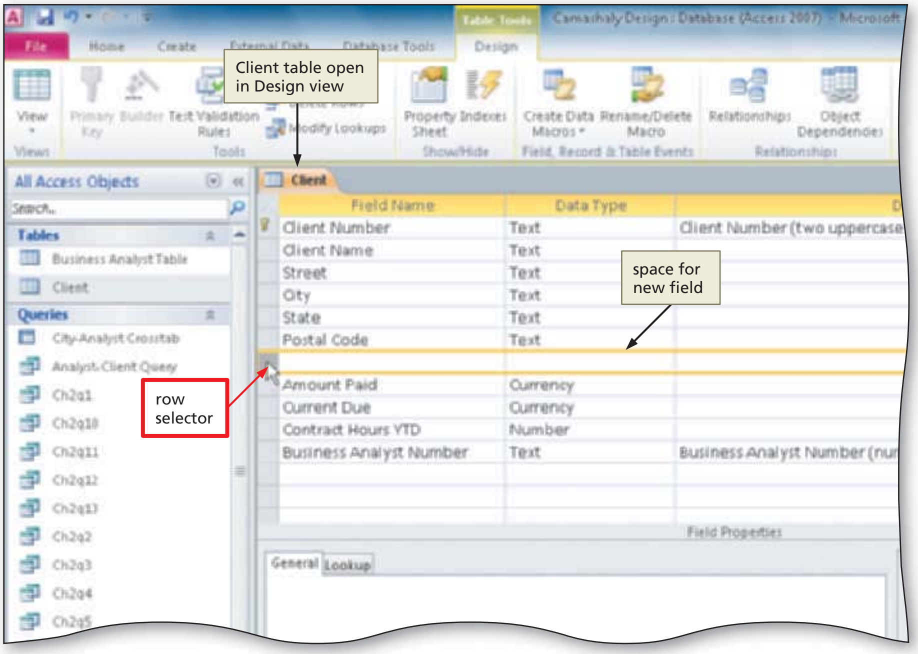
You can add fields to a table in a database. Camashaly Design has decided that it needs to categorize its clients. To do so requires an additional field, Client Type. The possible values for Client Type are NON (which indicates the client is a nonprofit organization), RET (which indicates the client is a retail organization), or SER (which indicates the client is a service organization). The following steps add the Client Type field to the Client table immediately after the Postal Code field.

1

- If necessary, open the Navigation Pane.
- Open the Client table in Design view.
- Click the row selector for the Amount Paid field, and then press the INSERT key to insert a blank row above the selected field (Figure 3–24).

2

- Click the Field Name column for the new field.
- Type `Client Type` as the field name and then press the TAB key.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft
Table Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
View
Primary Key
Builder
Test Validation Rules
Modify Lookups
Property Sheet
Indexes
Create Data Macros
Rename/Delete Macro
Relationships
Object Dependencies
Views
Tools
Show/Hide
Field, Record & Table Events
Relationships
All Access Objects
Search...
Tables
Business Analyst Table
Client
Queries
City-Analyst Crosstab
Analyst-Client Query
Ch2q1
Ch2q10
Ch2q11
Ch2q12
Ch2q13
Ch2q2
Ch2q3
Ch2q4
Ch2q5
Client
Field Properties
General
Lookup

Field Name	Data Type	D
Client Number	Text	Client Number (two uppercase
Client Name	Text	
Street	Text	
City	Text	
State	Text	
Postal Code	Text	
Amount Paid	Currency	
Current Due	Currency	
Contract Hours YTD	Number	
Business Analyst Number	Text	Business Analyst Number (nu

Client table open in Design view

space for new field

row selector

Figure 3–24

Other Ways

1. Click Insert Rows button (Table Tools Design tab | Tools group)

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

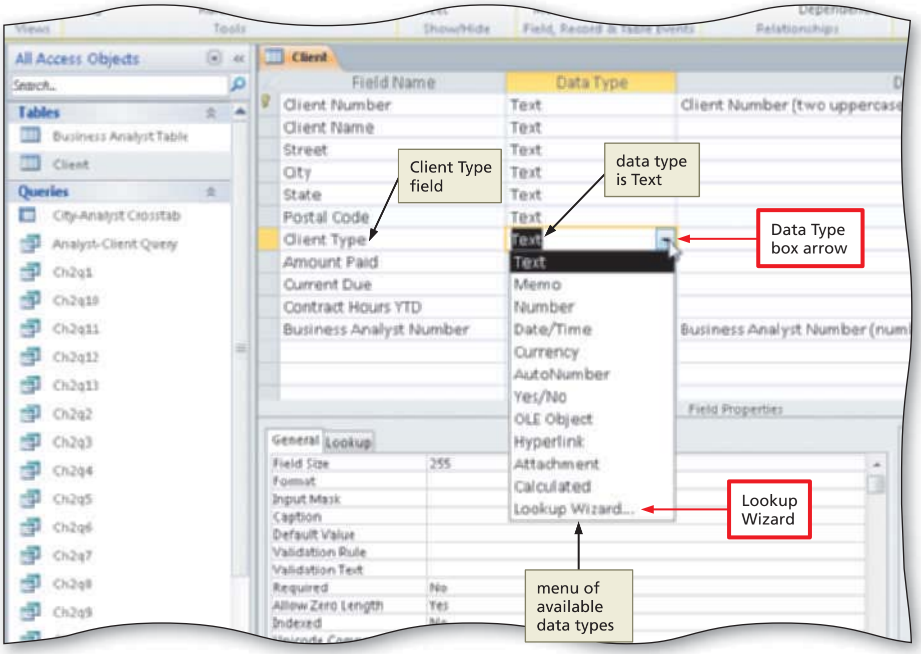
To Create a Lookup Field

Because there are only three possible values for the Client Type field, you should make it easy for users to enter the appropriate value. A **lookup field** allows the user to select from a list of values when updating the contents of the field.

The following steps make the Client Type field a lookup field.

1

- Click the Data Type column for the Client Type field, and then click the Data Type box arrow to display the menu of available data types (Figure 3–25).



All Access Objects
Tables
Business Analyst Table
Client
Queries
City-Analyst Crosstab
Analyst-Client Query
Client
Field Name
Data Type
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Client Type
Amount Paid
Current Due
Contract Hours YTD
Business Analyst Number
Text
Memo
Number
Date/Time
Currency
AutoNumber
Yes/No
OLE Object
Hyperlink
Attachment
Calculated
Lookup Wizard...
Client Number (two uppercase
Business Analyst Number (num
Field Properties
General
Lookup
Field Size
255
Client Type field
data type is Text
Data Type box arrow
Lookup Wizard
menu of available data types

Figure 3–25

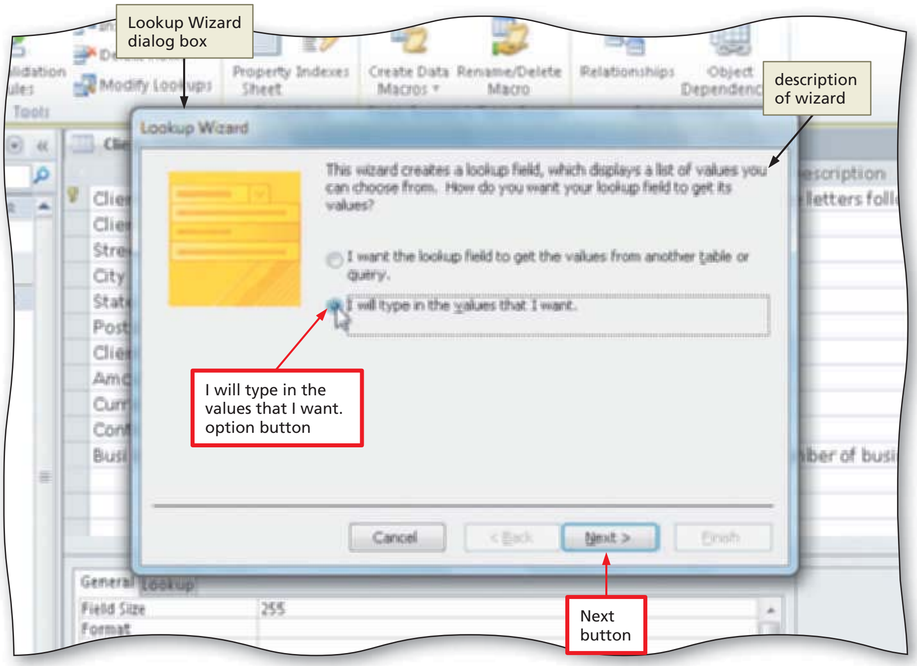
2

- Click Lookup Wizard, and then click the ‘I will type in the values that I want.’ option button (Lookup Wizard dialog box) to indicate that you will type in the values (Figure 3–26).

Q&A

When would I use the other option button?

You would use the other option button if the data to be entered in this field is found in another table or query.



Lookup Wizard dialog box
Modify Lookups
Property Sheet
Indexes
Create Data Macros
Rename/Delete Macro
Relationships
Object Dependencies
description of wizard
Lookup Wizard
Cancel
< Back
Next >
Finish
General
Lookup
Field Size
255
Format
I will type in the values that I want. option button
Next button

This wizard creates a lookup field, which displays a list of values you can choose from. How do you want your lookup field to get its values?

○ I want the lookup field to get the values from another table or query.

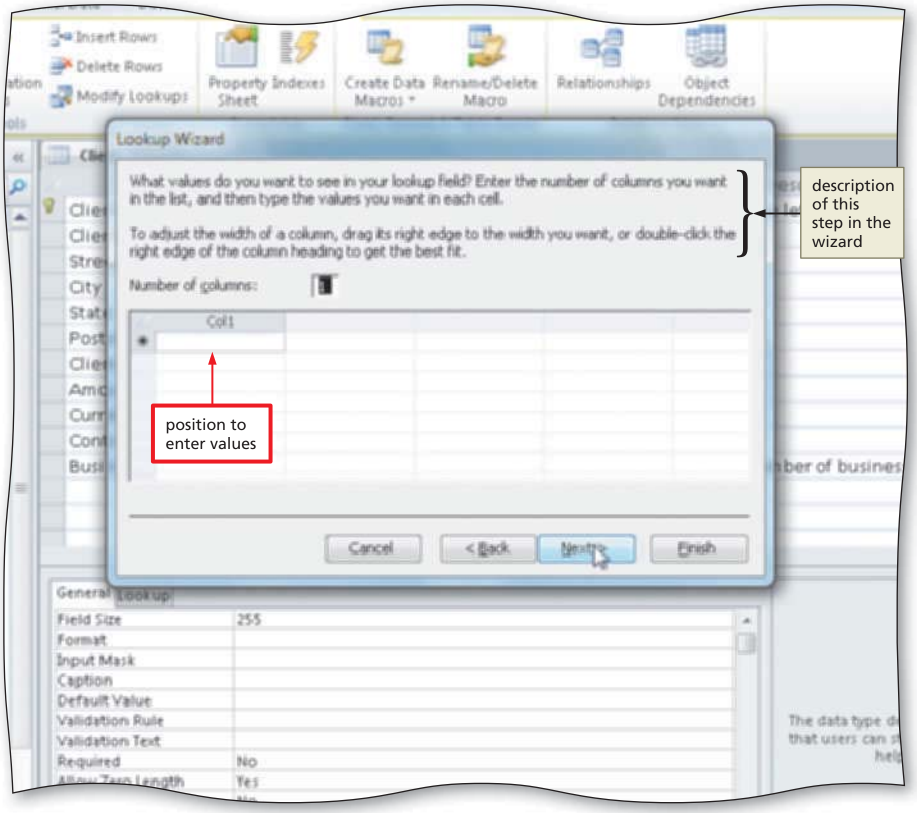
● I will type in the values that I want.

Figure 3–26

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3

- Click the Next button to display the next Lookup Wizard screen (Figure 3–27).


Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Modify Lookups
Property Sheet
Indexes
Create Data Macros
Rename/Delete Macro
Relationships
Object Dependencies
Lookup Wizard
Col1
Cancel
< Back
Next >
Finish
General
Lookup
description of this step in the wizard
position to enter values

What values do you want to see in your lookup field? Enter the number of columns you want in the list, and then type the values you want in each cell.

To adjust the width of a column, drag its right edge to the width you want, or double-click the right edge of the column heading to get the best fit.

Number of columns: 1

Field Size	255
Format	
Input Mask	
Caption	
Default Value	
Validation Rule	
Validation Text	
Required	No
Allow Zero Length	Yes

Figure 3–27

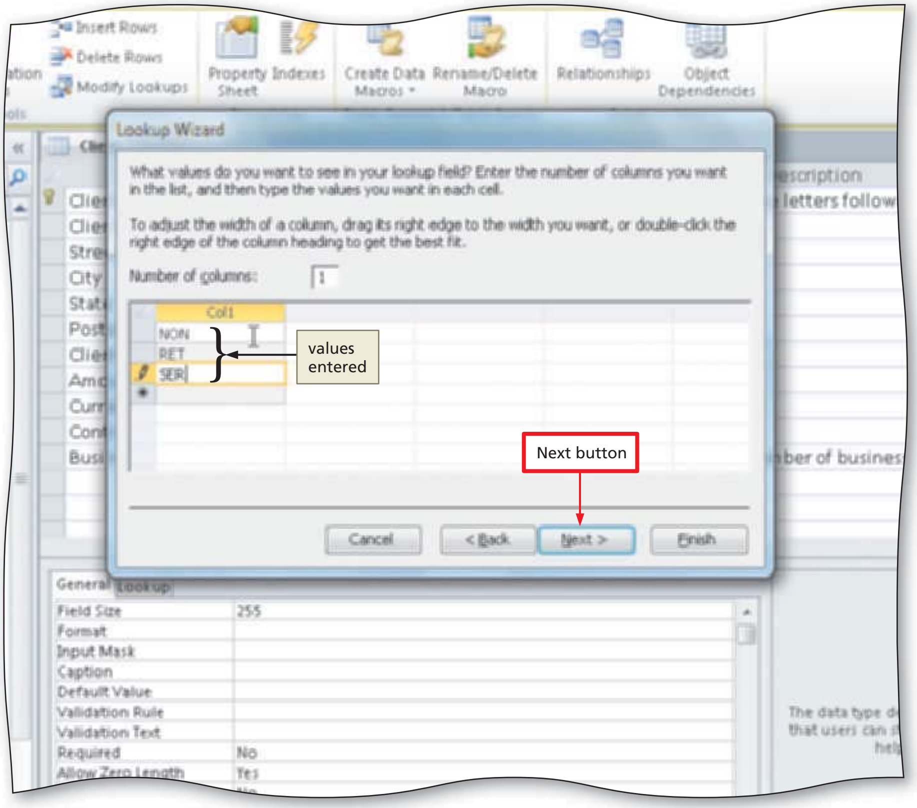
4

- Click the first row of the table (below Col1), and then type **NON** as the value in the first row.
- Press the DOWN ARROW key, and then type **RET** as the value in the second row.
- Press the TAB key, and then type **SER** as the value in the third row (Figure 3–28).

Q&A

I notice you can press either the DOWN ARROW or the TAB key to move to the second row. Can you also press the ENTER key?

No. Pressing the ENTER key will exit the Lookup Wizard without finishing the process of adding a Lookup field.


Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Modify Lookups
Property Sheet
Indexes
Create Data Macros
Rename/Delete Macro
Relationships
Object Dependencies
Lookup Wizard
Col1
Cancel
< Back
Next >
Finish
General
Lookup
values entered
Next button

What values do you want to see in your lookup field? Enter the number of columns you want in the list, and then type the values you want in each cell.

To adjust the width of a column, drag its right edge to the width you want, or double-click the right edge of the column heading to get the best fit.

Number of columns: 1

Col1
NON
RET
SER

Field Size	255
Format	
Input Mask	
Caption	
Default Value	
Validation Rule	
Validation Text	
Required	No
Allow Zero Length	Yes

Figure 3–28

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

5

- Click the Next button to display the next Lookup Wizard screen.
- Ensure Client Type is entered as the label for the lookup field and that the Allow Multiple Values check box is NOT checked (Figure 3–29).

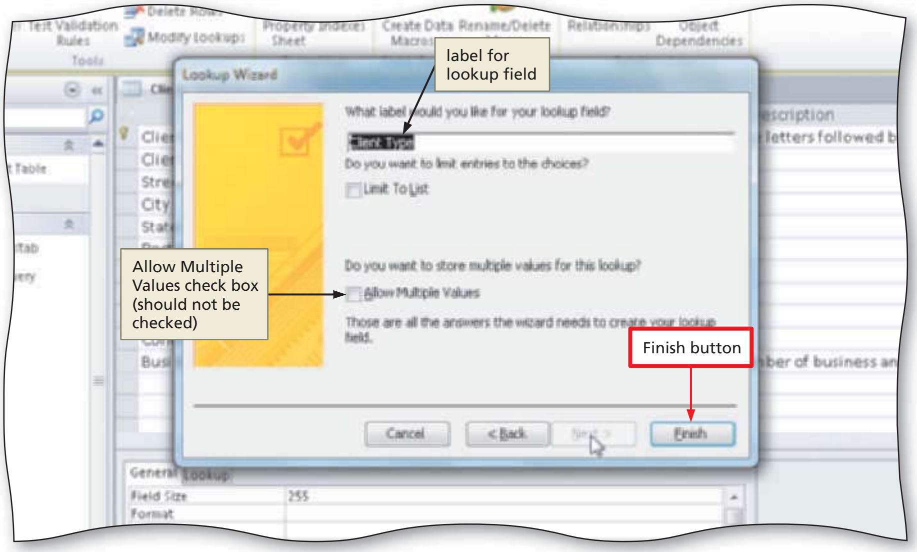
6

- Click the Finish button to complete the definition of the lookup field.

Q&A

Why does the data type for the Client Type field still show Text?

The data type is still Text because the values entered in the wizard were entered as text.



What label would you like for your lookup field?

Client Type

Do you want to limit entries to the choices?

☐ Limit To List

Do you want to store multiple values for this lookup?

☐ Allow Multiple Values

Those are all the answers the wizard needs to create your lookup field.

Figure 3–29

To Add a Multivalued Field

BTW

Multivalued Fields

If you plan to move your data to SQL Server at a later date, do not use multivalued fields. When you upsize a database containing multivalued fields to SQL Server, the field is converted to a memo field that contains the delimited set of values. This may mean that you need to do some redesign of your database.

Normally, fields contain only a single value. In Access, it is possible to have **multivalued fields**, that is, fields that can contain more than one value. Camashaly Design wants to use such a field to store the abbreviations of the various services its clients need (see Table 3–1 for the service abbreviations and descriptions). Unlike the Client Type, where each client only had one type, clients can require multiple service descriptions. One client might need Ad, Ban, Bill, and Logo (Ad Design, Banners, Billboards, and Logo Design). Another client might only need Host (Web Site Hosting).

Table 3–1 Service Abbreviations and Descriptions

Service Abbreviation	Description
Ad	Ad Design
Ban	Banners
Bill	Billboards
Bus	Business Cards
ENews	Email Newsletter
Host	Web Site Hosting
Logo	Logo Design
Mkt	Marketing Research
News	Printed Newsletters
Pod	Podcasting
SE	Search Engine Visibility
Shop	Shopping Cart
Soc	Social Networking

Creating a multivalued field uses the same process as creating a lookup field, with the exception that you check the Allow Multiple Values check box. The following steps create a multivalued field.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

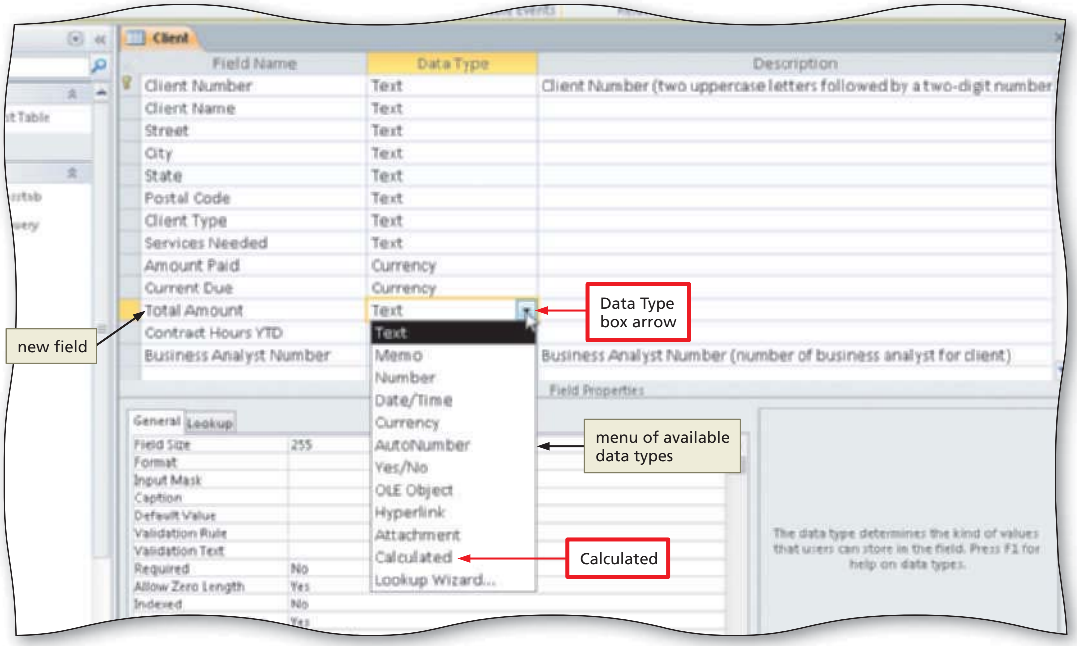
1. Click the row selector for the Amount Paid field, and then press the INSERT key to insert a blank row.
2. Click the Field Name column for the new field, type `Services Needed` as the field name, and then press the TAB key.
3. Click the Data Type arrow to display the menu of available data types for the Services Needed field, and then click Lookup Wizard in the menu of available data types to start the Lookup Wizard.
4. Click the 'I will type in the values that I want.' option button to indicate that you will type in the values.
5. Click the Next button to display the next Lookup Wizard screen.
6. Click the first row of the table (below Col1), and then type `Ad` as the value in the first row.
7. Enter the remaining values from the first column in Table 3–1. Before typing each value, press the TAB key to move to a new row.
8. Click the Next button to display the next Lookup Wizard screen.
9. Ensure that Services Needed is entered as the label for the lookup field.
10. Click the Allow Multiple Values check box to allow the user to enter multiple values.
11. Click the Finish button to complete the definition of the Lookup Wizard field.

To Add a Calculated Field

A field that can be computed from other fields is called a **calculated field** or a **computed field**. In Chapter 2, you created a calculated field in a query that provided total amount data. With Access 2010, it is now possible to also include a calculated field in a table. Users will not be able to update this field. Instead, Access will automatically perform the necessary calculation whenever you display or use this field in any way. The following steps add a calculated field in the table.

1

- Click the row selector for the Contract Hours YTD field, and then press the INSERT key to insert a blank row above the selected field.
- Click the Field Name column for the new field.
- Type `Total Amount` as the field name and then press the TAB key.
- Click the Data Type box arrow to display the menu of available data types (Figure 3–30).



Field Name	Data Type	Description
Client Number	Text	Client Number (two uppercase letters followed by a two-digit number
Client Name	Text	
Street	Text	
City	Text	
State	Text	
Postal Code	Text	
Client Type	Text	
Services Needed	Text	
Amount Paid	Currency	
Current Due	Currency	
Total Amount	Text	
Contract Hours YTD		
Business Analyst Number		Business Analyst Number (number of business analyst for client)

Field Size	255
Format	
Input Mask	
Caption	
Default Value	
Validation Rule	
Validation Text	
Required	No
Allow Zero Length	Yes
Indexed	No
	Yes

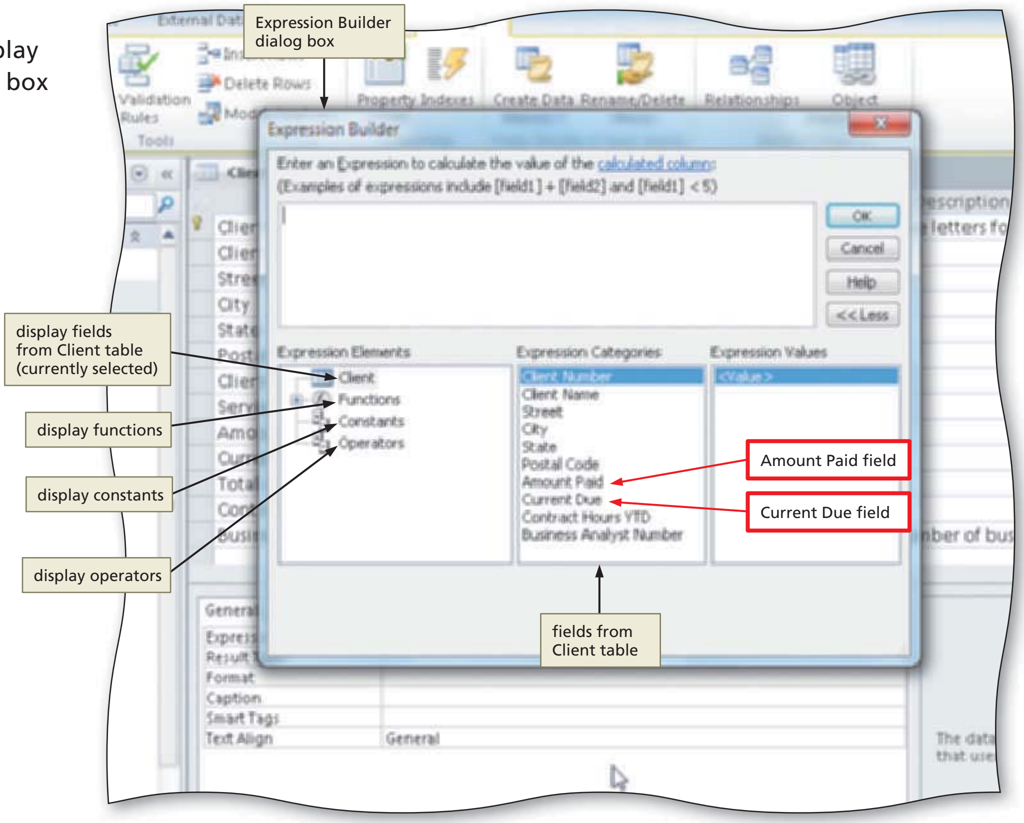
The data type determines the kind of values that users can store in the field. Press F1 for help on data types.

Figure 3–30

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2

- Click Calculated to select the Calculated data type and display the Expression Builder dialog box (Figure 3–31).



Expression Builder dialog box

Enter an Expression to calculate the value of the calculated column:
(Examples of expressions include [field1] + [field2] and [field1] < 5)

Expression Builder
OK
Cancel
Help
<< Less
Expression Elements
Client
Functions
Constants
Operators
Expression Categories
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Amount Paid
Current Due
Contract Hours YTD
Business Analyst Number
Expression Values
<Value>

display fields from Client table (currently selected)

display functions

display constants

display operators

Amount Paid field

Current Due field

fields from Client table

Figure 3–31

3

- Double-click the Amount Paid field in the Expression Categories area (Expression Builder dialog box) to add the field to the expression.

Q&A I don't have the list of fields in the Expression Categories area. What should I do?

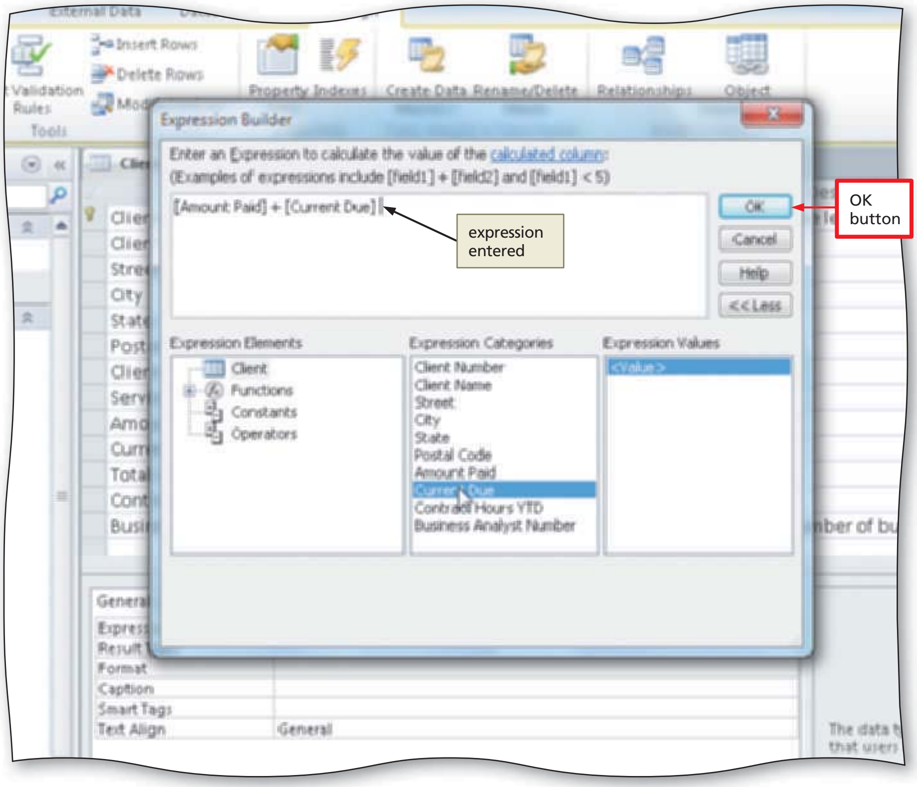
Click Client in the Expression Elements area.

- Type a plus sign (+).

Q&A Could I select the plus sign from a list rather than typing it?

Yes. Double-click Operators in the Expression Elements area to display available operators and then click the plus sign.

- Double-click the Current Due field in the Expression Categories area (Expression Builder dialog box) to add the field to the expression (Figure 3–32).



Enter an Expression to calculate the value of the calculated column:
(Examples of expressions include [field1] + [field2] and [field1] < 5)

[Amount Paid] + [Current Due]

Expression Builder
OK
Cancel
Help
<< Less
Expression Elements
Client
Functions
Constants
Operators
Expression Categories
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Amount Paid
Current Due
Contract Hours YTD
Business Analyst Number
Expression Values
<Value>

expression entered

OK button

Figure 3–32

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

4

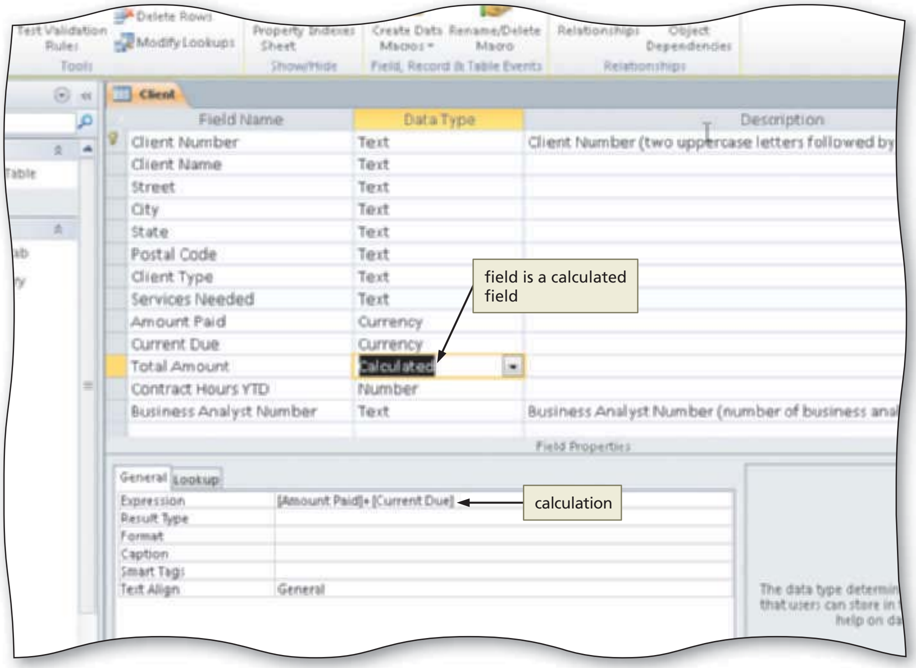
- Click the OK button (Expression Builder dialog box) to enter the expression in the Expression property of the selected field (Figure 3–33).

Q&A Could I have simply typed the expression in the Expression Builder dialog box rather than selecting the fields from a list?

Yes. You can use whichever technique you find more convenient.

Q&A When I entered a calculated field in a query, I typed the expression in the Zoom dialog box. Could I have used the Expression Builder instead?

Yes. To do so, you would click Build rather than Zoom on the shortcut menu.



Field Name	Data Type	Description
Client Number	Text	Client Number (two uppercase letters followed by
Client Name	Text	
Street	Text	
City	Text	
State	Text	
Postal Code	Text	
Client Type	Text	
Services Needed	Text	
Amount Paid	Currency	
Current Due	Currency	
Total Amount	Calculated	
Contract Hours YTD	Number	
Business Analyst Number	Text	Business Analyst Number (number of business ana

Expression	[Amount Paid]+[Current Due]
Result Type	
Format	
Caption	
Smart Tags	
Text Align	General

field is a calculated field

calculation

Figure 3–33

To Save the Changes and Close the Table

The following steps save the changes; that is, they save the addition of the new fields and close the table.

1 Click the Save button on the Quick Access Toolbar to save the changes.

2 Close the Client table.

TO MODIFY SINGLE OR MULTIVALUED LOOKUP FIELDS

You may find that you later want to change the list of choices in a lookup field. If you find you need to modify a single or multivalued lookup field, you can use the following steps.

1. Open the table in Design view and select the field to be modified.
2. Click the Lookup tab in the Field Properties pane.
3. Change the list in the Row Source property to change the desired list of values.

BTW

Calculated Fields

Do not add a calculated field to a table if you plan to also use the database with Access 2007. Access 2007 does not recognize calculated fields. Also, if you modify the expression used to create the calculated field, the field may not update correctly.

Mass Changes

In some cases, rather than making individual changes to records, you will want to make mass changes. That is, you will want to add, change, or delete many records in a single operation. You can do this with action queries. Unlike the queries that you created in Chapter 2, which simply presented data in specific ways, an **action query** adds, deletes, or changes data in a table. An **update query** allows you to make the same change to all records satisfying some criterion. If you omit the criterion, you will make the same

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

changes to all records in the table. A **delete query** allows you to delete all the records satisfying some criterion. You can add the results of a query to an existing table by using an **append query**. You also can add the query results to a new table by using a **make-table query**.

To Use an Update Query

The new Client Type field is blank on every record in the Client table. One approach to entering the information for the field would be to step through the entire table, assigning each record its appropriate value. If most of the clients have the same type, a simpler approach is available.

In the Camashaly Design database, for example, more clients are type NON. Initially, you can set all the values to NON. To accomplish this quickly and easily, you can use an **update query**, which is a query that makes the same change to all the records satisfying a criterion. Later, you can change the type for retail organizations and service organizations.

The following steps use an update query to change the value in the Client Type field to NON for all the records. Because all records are to be updated, criteria are not required.

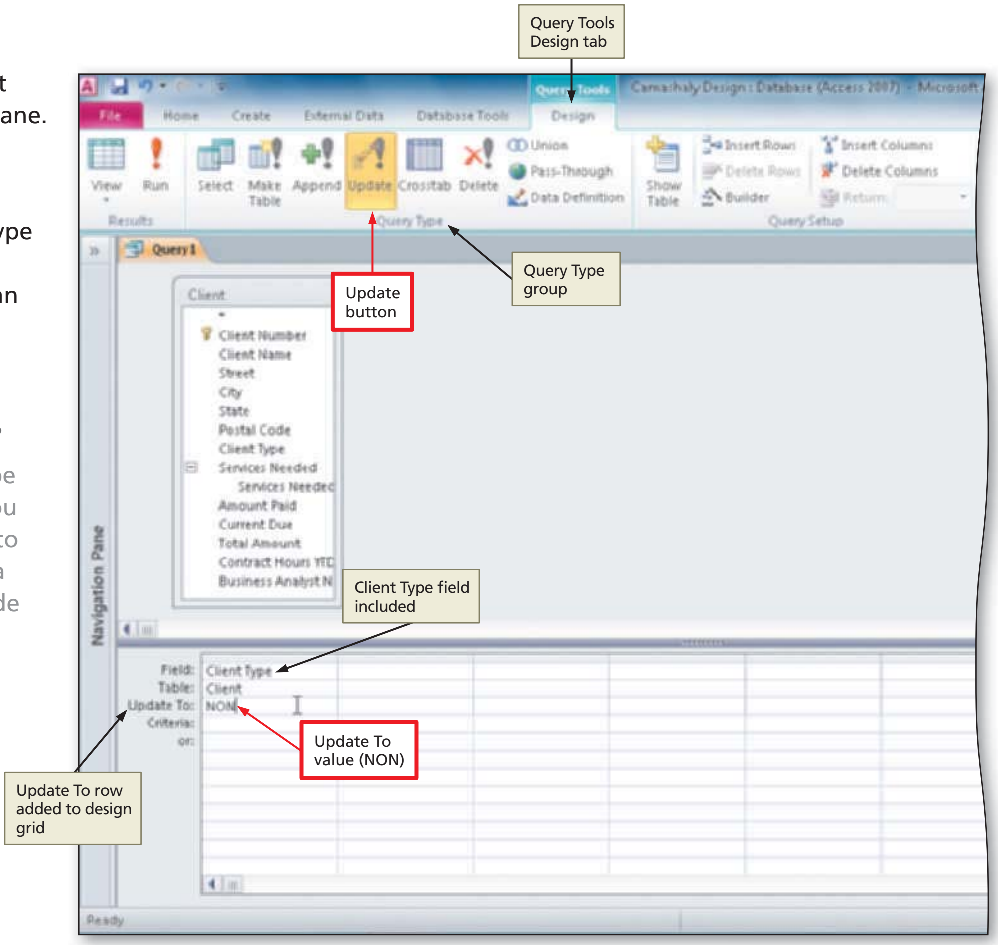
1

- Create a new query for the Client table, and close the Navigation Pane.
- Click the Update button (Query Tools Design tab | Query Type group), double-click the Client Type field to select the field, click the Update To row in the first column of the design grid, and then type `NON` as the new value (Figure 3–34).

Q&A

Don't I have to enter a criterion?

If you only want the change to be made on some of the records, you would need to enter a criterion to identify those records. Without a criterion, the change will be made on all records, which is what you want in this update.


Query Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
View
Run
Select
Make Table
Append
Update
Crosstab
Delete
Union
Pass-Through
Data Definition
Show Table
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Builder
Insert Columns
Delete Columns
Return
Results
Query Type
Query Setup
Query1
Client
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Client Type
Services Needed
Services Needed
Amount Paid
Current Due
Total Amount
Contract Hours YTD
Business Analyst N
Navigation Pane
Ready

Field: Client Type
Table: Client
Update To: NON
Criteria:
or:

Query Tools Design tab

Update button

Query Type group

Client Type field included

Update To value (NON)

Update To row added to design grid

Figure 3–34

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2

- Click the Run button (Query Tools Design tab | Results group) to run the query and update the records (Figure 3–35).

Q&A

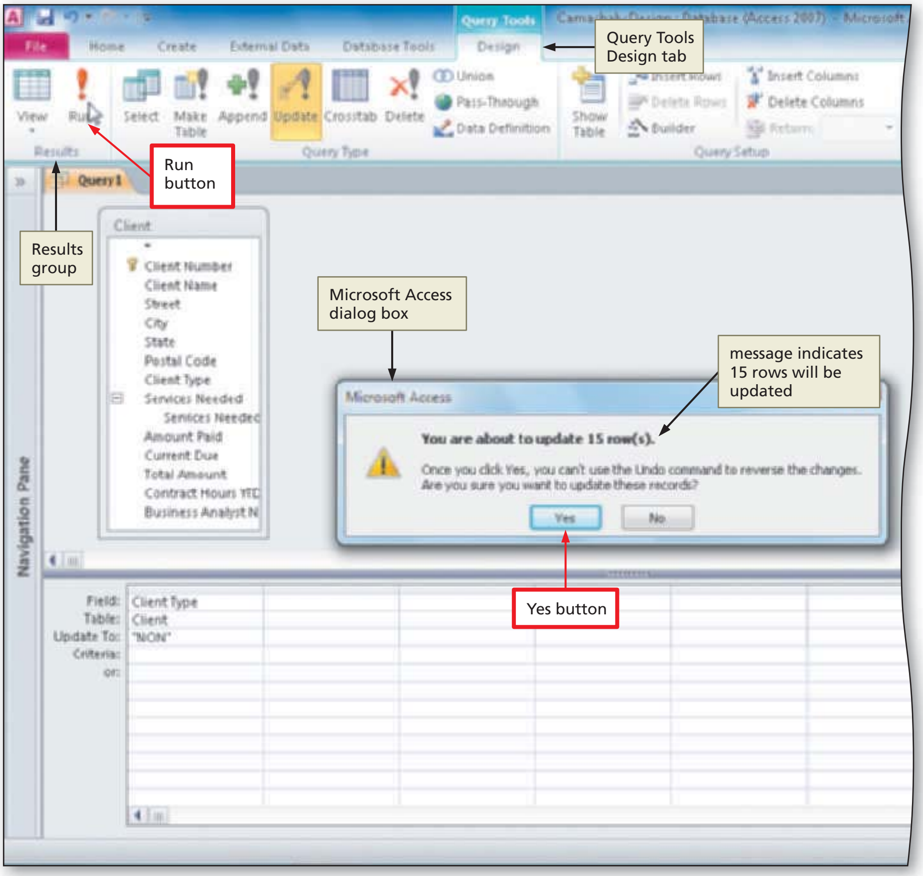
Why don't I click the View button to update the records?

The purpose of the View button is to simply view results. The Run button causes the updates specified by the query to take place.

Q&A

Why doesn't the dialog box appear on my screen when I click the Run button?

If the dialog box does not appear, it means that you did not click the Enable Content button when you first opened the database. Close the database, open it again, and enable the content. Then, create and run the query again.



File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Query Tools
Design
View
Run
Select
Make Table
Append
Update
Crosstab
Delete
Union
Pass-Through
Data Definition
Show Table
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Builder
Insert Columns
Delete Columns
Return
Results
Query Type
Query Setup
Query1
Client
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Client Type
Services Needed
Services Needed
Amount Paid
Current Due
Total Amount
Contract Hours YTD
Business Analyst N
Navigation Pane
Microsoft Access
Yes
No

Query Tools Design tab

Run button

Results group

Microsoft Access dialog box

message indicates 15 rows will be updated

Yes button

You are about to update 15 row(s).

Once you click Yes, you can't use the Undo command to reverse the changes. Are you sure you want to update these records?

Field: Client Type
Table: Client
Update To: "NON"
Criteria:
or:

Figure 3–35

Experiment

- Create an update query to change the client type to RET. Enter a criterion to restrict the records to be updated, and then run the query. Open the table to view your changes. When finished, create and run an update query to change the client type to NON on all records.

3

- Click the Yes button to make the changes.

Q&A

Is there any way to see the records that will be updated before performing the update, in case you are not sure you are updating the correct records?

Yes. Click the Select button (Query Tools Design tab | Query Type group) to convert the query to a select query, add any additional fields that would help you identify the records, and then view the results. Return to Design view and make any necessary corrections to the query. When you are satisfied, click the Update button to once again convert the query to an update query.

Other Ways

1. Right-click any open area in upper pane, point to Query Type on shortcut menu, click Update Query on Query Type submenu

To Use a Delete Query

In some cases, you may need to delete several records at a time. If, for example, all clients in a particular postal code are to be serviced by another firm, the clients with this postal code can be deleted from the Camashaly Design database. Instead of deleting these clients individually, which could be very time consuming in a large database, you can delete them in one operation by using a **delete query**, which is a query that will delete all the records satisfying the criteria entered in the query.

The following steps use a delete query to delete any client whose postal code is 28819. (Two such clients currently exist in the database.)

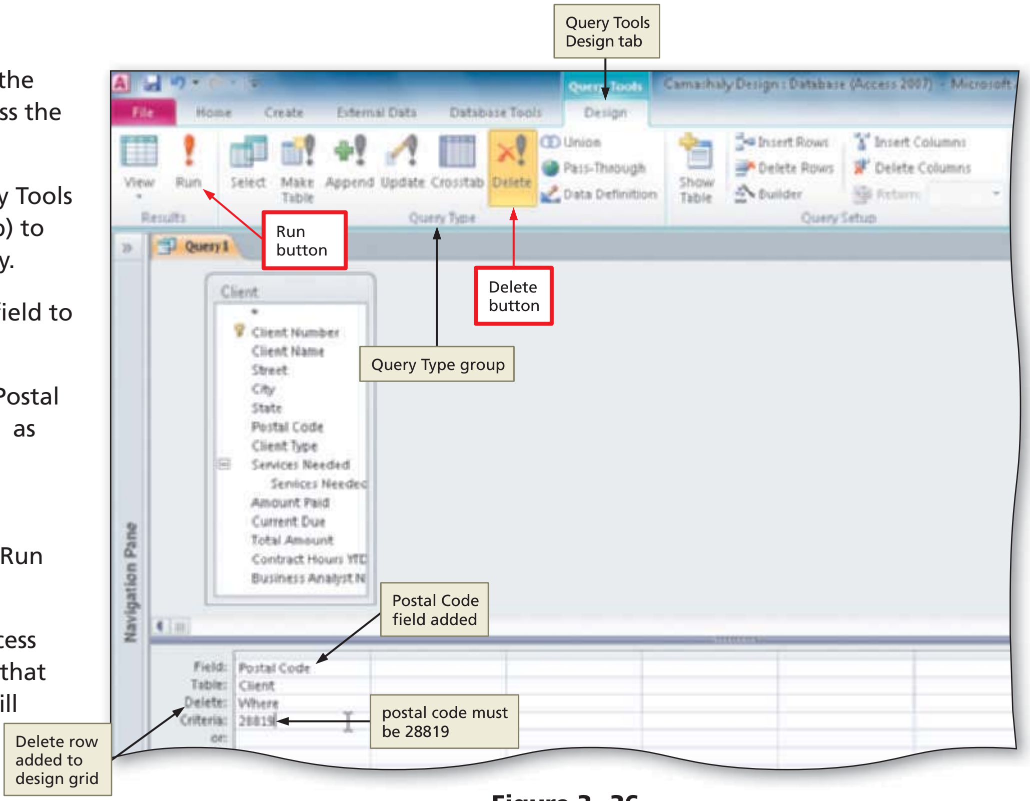
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

1

- Click the column heading for the Client Type field and then press the DELETE key to clear the grid.
- Click the Delete button (Query Tools Design tab | Query Type group) to make the query a delete query.
- Double-click the Postal Code field to select the field.
- Click the Criteria row for the Postal Code field and type `28819` as the criterion (Figure 3–36).

2

- Run the query by clicking the Run button.
- Click the Yes button when Access displays a message indicating that there are two records which will be deleted to complete the deletion.


Query Tools Design tab
Run button
Delete button
Query Type group
Postal Code field added
postal code must be 28819
Delete row added to design grid
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
View
Run
Select
Make Table
Append
Update
Crosstab
Delete
Union
Pass-Through
Data Definition
Show Table
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Builder
Insert Columns
Delete Columns
Return
Results
Query Type
Query Setup
Query1
Client
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Client Type
Services Needed
Services Needed
Amount Paid
Current Due
Total Amount
Contract Hours YTD
Business Analyst N
Navigation Pane

Field: Postal Code
Table: Client
Delete: Where
Criteria: 28819

Figure 3–36

Q&A

Is there any way to see the records that will be deleted before performing the deletion, in case you are not sure you are deleting the correct records?

Yes. Prior to running the query, you would click the Select button (Query Tools Design tab | Query Type group) to convert the query to a select query, add any additional fields that would help you identify the records, and then view the results. You would then return to Design view and make any corrections to the query. When you are satisfied, click the Delete button to once again convert the query to a delete query.

- Close the Query window. Because you do not need to use this delete query again, do not save the query.

Other Ways

1. Right-click any open area in upper pane, point to Query Type on shortcut menu, click Delete Query on Query Type submenu

To Use an Append Query

An **append query** adds a group of records from one table to the end of another table. For example, suppose that Camashaly Design acquires some new clients and a database containing a table with those clients. To avoid entering all this information manually, you can append it to the Client table in the Camashaly Design database using the append query. To create an append query, you would use the following steps.

1. Create a query for the table containing the records to append.
2. In Design view, indicate the fields to include, and then enter any necessary criteria.
3. View the query results to be sure you have specified the correct data, and then return to Design view.
4. Click the Append button (Query Tools Design tab | Query Type group).
5. When Access displays the Append dialog box, specify the name of the table to receive the new records and its location. Run the query by clicking the Run button (Query Tools Design tab | Results group).
6. When Access indicates the number of records to be appended, click the OK button.

BTW

Delete Queries
If you do not specify any criteria in a delete query, Access will delete all the records in the table.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

TO USE A MAKE-TABLE QUERY

In some cases, you might want to copy the records from an existing table to a new table, that is, a table that has not yet been created. If so, use a **make-table query** to add the records to a new table. To create a make-table query, you would use the following steps.

1. Create a query for the table containing the records to add.
2. In Design view, indicate the fields to include, and then enter any necessary criteria.
3. View the query results to be sure you have specified the correct data, and then return to Design view.
4. Click the Make Table button (Query Tools Design tab | Query Type group).
5. When Access displays the Make Table dialog box, specify the name of the table to receive the new records and its location. Run the query by clicking the Run button (Query Tools Design tab | Results group).
6. When Access indicates the number of records to be inserted, click the OK button.

BTW

Archive Tables

You can use a make table query to create an archive table. An **archive table** is a table that contains data that is no longer used in operations but that might still be needed by the organization.

Break Point: If you wish to take a break, this is a good place to do so. You can quit Access now. To resume at a later time, start Access, open the database called Camashaly Design, and continue following the steps from this location forward.

Validation Rules

You now have created, loaded, queried, and updated a database. Nothing you have done so far, however, restricts users to entering only valid data, that is, data that follows the rules established for data in the database. An example of such a rule would be that client types can only be NON, RET, or SER. To ensure the entry of valid data, you create these **validation rules**, that is, rules that a user must follow when entering the data. As you will see, Access will prevent users from entering data that does not follow the rules. The steps also specify **validation text**, which is the message that will appear if a user violates the validation rule.

Validation rules can indicate a **required field**, a field in which the user actually must enter data. Validation rules can restrict a user's entry to a certain **range of values**; for example, the values in the Amount Paid field must be between $0 and $30,000. They can specify a **default value**, that is, a value that Access will display on the screen in a particular field before the user begins adding a record. To make data entry of client numbers more convenient, you also can have lowercase letters appear automatically as uppercase letters. Finally, validation rules can specify a collection of acceptable values.

BTW

Database Design: Validation

In most organization, decisions about what is valid and what is invalid data are made during the requirements gathering process and the database design process.

To Change a Field Size

The Field Size property for text fields represents the maximum number of characters a user can enter in the field. Because the field size for the Client Number field is 4, for example, a user would not be able to enter a fifth character in the field. Occasionally, you may find that the field size that seemed appropriate when you first created a table is no longer appropriate. In the Client table, there is now a name that is longer than 30 characters. To allow this name in the table, you need to change the field size for the Client Name field to a number that is large enough to accommodate the new name. The following step changes the field size for the Client Name field from 30 to 35.

1. Ensure that the Client table is open in Design view and that the Navigation Pane is closed.
2. Select the Client Name field by clicking its row selector.
3. Click the Field Size property to select it, delete the current entry (30), and then type 35 as the new field size.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Specify a Required Field

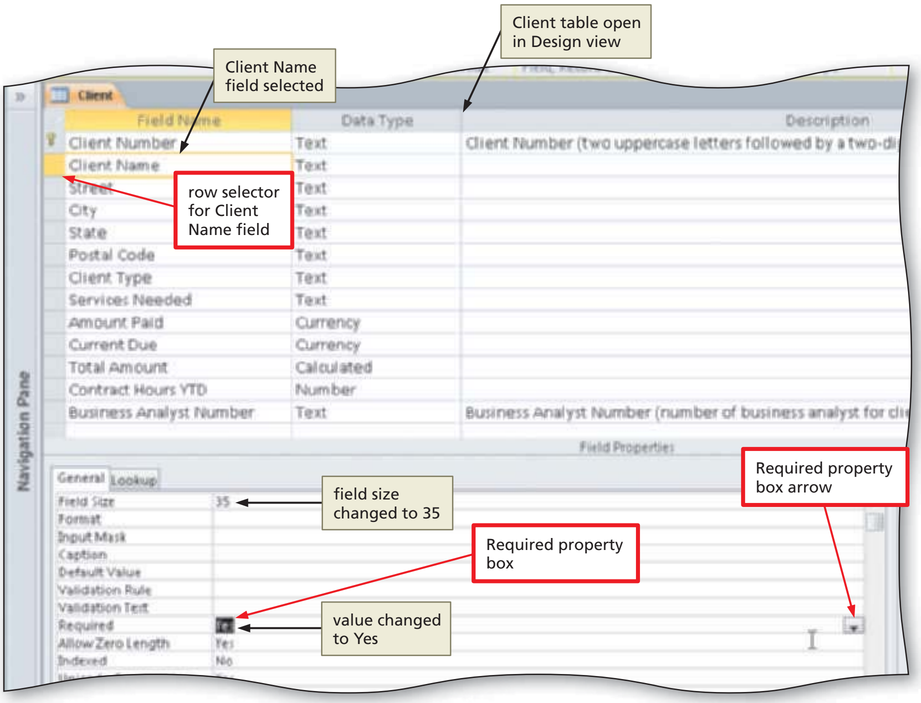
To specify that a field is to be required, change the value for the Required property from No to Yes. The following step specifies that the Client Name field is to be a required field.

1

- Ensure that the Client Name field is still selected.
- Click the Required property box in the Field Properties pane, and then click the down arrow that appears.
- Click Yes in the list (Figure 3–37).

Q&A What is the effect of this change?

Users cannot leave the Client Name field blank when entering or editing records.



Field Name	Data Type	Description
Client Number	Text	Client Number (two uppercase letters followed by a two-di
Client Name	Text	
Street	Text	
City	Text	
State	Text	
Postal Code	Text	
Client Type	Text	
Services Needed	Text	
Amount Paid	Currency	
Current Due	Currency	
Total Amount	Calculated	
Contract Hours YTD	Number	
Business Analyst Number	Text	Business Analyst Number (number of business analyst for cli

Field Size	35
Format	
Input Mask	
Caption	
Default Value	
Validation Rule	
Validation Text	
Required	Yes
Allow Zero Length	Yes
Indexed	No

Client table open in Design view

Client Name field selected

row selector for Client Name field

field size changed to 35

Required property box arrow

Required property box

value changed to Yes

Figure 3–37

To Specify a Range

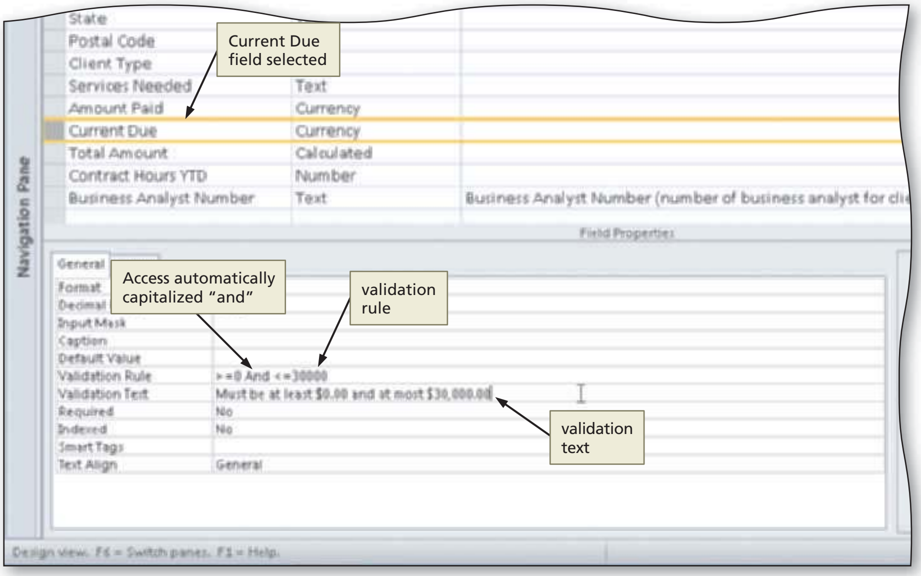
The following step specifies that entries in the Current Due field must be between $0 and $30,000. To indicate this range, the criterion specifies that the amount paid amount must be both >= 0 (greater than or equal to 0) and <= 30000 (less than or equal to 30,000).

1

- Select the Current Due field by clicking its row selector, click the Validation Rule property box to produce an insertion point, and then type `>=0 and <=30000` as the rule.
- Click the Validation Text property box to produce an insertion point, and then type `Must be at least $0.00 and at most $30,000.00` as the text (Figure 3–38).

Q&A What is the effect of this change?

Users now will be prohibited from entering a current due amount that either is less than $0.00 or greater than $30,000.00 when they add records or change the value in the Current Due field.



State		
Postal Code		
Client Type		
Services Needed	Text	
Amount Paid	Currency	
Current Due	Currency	
Total Amount	Calculated	
Contract Hours YTD	Number	
Business Analyst Number	Text	Business Analyst Number (number of business analyst for cli

Format	
Decimal	
Input Mask	
Caption	
Default Value	
Validation Rule	>=0 And <=30000
Validation Text	Must be at least $0.00 and at most $30,000.00
Required	No
Indexed	No
Smart Tags	
Text Align	General

Current Due field selected

Access automatically capitalized “and”

validation rule

validation text

Figure 3–38

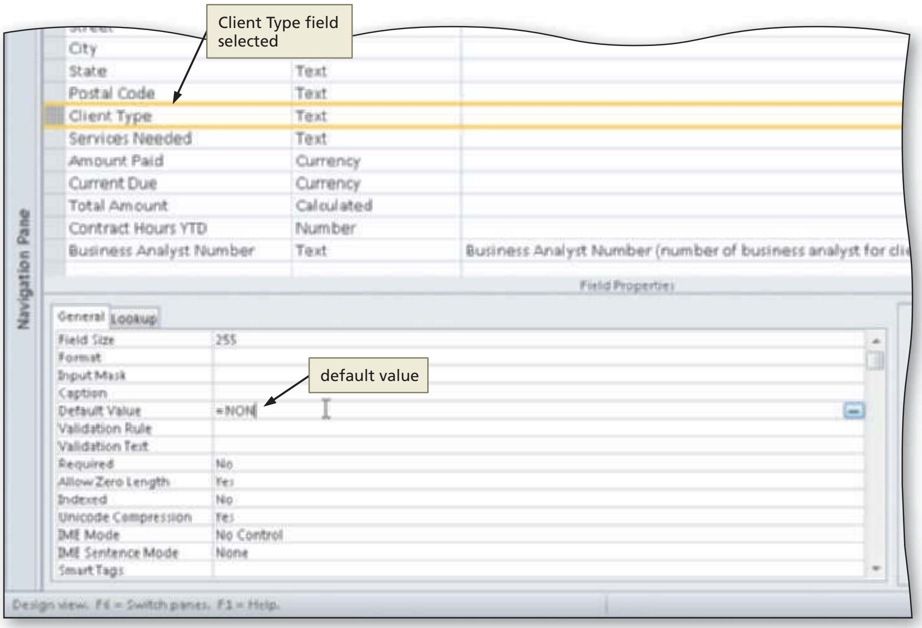
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Specify a Default Value

To specify a default value, enter the value in the Default Value property box. The following step specifies NON as the default value for the Client Type field. This simply means that if users do not enter a client type, the type will be NON.

1

- With the Client Type field selected, click the Default Value property box to produce an insertion point, and then type `=NON` as the value (Figure 3–39).



City		
State	Text	
Postal Code	Text	
Client Type	Text	
Services Needed	Text	
Amount Paid	Currency	
Current Due	Currency	
Total Amount	Calculated	
Contract Hours YTD	Number	
Business Analyst Number	Text	Business Analyst Number (number of business analyst for cli

Field Size	255
Format	
Input Mask	
Caption	
Default Value	=NON
Validation Rule	
Validation Text	
Required	No
Allow Zero Length	Yes
Indexed	No
Unicode Compression	Yes
IME Mode	No Control
IME Sentence Mode	None
Smart Tags	

Design view. F6 = Switch panes. F1 = Help.

Figure 3–39

To Specify a Collection of Legal Values

The only **legal values, or allowable values**, for the Client Type field are NON, RET, and SER. An appropriate validation rule for this field prevents Access from accepting any entry other than these three possibilities. The following step specifies the legal values for the Client Type field.

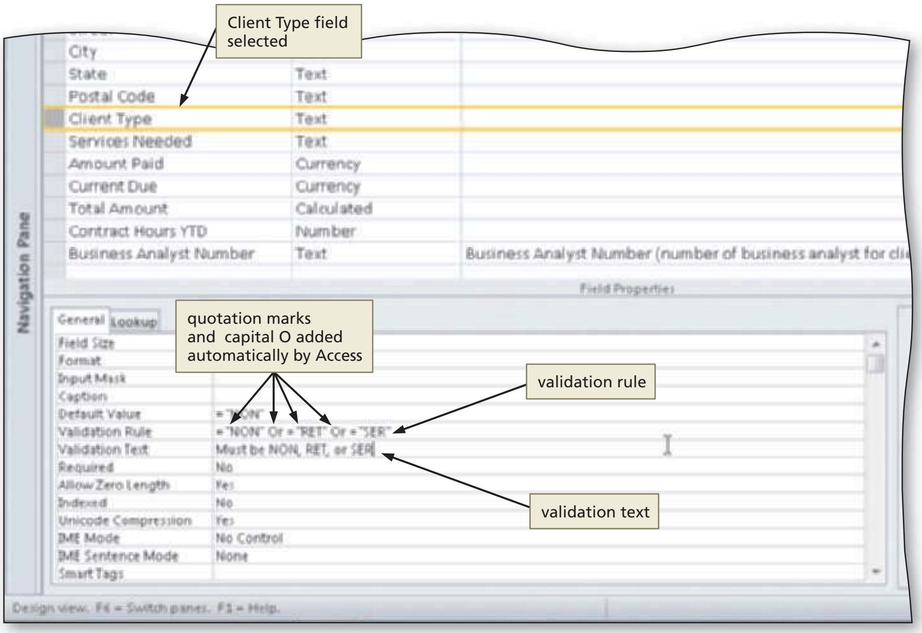
1

- With the Client Type field selected, click the Validation Rule property box to produce an insertion point and then type `=NON or =RET or =SER` as the validation rule.
- Click the Validation Text property box and then type `Must be NON, RET, or SER` as the validation text (Figure 3–40).

Q&A

What is the effect of this change?

Users now will be allowed to enter only NON, RET, or SER in the Client Type field when they add records or make changes to this field.


Client Type field selected
quotation marks and capital O added automatically by Access
validation rule
validation text
Navigation Pane
Field Properties
General
Lookup

City		
State	Text	
Postal Code	Text	
Client Type	Text	
Services Needed	Text	
Amount Paid	Currency	
Current Due	Currency	
Total Amount	Calculated	
Contract Hours YTD	Number	
Business Analyst Number	Text	Business Analyst Number (number of business analyst for cli

Field Size	
Format	
Input Mask	
Caption	
Default Value	="NON"
Validation Rule	="NON" Or ="RET" Or ="SER"
Validation Text	Must be NON, RET, or SER
Required	No
Allow Zero Length	Yes
Indexed	No
Unicode Compression	Yes
IME Mode	No Control
IME Sentence Mode	None
Smart Tags	

Design view. F6 = Switch panes. F1 = Help.

Figure 3–40

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Specify a Format

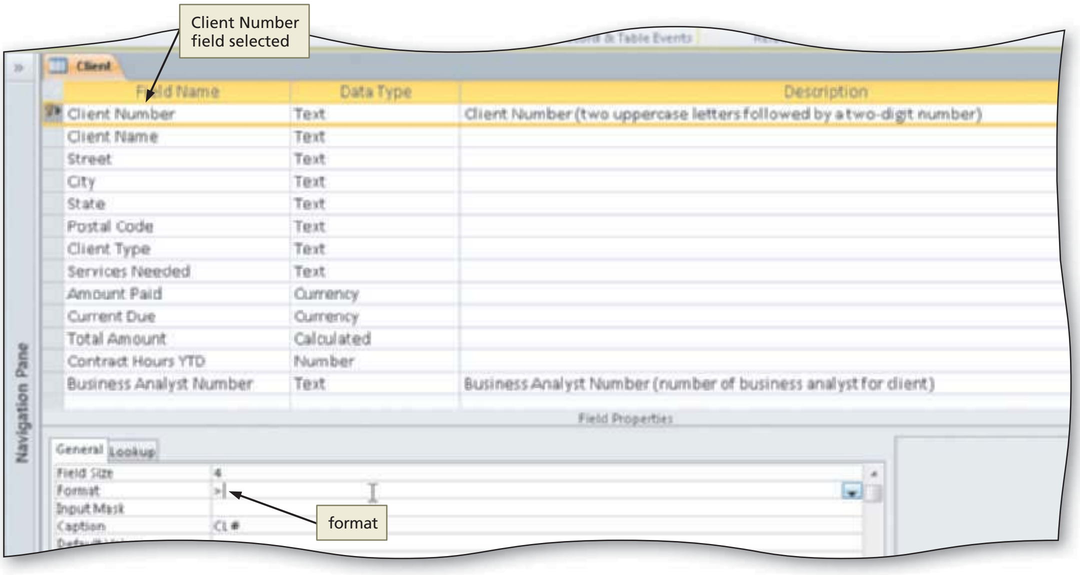
To affect the way data appears in a field, you can use a **format**. To use a format with a Text field, you enter a special symbol, called a **format symbol**, in the field's Format property box. The Format property uses different settings for different data types. The following step specifies a format for the Client Number field in the Client table and illustrates the way you enter a format. The format symbol used in the example is >, which causes Access to display lowercase letters automatically as uppercase letters. The format symbol < causes Access to display uppercase letters automatically as lowercase letters.

1

- Select the Client Number field.
- Click the Format property box and then type > (Figure 3–41).

Q&A What is the effect of this change?

From this point on, any lowercase letters will appear automatically as uppercase when users add records or change the value in the Client Number field.


Client
Navigation Pane
Field Properties
General
Lookup

Field Name	Data Type	Description
Client Number	Text	Client Number (two uppercase letters followed by a two-digit number)
Client Name	Text	
Street	Text	
City	Text	
State	Text	
Postal Code	Text	
Client Type	Text	
Services Needed	Text	
Amount Paid	Currency	
Current Due	Currency	
Total Amount	Calculated	
Contract Hours YTD	Number	
Business Analyst Number	Text	Business Analyst Number (number of business analyst for client)

Field Size	4
Format	>
Input Mask	
Caption	CL #

Client Number field selected

format

Figure 3–41

To Save the Validation Rules, Default Values, and Formats

The following steps save the validation rules, default values, and formats.

1 Click the Save button on the Quick Access Toolbar to save the changes (Figure 3–42).

2 Click the No button to save the changes without testing current data.

3 Close the Client table.

Q&A Should I always click the No button when saving validation rules?

If this were a database used to run a business or to solve some other critical need, you would click Yes. You would want to be sure that the data already in the database does not violate the rules.

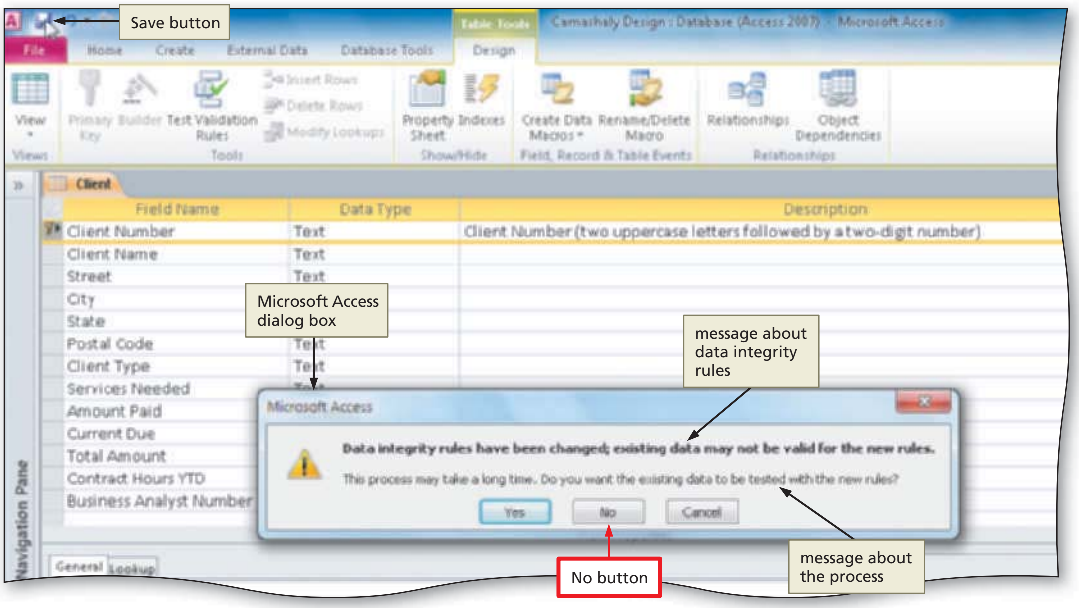


Table Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
View
Views
Primary Key
Builder
Test Validation Rules
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Modify Lookups
Tools
Property Sheet
Indexes
Show/Hide
Create Data Macros
Rename/Delete Macro
Field, Record & Table Events
Relationships
Object Dependencies
Relationships
Client
Navigation Pane
General
Lookup
Yes
No
Cancel

Field Name	Data Type	Description
Client Number	Text	Client Number (two uppercase letters followed by a two-digit number)
Client Name	Text	
Street	Text	
City		
State		
Postal Code	Text	
Client Type	Text	
Services Needed		
Amount Paid		
Current Due		
Total Amount		
Contract Hours YTD		
Business Analyst Number		

Microsoft Access

Data integrity rules have been changed; existing data may not be valid for the new rules.

This process may take a long time. Do you want the existing data to be tested with the new rules?

Save button

Microsoft Access dialog box

message about data integrity rules

No button

message about the process

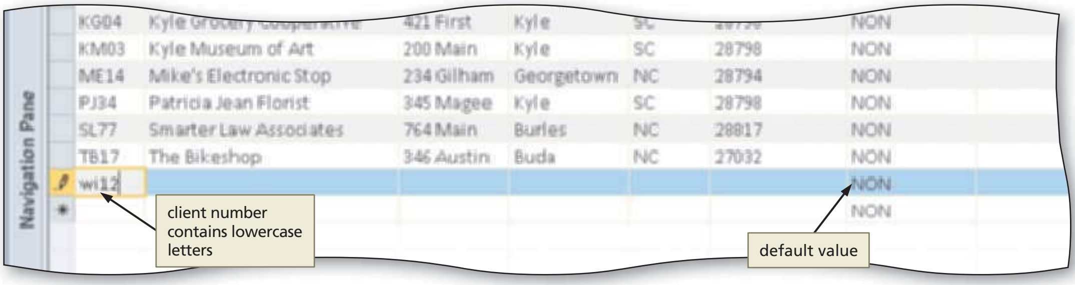
Figure 3–42

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Updating a Table that Contains Validation Rules

When updating a table that contains validation rules, Access provides assistance in making sure the data entered is valid. It helps in making sure that data is formatted correctly. Entering a number that is out of the required range, for example, or entering a value that is not one of the possible choices, will produce an error message in the form of a dialog box. The database will not be updated until the error is corrected.

If the client number entered contains lowercase letters, such as wi12 (Figure 3–43), Access will display the data automatically as WI12 (Figure 3–44).

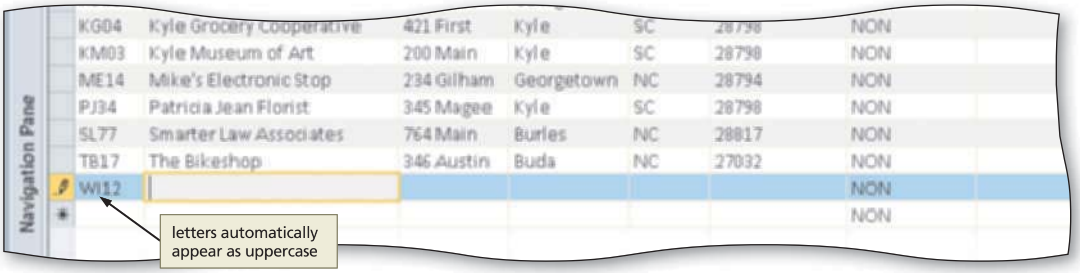


KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	421 First	Kyle	SC	28798	NON
KM03	Kyle Museum of Art	200 Main	Kyle	SC	28798	NON
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	234 Gilham	Georgetown	NC	28794	NON
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	345 Magee	Kyle	SC	28798	NON
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	764 Main	Burles	NC	28817	NON
TB17	The Bikeshop	346 Austin	Buda	NC	27032	NON
wi12						NON
						NON

client number contains lowercase letters

default value

Figure 3–43

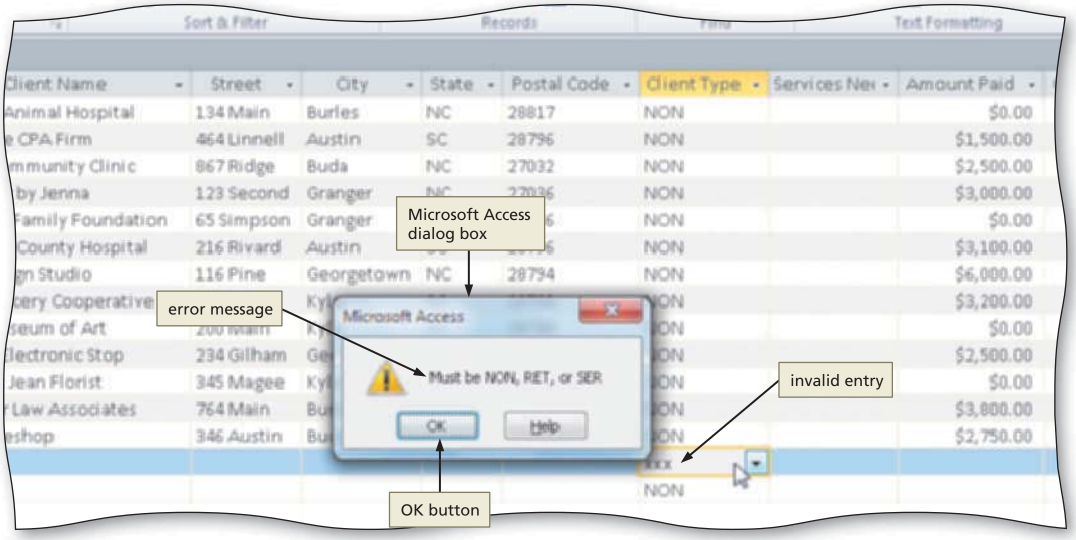


KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	421 First	Kyle	SC	28798	NON
KM03	Kyle Museum of Art	200 Main	Kyle	SC	28798	NON
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	234 Gilham	Georgetown	NC	28794	NON
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	345 Magee	Kyle	SC	28798	NON
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	764 Main	Burles	NC	28817	NON
TB17	The Bikeshop	346 Austin	Buda	NC	27032	NON
WI12						NON
						NON

letters automatically appear as uppercase

Figure 3–44

If the client type is not valid, such as xxx, Access will display the text message you specified (Figure 3–45) and prevent the data from entering the database.



Client Name	Street	City	State	Postal Code	Client Type	Services Nee	Amount Paid
Animal Hospital	134 Main	Burles	NC	28817	NON		$0.00
e CPA Firm	464 Linnell	Austin	SC	28796	NON		$1,500.00
mmunity Clinic	867 Ridge	Buda	NC	27032	NON		$2,500.00
by Jenna	123 Second	Granger			NON		$3,000.00
Family Foundation	65 Simpson	Granger			NON		$0.00
County Hospital	216 Rivard	Austin			NON		$3,100.00
gn Studio	116 Pine	Georgetown	NC	28794	NON		$6,000.00
cery Cooperative							$3,200.00
seum of Art							$0.00
lectronic Stop	234 Gilham						$2,500.00
Jean Florist	345 Magee						$0.00
Law Associates	764 Main						$3,800.00
eshop	346 Austin						$2,750.00
					xxx		
					NON		

Must be NON, RET, or SER

Microsoft Access dialog box

error message

invalid entry

OK button

Figure 3–45

BTW

Modifying Table Properties

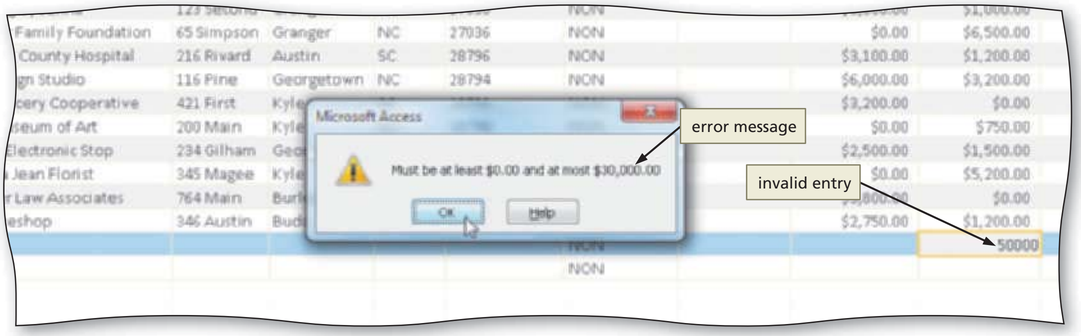
You can change the properties of a table by opening the table in Design view and then clicking the Propery Sheet button. To display the records in a table in an order other than primary key (the default sort order), use the Order By property. For example, to display the Client table automatically in Client Name order, change the the Order By property box setting to `Client.Client Name.` in the property box, close the property sheet, and save the change to the table design. When you open the Client table in Datasheet view, the records will be sorted in Client Name order.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

BTW

Using Wildcards in Validation Rules
You can include wildcards in validation rules. For example, if you enter the expression, `like T?`, in the Validation Rule for the State field, the only valid entries for the field will be TN or TX.

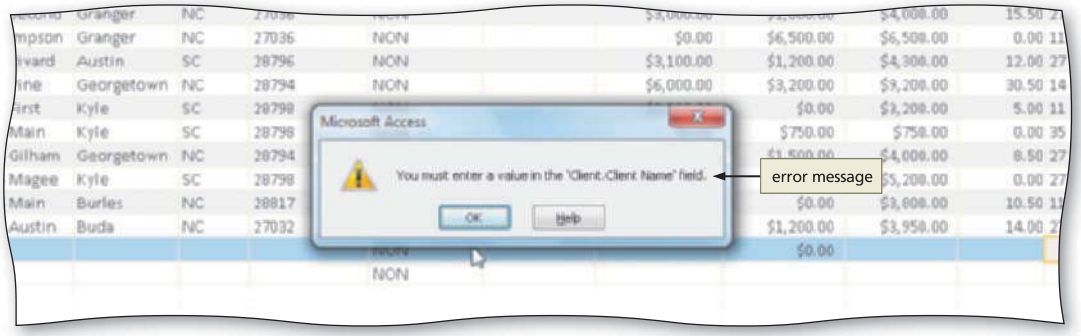
If the amount paid value is not valid, such as 50000, which is too large, Access also displays the appropriate message (Figure 3–46) and refuses to accept the data.


Microsoft Access

Must be at least $0.00 and at most $30,000.00

Figure 3–46

If a required field contains no data, Access indicates this by displaying an error message as soon as you attempt to leave the record (Figure 3–47). The field must contain a valid entry before Access will move to a different record.


Microsoft Access

You must enter a value in the 'Client.Client Name' field.

Figure 3–47

BTW

Using the Between Operator in Validation Rules
You can use the BETWEEN operator to specify a range of values. For example, to specify that entries in the Current Due field must be between $0 and $30,000, type `BETWEEN 0 and 30000` as the rule.

When entering data into a field with a validation rule, you may find that Access displays the error message and you are unable to make the necessary correction. It may be that you cannot remember the validation rule you created or it was created incorrectly. In such a case, you neither can leave the field nor close the table because you have entered data into a field that violates the validation rule.

If this happens, first try again to type an acceptable entry. If this does not work, repeatedly press the BACKSPACE key to erase the contents of the field and then try to leave the field. If you are unsuccessful using this procedure, press the ESC key until the record is removed from the screen. The record will not be added to the database.

Should the need arise to take this drastic action, you probably have a faulty validation rule. Use the techniques of the previous sections to correct the existing validation rules for the field.

To Change the Contents of a Field

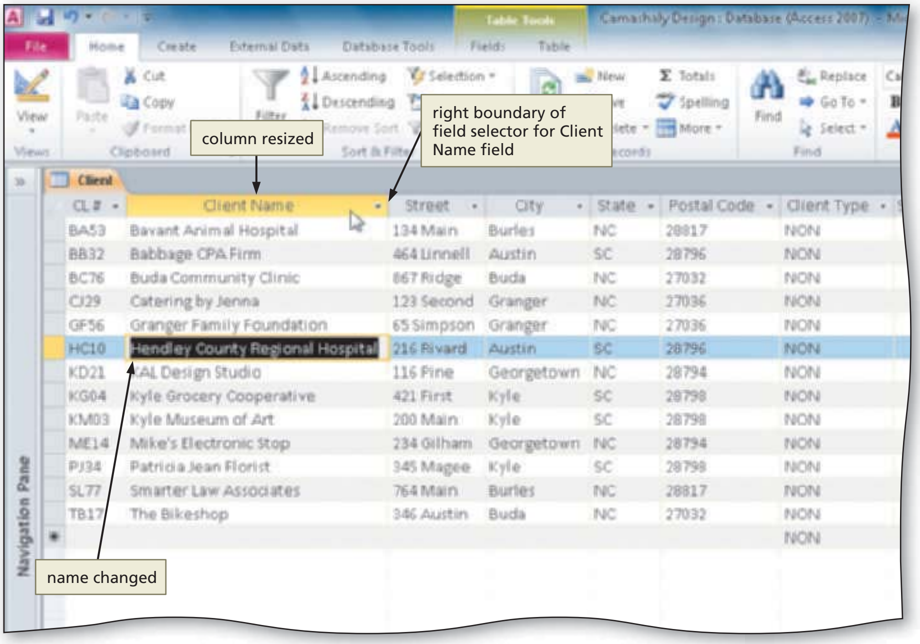
Now that the size for the Client Name field has been increased, you can change the name for client HC10 to Hendley County Regional Hospital. Changing the field size for the field does not automatically increase the width of the corresponding column in the datasheet, however. You need to take the necessary action to resize the column, just as you resized columns in Chapter 1 on page AC 29. The following steps change the name and resize the column in the datasheet to accommodate the new name.

1

- Open the Client table in Datasheet view and ensure the Navigation Pane is closed.
- Click in the Client Name field for client HC10 immediately before the word, Hospital, to produce an insertion point.
- Change the name from Hendley County Hospital to Hendley County Regional Hospital by typing the word `Regional` and pressing the SPACEBAR.

2

- Resize the Client Name column to best fit the new data by double-clicking the right boundary of the field selector, that is, the column heading (Figure 3–48).



CL #	Client Name	Street	City	State	Postal Code	Client Type
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	134 Main	Burles	NC	28817	NON
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	464 Linnell	Austin	SC	28796	NON
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	867 Ridge	Buda	NC	27032	NON
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	123 Second	Granger	NC	27036	NON
GF56	Granger Family Foundation	65 Simpson	Granger	NC	27036	NON
HC10	Hendley County Regional Hospital	216 Rivard	Austin	SC	28796	NON
KD21	KAL Design Studio	116 Pine	Georgetown	NC	28794	NON
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	421 First	Kyle	SC	28798	NON
KM03	Kyle Museum of Art	200 Main	Kyle	SC	28798	NON
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	234 Gilham	Georgetown	NC	28794	NON
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	345 Magee	Kyle	SC	28798	NON
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	764 Main	Burles	NC	28817	NON
TB17	The Bikeshop	346 Austin	Buda	NC	27032	NON
						NON

column resized

right boundary of field selector for Client Name field

name changed

Table Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Mi
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Fields
Table
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Client
Navigation Pane

Figure 3–48

3

- Save the changes to the layout by clicking the Save button on the Quick Access Toolbar.
- Close the Client table.

To Use a Lookup Field

Earlier, you changed all the entries in the Client Type field to NON. Thus, you have created a rule that will ensure that only legitimate values (NON, RET, or SER) can be entered in the field. You also made Client Type a lookup field for all clients using a mass change. You can make changes to a lookup field for individual records by clicking the field to be changed, clicking the arrow that appears in the field, and then selecting the desired value from the list.

The following steps change the Client Type values to the correct values.

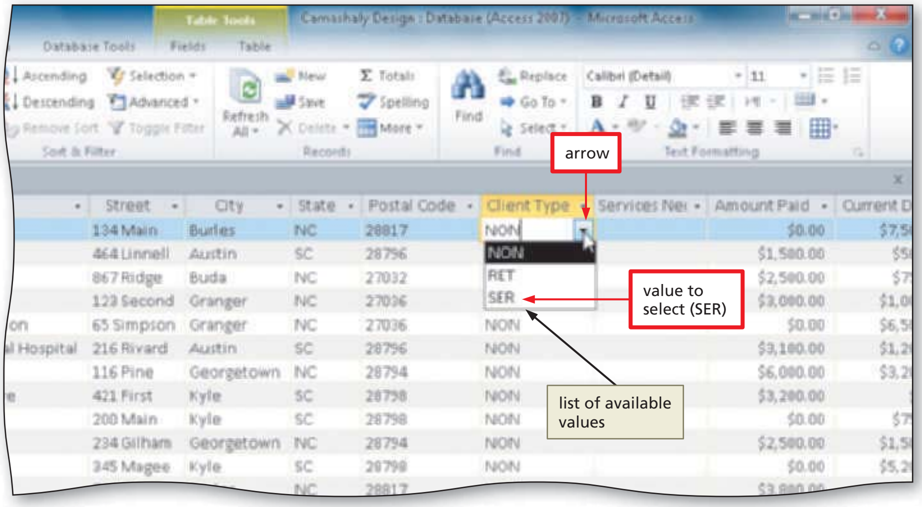
1

- Open the Client table in Datasheet view and ensure the Navigation Pane is closed.
- Click in the Client Type field on the first record to display an arrow.
- Click the arrow to display the drop-down list of available choices for the Client Type field (Figure 3–49).

Q&A

I got the drop-down list as soon as I clicked. I didn't need to click the arrow. What happened?

If you click in the position where the arrow would appear, you will get the drop-down list. If you click anywhere else, you would need to click the arrow.



arrow

value to select (SER)

list of available values

Table Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
Database Tools
Fields
Table
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Calibri (Detail)
11
Sort & Filter
Records
Find
Text Formatting
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Client Type
Services Nee
Amount Paid
Current D
NON
RET
SER

Figure 3–49

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Q&A

Could I type the value instead of selecting it from the list?

Yes. Once you have either deleted the previous value or selected the entire previous value, you can begin typing. You do not have to type the full entry. When you begin with the letter, R, for example, Access will automatically add the ET.

Experiment

- Select the Client Type field on the first record. Try to change the client type by typing various values. Try to type an invalid client type (like MAN). When finished, change the value on the record to SER.

2

- Click SER to change the value.
- In a similar fashion, change the values on the other records to match those shown in Figure 3–50.

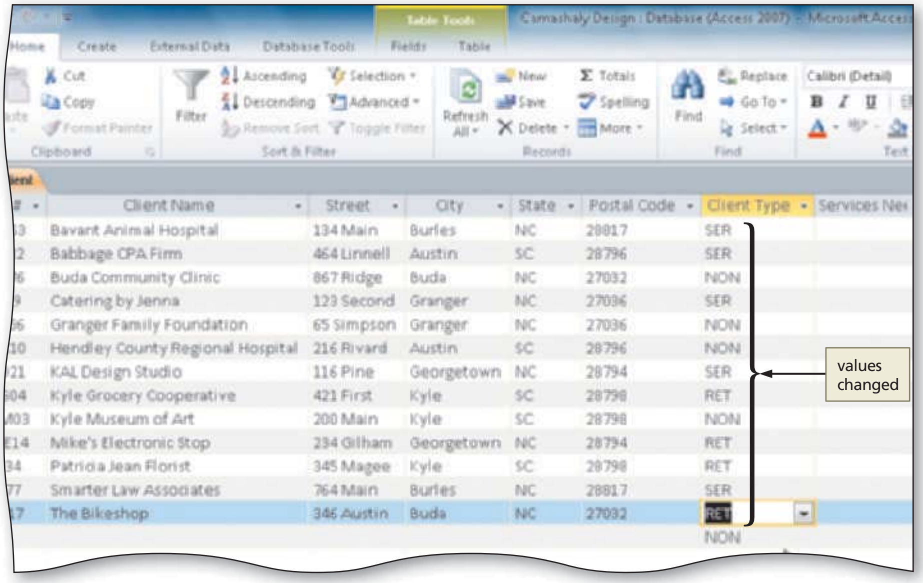


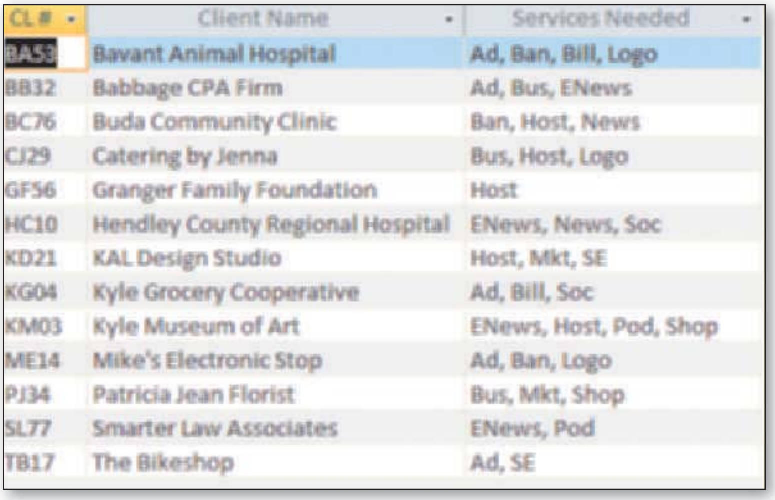
Table Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Acces
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Fields
Table
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Clipboard
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Sort & Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Records
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Find
Calibri (Detail)
Text
values changed
NON

#	Client Name	Street	City	State	Postal Code	Client Type	Services Ne
3	Bavant Animal Hospital	134 Main	Burles	NC	28817	SER	
2	Babbage CPA Firm	464 Linnell	Austin	SC	28796	SER	
6	Buda Community Clinic	867 Ridge	Buda	NC	27032	NON	
9	Catering by Jenna	123 Second	Granger	NC	27036	SER	
56	Granger Family Foundation	65 Simpson	Granger	NC	27036	NON	
10	Hendley County Regional Hospital	216 Rivard	Austin	SC	28796	NON	
21	KAL Design Studio	116 Pine	Georgetown	NC	28794	SER	
604	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	421 First	Kyle	SC	28798	RET	
M03	Kyle Museum of Art	200 Main	Kyle	SC	28798	NON	
E14	Mike's Electronic Stop	234 Gilham	Georgetown	NC	28794	RET	
34	Patricia Jean Florist	345 Magee	Kyle	SC	28798	RET	
77	Smarter Law Associates	764 Main	Burles	NC	28817	SER	
17	The Bikeshop	346 Austin	Buda	NC	27032	RET	

Figure 3–50

To Use a Multivalued Lookup Field

Using a multivalued lookup field is similar to using a regular lookup field. The difference is that when you drop down the list, the entries all will be preceded by check boxes. You then can check all the entries that you want. The appropriate entries are shown in Figure 3–51. As indicated in the figure, the services needed for client BA53 are Ad, Ban, Bill, and Logo.



CL #	Client Name	Services Needed
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	Ad, Ban, Bill, Logo
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	Ad, Bus, ENews
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	Ban, Host, News
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	Bus, Host, Logo
GF56	Granger Family Foundation	Host
HC10	Hendley County Regional Hospital	ENews, News, Soc
KD21	KAL Design Studio	Host, Mkt, SE
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	Ad, Bill, Soc
KM03	Kyle Museum of Art	ENews, Host, Pod, Shop
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	Ad, Ban, Logo
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	Bus, Mkt, Shop
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	ENews, Pod
TB17	The Bikeshop	Ad, SE

Figure 3–51

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

The following steps make the appropriate entries for the Services Needed field.

1

- Click the Services Needed field on the first record to display the arrow.
- Click the arrow to display the list of available services (Figure 3–52).

Q&A All the services currently appear in the box. What if there were too many services to fit?

Access would automatically include a scroll bar that you could use to scroll through all the choices.

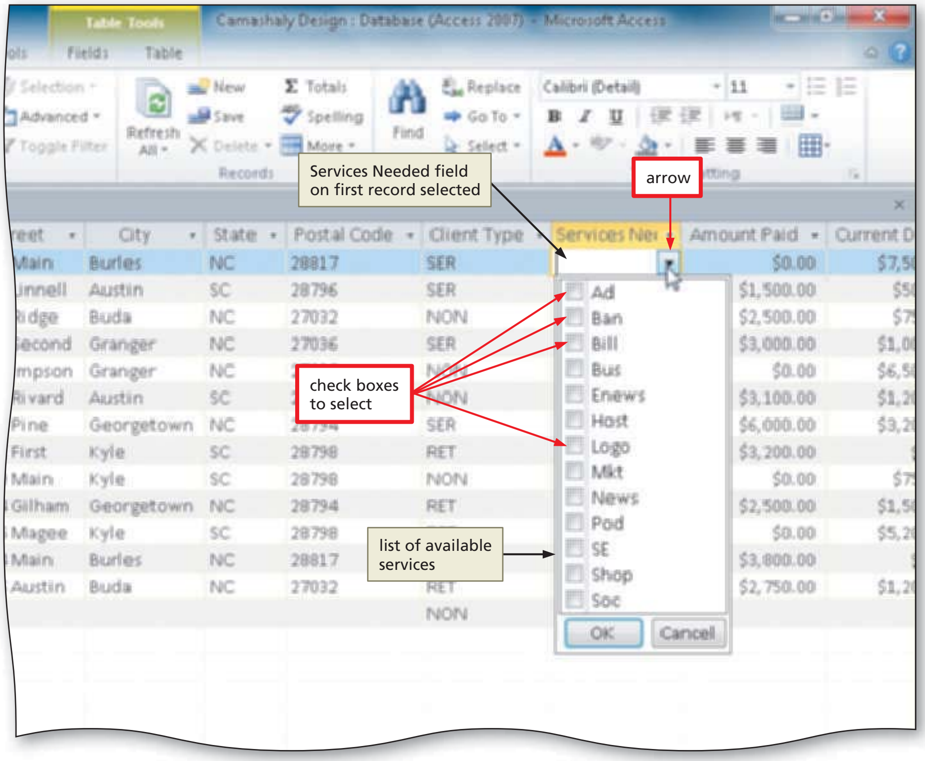


Table Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
Fields
Table
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Records
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Calibri (Detail)
11
City
State
Postal Code
Client Type
Services Needed
Amount Paid
Current Due
Ad
Ban
Bill
Bus
Enews
Host
Logo
Mkt
News
Pod
SE
Shop
Soc
OK
Cancel

Services Needed field on first record selected

arrow

check boxes to select

list of available services

Figure 3–52

2

- Click the Ad, Ban, Bill, and Logo check boxes to select the services for the first client (Figure 3–53).

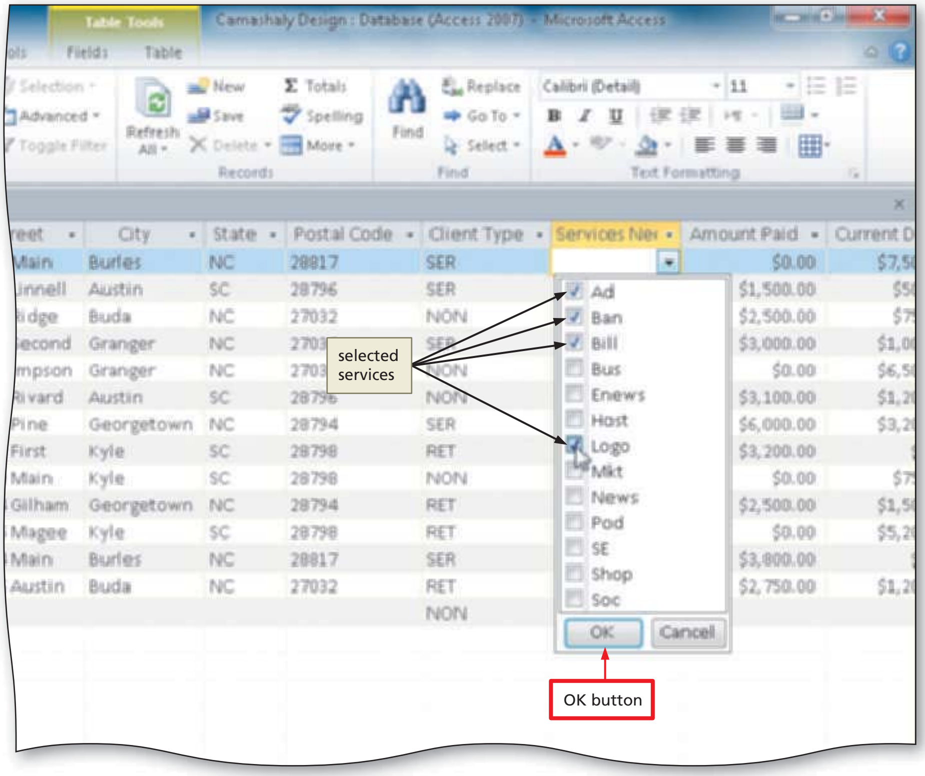


Table Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
Fields
Table
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Records
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Find
Calibri (Detail)
11
Text Formatting
City
State
Postal Code
Client Type
Services Needed
Amount Paid
Current Due
☑ Ad
☑ Ban
☑ Bill
☐ Bus
☐ Enews
☐ Host
☑ Logo
☐ Mkt
☐ News
☐ Pod
☐ SE
☐ Shop
☐ Soc
OK
Cancel

selected services

OK button

Figure 3–53

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3

- Click the OK button to complete the selection.
- Using the same technique, enter the services given in Figure 3–51 on page AC 172 for the remaining clients.
- Double-click the right boundary of the field selector for the Services Needed field to resize the field so that it best fits the data (Figure 3–54).

4

- Save the changes to the layout by clicking the Save button on the Quick Access Toolbar.
- Close the Client table.

Q&A What if I closed the table without saving the layout changes?

You would be asked if you want to save the changes.

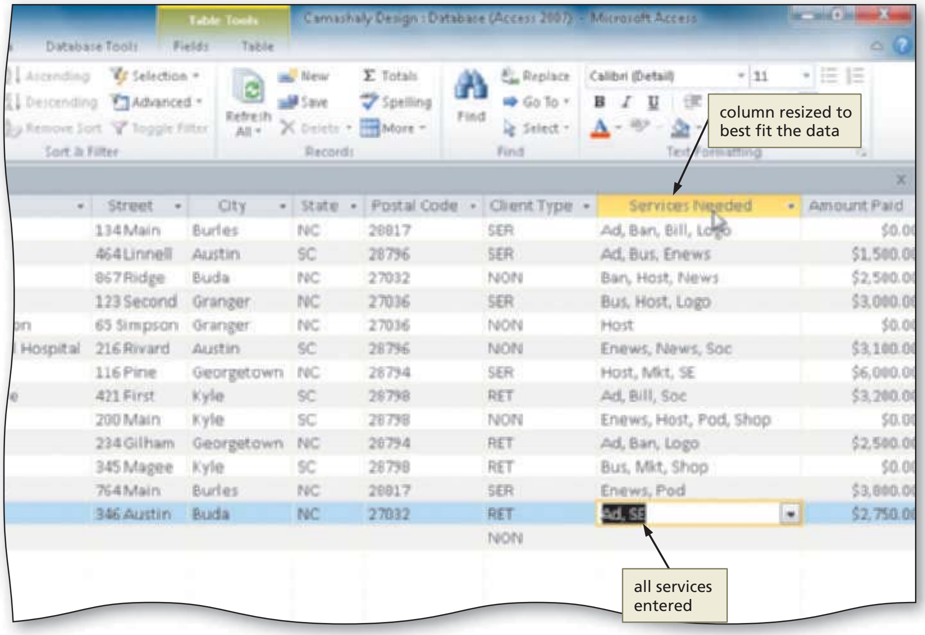


Table Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
Database Tools
Fields
Table
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Sort & Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Records
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Find
Calibri (Detail)
11
B
I
U
Text Formatting

	Street	City	State	Postal Code	Client Type	Services Needed	Amount Paid
	134 Main	Burles	NC	28817	SER	Ad, Ban, Bill, Logo	$0.0
	464 Linnell	Austin	SC	28796	SER	Ad, Bus, Enews	$1,500.0
	867 Ridge	Buda	NC	27032	NON	Ban, Host, News	$2,500.0
	123 Second	Granger	NC	27036	SER	Bus, Host, Logo	$3,000.0
on	65 Simpson	Granger	NC	27036	NON	Host	$0.0
Hospital	216 Rivard	Austin	SC	28796	NON	Enews, News, Soc	$3,100.0
	116 Pine	Georgetown	NC	28794	SER	Host, Mkt, SE	$6,000.0
e	421 First	Kyle	SC	28798	RET	Ad, Bill, Soc	$3,200.0
	200 Main	Kyle	SC	28798	NON	Enews, Host, Pod, Shop	$0.0
	234 Gilham	Georgetown	NC	28794	RET	Ad, Ban, Logo	$2,500.0
	345 Magee	Kyle	SC	28798	RET	Bus, Mkt, Shop	$0.0
	764 Main	Burles	NC	28817	SER	Enews, Pod	$3,000.0
	346 Austin	Buda	NC	27032	RET	Ad, SE	$2,750.0
					NON		

column resized to best fit the data

all services entered

Figure 3–54

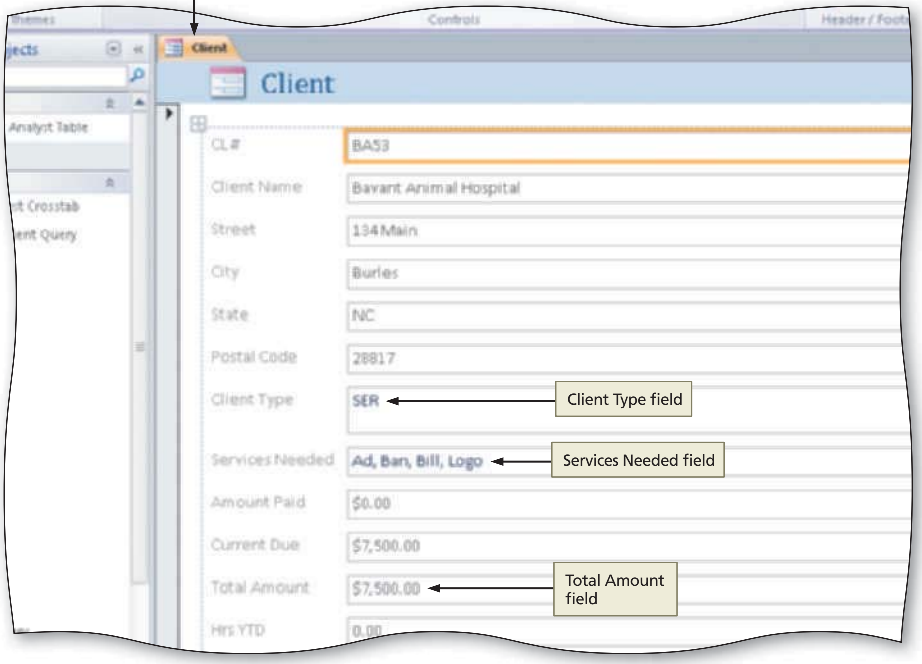
To Update a Form to Reflect the Changes in the Table

In the first chapter, on page AC 48, you clicked the Form button (Create tab | Forms group) to create a simple form that contained all the fields in the Client table. Now that you have added additional fields, the form you created, Client Form, no longer contains all the fields in the table. Because creating the form required only clicking a single button, the simplest way to include all the fields from the Client table in the form is to delete the form and create it once again. The following steps delete the Client Form and then create it a second time. The form then will contain all the fields.

1

- Open the Navigation Pane, and then right-click the Client Form in the Navigation Pane to display a shortcut menu.
- Click Delete on the shortcut menu to delete the selected form, and then click the Yes button in the Microsoft Access dialog box to confirm the deletion.
- Click the Client table in the Navigation Pane to select the table.
- Click Create on the Ribbon to display the Create tab.
- Click the Form button (Create tab | Forms group) to create a simple form (Figure 3–55).

newly created form


Themes
Controls
Header / Footer
jects
Analyst Table
t Crosstab
ent Query
Client
Client

CL #: BA53
Client Name: Bavant Animal Hospital
Street: 134 Main
City: Burles
State: NC
Postal Code: 28817
Client Type: SER
Services Needed: Ad, Ban, Bill, Logo
Amount Paid: $0.00
Current Due: $7,500.00
Total Amount: $7,500.00
Hrs YTD: 0.00

Client Type field

Services Needed field

Total Amount field

Figure 3–55

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2

- Click the Save button on the Quick Access Toolbar to save the form.
- Type `Client Form` as the form name, and then click the OK button to save the form.
- Close the form.

To Update a Report to Reflect the Changes in the Table

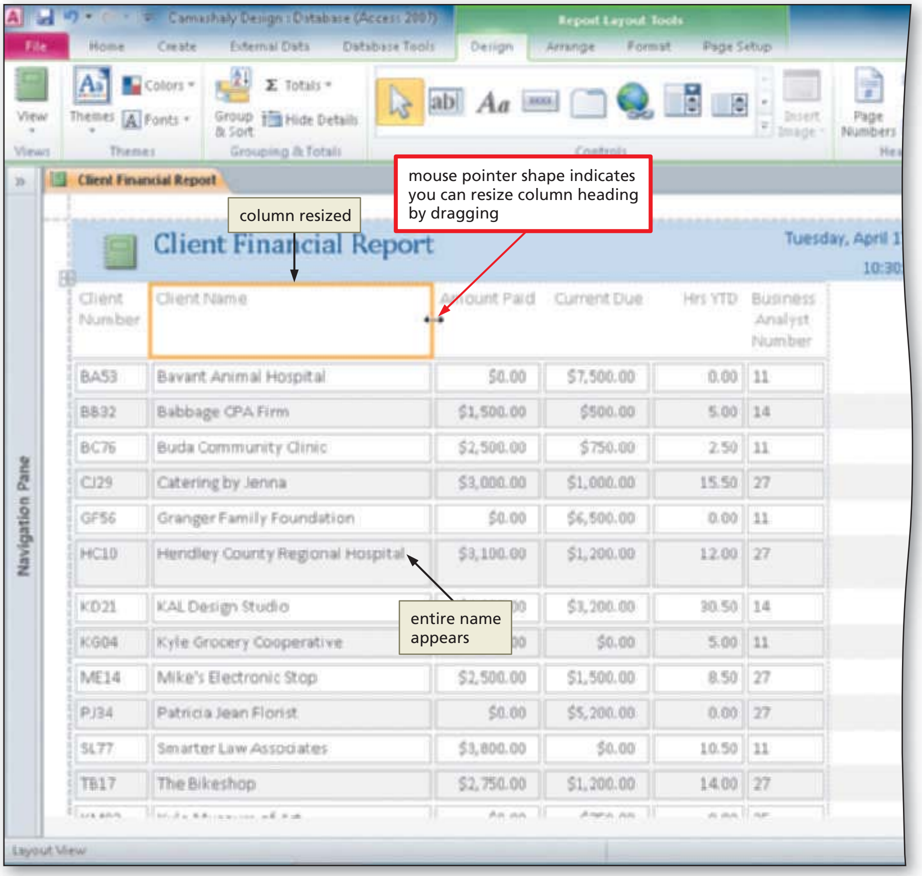
You also may want to include the new fields in the Client Financial Report you created earlier. Just as you did with the form, you could delete the current version of the report and then create it all over again. There are several steps involved in creating a report, however, so it is more complicated than the process of re-creating the form. An easier way is to modify the report in Layout view. In Layout view, you easily can resize columns and add new fields. The following steps modify the Client Financial Report by resizing the Client Name field so that the entire name of Hendley County Regional Hospital appears. They also add the Client Type and Total Amount fields. Finally, to accommodate the extra fields, the steps change the orientation of the report from Portrait to Landscape.

1

- Open the Navigation Pane, if necessary, and then right-click the Client Financial Report in the Navigation Pane to display a shortcut menu.
- Click Layout View on the shortcut menu to open the report in Layout view.
- Close the Navigation Pane.
- Click the column heading for the Client Name column, point to the right-hand border of the column heading so that the mouse pointer becomes a two-headed arrow, and then drag the pointer to the approximate position shown in Figure 3–56 to resize the column.

Q&A Do I have to be exact?

No. Make sure, however, that you can see all the data in the client name for client HC10. If not, you need to drag the border further to the right.



column resized

mouse pointer shape indicates you can resize column heading by dragging

entire name appears

Client Financial Report

Tuesday, April 1

10:30

Client Number	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due	Hrs YTD	Business Analyst Number
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	$0.00	$7,500.00	0.00	11
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	$1,500.00	$500.00	5.00	14
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	$2,500.00	$750.00	2.50	11
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	$3,000.00	$1,000.00	15.50	27
GF56	Granger Family Foundation	$0.00	$6,500.00	0.00	11
HC10	Hendley County Regional Hospital	$3,100.00	$1,200.00	12.00	27
KD21	KAL Design Studio	[illegible]	$3,200.00	30.50	14
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	[illegible]	$0.00	5.00	11
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	$2,500.00	$1,500.00	8.50	27
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	$0.00	$5,200.00	0.00	27
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	$3,800.00	$0.00	10.50	11
TB17	The Bikeshop	$2,750.00	$1,200.00	14.00	27

Figure 3–56

Q&A Did I have to select the column heading or could I have selected one of the entries in the column?

You could have selected any of the entries in the column.

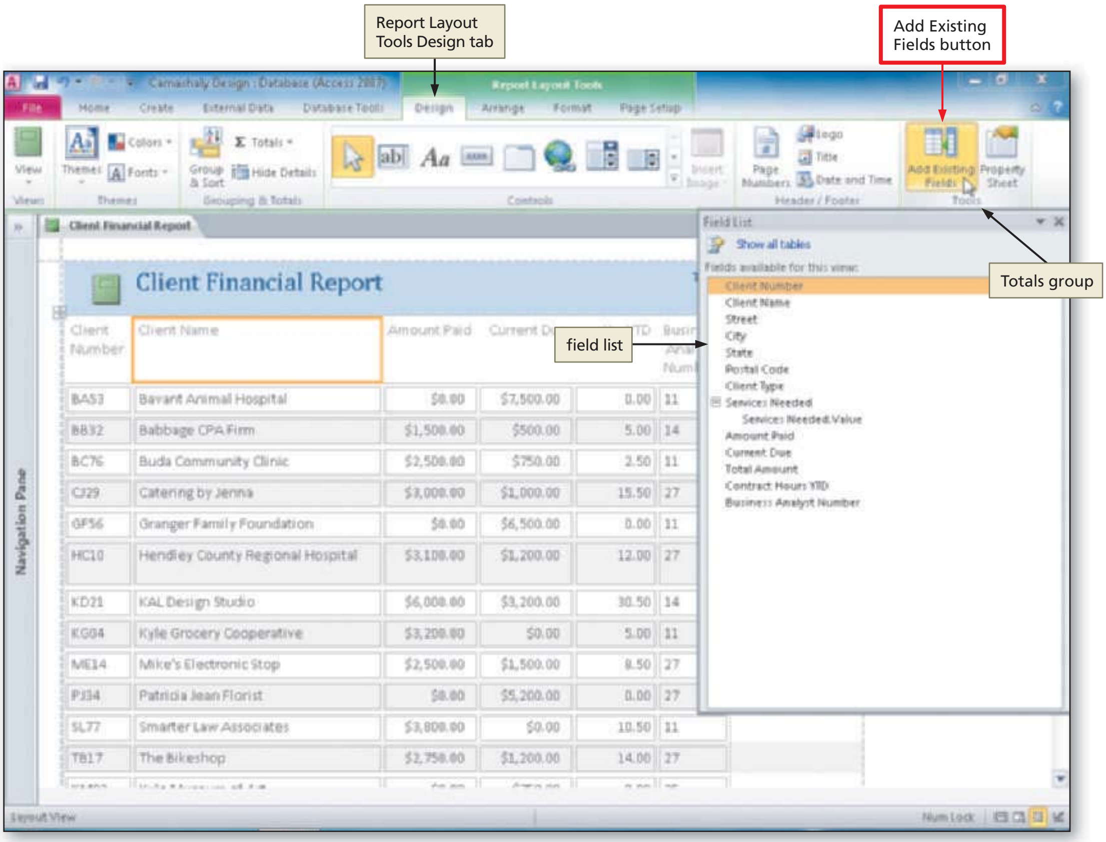
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2

- Click the Add Existing Fields button (Report Layout Tools Design tab | Tools group) to display a field list (Figure 3–57).

Q&A Why are there two Services Needed fields in the list?

They serve different purposes. If you were to select Services Needed, you would get all the services for a given client on one line. If you were to select Services Needed.Value, each service would be on a separate line. You are not selecting either one for this report.


Report Layout Tools Design tab
Add Existing Fields button
Totals group
field list
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
Report Layout Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
View
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Group & Sort
Totals
Hide Details
Grouping & Totals
Controls
Insert Image
Page Numbers
Logo
Title
Date and Time
Header / Footer
Add Existing Fields
Property Sheet
Tools
Navigation Pane
Field List
Show all tables
Fields available for this view:
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Client Type
Services Needed
Services Needed.Value
Amount Paid
Current Due
Total Amount
Contract Hours YTD
Business Analyst Number
Layout View
Num Lock

Client Financial Report

Client Number	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current D	TD	Busin Anal Num
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	$0.00	$7,500.00	0.00	11
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	$1,500.00	$500.00	5.00	14
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	$2,500.00	$750.00	2.50	11
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	$3,000.00	$1,000.00	15.50	27
GF56	Granger Family Foundation	$0.00	$6,500.00	0.00	11
HC10	Hendley County Regional Hospital	$3,100.00	$1,200.00	12.00	27
KD21	KAL Design Studio	$6,000.00	$3,200.00	30.50	14
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	$3,200.00	$0.00	5.00	11
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	$2,500.00	$1,500.00	8.50	27
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	$0.00	$5,200.00	0.00	27
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	$3,800.00	$0.00	10.50	11
TB17	The Bikeshop	$2,750.00	$1,200.00	14.00	27

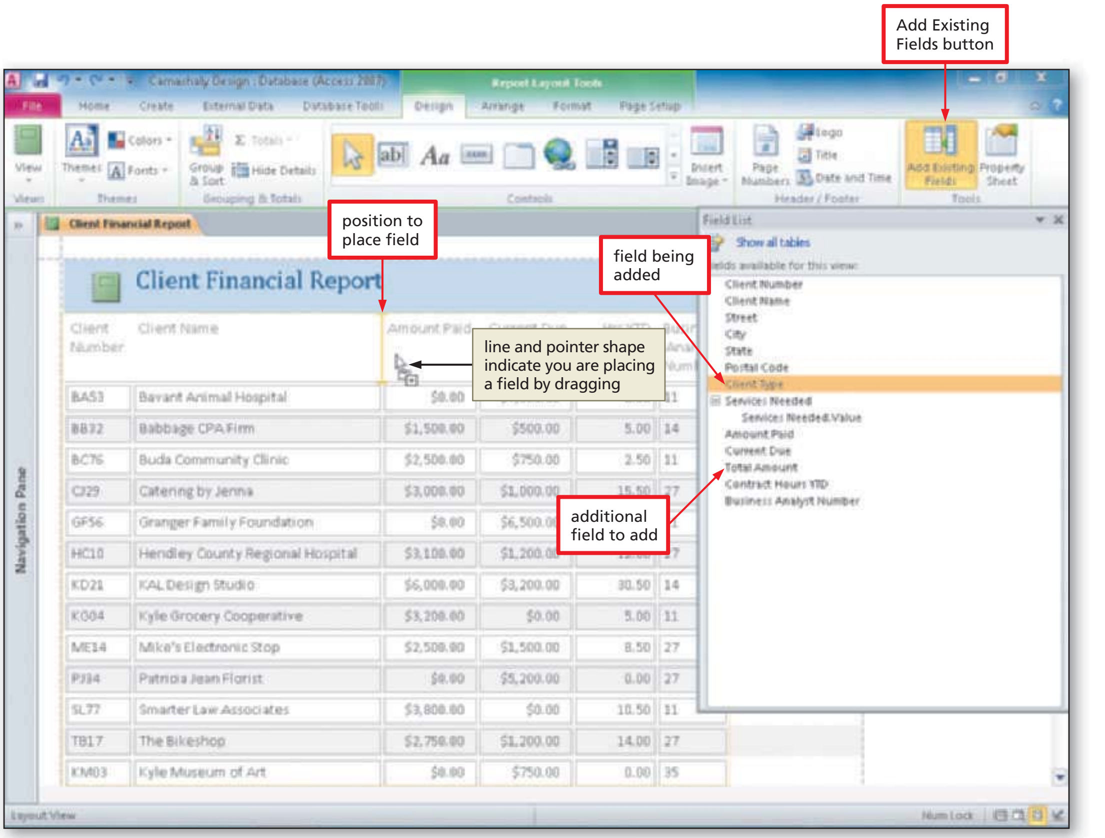
Figure 3–57

3

- Point to the Client Type field in the field list, press and hold the left mouse button, and then drag the mouse pointer until the line to the left of the mouse pointer is between the Client Name and Amount Paid fields (Figure 3–58).
- Release the left mouse button to place the field.

Q&A What if I make a mistake?

You can delete the field by clicking the field and then pressing the DELETE key. You can move the field by dragging it to the correct position.


Add Existing Fields button
position to place field
field being added
line and pointer shape indicate you are placing a field by dragging
additional field to add
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
Report Layout Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
View
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Group & Sort
Totals
Hide Details
Grouping & Totals
Controls
Insert Image
Page Numbers
Logo
Title
Date and Time
Header / Footer
Add Existing Fields
Property Sheet
Tools
Navigation Pane
Field List
Show all tables
Fields available for this view:
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Client Type
Services Needed
Services Needed.Value
Amount Paid
Current Due
Total Amount
Contract Hours YTD
Business Analyst Number
Layout View
Num Lock

Client Financial Report

Client Number	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due		
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	$0.00			11
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	$1,500.00	$500.00	5.00	14
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	$2,500.00	$750.00	2.50	11
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	$3,000.00	$1,000.00	15.50	27
GF56	Granger Family Foundation	$0.00	$6,500.00		
HC10	Hendley County Regional Hospital	$3,100.00	$1,200.00		27
KD21	KAL Design Studio	$6,000.00	$3,200.00	30.50	14
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	$3,200.00	$0.00	5.00	11
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	$2,500.00	$1,500.00	8.50	27
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	$0.00	$5,200.00	0.00	27
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	$3,800.00	$0.00	10.50	11
TB17	The Bikeshop	$2,750.00	$1,200.00	14.00	27
KM03	Kyle Museum of Art	$0.00	$750.00	0.00	35

Figure 3–58

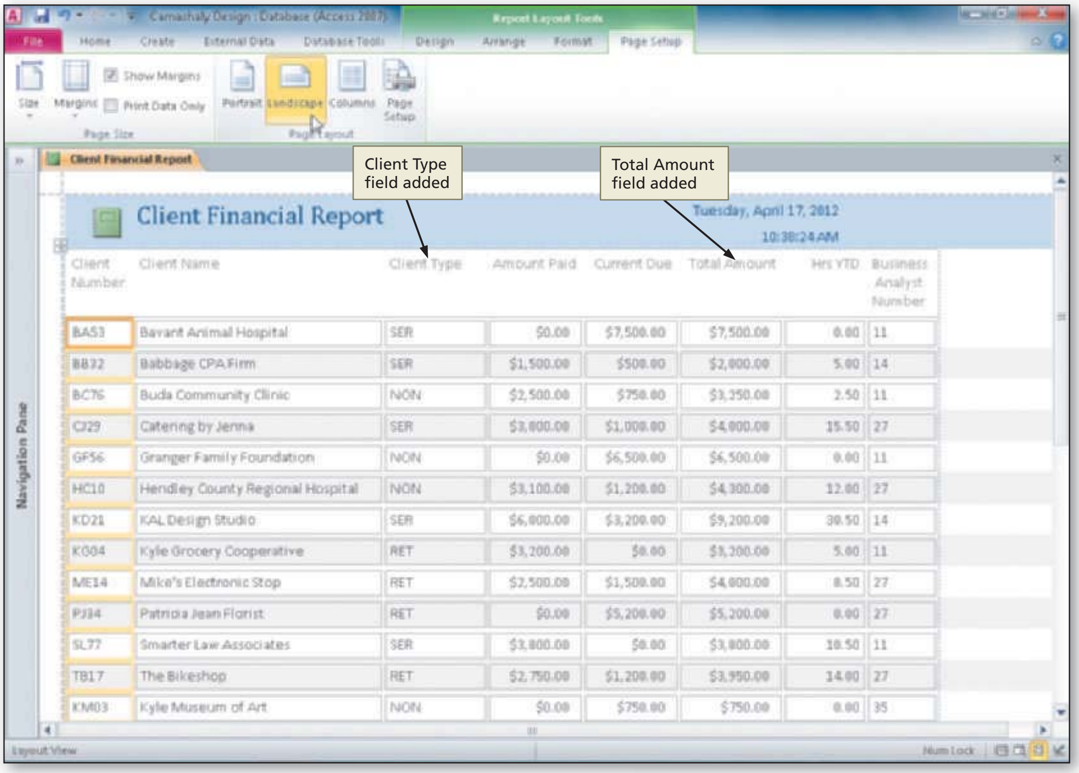
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

4

- Using the same technique, add the Total Amount field between the Current Due and Hrs YTD fields.
- Click the Add Existing Fields button (Report Layout Tools Design tab | Tools group) to remove the field list from the screen (Figure 3–59).

Q&A What would I do if the field list covered the portion of the report where I wanted to insert a new field?

You can move the field list to a different position on the screen by dragging its title bar.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
Report Layout Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
Size
Margins
Show Margins
Print Data Only
Page Size
Portrait
Landscape
Columns
Page Setup
Page Layout
Navigation Pane
Client Financial Report
Layout View
Num Lock

Client Type field added

Total Amount field added

Client Financial Report

Tuesday, April 17, 2012
10:38:24 AM

Client Number	Client Name	Client Type	Amount Paid	Current Due	Total Amount	Hrs YTD	Business Analyst Number
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	SER	$0.00	$7,500.00	$7,500.00	0.00	11
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	SER	$1,500.00	$500.00	$2,000.00	5.00	14
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	NON	$2,500.00	$750.00	$3,250.00	2.50	11
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	SER	$3,000.00	$1,000.00	$4,000.00	15.50	27
GF56	Granger Family Foundation	NON	$0.00	$6,500.00	$6,500.00	0.00	11
HC10	Hendley County Regional Hospital	NON	$3,100.00	$1,200.00	$4,300.00	12.00	27
KD21	KAL Design Studio	SER	$6,000.00	$3,200.00	$9,200.00	30.50	14
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	RET	$3,200.00	$0.00	$3,200.00	5.00	11
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	RET	$2,500.00	$1,500.00	$4,000.00	8.50	27
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	RET	$0.00	$5,200.00	$5,200.00	0.00	27
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	SER	$3,800.00	$0.00	$3,800.00	10.50	11
TB17	The Bikeshop	RET	$2,750.00	$1,200.00	$3,950.00	14.00	27
KM03	Kyle Museum of Art	NON	$0.00	$750.00	$750.00	0.00	35

Figure 3–59

- Scroll the report, if necessary, so that the entire width of the report appears on the screen.

5

- Click Page Setup on the Ribbon to display the Page Setup tab.
- Click the Landscape button (Report Layout Tools Page Setup tab | Page Layout group) to change the orientation of the report to Landscape.
- Click the Save button on the Quick Access Toolbar to save your changes.
- Close the report.

To Include Totals in a Datasheet

It is possible to include totals and other statistics at the bottom of a datasheet in a special row called the Total row. The following steps display the total of the salary YTD and Incentive YTD for analysts in the Total row.

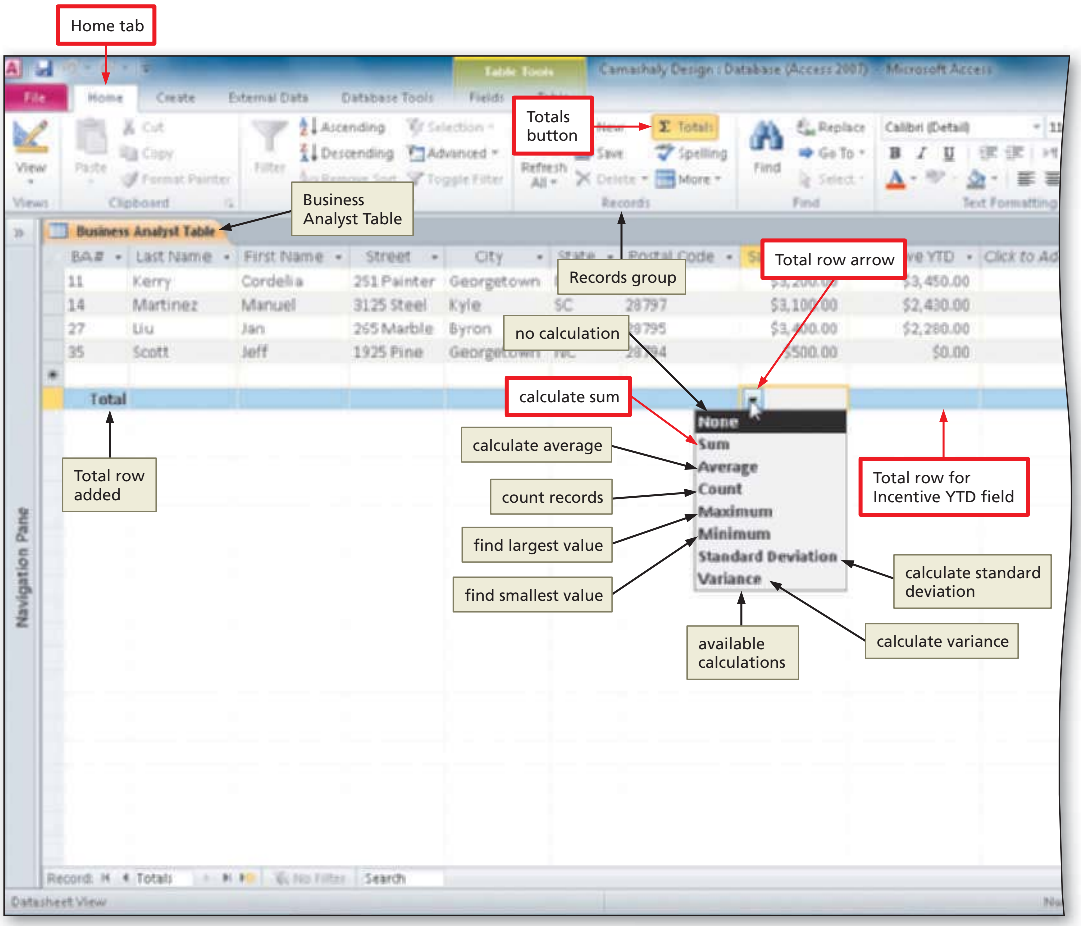
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

1

- Open the Business Analyst Table in Datasheet view and close the Navigation Pane.
- Click the Totals button (Home tab | Records group) to include the Total row in the datasheet.
- Click the Total row in the Salary YTD column to display an arrow.
- Click the arrow to display a menu of available calculations (Figure 3–60).

Q&A Will I always get the same list?

No. You will only get the items that are applicable to the type of data in the column. You cannot calculate the sum of text data, for example.



Home tab
Totals button
Business Analyst Table
Records group
Total row arrow
no calculation
calculate sum
calculate average
count records
find largest value
find smallest value
Total row added
Total row for Incentive YTD field
calculate standard deviation
calculate variance
available calculations
None
Sum
Average
Count
Maximum
Minimum
Standard Deviation
Variance
Total

BA #	Last Name	First Name	Street	City	State	Postal Code	Salary YTD	Incentive YTD	Click to Add
11	Kerry	Cordelia	251 Painter	Georgetown				$3,450.00	
14	Martinez	Manuel	3125 Steel	Kyle	SC	28797	$3,100.00	$2,430.00	
27	Liu	Jan	265 Marble	Byron			$3,400.00	$2,280.00	
35	Scott	Jeff	1925 Pine		NC		$500.00	$0.00	
Total									

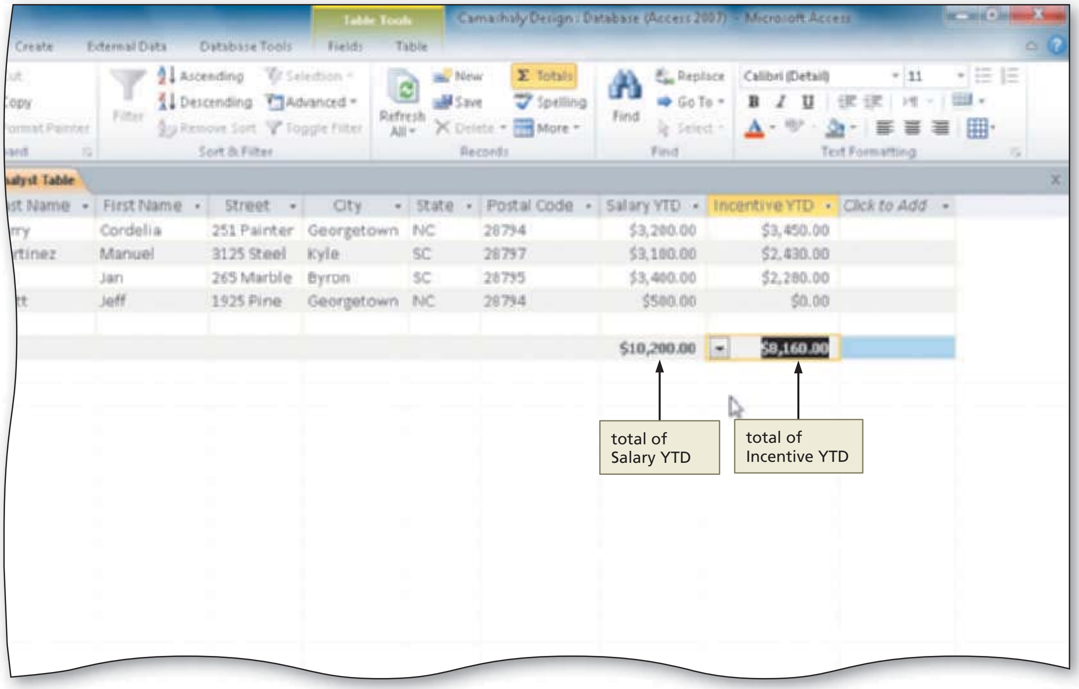
Figure 3–60

2

- Click Sum to calculate the total of the salary YTD amounts.
- Click the Total row in the Incentive YTD column to display an arrow, click the arrow to display a menu of available calculations, and then click Sum to calculate the total of the incentive YTD amounts (Figure 3–61).

Experiment

- Experiment with other statistics. When finished, once again select the sum in both columns.



total of Salary YTD
total of Incentive YTD

st Name	First Name	Street	City	State	Postal Code	Salary YTD	Incentive YTD	Click to Add
rry	Cordelia	251 Painter	Georgetown	NC	28794	$3,200.00	$3,450.00	
rtinez	Manuel	3125 Steel	Kyle	SC	28797	$3,180.00	$2,430.00	
	Jan	265 Marble	Byron	SC	28795	$3,400.00	$2,280.00	
tt	Jeff	1925 Pine	Georgetown	NC	28794	$580.00	$0.00	
						$10,280.00	$8,160.00	

Figure 3–61

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Remove Totals from a Datasheet

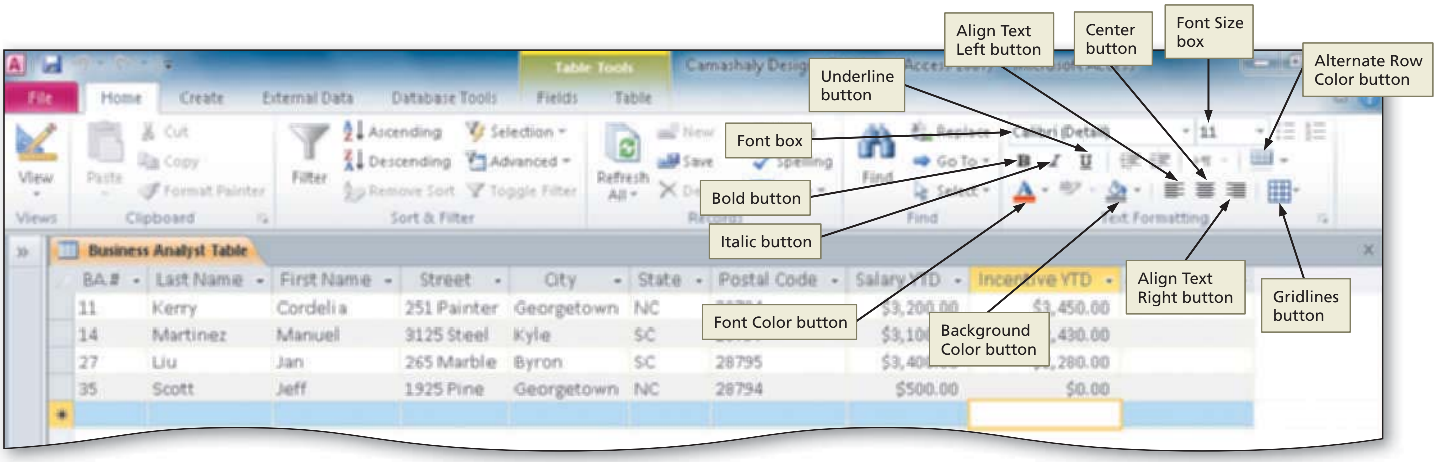
If you no longer want the totals to appear as part of the datasheet, you can remove the Total row. The following step removes the Total row.

1

- Click the Totals button (Home tab | Records group), which is shown in Figure 3–60, to remove the Total row from the datasheet.

Changing the Appearance of a Datasheet

You can change the appearance of a datasheet in a variety of ways. For example, you can change the appearance of gridlines or change the text colors and font. Figure 3–62 shows the various buttons, found in the Text Formatting group on the Home tab, that are available to change the datasheet appearance.


Align Text Left button
Center button
Font Size box
Alternate Row Color button
Underline button
Font box
Bold button
Italic button
Font Color button
Background Color button
Align Text Right button
Gridlines button
Table Tools
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Fields
Table
Business Analyst Table

BA #	Last Name	First Name	Street	City	State	Postal Code	Salary YTD	Incentive YTD
11	Kerry	Cordelia	251 Painter	Georgetown	NC	[illegible]	$3,200.00	$3,450.00
14	Martinez	Manuel	3125 Steel	Kyle	SC	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]
27	Liu	Jan	265 Marble	Byron	SC	28795	[illegible]	[illegible]
35	Scott	Jeff	1925 Pine	Georgetown	NC	28794	$500.00	$0.00

Figure 3–62

The changes to the datasheet will be reflected not only on the screen, but also when you print or preview the datasheet.

Plan Ahead

Determine whether changes to the format of a datasheet are desirable.
You need to decide if changes to the format of a datasheet would improve its appearance and/or its usefulness. The following are the decisions you would make.

- Would totals or other calculations be useful in the datasheet? If so, include the Total row and select the appropriate computations.
- Would different gridlines make the datasheet more useful? If so, change to the desired gridlines.
- Would alternating colors in the rows make them easier to read? If so, change the alternate fill color.
- Would a different font and/or font color make the text stand out better? If so, change the font color and/or the font.
- Is the font size appropriate? Can you see enough data at one time on the screen and yet have the data be readable? If not, change the font size to an appropriate value.
- Is the column spacing appropriate? Are some columns wider than they need to be? Do some columns not display all the data? Change the column sizes as necessary.

As a general guideline, once you have decided on a particular look for a datasheet, all your datasheets should have the same look, unless there is a compelling reason for one of your datasheets to differ.

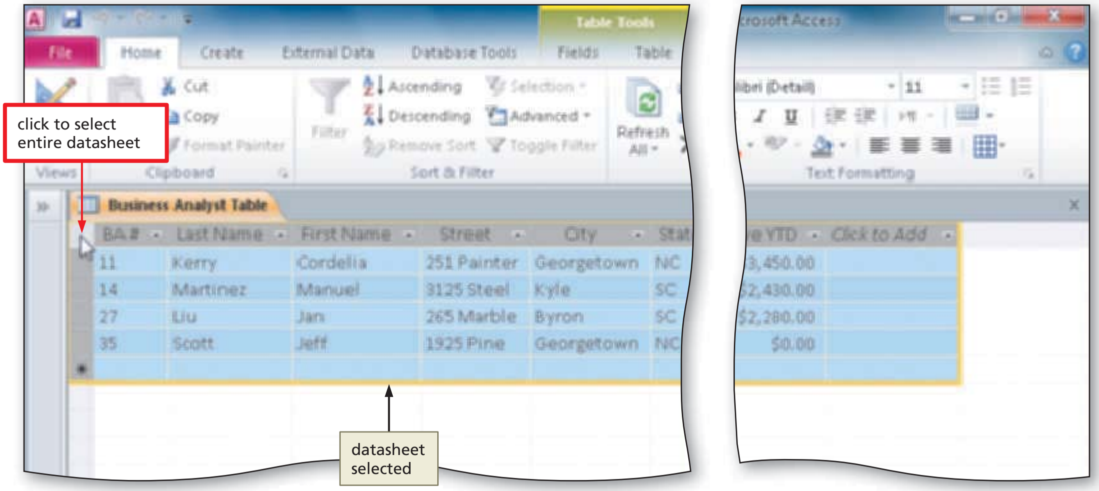
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Change Gridlines in a Datasheet

One of the changes you can make to a datasheet is which gridlines appear. You may feel that the appearance would be improved by having only horizontal gridlines. The following steps change the datasheet so that only horizontal gridlines are included.

1

- Open the Business Analyst Table in Datasheet view, if it is not already open.
- If necessary, close the Navigation Pane.
- Click the box in the upper-left corner of the Datasheet selector to select the entire datasheet (Figure 3–63).


click to select entire datasheet
datasheet selected
Business Analyst Table

BA #	Last Name	First Name	Street	City	Stat	e YTD	Click to Add
11	Kerry	Cordelia	251 Painter	Georgetown	NC	3,450.00	
14	Martinez	Manuel	3125 Steel	Kyle	SC	2,430.00	
27	Liu	Jan	265 Marble	Byron	SC	$2,280.00	
35	Scott	Jeff	1925 Pine	Georgetown	NC	$0.00	

Figure 3–63

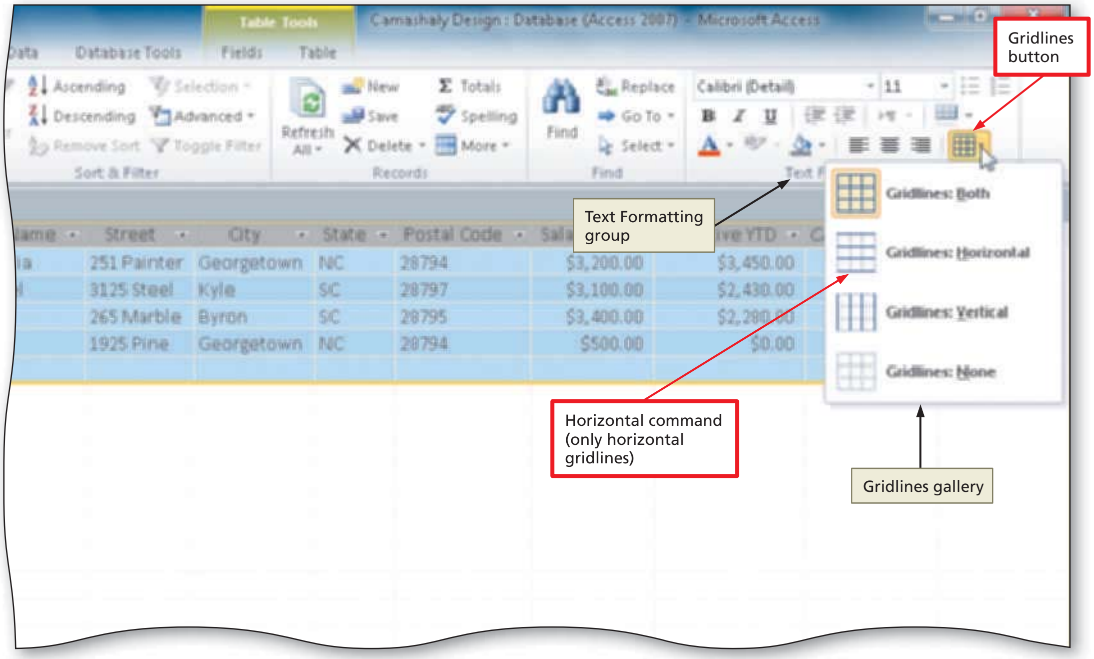
2

- Click the Gridlines button (Home tab | Text Formatting group) to display the Gridlines gallery (Figure 3–64).

Q&A

Does it matter whether I click the button or the arrow?

In this case, it does not matter. Either one will produce the same result.


Gridlines button
Text Formatting group
Horizontal command (only horizontal gridlines)
Gridlines gallery
Gridlines: Both
Gridlines: Horizontal
Gridlines: Vertical
Gridlines: None

ame	Street	City	State	Postal Code	Sala	ve YTD	C
a	251 Painter	Georgetown	NC	28794	$3,200.00	$3,450.00	
l	3125 Steel	Kyle	SC	28797	$3,100.00	$2,430.00	
	265 Marble	Byron	SC	28795	$3,400.00	$2,280.00	
	1925 Pine	Georgetown	NC	28794	$500.00	$0.00	

Figure 3–64

3

- Click the Gridlines: Horizontal command in the Gridlines gallery to include only horizontal gridlines.

Experiment

- Experiment with other gridline options. When finished, once again select horizontal gridlines.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Change the Colors and Font in a Datasheet

You may also decide to modify the appearance of the datasheet by changing the colors and the font. The following steps change the Alternate Fill color, a color that appears on every other row in the datasheet. They also change the font color, the font, and the font size.

1

- With the datasheet for the Business Analyst Table selected, click the Alternate Row Color button arrow (Home tab | Text Formatting group) to display the color palette (Figure 3–65).

Q&A Does it matter whether I click the button or the arrow?

Yes. Clicking the arrow produces a color palette. Clicking the button applies the currently selected color. When in doubt, you should click the arrow.

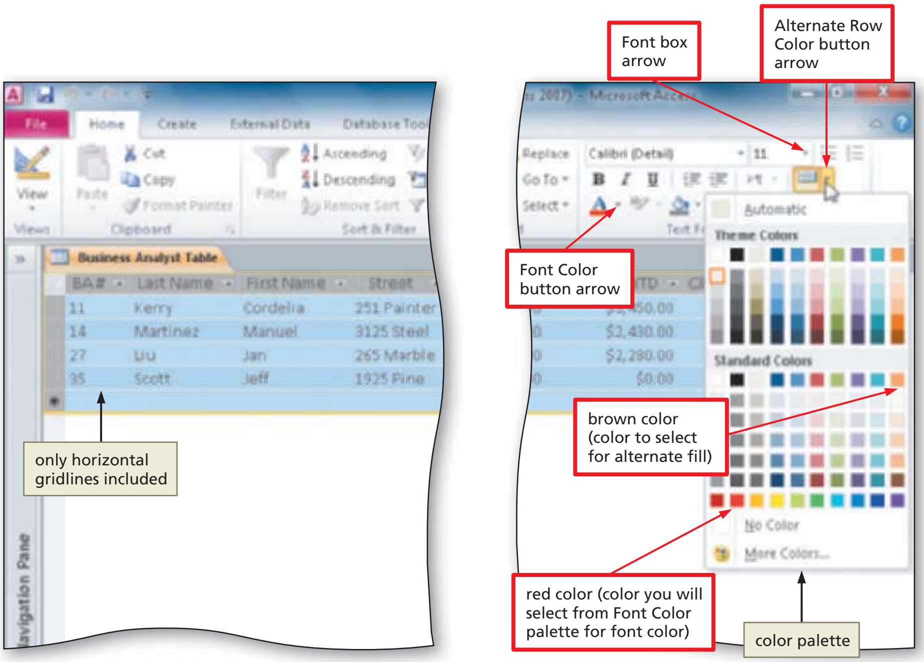

Font box arrow
Alternate Row Color button arrow
Font Color button arrow
only horizontal gridlines included
brown color (color to select for alternate fill)
red color (color you will select from Font Color palette for font color)
color palette

Figure 3–65

2

- Click Brown in the upper-right corner of Standard Colors to select brown as the alternate color.
- Click the Font Color button arrow, and then click Red (the second color in the bottom row) in the lower-left corner of Standard Colors to select Red as the font color.
- Click the Font box arrow, scroll down in the list until Bodoni MT appears, and then select Bodoni MT as the font. (If it is not available, select any font of your choice.)
- Click the Font Size box arrow, and select 10 as the font size (Figure 3–66).

Q&A Does the order in which I make these selections make a difference?

No. You could have made these selections in any order.

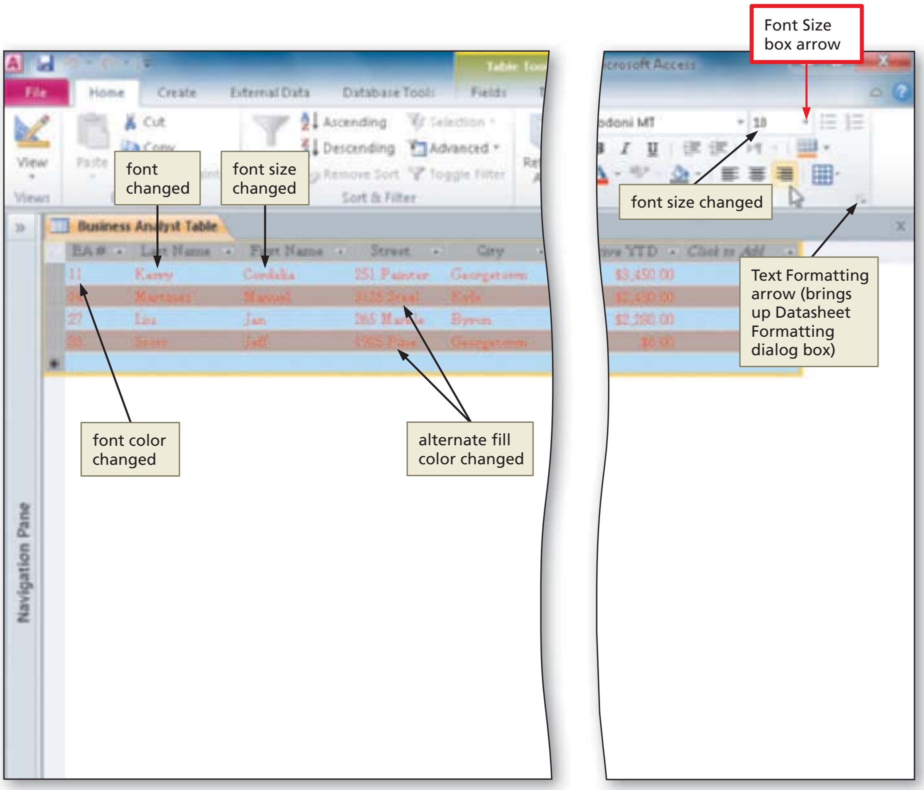

Font Size box arrow
font changed
font size changed
font size changed
Text Formatting arrow (brings up Datasheet Formatting dialog box)
font color changed
alternate fill color changed

Figure 3–66

Experiment

- Experiment with other colors, fonts, and font sizes. When finished, return to the options selected in this step.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Using the Datasheet Formatting Dialog Box

As an alternative to using the individual buttons, you can click the Datasheet Formatting dialog box launcher to display the Datasheet Formatting dialog box (Figure 3–67). You can use the various options within the dialog box to make changes to the datasheet format. Once you are finished, click the OK button to apply your changes.

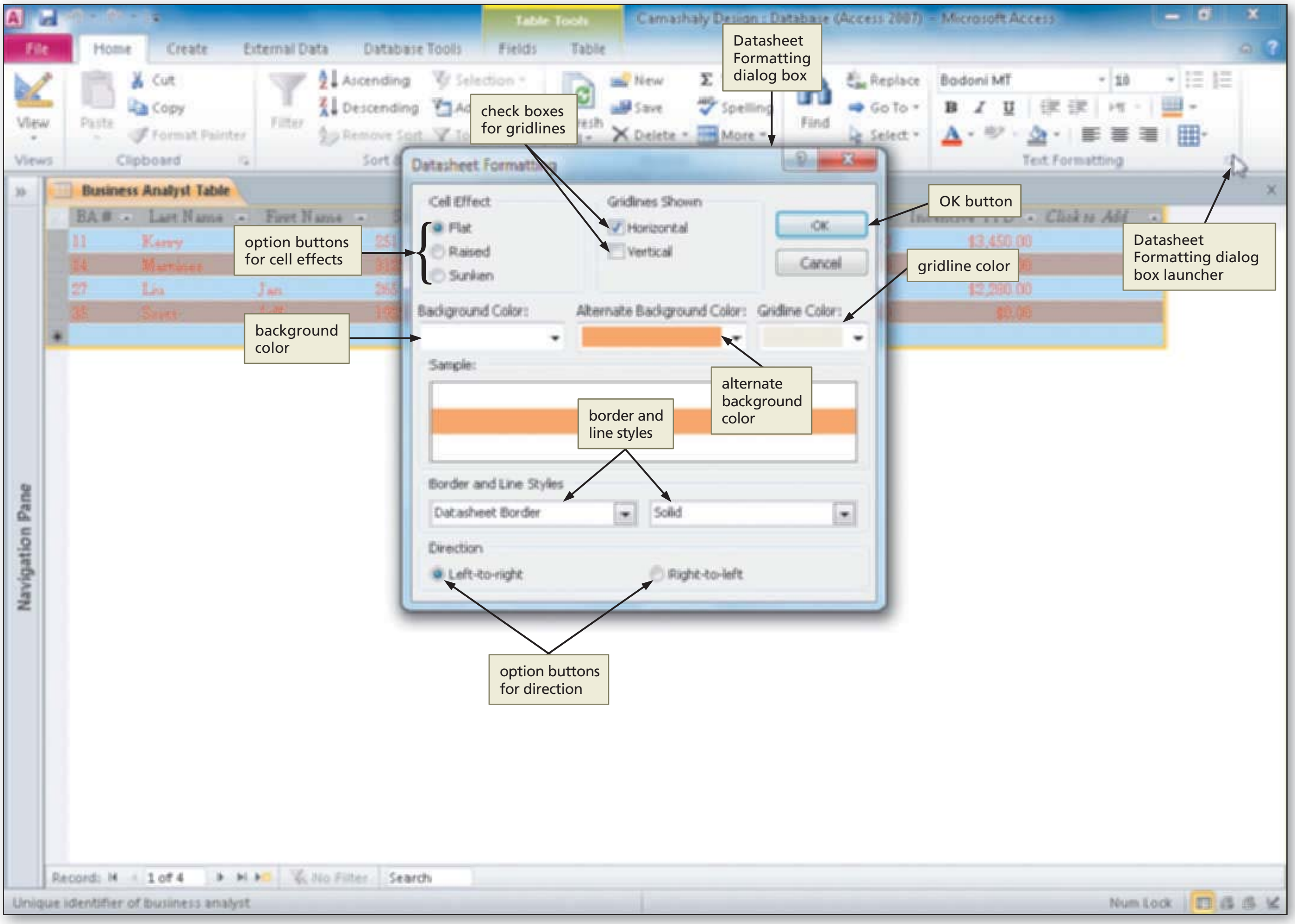

Datasheet Formatting dialog box
check boxes for gridlines
OK button
option buttons for cell effects
gridline color
Datasheet Formatting dialog box launcher
background color
alternate background color
border and line styles
option buttons for direction
Datasheet Formatting
Cell Effect
Flat
Raised
Sunken
Gridlines Shown
Horizontal
Vertical
OK
Cancel
Background Color:
Alternate Background Color:
Gridline Color:
Sample:
Border and Line Styles
Datasheet Border
Solid
Direction
Left-to-right
Right-to-left
Business Analyst Table
Navigation Pane
Unique identifier of business analyst

Figure 3–67

To Close the Datasheet without Saving the Format Changes

The following steps close the datasheet without saving the changes to the format. Because the changes are not saved, the next time you open the Business Analyst Table in Datasheet view, it will appear in the original format. If you had saved the changes, the changes would be reflected in its appearance.

1. Close the Business Analyst Table.
2. Click the No button in the Microsoft Access dialog box when asked if you want to save your changes.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Multivalued Fields in Queries

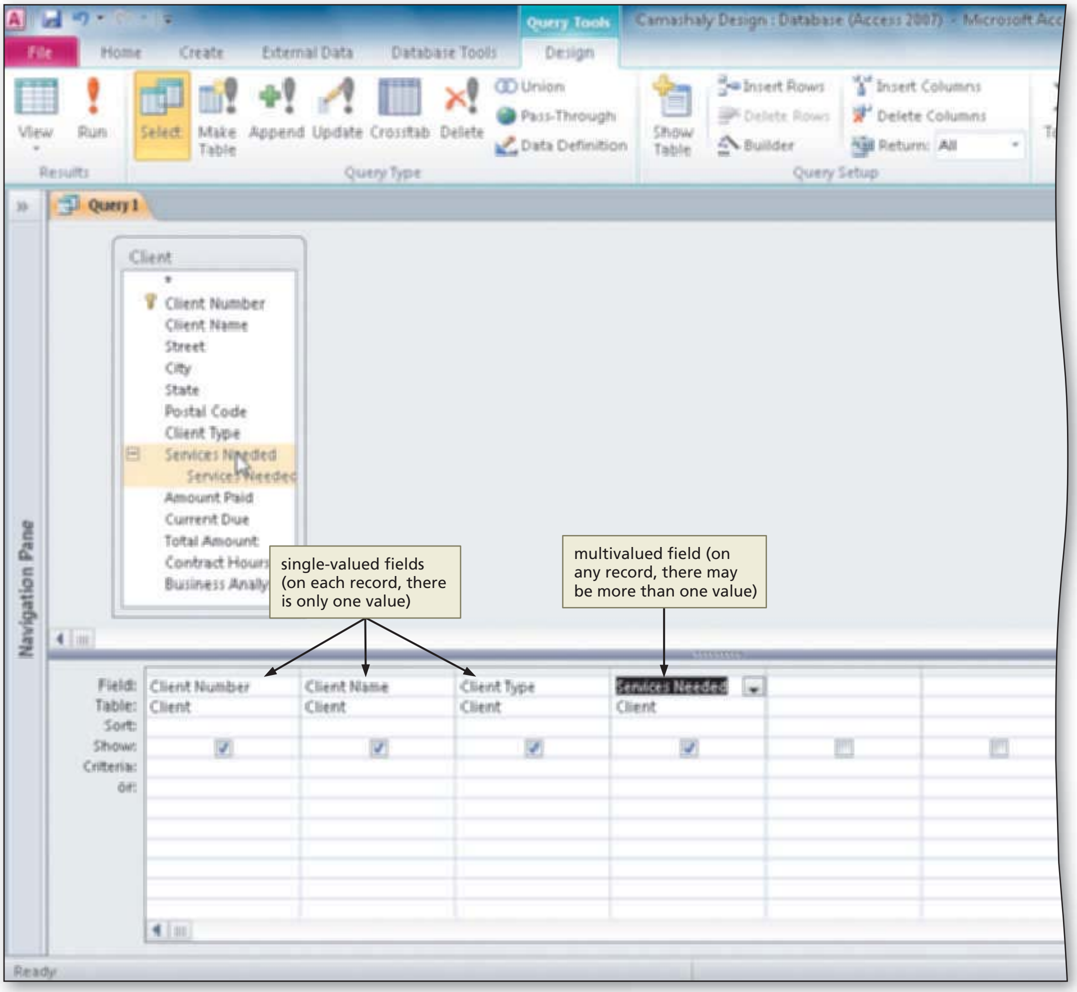
You can use multivalued fields in queries just as you can use other fields. You have a choice concerning how the multiple values appear. You can choose to have them on a single row or on multiple rows.

To Query a Multivalued Field Showing Multiple Values on a Single Row

To include a multivalued field in the results of a query, place the field in the query design grid just like any other field. The results will list all of the values for the multivalued field on a single row, just as in a datasheet. The following steps create a query to display the client number, client name, client type, and services needed for all clients.

1

- Create a query for the Client table and close the Navigation Pane.
- Include the Client Number, Client Name, Client Type, and Services Needed fields (Figure 3–68).


Query Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Acc
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
View
Run
Select
Make Table
Append
Update
Crosstab
Delete
Union
Pass-Through
Data Definition
Show Table
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Builder
Insert Columns
Delete Columns
Return: All
Results
Query Type
Query Setup
Query1
Navigation Pane
Client
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Client Type
Services Needed
Services Needed
Amount Paid
Current Due
Total Amount
Contract Hours
Business Analy
Field:
Table:
Sort:
Show:
Criteria:
or:
Ready

Field:	Client Number	Client Name	Client Type	Services Needed
Table:	Client	Client	Client	Client
Show:	☑	☑	☑	☑

single-valued fields (on each record, there is only one value)

multivalued field (on any record, there may be more than one value)

Figure 3–68

BTW

Using Criteria with Multivalued Fields

To enter criteria in a multivalued field, simply enter the criteria in the Criteria row. For example, to find all clients who need banners, enter **BAN** in the Criteria row.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2

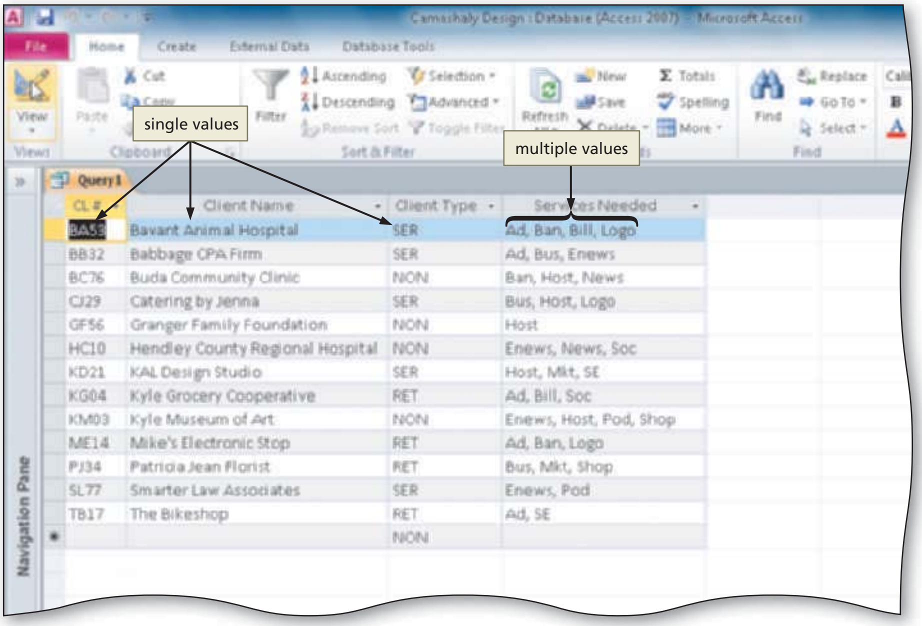
- View the results (Figure 3–69).

Q&A Can I include criteria for the multivalued field?

Yes. You can include criteria for the multivalued field.

Experiment

- Return to Design view and enter various criteria in the Services Needed field. Run the queries. When finished, return to the options selected in this step.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
single values
multiple values
Query1
Navigation Pane

CL #	Client Name	Client Type	Services Needed
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	SER	Ad, Ban, Bill, Logo
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	SER	Ad, Bus, Enews
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	NON	Ban, Host, News
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	SER	Bus, Host, Logo
GF56	Granger Family Foundation	NON	Host
HC10	Hendley County Regional Hospital	NON	Enews, News, Soc
KD21	KAL Design Studio	SER	Host, Mkt, SE
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	RET	Ad, Bill, Soc
KM03	Kyle Museum of Art	NON	Enews, Host, Pod, Shop
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	RET	Ad, Ban, Logo
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	RET	Bus, Mkt, Shop
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	SER	Enews, Pod
TB17	The Bikeshop	RET	Ad, SE
*		NON	

Figure 3–69

To Query a Multivalued Field Showing Multiple Values on Multiple Rows

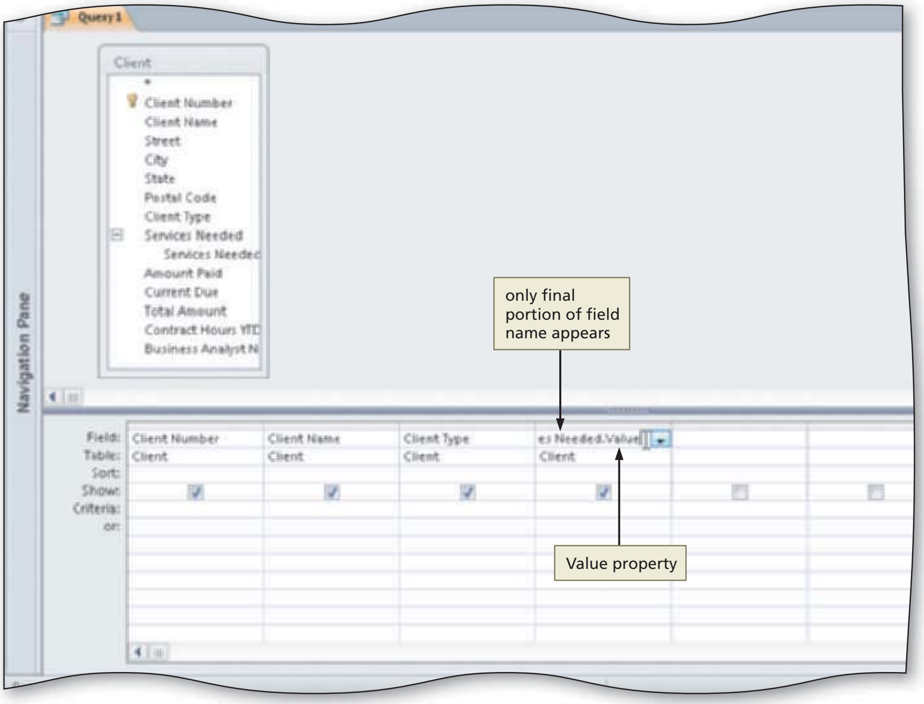
You may want to see the multiple services needed for a client on separate rows rather than a single row. To do so, you need to use the Value property of the Services Needed field. The following steps use the Value property to display each service on a separate row.

1

- Return to Design view and ensure that the Client Number, Client Name, Client Type, and Services Needed fields are included in the design grid.
- Click the Services Needed field to produce an insertion point, press the RIGHT ARROW key as necessary to move the insertion point to the end of the field name, and then type a period and the word `Value` after the word, Needed, to use the Value property (Figure 3–70).

Q&A I don't see the word, Services. Did I do something wrong?

No. There is not enough room to display the entire name. If you wanted to see it, you could point to the right boundary of the column selector and then either drag or double-click.


Query1
Client
*
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Client Type
Services Needed
Services Needed
Amount Paid
Current Due
Total Amount
Contract Hours YTD
Business Analyst N
Navigation Pane
only final portion of field name appears
Value property

Field:	Client Number	Client Name	Client Type	es Needed.Value		
Table:	Client	Client	Client	Client		
Sort:						
Show:	☑	☑	☑	☑	☐	☐
Criteria:						
or:						

Figure 3–70

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2

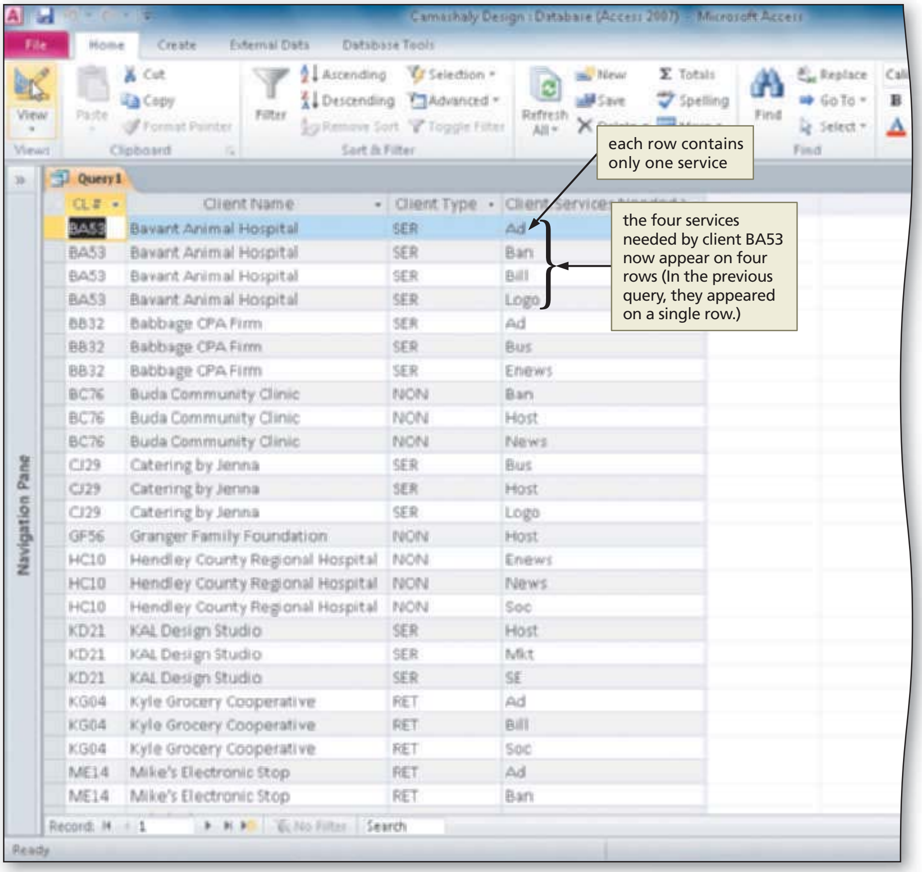
- View the results (Figure 3–71).

Q&A Can I now include criteria for the multivalued field?

Yes. You could enter a criterion just like in any other query.

3

- Close the query.
- When asked if you want to save the query, click the No button.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Totals
Spelling
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Find
Query1
Navigation Pane
Record: 1
No Filter
Search
Ready

CL #	Client Name	Client Type	Client Services Needed
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	SER	Ad
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	SER	Ban
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	SER	Bill
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	SER	Logo
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	SER	Ad
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	SER	Bus
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	SER	Enews
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	NON	Ban
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	NON	Host
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	NON	News
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	SER	Bus
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	SER	Host
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	SER	Logo
GF56	Granger Family Foundation	NON	Host
HC10	Hendley County Regional Hospital	NON	Enews
HC10	Hendley County Regional Hospital	NON	News
HC10	Hendley County Regional Hospital	NON	Soc
KD21	KAL Design Studio	SER	Host
KD21	KAL Design Studio	SER	Mkt
KD21	KAL Design Studio	SER	SE
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	RET	Ad
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	RET	Bill
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	RET	Soc
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	RET	Ad
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	RET	Ban

each row contains only one service

the four services needed by client BA53 now appear on four rows (In the previous query, they appeared on a single row.)

Figure 3–71

Break Point: If you wish to take a break, this is a good place to do so. You can quit Access now. To resume at a later time, start Access, open the database called Camashaly Design, and continue following the steps from this location forward.

Referential Integrity

When you have two related tables in a database, it is essential that the data in the common fields match. There should not be a client in the Client table whose business analyst number is 11, for example, unless there is a record in the Business Analyst Table whose number is 11. This restriction is enforced through **referential integrity**, which is the property that ensures that the value in a foreign key must match that of another table's primary key.

A **foreign key** is a field in one table whose values are required to match the *primary key* of another table. In the Client table, the Business Analyst Number field is a foreign key that must match the primary key of the Business Analyst Table; that is, the business analyst number for any client must be a business analyst currently in the Business Analyst Table. A client whose business analyst number is 92, for example, should not be stored because no such business analyst exists.

In Access, to specify referential integrity, you must define a relationship between the tables by using the Relationships button. Access then prohibits any updates to the database that would violate the referential integrity.

The type of relationship between two tables specified by the Relationships command is referred to as a **one-to-many relationship**. This means that *one* record in the first table is related to, or matches, *many* records in the second table, but each record in the second table is related to only *one* record in the first. In the Camashaly Design database, for example, a one-to-many relationship exists between the Business Analyst Table and the Client table. *One* business analyst is associated with *many* clients, but each client is associated with only a single business analyst. In general, the table containing the foreign key will be the *many* part of the relationship.

Plan Ahead

Identify related tables in order to implement relationships between the tables.
When specifying referential integrity, you need to decide how to handle deletions. In the relationship between clients and business analysts, for example, deletion of a business analyst for whom clients exist, such as business analyst number 14, would violate referential integrity. Any clients for business analyst 14 no longer would relate to any business analyst in the database. You can handle this in two ways. For each relationship, you need to decide which of the approaches is appropriate.

- The normal way to avoid this problem is to prohibit such a deletion.
- The other option is to **cascade the delete.** This means that Access would allow the deletion but then delete all related records. For example, it would allow the deletion of the business analyst from the Client table but then automatically delete any clients related to the deleted business analyst.

You also need to decide how to handle the update of the primary key. In the relationship between business analysts and clients, for example, changing the business analyst number for business analyst 14 to 41 in the Business Analyst Table would cause a problem because some clients in the Client table have business analyst number 14. These clients no longer would relate to any business analyst. You can handle this in two ways. For each relationship, you need to decide which of the approaches is appropriate.

- The normal way to avoid this problem is to prohibit this type of update.
- The other option is to **cascade the update.** This means to allow the change, but make the corresponding change in the foreign key on all related records. In the relationship between clients and business analysts, for example, Access would allow the update but then automatically make the corresponding change for any client whose business analyst number was 14. It now will be 41.

BTW

Relationships
You also can use the Relationships window to specify a one-to-one relationship. In a one-to-one relationship, the matching fields are both primary keys. If Camashaly maintained a company car for each analyst, the data concerning the cars might be kept in a Car table, in which the primary key is Business Analyst Number — the same primary key as the Business Analyst Table. Thus, there would be a one-to-one relationship between analysts and cars.

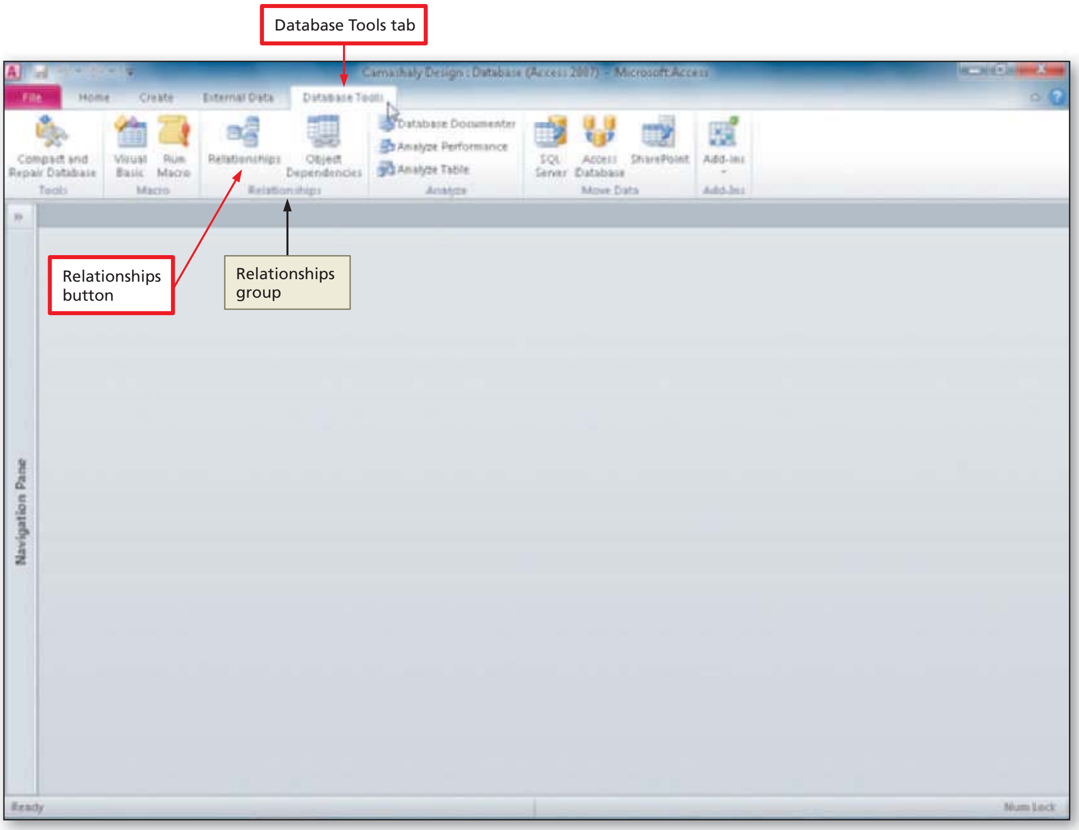
To Specify Referential Integrity

The following steps use the Relationships button on the Database Tools tab to specify referential integrity by specifying a relationship between the Business Analyst and Client tables. The steps also ensure that update will cascade, but that delete will not.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

①

- Click Database Tools on the Ribbon to display the Database Tools tab. (Figure 3–72).

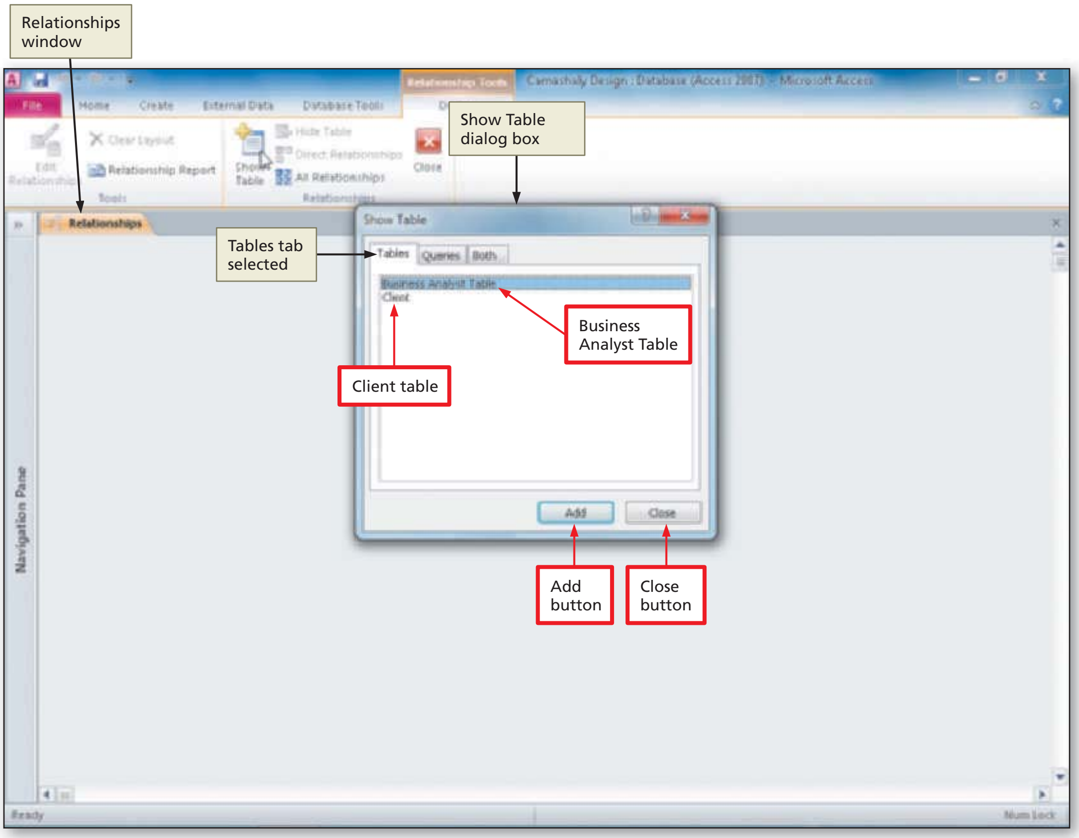

Database Tools tab
Relationships button
Relationships group
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Compact and Repair Database
Visual Basic
Run Macro
Relationships
Object Dependencies
Database Documenter
Analyze Performance
Analyze Table
SQL Server
Access Database
SharePoint
Add-ins
Tools
Macro
Relationships
Analyze
Move Data
Add-ins
Navigation Pane
Ready
Num Lock

Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access

Figure 3–72

②

- Click the Relationships button (Database Tools tab | Relationships group) to open the Relationships window and display the Show Table dialog box (Figure 3–73).


Relationships window
Show Table dialog box
Tables tab selected
Business Analyst Table
Client table
Add button
Close button
Relationship Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Edit Relationships
Clear Layout
Relationship Report
Show Table
Hide Table
Direct Relationships
All Relationships
Close
Tools
Relationships
Show Table
Tables
Queries
Both
Business Analyst Table
Client
Add
Close
Navigation Pane
Ready
Num Lock

Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access

Figure 3–73

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3

- If necessary, click the Business Analyst Table (Show Table dialog box) and then click the Add button to add the Business Analyst Table.
- Click the Client table and then click the Add button to add the Client table.
- Click the Close button (Show Table dialog box) to close the dialog box.
- Resize the field lists that appear so all fields are visible (Figure 3–74).

Q&A Do I need to resize the field lists?

No. You can use the scroll bars. Before completing the next step, however, you would need to make sure the Business Analyst Number fields in both tables appear on the screen.

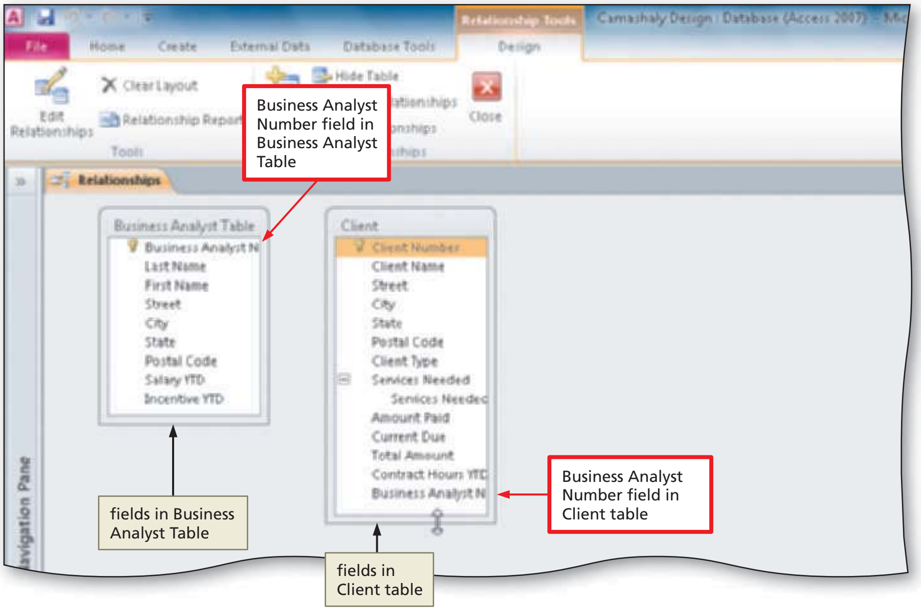

Business Analyst Number field in Business Analyst Table
fields in Business Analyst Table
Business Analyst Number field in Client table
fields in Client table
Relationship Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Mic
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Edit Relationships
Clear Layout
Relationship Report
Tools
Hide Table
Close
Relationships
Business Analyst Table
Business Analyst N
Last Name
First Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Salary YTD
Incentive YTD
Client
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Client Type
Services Needed
Services Needed
Amount Paid
Current Due
Total Amount
Contract Hours YTD
Business Analyst N
Navigation Pane

Figure 3–74

4

- Drag the Business Analyst Number field in the Business Analyst Table field list to the Business Analyst Number field in the Client table field list to display the Edit Relationships dialog box to create a relationship.

Q&A Do I actually move the field from the Business Analyst Table to the Client table?

No. The mouse pointer will change shape to indicate you are in the process of dragging, but the field does not move.

- Click the Enforce Referential Integrity check box (Edit Relationships dialog box).
- Click the Cascade Update Related Fields check box (Figure 3–75).

Q&A The Cascade check boxes were dim until I clicked the Enforce Referential Integrity check box. Is that correct?

Yes. Until you have chosen to enforce referential integrity, the cascade options are not applicable.

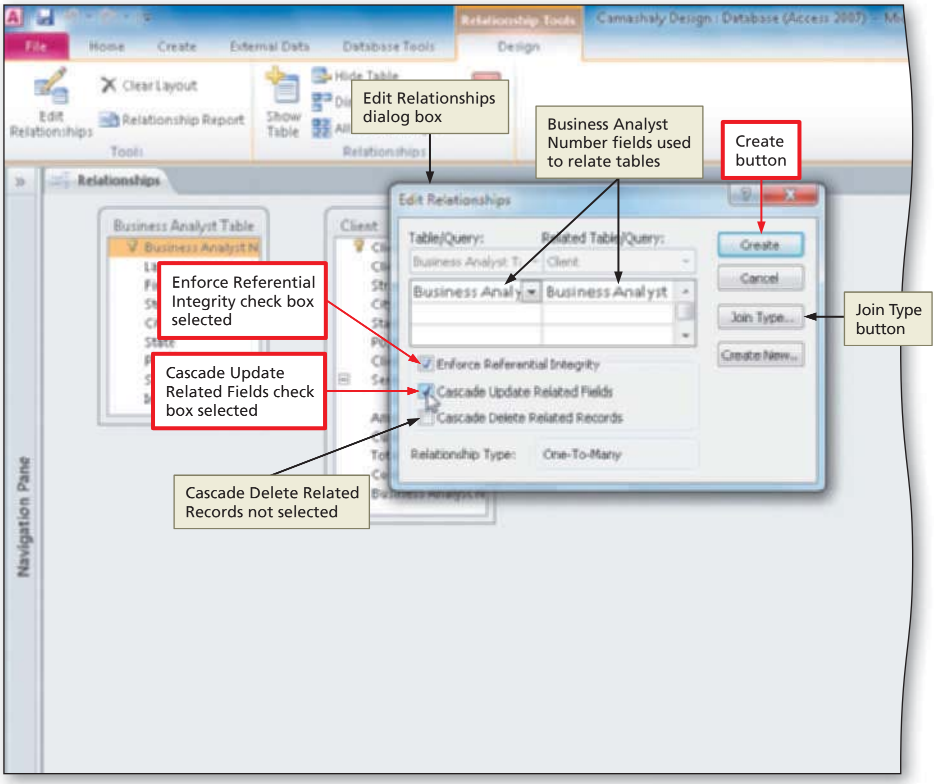

Edit Relationships dialog box
Business Analyst Number fields used to relate tables
Create button
Join Type button
Enforce Referential Integrity check box selected
Cascade Update Related Fields check box selected
Cascade Delete Related Records not selected
Relationship Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Mic
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Edit Relationships
Clear Layout
Relationship Report
Show Table
Hide Table
Tools
Relationships
Business Analyst Table
Business Analyst N
Client
Edit Relationships
Table/Query:
Related Table/Query:
Business Analyst T
Client
Business Analy
Business Analyst
Create
Cancel
Join Type...
Create New...
☑ Enforce Referential Integrity
☑ Cascade Update Related Fields
☐ Cascade Delete Related Records
Relationship Type:
One-To-Many
Navigation Pane

Figure 3–75

Q&A Can I change the join type like I can in queries?

Yes. Click the Join Type button in the Edit Relationships dialog box. Just as with queries, option button 1 creates an INNER join, option button 2 creates a LEFT join, and option button 3 creates a RIGHT join.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

5

- Click the Create button (Edit Relationships dialog box) to complete the creation of the relationship (Figure 3–76).

Q&A What is the symbol at the lower end of the join line?

It is the mathematical symbol for infinity. It is used here to denote the "many" end of the relationship.

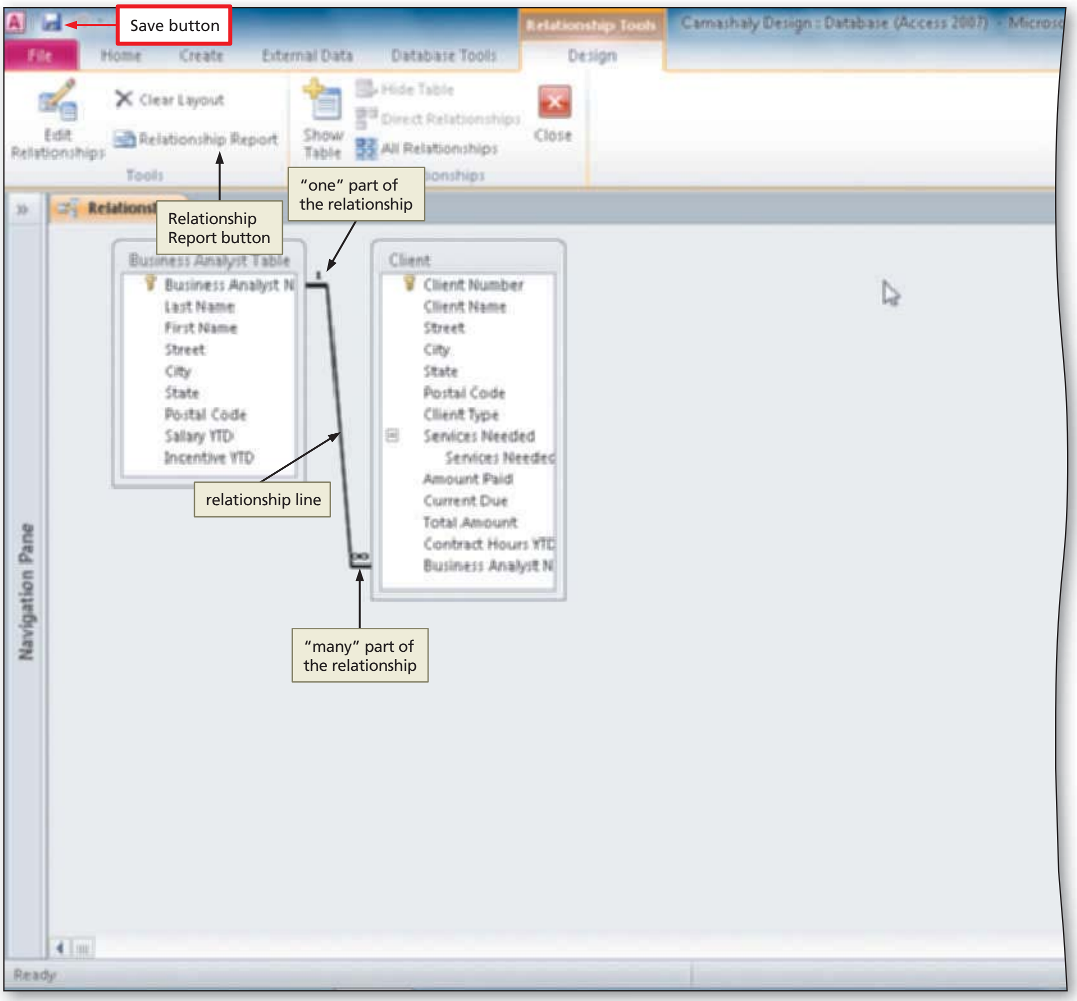

Save button
Relationship Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microso
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Edit Relationships
Clear Layout
Relationship Report
Tools
Show Table
Hide Table
Direct Relationships
All Relationships
Close
"one" part of the relationship
Relationship Report button
Relationships
Business Analyst Table
Business Analyst N
Last Name
First Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Salary YTD
Incentive YTD
Client
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Client Type
Services Needed
Services Needed
Amount Paid
Current Due
Total Amount
Contract Hours YTD
Business Analyst N
relationship line
"many" part of the relationship
Navigation Pane
Ready

Figure 3–76

Q&A Can I print a copy of the relationship?

Yes. Click the Relationship Report button (Relationship Tools Design tab | Tools group) to produce a report of the relationship. You can print the report. You also can save it as a report in the database for future use. If you do not want to save it, close the report after you have printed it and do not save the changes.

6

- Click the Save button on the Quick Access Toolbar to save the relationship you created.
- Close the Relationships window.

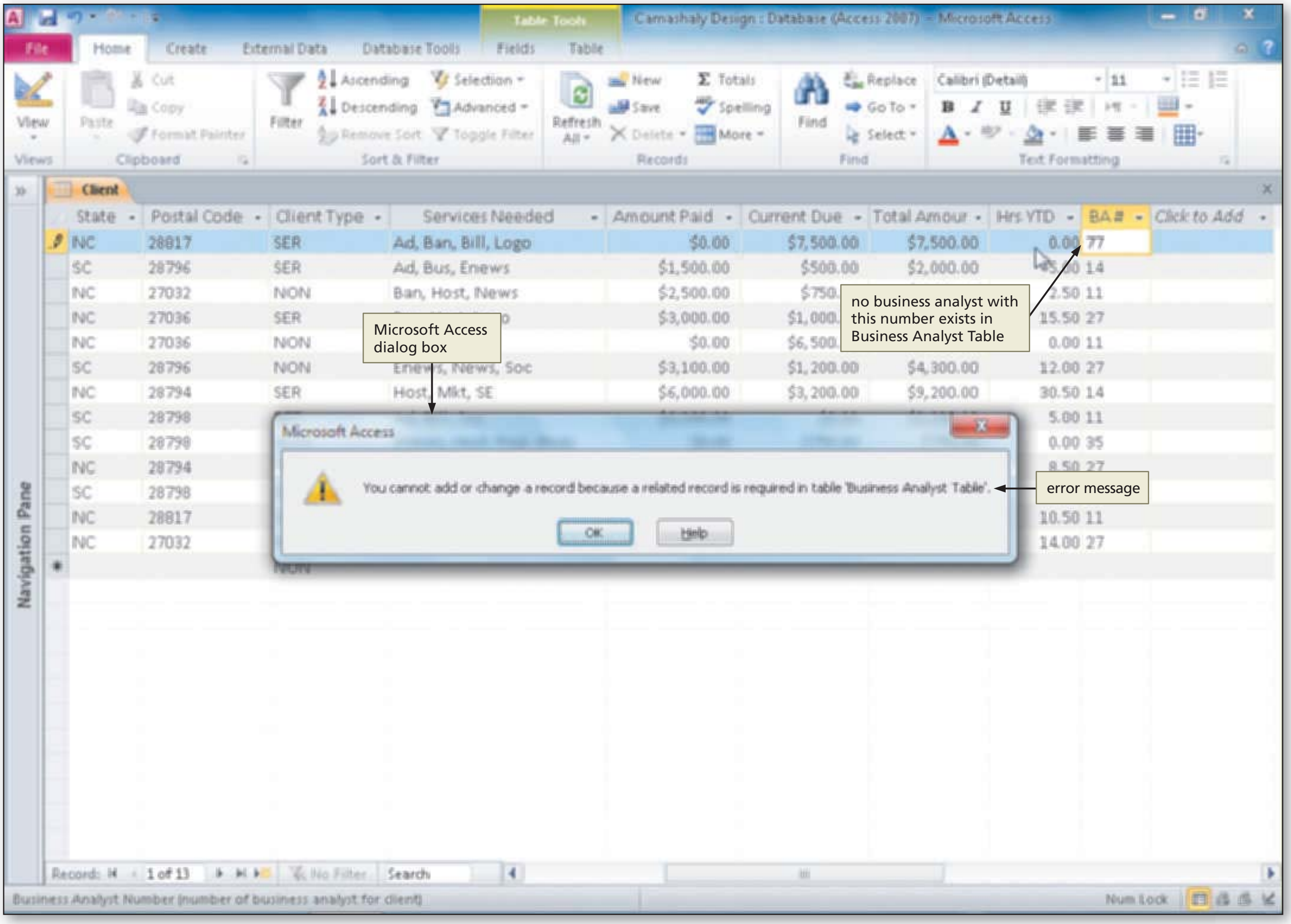
Q&A Can I later modify the relationship if I want to change it in some way?

Yes. Click Database Tools on the Ribbon to display the Database Tools tab, and then click the Relationships button (Database Tools tab | Relationships group) to open the Relationships window. To add another table, click the Show Table button on the Design tab. To remove a table, click the Hide Table button. To edit a relationship, select the relationship and click the Edit Relationships button.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Effect of Referential Integrity

Referential integrity now exists between the Business Analyst and Client tables. Access now will reject any number in the Business Analyst Number field in the Client table that does not match a business analyst number in the Business Analyst Table. Attempting to change the business analyst number for a client to one that does not match any business analyst in the Business Analyst Table would result in the error message shown in Figure 3–77. Similarly, attempting to add a client whose business analyst number does not match would produce the same error message.



Microsoft Access dialog box
no business analyst with this number exists in Business Analyst Table
error message
Microsoft Access
OK
Help
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
Table Tools
Client
Navigation Pane

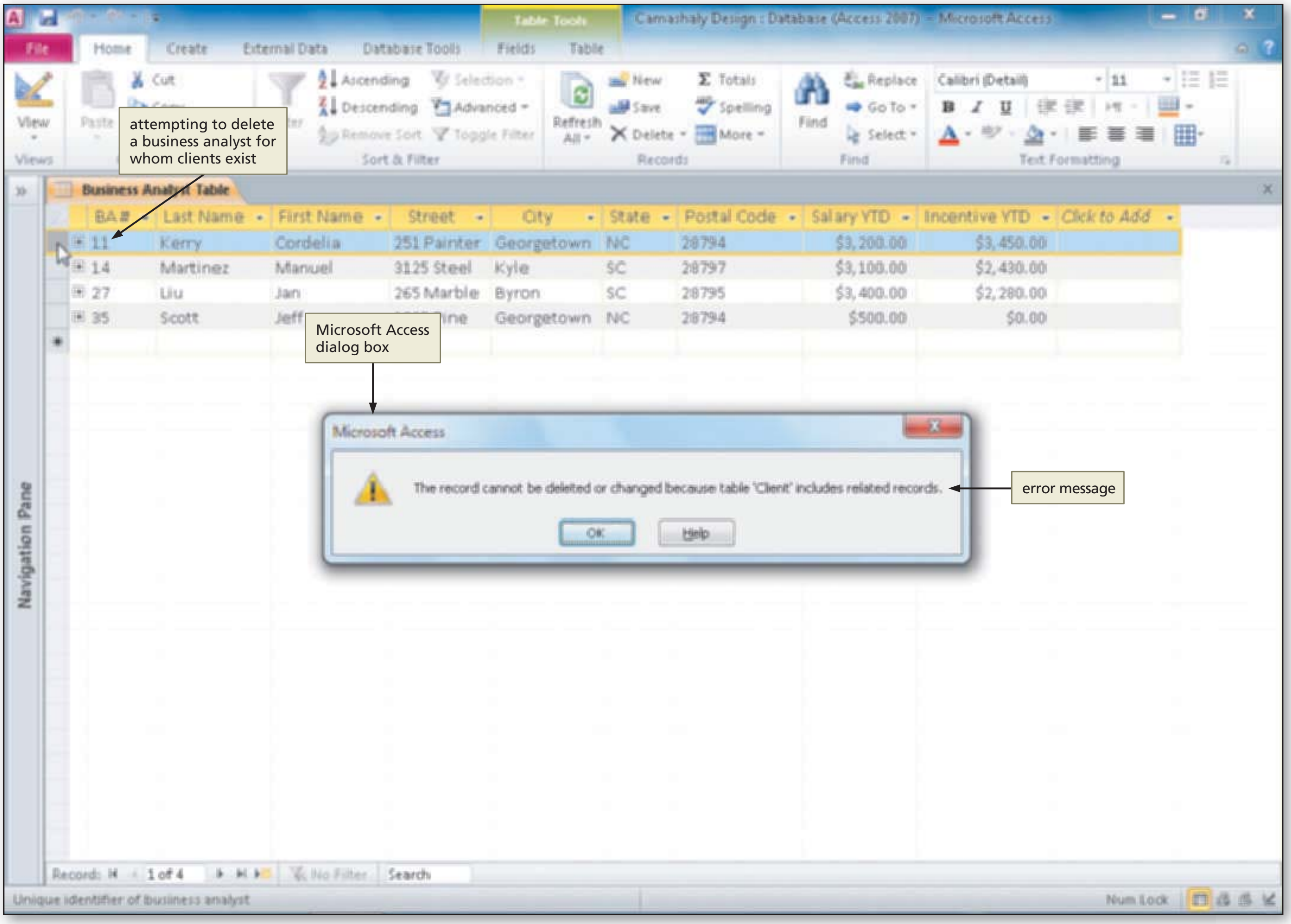
You cannot add or change a record because a related record is required in table 'Business Analyst Table'.

Business Analyst Number (number of business analyst for client)

Figure 3–77

Access also will reject the deletion of a business analyst for whom related clients exist. Attempting to delete business analyst 11 from the Business Analyst Table, for example, would result in the message shown in Figure 3–78.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
Table Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Fields
Table
View
Paste
Cut
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Sort & Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Records
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Calibri (Detail)
11
Text Formatting
Views
Navigation Pane
Business Analyst Table
Microsoft Access
OK
Help
Records: 1 of 4
No Filter
Search
Unique identifier of business analyst
Num Lock

attempting to delete a business analyst for whom clients exist

Microsoft Access dialog box

error message

BA #	Last Name	First Name	Street	City	State	Postal Code	Salary YTD	Incentive YTD	Click to Add
11	Kerry	Cordelia	251 Painter	Georgetown	NC	28794	$3,200.00	$3,450.00	
14	Martinez	Manuel	3125 Steel	Kyle	SC	28797	$3,100.00	$2,430.00	
27	Liu	Jan	265 Marble	Byron	SC	28795	$3,400.00	$2,280.00	
35	Scott	Jeff	ine	Georgetown	NC	28794	$500.00	$0.00	

The record cannot be deleted or changed because table 'Client' includes related records.

Figure 3–78

Access would, however, allow the change of a business analyst number in the Business Analyst Table. Then it automatically makes the corresponding change to the business analyst number for all the business analyst's clients. For example, if you changed the business analyst number of business analyst 14 to 41, the same 41 would appear in the business analyst number field for clients whose business analyst number had been 14.

To Use a Subdatasheet

Now that the Business Analyst Table is related to the Client table, it is possible to view the clients of a given business analyst when you are viewing the datasheet for the Business Analyst Table. The clients for the business analyst will appear below the business analyst in a **subdatasheet**. The availability of such a subdatasheet is indicated by a plus sign that appears in front of the rows in the Business Analyst Table. The following steps display the subdatasheet for business analyst 14.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

1

- Open the Business Analyst Table in Datasheet view and close the Navigation Pane (Figure 3–79).

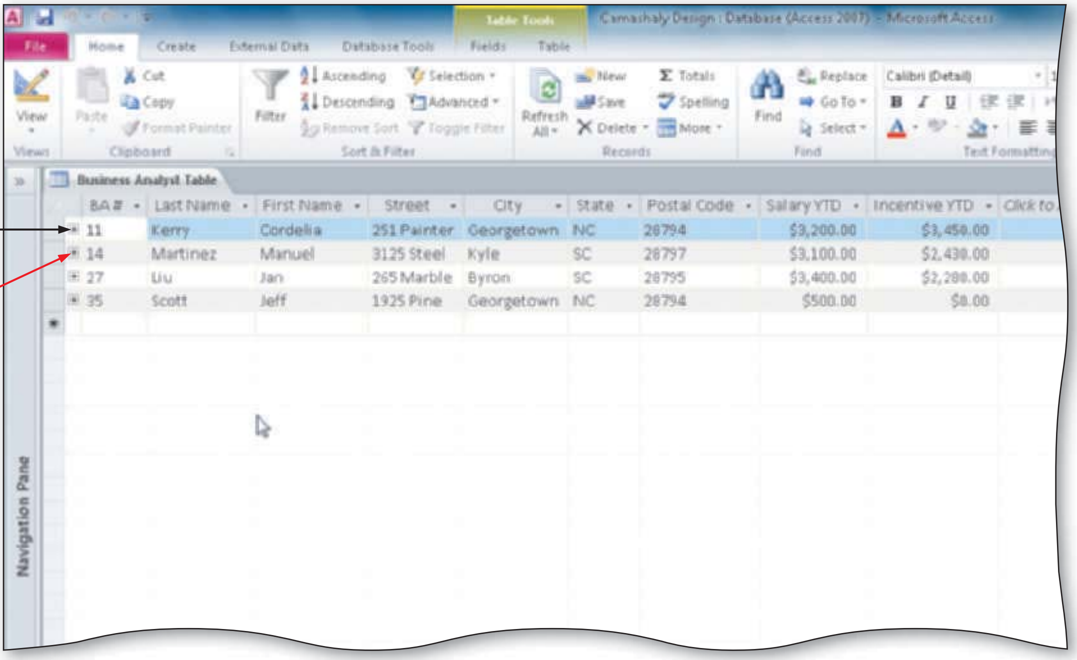


Table Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Fields
Table
Business Analyst Table
Navigation Pane

BA #	Last Name	First Name	Street	City	State	Postal Code	Salary YTD	Incentive YTD	Click to
11	Kerry	Cordelia	251 Painter	Georgetown	NC	28794	$3,200.00	$3,450.00	
14	Martinez	Manuel	3125 Steel	Kyle	SC	28797	$3,100.00	$2,430.00	
27	Liu	Jan	265 Marble	Byron	SC	28795	$3,400.00	$2,280.00	
35	Scott	Jeff	1925 Pine	Georgetown	NC	28794	$500.00	$0.00	

+ sign indicates subdatasheet available

click to display subdatasheet for analyst 14

Figure 3–79

2

- Click the plus sign in front of the row for business analyst 14 to display the subdatasheet (Figure 3–80).

Q&A

How do I hide the subdatasheet when I no longer want it to appear?

When you clicked the plus sign, it changed to a minus sign. Click the minus sign.

Experiment

- Display subdatasheets for other business analysts. Display more than one subdatasheet at a time. Remove the subdatasheets from the screen.

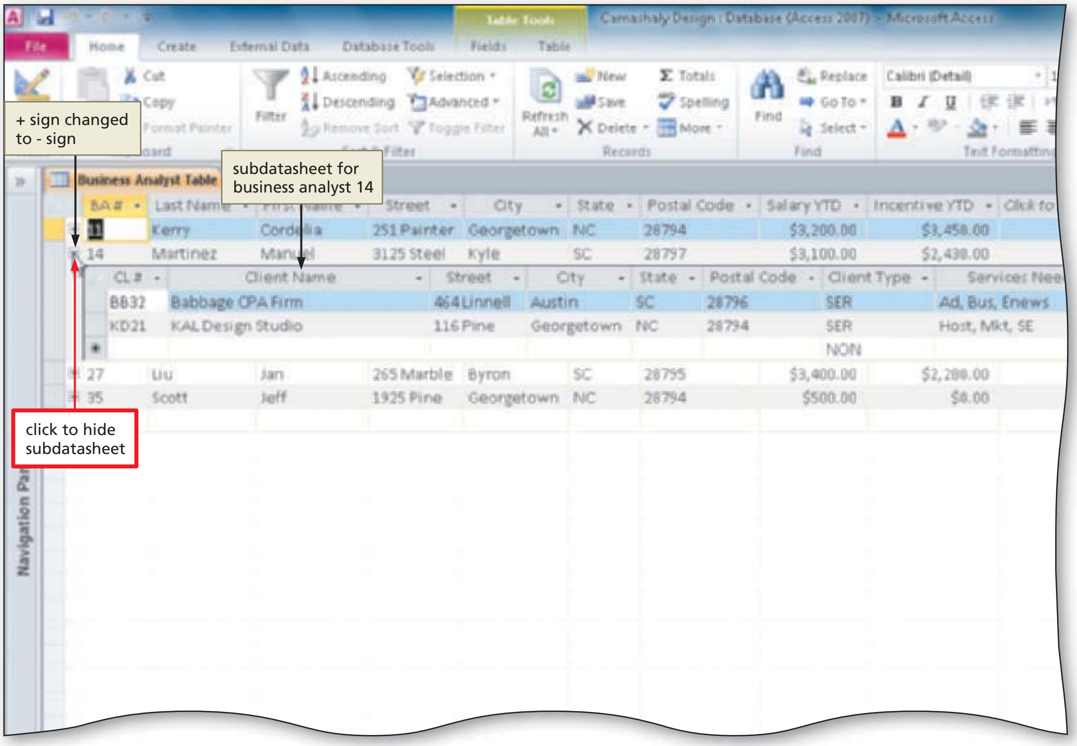


Table Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
Business Analyst Table
Navigation Pane

BA #	Last Name	First Name	Street	City	State	Postal Code	Salary YTD	Incentive YTD	Click to
11	Kerry	Cordelia	251 Painter	Georgetown	NC	28794	$3,200.00	$3,450.00	
14	Martinez	Manuel	3125 Steel	Kyle	SC	28797	$3,100.00	$2,430.00	
27	Liu	Jan	265 Marble	Byron	SC	28795	$3,400.00	$2,280.00	
35	Scott	Jeff	1925 Pine	Georgetown	NC	28794	$500.00	$0.00	

CL #	Client Name	Street	City	State	Postal Code	Client Type	Services Nee
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	464 Linnell	Austin	SC	28796	SER	Ad, Bus, Enews
KD21	KAL Design Studio	116 Pine	Georgetown	NC	28794	SER	Host, Mkt, SE
						NON	

+ sign changed to - sign

subdatasheet for business analyst 14

click to hide subdatasheet

Figure 3–80

3

- Close the datasheet for the Business Analyst Table.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Handling Data Inconsistency

In many organizations, databases evolve and change over time. One department may create a database for its own internal use. Employees in another department may decide they need their own database containing much of the same information. For example, the Purchasing department may create a database of products that it buys and the Receiving department may create a database of products that it receives. Each department is keeping track of the same products. When the organization eventually merges the databases, they may find inconsistencies and duplication. The Find Duplicates Query Wizard and the Find Unmatched Query Wizard can assist in clearing the resulting database of duplication and errors.

To Find Duplicate Records

One reason to include a primary key for a table is to eliminate duplicate records. A possibility still exists, however, that duplicate records can get into your database. The following steps illustrate how to use the Find Duplicates Query Wizard to find duplicate records.

1. Click Create on the Ribbon, and then click the Query Wizard button (Create tab | Queries group).
2. When Access displays the New Query dialog box, click the Find Duplicates Query Wizard and then click the OK button.
3. Identify the table and field or fields that might contain duplicate information.
4. Indicate any other fields you want displayed.
5. Finish the wizard to see any duplicate records.

To Find Unmatched Records

Occasionally, you may want to find records in one table that have no matching records in another table. For example, you may want to determine which business analysts currently have no clients. The following steps illustrate how to find unmatched records using the Find Unmatched Query Wizard.

1. Click Create on the Ribbon, and then click the Query Wizard button (Create tab | Queries group).
2. When Access displays the New Query dialog box, click the Find Unmatched Query Wizard and then click the OK button.
3. Identify the table that might contain unmatched records and then identify the related table.
4. Indicate the fields you want displayed.
5. Finish the wizard to see any duplicate records.

Ordering Records

Normally, Access sequences the records in the Client table by client number whenever listing them because the Client Number field is the primary key. You can change this order, if desired.

To Use the Ascending Button to Order Records

To change the order in which records appear, use the Ascending or Descending buttons. Either button reorders the records based on the field in which the insertion point is located.

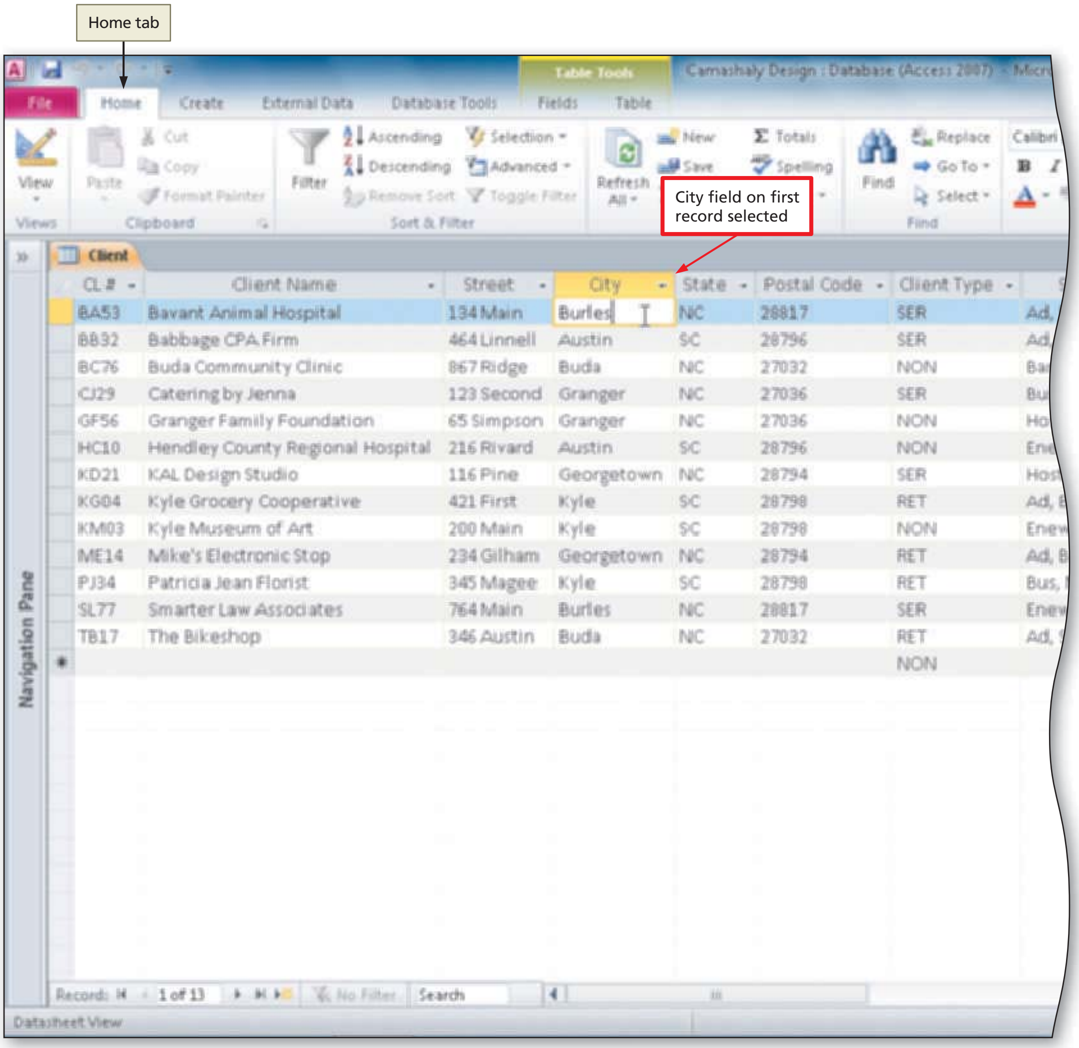
The following steps order the records by city using the Ascending button.

1

- Open the Client table in Datasheet view and close the Navigation Pane.
- Click the City field on the first record to select the field (Figure 3–81).

Q&A Did I have to click the field on the first record?

No. Any other record would have worked as well.



Home tab
City field on first record selected
Table Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Micro
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Fields
Table
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Totals
Spelling
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Find
Client
Navigation Pane
Record: 1 of 13
No Filter
Search
Datasheet View

CL #	Client Name	Street	City	State	Postal Code	Client Type
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	134 Main	Burles	NC	28817	SER
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	464 Linnell	Austin	SC	28796	SER
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	867 Ridge	Buda	NC	27032	NON
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	123 Second	Granger	NC	27036	SER
GF56	Granger Family Foundation	65 Simpson	Granger	NC	27036	NON
HC10	Hendley County Regional Hospital	216 Rivard	Austin	SC	28796	NON
KD21	KAL Design Studio	116 Pine	Georgetown	NC	28794	SER
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	421 First	Kyle	SC	28798	RET
KM03	Kyle Museum of Art	200 Main	Kyle	SC	28798	NON
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	234 Gilham	Georgetown	NC	28794	RET
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	345 Magee	Kyle	SC	28798	RET
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	764 Main	Burles	NC	28817	SER
TB17	The Bikeshop	346 Austin	Buda	NC	27032	RET
						NON

Figure 3–81

BTW

Certification

The Microsoft Office Specialist (MOS) program provides an opportunity for you to obtain a valuable industry credential — proof that you have the Access 2010 skills required by employers. For more information, visit the Access 2010 Certification Web page (scsite.com/ac2010/cert).

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

②

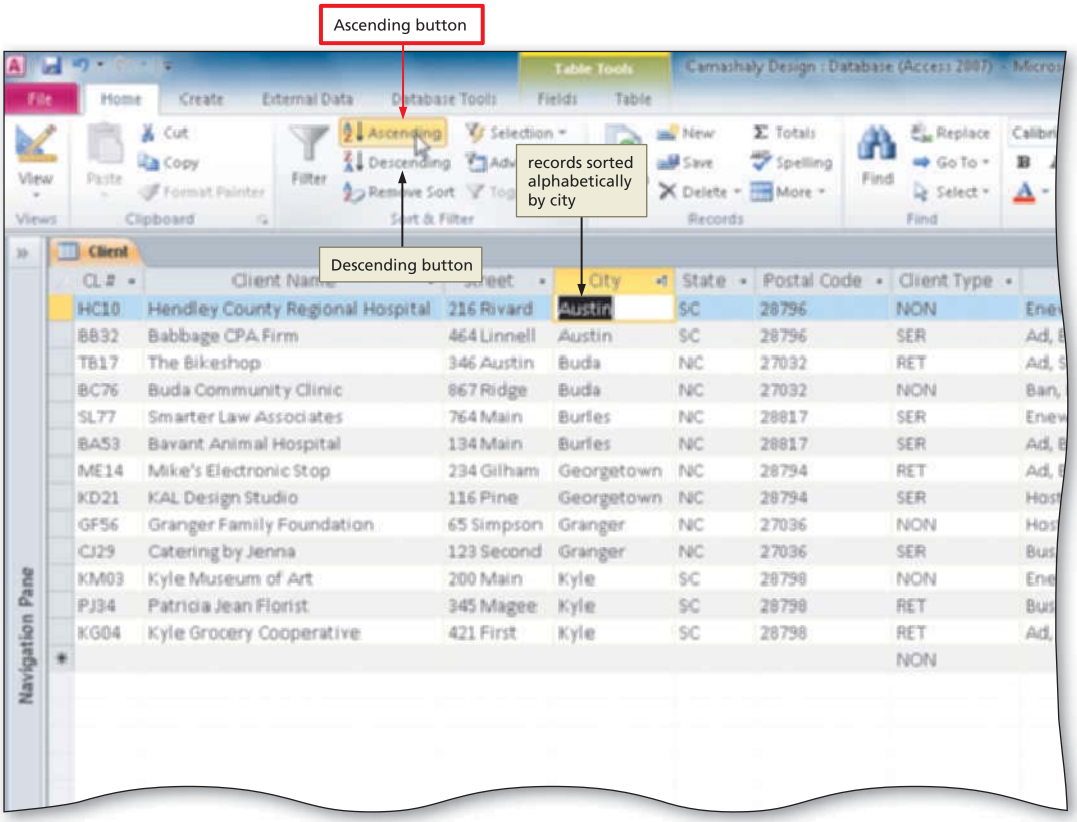
- Click the Ascending button (Home tab | Sort & Filter group) to sort the records by City (Figure 3–82).

Q&A What if I wanted the cities to appear in reverse alphabetical order?

Click the Descending button.

Experiment

- Sort the records by city in reverse order. When done, sort the records by city in the original order.


Ascending button
Descending button
records sorted alphabetically by city
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Fields
Table
Table Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Micros
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Find
Client
Navigation Pane

CL #	Client Name	Street	City	State	Postal Code	Client Type
HC10	Hendley County Regional Hospital	216 Rivard	Austin	SC	28796	NON
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	464 Linnell	Austin	SC	28796	SER
TB17	The Bikeshop	346 Austin	Buda	NC	27032	RET
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	867 Ridge	Buda	NC	27032	NON
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	764 Main	Burles	NC	28817	SER
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	134 Main	Burles	NC	28817	SER
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	234 Gilham	Georgetown	NC	28794	RET
KD21	KAL Design Studio	116 Pine	Georgetown	NC	28794	SER
GF56	Granger Family Foundation	65 Simpson	Granger	NC	27036	NON
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	123 Second	Granger	NC	27036	SER
KM03	Kyle Museum of Art	200 Main	Kyle	SC	28798	NON
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	345 Magee	Kyle	SC	28798	RET
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	421 First	Kyle	SC	28798	RET
						NON

Figure 3–82

- Close the Client table.
- Click the No button (Microsoft Access dialog box) when asked if you want to save your changes.

Other Ways

1. Right-click field name, click Sort A to Z (for ascending) or Sort Z to A (for descending)

TO USE THE ASCENDING BUTTON TO ORDER RECORDS ON MULTIPLE FIELDS

Just as you are able to sort the answer to a query on multiple fields, you also can sort the data that appears in a datasheet on multiple fields. To do so, the major and minor keys must be next to each other in the datasheet with the major key on the left. (If this is not the case, you can drag the columns into the correct position. Instead of dragging, however, usually it will be easier to use a query that has the data sorted in the desired order.)

To sort on a combination of fields where the major key is just to the left of the minor key, you would use the following steps.

1. Click the field selector at the top of the major key column to select the entire column.
2. Hold down the SHIFT key and then click the field selector for the minor key column to select both columns.
3. Click the Ascending button to sort the records.

To Quit Access

The following steps quit Access.

① Click the Close button on the right side of the title bar to quit Access.

② If a Microsoft Access dialog box appears, click the Save button to save any changes made to the object since the last save.

BTW **Quick Reference**
For a table that lists how to complete the tasks covered in this book using the mouse, Ribbon, shortcut menu, and keyboard, see the Quick Reference Summary at the back of this book, or visit the Access 2010 Quick Reference Web page (scsite.com/ac2010/qr).

Chapter Summary

In this chapter you have learned how to use a form to add records to a table, search for records, delete records, filter records, create and use lookup fields, create calculated fields, create and use multivalued fields, make mass changes, create validation rules, change the appearance of a datasheet, specify referential integrity, and use subdatasheets. The items listed below include all the new Access skills you have learned in this chapter.

1. Create a Split Form (AC 142)
2. Use a Form to Add Records (AC 144)
3. Search for a Record (AC 144)
4. Update the Contents of a Record (AC 146)
5. Delete a Record (AC 147)
6. Use Filter By Selection (AC 148)
7. Toggle a Filter (AC 150)
8. Use a Common Filter (AC 150)
9. Use Filter By Form (AC 152)
10. Use Advanced Filter/Sort (AC 153)
11. Delete a Field (AC 155)
12. Add a New Field (AC 155)
13. Create a Lookup Field (AC 156)
14. Add a Calculated Field (AC 159)
15. Modify Single or Multivalued Lookup Fields (AC 161)
16. Use an Update Query (AC 162)
17. Use a Delete Query (AC 163)
18. Use an Append Query (AC 164)
19. Use a Make-Table Query (AC 165)
20. Specify a Required Field (AC 166)
21. Specify a Range (AC 166)
22. Specify a Default Value (AC 167)
23. Specify a Collection of Legal Values (AC 167)
24. Specify a Format (AC 168)
25. Change the Contents of a Field (AC 170)
26. Use a Lookup Field (AC 171)
27. Use a Multivalued Lookup Field (AC 172)
28. Update a Form to Reflect the Changes in the Table (AC 174)
29. Update a Report to Reflect the Changes in the Table (AC 175)
30. Include Totals in a Datasheet (AC 177)
31. Remove Totals from a Datasheet (AC 179)
32. Change Gridlines in a Datasheet (AC 180)
33. Change the Colors and Font in a Datasheet (AC 181)
34. Query a Multivalued Field Showing Multiple Values on a Single Row (AC 183)
35. Query a Multivalued Field Showing Multiple Values on Multiple Rows (AC 184)
36. Specify Referential Integrity (AC 186)
37. Use a Subdatasheet (AC 191)
38. Find Duplicate Records (AC 193)
39. Find Unmatched Records (AC 193)
40. Use the Ascending Button to Order Records (AC 194)
41. Use the Ascending Button to Order Records on Multiple Fields (AC 195)

SAM If you have a SAM 2010 user profile, your instructor may have assigned an autogradable version of this assignment. If so, log into the SAM 2010 Web site at www.cengage.com/sam2010 to download the instruction and start files.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Learn It Online

Test your knowledge of chapter content and key terms.

Instructions: To complete the Learn It Online exercises, start your browser, click the Address bar, and then enter the Web address **`scsite.com/ac2010/learn`**. When the Access 2010 Learn It Online page is displayed, click the link for the exercise you want to complete and then read the instructions.

Chapter Reinforcement TF, MC, and SA

A series of true/false, multiple choice, and short answer questions that test your knowledge of the chapter content.

Flash Cards

An interactive learning environment where you identify chapter key terms associated with displayed definitions.

Practice Test

A series of multiple choice questions that test your knowledge of chapter content and key terms.

Who Wants To Be a Computer Genius?

An interactive game that challenges your knowledge of chapter content in the style of a television quiz show.

Wheel of Terms

An interactive game that challenges your knowledge of chapter key terms in the style of the television show *Wheel of Fortune*.

Crossword Puzzle Challenge

A crossword puzzle that challenges your knowledge of key terms presented in the chapter.

Apply Your Knowledge

Reinforce the skills and apply the concepts you learned in this chapter.

Specifying Validation Rules, Updating Records, Formatting a Datasheet, and Creating Relationships

Instructions: Start Access. Open the Babbage CPA Firm database that you modified in Apply Your Knowledge in Chapter 2 on page AC 129. (If you did not complete this exercise, see your instructor for a copy of the modified database.)

Perform the following tasks:

1. Open the Client table in Design view, as shown in Figure 3–83 on page AC 198.
2. Format the Client Number field so any lowercase letters appear in uppercase and make the Client Name field a required field.
3. Specify that balance due amounts must be between $0 and $1,200. Include validation text.
4. Save the changes to the Client table.
5. Create a split form for the Client table and find the record for M26 and change the customer name to Mohr Craft Supplies.
6. Use the form to add the following record:

L50	Lou's Salon	124 Fulton	Granger	27036	$0.00	$325.00	38

Continued >

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Apply Your Knowledge *continued*

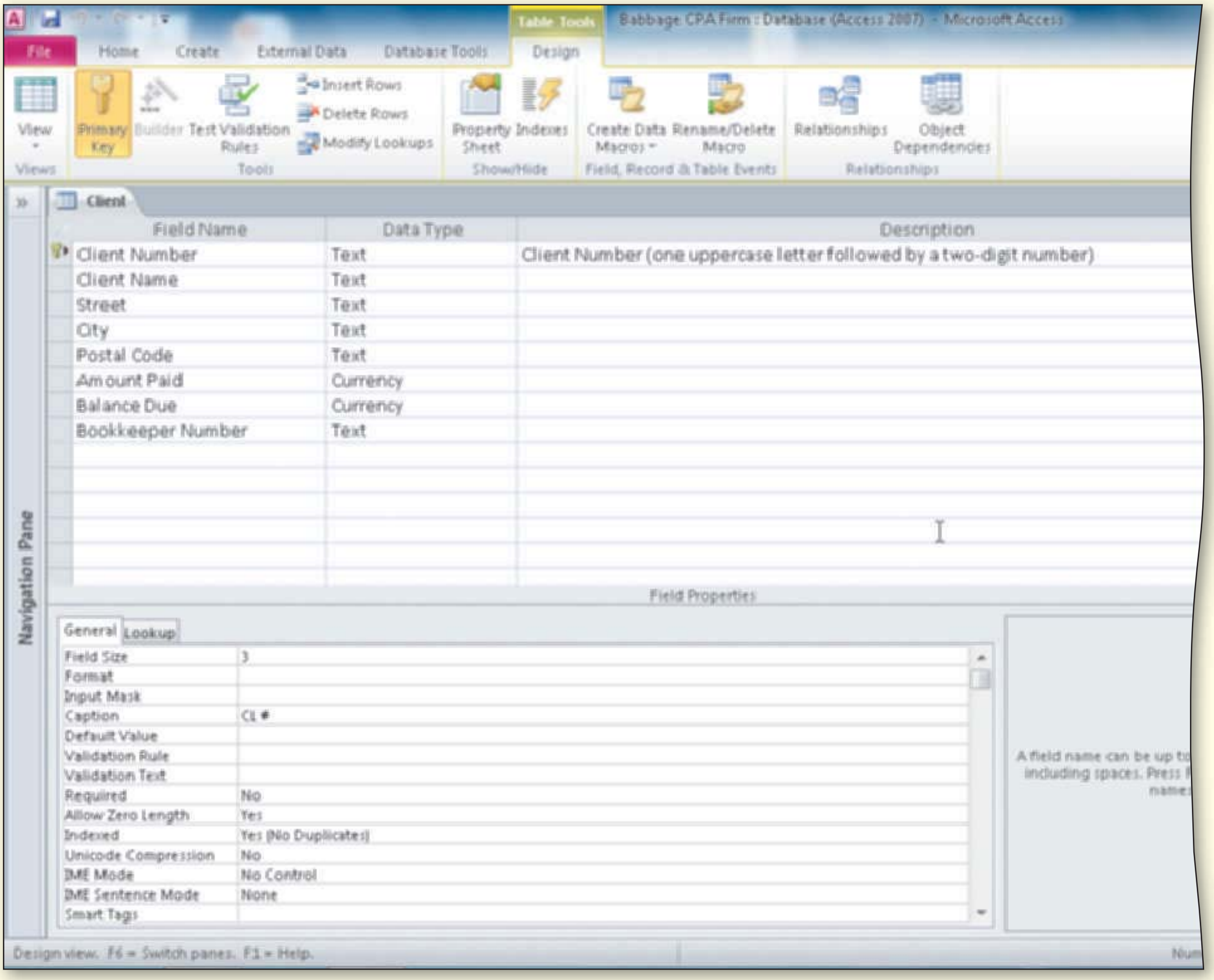


Table Tools
Babbage CPA Firm : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
View
Views
Primary Key
Builder
Test Validation Rules
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Modify Lookups
Tools
Property Sheet
Indexes
Show/Hide
Create Data Macros
Rename/Delete Macro
Field, Record & Table Events
Relationships
Object Dependencies
Relationships
Navigation Pane
Client
Field Properties
General
Lookup
A field name can be up to including spaces. Press names
Design view. F6 = Switch panes. F1 = Help.
Num

Field Name	Data Type	Description
Client Number	Text	Client Number (one uppercase letter followed by a two-digit number)
Client Name	Text	
Street	Text	
City	Text	
Postal Code	Text	
Amount Paid	Currency	
Balance Due	Currency	
Bookkeeper Number	Text	

Field Size	3
Format	
Input Mask	
Caption	CL #
Default Value	
Validation Rule	
Validation Text	
Required	No
Allow Zero Length	Yes
Indexed	Yes (No Duplicates)
Unicode Compression	No
IME Mode	No Control
IME Sentence Mode	None
Smart Tags	

Figure 3–83

7. Save the form as Client Split Form and close the form.
8. Open the Client table in Datasheet view and use Filter By Selection to find the record for H21. Delete the record. Remove the filter.
9. Add totals to the datasheet for the Amount Paid and Balance Due fields. Remove the gridlines from the datasheet.
10. Save the changes to the layout of the table. Close the Client table.
11. Establish referential integrity between the Bookkeeper table (the one table) and the Client table (the many table). Cascade the update but do not cascade the delete. Create a relationship report for the relationship. Save the report with the default report name Relationships for Babbage CPA Firm.
12. Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Extend Your Knowledge

Extend the skills you learned in this chapter and experiment with new skills. You may need to use Help to complete the assignment.

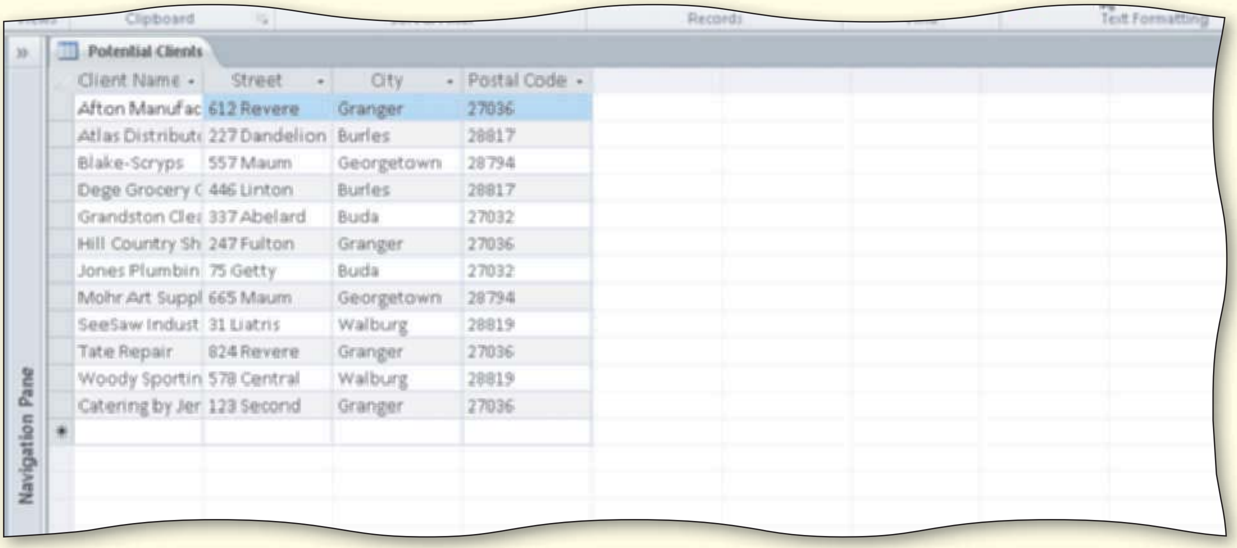
Creating Action Queries and Changing Table Properties

Instructions: See the inside back cover of this book for instructions for downloading the Data Files for Students, or see your instructor for information on accessing the required files.

Generic Temp Services is a company that specializes in placing temporary workers in various administrative positions. Philamar Training has been approached about buying Generic Temp Services. Philamar is interested in knowing how many clients the companies have in common. Generic also needs to do some database maintenance by finding duplicates and finding unmatched records.

Perform the following tasks:

1. Open the Generic Temp Services database. Create and run a make-table query to create the Potential Clients table in the Generic Temp Services database shown in Figure 3–84. Save the query as Make Table Query.



Client Name	Street	City	Postal Code
Afton Manufac	612 Revere	Granger	27036
Atlas Distribut	227 Dandelion	Burles	28817
Blake-Scryps	557 Maum	Georgetown	28794
Dege Grocery C	446 Linton	Burles	28817
Grandston Cle	337 Abelard	Buda	27032
Hill Country Sh	247 Fulton	Granger	27036
Jones Plumbin	75 Getty	Buda	27032
Mohr Art Suppl	665 Maum	Georgetown	28794
SeeSaw Indust	31 Liatris	Walburg	28819
Tate Repair	824 Revere	Granger	27036
Woody Sportin	578 Central	Walburg	28819
Catering by Jer	123 Second	Granger	27036

Figure 3–84

2. Open the Potential Clients table, change the font size to 14, and resize the columns to best fit the data.
3. Save the changes to the layout of the table. Close the table.
4. Use the Find Duplicates Query Wizard to find duplicate information in the City field. Include the Client Name field in the query. Name the query City Duplicates Query. Close the query.
5. Use the Find Unmatched Query Wizard to find all records in the Worker table that do not match records in the Client table. Worker Number is the common field in both tables. Include the Worker Number, Last Name, and First Name in the query. Name the query Worker Unmatched Query. Close the query.
6. Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Make It Right

Analyze a database and correct all errors and/or improve the design.

Correcting Table Design Errors

Instructions: Start Access. Open the Senior Jobbers database. See the inside back cover of this book for instructions for downloading the Data Files for Students, or see your instructor for information on accessing the required files.

Perform the following tasks:

Senior Jobbers provides a variety of small repairs and maintenance to homeowners. The owner of Senior Jobbers has decided that he could better manage the business if he added a multivalued field that lists the various types of repairs and maintenance that customers request. He created the field shown in Figure 3–85 but forgot to add Clean Gutters as one of the job types. Modify the multivalued lookup field to include Clean Gutters as a job type. By mistake, the owner also added the contact number field shown in Figure 3–85 to the Customer table. That field should be deleted.

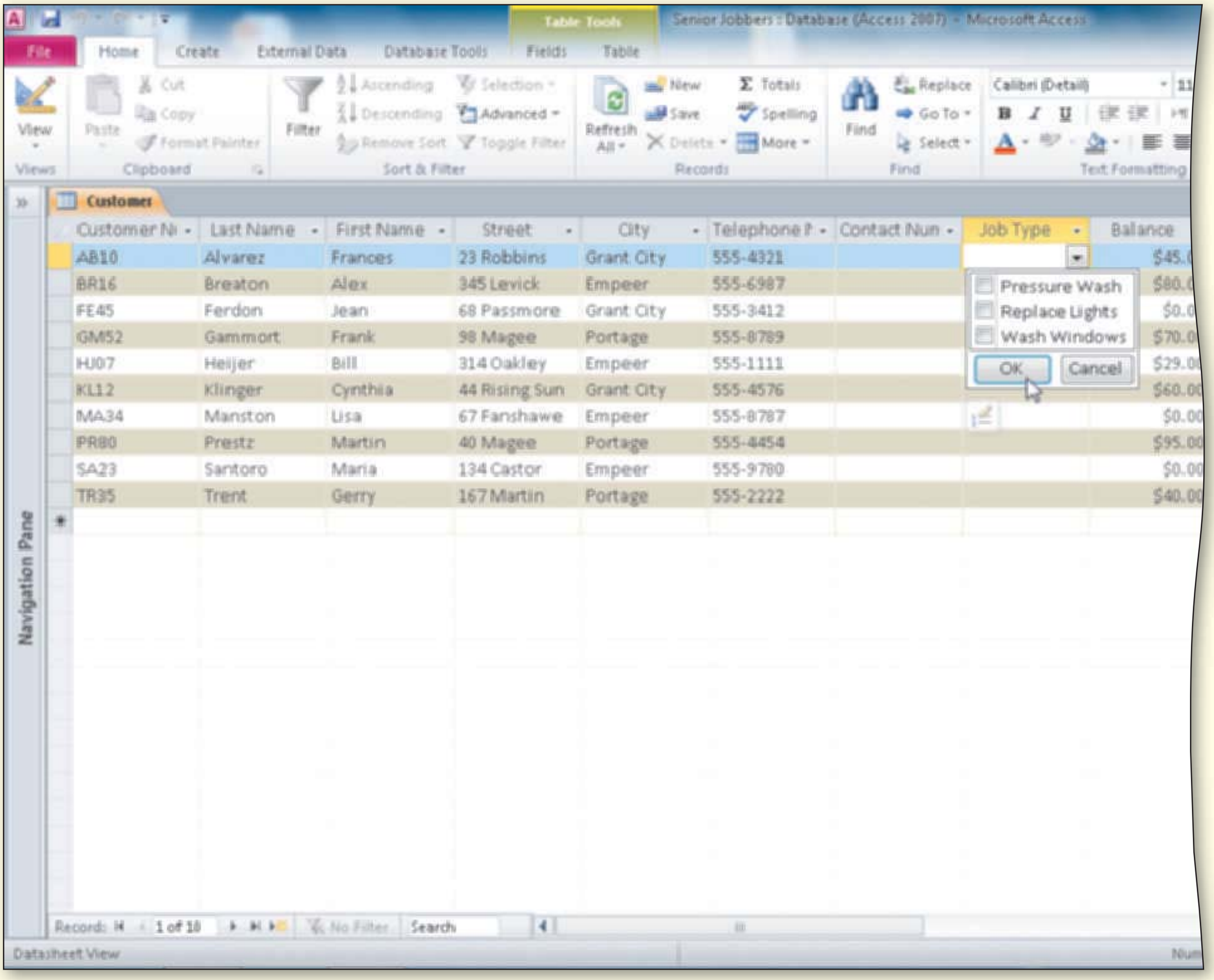


Table Tools
Senior Jobbers : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Fields
Table
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Calibri (Detail)
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Find
Text Formatting
Customer
Navigation Pane
Record: 1 of 10
No Filter
Search
Datasheet View

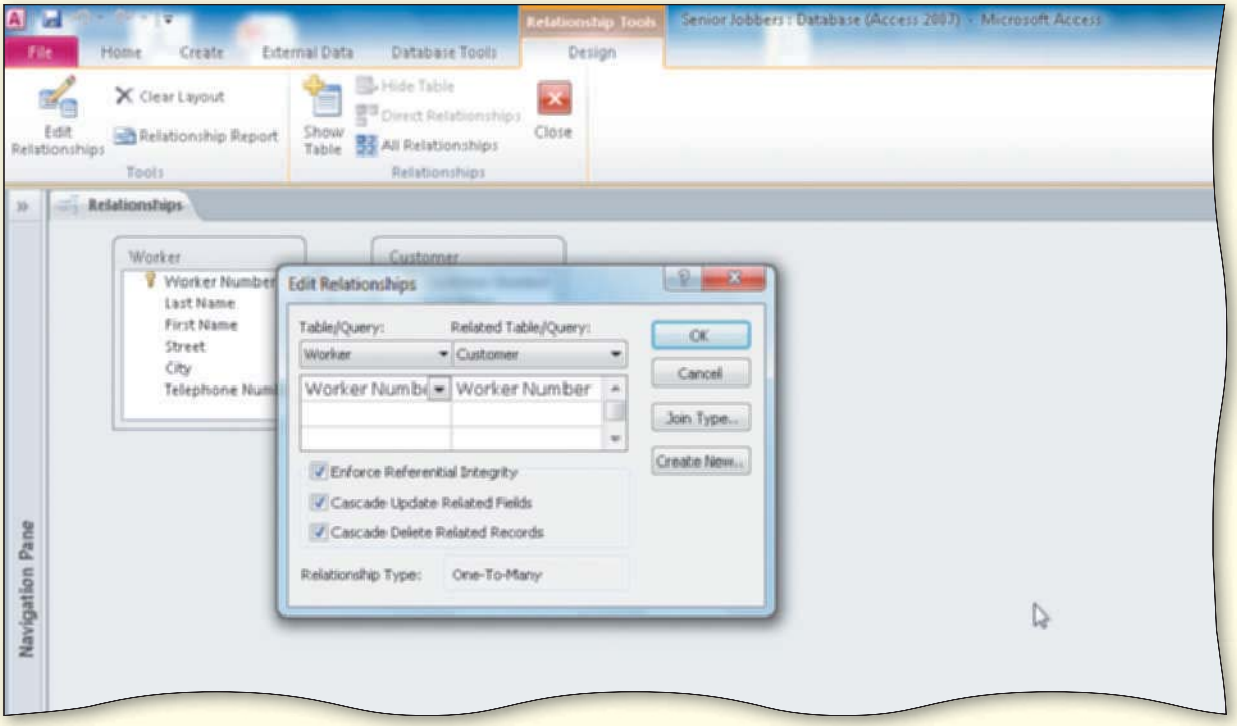
Customer N	Last Name	First Name	Street	City	Telephone N	Contact Nun	Job Type	Balance
AB10	Alvarez	Frances	23 Robbins	Grant City	555-4321			$45.
BR16	Breaton	Alex	345 Levick	Empeer	555-6987			$80.
FE45	Ferdon	Jean	68 Passmore	Grant City	555-3412			$0.0
GM52	Gammort	Frank	98 Magee	Portage	555-8789			$70.0
HJ07	Heijer	Bill	314 Oakley	Empeer	555-1111			$29.00
KL12	Klinger	Cynthia	44 Rising Sun	Grant City	555-4576			$60.00
MA34	Manston	Lisa	67 Fanshawe	Empeer	555-8787			$0.00
PR80	Prestz	Martin	40 Magee	Portage	555-4454			$95.00
SA23	Santoro	Maria	134 Castor	Empeer	555-9780			$0.00
TR35	Trent	Gerry	167 Martin	Portage	555-2222			$40.00

☐ Pressure Wash
☐ Replace Lights
☐ Wash Windows

Figure 3–85

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Finally, he wanted to add referential integrity between the Worker table and the Customer table. The relationship shown in Figure 3–86 is not correct and must be fixed. The owner does not want to cascade the update or the delete.


Relationship Tools
Senior Jobbers : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Edit Relationships
Clear Layout
Relationship Report
Tools
Show Table
Hide Table
Direct Relationships
All Relationships
Relationships
Close
Relationships
Navigation Pane
Worker
Worker Number
Last Name
First Name
Street
City
Telephone Num
Customer
OK
Cancel
Join Type...
Create New...

Edit Relationships

Table/Query: Worker

Related Table/Query: Customer

Worker Number | Worker Number

☑ Enforce Referential Integrity

☑ Cascade Update Related Fields

☑ Cascade Delete Related Records

Relationship Type: One-To-Many

Figure 3–86

Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

In the Lab

Design, create, modify, and/or use a database following the guidelines, concepts, and skills presented in this chapter. Labs 1, 2, and 3 are listed in order of increasing difficulty.

Lab 1: Maintaining the ECO Clothesline Database

Problem: ECO Clothesline is expanding rapidly and needs to make some database changes to handle the expansion. The company needs to know more about its customers, such as the type of business, and it needs to ensure that data that is entered is valid. It also needs to update the records in the database.

Use the database modified in the In the Lab 1 of Chapter 2 on page AC 132 for this assignment, or see your instructor for information on accessing the files required for this book.

Perform the following tasks:

1. Open the ECO Clothesline database and then open the Customer table in Design view.
2. Add a Lookup field, Customer Type, to the Customer table. The field should appear after the Postal Code field. The field will contain data on the type of customer. The customer types are SAL (Salons, Studios, Fitness Clubs), SPG (Sporting Goods), and WMN (Women's Wear). Save these changes to the structure.

Continued >

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

In the Lab *continued*

3. Using a query, change all the entries in the Customer Type column to WMN. Save the query as Customer Type Update Query.
4. Open the Customer table and make the following changes. You can use either the Find button or Filter By Selection to locate the records to change:
    a. Change the customer type for customers CY12, FN19, LB20, RD03, TT21, and TW56 to SAL.
    b. Change the customer type for customer WS34 to SPG.
    c. Change the name of customer LB20 to Le Beauty Salon & Spa.
5. Change the alternate background color on the datasheet to white and remove the vertical gridlines. Save the changes to the layout of the table.
6. Create the following validation rules for the Customer table and save the changes.
    a. Specify the legal values SAL, SPT, and WMN for the Customer Type field. Include validation text.
    b. Assign a default value of WMN to the Customer Type field.
    c. Ensure that any letters entered in the Customer Number field appear as uppercase.
    d. Make Customer Name a required field.
7. Open the Customer table and use Filter By Form to find all records where the customer is located in Lowton and has a customer type of WMN, and then delete these records.
8. ECO Clothesline has signed up a sporting goods store, Ralph's (Customer Number RA21) and needs to add the record to the Customer table. Ralph's is at 72 Main in Lowton, TN 37084. Terry Sinson is the sales rep assigned to the account. To date, Ralph's has not been billed nor does the company owe for any services. Create a split form for the Customer table and use this split form to add the record. Save the split form as Customer Split Form.
9. Specify referential integrity between the Sales Rep table (the one table) and the Customer table (the many table). Cascade the update but not the delete.
10. Add the Customer Type field to the Customer Balance Report. The field should follow the Customer Name field. Save the changes to the report.
11. Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

In the Lab

Lab 2: Maintaining the Walburg Energy Alternatives Database

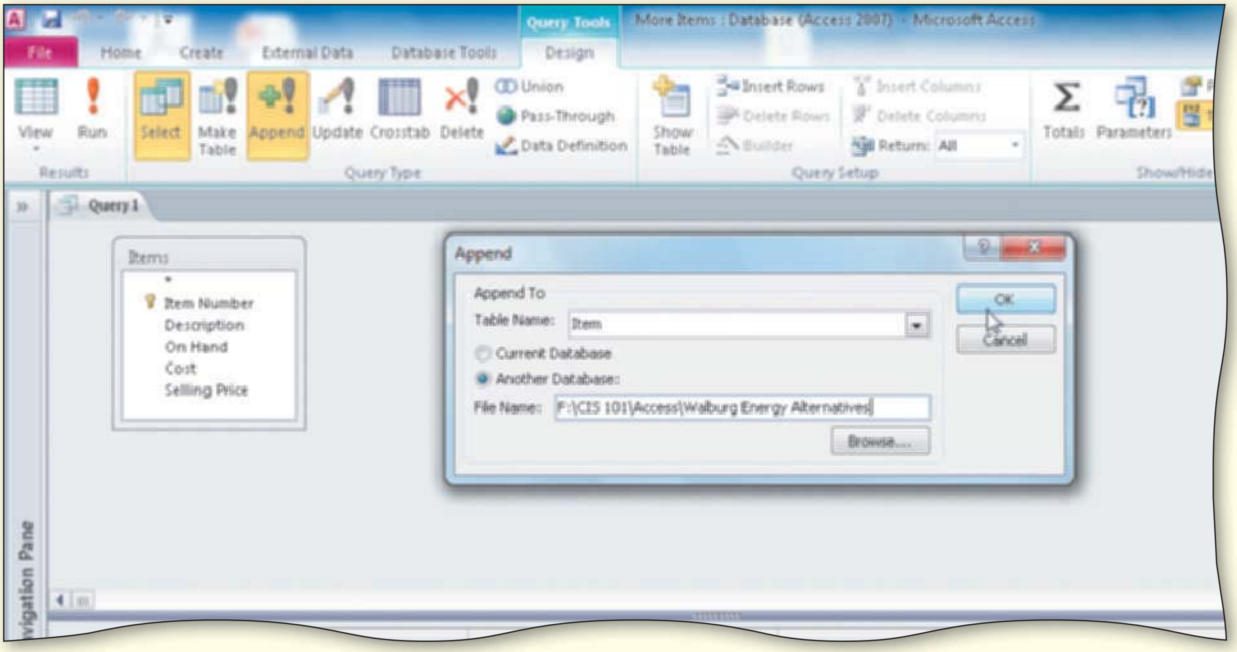
Problem: The management of the Walburg Energy Alternatives recently acquired some items from a store that is going out of business. You now need to append these new items to the current item table. You also need to change the database structure and add some validation rules to the database.

Use the database modified in the In the Lab 2 of Chapter 2 on page AC 134 for this assignment. You also will use the More Items database from the Data Files for Students. See the inside back cover of this book for instructions for downloading the Data Files for Students, or see your instructor for information on accessing the required files.

Perform the following tasks:

1. Open the More Items database from the Data Files for Students.
2. Create a new query for the Item table and add all fields to the query.

3. Using an append query, append all records in the More Items database to the Item table in the Walburg Energy Alternatives database, as shown in Figure 3–87.


Query Tools
More Items : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
View
Run
Select
Make Table
Append
Update
Crosstab
Delete
Union
Pass-Through
Data Definition
Show Table
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Builder
Insert Columns
Delete Columns
Return: All
Totals
Parameters
Results
Query Type
Query Setup
Show/Hide
Query1
Items
*
Item Number
Description
On Hand
Cost
Selling Price
Navigation Pane
OK
Cancel
Browse...

Append

Append To

Table Name: Item

○ Current Database

● Another Database:

File Name: F:\CIS 101\Access\Walburg Energy Alternatives

Figure 3–87

4. Save the append query as Walburg Append Query and close the More Items database.
5. Open the Walburg Energy Alternatives database and then open the Item table in Datasheet view. There should be 20 records in the table.
6. The items added from the More Items database do not have a vendor assigned to them. Assign items 1234 and 2234 to vendor JM. Assign item 2216 to vendor AS. Assign items 2310 and 2789 to vendor SD.
7. Create an advanced filter for the Item table. The filter should display records with fewer than 10 items on hand and be sorted in ascending order by Description. Save the filter settings as a query and name the filter Reorder Filter.
8. Make the following changes to the Item table:
    a. Change the field size for the On Hand field to Integer. The Format should be fixed and the decimal places should be 0.
    b. Make Description a required field.
    c. Specify that the number on hand must be between 0 and 50. Include validation text.
    d. Add a calculated field Inventory Value (On Hand*Cost) following the Cost field. Format the field as currency.
9. Save the changes to the table design. If a dialog box appears indicating that some data may be lost, click the Yes button.
10. Add the Inventory Value field to the Inventory Status Report. Place the field after the Cost field. Save the changes to the report.
11. Specify referential integrity between the Vendor table (the one table) and the Item table (the many table). Cascade the update but not the delete.
12. Submit the revised More Items database and the Walburg Energy Alternatives database in the format specified by your instructor.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

In the Lab

Lab 3: Maintaining the Philamar Training Database

Problem: Philamar Training is expanding rapidly and needs to make some database changes to handle the expansion. The company needs to know more about its clients, such as the type of business and the training services needed. You also are to add validation rules and update records in the database.

Use the Philamar Training database modified in the In the Lab 3 of Chapter 2 on page AC 135 for this assignment, or see your instructor for information on accessing the files required for this book. Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

Instructions Part 1: Several changes must be made to the database structure. For example, management would like a lookup field, Client Type, added to the Client table. The field should appear after the Postal Code field. The field will contain data on the type of client. The client types are MAN (Manufacturing), RET (Retail), and SER (Service). Philamar also needs a multivalued field that lists the general type of computer training of interest to each client. This knowledge can help Philamar better meet the needs of their clients. Add the field following the Client Type field. Table 3–2 lists the training abbreviations and descriptions that management would like in a Training Needed multivalued field.

Table 3–2 Training Abbreviations and Descriptions

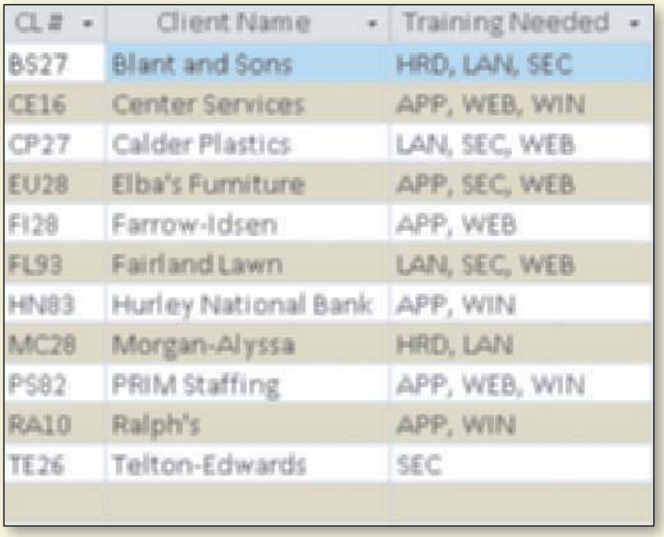
Training Abbreviation	Description
APP	Application Software
HRD	Hardware
LAN	Local Area Networks
SEC	Security
WEB	Internet and World Wide Web
WIN	Windows

Management wants to ensure that an entry always appears in the Client Name field and that any letters entered in the Client Number field appear in uppercase. It also requires that the amount in the Current Due field is never less than 0 or greater than $5,000. The only values in the Client Type field are MAN, SER, and RET. Most clients are manufacturing organizations. Make the changes to the database structure.

Instructions Part 2: Use a query to assign the client type MAN to all records in the Client table. Save the query as Update Query. Clients EU28 and FI28 are retail organizations. Clients CE16, HN83, and PS82 are service organizations. The data for the Training Needed field shown in Figure 3–88 must be added to the database. The address for PRIM Staffing is incorrect. It should be 727 Crestview. Hurley National is really Hurley National Bank. A new retail organization, Ralph's, just became a Philamar client. The address for the store is 42 Main, Crumville, TX 76745. Ralph's is interested in application software and Windows training.

Management wants to use RA10 as the client number and Marty Danville as the trainer. The new client has not yet received any training and does not owe any money to Philamar.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.



CL #	Client Name	Training Needed
BS27	Blant and Sons	HRD, LAN, SEC
CE16	Center Services	APP, WEB, WIN
CP27	Calder Plastics	LAN, SEC, WEB
EU28	Elba's Furniture	APP, SEC, WEB
FI28	Farrow-Idsen	APP, WEB
FL93	Fairland Lawn	LAN, SEC, WEB
HN83	Hurley National Bank	APP, WIN
MC28	Morgan-Alyssa	HRD, LAN
PS82	PRIM Staffing	APP, WEB, WIN
RA10	Ralph's	APP, WIN
TE26	Telton-Edwards	SEC

Figure 3–88

Instructions Part 3: Management wants to make sure that clients are not assigned to a trainer who is not in the database. It also wants the ability to change a trainer number in the Trainer table and have the change applied to the Client table. Create the appropriate relationship that would satisfy management's needs.

Cases and Places

Apply your creative thinking and problem solving skills to design and implement a solution.

See the inside back cover of this book for instructions for downloading the Data Files for Students, or see your instructor for information on accessing the required files.

1: Maintaining the Chamber of Commerce Database

Academic

Use the Chamber of Commerce database you modified in Cases and Places 1 in Chapter 2 on page AC 135 for this assignment. Use the concepts and techniques presented in this chapter to modify the database as follows:

1. The chamber would like to categorize the businesses that advertise in the guide as retail, dining, or service establishments. These three types are the only valid category types. Most businesses are retail businesses.
2. Advertisers A228, C135, G346, H123, K109, M321, T167, and W456 are retail establishments. Advertisers C048, C234, D217, N007, and P124 are service establishments. The remaining advertisers are dining establishments.
3. An entry should always appear in the Advertiser Name field and any letters in the Advertiser Number field should appear in uppercase.
4. Chloe's Salon has changed its name to Chloe's Salon and Spa.

Continued >

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Cases and Places *continued*

5. AAA Diner is a new restaurant in town and wants to advertise in the guide. Assign the Advertiser Number A245 to AAA Diner. The restaurant is located at 23 Berton, the postal code is 19363, and the telephone number is 555-0998. It has not yet made a payment and the balance is $75.00. Lars Tolbert is the ad rep.
6. Specify referential integrity. Cascade the update but not the delete.
7. Change the ad rep number for ad rep 26 to 22.

Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

2: Maintaining the Consignment Database

Personal

Use the Consignment database you modified in Cases and Places 2 in Chapter 2 on page AC 136 for this assignment. Use the concepts and techniques presented in this chapter to modify the database as follows:

1. Make the Condition field a lookup field. Only the current values in the database should be legal values. Most items are in good condition.
2. Update descriptions: A better description for the recliner is Leather Recliner. A better description for the bar stools is Kitchen Counter Stools.
3. The clothes hamper has been sold.
4. The minimum price of any item is $2.
5. The Description field always should contain data.
6. It would be easier to find items for sale if the default sort order for the Items table was by Description rather than by Item Number. Also, all descriptions should be displayed completely in Datasheet view.
7. Add the Condition field to the Available Items Report you created in Chapter 1. The field should follow the Description field. All descriptions should display completely.
8. Specify referential integrity. Cascade the delete but not the update.

Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

3: Maintaining the Senior Care Database

Professional

Use the Senior Care database you modified in Cases and Places 3 in Chapter 2 on page AC 136 for this assignment. Use the concepts and techniques presented in this chapter to modify the database as follows:

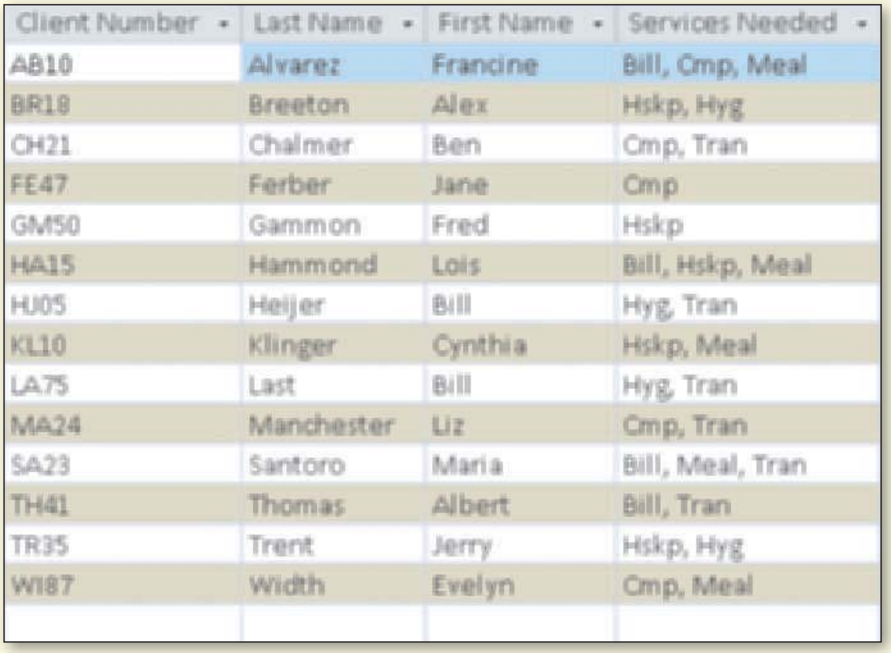
1. Senior Care could better serve its clients by adding a field that would list the type of services each client needs. Table 3–3 lists the service abbreviations and descriptions that should appear in the field.

Table 3–3 Service Abbreviations and Descriptions

Service Abbreviation	Description
Bill	Bill/Mail/Correspondence Help
Cmp	Companionship
Hskp	Light Housekeeping
Hyg	Hygiene Assistance
Meal	Meal Planning/Preparation
Tran	Transportation/Errands

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2. Add the data for this multivalued field shown in Figure 3–89 to the database.
3. This multivalued field also should appear in the Client Report you created in Chapter 1.
4. Senior Care is having trouble finding helpers willing to help with hygiene. Query the Client table to find all clients who require hygiene assistance. Save the query as Hygiene Needs Query.
5. Mike Preston has moved to assisted living and is no longer a client of Senior Care. Use Find or Filter By Selection to delete this record.
6. An entry should always appear in the client first and last name fields. Any letters in the Client Number field should appear in uppercase.
7. Specify referential integrity. Cascade the update but not the delete.

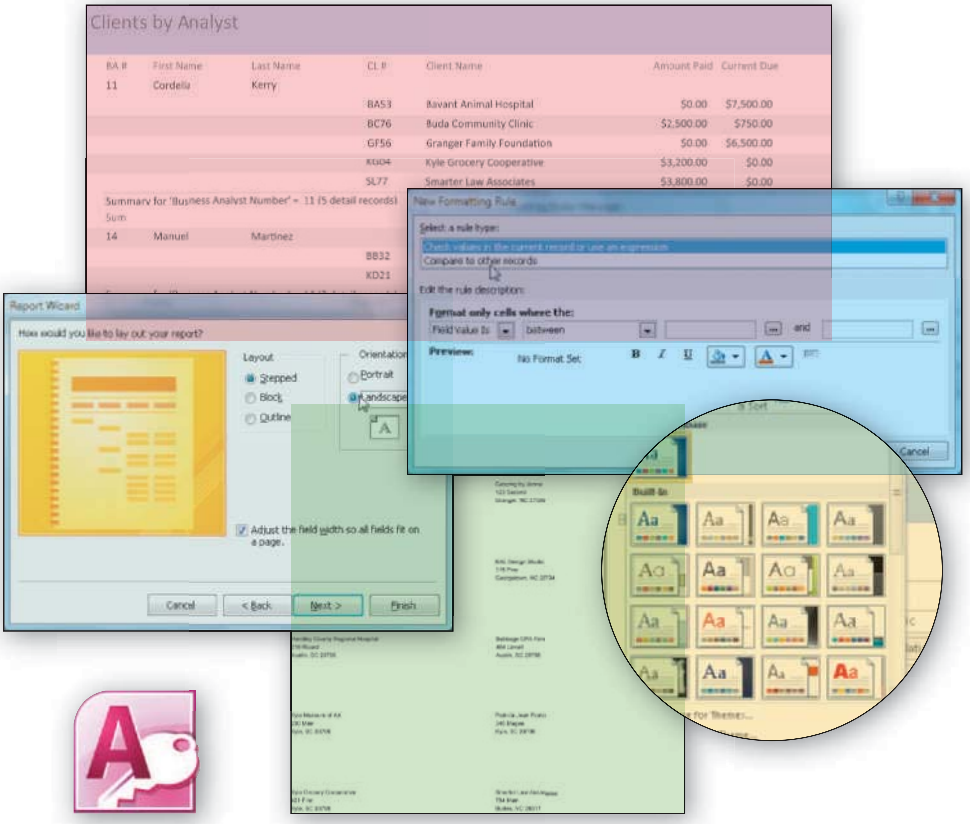


Client Number	Last Name	First Name	Services Needed
AB10	Alvarez	Francine	Bill, Cmp, Meal
BR18	Breeton	Alex	Hskp, Hyg
CH21	Chalmer	Ben	Cmp, Tran
FE47	Ferber	Jane	Cmp
GM50	Gammon	Fred	Hskp
HA15	Hammond	Lois	Bill, Hskp, Meal
HJ05	Heijer	Bill	Hyg, Tran
KL10	Klinger	Cynthia	Hskp, Meal
LA75	Last	Bill	Hyg, Tran
MA24	Manchester	Liz	Cmp, Tran
SA23	Santoro	Maria	Bill, Meal, Tran
TH41	Thomas	Albert	Bill, Tran
TR35	Trent	Jerry	Hskp, Hyg
WI87	Width	Evelyn	Cmp, Meal

Figure 3–89

Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

4 Creating Reports and Forms


Clients by Analyst
Report Wizard
How would you like to lay out your report?
Layout
Stepped
Block
Outline
Orientation
Portrait
Landscape
Adjust the field width so all fields fit on a page.
Cancel
< Back
Next >
Finish
New Formatting Rule
Select a rule type:
Check values in the current record or use an expression
Compare to other records
Edit the rule description:
Format only cells where the:
Field Value Is
between
and
Preview:
No Format Set
Built-in

Objectives

You will have mastered the material in this chapter when you can:

- Create reports and forms using wizards
- Modify reports and forms in Layout view
- Group and sort in a report
- Add totals and subtotals to a report
- Conditionally format controls
- Resize columns
- Filter records in reports and forms
- Print reports and forms
- Apply themes
- Add a field to a report or form
- Include gridlines
- Add a date
- Change the format of a control
- Move controls
- Create and print mailing labels

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

4 Creating Reports and Forms

Introduction

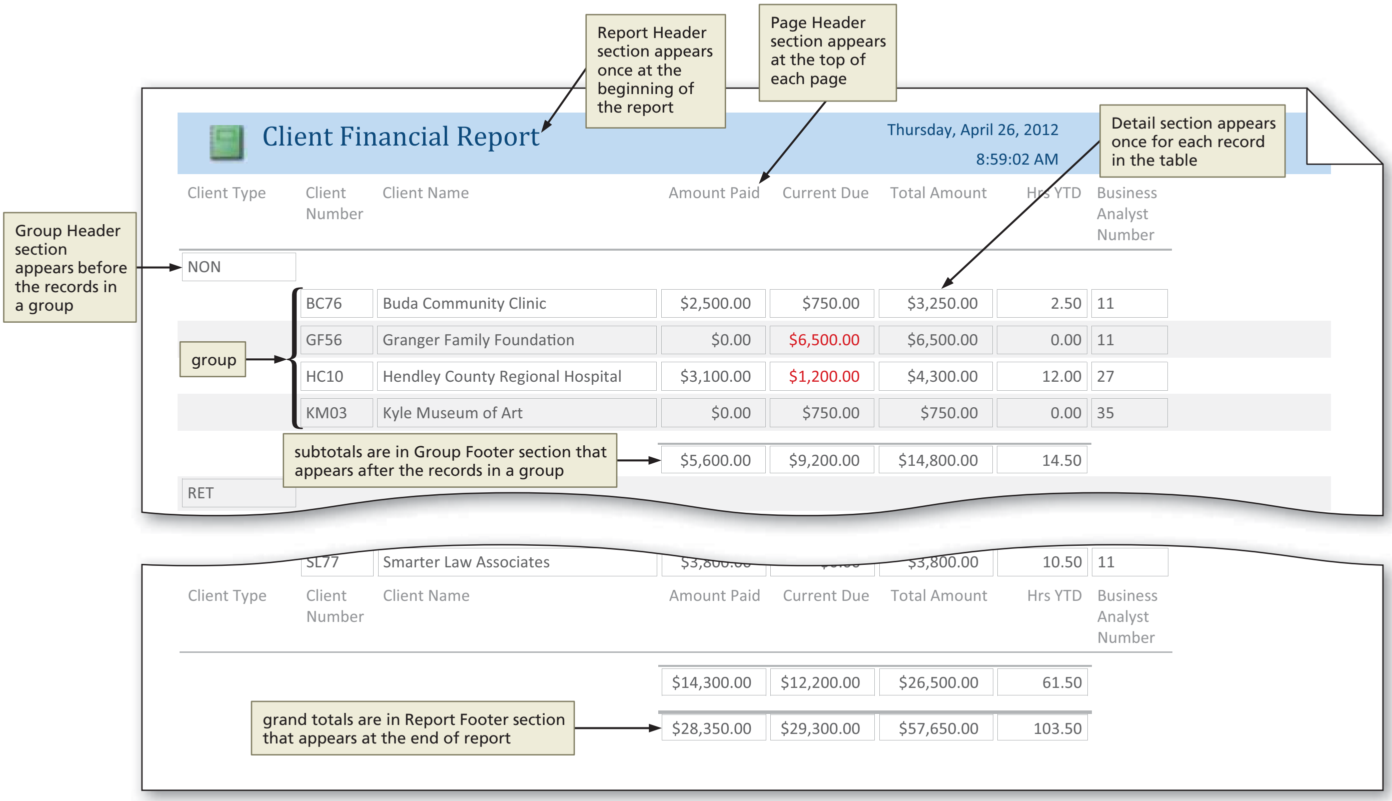
One of the advantages to maintaining data in a database is the ability to present the data in attractive reports and forms that highlight certain information. Reports present specific data in an organized format that is usually printed. The data can come from one or more tables. You usually view forms on the screen, although you can print them. You often use forms to view specific data. You may use them to update data. Like reports, the data in the form can come from one or more tables. This chapter shows how to create reports and forms by creating two reports and a form. There are several ways to create both reports and forms. The most common is to use the Report or Form Wizard to create an initial report or form. If the layout created by the wizard is satisfactory, you are done. If not, you can use either Layout view or Design view to customize the report or form. In this chapter, you will use Layout view for this purpose. In later chapters, you will learn how to use Design view. You also will use the Label Wizard to produce mailing labels.

BTW

Q&As
For a complete list of the Q&As found in many of the step-by-step sequences in this book, visit the Access 2010 Q&A Web page (scsite.com/ac2010/qa).

Project — Reports and Forms

Camashaly Design has realized several benefits from using the database of clients and analysts. Camashaly hopes to realize additional benefits using two custom reports that meet their specific needs. Figure 4–1 shows the first report, which is a modified version



Report Header section appears once at the beginning of the report

Page Header section appears at the top of each page

Detail section appears once for each record in the table

Group Header section appears before the records in a group

group

subtotals are in Group Footer section that appears after the records in a group

grand totals are in Report Footer section that appears at the end of report

Client Financial Report

Thursday, April 26, 2012
8:59:02 AM

Client Type	Client Number	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due	Total Amount	Hrs YTD	Business Analyst Number
NON							
	BC76	Buda Community Clinic	$2,500.00	$750.00	$3,250.00	2.50	11
	GF56	Granger Family Foundation	$0.00	$6,500.00	$6,500.00	0.00	11
	HC10	Hendley County Regional Hospital	$3,100.00	$1,200.00	$4,300.00	12.00	27
	KM03	Kyle Museum of Art	$0.00	$750.00	$750.00	0.00	35
			$5,600.00	$9,200.00	$14,800.00	14.50	
RET							
	SL77	Smarter Law Associates			$3,800.00	10.50	11

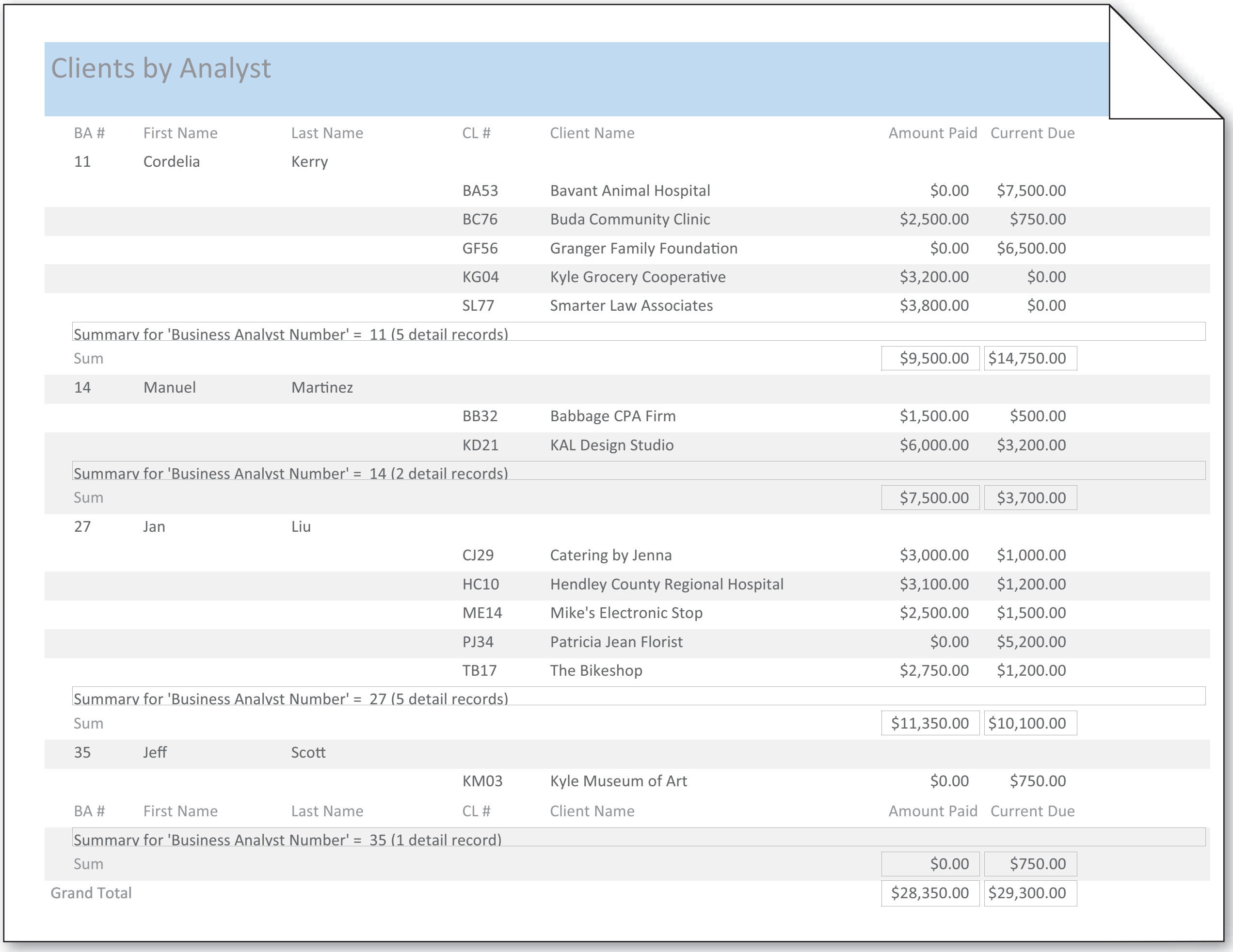
Client Type	Client Number	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due	Total Amount	Hrs YTD	Business Analyst Number
			$14,300.00	$12,200.00	$26,500.00	61.50	
			$28,350.00	$29,300.00	$57,650.00	103.50	

Figure 4–1

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

of an existing report. The report features grouping. The report shown in Figure 4–1 groups records by client types. There are three separate groups, one each for the three possible client types: NON, RET, and SER. The appropriate type appears before each group. The totals of the Amount Paid, Current Due, Total Amount, and Hrs YTD fields for the clients in the group (called a **subtotal**) appear after the group. At the end of the report are grand totals of the same fields.

Figure 4–2 shows the first page of the second report. This report encompasses data from both the Business Analyst Table and the Client table. Like the report in Figure 4–1, the data is grouped, although this time it is grouped by analyst number. Not only does the analyst number appear before each group, but the first name and last name of the analyst appear as well. Like the first report, this report contains subtotals.

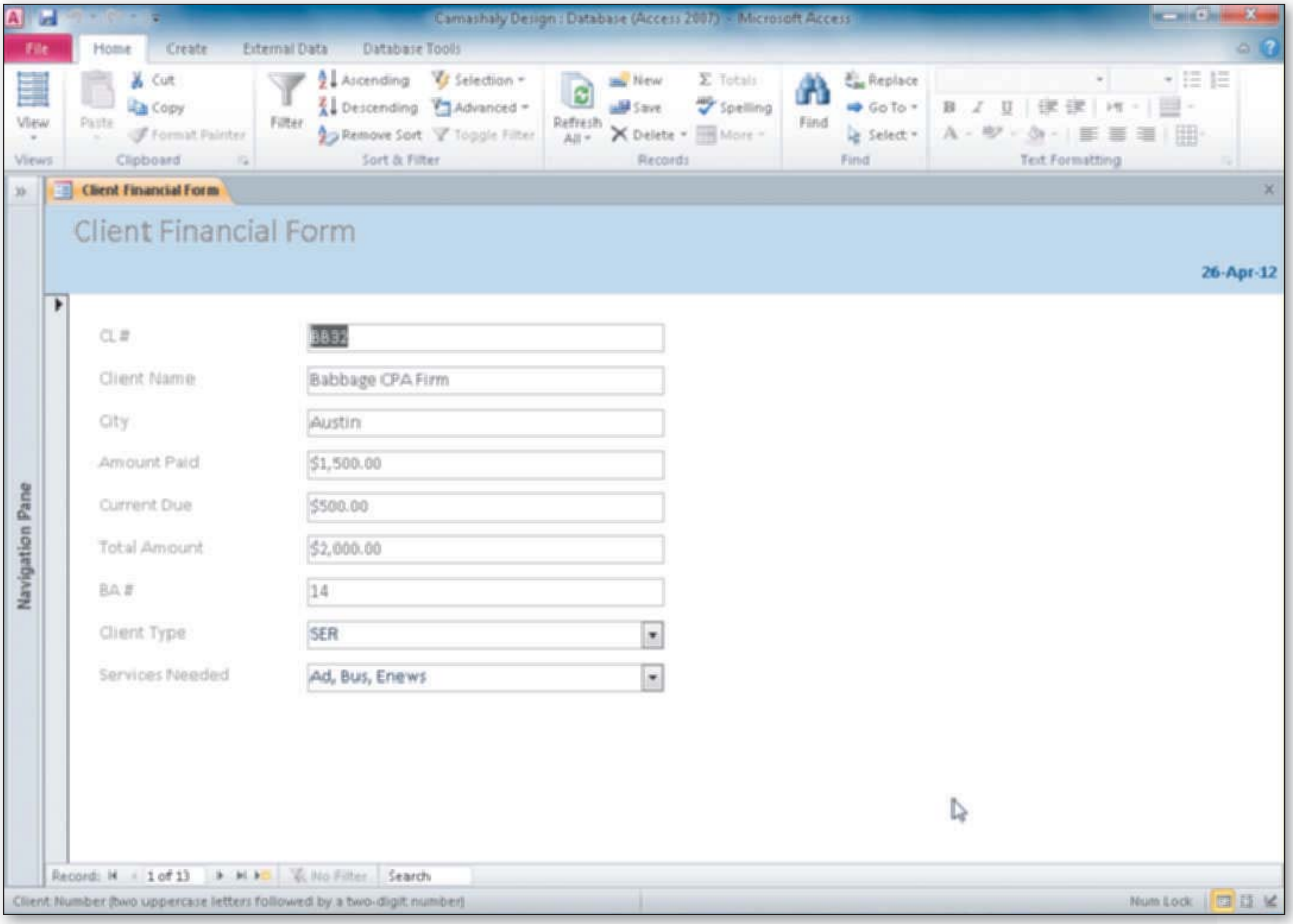


Clients by Analyst

BA #	First Name	Last Name	CL #	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due
11	Cordelia	Kerry				
			BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	$0.00	$7,500.00
			BC76	Buda Community Clinic	$2,500.00	$750.00
			GF56	Granger Family Foundation	$0.00	$6,500.00
			KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	$3,200.00	$0.00
			SL77	Smarter Law Associates	$3,800.00	$0.00
Summary for 'Business Analyst Number' = 11 (5 detail records)						
Sum					$9,500.00	$14,750.00
14	Manuel	Martinez				
			BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	$1,500.00	$500.00
			KD21	KAL Design Studio	$6,000.00	$3,200.00
Summary for 'Business Analyst Number' = 14 (2 detail records)						
Sum					$7,500.00	$3,700.00
27	Jan	Liu				
			CJ29	Catering by Jenna	$3,000.00	$1,000.00
			HC10	Hendley County Regional Hospital	$3,100.00	$1,200.00
			ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	$2,500.00	$1,500.00
			PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	$0.00	$5,200.00
			TB17	The Bikeshop	$2,750.00	$1,200.00
Summary for 'Business Analyst Number' = 27 (5 detail records)						
Sum					$11,350.00	$10,100.00
35	Jeff	Scott				
			KM03	Kyle Museum of Art	$0.00	$750.00
BA #	First Name	Last Name	CL #	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due
Summary for 'Business Analyst Number' = 35 (1 detail record)						
Sum					$0.00	$750.00
Grand Total					$28,350.00	$29,300.00

Figure 4–2

Camashaly also wants to improve the data entry process by using a custom form, as shown in Figure 4–3. The form has a title and a date. It does not contain all the fields in the Client table, and the fields are in a different order than in the table. For this form, Camashaly likes the appearance of including the fields in a grid.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Views
Clipboard
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Sort & Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Records
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Find
Text Formatting
Client Financial Form
Navigation Pane
Record: 1 of 13
No Filter
Search
Num Lock

Client Financial Form

26-Apr-12

CL #	BB32
Client Name	Babbage CPA Firm
City	Austin
Amount Paid	$1,500.00
Current Due	$500.00
Total Amount	$2,000.00
BA #	14
Client Type	SER
Services Needed	Ad, Bus, Enews

Client Number (two uppercase letters followed by a two-digit number)

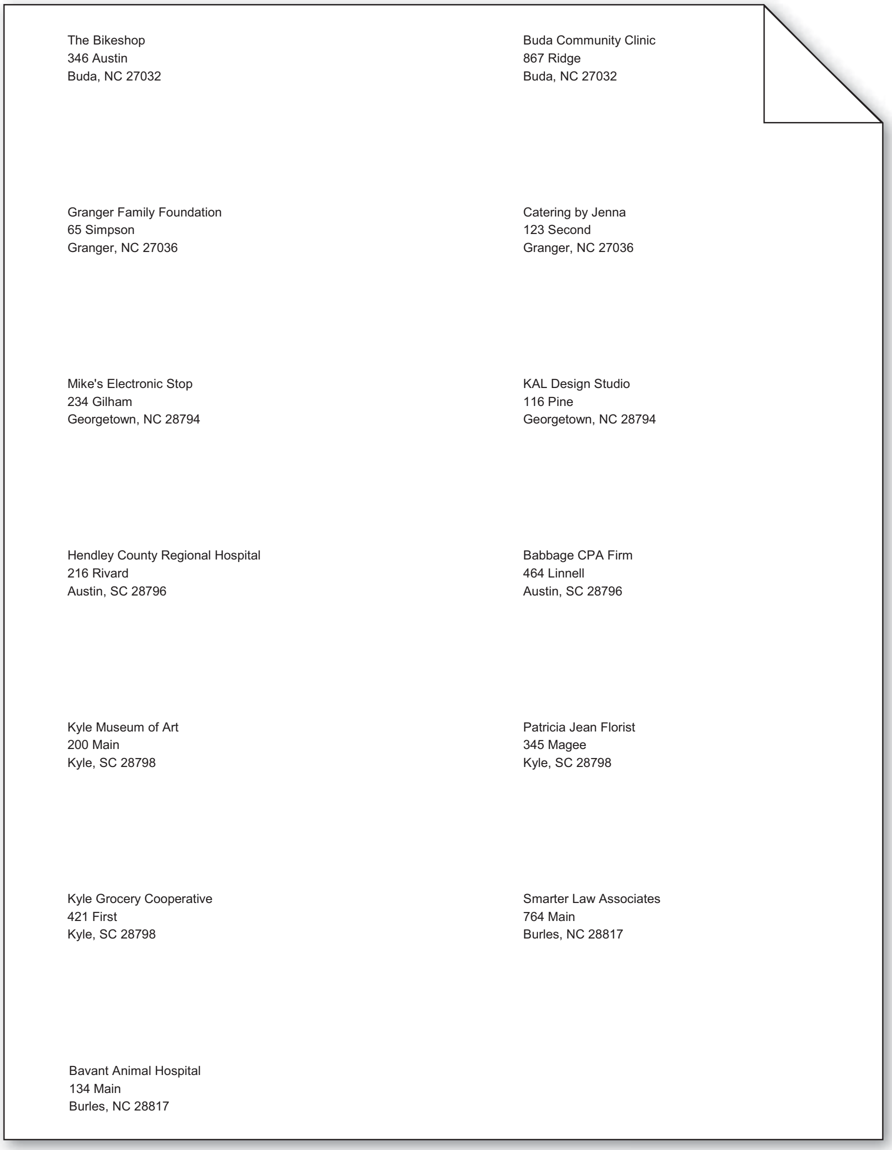
Figure 4–3

BTW

BTWs
For a complete list of the BTWs found in the margins of this book, visit the Access 2010 BTW Web page (scsite.com/ac2010/btw).

Camashaly also wants to be able to produce mailing labels for its clients. These labels must align correctly with the particular labels Camashaly uses and must be sorted by postal code (Figure 4–4).

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.



The Bikeshop
346 Austin
Buda, NC 27032

Buda Community Clinic
867 Ridge
Buda, NC 27032

Granger Family Foundation
65 Simpson
Granger, NC 27036

Catering by Jenna
123 Second
Granger, NC 27036

Mike's Electronic Stop
234 Gilham
Georgetown, NC 28794

KAL Design Studio
116 Pine
Georgetown, NC 28794

Hendley County Regional Hospital
216 Rivard
Austin, SC 28796

Babbage CPA Firm
464 Linnell
Austin, SC 28796

Kyle Museum of Art
200 Main
Kyle, SC 28798

Patricia Jean Florist
345 Magee
Kyle, SC 28798

Kyle Grocery Cooperative
421 First
Kyle, SC 28798

Smarter Law Associates
764 Main
Burles, NC 28817

Bavant Animal Hospital
134 Main
Burles, NC 28817

Figure 4–4

Overview

As you read this chapter, you will learn how to create reports and forms by performing these general tasks:

- Use Layout view to modify an existing report.
- Group and sort the report in Layout view.
- Add totals and subtotals to the report.
- Conditionally format a control.
- Filter records in the report.
- Use the Report Wizard to create a report on the Business Analyst and Client tables.
- Add a field to the report and include totals.
- Use the Form Wizard to create a form on the Client table.
- Include gridlines and a date in the form.
- Add a field to the form.
- Filter and sort records in the form.
- Create mailing labels.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Plan Ahead

Report and Form Design Guidelines

When creating reports and forms, you must identify the intended usage, audience, content, and formatting. To design reports and forms, you should follow these general guidelines:

1. **Determine whether the data should be presented in a report or a form.** Do you intend to print the data? If so, a report would be the appropriate choice. Do you intend to view the data on the screen? If so, a form would be the appropriate choice. Is the user going to update data? If so, a form would be the appropriate choice.
2. **Determine the intended audience for the report or form.** Who will use the report or form? Will the report or form be used by individuals external to the organization? For example, many government agencies require reports from organizations. If so, government regulations will dictate the report requirements. If the report is for internal use, the user will have specific requirements based on the intended use. The data required for a report or form depends on its use. Adding unnecessary data to a report or form can make the form or report unreadable. Include only data necessary for the intended use. What level of detail do they need? Reports used in day-to-day operations need more detail than weekly or monthly reports requested by management.
3. **Determine the tables that contain the data needed for the report or form.** Is all the data found in a single table, or does it come from multiple related tables?
4. **Determine the fields that should appear on the report or form.** What data items does the user of the report or form need?
5. **Determine the organization of the report or form.** In what order should the fields appear? How should they be arranged? Should the records in a report be grouped in some way?
6. **Determine the format of the report or form.** What should be in the report or form header? Do you want a title and date, for example? Do you want a logo? What should be in the body of the report and form? What should the style be? In other words, determine the visual characteristics that the various portions of the report or form should have.
7. **Review the report or form after it has been in operation to determine whether any changes are necessary.** Is the order of the fields still appropriate? Are any additional fields required?
8. **For mailing labels, determine the contents, order, and type of label.** What fields should appear on the label? How should they be arranged? Is there a certain order (for example, by postal code) in which the labels should be printed? Who is the manufacturer of the labels and what is the style number for the labels? What are the dimensions for each label? How many labels print across a page?

When necessary, more specific details concerning the above decisions and/or actions are presented at appropriate points in the chapter. The chapter also will identify the actions performed and decisions made regarding these guidelines in the design of the reports, forms, and labels such as those shown in Figures 4–1, 4–2, 4–3, and 4–4.

BTW

Consider Your Audience

Always design reports and forms with your audience in mind. Make your reports and forms accessible to individuals who may have problems with color blindness or reduced vision.

To Start Access

The following steps, which assume Windows 7 is running, start Access based on a typical installation. You may need to ask your instructor how to start Access for your computer.

① Click the Start button on the Windows 7 taskbar to display the Start menu.

② Type `Microsoft Access` as the search text in the ‘Search programs and files’ text box and watch the search results appear on the Start menu.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3. Click Microsoft Access 2010 in the search results on the Start menu to start Access.
4. If the Access window is not maximized, click the Maximize button next to the Close button on its title bar to maximize the window.

To Open a Database from Access

The following steps open the Camashaly database from the Access folder in the CIS 101 folder on the USB flash drive.

1. With your USB flash drive connected to one of the computer's USB ports, click File on the Ribbon to open the Backstage view.
2. Click Open in the Backstage view to display the Open dialog box.
3. Navigate to the location of the file to be opened (in this case, the USB flash drive, then to the CIS 101 folder [or your class folder], and then to the Access folder).
4. Click Camashaly Design to select the file to be opened.
5. Click the Open button (Open dialog box) to open the selected file and display the opened database in the Access window.
6. If a Security Warning appears, click the Enable Content option button.

BTW

The Ribbon and Screen Resolution

Access may change how the groups and buttons within the groups appear on the Ribbon, depending on the computer's screen resolution. Thus, your Ribbon may look different from the ones in this book if you are using a screen resolution other than 1024 × 768.

Report Creation

Unless you want a report that simply lists all the fields and all the records in a table, the simplest way to create a report design is to use the Report Wizard. In some cases, the Report Wizard can produce exactly the desired report. Other times, however, you first must use the Report Wizard to produce a report that is as close as possible to the desired report. Then, use Layout view to modify the report and transform it into the correct report. In either case, once you have created and saved the report, you can print it whenever you need to. Access will use the current data in the database for the report, formatting and arranging it in exactly the way you specified when you created the report.

Plan Ahead

Determine the tables and fields that contain the data needed for the report. If you determine that data should be presented as a report, you then need to determine what tables and fields contain the data for the report. The following guidelines apply to this decision.

- **Examine the requirements for the report in general to determine the tables.** Do the requirements only relate to data in a single table, or does the data come from multiple tables? What is the relationship between the tables?
- **Examine the specific requirements for the report to determine the fields necessary.** Look for all the data items specified for the report. Each should correspond to a field in a table or be able to be computed from fields in a table. This information gives you the list of fields to include.
- **Determine the order of the fields.** Examine the requirements to determine the order in which the fields should appear. Be logical and consistent in your ordering. For example, in an address, the city should come before the state and the state should come before the postal code, unless there is some compelling reason for another order.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Using Layout View in a Report

When working with a report in Access, there are four different ways to view the report: Report view, Print Preview, Layout view, and Design view. Report view shows the report on the screen. Print Preview shows the report as it will appear when printed. Layout view is similar to Report view in that it shows the report on the screen, but it also allows you to make changes to the report. It is usually the easiest way to make such changes. Design view also allows you to make changes, but it does not show you the actual report. It is most useful when the changes you need to make are especially complex. In this chapter, you will use Layout view to modify the report.

BTW

Report Design Considerations

The purpose of any report is to present specific information. Make sure that the meaning of the row and column headings is clear. You can use different fonts and sizes by changing the appropriate properties, but do not overuse them. Finally, be consistent when creating reports. Once you decide on a general report style or theme, stick with it throughout your database.

Understanding Report Sections

A report is divided into various sections to help clarify the presentation of data. In Design view, which you will use in later chapters, the sections are labeled on the screen. Even though they are not labeled in Layout view, it is still useful to understand the purpose of the various sections. A typical report consists of a Report Header section, Page Header section, Detail section, Page Footer section, and Report Footer section (see Figure 4–1).

The contents of the Report Header section print once at the beginning of the report. In the Client Financial Report, the title is in the Report Header section. The contents of the Report Footer section print once at the end of the report. In the Client Financial Report, the Report Footer section contains the grand totals of Amount Paid, Current Due, Total Amount, and Hrs YTD. The contents of the Page Header section print once at the top of each page and typically contain the column headers. The contents of the Page Footer section print once at the bottom of each page and often contain a date and a page number. The contents of the Detail section print once for each record in the table; for example, once for Buda Community Clinic, once for Granger Family Foundation, and so on. In this report, they contain the client number, client name, amount paid, current due, total amount, hrs YTD, and business analyst number.

When the data in a report is grouped, there are two additional sections. The contents of the Group Header section are printed before the records in a particular group, and the contents of the Group Footer section are printed after the group. In the Client Financial Report, the Group Header section contains the Client Type, and the Group Footer section contains subtotals of Amount Paid, Current Due, Total Amount, and Hrs YTD.

Plan Ahead

Determine the organization of the report or form.

Determine various details concerning how the data in your report or form is to be organized.

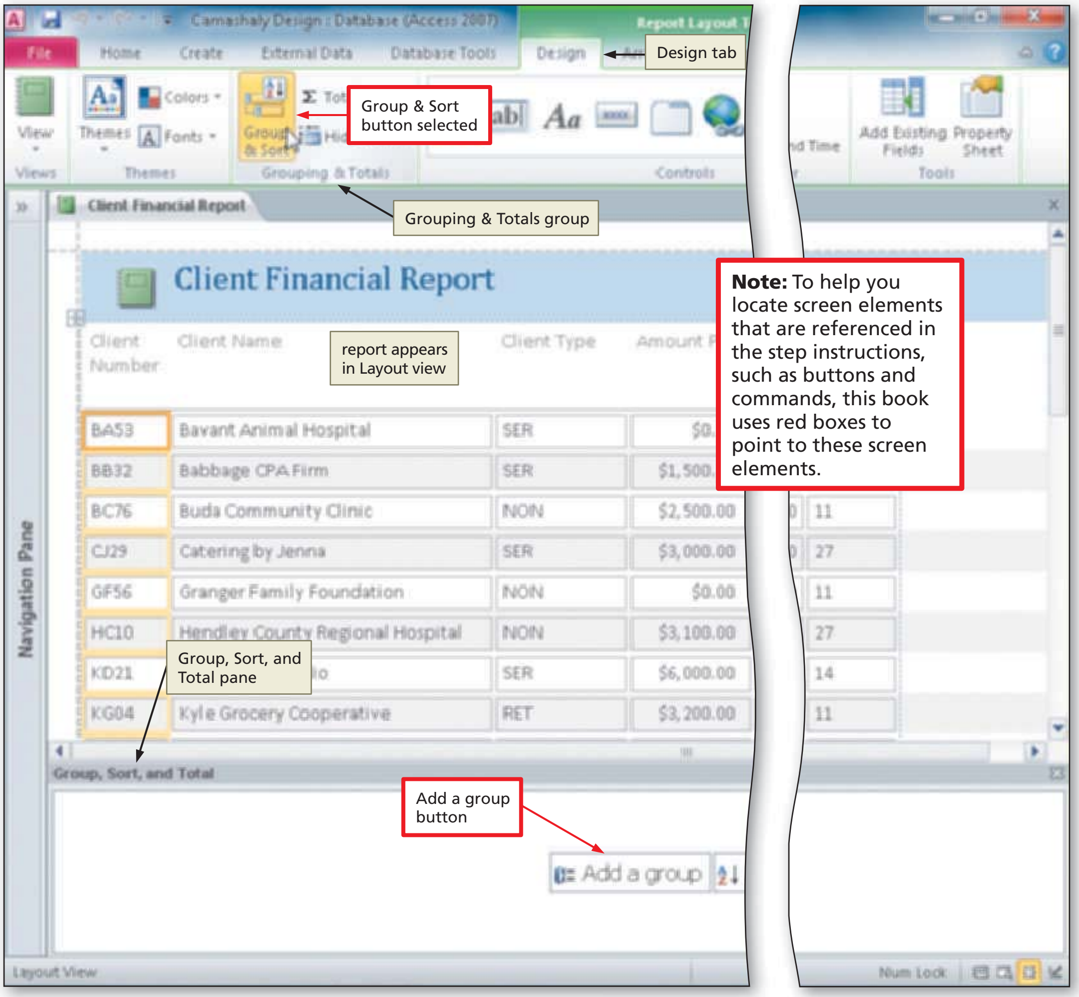
- **Determine sort order.** Is there a special order in which the records should appear?
- **Determine grouping.** Should the records be grouped in some fashion? If so, what should appear before the records in a group? If, for example, clients are grouped by city, the name of the city should probably appear before the group. What should appear after the group? For example, are there some fields for which subtotals should be calculated? If so, the subtotals would come after the group. Determine whether you need multiple levels of grouping.

To Group and Sort in a Report

Camashaly has determined that the records in the report should be grouped by client type. That is, all the clients of a given type should appear together immediately after the type. Within the clients in a given type, the clients are to be ordered by client number. In Layout view of the report, you can specify both grouping and sorting by using the Group & Sort button on the Design tab. The following steps open the Client Financial Report in Layout view and then specify both grouping and sorting in the report.

1

- Right-click the Client Financial Report in the Navigation Pane to produce a shortcut menu.
- Click Layout View on the shortcut menu to open the report in Layout view.
- Close the Navigation Pane.
- If a field list appears, close the field list by clicking the Add Existing Fields button (Report Layout Tools Design tab | Tools group).
- Click the Group & Sort button (Report Layout Tools Design tab | Grouping & Totals group) to display the Group, Sort, and Total pane (Figure 4–5).


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
Report Layout T
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Design tab
View
Views
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Themes
Group & Sort
Group & Sort button selected
Grouping & Totals
Controls
Add Existing Fields
Property Sheet
Tools
Client Financial Report
Grouping & Totals group
report appears in Layout view
Navigation Pane
Group, Sort, and Total pane
Group, Sort, and Total
Add a group button
Add a group
Layout View
Num Lock

Client Financial Report

Client Number	Client Name	Client Type	Amount P	
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	SER	$0.	
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	SER	$1,500.	
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	NON	$2,500.00	11
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	SER	$3,000.00	27
GF56	Granger Family Foundation	NON	$0.00	11
HC10	Hendley County Regional Hospital	NON	$3,100.00	27
KD21	o	SER	$6,000.00	14
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	RET	$3,200.00	11

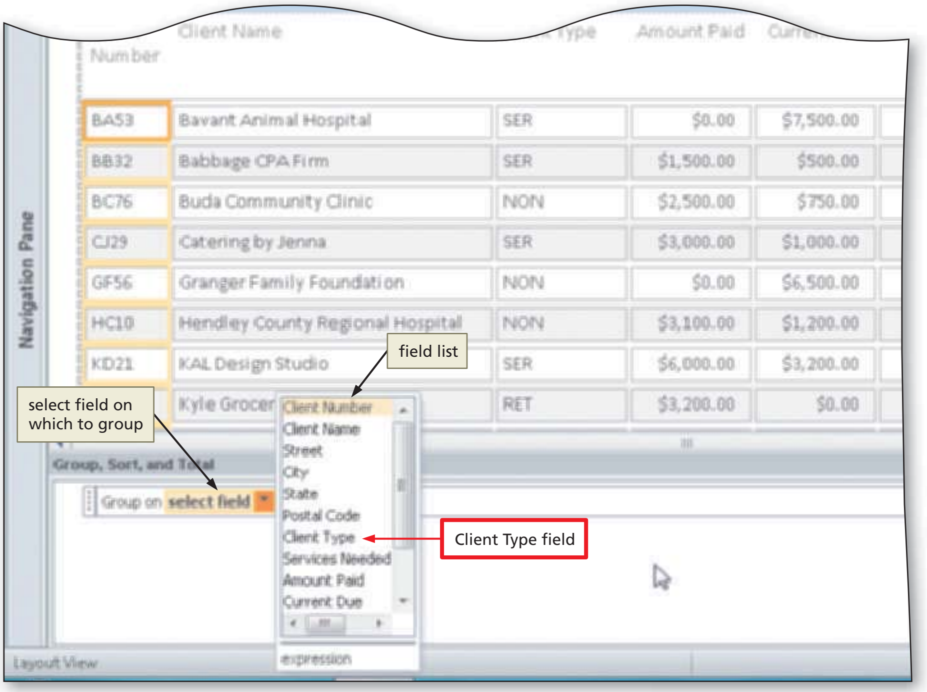
Note: To help you locate screen elements that are referenced in the step instructions, such as buttons and commands, this book uses red boxes to point to these screen elements.

Figure 4–5

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2

- Click the 'Add a group' button to add a group (Figure 4–6).



Number	Client Name	Type	Amount Paid	Curre
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	SER	$0.00	$7,500.00
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	SER	$1,500.00	$500.00
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	NON	$2,500.00	$750.00
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	SER	$3,000.00	$1,000.00
GF56	Granger Family Foundation	NON	$0.00	$6,500.00
HC10	Hendley County Regional Hospital	NON	$3,100.00	$1,200.00
KD21	KAL Design Studio	SER	$6,000.00	$3,200.00
	Kyle Grocer	RET	$3,200.00	$0.00

Navigation Pane
field list
select field on which to group
Group, Sort, and Total
Group on select field
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Client Type
Services Needed
Amount Paid
Current Due
expression
Client Type field
Layout View

Figure 4–6

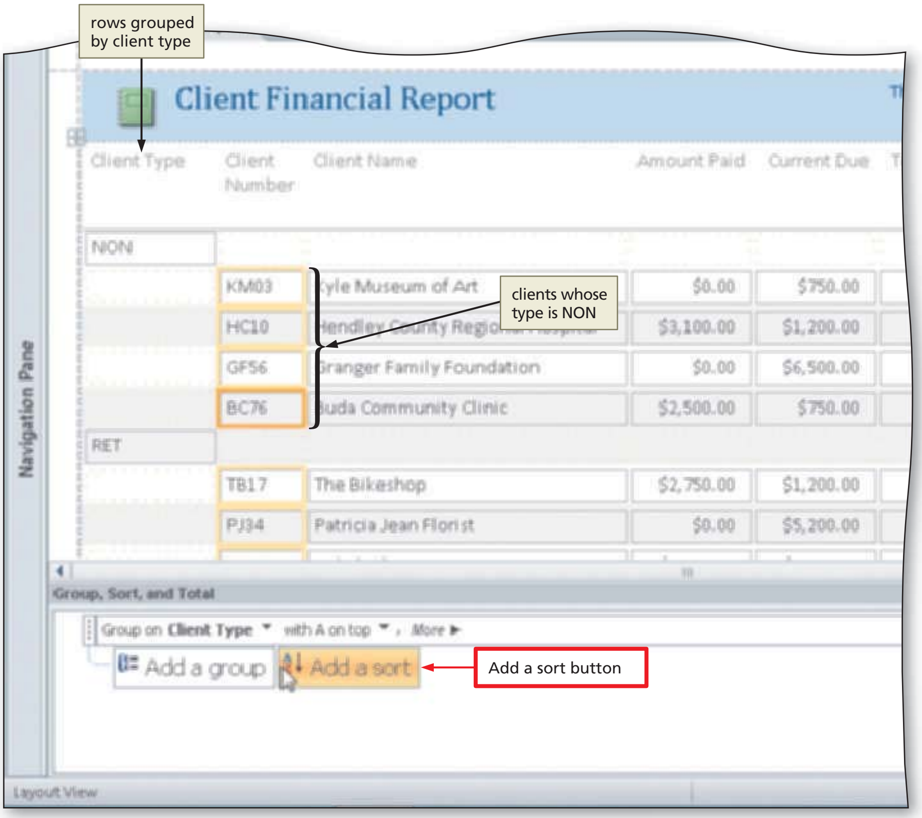
3

- Click the Client Type field in the field list to select a field for grouping and group the records on the selected field (Figure 4–7).

Q&A

Does the field on which I group have to be the first field?

No. If you select a field other than the first field, Access will move the field you select into the first position.



Client Financial Report

Client Type	Client Number	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due
NON				
	KM03	yle Museum of Art	$0.00	$750.00
	HC10	Hendley County Regio	$3,100.00	$1,200.00
	GF56	Granger Family Foundation	$0.00	$6,500.00
	BC76	uda Community Clinic	$2,500.00	$750.00
RET				
	TB17	The Bikeshop	$2,750.00	$1,200.00
	PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	$0.00	$5,200.00

rows grouped by client type
clients whose type is NON
Navigation Pane
Group, Sort, and Total
Group on Client Type with A on top More ▸
Add a group
Add a sort
Add a sort button
Layout View

Figure 4–7

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

4

- Click the 'Add a sort' button to add a sort (Figure 4–8).

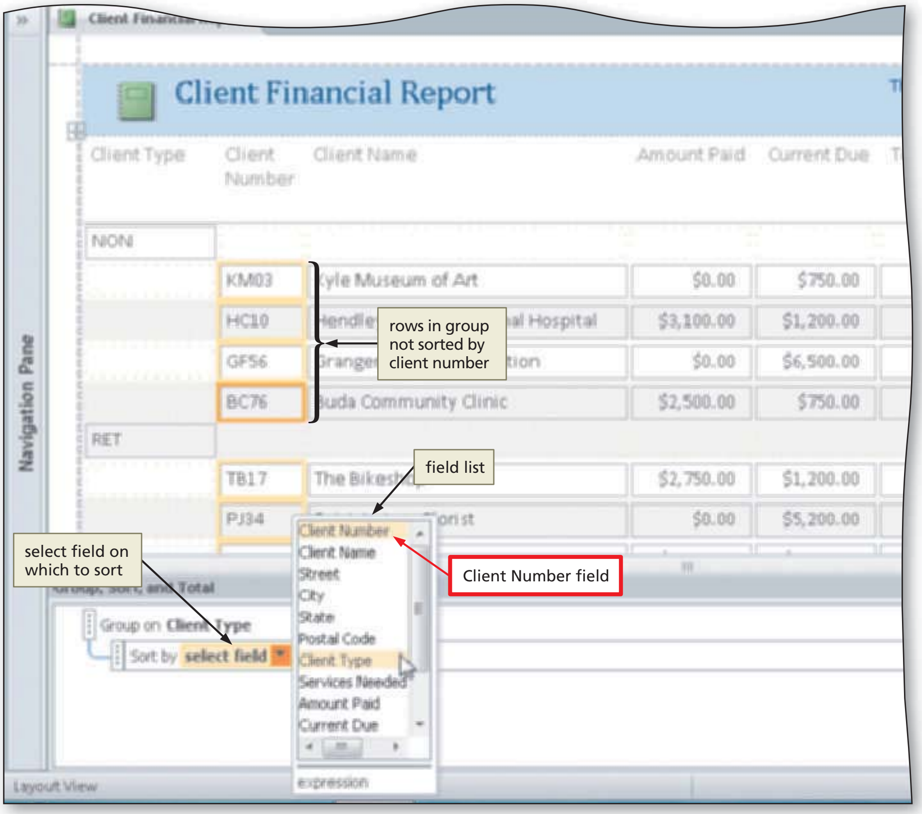

Client Financial Report
Client Type
Client Number
Client Name
Amount Paid
Current Due
rows in group not sorted by client number
field list
select field on which to sort
Client Number field
Group, Sort, and Total
Group on Client Type
Sort by select field
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Client Type
Services Needed
Amount Paid
Current Due
expression
Layout View
Navigation Pane

Figure 4–8

5

- Click the Client Number field in the field list to specify the field on which the records in each group will be sorted (Figure 4–9).

Q&A

I thought the report would be sorted by Client Type, because I chose to group on that field. What is the effect of choosing to sort by Client Number?

This sort takes place within groups. You are specifying that within the list of clients of the same type, the clients will be ordered by client number.

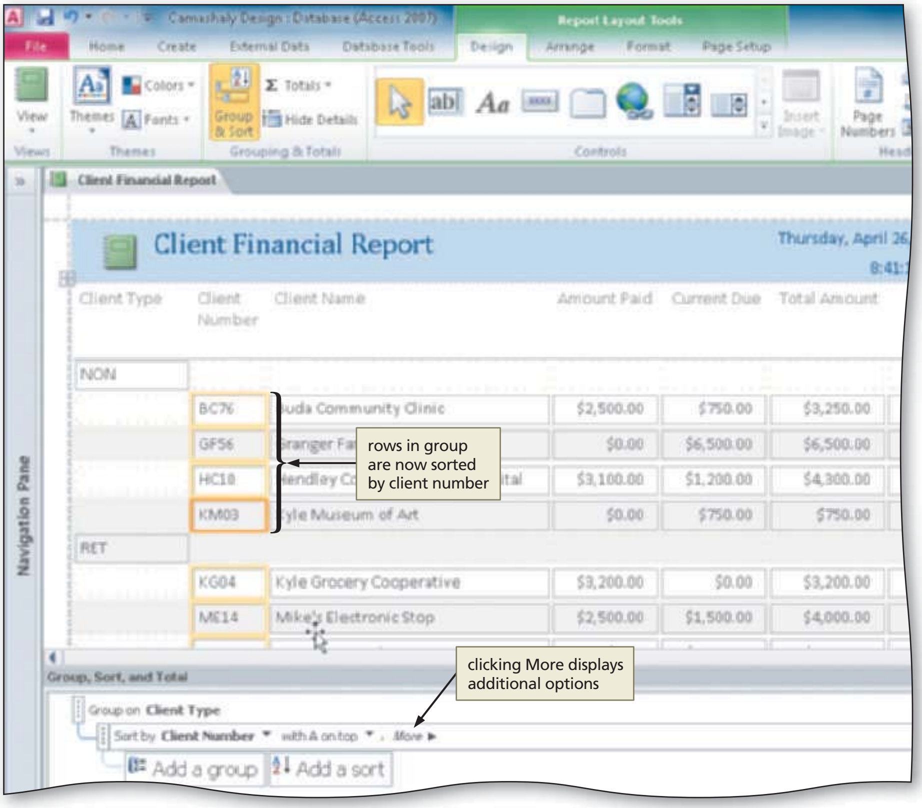

Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
Report Layout Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
Client Financial Report
Thursday, April 26
rows in group are now sorted by client number
clicking More displays additional options
Group, Sort, and Total
Group on Client Type
Sort by Client Number
with A on top
More ▶
Add a group
Add a sort
Navigation Pane

Figure 4–9

Other Ways

1. Right-click column header for field on which to group, click Group On (field name)

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

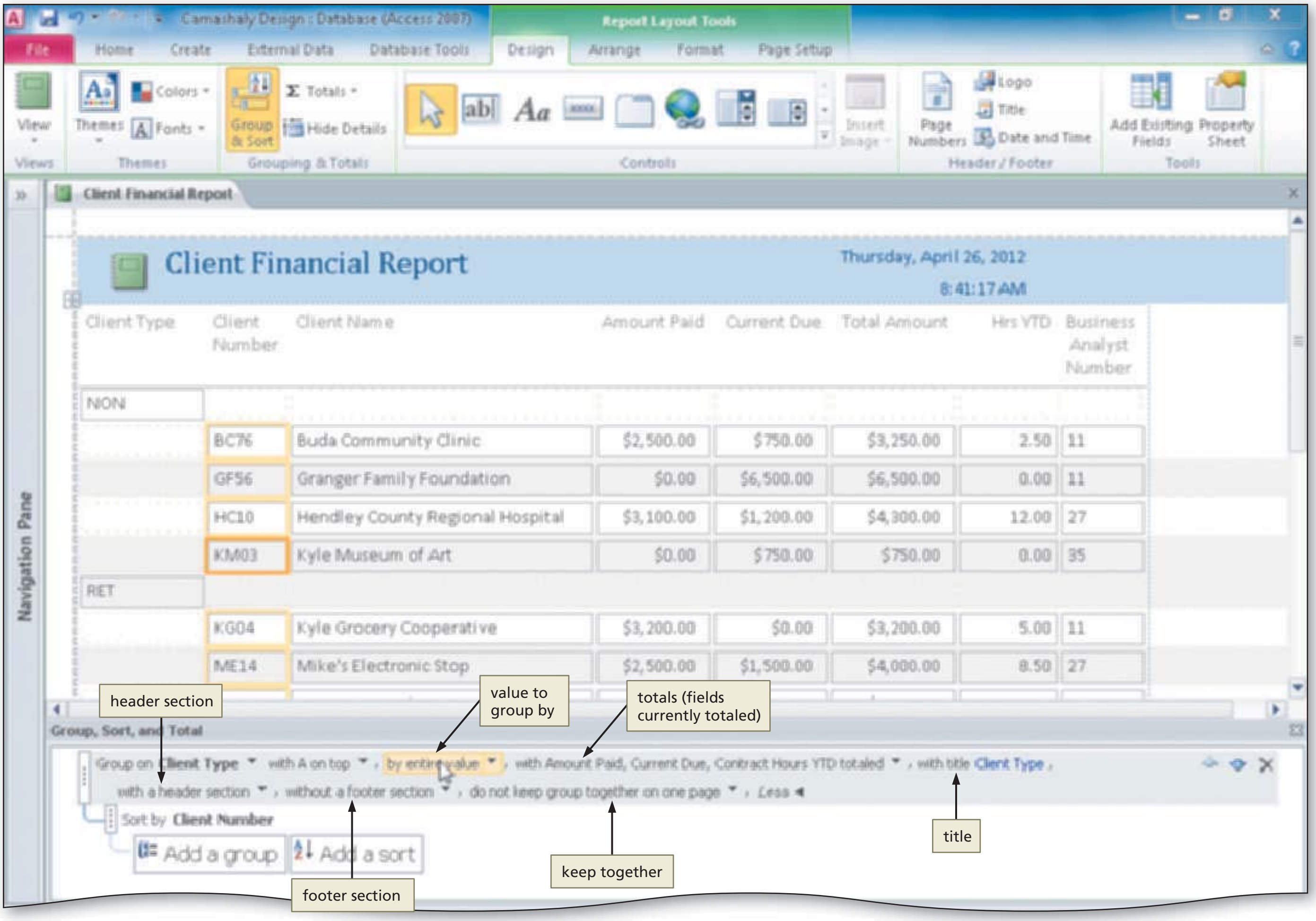
BTW

Grouping
You should allow sufficient white space between groups. If you feel the amount is insufficient, you can add more space by enlarging the group header or group footer.

Grouping and Sorting Options

For both grouping and sorting, you can click the More button to specify additional options (see Figure 4–10). The options you then could select are:

- Value. You can choose the amount of the value on which to group. Typically, you would group by the entire value, for example, the entire city name. You could choose, however, to only group on the first character, in which case all clients in cities that begin with the same letter would be considered a group. You also could group by the first two characters or by a custom number of characters.
- Totals. You can choose the values to be totaled. You can specify whether the totals are to appear in the group header or in the group footer and whether there is to be a grand total. You can also choose whether to show group totals as a percentage of the grand total.
- Title. You can customize the group title.
- Header section. You can include or omit a header section for the group.
- Footer section. You can include or omit a footer section for the group.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
Report Layout Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
View
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Group & Sort
Totals
Hide Details
Insert Image
Page Numbers
Logo
Title
Date and Time
Add Existing Fields
Property Sheet
Views
Themes
Grouping & Totals
Controls
Header / Footer
Tools
Client Financial Report
Navigation Pane
Add a group
Add a sort

Client Financial Report

Thursday, April 26, 2012
8:41:17 AM

Client Type	Client Number	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due	Total Amount	Hrs YTD	Business Analyst Number
NON							
	BC76	Buda Community Clinic	$2,500.00	$750.00	$3,250.00	2.50	11
	GF56	Granger Family Foundation	$0.00	$6,500.00	$6,500.00	0.00	11
	HC10	Hendley County Regional Hospital	$3,100.00	$1,200.00	$4,300.00	12.00	27
	KM03	Kyle Museum of Art	$0.00	$750.00	$750.00	0.00	35
RET							
	KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	$3,200.00	$0.00	$3,200.00	5.00	11
	ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	$2,500.00	$1,500.00	$4,000.00	8.50	27

Group, Sort, and Total

Group on Client Type with A on top, by entire value, with Amount Paid, Current Due, Contract Hours YTD totaled, with title Client Type, with a header section, without a footer section, do not keep group together on one page, Less ◄

Sort by Client Number

header section

value to group by

totals (fields currently totaled)

title

keep together

footer section

Figure 4–10

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

- Keep together. You can indicate whether Access is to attempt to keep portions of a group together on the same page. The default setting does not keep portions of a group together, but you can specify that Access should attempt to keep a whole group together on one page. If the group will not fit on the remainder of the page, Access will move the group header and the records in a group to the next page. Finally, you can choose to have Access keep the header and the first record together on one page. If the header would fit at the bottom of a page, but there would not be room for the first record, Access will move the header to the next page.

Understanding Report Controls

The various objects on a report are called **controls**. The report title, column headers, contents of various fields, subtotals, and so on are all contained in controls. When working in Layout view, as you will do in this chapter, Access handles details concerning these controls for you automatically. When working in Design view, you will see and manipulate the controls. Even when working in Layout view, however, it is useful to understand the concepts of controls.

The report has a control containing the title, Client Financial Report. Also included is a control containing each column header (Client Type, Client Number, Client Name, Amount Paid, Current Due, Total Amount, Hrs YTD, and Business Analyst Number). A control in the Group Header section displays the client type. There are four controls in the Group Footer section: One control displays the subtotal of Amount Paid, a second displays the subtotal of Current Due, a third displays the subtotal of Total Amount, and the fourth displays the subtotal of Hrs YTD. The Detail section has controls containing the client number, client name, amount paid, current due, total amount, hrs YTD, and business analyst number.

There are three types of controls: bound controls, unbound controls, and calculated controls. **Bound controls** are used to display data that comes from the database, such as the client number and name. **Unbound controls** are not associated with data from the database and are used to display such things as the report's title. Finally, **calculated controls** are used to display data that is calculated from other data, such as a total.

To Add Totals and Subtotals

Along with determining to group data in this report, Camashaly also determines that subtotals of the Amount Paid, Current Due, Total Amount, and Hrs YTD fields should be included. To add totals or other statistics, use the Totals button on the Design tab. You then select from a menu of aggregate functions, which are functions that perform some mathematical function against a group of records. The available aggregate functions, or calculations, are Sum (total), Average, Count Records, Count Values, Max (largest value), Min (smallest value), Standard Deviation, and Variance. The following steps add totals of the Amount Paid, Current Due, Total Amount, and Hrs YTD fields. Because the report is grouped, each group will have a subtotal, that is, a total for just the records in the group. At the end of the report, there will be a grand total, that is, a total for all records.

The following steps specify totals for the desired fields. Even though you previously specified totals for the Amount Paid, Current Due, and Hrs YTD fields, you need to do so again because of the grouping.

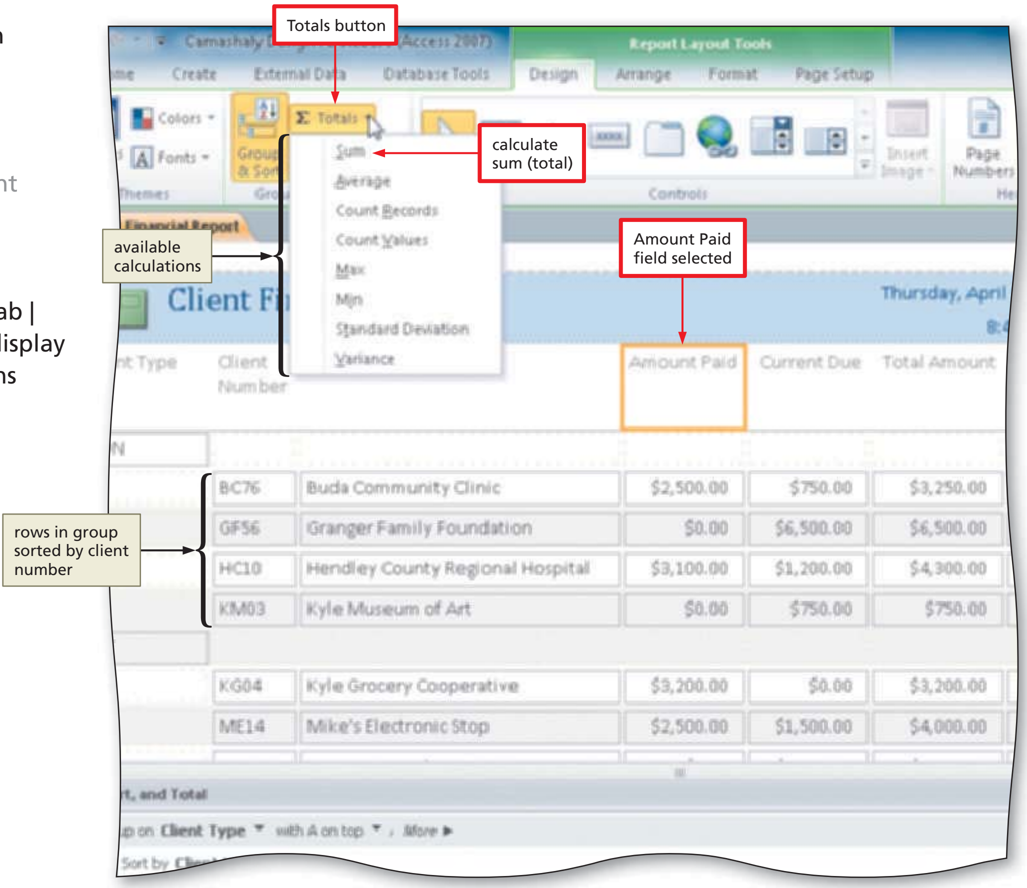
1

- Click the Amount Paid column header to select the field.

Q&A Does it have to be the column header?

No, you could click the Amount Paid field on any record.

- Click the Totals button (Report Layout Tools Design tab | Grouping & Totals group) to display the list of available calculations (Figure 4–11).


Report Layout Tools
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
Colors
Fonts
Themes
Group & Sort
Σ Totals
Sum
Average
Count Records
Count Values
Max
Min
Standard Deviation
Variance
Controls
Insert Image
Page Numbers
Client Fi
Thursday, April
Client Type
Client Number
Amount Paid
Current Due
Total Amount
Group, Sort, and Total
Group on Client Type with A on top More
Sort by Client

Totals button

calculate sum (total)

available calculations

Amount Paid field selected

rows in group sorted by client number

Client Number		Amount Paid	Current Due	Total Amount
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	$2,500.00	$750.00	$3,250.00
GF56	Granger Family Foundation	$0.00	$6,500.00	$6,500.00
HC10	Hendley County Regional Hospital	$3,100.00	$1,200.00	$4,300.00
KM03	Kyle Museum of Art	$0.00	$750.00	$750.00
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	$3,200.00	$0.00	$3,200.00
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	$2,500.00	$1,500.00	$4,000.00

Figure 4–11

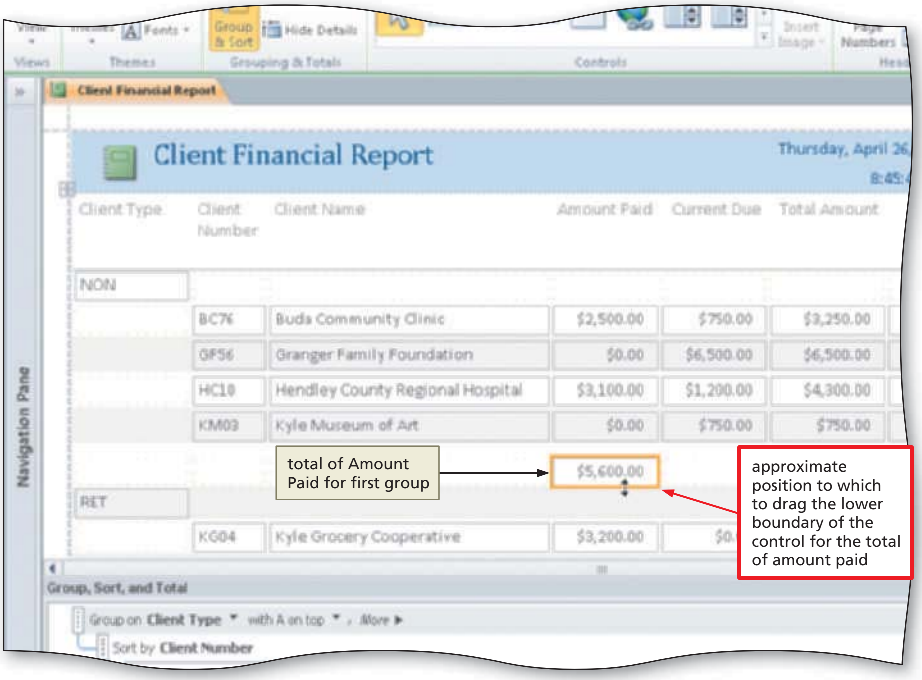
2

- Click Sum to calculate the sum of amount paid values.

Q&A Is Sum the same as Total?

Yes.

- If the total does not appear completely, drag the bottom of the control for the subtotal to the approximate position shown in Figure 4–12.


Fonts
Group & Sort
Hide Details
Views
Themes
Grouping & Totals
Controls
Insert Image
Page Numbers
Client Financial Report
Navigation Pane
Client Financial Report
Thursday, April 26
8:45
Group, Sort, and Total
Group on Client Type with A on top More
Sort by Client Number

Client Type	Client Number	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due	Total Amount
NON					
	BC76	Buda Community Clinic	$2,500.00	$750.00	$3,250.00
	GF56	Granger Family Foundation	$0.00	$6,500.00	$6,500.00
	HC10	Hendley County Regional Hospital	$3,100.00	$1,200.00	$4,300.00
	KM03	Kyle Museum of Art	$0.00	$750.00	$750.00
			$5,600.00		
RET					
	KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	$3,200.00	$0.	

total of Amount Paid for first group

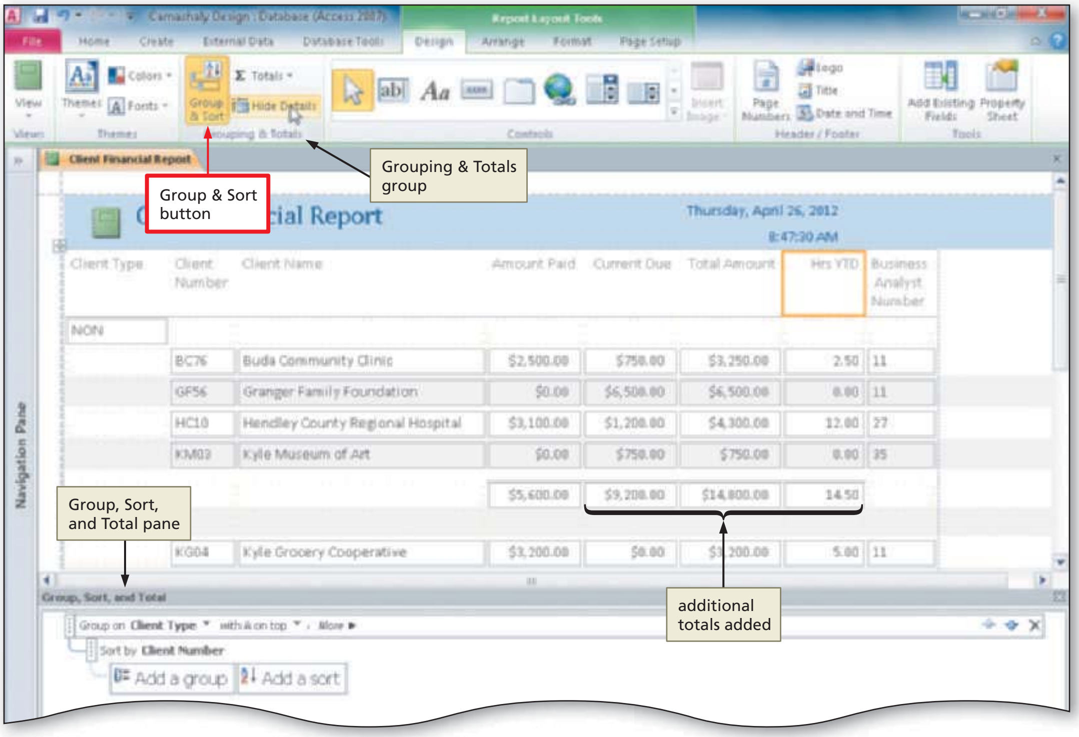
approximate position to which to drag the lower boundary of the control for the total of amount paid

Figure 4–12

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3

- Using the same technique as in Steps 1 and 2, add totals for the Current Due, Total Amount, and Hrs YTD fields (Figure 4–13).



Thursday, April 26, 2012
8:47:30 AM

Client Type	Client Number	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due	Total Amount	Hrs YTD	Business Analyst Number
NON							
	BC76	Buda Community Clinic	$2,500.00	$750.00	$3,250.00	2.50	11
	GF56	Granger Family Foundation	$0.00	$6,500.00	$6,500.00	0.00	11
	HC10	Hendley County Regional Hospital	$3,100.00	$1,200.00	$4,300.00	12.00	27
	KM03	Kyle Museum of Art	$0.00	$750.00	$750.00	0.00	35
			$5,600.00	$9,200.00	$14,800.00	14.50	
	KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	$3,200.00	$0.00	$3,200.00	5.00	11

Figure 4–13

Other Ways

1. Right-click column header for field, click Total (field name)

To Remove the Group, Sort, and Total Pane

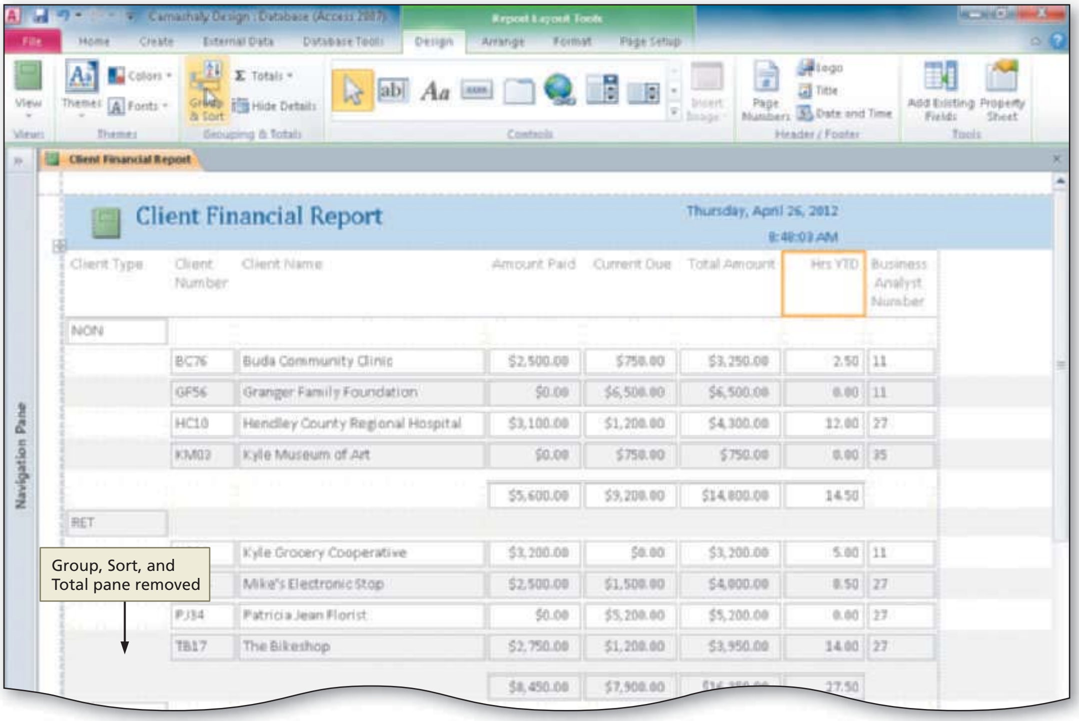
You have specified the grouping and sorting that you need for the report, so you no longer need the Group, Sort, and Total pane. The following step removes the Group, Sort, and Total pane from the screen.

1

- Click the Group & Sort button (Report Layout Tools Design tab | Grouping & Totals group) to remove the Group, Sort, and Total pane (Figure 4–14).

Q&A Do I need to remove the Group, Sort, and Total pane?

Technically not. It gives more room on the screen for the report, however. You can easily display the pane whenever you need it by clicking the Group & Sort button again.



Client Financial Report

Thursday, April 26, 2012
8:48:03 AM

Client Type	Client Number	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due	Total Amount	Hrs YTD	Business Analyst Number
NON							
	BC76	Buda Community Clinic	$2,500.00	$750.00	$3,250.00	2.50	11
	GF56	Granger Family Foundation	$0.00	$6,500.00	$6,500.00	0.00	11
	HC10	Hendley County Regional Hospital	$3,100.00	$1,200.00	$4,300.00	12.00	27
	KM03	Kyle Museum of Art	$0.00	$750.00	$750.00	0.00	35
			$5,600.00	$9,200.00	$14,800.00	14.50	
RET							
		Kyle Grocery Cooperative	$3,200.00	$0.00	$3,200.00	5.00	11
		Mike's Electronic Stop	$2,500.00	$1,500.00	$4,000.00	8.50	27
	PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	$0.00	$5,200.00	$5,200.00	0.00	27
	TB17	The Bikeshop	$2,750.00	$1,200.00	$3,950.00	14.00	27
			$8,450.00	$7,900.00	[illegible]	27.50	

Figure 4–14

Other Ways

1. Click the Close Grouping Dialog Box button.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Plan Ahead

Determine the format of the report or form.

Determine details concerning the appearance of the report.

- **Determine the font or colors for the various sections of the reports.** Which combination of colors and fonts convey the best look for your report or form?
- **Determine whether conditional formatting is appropriate.** Are there any fields in which you would like to emphasize certain values by giving them a different appearance?

To Conditionally Format Controls

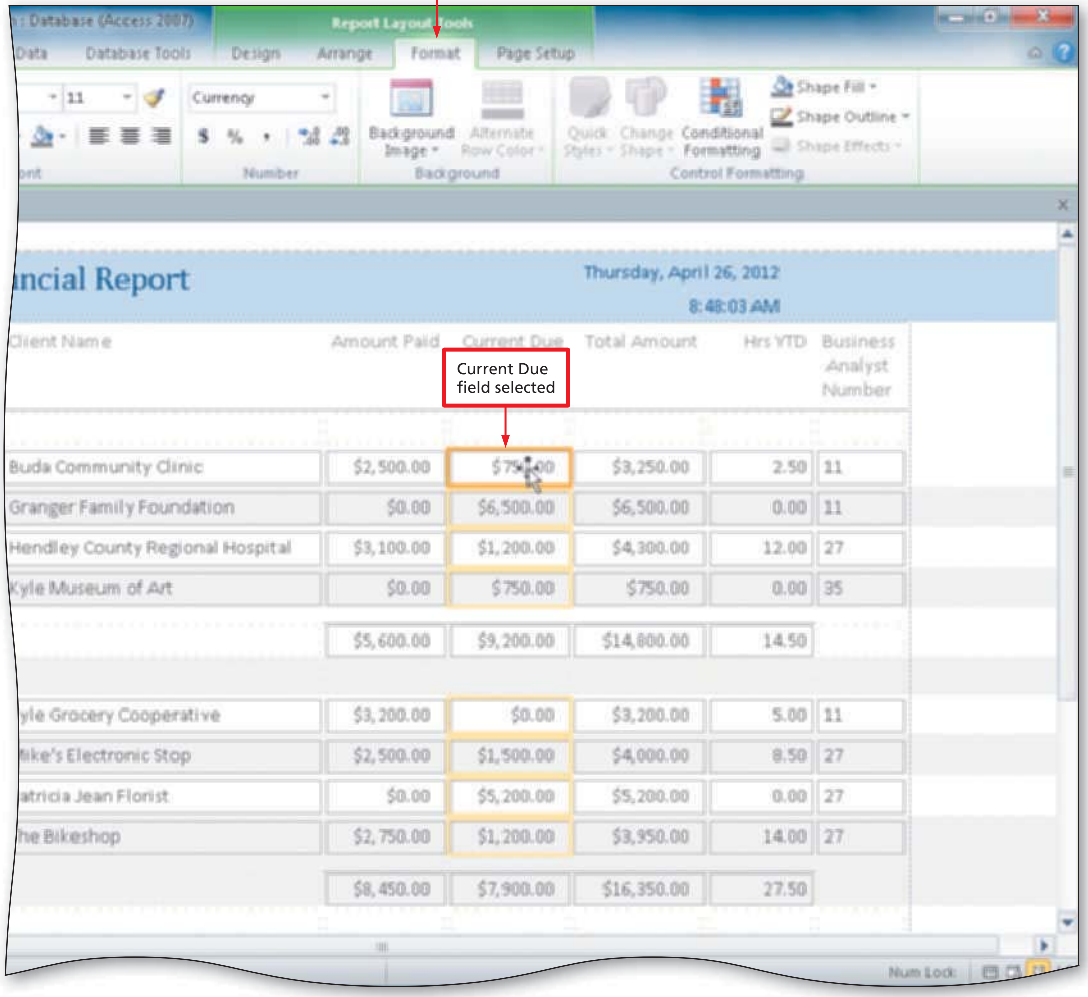
You can emphasize values in a column that satisfy some criterion by formatting them differently from other values. This emphasis is called **conditional formatting**. Camashaly management would like to emphasize values in the Current Due field that are greater than or equal to $1,000 by making them red. The following steps conditionally format the Current Due field by specifying a **rule** that states that if the values in the field are greater than or equal to $1,000, such values will be formatted in red.

1

- Click Format on the Ribbon to display the Format tab.
- Click the Current Due field on the first record to select the field (Figure 4–15).

Q&A Does it have to be the first record?

No. You could click the field on any record.


Format tab
: Database (Access 2007)
Report Layout Tools
Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
11
Currency
$
%
Background Image
Alternate Row Color
Quick Styles
Change Shape
Conditional Formatting
Shape Fill
Shape Outline
Shape Effects
ont
Number
Background
Control Formatting
Current Due field selected
Num Lock

ncial Report

Thursday, April 26, 2012

8:48:03 AM

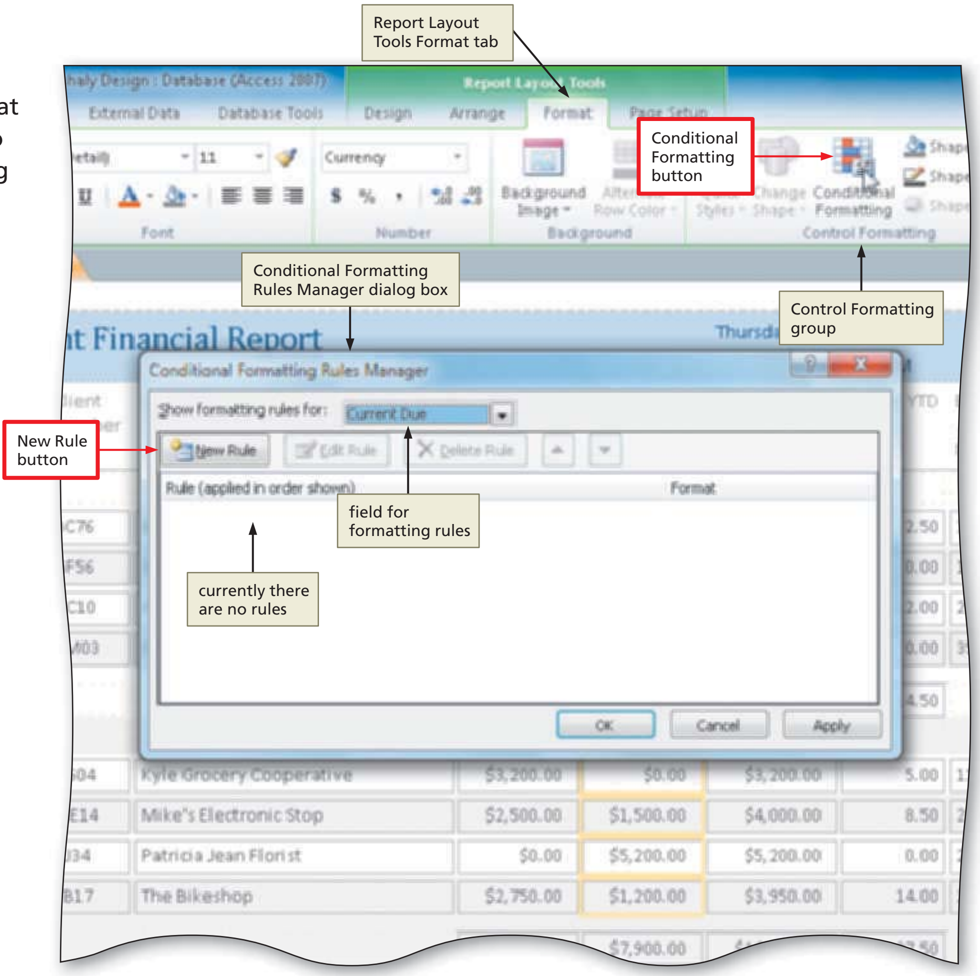
Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due	Total Amount	Hrs YTD	Business Analyst Number
Buda Community Clinic	$2,500.00	$750.00	$3,250.00	2.50	11
Granger Family Foundation	$0.00	$6,500.00	$6,500.00	0.00	11
Hendley County Regional Hospital	$3,100.00	$1,200.00	$4,300.00	12.00	27
Kyle Museum of Art	$0.00	$750.00	$750.00	0.00	35
	$5,600.00	$9,200.00	$14,800.00	14.50	
yle Grocery Cooperative	$3,200.00	$0.00	$3,200.00	5.00	11
ike's Electronic Stop	$2,500.00	$1,500.00	$4,000.00	8.50	27
atricia Jean Florist	$0.00	$5,200.00	$5,200.00	0.00	27
he Bikeshop	$2,750.00	$1,200.00	$3,950.00	14.00	27
	$8,450.00	$7,900.00	$16,350.00	27.50	

Figure 4–15

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2

- Click the Conditional Formatting button (Report Layout Tools Format tab | Control Formatting group) to display the Conditional Formatting Rules Manager dialog box (Figure 4–16).



Show formatting rules for: Current Due

Rule (applied in order shown)

Report Layout Tools Format tab
Conditional Formatting button
Conditional Formatting Rules Manager dialog box
Control Formatting group
New Rule button
field for formatting rules
currently there are no rules
Conditional Formatting Rules Manager
New Rule
Edit Rule
Delete Rule
Format
OK
Cancel
Apply

Figure 4–16

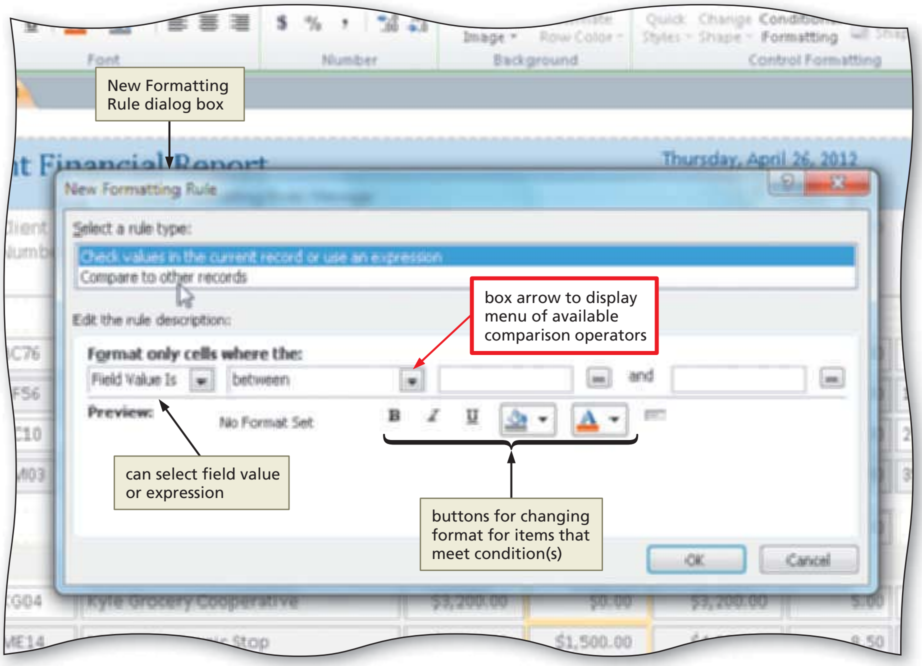
3

- Click the New Rule button (Conditional Formatting Rules Manager dialog box) to display the New Formatting Rule dialog box (Figure 4–17).

Q&A

I see that there are two boxes to enter numbers. I only have one number to enter, 1000. Am I on the right screen?

Yes. You will next change the comparison operator from between to 'greater than or equal to.' Once you have done so, Access will only display one box for entering a number.



Select a rule type:
Check values in the current record or use an expression
Compare to other records

Edit the rule description:

Format only cells where the: Field Value Is between and

Preview: No Format Set

New Formatting Rule dialog box
New Formatting Rule
box arrow to display menu of available comparison operators
can select field value or expression
buttons for changing format for items that meet condition(s)
OK
Cancel

Figure 4–17

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

4

- Click the box arrow (New Formatting Rule dialog box) to display the list of available comparison operators (Figure 4–18).

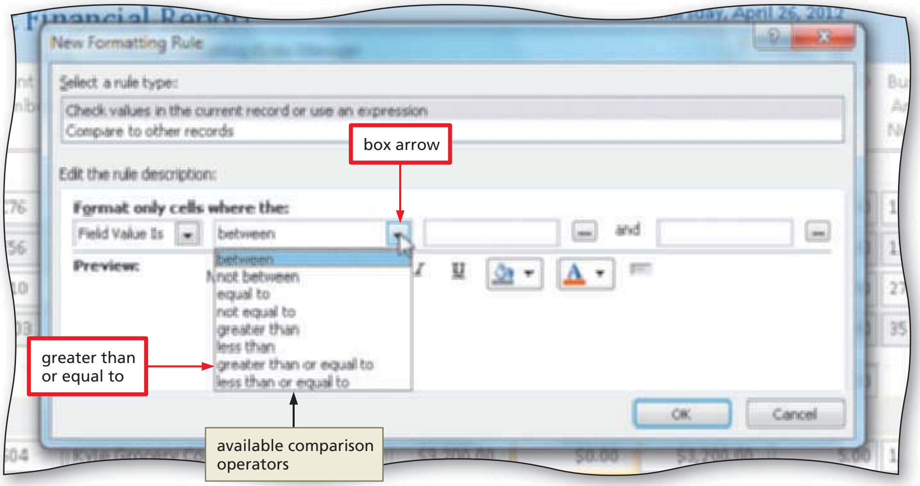

New Formatting Rule
Select a rule type:
Check values in the current record or use an expression
Compare to other records
Edit the rule description:
Format only cells where the:
Field Value Is
between
between
not between
equal to
not equal to
greater than
less than
greater than or equal to
less than or equal to
and
Preview:
OK
Cancel
box arrow
greater than or equal to
available comparison operators

Figure 4–18

5

- Click 'greater than or equal to' to select the comparison operator.
- Click the box for the comparison value and then type **1000** as the comparison value.

Q&A What is the effect of selecting this comparison operator and entering this number?

Values in the field that are greater than or equal to 1000 satisfy this rule. Any formatting that you now specify will apply to those values and no others.

- Click the Font Color button arrow (New Formatting Rule dialog box) to display a color palette (Figure 4–19).

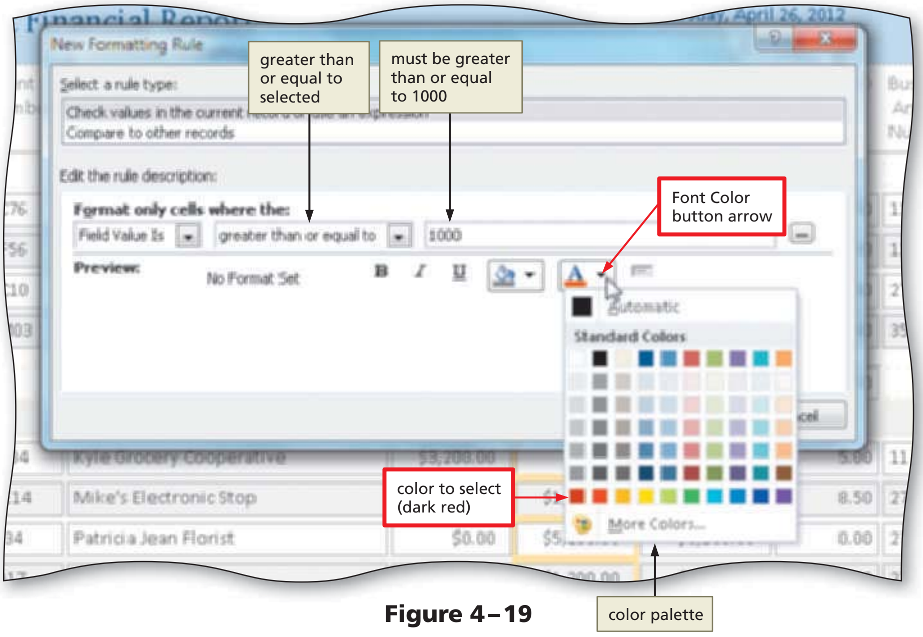

New Formatting Rule
Select a rule type:
Check values in the current record or use an expression
Compare to other records
Edit the rule description:
Format only cells where the:
Field Value Is
greater than or equal to
1000
Preview:
No Format Set
Automatic
Standard Colors
More Colors...
greater than or equal to selected
must be greater than or equal to 1000
Font Color button arrow
color to select (dark red)
color palette

Figure 4–19

6

- Click the dark red color in the lower-left corner of the color palette to select the color (Figure 4–20).

Q&A What other changes could I specify for those values that satisfy the rule?

You could specify that the value is bold, italic, and/or underlined. You could also specify a background color.

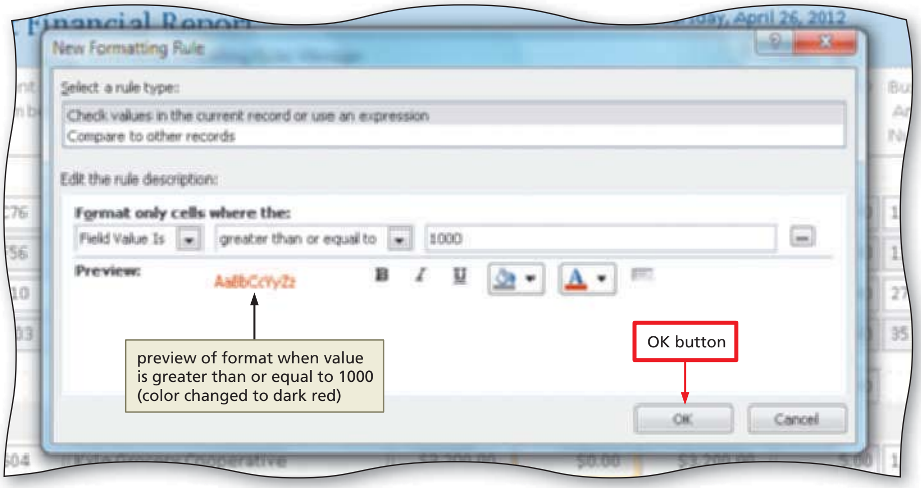

New Formatting Rule
Select a rule type:
Check values in the current record or use an expression
Compare to other records
Edit the rule description:
Format only cells where the:
Field Value Is
greater than or equal to
1000
Preview:
AaBbCcYyZz
OK
Cancel
preview of format when value is greater than or equal to 1000 (color changed to dark red)
OK button

Figure 4–20

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

7

- Click the OK button (New Formatting Rule dialog box) to enter the rule (Figure 4–21).

Q&A What if I have more than one rule?

The rules are applied in order. If a value satisfies the first rule, the specified formatting will apply, and no further rules will be tested. If not, the value will be tested against the second rule. If it satisfies the rule, the formatting for the second rule would apply. If not, the value would be tested against the third rule, and so on.

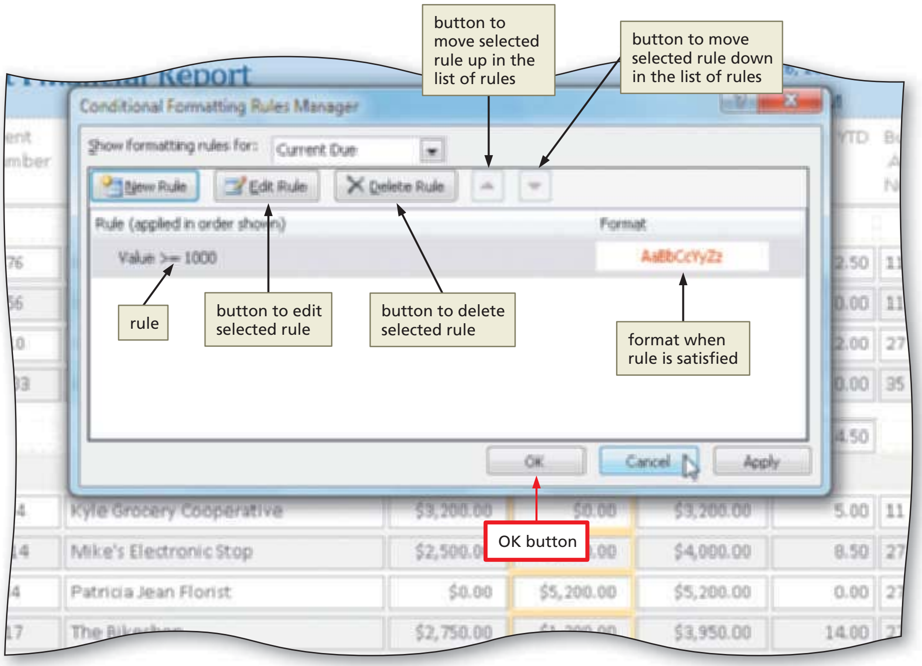

Conditional Formatting Rules Manager
Show formatting rules for: Current Due
New Rule
Edit Rule
Delete Rule
Rule (applied in order shown)
Format
Value >= 1000
AaBbCcYyZz
OK
Cancel
Apply
button to move selected rule up in the list of rules
button to move selected rule down in the list of rules
rule
button to edit selected rule
button to delete selected rule
format when rule is satisfied
OK button

Figure 4–21

Q&A Can I change this conditional formatting later?

Yes. Select the field for which you had applied conditional formatting on any record, click the Conditional Formatting button (Report Layout Tools Format tab | Control Formatting group), click the rule you want to change, click the Edit Rule button, and then make the necessary changes. You also can delete the selected rule by clicking the Delete Rule button or move the selected rule by clicking the up or down arrows.

8

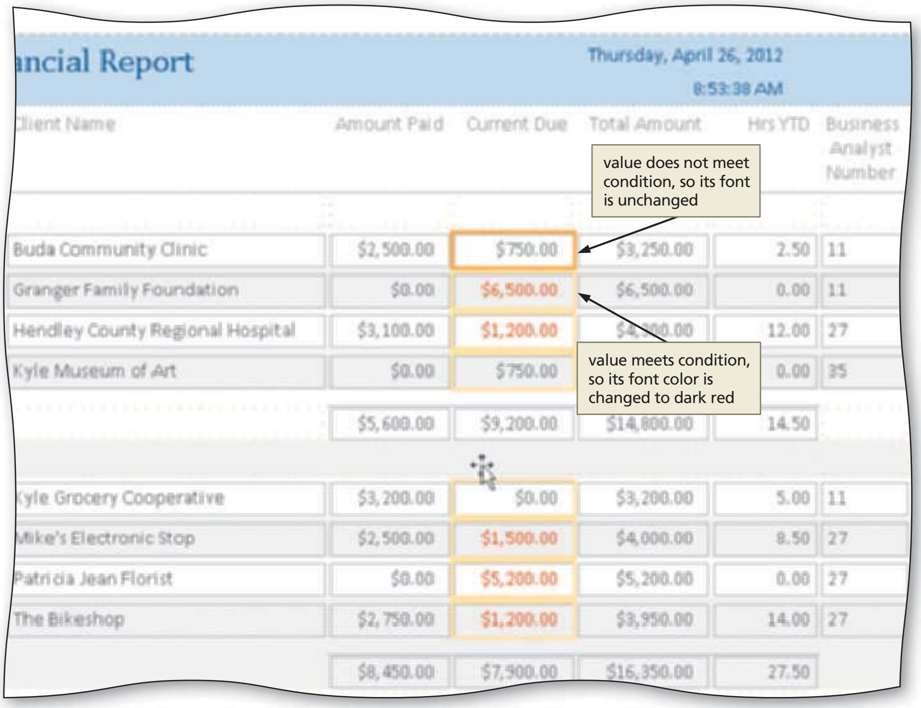
- Click the OK button (Conditional Formatting Rules Manager dialog box) to complete the entry of the conditional formatting rules and apply the rule (Figure 4–22).

9

- Save your changes by clicking the Save button on the Quick Access Toolbar.

Experiment

- After saving your changes, experiment with different rules. Add a second rule that changes the format for any current due amount that is greater than or equal to $500 to a different color to see the effect of multiple rules. Change the order of rules to see the effect of a different order. When you have finished, delete any additional rules you have added so that the report contains only the one rule that you created earlier.


ancial Report
Thursday, April 26, 2012
8:53:38 AM
value does not meet condition, so its font is unchanged
value meets condition, so its font color is changed to dark red

lient Name	Amount Paid	Current Due	Total Amount	Hrs YTD	Business Analyst Number
Buda Community Clinic	$2,500.00	$750.00	$3,250.00	2.50	11
Granger Family Foundation	$0.00	$6,500.00	$6,500.00	0.00	11
Hendley County Regional Hospital	$3,100.00	$1,200.00	[illegible]	12.00	27
Kyle Museum of Art	$0.00	$750.00	[illegible]	0.00	35
	$5,600.00	$9,200.00	$14,800.00	14.50	
yle Grocery Cooperative	$3,200.00	$0.00	$3,200.00	5.00	11
Mike's Electronic Stop	$2,500.00	$1,500.00	$4,000.00	8.50	27
Patricia Jean Florist	$0.00	$5,200.00	$5,200.00	0.00	27
The Bikeshop	$2,750.00	$1,200.00	$3,950.00	14.00	27
	$8,450.00	$7,900.00	$16,350.00	27.50	

Figure 4–22

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Filter Records in a Report

You can filter records in a report. You can use the filter buttons in the Sort & Filter group on the Home tab in exactly the same way you did on a datasheet on page AC 148. If the filter involves only one field, however, right-clicking the field provides a simple way to filter. The following steps filter the records in the report to include only those records on which the amount paid is not $0.00.

1

- Right-click the Amount Paid field on the second record to display the shortcut menu (Figure 4–23).

Q&A

Did I have to pick the second record?

No. You could pick any record on which the Amount Paid is $0.00.

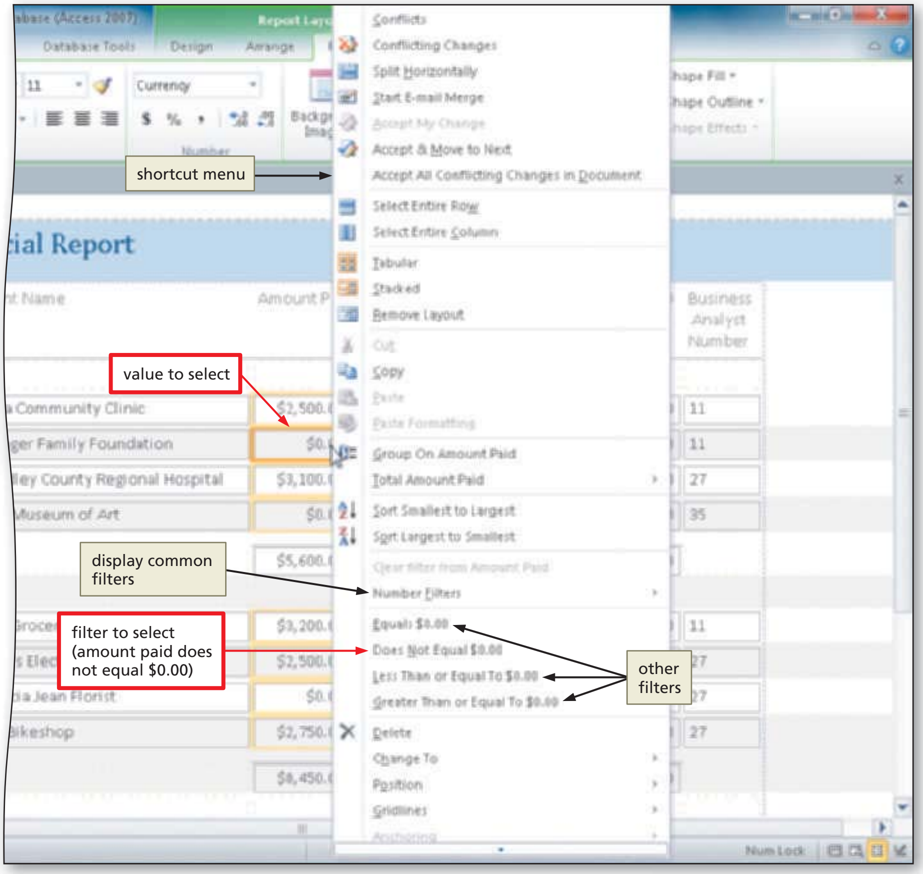

shortcut menu
value to select
display common filters
filter to select (amount paid does not equal $0.00)
other filters
Conflicts
Conflicting Changes
Split Horizontally
Start E-mail Merge
Accept My Change
Accept & Move to Next
Accept All Conflicting Changes in Document
Select Entire Row
Select Entire Column
Tabular
Stacked
Remove Layout
Cut
Copy
Paste
Paste Formatting
Group On Amount Paid
Total Amount Paid
Sort Smallest to Largest
Sort Largest to Smallest
Clear filter from Amount Paid
Number Filters
Equals $0.00
Does Not Equal $0.00
Less Than or Equal To $0.00
Greater Than or Equal To $0.00
Delete
Change To
Position
Gridlines
Anchoring

Figure 4–23

2

- Click 'Does Not Equal $0.00' on the shortcut menu to restrict the records to those on which the Amount Paid is not $0.00 (Figure 4–24).

Q&A

When would you use Number Filters?

You would use Number Filters if you need filters that are not on the main shortcut menu or if you need the ability to enter specific values other than the ones shown on the shortcut menu. If those filters are insufficient for your needs, you can use Advanced Filter/Sort, which is accessible through the Advanced button (Home tab | Sort & Filter group).

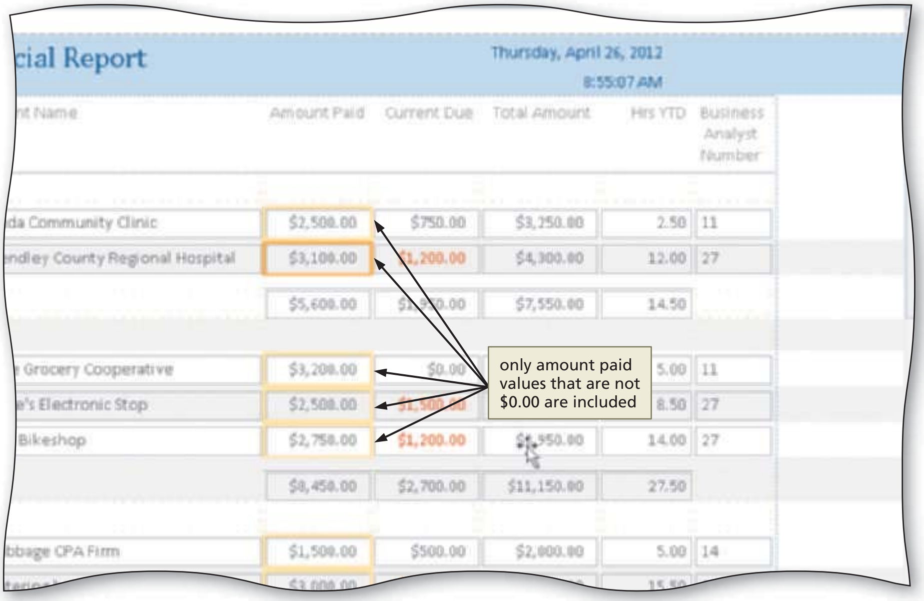

cial Report
Thursday, April 26, 2012
8:55:07 AM
nt Name
Amount Paid
Current Due
Total Amount
Hrs YTD
Business Analyst Number
only amount paid values that are not $0.00 are included

Figure 4–24

Other Ways

1. Click Selection button (Home tab | Sort & Filter group)

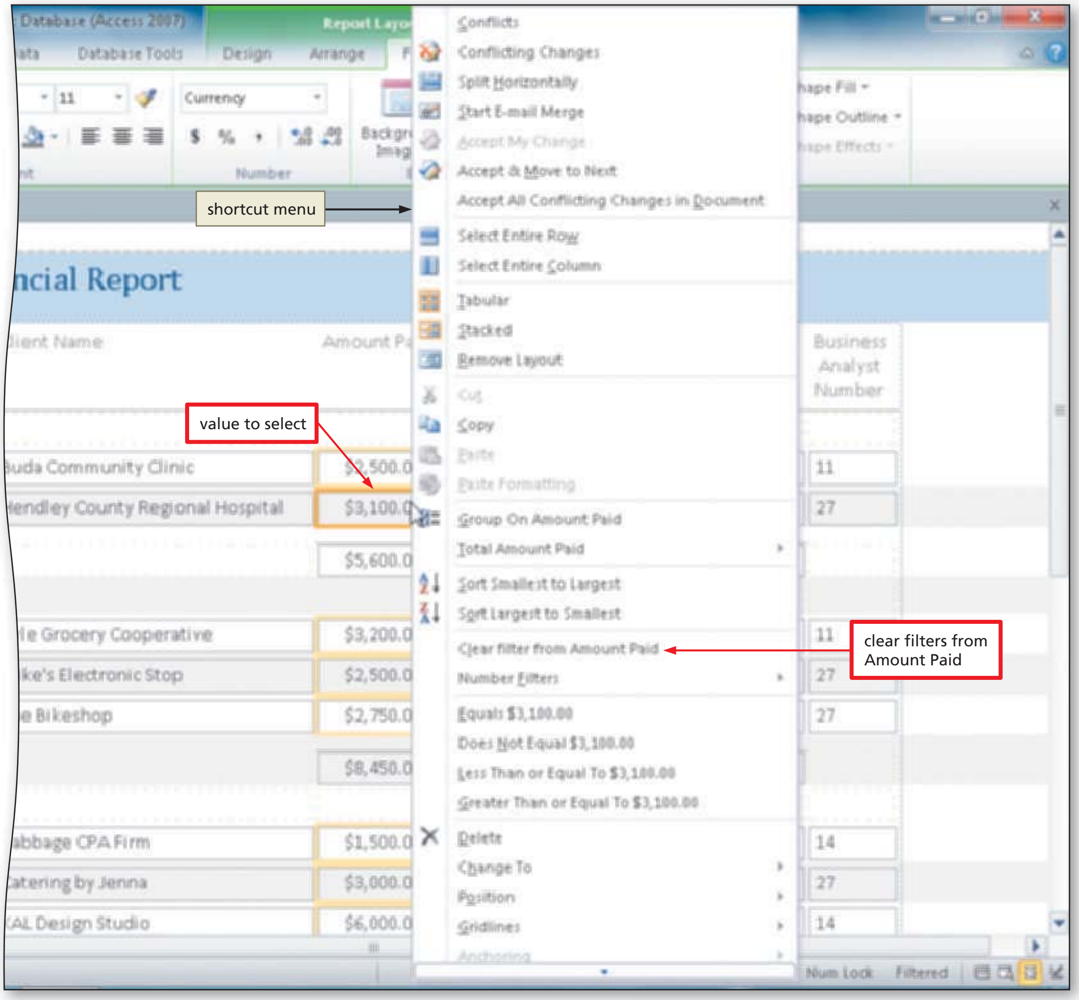
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Clear a Report Filter

When you no longer want the records to be filtered, you clear the filter. The following steps clear the filter on the Amount Paid field.

1

- Right-click the Amount Paid field on the second record to display the shortcut menu (Figure 4–25).


Database (Access 2007)
Report Layout
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Currency
Number
Background Image
ncial Report
Client Name
Amount Paid
Business Analyst Number
Conflicts
Conflicting Changes
Split Horizontally
Start E-mail Merge
Accept My Change
Accept & Move to Next
Accept All Conflicting Changes in Document
Select Entire Row
Select Entire Column
Tabular
Stacked
Remove Layout
Cut
Copy
Paste
Paste Formatting
Group On Amount Paid
Total Amount Paid
Sort Smallest to Largest
Sort Largest to Smallest
Clear filter from Amount Paid
Number Filters
Equals $3,100.00
Does Not Equal $3,100.00
Less Than or Equal To $3,100.00
Greater Than or Equal To $3,100.00
Delete
Change To
Position
Gridlines
Anchoring
Num Lock
Filtered

shortcut menu

value to select

clear filters from Amount Paid

Figure 4–25

Q&A

Did I have to pick the second record?

No. You could pick the Amount Paid field on any record.

2

- Click 'Clear filter from Amount Paid' on the shortcut menu to clear the filter and redisplay all records.

Experiment

- Try other filters on the shortcut menu for the Amount Paid to see their effect. When done with each, clear the filter.

Other Ways

1. Click Advanced button (Home tab | Sort & Filter group), click Clear All Filters on Advanced menu

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

BTW

Conditional Formatting
Conditional formatting is available for forms as well as reports.

To Save and Close a Report

Now that you have completed your work on your report, you should save the report and close it. The following steps first save your work on the report and then close the report.

1. Click the Save button on the Quick Access Toolbar to save your work.
2. Close the Client Financial Report.

The Arrange and Page Setup Tabs

When working on a report in Layout view, you can make additional layout changes by using the Report Layout Tools Arrange and/or Page Setup tabs. The Arrange tab is shown in Figure 4–26. Table 4–1 shows the buttons on the Arrange tab along with the Enhanced ScreenTips that describe their function.

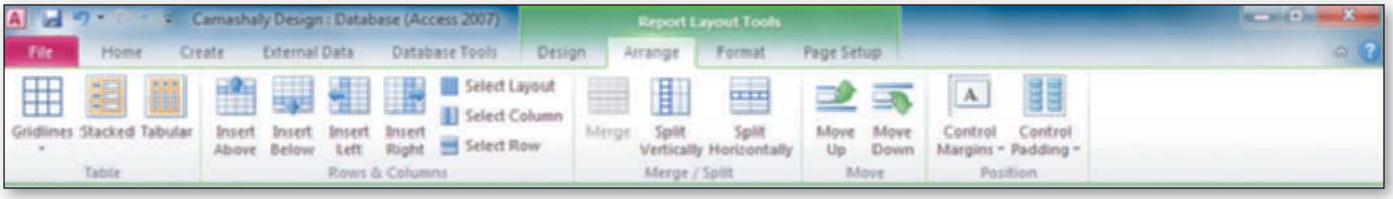

Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
Report Layout Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
Gridlines
Stacked
Tabular
Table
Insert Above
Insert Below
Insert Left
Insert Right
Select Layout
Select Column
Select Row
Rows & Columns
Merge
Split Vertically
Split Horizontally
Merge / Split
Move Up
Move Down
Move
Control Margins
Control Padding
Position

Figure 4–26

Table 4–1 Arrange Tab

Button	Enhanced ScreenTip
Gridlines	Gridlines
Stacked	Create a layout similar to a paper form, with labels to the left of each field.
Tabular	Create a layout similar to a spreadsheet, with labels across the top and data in columns below the labels.
Insert Above	Insert Above
Insert Below	Insert Below
Insert Left	Insert Left
Insert Right	Insert Right
Select Layout	Select Layout
Select Column	Select Column
Select Row	Select Row
Merge	Merge Cells
Split Vertically	Split the selected control into two rows.
Split Horizontally	Split the selected control into two columns.
Move Up	Move Up
Move Down	Move Down
Control Margins	Control Margins
Control Padding	Control Padding

The Report Layout Tools Page Setup tab is shown in Figure 4–27. Table 4–2 shows the buttons on the Page Setup tab along with the Enhanced ScreenTips that describe their function.

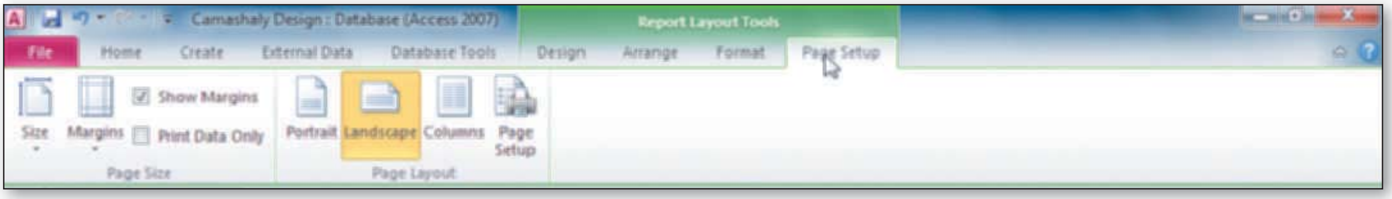

Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
Report Layout Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
Size
Margins
☑ Show Margins
☐ Print Data Only
Page Size
Portrait
Landscape
Columns
Page Setup
Page Layout

Figure 4–27

Table 4–2 Page Setup Tab

Button	Enhanced ScreenTip
Size	Choose a paper size for the current section.
Margins	Select the margin sizes for the entire document or the current section.
Show Margins	Show Margins
Print Data Only	Print Data Only
Portrait	Change to portrait orientation.
Landscape	Change to landscape orientation.
Columns	Columns
Page Setup	Show the Page Setup dialog box.

To Print a Report

The following steps print the report.

1. If necessary, open the Navigation Pane.
2. With the Client Financial Report selected in the Navigation Pane, click File on the Ribbon to open the Backstage view.
3. Click the Print tab in the Backstage view to display the Print gallery.
4. Click the Quick Print button to print the report.

Q&A

How can I print multiple copies of my report?

Click File on the Ribbon to open the Backstage view. Click the Print tab, click Print in the Print gallery to display the Print dialog box, increase the number in the Number of Copies box, and then click the OK button (Print dialog box).

Q&A

How can I print a range of pages rather than printing the whole report?

Click File on the Ribbon to open the Backstage view. Click the Print tab, click Print in the Print gallery to display the Print dialog box, click the Pages option button in the Print Range area, enter the desired page range, and then click the OK button (Print dialog box).

Multitable Reports

You may determine that the data required for a report comes from more than one table. You can use the Report Wizard to create a report on multiple tables just as you can use it to create reports on single tables or queries.

To Create a Report that Involves Multiple Tables

Camashaly needs a report that includes the Business Analyst Number, First Name, and Last Name fields from the Business Analyst Table. In addition, for each client of the analyst, they need the Client Number, Client Name, Amount Paid, and Current Due fields from the Client table. The following steps use the Report Wizard to create a report that includes fields from both the Business Analyst and Client tables.

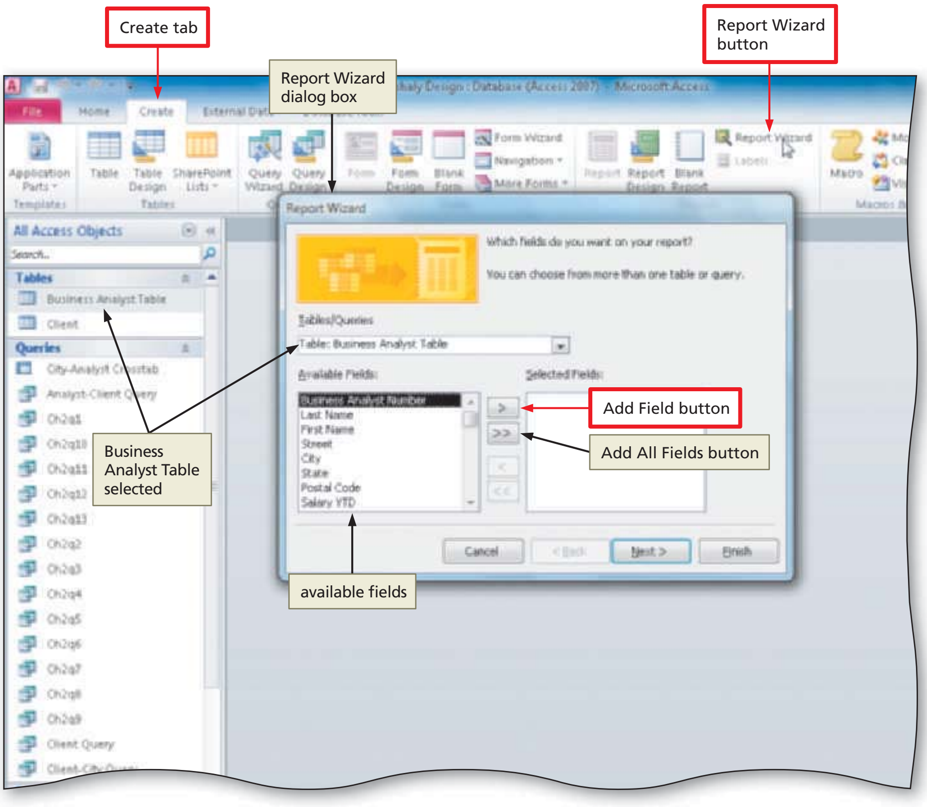
1

- Open the Navigation Pane if it is currently closed.
- Click the Business Analyst Table in the Navigation Pane to select it.
- Click Create on the Ribbon to display the Create tab.
- Click the Report Wizard button (Create tab | Reports group) to start the Report Wizard (Figure 4–28).

Q&A

My Navigation Pane does not look like the one in this screen. Is that a problem? How do I change it?

No, it is not a problem, but you should change it so it matches the screens in this chapter. To do so, click the Navigation Pane arrow and then click Object Type.


Create tab
Report Wizard dialog box
Report Wizard button
Business Analyst Table selected
Add Field button
Add All Fields button
available fields
Report Wizard
Tables/Queries
Table: Business Analyst Table
Available Fields:
Selected Fields:
Business Analyst Number
Last Name
First Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Salary YTD
Cancel
< Back
Next >
Finish

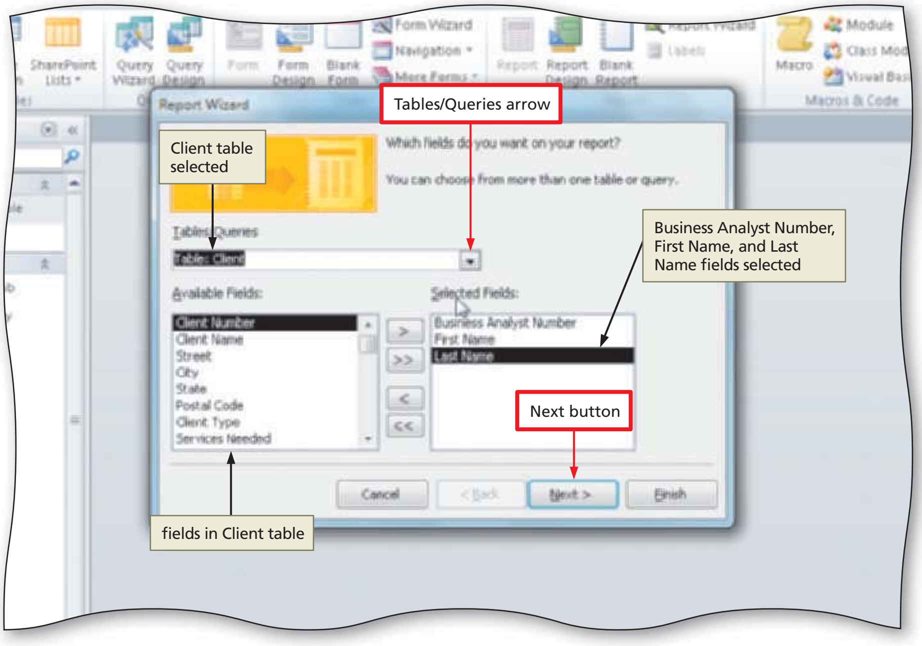
Which fields do you want on your report?

You can choose from more than one table or query.

Figure 4–28

2

- Click the Add Field button to add the Business Analyst Number field to the report.
- Add the First Name field by clicking it and then clicking the Add Field button.
- Add the Last Name field in the same manner.
- Click the Tables/Queries arrow, and then click Table: Client in the Tables/ Queries list box (Figure 4–29).


Tables/Queries arrow
Client table selected
Business Analyst Number, First Name, and Last Name fields selected
Next button
fields in Client table
Report Wizard
Tables/Queries
Table: Client
Available Fields:
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Client Type
Services Needed
Selected Fields:
Business Analyst Number
First Name
Last Name
Cancel
< Back
Next >
Finish

Which fields do you want on your report?

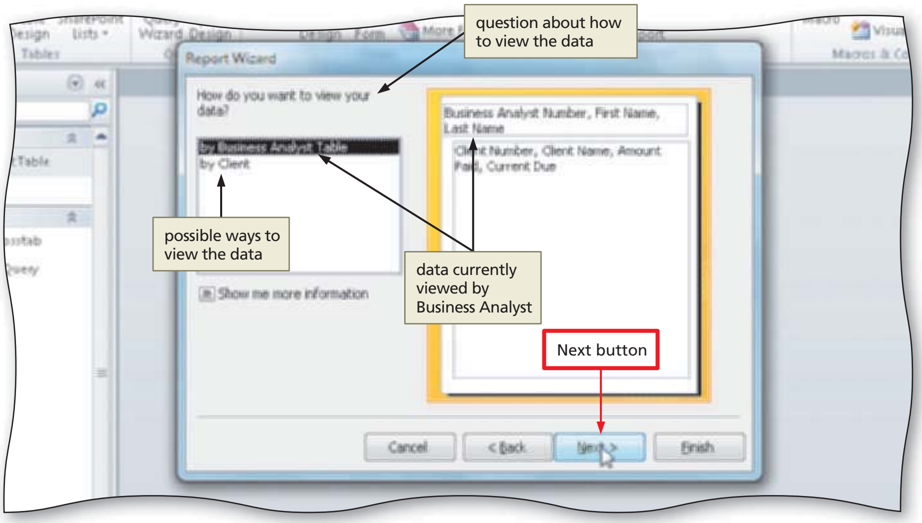
You can choose from more than one table or query.

Figure 4–29

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3

- Add the Client Number, Client Name, Amount Paid, and Current Due fields by clicking the field and then clicking the Add Field button.
- Click the Next button (Figure 4–30).



Report Wizard

How do you want to view your data?

by Business Analyst Table
by Client

Business Analyst Number, First Name, Last Name

Client Number, Client Name, Amount Paid, Current Due

question about how to view the data

possible ways to view the data

data currently viewed by Business Analyst

Next button

Figure 4–30

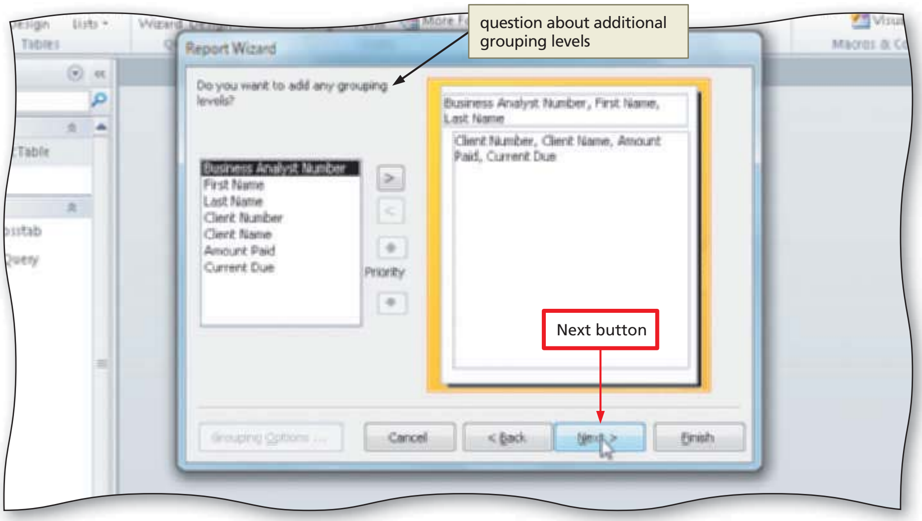
4

- Because the report is to be viewed by Business Analyst Table, and by Business Analyst Table already is selected, click the Next button (Figure 4–31).

Q&A

I did not get this screen. Instead, I got an error message that said something about the tables not being related.

In Chapter 3, you create a relationship between the tables (page AC 188). That relationship must exist for the Report Wizard to be able to create the report. You will need to create the relationship and then begin these steps again.



Report Wizard

Do you want to add any grouping levels?

Business Analyst Number
First Name
Last Name
Client Number
Client Name
Amount Paid
Current Due

Business Analyst Number, First Name, Last Name

Client Number, Client Name, Amount Paid, Current Due

question about additional grouping levels

Next button

Figure 4–31

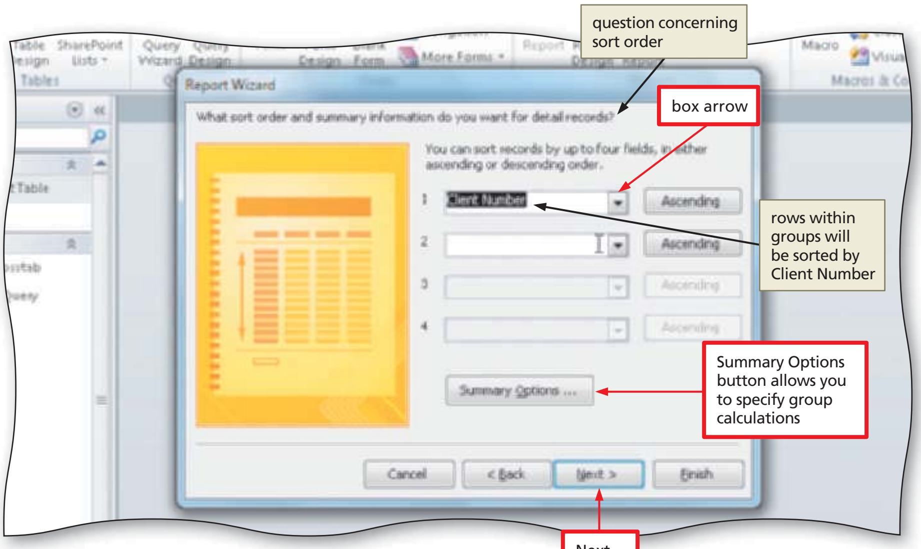
5

- Click the Next button to move to the next Report Wizard screen.
- Click the box arrow in the text box labeled 1 and then click the Client Number field in the list to select the sort order (Figure 4–32).

Q&A

When would I use the Summary Options button?

You would use the Summary Options button if you want to specify subtotals or other calculations within the wizard. You also can use it to produce a summary report by selecting Summary Only, which will omit all detail records from the report.



Report Wizard

What sort order and summary information do you want for detail records?

You can sort records by up to four fields, in either ascending or descending order.

1 Client Number Ascending
2 Ascending
3 Ascending
4 Ascending

question concerning sort order

box arrow

rows within groups will be sorted by Client Number

Summary Options button allows you to specify group calculations

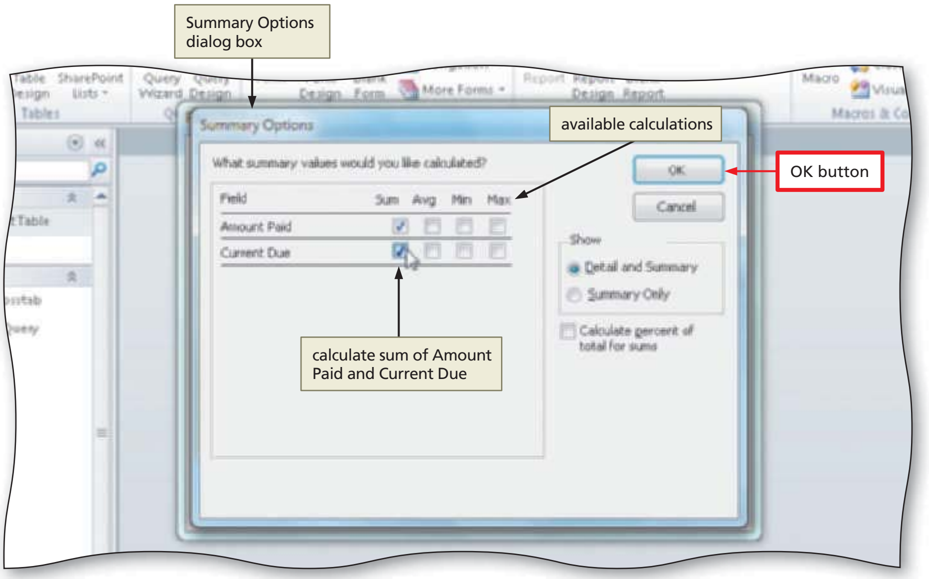
Next button

Figure 4–32

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

6

- Click the Summary Options button to display the Summary Options dialog box.
- Click the check boxes to calculate the sum of Amount Paid and the sum of Current Due (Figure 4–33).


Summary Options dialog box
available calculations
OK button
calculate sum of Amount Paid and Current Due
Summary Options
OK
Cancel
Show
Field
Sum
Avg
Min
Max

What summary values would you like calculated?

Field	Sum	Avg	Min	Max
Amount Paid	☑	☐	☐	☐
Current Due	☑	☐	☐	☐

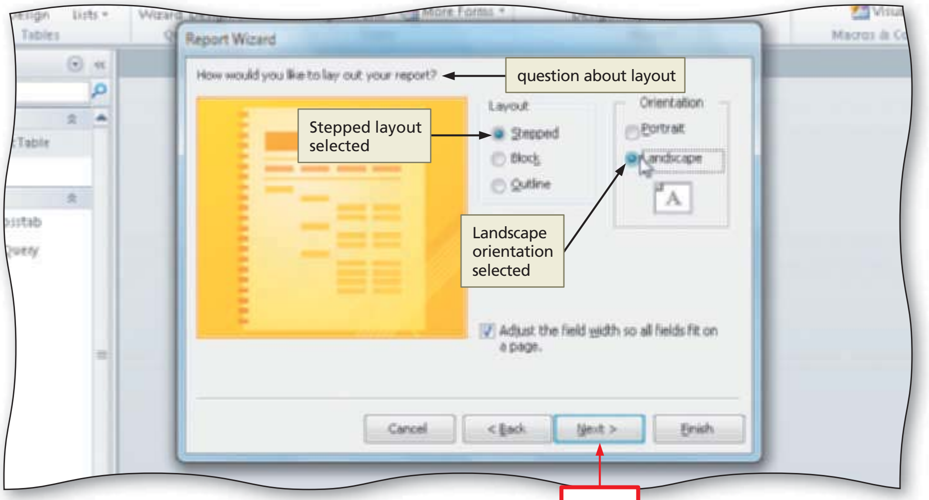
Show
● Detail and Summary
○ Summary Only

☐ Calculate percent of total for sums

Figure 4–33

7

- Click the OK button (Summary Options dialog box).
- Click the Next button, be sure the Stepped layout is selected, and then click the Landscape option button to select the orientation (Figure 4–34).


question about layout
Stepped layout selected
Landscape orientation selected
Next button
Report Wizard
Cancel
< Back
Next >
Finish

How would you like to lay out your report?

Layout
● Stepped
○ Block
○ Outline

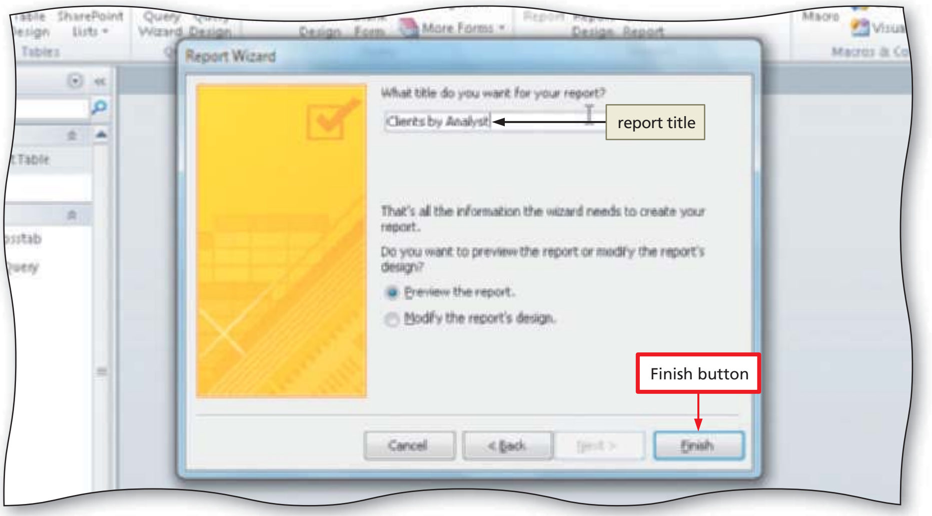
Orientation
○ Portrait
● Landscape

☑ Adjust the field width so all fields fit on a page.

Figure 4–34

8

- Click the Next button to move to the next Report Wizard screen, and then type `Clients by Analyst` as the report title (Figure 4–35).


report title
Finish button
Report Wizard
Cancel
< Back
Next >
Finish

What title do you want for your report?

Clients by Analyst

That's all the information the wizard needs to create your report.

Do you want to preview the report or modify the report's design?

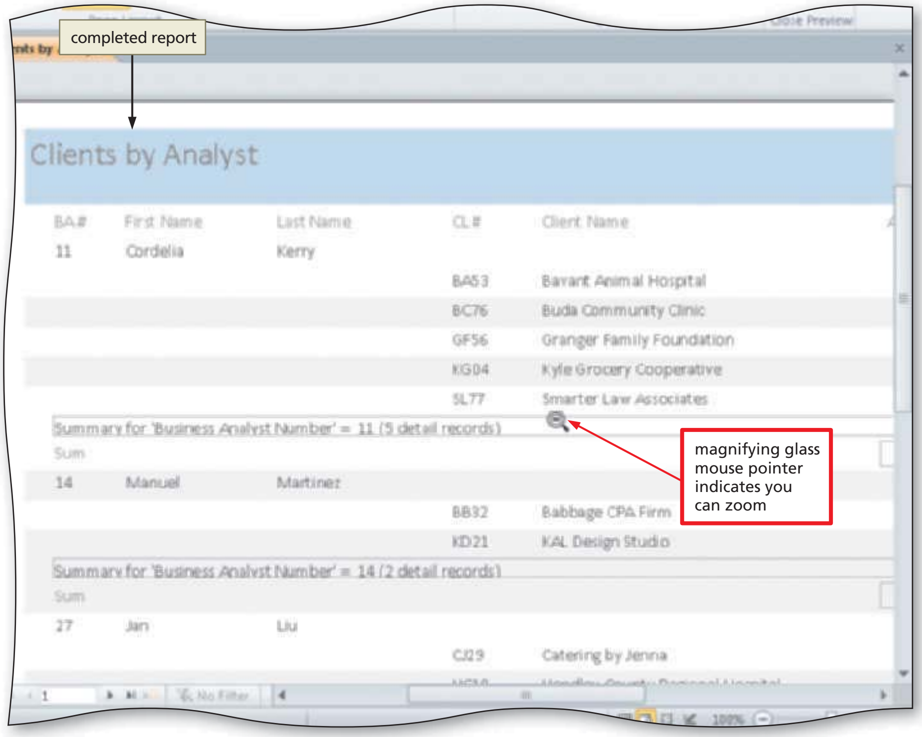
● Preview the report.
○ Modify the report's design.

Figure 4–35

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

9

- Click the Finish button to produce the report (Figure 4–36).


completed report
magnifying glass mouse pointer indicates you can zoom

Clients by Analyst

```
BA#   First Name   Last Name   CL#    Client Name
11    Cordelia     Kerry
                               BA53   Bavant Animal Hospital
                               BC76   Buda Community Clinic
                               GF56   Granger Family Foundation
                               KG04   Kyle Grocery Cooperative
                               SL77   Smarter Law Associates
Summary for 'Business Analyst Number' = 11 (5 detail records)
Sum
14    Manuel       Martinez
                               BB32   Babbage CPA Firm
                               KD21   KAL Design Studio
Summary for 'Business Analyst Number' = 14 (2 detail records)
Sum
27    Jan          Liu
                               CJ29   Catering by Jenna
```

Figure 4–36

10

- Click the magnifying glass mouse pointer somewhere within the report to view more of the report (Figure 4–37).

Experiment

- Zoom in on various positions within the report. When finished, view a complete page of the report.

11

- Click the Save button on the Quick Access Toolbar to save your work.
- Click the Close button for the report to close the report and remove it from the screen.

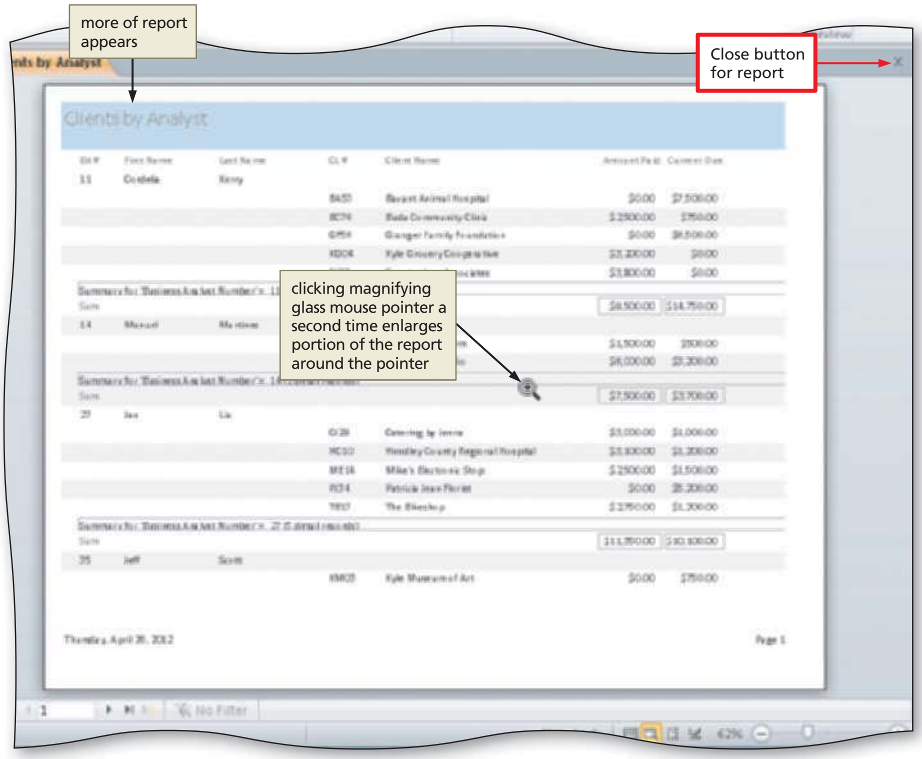

more of report appears
Close button for report
clicking magnifying glass mouse pointer a second time enlarges portion of the report around the pointer
Clients by Analyst

Figure 4–37

To Print a Report

The following steps print the Clients by Analyst report.

1. Open the Navigation Pane, select the Clients by Analyst report, and then click File on the Ribbon to open the Backstage view.
2. Click the Print tab in the Backstage view to display the Print gallery.
3. Click the Quick Print button to print the report.

Creating a Report in Layout View

You can use Layout view to create single- and multiple-table reports. To do so, you would first create a blank report and display a field list for the table containing the first fields you want to include on the report (Figure 4–38).

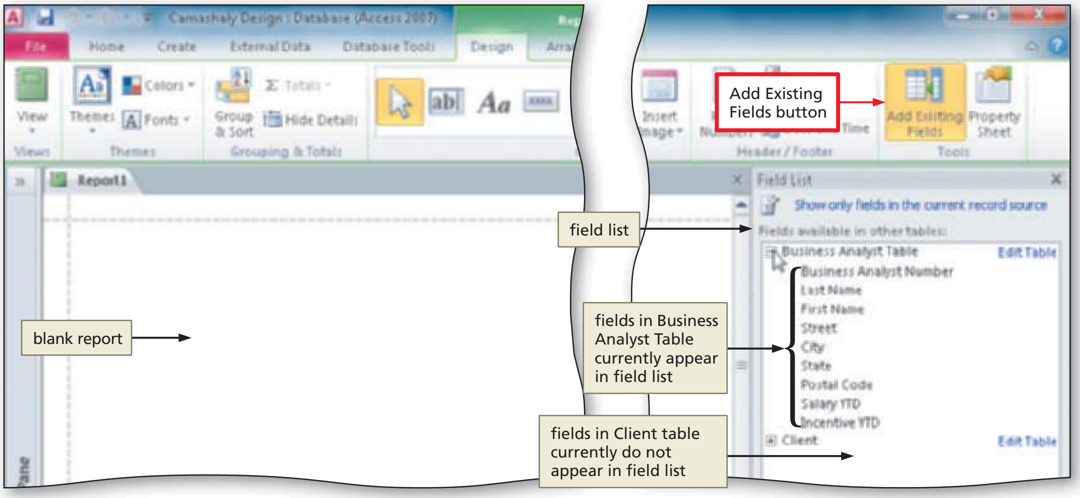

Add Existing Fields button
field list
blank report
fields in Business Analyst Table currently appear in field list
fields in Client table currently do not appear in field list
Field List
Show only fields in the current record source
Fields available in other tables:
Business Analyst Table
Edit Table
Business Analyst Number
Last Name
First Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Salary YTD
Incentive YTD
Client
Edit Table
Report1

Figure 4–38

You would then drag any fields you want from the table onto the report in the order you want them to appear (Figure 4–39).

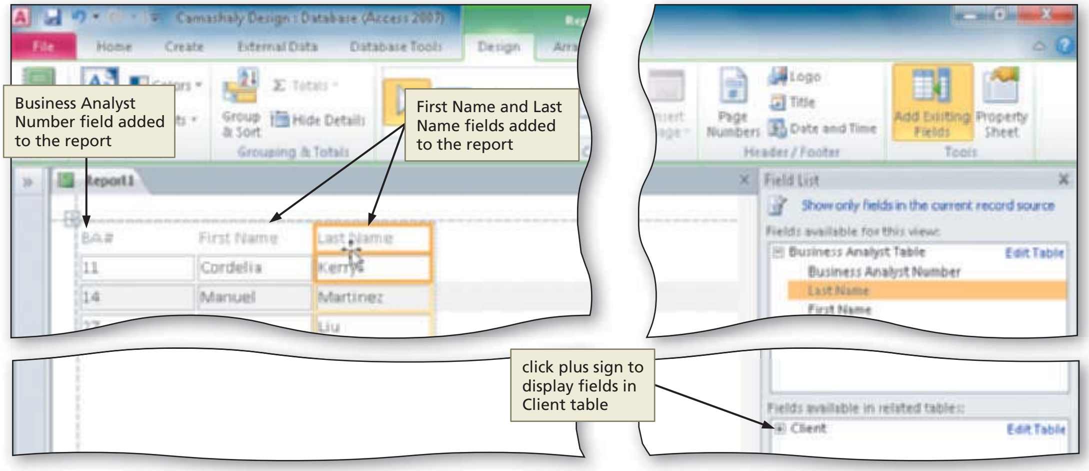
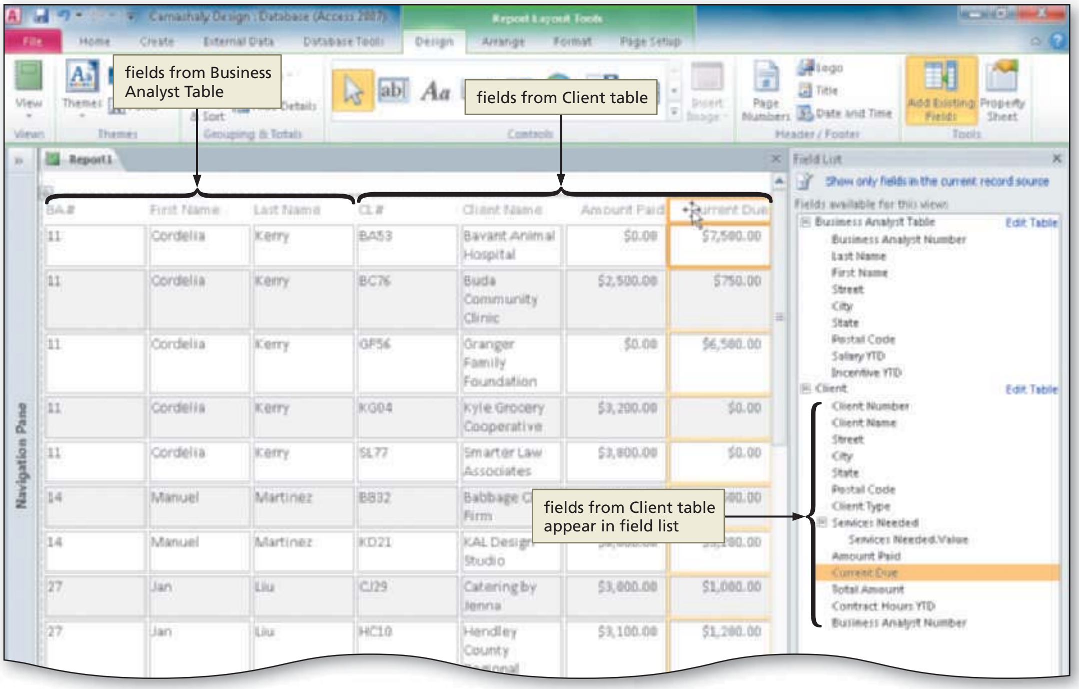

Business Analyst Number field added to the report
First Name and Last Name fields added to the report
click plus sign to display fields in Client table
BA#
First Name
Last Name
11
Cordelia
Kerry
14
Manuel
Martinez
Liu
Field List
Show only fields in the current record source
Fields available for this view:
Business Analyst Table
Edit Table
Business Analyst Number
Last Name
First Name
Fields available in related tables:
Client
Edit Table
Report1

Figure 4–39

If there is a second table involved in the report, you would be sure a field list for the second table appears and then drag the fields from the second table onto the report in the desired order (Figure 4– 40).

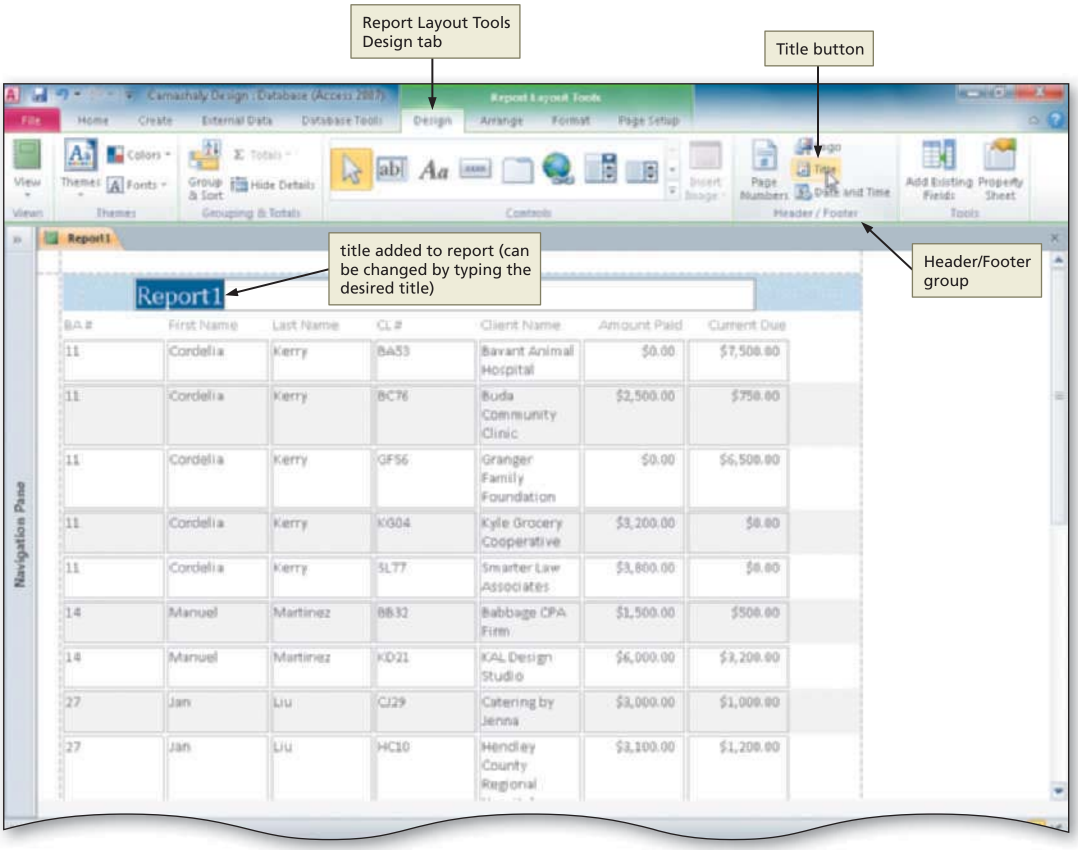
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.


fields from Business Analyst Table
fields from Client table
fields from Client table appear in field list
Report1
Field List
Show only fields in the current record source
Fields available for this view:
Business Analyst Table
Edit Table
Business Analyst Number
Last Name
First Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Salary YTD
Incentive YTD
Client
Edit Table
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Client Type
Services Needed
Services Needed.Value
Amount Paid
Current Due
Total Amount
Contract Hours YTD
Business Analyst Number
Navigation Pane

BA #	First Name	Last Name	CL #	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due
11	Cordelia	Kerry	BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	$0.00	$7,500.00
11	Cordelia	Kerry	BC76	Buda Community Clinic	$2,500.00	$750.00
11	Cordelia	Kerry	GF56	Granger Family Foundation	$0.00	$6,500.00
11	Cordelia	Kerry	KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	$3,200.00	$0.00
11	Cordelia	Kerry	SL77	Smarter Law Associates	$3,800.00	$0.00
14	Manuel	Martinez	BB32	Babbage C Firm		00.00
14	Manuel	Martinez	KD21	KAL Design Studio		00.00
27	Jan	Liu	CJ29	Catering by Jenna	$3,000.00	$1,000.00
27	Jan	Liu	HC10	Hendley County	$3,100.00	$1,200.00

Figure 4–40

When you create a report in Layout view, the report does not automatically contain a title, but you can add one by clicking the Title button (Report Layout Tools Design tab | Header/Footer group) (Figure 4–41).


Report Layout Tools Design tab
Title button
title added to report (can be changed by typing the desired title)
Header/Footer group
Report1
Navigation Pane

Report1

BA #	First Name	Last Name	CL #	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due
11	Cordelia	Kerry	BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	$0.00	$7,500.00
11	Cordelia	Kerry	BC76	Buda Community Clinic	$2,500.00	$750.00
11	Cordelia	Kerry	GF56	Granger Family Foundation	$0.00	$6,500.00
11	Cordelia	Kerry	KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	$3,200.00	$0.00
11	Cordelia	Kerry	SL77	Smarter Law Associates	$3,800.00	$0.00
14	Manuel	Martinez	BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	$1,500.00	$500.00
14	Manuel	Martinez	KD21	KAL Design Studio	$6,000.00	$3,200.00
27	Jan	Liu	CJ29	Catering by Jenna	$3,000.00	$1,000.00
27	Jan	Liu	HC10	Hendley County Regional	$3,100.00	$1,200.00

Figure 4–41

Once you have added the title, you can type whatever title you want for the report.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

TO CREATE A REPORT IN LAYOUT VIEW

If you want to create a report in Layout view, you would use the following steps.

1. Click Create on the Ribbon to display the Create tab.
2. Click the Blank Report button (Create tab | Reports group) to create a blank report.
3. If a field list does not appear, display a field list by clicking the Add Existing Fields button (Report Layout Tools Design tab | Tools group).
4. If the tables do not appear in the field list, click Show All Tables.
5. If the fields in a table do not appear, click the plus sign in front of the name of the table.
6. Drag the fields from the field list onto the report in the desired order.
7. If there is a second table, be sure the fields in the second table appear, and then drag the fields from the second table onto the report in the desired order. (If the field list covers the portion of the report where you want to drag the fields, you can move the field list to a different position by dragging its title bar.)
8. If you want to add a title to the report, click the Title button (Design tab | Header / Footer group) and then type the desired title.

BTW

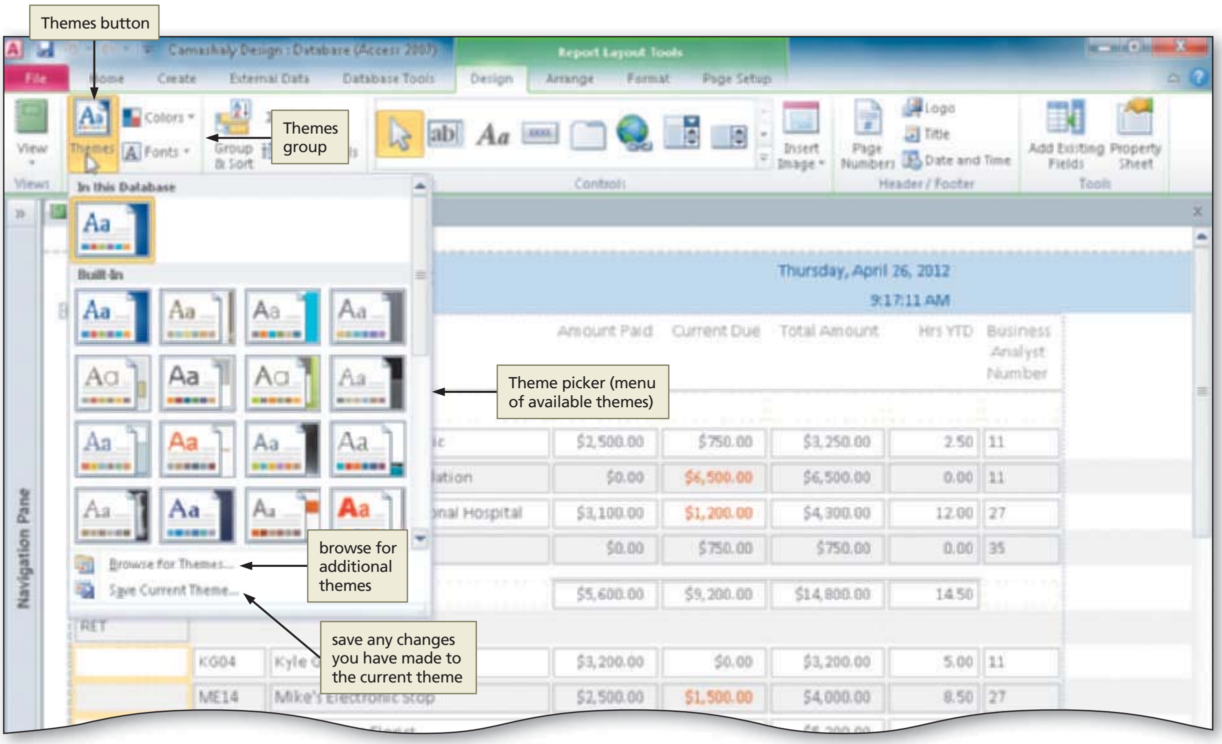
Themes
Themes are standardized across all Office applications. You can download themes and share themes with others via Office Online or e-mail.

Using Themes

The most important characteristic of a report or form is that it contains the desired data arranged in an appropriate fashion. Another important characteristic, however, is the general appearance of the form. The colors and fonts that you use in the various sections of a report or form contribute to this look. There are two important goals to keep in mind when assigning colors and fonts. First, the various colors and fonts should complement each other. A clash of colors or two fonts that do not go well together can produce a report that looks unprofessional. Second, the choice of colors and fonts should be consistent. That is, all the reports and forms within a database should use the same colors and fonts unless there is some compelling reason for a report or form to look different from the others.

Fortunately, Access themes provide an easy way to achieve both goals. A **theme** consists of a selection of colors and fonts for the various sections in a report or form. The colors and fonts in any of the built-in themes are designed to complement each other. When you assign a theme, the theme immediately applies to all reports and forms, unless you specifically indicate otherwise. To assign a theme, you use the Theme picker, which is a menu of available themes (Figure 4–42).

If you point to any theme in the Theme picker, you will see a ScreenTip giving the name of the theme. When you select a theme, the colors and fonts represented by that theme will immediately apply to all reports and forms. If you later decide that you would prefer a different theme, simply repeat the process. That is, open any report or form and select a new theme. Its colors and fonts will then replace the colors and fonts of the old theme in all reports and forms.


Themes button

Themes group

Theme picker (menu of available themes)

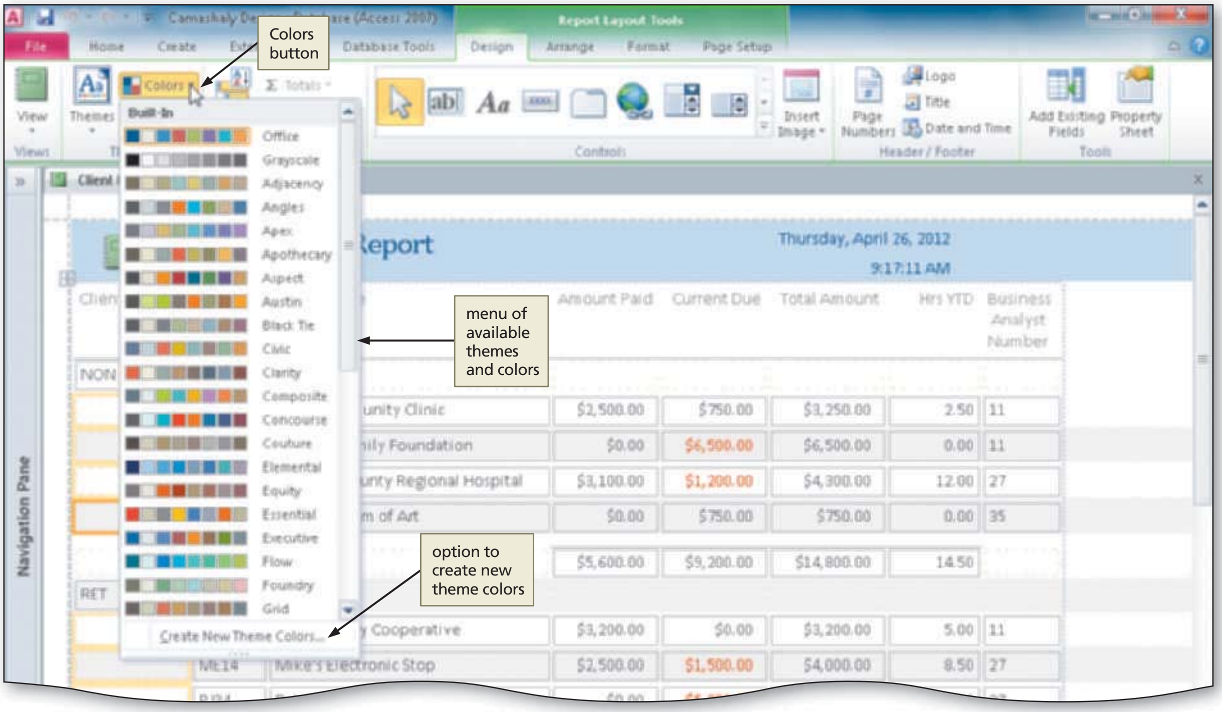
browse for additional themes

save any changes you have made to the current theme

Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
Report Layout Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
View
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Group & Sort
Controls
Insert Image
Page Numbers
Logo
Title
Date and Time
Header / Footer
Add Existing Fields
Property Sheet
Tools
In this Database
Built-In
Browse for Themes...
Save Current Theme...
Navigation Pane
Thursday, April 26, 2012
9:17:11 AM
Amount Paid
Current Due
Total Amount
Hrs YTD
Business Analyst Number

Figure 4–42

You can also use the Browse for Themes command to browse for themes that are not listed but are available for download. If you have specified a combination of fonts and colors that you like but that is not already on the list of themes, you can use the Save Current Theme command to save your combination. If, after selecting a theme using the Themes button, you do not like the colors in the current theme, you can change the theme's colors. Click the Colors button (Report Layout Tools Design tab | Themes group) (Figure 4–43), and then select an alternative color scheme.


Colors button

menu of available themes and colors

option to create new theme colors

Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
Report Layout Tools
File
Home
Create
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
View
Themes
Colors
Totals
Built-In
Office
Grayscale
Adjacency
Angles
Apex
Apothecary
Aspect
Austin
Black Tie
Civic
Clarity
Composite
Concourse
Couture
Elemental
Equity
Essential
Executive
Flow
Foundry
Grid
Create New Theme Colors...
Controls
Insert Image
Page Numbers
Logo
Title
Date and Time
Header / Footer
Add Existing Fields
Property Sheet
Tools
Navigation Pane
Report
Thursday, April 26, 2012
9:17:11 AM
Amount Paid
Current Due
Total Amount
Hrs YTD
Business Analyst Number

Figure 4–43

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Similarly, if you do not like the fonts in the current theme, you can click the Fonts button (Report Layout Tools Design tab | Themes group) (Figure 4–44). You then can select an alternative font.

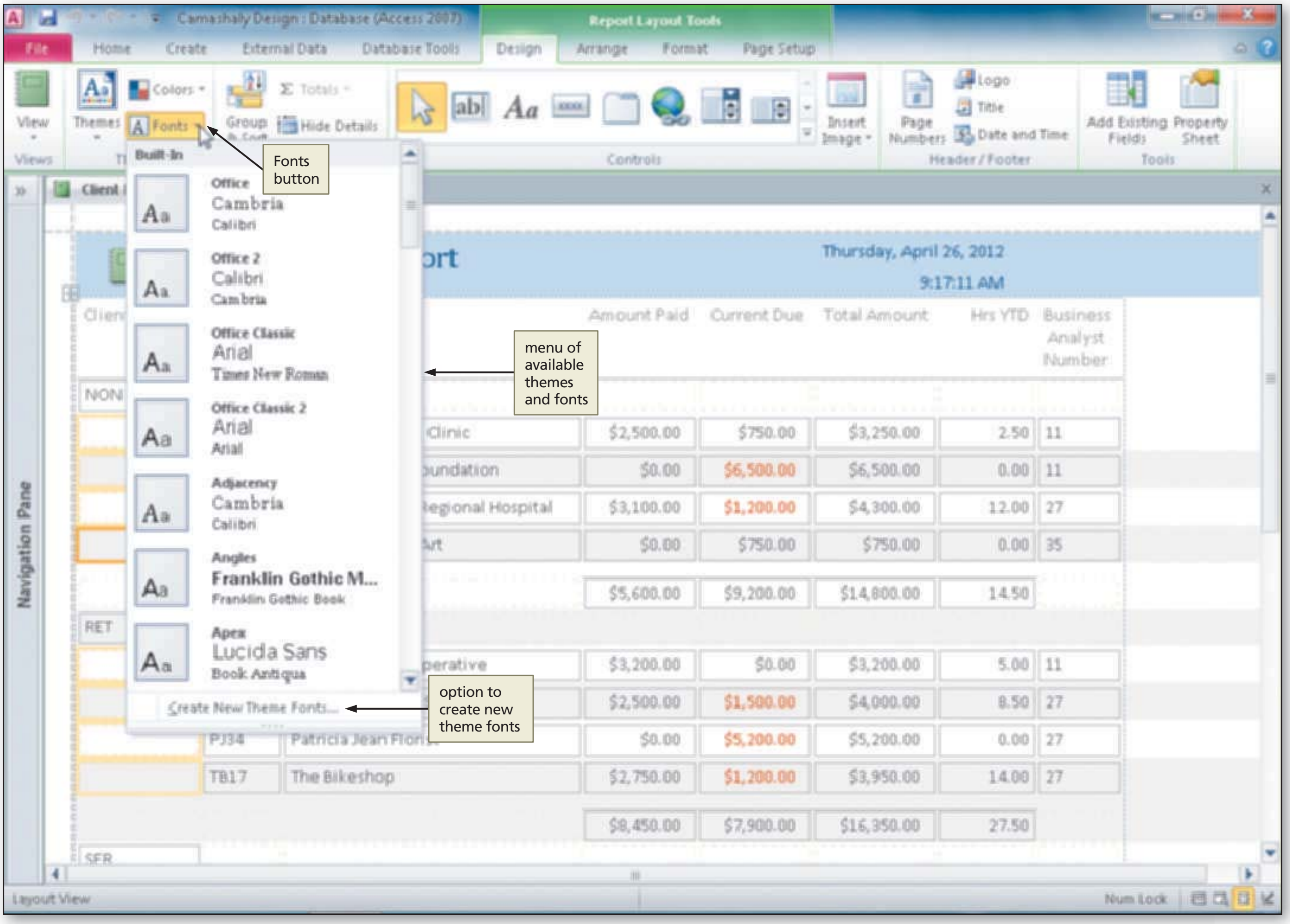

Fonts button
menu of available themes and fonts
option to create new theme fonts
Built-In
Office
Cambria
Calibri
Office 2
Calibri
Cambria
Office Classic
Arial
Times New Roman
Office Classic 2
Arial
Arial
Adjacency
Cambria
Calibri
Angles
Franklin Gothic M...
Franklin Gothic Book
Apex
Lucida Sans
Book Antiqua
Create New Theme Fonts...

Figure 4–44

To Assign a Theme to All Objects

To assign a theme, it is easiest to use Layout view. You can use Design view as well, but it is easier to see the result of picking a theme when you are viewing the report or form in Layout view. To assign a theme to all reports and forms, you would use the following steps.

1. Open any report or form in Layout view.
2. Click the Themes button (Design tab | Themes group) to display the Theme picker.
3. Click the desired theme.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

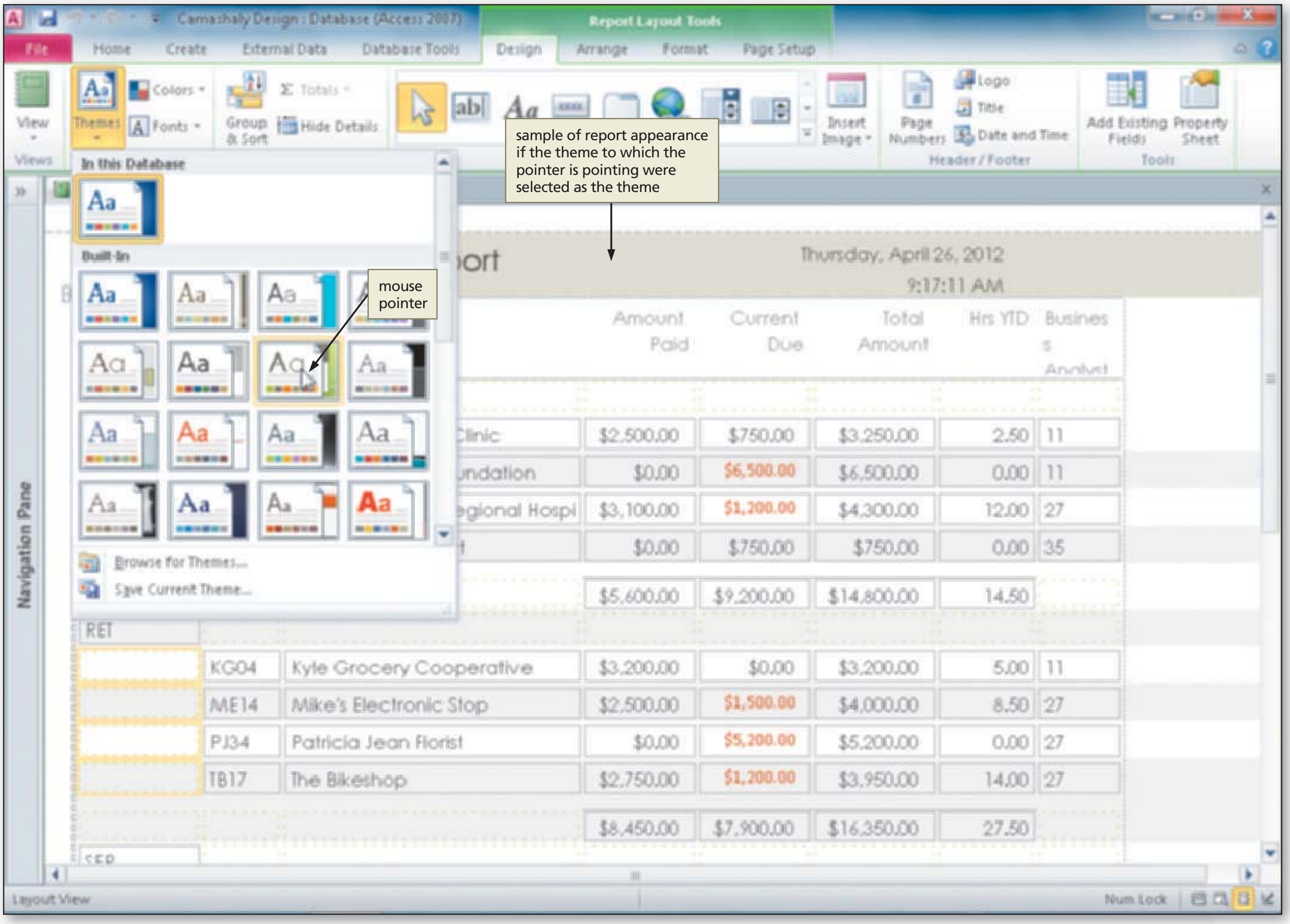
TO ASSIGN A THEME TO A SINGLE OBJECT

In some cases, you might only want to apply a theme to the current report or form, while all other reports and forms would retain the characteristics from the original theme. To assign a theme to a single object, you would use the following steps.

1. Open the specific report or form to which you want to assign a theme in Layout view.
2. Click the Themes button (Design tab | Themes group) to display the Theme picker.
3. Right-click the desired theme to produce a shortcut menu.
4. Click the Apply Theme to This Object Only command on the shortcut menu to apply the theme to the single object on which you are working.

Live Preview for Themes

When selecting themes, Access furnishes a **live preview** of what the report or form will look like with the theme before you actually select the theme. The report or form will appear as it would in the theme to which you are currently pointing (Figure 4–45). If you like that theme, you then can select the theme by clicking the left mouse button.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
Report Layout Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
View
Views
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Group & Sort
Totals
Hide Details
Insert Image
Page Numbers
Logo
Title
Date and Time
Header / Footer
Add Existing Fields
Property Sheet
Tools
In this Database
Built-In
Browse for Themes...
Save Current Theme...
Navigation Pane
Layout View
Num Lock

sample of report appearance if the theme to which the pointer is pointing were selected as the theme

mouse pointer

ort

Thursday, April 26, 2012
9:17:11 AM

		Amount Paid	Current Due	Total Amount	Hrs YTD	Busines s Analyst
	Clinic	$2,500.00	$750.00	$3,250.00	2.50	11
	undation	$0.00	$6,500.00	$6,500.00	0.00	11
	egional Hospi	$3,100.00	$1,200.00	$4,300.00	12.00	27
	t	$0.00	$750.00	$750.00	0.00	35
		$5,600.00	$9,200.00	$14,800.00	14.50	
RET						
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	$3,200.00	$0.00	$3,200.00	5.00	11
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	$2,500.00	$1,500.00	$4,000.00	8.50	27
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	$0.00	$5,200.00	$5,200.00	0.00	27
TB17	The Bikeshop	$2,750.00	$1,200.00	$3,950.00	14.00	27
		$8,450.00	$7,900.00	$16,350.00	27.50	
SER						

Figure 4–45

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Create a Summary Report

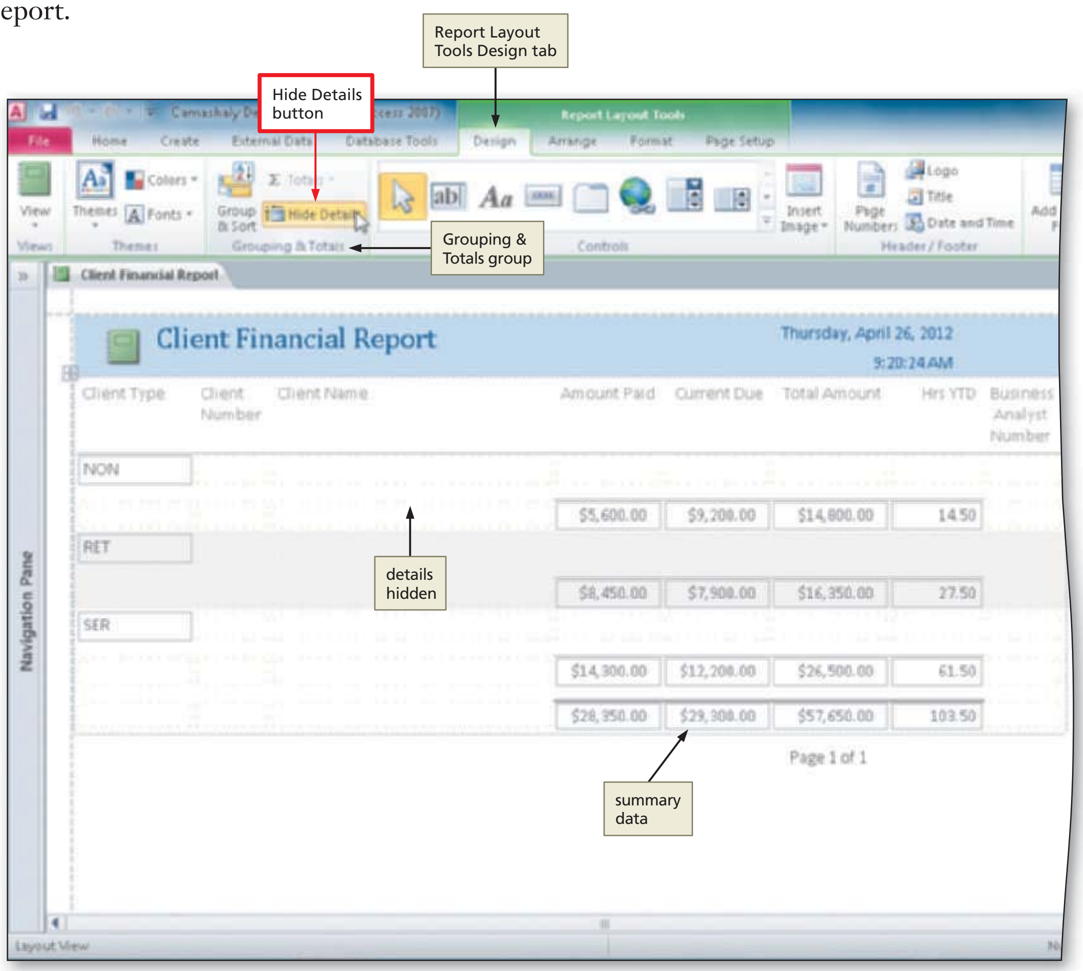
You may determine that a report should be organized so that it only shows the overall group calculations, but not all the records. A report that includes the group calculations such as subtotals, but does not include the individual detail lines, is called a **summary report**. The following steps hide the detail lines in the Client Financial Report, thus creating a summary report.

1

- Open the Client Financial Report in Layout view and close the Navigation Pane.

2

- Click the Hide Details button (Report Layout Tools Design tab | Grouping & Totals group) to hide the details in the report (Figure 4–46).


Report Layout Tools Design tab
Hide Details button
Grouping & Totals group
details hidden
summary data
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
Report Layout Tools
View
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Group & Sort
Totals
Hide Details
Grouping & Totals
Controls
Insert Image
Page Numbers
Logo
Title
Date and Time
Header / Footer
Add
Navigation Pane
Layout View

Client Financial Report

Thursday, April 26, 2012
9:20:24 AM

Client Type	Client Number	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due	Total Amount	Hrs YTD	Business Analyst Number
NON							
			$5,600.00	$9,200.00	$14,800.00	14.50	
RET							
			$8,450.00	$7,900.00	$16,350.00	27.50	
SER							
			$14,300.00	$12,200.00	$26,500.00	61.50	
			$28,350.00	$29,300.00	$57,650.00	103.50	

Page 1 of 1

Figure 4–46

Q&A How can I see the details once I have hidden them?

Click the Hide Details button a second time.

Q&A There seems to be a lot of space before the Amount Paid and Current Due fields. Is that a problem?

The extra space is the space that would be occupied by the client number and name if you had not hidden the details. It is not a problem. If you wanted a report that was strictly a summary report, you would not have included those fields. If the fields were not included, hiding the details would not have produced this space.

BTW **Summary Reports**
You can create a summary report in either Layout view or Design view.

3

- Close the report without saving your changes.

Q&A What would happen if I saved the report?

The next time you view the report, the details would still be hidden. If that happened and you wanted to show all the details, just click the Hide Details button a second time.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Form Creation

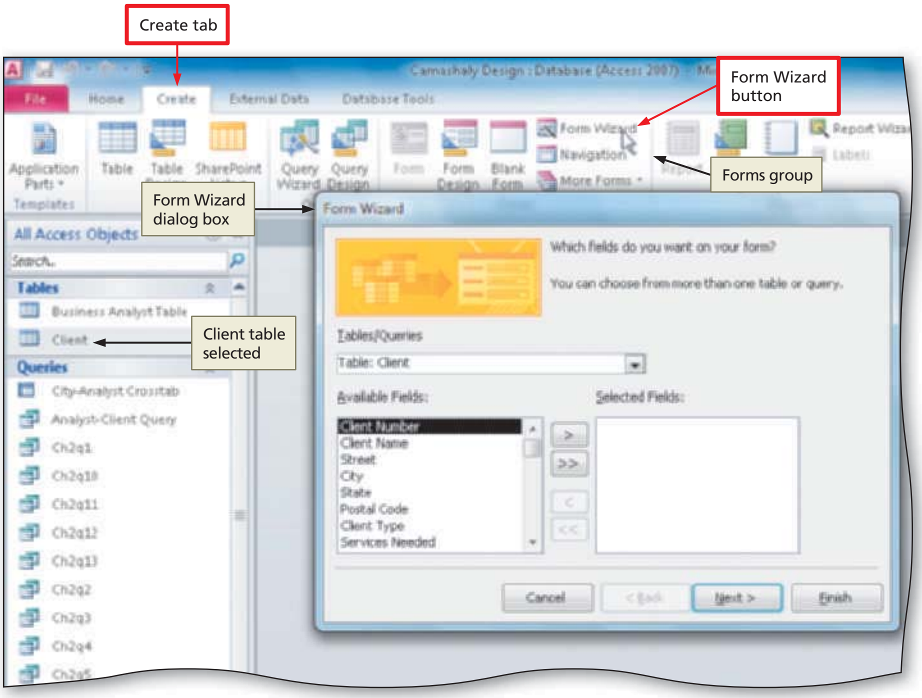
As with reports, it is usually simplest to begin creating a form by using the wizard. Once you have used the Form Wizard to create a form, you can modify that form in either Layout view or Design view.

To Use the Form Wizard to Create a Form

The following steps use the Form Wizard to create an initial version of the Client Financial Form. This initial version will contain the Client Number, Client Name, Client Type, Services Needed, Amount Paid, Current Due, Total Amount, and Business Analyst Number fields.

1

- Open the Navigation Pane and select the Client table.
- Click Create on the Ribbon to display the Create tab.
- Click the Form Wizard button (Create tab | Forms group) to start the Form Wizard (Figure 4–47).


Create tab
Form Wizard button
Forms group
Form Wizard dialog box
Client table selected
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Form Wizard
Navigation
More Forms
All Access Objects
Tables
Business Analyst Table
Client
Queries
City-Analyst Crosstab
Analyst-Client Query
Ch2q1
Ch2q10
Ch2q11
Ch2q12
Ch2q13
Ch2q2
Ch2q3
Ch2q4
Ch2q5
Cancel
< Back
Next >
Finish

Form Wizard

Which fields do you want on your form?

You can choose from more than one table or query.

Tables/Queries: Table: Client

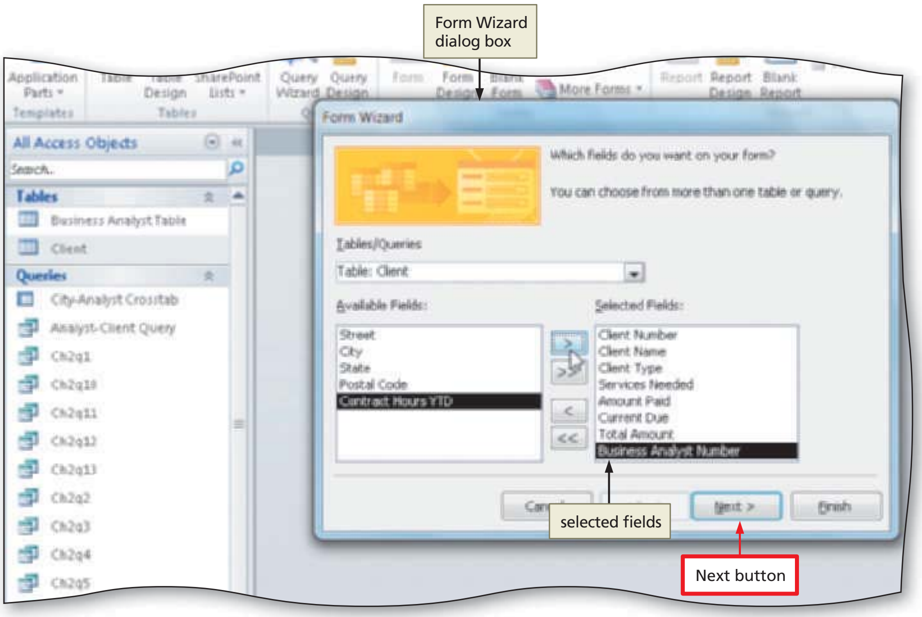
Available Fields: Client Number, Client Name, Street, City, State, Postal Code, Client Type, Services Needed

Selected Fields:

Figure 4–47

2

- Add the Client Number, Client Name, Client Type, Services Needed, Amount Paid, Current Due, Total Amount, and Business Analyst Number fields to the form (Figure 4–48).


Form Wizard dialog box
selected fields
Next button
All Access Objects
Tables
Business Analyst Table
Client
Queries
City-Analyst Crosstab
Analyst-Client Query
Ch2q1
Ch2q10
Ch2q11
Ch2q12
Ch2q13
Ch2q2
Ch2q3
Ch2q4
Ch2q5
Cancel
Next >
Finish

Form Wizard

Which fields do you want on your form?

You can choose from more than one table or query.

Tables/Queries: Table: Client

Available Fields: Street, City, State, Postal Code, Contract Hours YTD

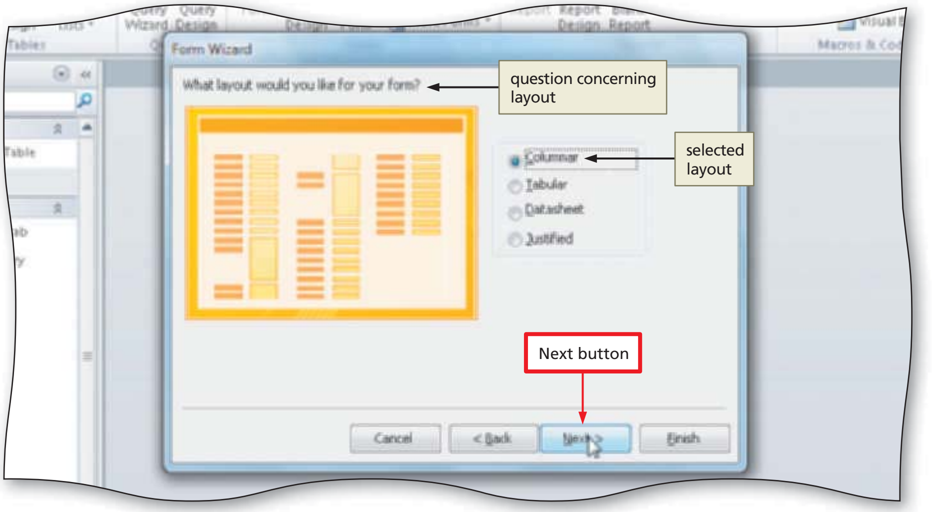
Selected Fields: Client Number, Client Name, Client Type, Services Needed, Amount Paid, Current Due, Total Amount, Business Analyst Number

Figure 4–48

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3

- Click the Next button to display the next Form Wizard screen (Figure 4–49).



Form Wizard
question concerning layout
selected layout
Next button
Cancel
< Back
Next >
Finish

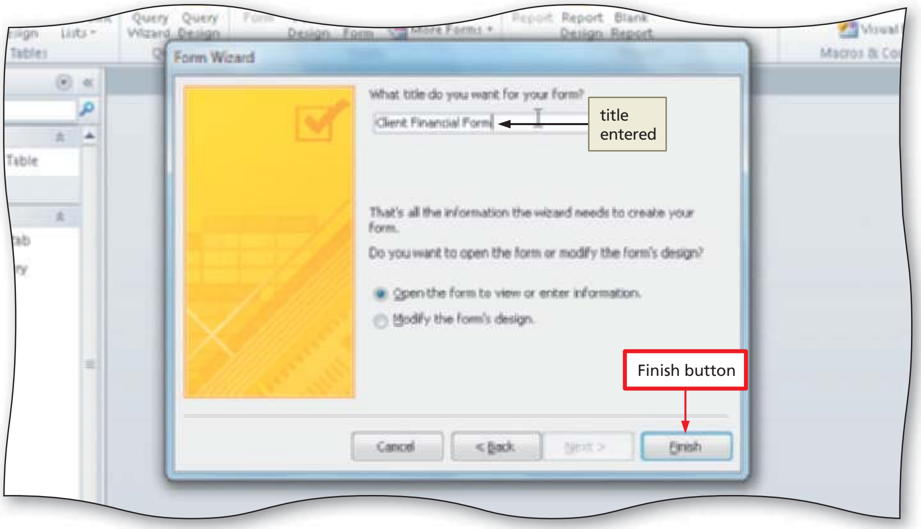
What layout would you like for your form?

● Columnar
○ Tabular
○ Datasheet
○ Justified

Figure 4–49

4

- Be sure the Columnar layout is selected, click the Next button to display the next Form Wizard screen, and then type `Client Financial Form` as the title for the form (Figure 4–50).



Form Wizard
title entered
Finish button
Cancel
< Back
Next >
Finish

What title do you want for your form?

Client Financial Form

That's all the information the wizard needs to create your form.

Do you want to open the form or modify the form's design?

● Open the form to view or enter information.
○ Modify the form's design.

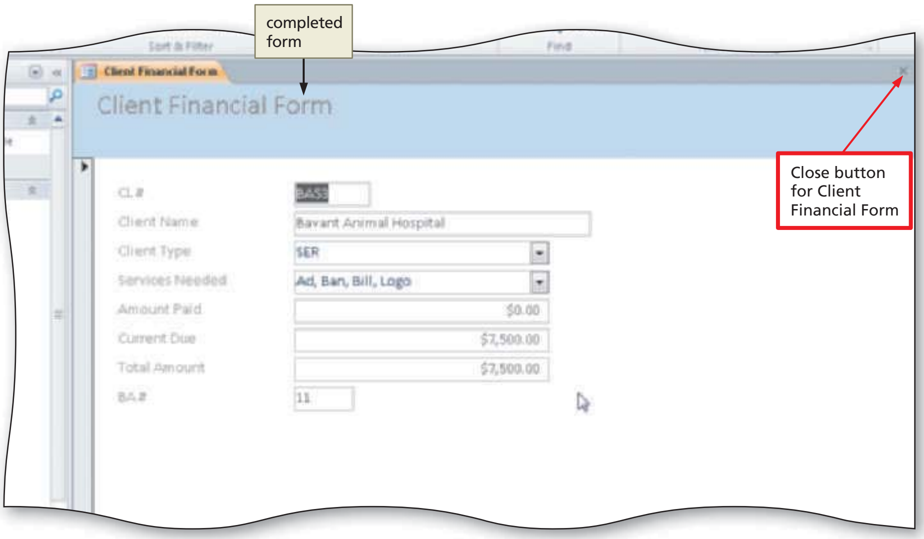
Figure 4–50

5

- Click the Finish button to complete and display the form (Figure 4–51).

6

- Click the Close button for the Client Financial Form to close the form.



completed form
Close button for Client Financial Form
Client Financial Form

Client Financial Form

CL #	BA53
Client Name	Bavant Animal Hospital
Client Type	SER
Services Needed	Ad, Ban, Bill, Logo
Amount Paid	$0.00
Current Due	$7,500.00
Total Amount	$7,500.00
BA #	11

Figure 4–51

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Understanding Form Sections

A form typically has only three sections. The Form Header section appears at the top of the form and usually contains the form title. It also may contain a logo and/or a date. The body of the form is in the Detail section. The Form Footer section appears at the bottom of the form and is often empty.

Understanding Form Controls

Just as with reports, the various items on a form are called controls. Forms include the same three types of controls: bound controls, unbound controls, and calculated controls. Bound controls have attached labels that typically display the name of the field that supplies the data for the control. The **attached label** for the Client Number field, for example, is the portion of the screen immediately to the left of the field. It contains the words, Client Number.

Using Layout View in a Form

When working with a form in Access, there are three different ways to view the form. They are Form view, Layout view, and Design view. Form view shows the form on the screen and allows you to use the form to update data. Layout view is similar to Form view in that it shows the form on the screen. In Layout view, you cannot update the data, but you can make changes to the layout of the form, and it is the usually the easiest way to make such changes. Design view also allows you to make changes, but it does not show you the actual form. It is most useful when the changes you need to make are especially complex. In this chapter, you will use Layout view to modify the form.

BTW

Form Design Considerations

Forms should be appealing visually and present data logically and clearly. Properly designed forms improve both the speed and accuracy of data entry. Forms that are too cluttered or contain too many different effects can be hard on the eyes. Some colors are more difficult than others for individuals to see. Be consistent when creating forms. Once you decide on a general style or theme for forms, stick with it throughout your database.

To Place Controls in a Control Layout

To use Layout view with a form, the controls must be placed in a control layout, which is a set of controls grouped together so that they can be manipulated as a single unit. The following steps place the controls and their attached labels in a control layout.

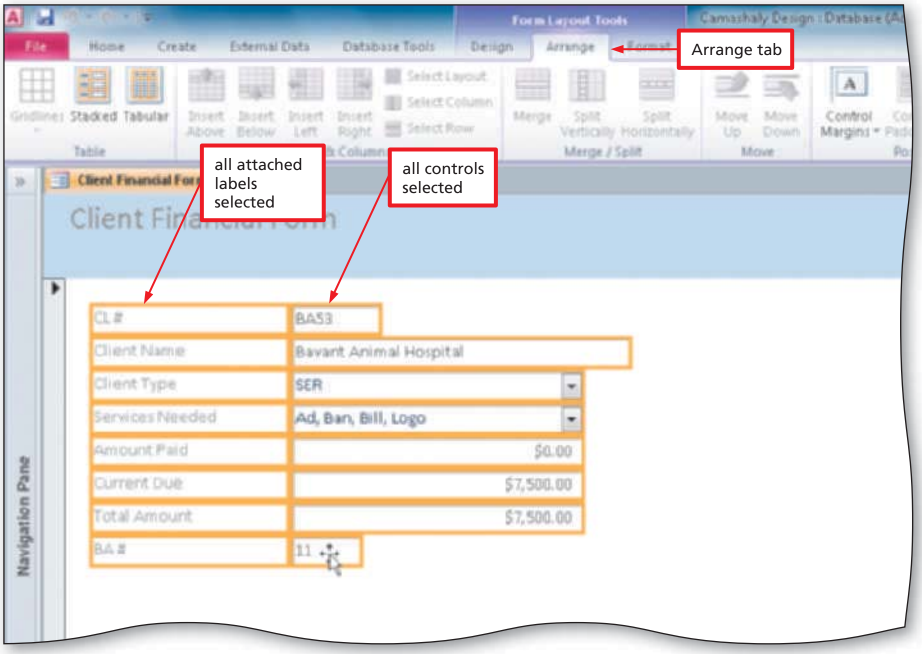
1

- Open the Client Financial Form in Layout view and close the Navigation Pane.
- Click Arrange on the Ribbon to display the Form Layout Tools Arrange tab.
- Click the attached label for the Business Analyst Number control to select the control.
- While holding the SHIFT key down, click the remaining attached labels and all the controls (Figure 4–52).

Q&A

Did I have to select the attached labels and controls in that order?

No. As long as you select all of them, the order in which you selected them does not matter.


Form Layout Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (A
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Gridlines
Stacked
Tabular
Table
Insert Above
Insert Below
Insert Left
Insert Right
Select Layout
Select Column
Select Row
Merge
Split Vertically
Split Horizontally
Merge / Split
Move Up
Move Down
Move
Control Margins
Client Financial Form
Client Financial Form
Navigation Pane

Arrange tab

all attached labels selected

all controls selected

CL #	BA53
Client Name	Bavant Animal Hospital
Client Type	SER
Services Needed	Ad, Ban, Bill, Logo
Amount Paid	$0.00
Current Due	$7,500.00
Total Amount	$7,500.00
BA #	11

Figure 4–52

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Q&A

When I clicked some of the controls, they moved so they are no longer aligned as well as they are in the figure. What should I do?

You do not have to worry about it. Once you complete the next step, they will once again be aligned properly.

2

- Click the Stacked button (Form Layout Tools Arrange tab | Table group) to place the controls in a stacked layout (Figure 4–53).

Form Layout Tools Arrange tab

Stacked button

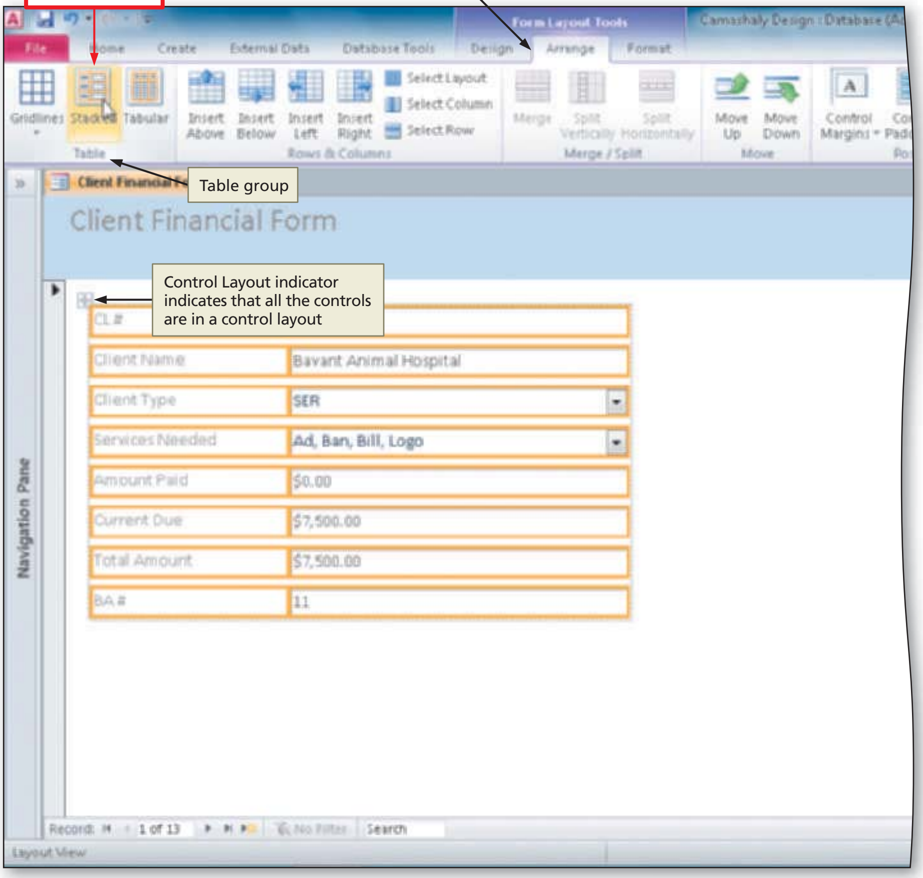

Form Layout Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (A
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Gridlines
Stacked
Tabular
Table
Insert Above
Insert Below
Insert Left
Insert Right
Select Layout
Select Column
Select Row
Rows & Columns
Merge
Split Vertically
Split Horizontally
Merge / Split
Move Up
Move Down
Move
Control Margins
Control Padding
Client Financial F
Navigation Pane
Record: 1 of 13
No Filter
Search
Layout View

Table group

Client Financial Form

Control Layout indicator indicates that all the controls are in a control layout

CL #	
Client Name	Bavant Animal Hospital
Client Type	SER
Services Needed	Ad, Ban, Bill, Logo
Amount Paid	$0.00
Current Due	$7,500.00
Total Amount	$7,500.00
BA #	11

Figure 4–53

Q&A

How can I tell whether the controls are in a control layout?

Look for the Control Layout indicator in the upper-left corner of the control layout.

Q&A

What is the difference between stacked layout and tabular layout?

In a stacked layout, which is more often used in forms, the controls are placed vertically with the labels to the left of the controls. In a tabular layout, which is more often used in reports, the controls are placed horizontally with the labels above the controls.

To Add a Date

You can add special items, such as a logo or title, to reports and forms. You can also add the date and/or the time. In the case of reports, you can add a page number as well. To add any of these items, you use the appropriate button in the Header/Footer group of the Design tab. The following steps use the Date and Time button to add a date to the Client Financial Form.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

1

- Click Design on the Ribbon to display the Design tab.
- Click the Date and Time button (Form Layout Tools Design tab | Header/Footer group) to display the Date and Time dialog box (Figure 4–54).

Q&A

What is the relationship between the various check boxes and option buttons?

If the Include Date check box is checked, you must pick a date format from the three option buttons underneath the check box. If it is not checked, the option buttons will be dimmed. If the Include Time check box is checked, you must pick a time format from the three option buttons underneath the check box. If it is not checked, the option buttons will be dimmed.

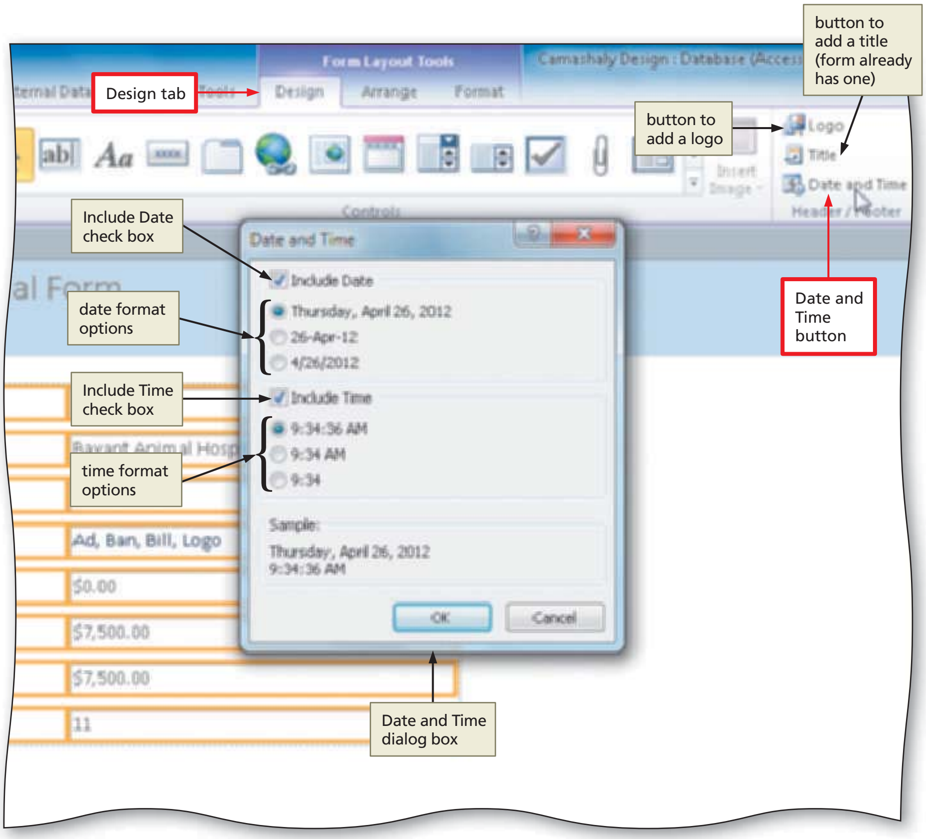

button to add a title (form already has one)
Design tab
button to add a logo
Include Date check box
date format options
Include Time check box
time format options
Date and Time button
Date and Time dialog box
Date and Time
☑ Include Date
● Thursday, April 26, 2012
○ 26-Apr-12
○ 4/26/2012
☑ Include Time
● 9:34:36 AM
○ 9:34 AM
○ 9:34
Sample:
Thursday, April 26, 2012
9:34:36 AM
OK
Cancel

Figure 4–54

2

- Click the option button for the second date format to select the format that shows the day of the month, followed by the abbreviation for the month, followed by the year.
- Click the Include Time check box to remove the check mark (Figure 4–55).

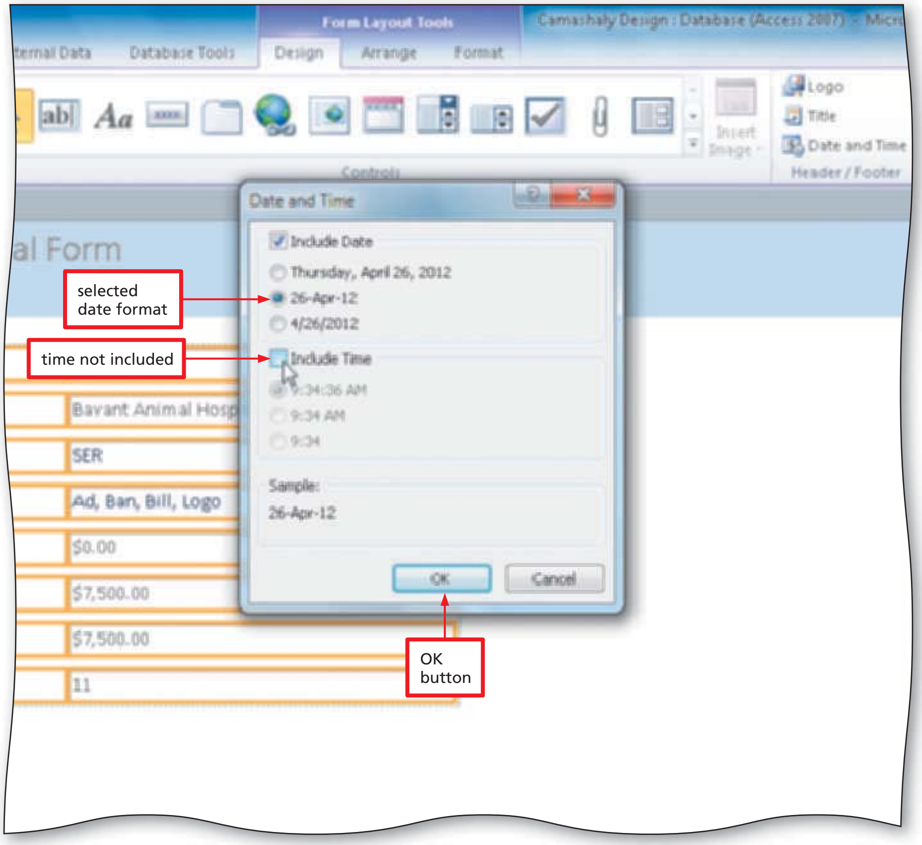
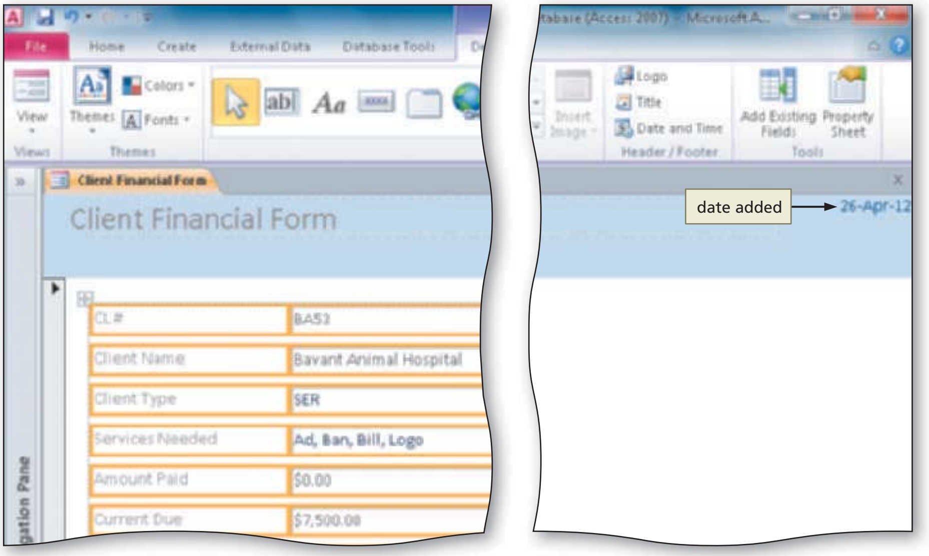

selected date format
time not included
OK button
Date and Time
☑ Include Date
○ Thursday, April 26, 2012
● 26-Apr-12
○ 4/26/2012
☐ Include Time
● 9:34:36 AM
○ 9:34 AM
○ 9:34
Sample:
26-Apr-12
OK
Cancel

Figure 4–55

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3

- Click the OK button (Date and Time dialog box) to add the date to the form (Figure 4–56).


File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Views
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Themes
Logo
Title
Date and Time
Insert Image
Header / Footer
Add Existing Fields
Property Sheet
Tools
Client Financial Form
date added
26-Apr-12
Navigation Pane

Client Financial Form

CL #	BA53
Client Name	Bavant Animal Hospital
Client Type	SER
Services Needed	Ad, Ban, Bill, Logo
Amount Paid	$0.00
Current Due	$7,500.00

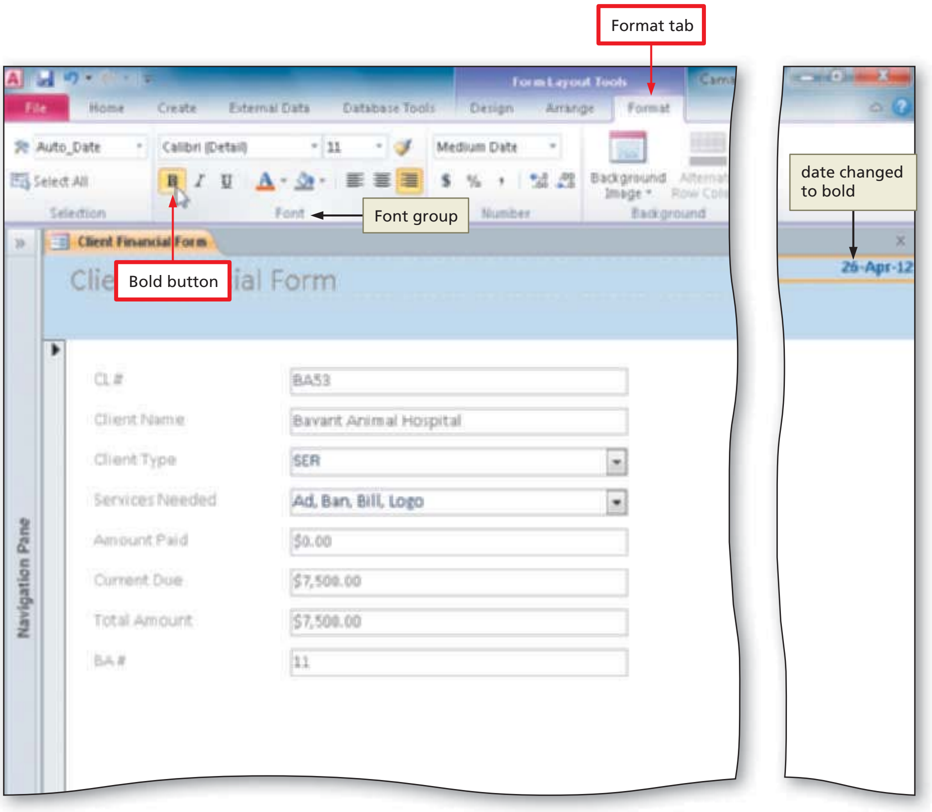
Figure 4–56

To Change the Format of a Control

You can change the format of a control by clicking the control and then clicking the appropriate button on the Format tab. The following step uses this technique to bold the date.

1

- Click the Date control to select it.
- Click Format on the Ribbon to display the Form Layout Tools Format tab.
- Click the Bold button (Form Layout Tools Format tab | Font group) to bold the date (Figure 4–57).


Format tab
Form Layout Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Auto_Date
Select All
Selection
Calibri (Detail)
11
Medium Date
Font
Font group
Number
Background Image
Alternate Row Color
Background
Bold button
date changed to bold
26-Apr-12
Client Financial Form
Navigation Pane

Client Financial Form

CL #	BA53
Client Name	Bavant Animal Hospital
Client Type	SER
Services Needed	Ad, Ban, Bill, Logo
Amount Paid	$0.00
Current Due	$7,500.00
Total Amount	$7,500.00
BA #	11

Figure 4–57

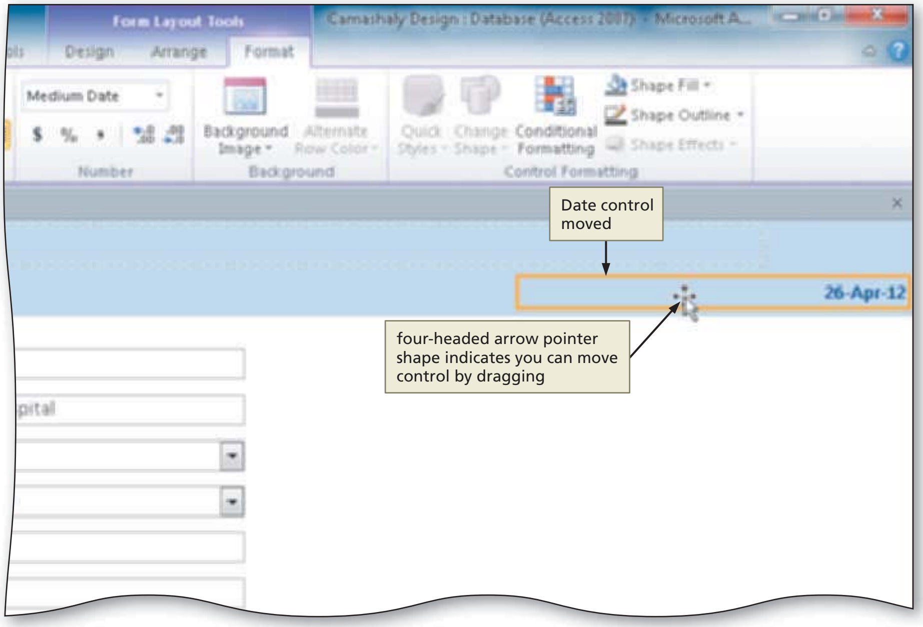
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Move a Control

You can move a control by dragging the control. The following step moves the Date control to the lower edge of the form header.

1

- Point to the Date control so that the mouse pointer changes to a four-headed arrow and then drag the Date control to the lower boundary of the form header (Figure 4–58).


Form Layout Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft A...
Design
Arrange
Format
Medium Date
Number
Background Image
Alternate Row Color
Background
Quick Styles
Change Shape
Conditional Formatting
Shape Fill
Shape Outline
Shape Effects
Control Formatting
26-Apr-12
pital

Date control moved

four-headed arrow pointer shape indicates you can move control by dragging

Figure 4–58

Q&A I moved my pointer a little bit and it became a two-headed arrow. Can I still drag the pointer?

If you drag when the pointer is a two-headed arrow, you will resize the control. To move the control, it must be a four-headed arrow.

Q&A Could I drag other objects as well? For example, could I drag the title to the center of the form header?

Yes. Just be sure you are pointing at the object and the pointer is a four-headed arrow. You can then drag the object to the desired location.

To Move Controls in a Control Layout

The controls for the fields are arranged in control layouts. A **control layout** is a guide that aligns the controls to give the form a uniform appearance. There are two types of control layouts. A **stacked layout** arranges the controls vertically with labels to the left of the control. A **tabular layout** arranges the controls horizontally with the labels across the top, typically in the Form Header section. The Client Financial Form contains a stacked layout.

Just as you moved the Date control in the previous section, you can move a control within a control layout by dragging the control to the location you want. As you move it, a line will indicate the position where the control will be placed when you release the left mouse button. You can move more than one control in the same operation by selecting both controls prior to moving them.

The following steps move the Client Type and Services Needed fields so that they follow the Business Analyst Number field.

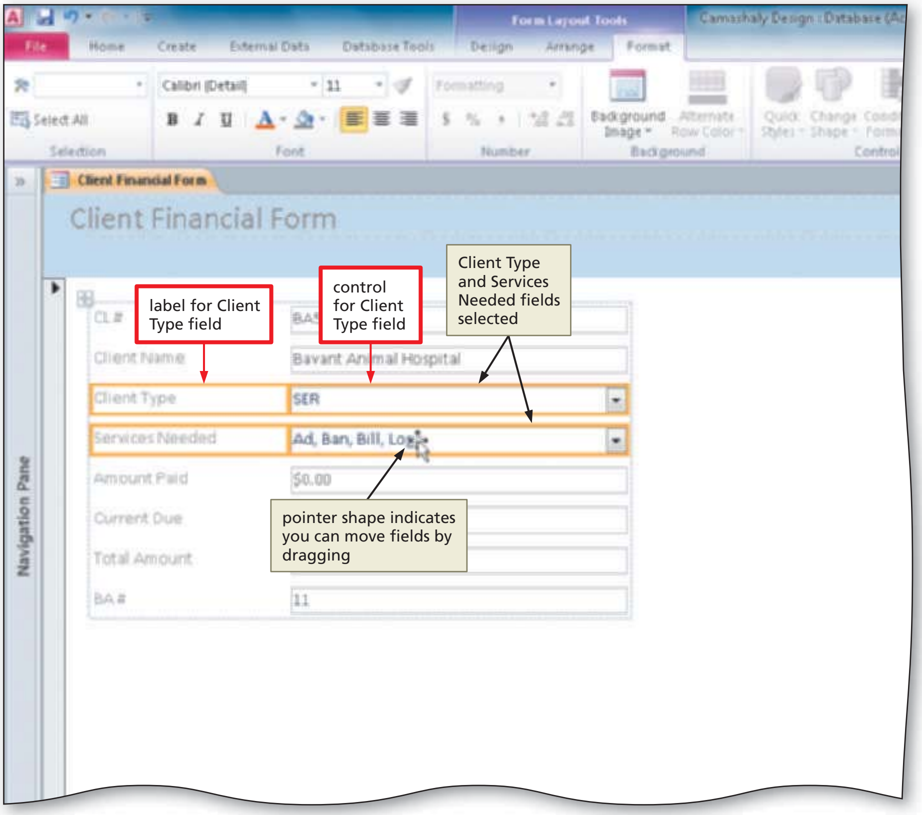
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

1

- Click the label for the Client Type field to select it.
- Hold the SHIFT key down and click the control for the Client Type field, then click the label for the Services Needed field and the control for the Services Needed field to select both fields and their labels (Figure 4–59).

Q&A Why did I have to hold the SHIFT key down when I clicked the remaining controls?

If you did not hold the SHIFT key down, you would only select the control for the Services Needed field (the last control selected). The other controls would no longer be selected.


Form Layout Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Ac
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Select All
Selection
Calibri (Detail)
11
Font
Formatting
Number
Background Image
Alternate Row Color
Background
Quick Styles
Change Shape
Conditional Formatting
Control Formatting
Client Financial Form
Navigation Pane
label for Client Type field
control for Client Type field
Client Type and Services Needed fields selected
pointer shape indicates you can move fields by dragging

Client Financial Form

CL # BA5
Client Name Bavant Animal Hospital
Client Type SER
Services Needed Ad, Ban, Bill, Logo
Amount Paid $0.00
Current Due
Total Amount
BA # 11

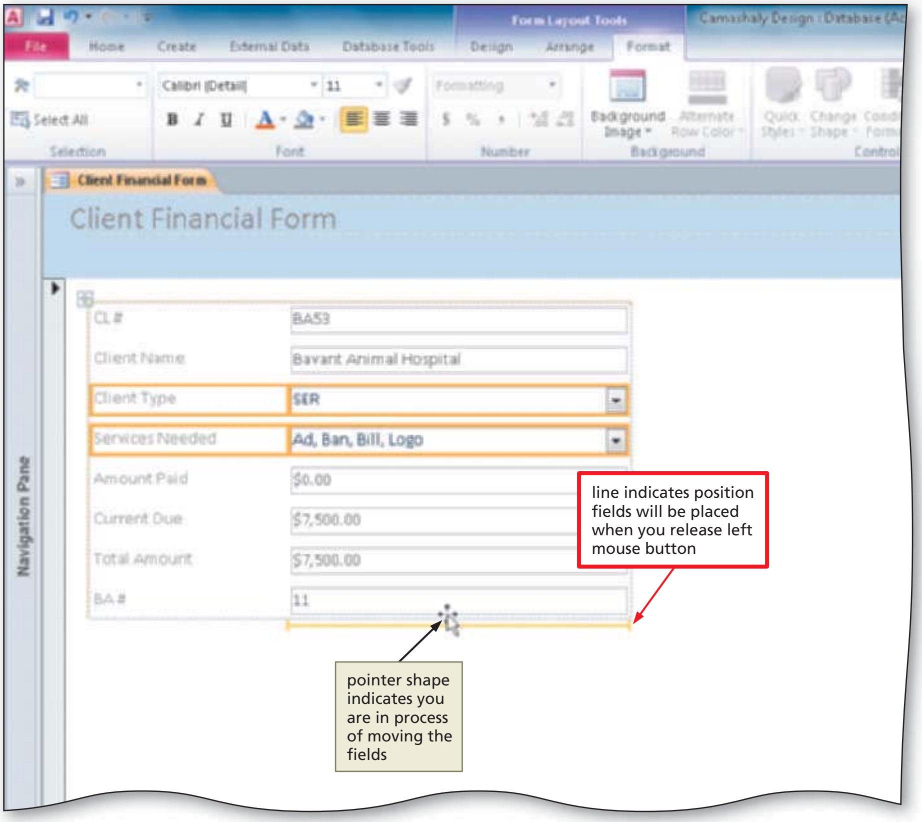
Figure 4–59

2

- Press the left mouse button and then drag the fields straight down to the position shown in Figure 4–60, making sure that the line by the mouse pointer is under the data.

Q&A What is the purpose of the line by the mouse pointer?

It shows you where the fields will be positioned.


Form Layout Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Ac
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Select All
Selection
Calibri (Detail)
11
Font
Formatting
Number
Background Image
Alternate Row Color
Background
Quick Styles
Change Shape
Conditional Formatting
Control Formatting
Client Financial Form
Navigation Pane
line indicates position fields will be placed when you release left mouse button
pointer shape indicates you are in process of moving the fields

Client Financial Form

CL # BA53
Client Name Bavant Animal Hospital
Client Type SER
Services Needed Ad, Ban, Bill, Logo
Amount Paid $0.00
Current Due $7,500.00
Total Amount $7,500.00
BA # 11

Figure 4–60

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3

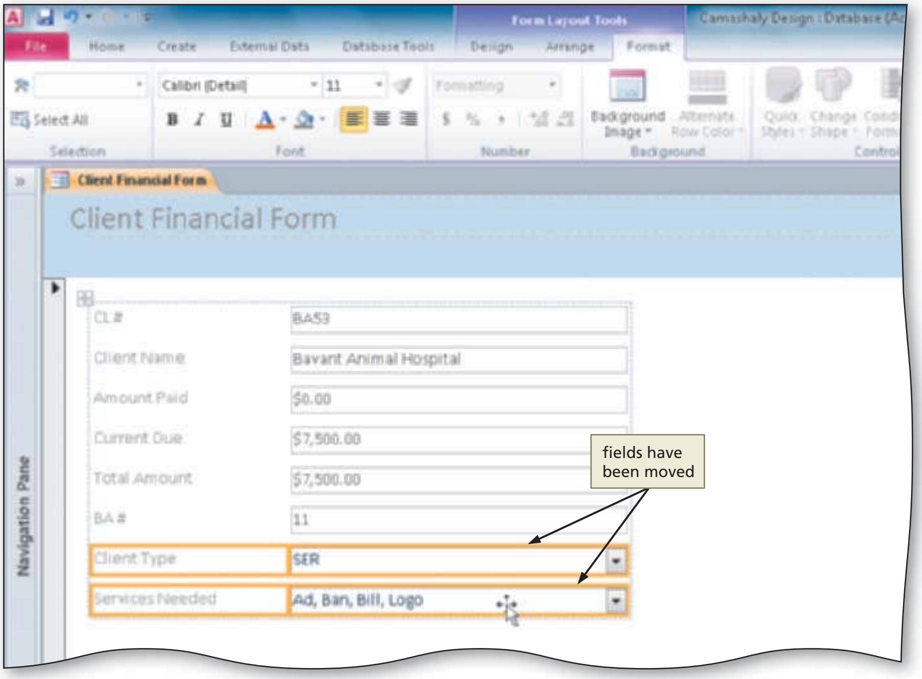
- Release the left mouse button to complete the movement of the fields (Figure 4–61).

Q&A I inadvertently had the line under the label rather than the data when I released the mouse button. The data that I moved is now under the field names. How do I fix this?

You can try to move it back where it was, but that can be tricky. The easiest way is to click the Undo button on the Quick Access Toolbar to undo your change.

Q&A I inadvertently moved my pointer so that the line became vertical and was located between a label and the corresponding data when I released the mouse button. It seemed to split the form. The data I moved appears right where the line was. It is between a label and the corresponding data. How do I fix this?

Just as in the previous answer, the easiest way is to click the Undo button on the Quick Access Toolbar to undo your change.


Form Layout Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Ac
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Select All
Calibri (Detail)
11
Formatting
Background Image
Alternate Row Color
Quick Styles
Change Shape
Cond Form
Selection
Font
Number
Background
Control
Client Financial Form
Navigation Pane

Client Financial Form

CL #	BA53
Client Name	Bavant Animal Hospital
Amount Paid	$0.00
Current Due	$7,500.00
Total Amount	$7,500.00
BA #	11
Client Type	SER
Services Needed	Ad, Ban, Bill, Logo

fields have been moved

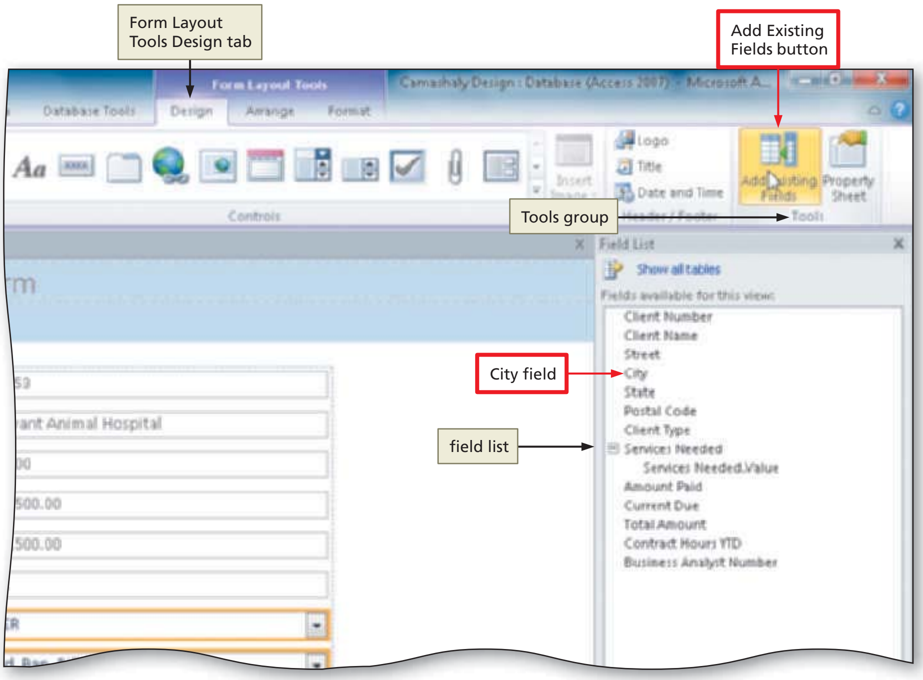
Figure 4–61

To Add a Field

Just as with a report, once you have created an initial form, you may decide that the form should contain an additional field. The following steps use a field list to add the City field to the Client Financial Form.

1

- Click Design on the Ribbon to display the Form Layout Tools Design tab.
- Click the Add Existing Fields button (Form Layout Tools Design tab | Tools group) to display a field list (Figure 4–62).


Form Layout Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft A...
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Aa
Insert Image
Logo
Title
Date and Time
Add Existing Fields
Property Sheet
Controls
Header / Footer
Tools
Field List
Show all tables
Fields available for this view:

Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Client Type
Services Needed
Services Needed.Value
Amount Paid
Current Due
Total Amount
Contract Hours YTD
Business Analyst Number

Form Layout Tools Design tab

Add Existing Fields button

Tools group

City field

field list

Figure 4–62

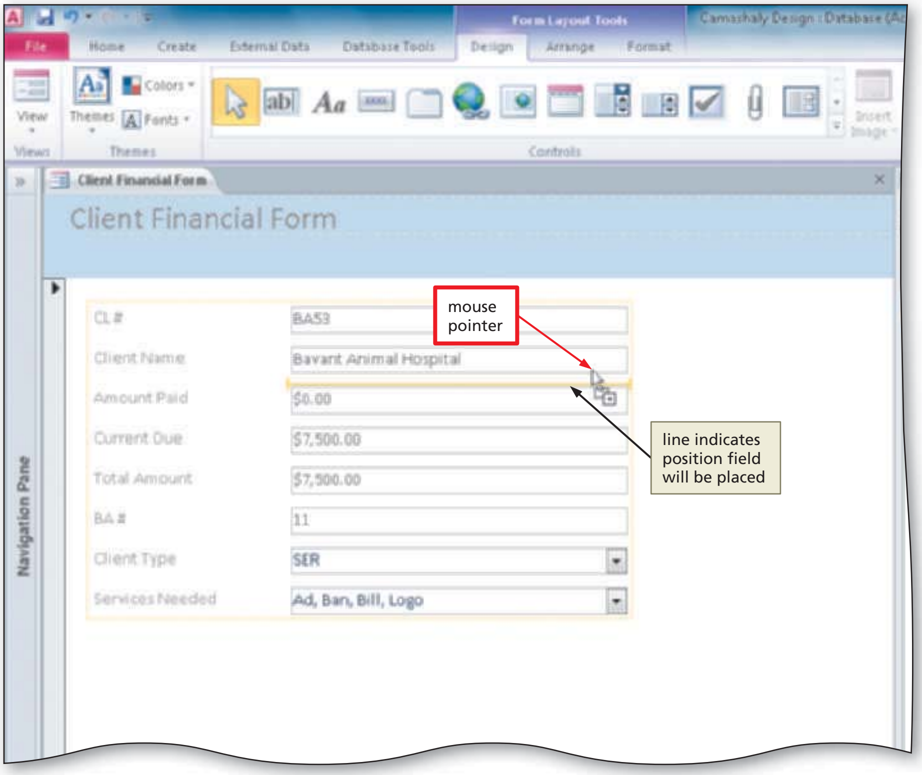
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2

- Point to the City field in the field list, press the left mouse button, and then drag the pointer to the position shown in Figure 4–63.

Q&A Does it have to be exact?

The exact pointer position is not critical as long as the line is in the position shown in the figure.


File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Form Layout Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Ac
View
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Views
Controls
Insert Image
Navigation Pane

Client Financial Form

CL #	BA53
Client Name	Bavant Animal Hospital
Amount Paid	$0.00
Current Due	$7,500.00
Total Amount	$7,500.00
BA #	11
Client Type	SER
Services Needed	Ad, Ban, Bill, Logo

mouse pointer

line indicates position field will be placed

Figure 4–63

3

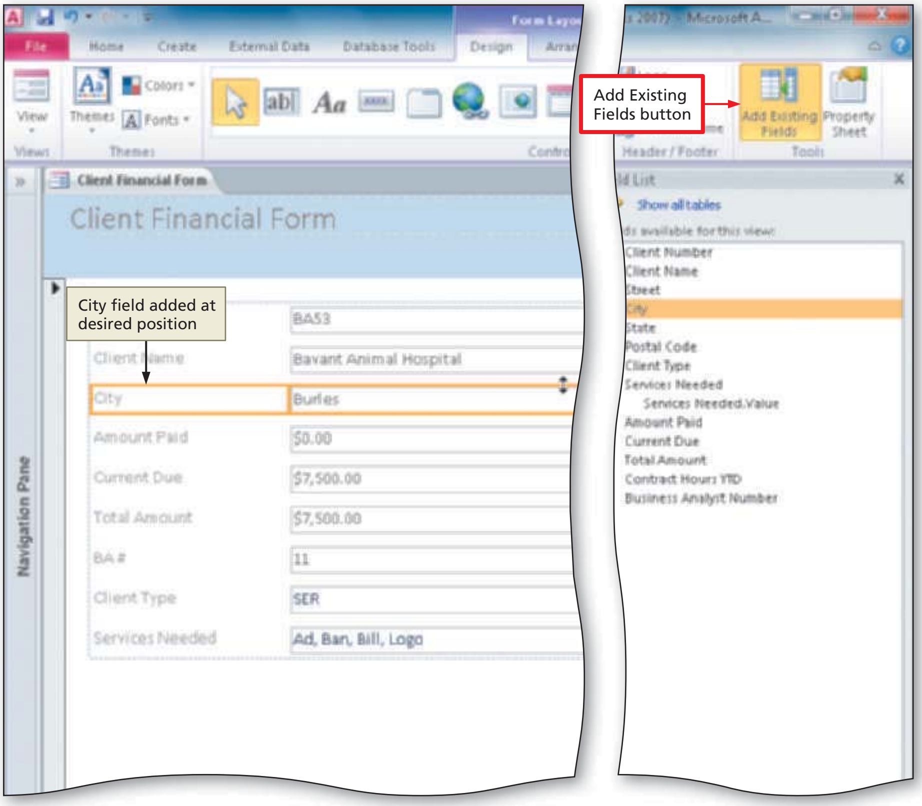
- Release the left mouse button to place the field (Figure 4–64).

Q&A What if I make a mistake?

Just as when you are modifying a report, you can delete the field by clicking the field and then pressing the DELETE key. You can move the field by dragging it to the correct position.

4

- Click the Add Existing Fields button (Form Layout Tools Design tab | Tools group) to remove the field list.


File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arran
Form Layo
View
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Views
Contro
Header / Footer
Add Existing Fields
Property Sheet
Tools
Navigation Pane
ld List
Show all tables
ds available for this view:
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Client Type
Services Needed
Services Needed.Value
Amount Paid
Current Due
Total Amount
Contract Hours YTD
Business Analyst Number

Client Financial Form

Client Number	BA53
Client Name	Bavant Animal Hospital
City	Burles
Amount Paid	$0.00
Current Due	$7,500.00
Total Amount	$7,500.00
BA #	11
Client Type	SER
Services Needed	Ad, Ban, Bill, Logo

Add Existing Fields button

City field added at desired position

Figure 4–64

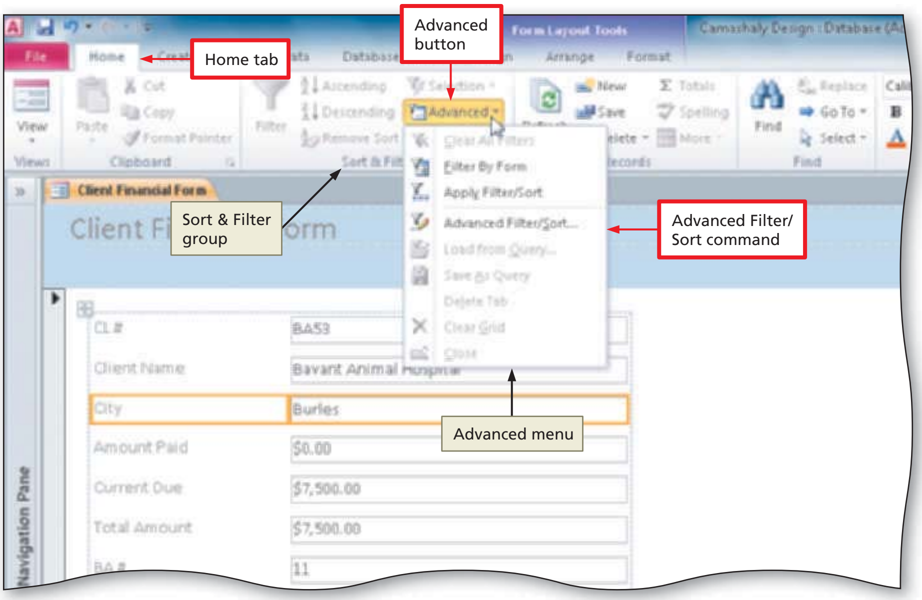
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Filter and Sort Using a Form

Just as in a datasheet, you can filter and sort using Advanced Filter/Sort, which is a command on the Advanced menu. The following steps use Advanced Filter/Sort to filter the records to those records whose city begins with the letters, Gr. They also sort the records by client name. The effect of this filter and sort is that as you use the form to move through clients, you will only encounter those clients whose cities begin with Gr. In addition, you will encounter those clients in client name order.

1

- Click Home on the Ribbon to display the Home tab.
- Click the Advanced button (Home tab | Sort & Filter group) to display the Advanced menu (Figure 4–65).

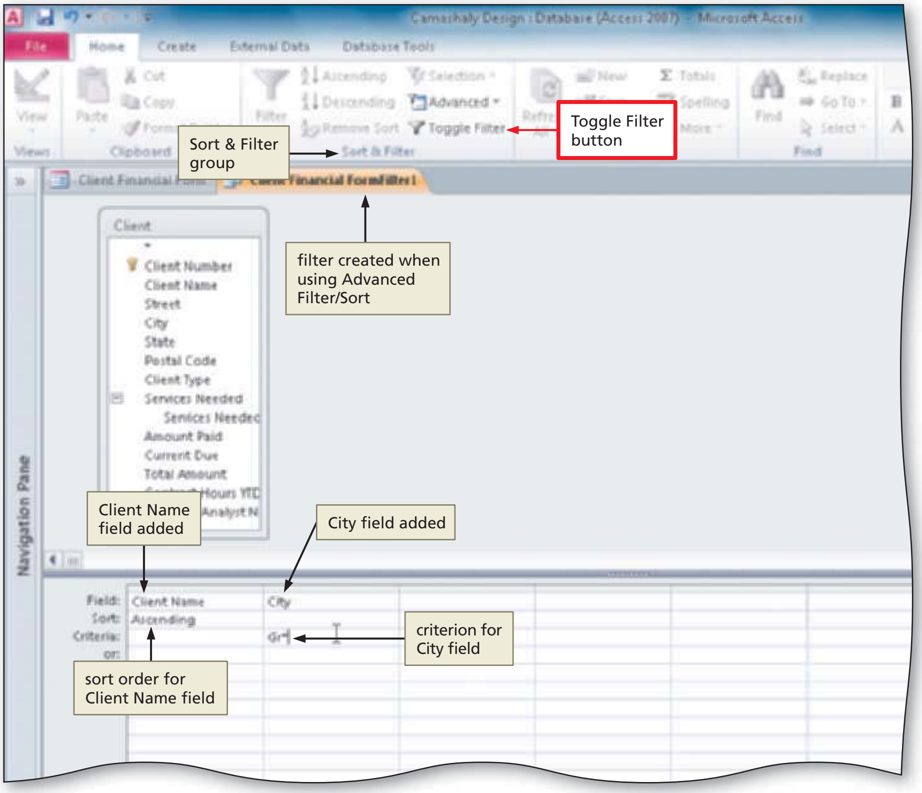

Advanced button
Home tab
Sort & Filter group
Advanced Filter/ Sort command
Advanced menu
Clear All Filters
Filter By Form
Apply Filter/Sort
Advanced Filter/Sort...
Load from Query...
Save As Query
Delete Tab
Clear Grid
Close
Client Financial Form

CL # BA53
Client Name Bavant Animal Hospital
City Burles
Amount Paid $0.00
Current Due $7,500.00
Total Amount $7,500.00
BA # 11

Figure 4–65

2

- Click Advanced Filter/Sort on the Advanced menu.
- Resize the field list so that all the fields appear.
- Add the Client Name field to the design grid and select Ascending sort order.
- Add the City field and type `Gr*` as the criterion for the City field (Figure 4–66).


Toggle Filter button
Sort & Filter group
filter created when using Advanced Filter/Sort
Client Financial FormFilter1
Client
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Client Type
Services Needed
Amount Paid
Current Due
Total Amount
Client Name field added
City field added
criterion for City field
sort order for Client Name field

Field: Client Name | City
Sort: Ascending
Criteria: Gr*

Figure 4–66

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

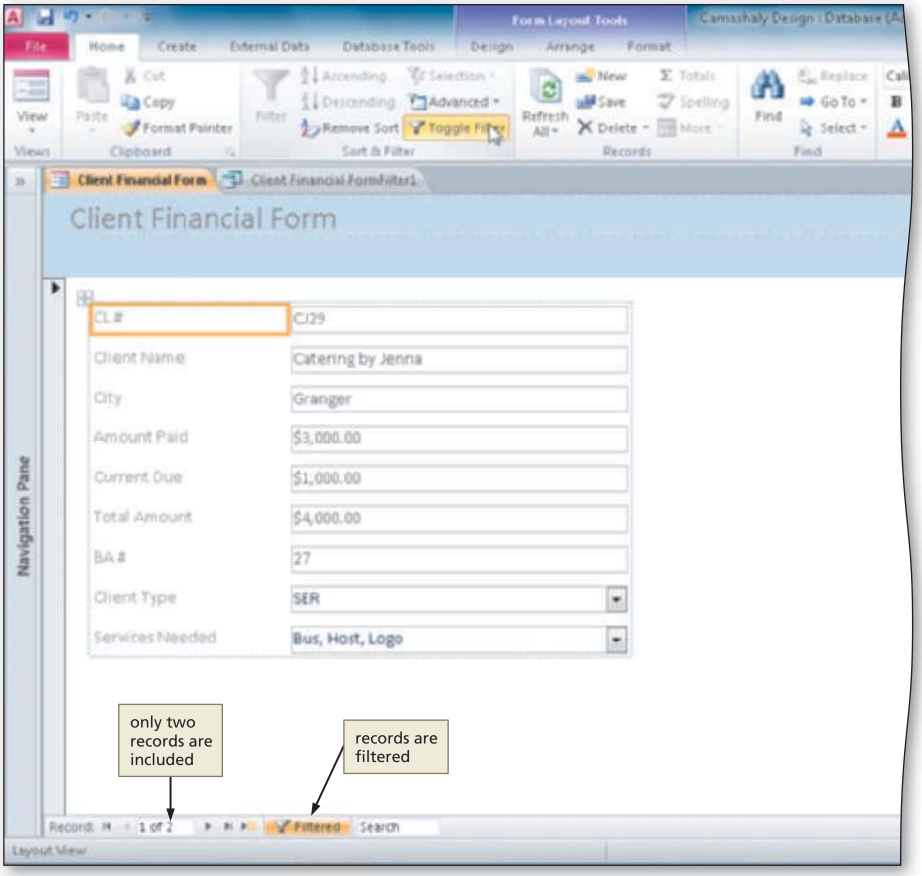
3

- Click the Toggle Filter button (Home tab | Sort & Filter group) to filter the records (Figure 4–67).

Q&A

I can only see one record at a time in the form. How can I see which records are included?

You would have to scroll through the records. For example, you could repeatedly click the Next Record button.


File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Form Layout Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Find
Client Financial Form
Client Financial FormFilter1
Navigation Pane
Record: 1 of 2
Filtered
Search
Layout View

Client Financial Form

CL #	CJ29
Client Name	Catering by Jenna
City	Granger
Amount Paid	$3,000.00
Current Due	$1,000.00
Total Amount	$4,000.00
BA #	27
Client Type	SER
Services Needed	Bus, Host, Logo

only two records are included

records are filtered

Figure 4–67

To Clear a Form Filter

When you no longer want the records to be filtered, you clear the filter. The following steps clear the current filter for the Client Financial Form.

1. Click the Advanced button (Home tab | Sort & Filter group) to display the Advanced menu.
2. Click Clear All Filters on the Advanced menu to clear the filter.

To Save and Close a Form

Now that you have completed your work on your form, you should save the form and close it. The following steps first save your work on the form and then close the form.

1. Click the Save button on the Quick Access Toolbar to save your work.
2. Close the Client Financial Form.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Print a Form

You can print all records, a range of records, or a selected record of a form by selecting the appropriate print range. To print the selected record, the form must be open. To print all records or a range of records, the form can simply be highlighted in the Navigation Pane. The following steps open the Client Financial Form and then print the first record in the form, which is the selected record.

1. Open the Navigation Pane, and then, if necessary, select the Client Financial Form.
2. Right-click the Client Financial Form and click Open on the shortcut menu.
3. Click File on the Ribbon to open the Backstage view.
4. Click the Print tab in the Backstage view to display the Print gallery.
5. Click the Print button to display the Print dialog box.
6. Click the Selected Record(s) option button in the Page Range box, and then click the OK button.

BTW

Certification

The Microsoft Office Specialist (MOS) program provides an opportunity for you to obtain a valuable industry credential – proof that you have the Access 2010 skills required by employers. For more information, visit the Access 2010 Certification Web page (scsite.com/ac2010/cert).

The Arrange Tab

Forms, like reports, have an Arrange tab that you can use to modify the form's layout. However, the Page Setup tab is not available for forms. The buttons on the Arrange tab and the functions of those buttons are just like the ones described in Table 4–1 on page AC 230, with one exception. When working with a form, there is an extra button, the Anchoring button. The function of this button is to tie a control to a section or another control so that it moves or resizes in conjunction with the movement or resizing of its parent.

Mailing Labels

Organizations need to send invoices and other correspondence to clients on a regular basis. Using preprinted mailing labels eliminates much of the manual labor involved in preparing mailings. In Access, mailing labels are a special type of report. When this report prints, the data appears on the mailing labels aligned correctly and in the order you specify.

BTW

Customizing Mailing Labels

Once you create mailing labels, you can customize them just as you can customize other reports. In Design view, you can add a picture to the label, change the font size, adjust the spacing between controls, or make any other desired changes.

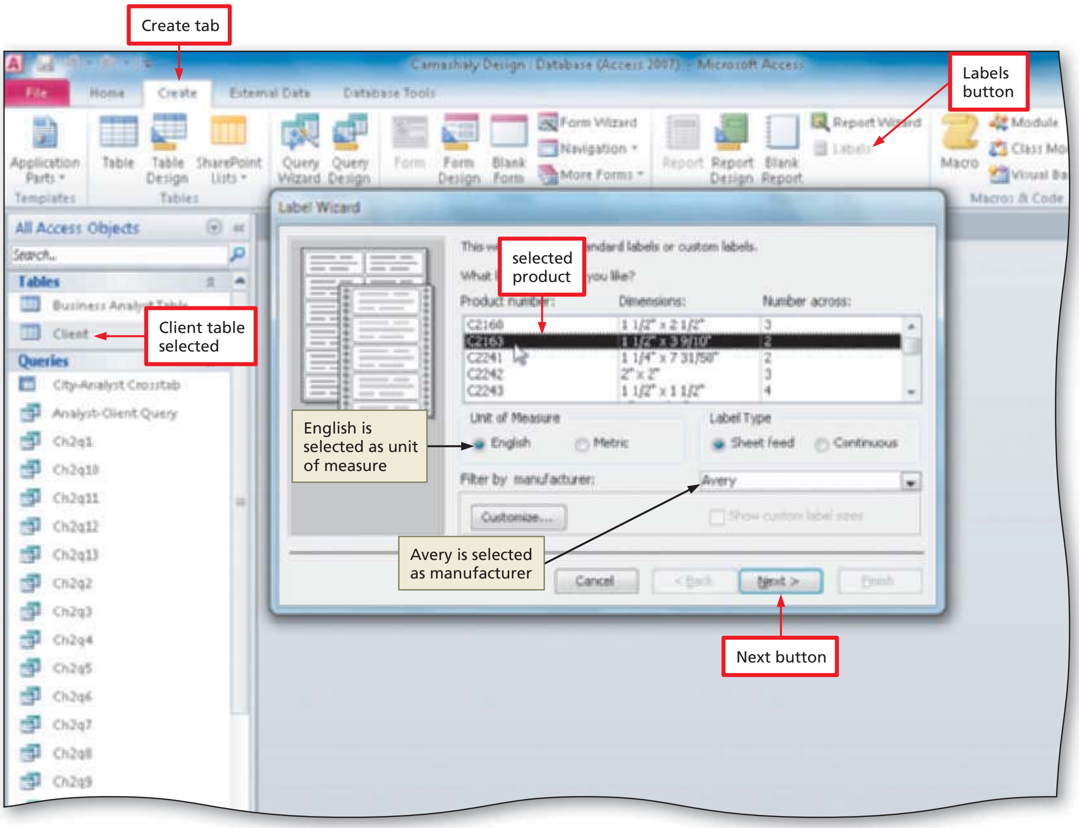
To Create Labels

You create labels just as you create reports. The Label Wizard assists you in the process. Using the wizard, you can specify the type and dimensions of the label, the font used for the label, and the content of the label. The following steps create the labels.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

1

- If necessary, open the Navigation Pane and select the Client table.
- Click Create on the Ribbon to display the Create tab.
- Click the Labels button (Create tab | Reports group) to display the Label Wizard dialog box.
- Ensure that English is selected as the Unit of Measure and that Avery is selected in the 'Filter by manufacturer' box.
- Scroll through the label types until C2163 appears and then click C2163 in the Product number list to select the specific type of labels (Figure 4–68).


Create tab
Labels button
Client table selected
selected product
English is selected as unit of measure
Avery is selected as manufacturer
Next button
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Label Wizard
All Access Objects
Tables
Business Analyst Table
Client
Queries
Cancel
< Back
Next >
Finish

Product number: | Dimensions: | Number across:
C2160 | 1 1/2" x 2 1/2" | 3
C2163 | 1 1/2" x 3 9/10" | 2
C2241 | 1 1/4" x 7 31/50" | 2
C2242 | 2" x 2" | 3
C2243 | 1 1/2" x 1 1/2" | 4

Unit of Measure: ● English ○ Metric
Label Type: ● Sheet feed ○ Continuous
Filter by manufacturer: Avery

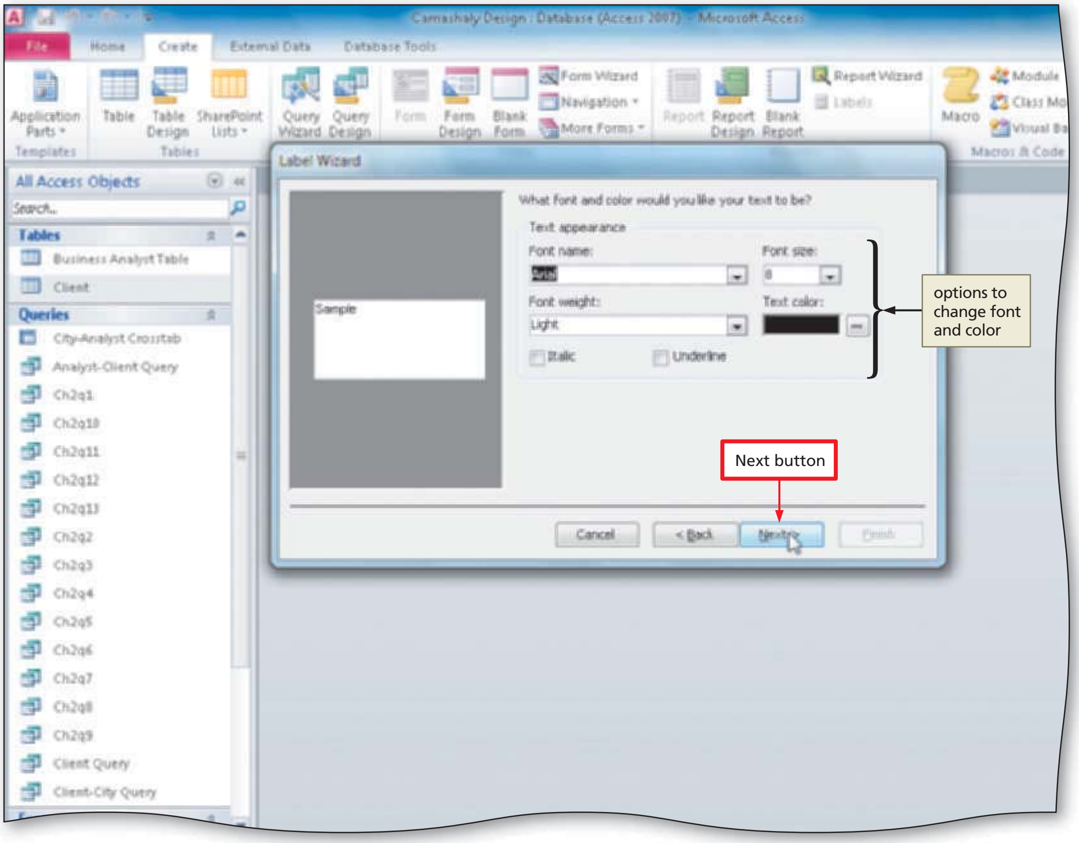
Figure 4–68

2

- Click the Next button (Figure 4–69).

Q&A What font characteristics could I change with this screen?

You could change the font, the font size, the font weight, and/or the font color. You could also specify italic or underlining.


options to change font and color
Next button
Label Wizard
Sample
Cancel
< Back
Next >
Finish

What font and color would you like your text to be?
Text appearance
Font name: Arial
Font size: 8
Font weight: Light
Text color:
☐ Italic ☐ Underline

Figure 4–69

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

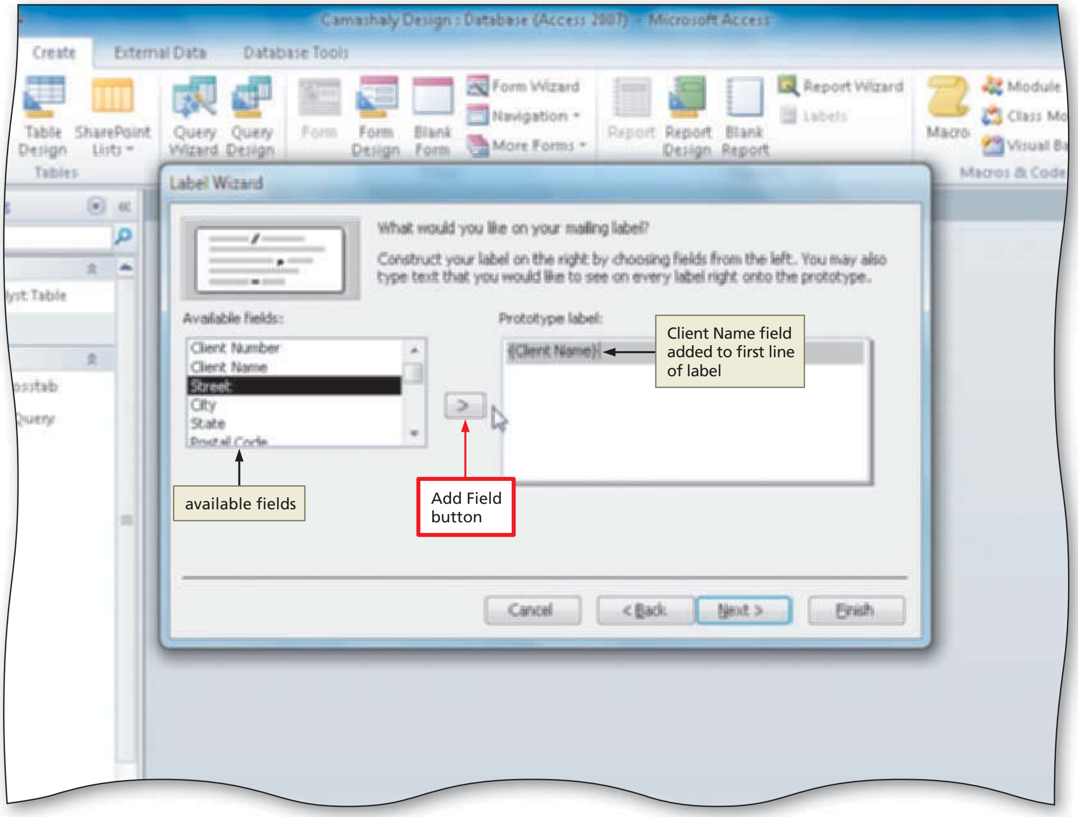
3

- Click the Next button to accept the default font and color settings.
- Click the Client Name field and then click the Add Field button (Figure 4–70).

Q&A

What if I make a mistake?

You can erase the contents of any line in the label by clicking in the line to produce an insertion point and then using the DELETE or BACKSPACE keys to erase the current contents. You can then add the correct field by clicking the field and then clicking the Add Field button.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Table Design
SharePoint Lists
Tables
Query Wizard
Query Design
Form
Form Design
Blank Form
Form Wizard
Navigation
More Forms
Report
Report Design
Blank Report
Report Wizard
Labels
Macro
Module
Class Mo
Visual Ba
Macros & Code
Label Wizard
Available fields:
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Prototype label:
{Client Name}
Client Name field added to first line of label
available fields
Add Field button
>
Cancel
< Back
Next >
Finish

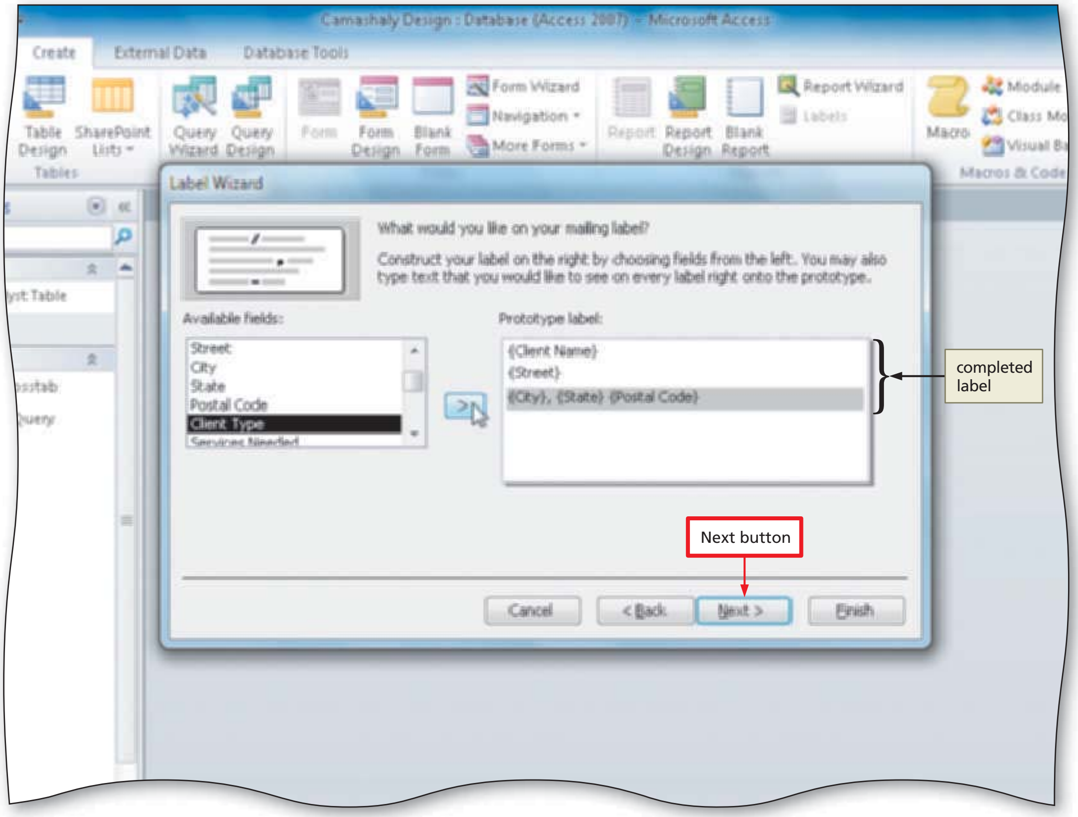
What would you like on your mailing label?

Construct your label on the right by choosing fields from the left. You may also type text that you would like to see on every label right onto the prototype.

Figure 4–70

4

- Click the second line in the label, and then add the Street field.
- Click the third line of the label.
- Add the City field, type , (a comma), press the SPACEBAR, add the State field, press the SPACEBAR, and then add the Postal Code field (Figure 4–71).


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Table Design
SharePoint Lists
Tables
Query Wizard
Query Design
Form
Form Design
Blank Form
Form Wizard
Navigation
More Forms
Report
Report Design
Blank Report
Report Wizard
Labels
Macro
Module
Class Mo
Visual Ba
Macros & Code
Label Wizard
Available fields:
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Client Type
Services Needed
Prototype label:
{Client Name}
{Street}
{City}, {State} {Postal Code}
completed label
Next button
>
Cancel
< Back
Next >
Finish

What would you like on your mailing label?

Construct your label on the right by choosing fields from the left. You may also type text that you would like to see on every label right onto the prototype.

Figure 4–71

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

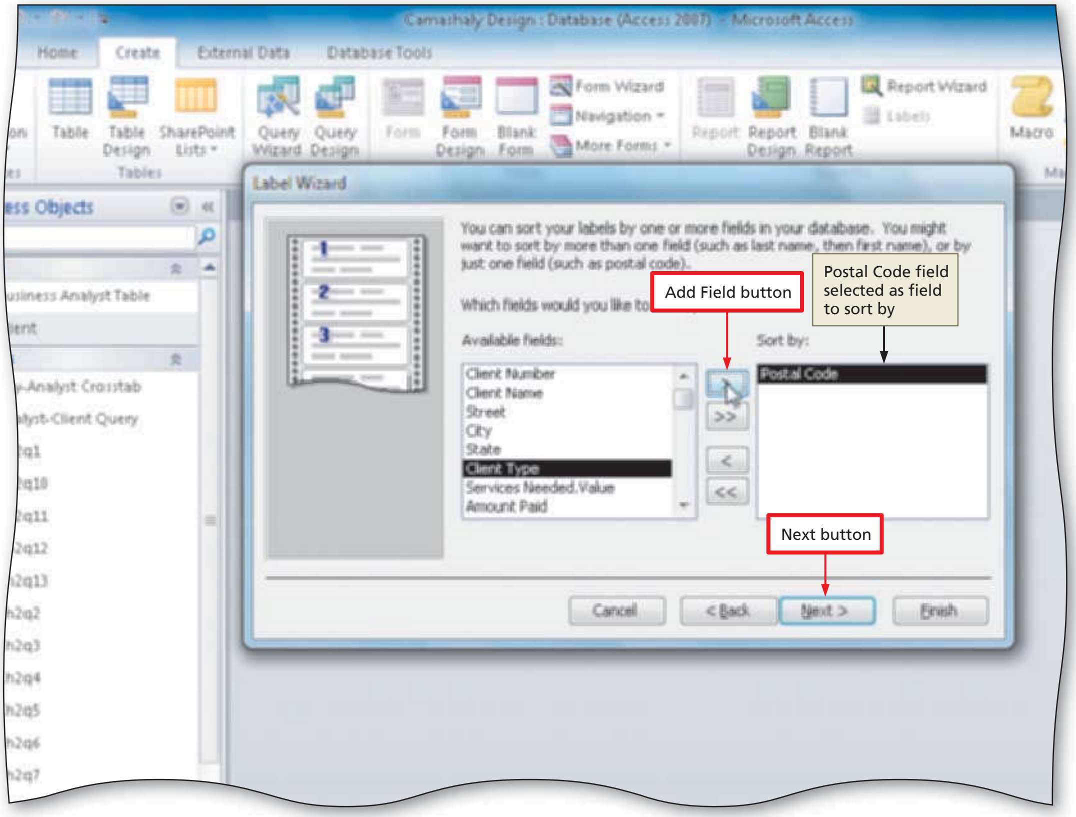
5

- Because the label is now complete, click the Next button.
- Select the Postal Code field as the field to sort by, and then click the Add Field button (Figure 4–72).

Q&A

Why am I sorting by postal code?

When you need to do a bulk mailing, that is, mail a large number of items using a special mail rate, mail organizations often require that the mail be sorted in postal code order.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Table
Table Design
SharePoint Lists
Tables
Query Wizard
Query Design
Form
Form Design
Blank Form
Form Wizard
Navigation
More Forms
Report
Report Design
Blank Report
Report Wizard
Labels
Macro
Label Wizard
Cancel
< Back
Next >
Finish

You can sort your labels by one or more fields in your database. You might want to sort by more than one field (such as last name, then first name), or by just one field (such as postal code).

Which fields would you like to

Available fields:

- Client Number
- Client Name
- Street
- City
- State
- Client Type
- Services Needed.Value
- Amount Paid

Sort by:

- Postal Code

Add Field button

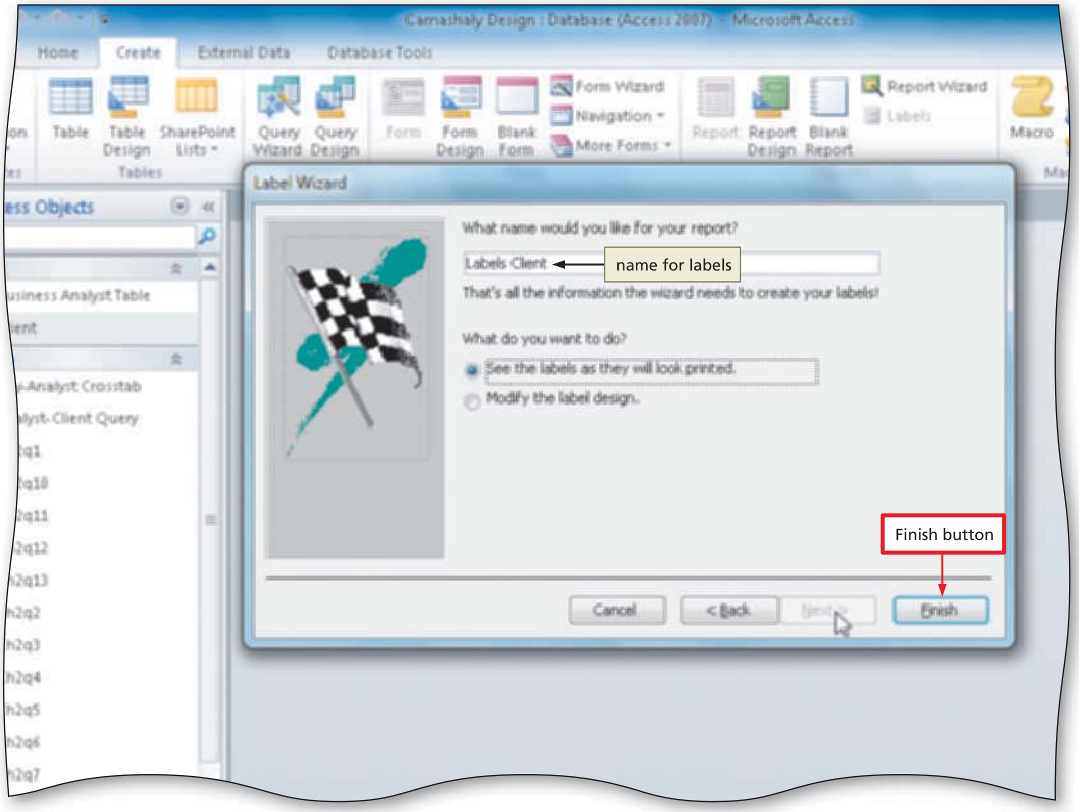
Postal Code field selected as field to sort by

Next button

Figure 4–72

6

- Click the Next button.
- Ensure the name for the report (that is, the labels) is Labels Client (Figure 4–73).


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Table
Table Design
SharePoint Lists
Tables
Query Wizard
Query Design
Form
Form Design
Blank Form
Form Wizard
Navigation
More Forms
Report
Report Design
Blank Report
Report Wizard
Labels
Macro
Label Wizard
Cancel
< Back
Next >
Finish

What name would you like for your report?

Labels Client

That's all the information the wizard needs to create your labels!

What do you want to do?

● See the labels as they will look printed.

○ Modify the label design.

name for labels

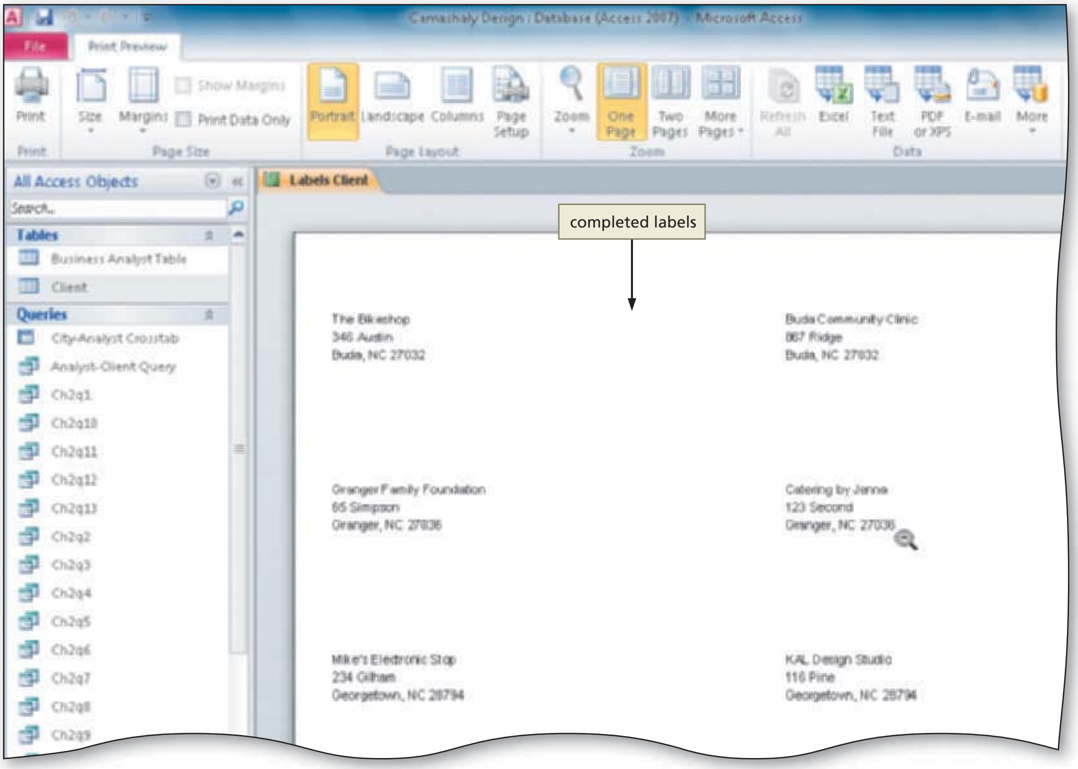
Finish button

Figure 4–73

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

7
- Click the Finish button to complete the labels (Figure 4–74).

8
- Close the Labels Client report.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Print Preview
Print
Size
Margins
Show Margins
Print Data Only
Page Size
Portrait
Landscape
Columns
Page Setup
Page Layout
Zoom
One Page
Two Pages
More Pages
Refresh All
Excel
Text File
PDF or XPS
E-mail
More
Data
All Access Objects
Search...
Tables
Business Analyst Table
Client
Queries
City-Analyst Crosstab
Analyst-Client Query
Ch2q1
Ch2q10
Ch2q11
Ch2q12
Ch2q13
Ch2q2
Ch2q3
Ch2q4
Ch2q5
Ch2q6
Ch2q7
Ch2q8
Ch2q9
Labels Client
completed labels

The Bikeshop
346 Austin
Buda, NC 27032

Buda Community Clinic
867 Ridge
Buda, NC 27032

Granger Family Foundation
65 Simpson
Granger, NC 27036

Catering by Jenna
123 Second
Granger, NC 27036

Mike's Electronic Stop
234 Gilham
Georgetown, NC 28794

KAL Design Studio
116 Pine
Georgetown, NC 28794

Figure 4–74

To Print Labels

You print labels just as you print a report. The only difference is that you must load the labels in the printer before printing. The following steps print the labels once you have loaded labels in your printer.

1. With the Labels Client report selected in the Navigation Pane, click File on the Ribbon to open the Backstage view.
2. Click the Print tab in the Backstage view to display the Print gallery.
3. Click the Quick Print button to print the labels.

Q&A

I want to load the correct number of labels. How do I know how many pages of labels will print?

If you are unsure how many pages of labels will print, open the label report in Print Preview first. Use the Navigation buttons in the Status bar of the Print Preview window to determine how many pages of labels will print.

To Quit Access

The following steps quit Access.

1. Click the Close button on the right side of the title bar to quit Access.
2. If a Microsoft Access dialog box appears, click the Save button to save any changes made to the object since the last save.

BTW

Quick Reference
For a table that lists how to complete the tasks covered in this book using the mouse, Ribbon, shortcut menu, and keyboard, see the Quick Reference Summary at the back of this book, or visit the Access 2010 Quick Reference Web page (scsite.com/ac2010/qr).

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Chapter Summary

In this chapter you have learned to use wizards to create reports and forms, modify the layout of reports and forms using Layout view, group and sort in a report, add totals to a report, conditionally format controls, filter records in reports and forms, resize and move controls, add fields to reports and forms, include gridlines, add a date, move controls in a control layout, apply themes, and create mailing labels. The items listed below include all the new Access skills you have learned in this chapter.

1. Group and Sort in a Report (AC 217)
2. Add Totals and Subtotals (AC 221)
3. Remove the Group, Sort, and Total Pane (AC 223)
4. Conditionally Format Controls (AC 224)
5. Filter Records in a Report (AC 228)
6. Clear a Report Filter (AC 229)
7. Create a Report that Involves Multiple Tables (AC 232)
8. Create a Report in Layout View (AC 238)
9. Assign a Theme to All Objects (AC 240)
10. Assign a Theme to a Single Object (AC 241)
11. Create a Summary Report (AC 242)
12. Use the Form Wizard to Create a Form (AC 243)
13. Place Controls in a Control Layout (AC 245)
14. Add a Date (AC 246)
15. Change the Format of a Control (AC 248)
16. Move a Control (AC 249)
17. Move Controls in a Control Layout (AC 249)
18. Add a Field (AC 251)
19. Filter and Sort Using a Form (AC 253)
20. Create Labels (AC 255)

If you have a SAM 2010 user profile, your instructor may have assigned an autogradable version of this assignment. If so, log into the SAM 2010 Web site at www.cengage.com/sam2010 to download the instruction and start files.

Learn It Online

Test your knowledge of chapter content and key terms.

Instructions: To complete the Learn It Online exercises, start your browser, click the Address bar, and then enter the Web address **`scsite.com/ac2010/learn`**. When the Access 2010 Learn It Online page is displayed, click the link for the exercise you want to complete and then read the instructions.

Chapter Reinforcement TF, MC, and SA

A series of true/false, multiple choice, and short answer questions that test your knowledge of the chapter content.

Flash Cards

An interactive learning environment where you identify chapter key terms associated with displayed definitions.

Practice Test

A series of multiple choice questions that test your knowledge of chapter content and key terms.

Who Wants To Be a Computer Genius?

An interactive game that challenges your knowledge of chapter content in the style of a television quiz show.

Wheel of Terms

An interactive game that challenges your knowledge of chapter key terms in the style of the television show *Wheel of Fortune*.

Crossword Puzzle Challenge

A crossword puzzle that challenges your knowledge of key terms presented in the chapter.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Apply Your Knowledge

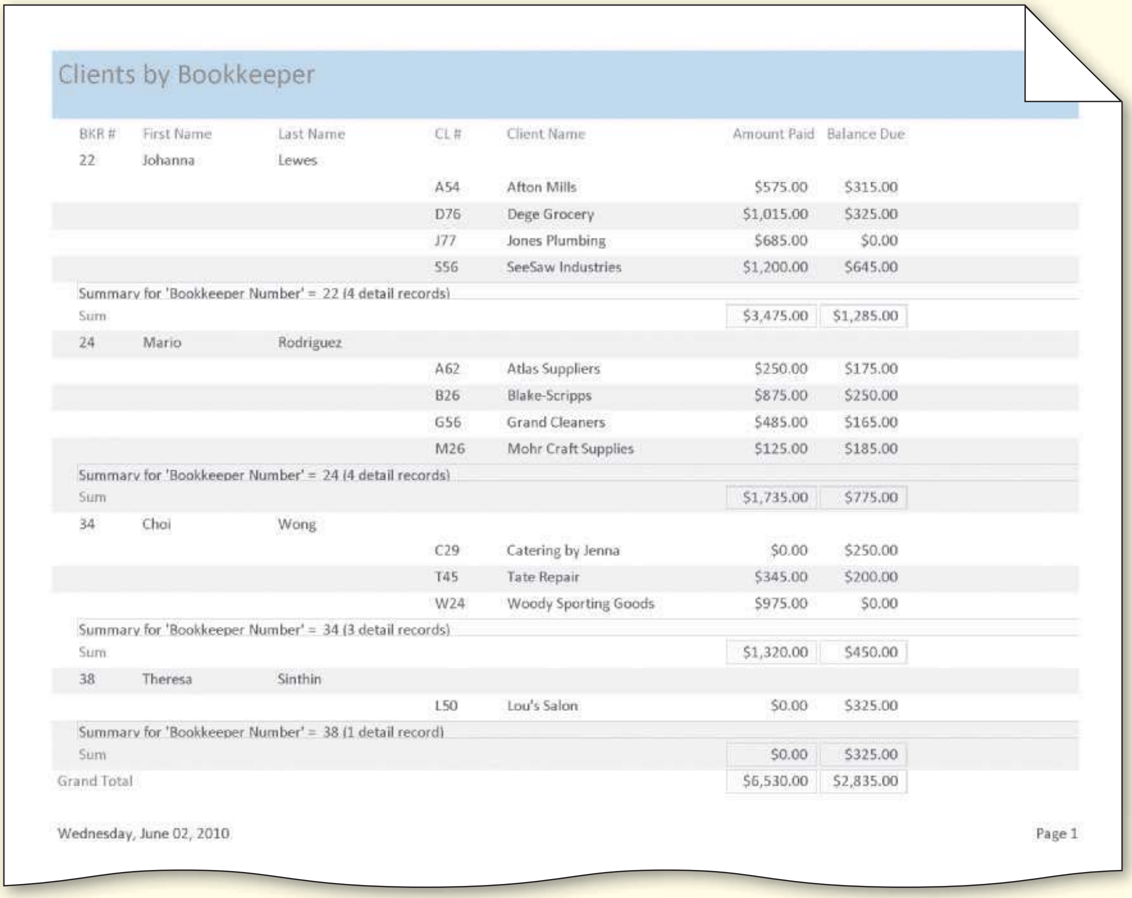
Reinforce the skills and apply the concepts you learned in this chapter.

Creating a Report and a Form

Instructions: Start Access. If you are using the Microsoft Access 2010 Complete or the Microsoft Access 2010 Comprehensive text, open the Babbage CPA Firm database that you used in Chapter 3. Otherwise, see your instructor for information on accessing the files required in this book.

Perform the following tasks:

1. Create the Clients by Bookkeeper report shown in Figure 4–75. The report is grouped by bookkeeper number and sorted by client number within bookkeeper number. Include totals for the Amount Paid and Balance Due fields. Change the orientation to landscape.



Clients by Bookkeeper

BKR #	First Name	Last Name	CL #	Client Name	Amount Paid	Balance Due
22	Johanna	Lewes				
			A54	Afton Mills	$575.00	$315.00
			D76	Dege Grocery	$1,015.00	$325.00
			J77	Jones Plumbing	$685.00	$0.00
			S56	SeeSaw Industries	$1,200.00	$645.00
Summary for 'Bookkeeper Number' = 22 (4 detail records)						
Sum					$3,475.00	$1,285.00
24	Mario	Rodriguez				
			A62	Atlas Suppliers	$250.00	$175.00
			B26	Blake-Scripps	$875.00	$250.00
			G56	Grand Cleaners	$485.00	$165.00
			M26	Mohr Craft Supplies	$125.00	$185.00
Summary for 'Bookkeeper Number' = 24 (4 detail records)						
Sum					$1,735.00	$775.00
34	Choi	Wong				
			C29	Catering by Jenna	$0.00	$250.00
			T45	Tate Repair	$345.00	$200.00
			W24	Woody Sporting Goods	$975.00	$0.00
Summary for 'Bookkeeper Number' = 34 (3 detail records)						
Sum					$1,320.00	$450.00
38	Theresa	Sinthin				
			L50	Lou's Salon	$0.00	$325.00
Summary for 'Bookkeeper Number' = 38 (1 detail record)						
Sum					$0.00	$325.00
Grand Total					$6,530.00	$2,835.00

Wednesday, June 02, 2010

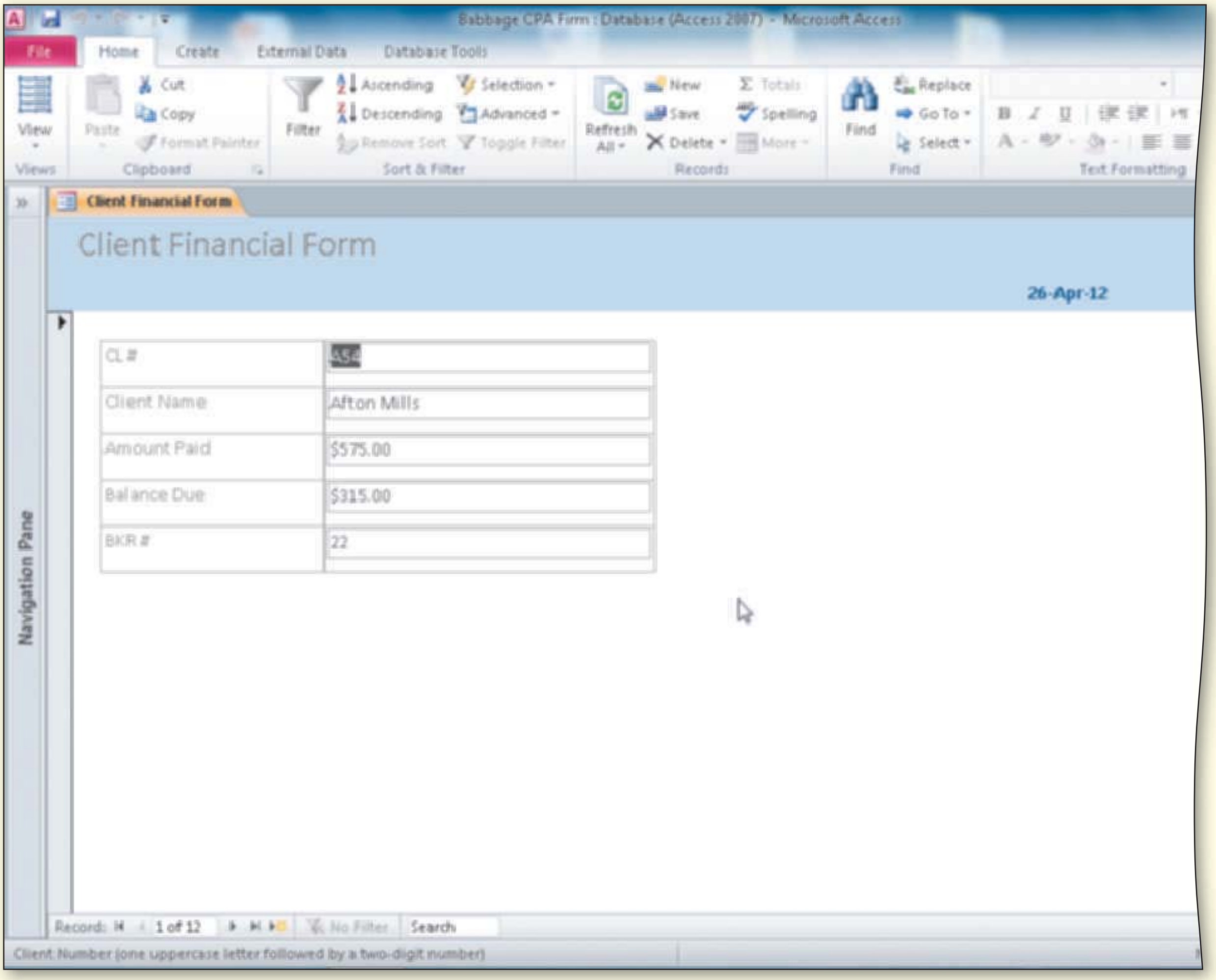
Page 1

Figure 4–75

Continued >

Apply Your Knowledge *continued*

2. Create the Client Financial Form shown in Figure 4–76 for the Client table. The form includes the current date and is similar in style to that shown in Figure 4–3 on page AC 212.



Babbage CPA Firm : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Views
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Clipboard
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Sort & Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Records
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Find
Text Formatting
Navigation Pane
Client Financial Form
Record: 1 of 12
No Filter
Search

Client Financial Form

26-Apr-12

CL #	A54
Client Name	Afton Mills
Amount Paid	$575.00
Balance Due	$315.00
BKR #	22

Client Number (one uppercase letter followed by a two-digit number)

Figure 4–76

3. Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

Extend Your Knowledge

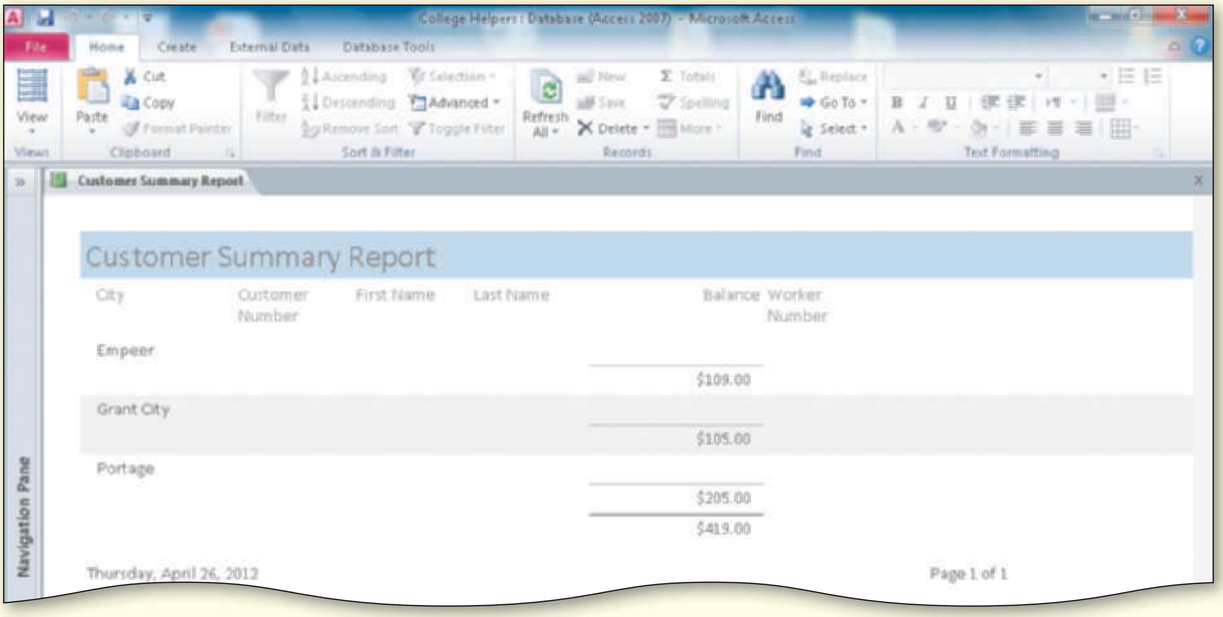
Extend the skills you learned in this chapter and experiment with new skills. You may need to use Help to complete the assignment.

Creating a Summary Report and Assigning a Theme to a Form

Instructions: See the inside back cover of this book for instructions for downloading the Data Files for Students, or see your instructor for information on accessing the required files.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

The College Helpers database contains data for a group of college students who perform miscellaneous jobs for homeowners to earn tuition money. You will create the summary report shown in Figure 4–77. You also will create the form shown in Figure 4–78.


College Helpers : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Views
Clipboard
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Sort & Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Records
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Find
Text Formatting
Customer Summary Report
Navigation Pane

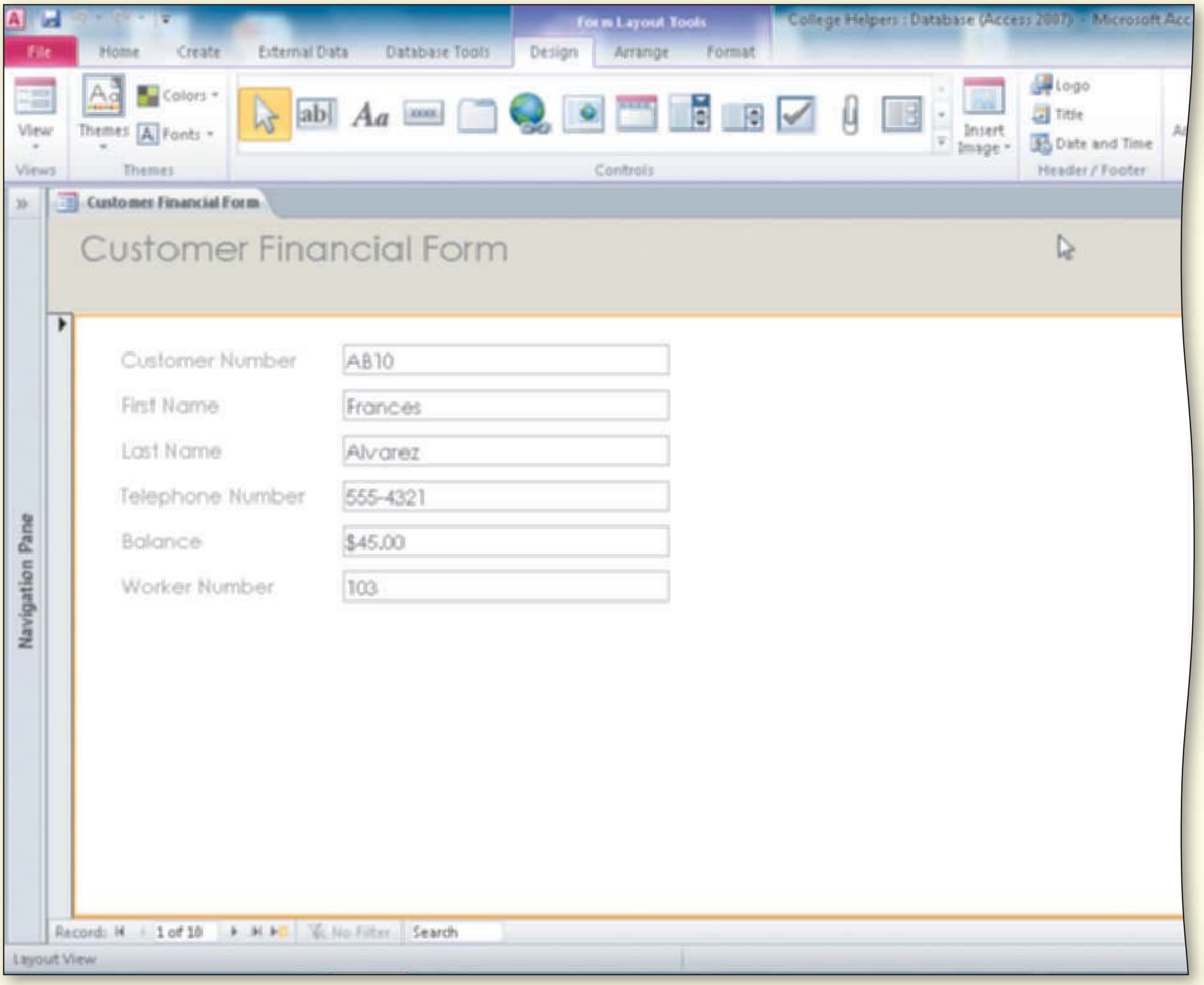
Customer Summary Report

City	Customer Number	First Name	Last Name	Balance	Worker Number
Empeer					
				$109.00	
Grant City					
				$105.00	
Portage					
				$205.00	
				$419.00	

Thursday, April 26, 2012

Page 1 of 1

Figure 4–77


Form Layout Tools
College Helpers : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Acc
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
View
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Views
Themes
Controls
Insert Image
Logo
Title
Date and Time
Header / Footer
Customer Financial Form
Navigation Pane
Record: 1 of 10
No Filter
Search
Layout View

Customer Financial Form

Customer Number	AB10
First Name	Frances
Last Name	Alvarez
Telephone Number	555-4321
Balance	$45.00
Worker Number	103

Figure 4–78

Continued >

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Extend Your Knowledge *continued*

Perform the following tasks:

1. Use the Report Wizard to create the summary report shown in Figure 4–77. Name the report Customer Summary Report. Group the report by city and sort by customer number within city. Include totals for the balance. Change the orientation to landscape.
2. Create the Customer Financial Form shown in Figure 4–78. The form has a stacked control layout. Apply the Austin theme to this form only.
3. Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

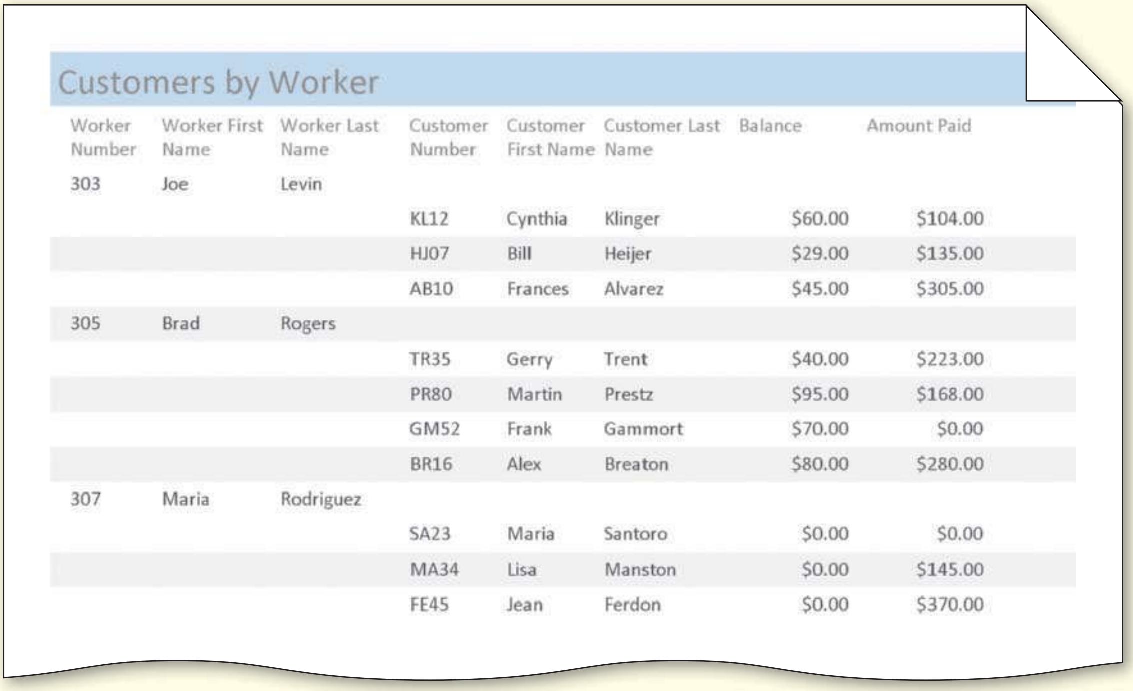
Make It Right

Analyze a database and correct all errors and/or improve the design.

Correcting Report and Form Design Errors

Instructions: Start Access. Open the WeClean4You database. See the inside back cover of this book for instructions for downloading the Data Files for Students, or see your instructor for information on accessing the required files.

The WeClean4You database contains data for a company that does residential cleaning. The owner of the company has created the report shown in Figure 4–79 using the Report Wizard, but she forgot to sort the report by customer number. She does not know how to total the Balance and Amount Paid fields. She would like to differentiate customers whose amount paid value is $0.00 by making the amount appear in a bold red font. *Hint:* Use Layout view to make the corrections.



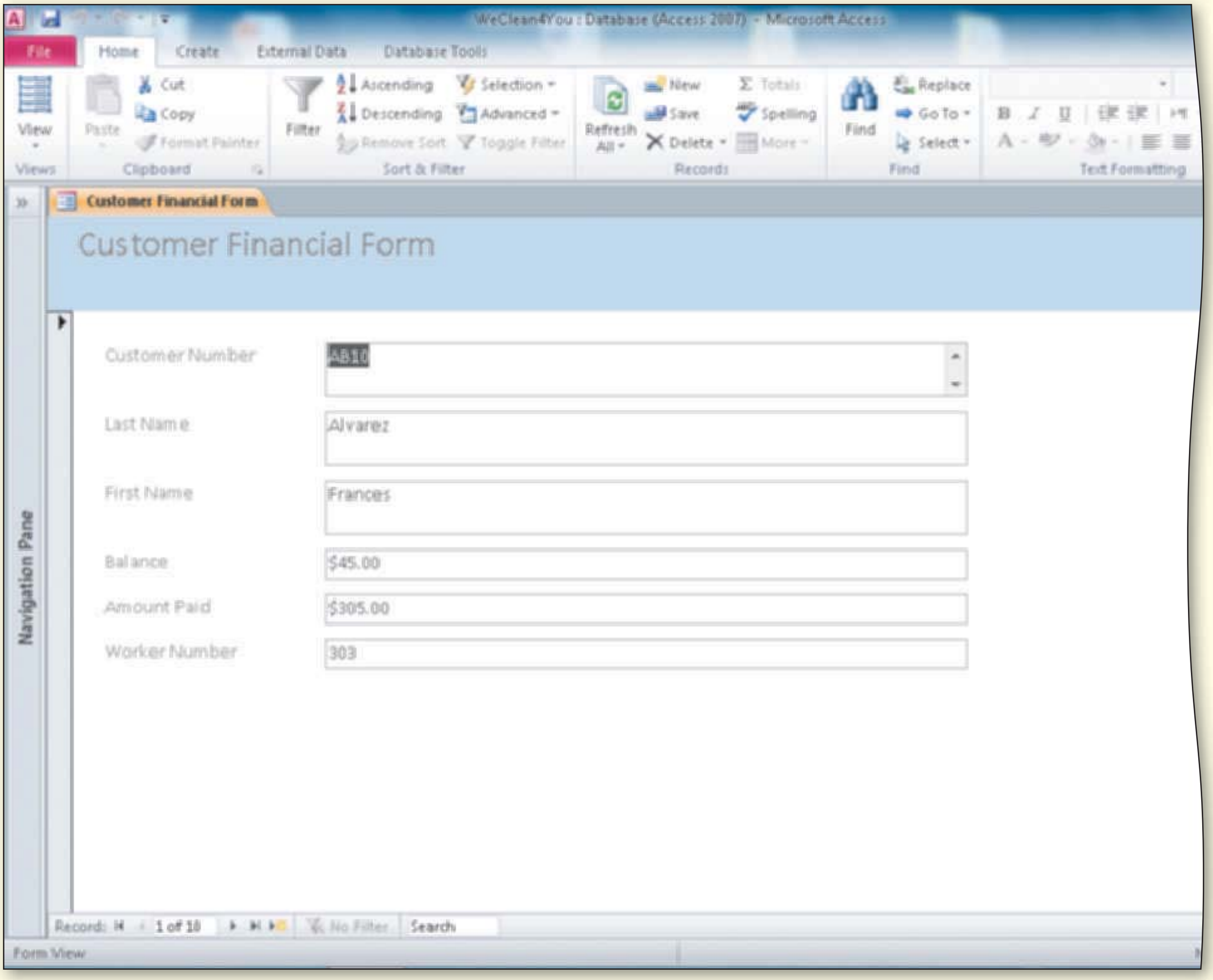
Customers by Worker

Worker Number	Worker First Name	Worker Last Name	Customer Number	Customer First Name	Customer Last Name	Balance	Amount Paid
303	Joe	Levin					
			KL12	Cynthia	Klinger	$60.00	$104.00
			HJ07	Bill	Heijer	$29.00	$135.00
			AB10	Frances	Alvarez	$45.00	$305.00
305	Brad	Rogers					
			TR35	Gerry	Trent	$40.00	$223.00
			PR80	Martin	Prestz	$95.00	$168.00
			GM52	Frank	Gammort	$70.00	$0.00
			BR16	Alex	Breaton	$80.00	$280.00
307	Maria	Rodriguez					
			SA23	Maria	Santoro	$0.00	$0.00
			MA34	Lisa	Manston	$0.00	$145.00
			FE45	Jean	Ferdon	$0.00	$370.00

Figure 4–79

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

She also created the form shown in Figure 4–80 for the Customer table, but she forgot to add the Telephone Number field. The Telephone Number field should appear before the Balance field. She would like the customer first name to appear before the customer last name and she would like to add the date to the form header.


WeClean4You : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Views
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Clipboard
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Sort & Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Records
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Find
Text Formatting
Customer Financial Form
Navigation Pane
Record: 1 of 18
No Filter
Search
Form View

Customer Financial Form

Customer Number	AB10
Last Name	Alvarez
First Name	Frances
Balance	$45.00
Amount Paid	$305.00
Worker Number	303

Figure 4–80

Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

In the Lab

Design, create, modify, and/or use a database following the guidelines, concepts, and skills presented in this chapter. Labs 1, 2, and 3 are listed in order of increasing difficulty.

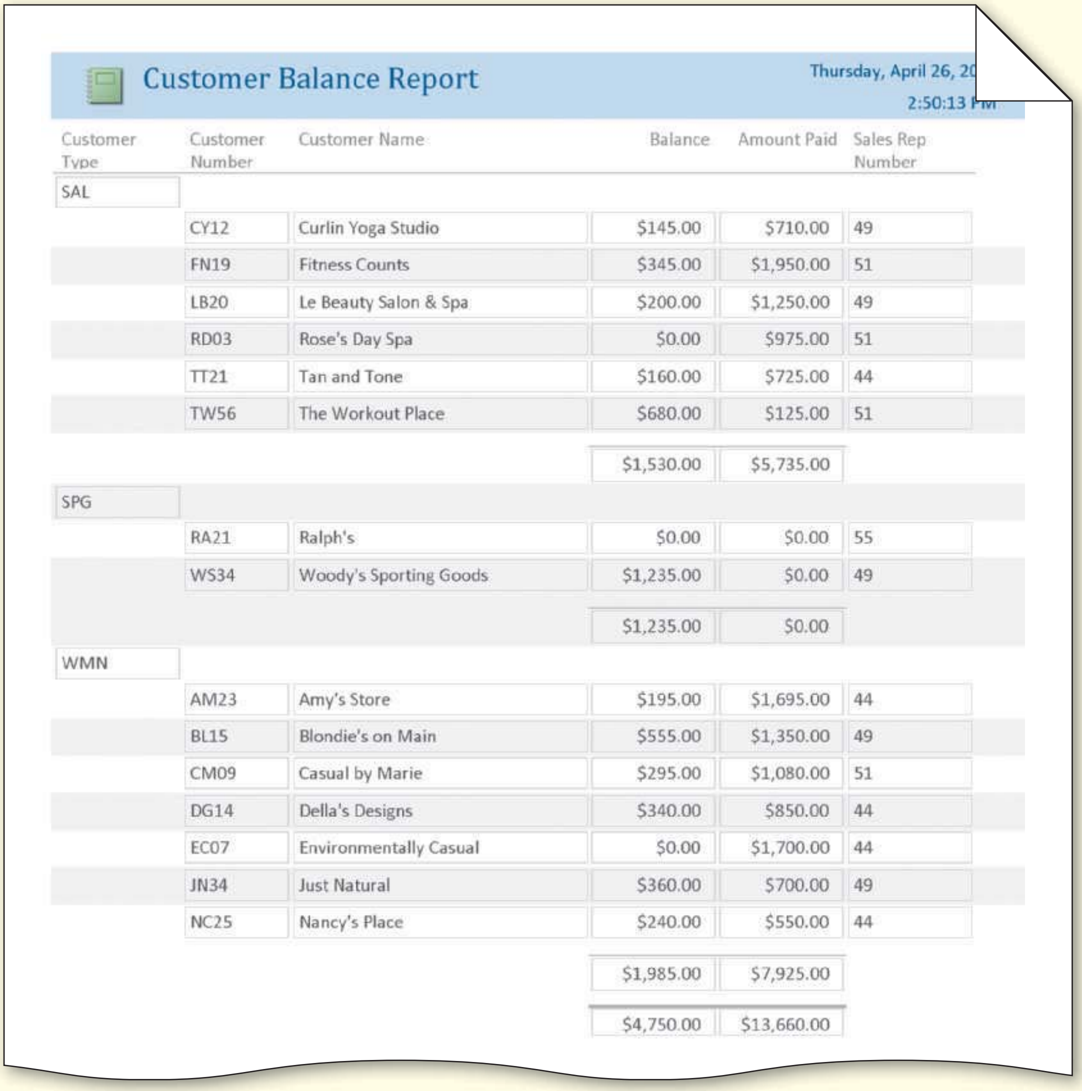
Lab 1: Presenting Data in the ECO Clothesline Database

Problem: The management of ECO Clothesline already has realized the benefits from the database of customers and sales reps that you created. The management now would like to prepare reports and forms for the database.

Instructions: If you are using the Microsoft Access 2010 Complete or the Microsoft Access 2010 Comprehensive text, open the ECO Clothesline database that you used in Chapter 3. Otherwise, see your instructor for information on accessing the files required in this book.

Perform the following tasks:

1. Open in Layout view the Customer Balance Report you created in Chapter 1 and revised in Chapter 3. Modify the report to create the report shown in Figure 4–81. Group the report by Customer Type and sort by Customer Number within Customer Type. Add the Amount Paid field to the report and include totals for the Balance and Amount Paid fields.



Customer Balance Report

Thursday, April 26, 20

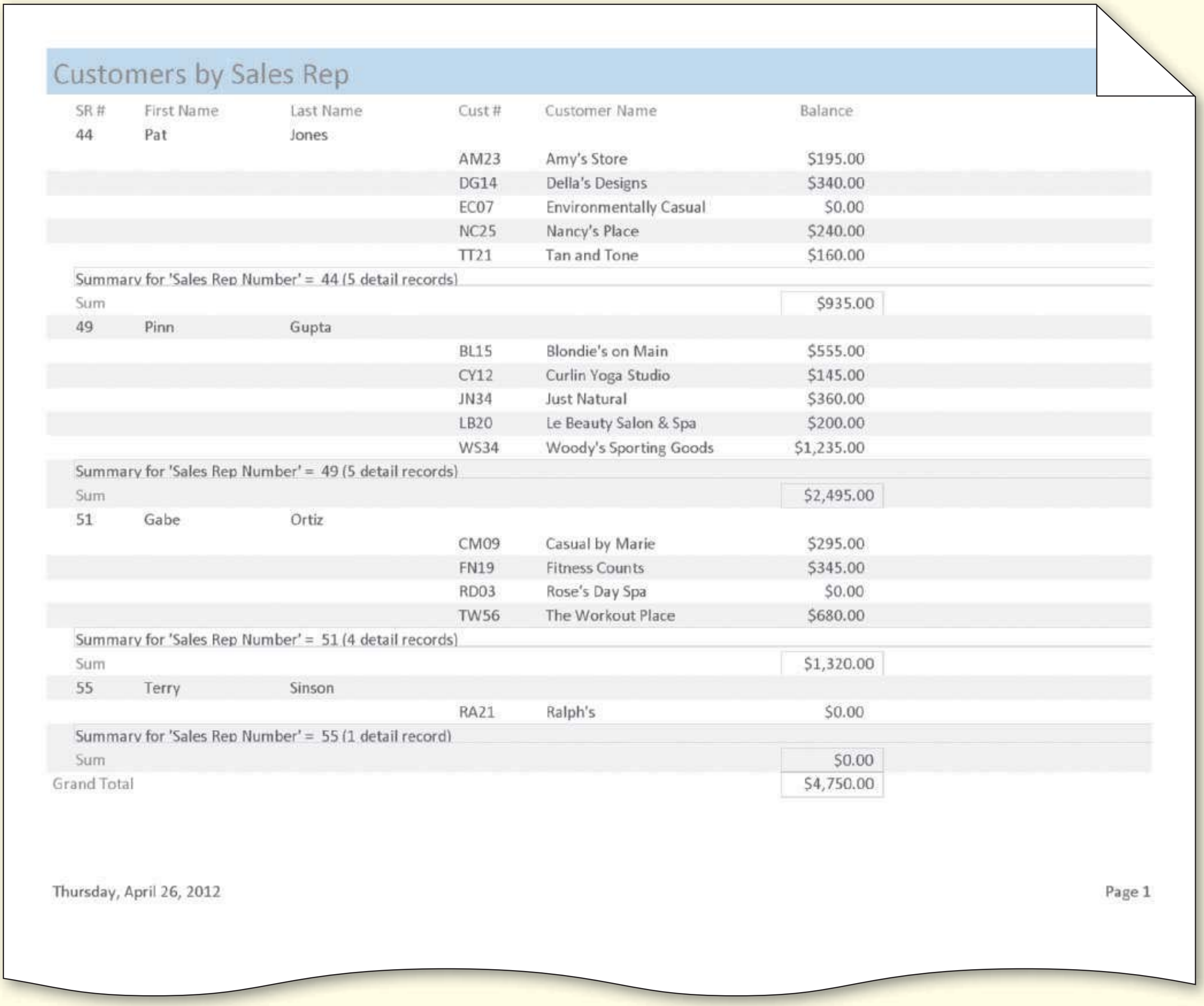
2:50:13 PM

Customer Type	Customer Number	Customer Name	Balance	Amount Paid	Sales Rep Number
SAL					
	CY12	Curlin Yoga Studio	$145.00	$710.00	49
	FN19	Fitness Counts	$345.00	$1,950.00	51
	LB20	Le Beauty Salon & Spa	$200.00	$1,250.00	49
	RD03	Rose's Day Spa	$0.00	$975.00	51
	TT21	Tan and Tone	$160.00	$725.00	44
	TW56	The Workout Place	$680.00	$125.00	51
			$1,530.00	$5,735.00	
SPG					
	RA21	Ralph's	$0.00	$0.00	55
	WS34	Woody's Sporting Goods	$1,235.00	$0.00	49
			$1,235.00	$0.00	
WMN					
	AM23	Amy's Store	$195.00	$1,695.00	44
	BL15	Blondie's on Main	$555.00	$1,350.00	49
	CM09	Casual by Marie	$295.00	$1,080.00	51
	DG14	Della's Designs	$340.00	$850.00	44
	EC07	Environmentally Casual	$0.00	$1,700.00	44
	JN34	Just Natural	$360.00	$700.00	49
	NC25	Nancy's Place	$240.00	$550.00	44
			$1,985.00	$7,925.00	
			$4,750.00	$13,660.00	

Figure 4–81

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2. Create the Customers by Sales Rep report shown in Figure 4–82. Include a total for the Balance field. Change the orientation to landscape. Make sure the total control displays completely. (*Hint:* Use Layout view to make this adjustment.)



Customers by Sales Rep

SR #	First Name	Last Name	Cust #	Customer Name	Balance
44	Pat	Jones			
			AM23	Amy's Store	$195.00
			DG14	Della's Designs	$340.00
			EC07	Environmentally Casual	$0.00
			NC25	Nancy's Place	$240.00
			TT21	Tan and Tone	$160.00
Summary for 'Sales Rep Number' = 44 (5 detail records)					
Sum					$935.00
49	Pinn	Gupta			
			BL15	Blondie's on Main	$555.00
			CY12	Curlin Yoga Studio	$145.00
			JN34	Just Natural	$360.00
			LB20	Le Beauty Salon & Spa	$200.00
			WS34	Woody's Sporting Goods	$1,235.00
Summary for 'Sales Rep Number' = 49 (5 detail records)					
Sum					$2,495.00
51	Gabe	Ortiz			
			CM09	Casual by Marie	$295.00
			FN19	Fitness Counts	$345.00
			RD03	Rose's Day Spa	$0.00
			TW56	The Workout Place	$680.00
Summary for 'Sales Rep Number' = 51 (4 detail records)					
Sum					$1,320.00
55	Terry	Sinson			
			RA21	Ralph's	$0.00
Summary for 'Sales Rep Number' = 55 (1 detail record)					
Sum					$0.00
Grand Total					$4,750.00

Thursday, April 26, 2012

Page 1

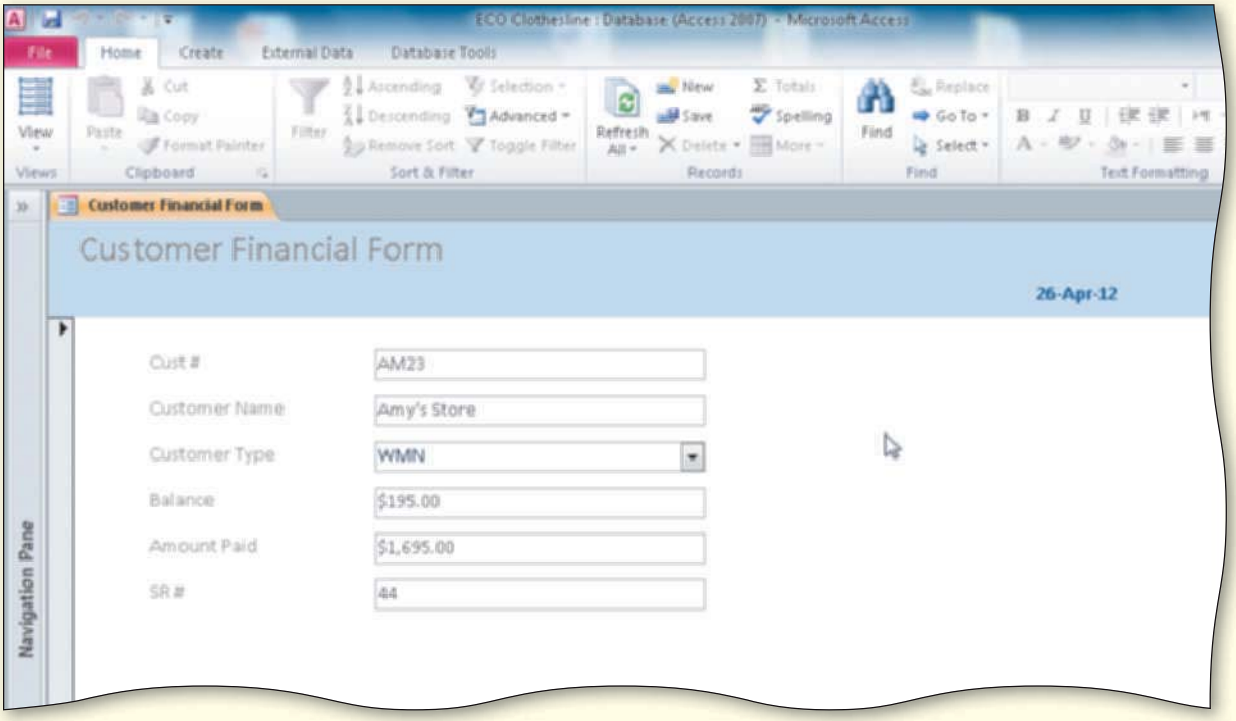
Figure 4–82

Continued >

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

In the Lab *continued*

3. Create the Customer Financial Form shown in Figure 4–83. The form includes the date.


ECO Clothesline : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Find
Text Formatting
Navigation Pane
Customer Financial Form

Customer Financial Form

26-Apr-12

Cust #	AM23
Customer Name	Amy's Store
Customer Type	WMN
Balance	$195.00
Amount Paid	$1,695.00
SR #	44

Figure 4–83

4. Create mailing labels for the Customer table. Use Avery labels C2163 and format the labels with customer name on the first line, street on the second line, and city, state, and postal code on the third line. Include a comma and a space after city and a space between state and postal code. Sort the labels by postal code.
5. Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

In the Lab

Lab 2: Presenting Data in the Walburg Energy Alternatives Database

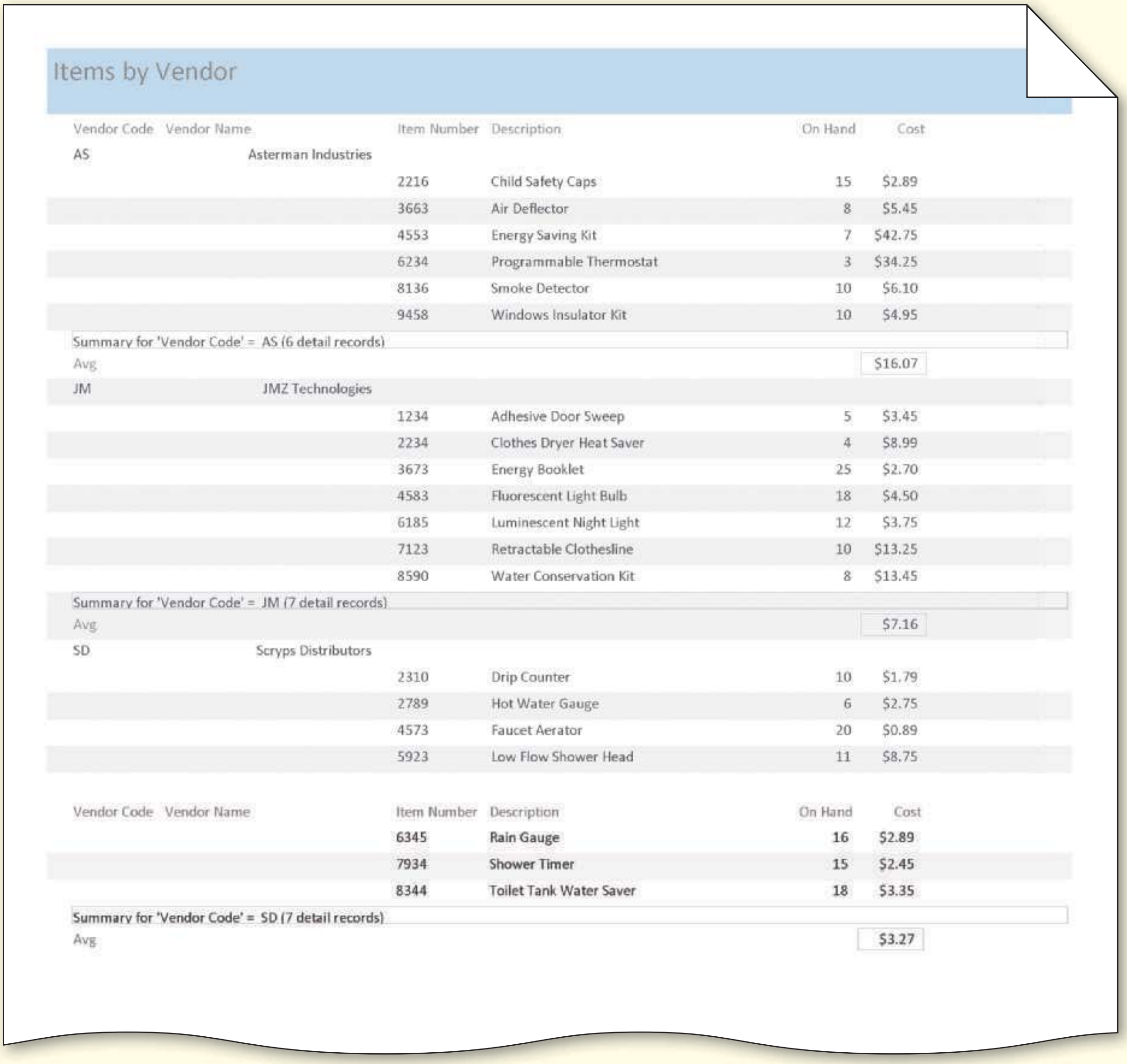
Problem: The management of Walburg Energy Alternatives already has realized the benefits from the database of items and vendors that you created. The management now would like to prepare reports and forms for the database.

Instructions: If you are using the Microsoft Access 2010 Complete or the Microsoft Access 2010 Comprehensive text, open the Walburg Energy Alternatives database that you used in Chapter 3. Otherwise, see your instructor for information on accessing the files required in this book.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Perform the following tasks:

1. Open in Layout view the Inventory Status Report that you created in Chapter 1. Add a total for the Inventory Value field. Be sure the total is completely displayed. Display the average cost. If there are fewer than 10 items on hand, the value should appear in a red bold font. Filter the report for all items where the number on hand is 5 or less. Save the filtered report as Filtered Inventory Status Report.
2. Create the Items by Vendor report shown in Figure 4–84.



Items by Vendor

Vendor Code	Vendor Name	Item Number	Description	On Hand	Cost
AS	Asterman Industries				
		2216	Child Safety Caps	15	$2.89
		3663	Air Deflector	8	$5.45
		4553	Energy Saving Kit	7	$42.75
		6234	Programmable Thermostat	3	$34.25
		8136	Smoke Detector	10	$6.10
		9458	Windows Insulator Kit	10	$4.95
Summary for 'Vendor Code' = AS (6 detail records)					
Avg					$16.07
JM	JMZ Technologies				
		1234	Adhesive Door Sweep	5	$3.45
		2234	Clothes Dryer Heat Saver	4	$8.99
		3673	Energy Booklet	25	$2.70
		4583	Fluorescent Light Bulb	18	$4.50
		6185	Luminescent Night Light	12	$3.75
		7123	Retractable Clothesline	10	$13.25
		8590	Water Conservation Kit	8	$13.45
Summary for 'Vendor Code' = JM (7 detail records)					
Avg					$7.16
SD	Scryps Distributors				
		2310	Drip Counter	10	$1.79
		2789	Hot Water Gauge	6	$2.75
		4573	Faucet Aerator	20	$0.89
		5923	Low Flow Shower Head	11	$8.75

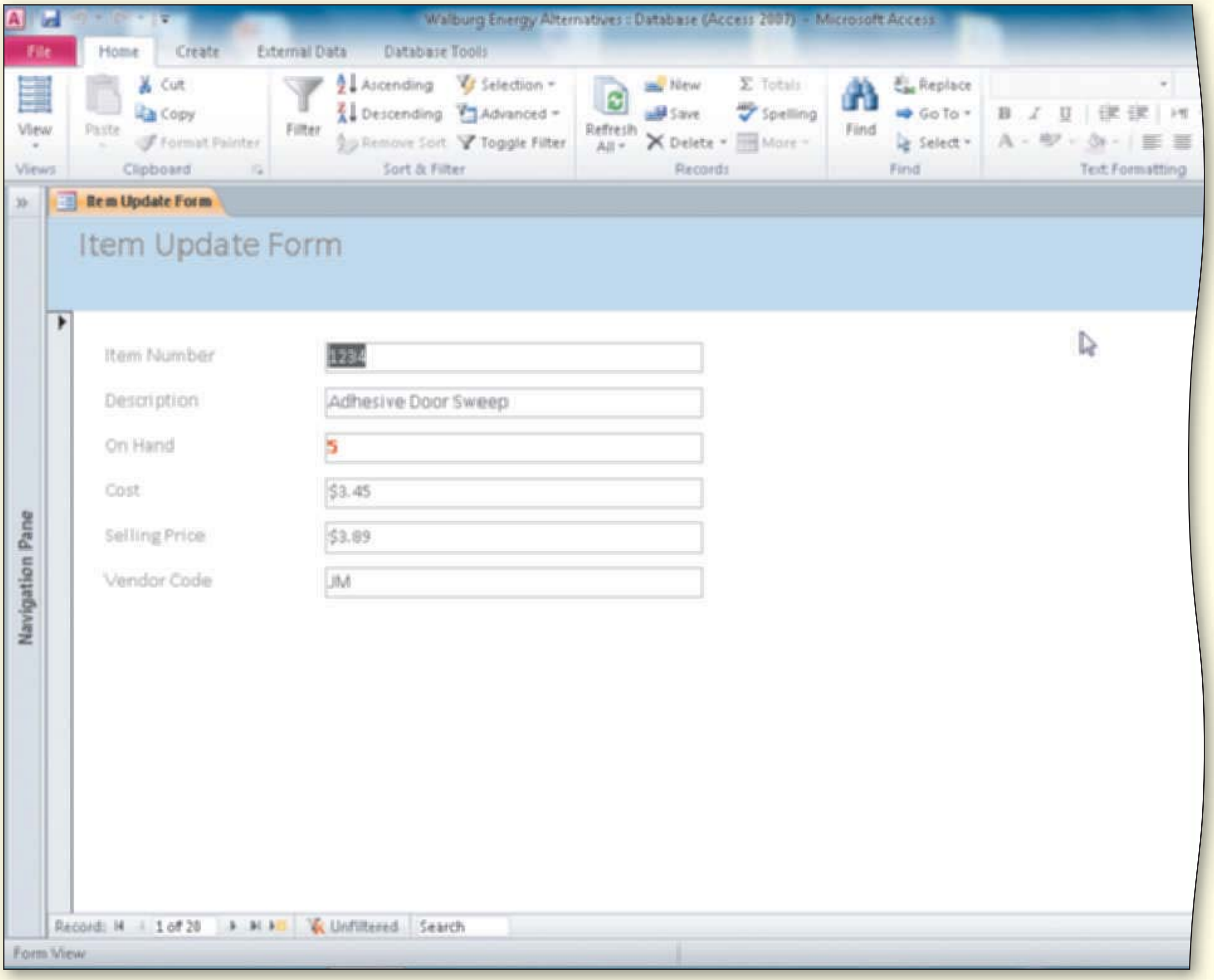
Vendor Code	Vendor Name	Item Number	Description	On Hand	Cost
		6345	Rain Gauge	16	$2.89
		7934	Shower Timer	15	$2.45
		8344	Toilet Tank Water Saver	18	$3.35
Summary for 'Vendor Code' = SD (7 detail records)					
Avg					$3.27

Figure 4–84

Continued >

In the Lab *continued*

3. Create the form shown in Figure 4–85. If there are fewer than 10 items on hand, the value should appear in a red bold font. Save the form as Item Update Form.


Walburg Energy Alternatives : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Find
Text Formatting
Item Update Form
Navigation Pane
Record: 1 of 20
Unfiltered
Search
Form View

Item Update Form

Item Number	1234
Description	Adhesive Door Sweep
On Hand	5
Cost	$3.45
Selling Price	$3.89
Vendor Code	JM

Figure 4–85

4. Filter the Item Update Form for all items where the cost is less than $3.00 and sort the results in descending order by cost. Save the form as Filtered Item Update Form.
5. Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

In the Lab

Lab 3: Presenting Data in the Philamar Training Database

Problem: The management of Philamar Training already has realized the benefits from the database you created. The management now would like to prepare reports and forms for the database.

Instructions: If you are using the Microsoft Access 2010 Complete or the Microsoft Access 2010 Comprehensive text, open the Philamar Training database that you used in Chapter 3. Otherwise, see your instructor for information on accessing the files required in this book. Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

Instructions Part 1: Modify the Client Status Report created in Chapter 1. Add the Client Type field to the report and group records by client type. Include totals for the Amount Paid and Current Due fields. If the amount due on any record is $0.00, the value should appear in a red bold font. The report should be similar to the Client Financial Report shown in Figure 4–1 on page AC 210.

Instructions Part 2: Create a Clients by Trainer report for Philamar Training. The report should be similar to the Clients by Analyst report shown in Figure 4–2 on page AC 211 with the records grouped by trainer number. Include the Trainer Number, First Name, and Last Name fields from the Trainer table. Include the Client Number, Client Name, Amount Paid, and Current Due fields from the Client table. Provide subtotals and a grand total for the Amount Paid and Current Due fields. Change the page layout to landscape.

Instructions Part 3: Create a Client Financial Form for Philamar Training that is similar to the form shown in Figure 4–3 on page AC 212. The form should include the Client Number, Client Name, Amount Paid, Current Due, Trainer Number, Client Type, and Training Needed fields.

Cases and Places

Apply your creative thinking and problem solving skills to design and implement a solution.

See the inside back cover of this book for instructions for downloading the Data Files for Students, or see your instructor for information on accessing the required files.

1: Presenting Data in the Chamber of Commerce Database

Academic

If you are using the Microsoft Access 2010 Complete or the Microsoft Access 2010 Comprehensive text, open the Chamber of Commerce database that you used in Chapter 3. Otherwise, see your instructor for information on accessing the files required in this book. Use the concepts and techniques presented in this chapter to perform each of the following tasks:

a. Create a report that groups advertisers by advertiser type. Include the Advertiser Type, Advertiser Number, Advertiser Name, Balance, Amount Paid, and Ad Rep Number fields in the report. Include totals for the two currency fields. Use conditional formatting to emphasize any values in the Balance field that are greater than $200.

b. Create a report that includes data from both the Ad Rep table and the Advertiser table. Include the Ad Rep Number, First Name, and Last Name fields from the Ad Rep table. Include the Advertiser Number, Advertiser Name, Balance, and Amount Paid fields from the Advertiser table. Group the report by ad rep number. Include totals for the two currency fields. Change the orientation to landscape.

Continued >

Cases and Places *continued*

c. Create a form for the Advertiser table. Include the Advertiser Number, Advertiser Name, Balance, Amount Paid, Advertiser Type, and Ad Rep Number fields on the form.

Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

2: Presenting Data in the Consignment Database

Personal

If you are using the Microsoft Access 2010 Complete or the Microsoft Access 2010 Comprehensive text, open the Consignment database that you used in Chapter 3. Otherwise, see your instructor for information on accessing the files required in this book. Use the concepts and techniques presented in this chapter to perform each of the following tasks:

a. Modify the Available Items Report you created in Chapter 1. Group the report by the condition of the item and sort by description. Include the average price.

b. Create a report that includes data from both the Seller and the Items table. Include the Seller Code, First Name, and Last Name fields from the Seller table. Include all fields except Seller Code from the Items table. Group the report by seller code and sort by description within group. Do not include any totals.

c. Create labels for the Items table. These labels will be used to tag items in the store. Include the seller code on the first line, the item number and description on the second line, the price on the third line, and the date posted on the fourth line. Use a font size and weight that will make it easy for individuals to read the label.

Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

3: Presenting Data in the Senior Care Database

Professional

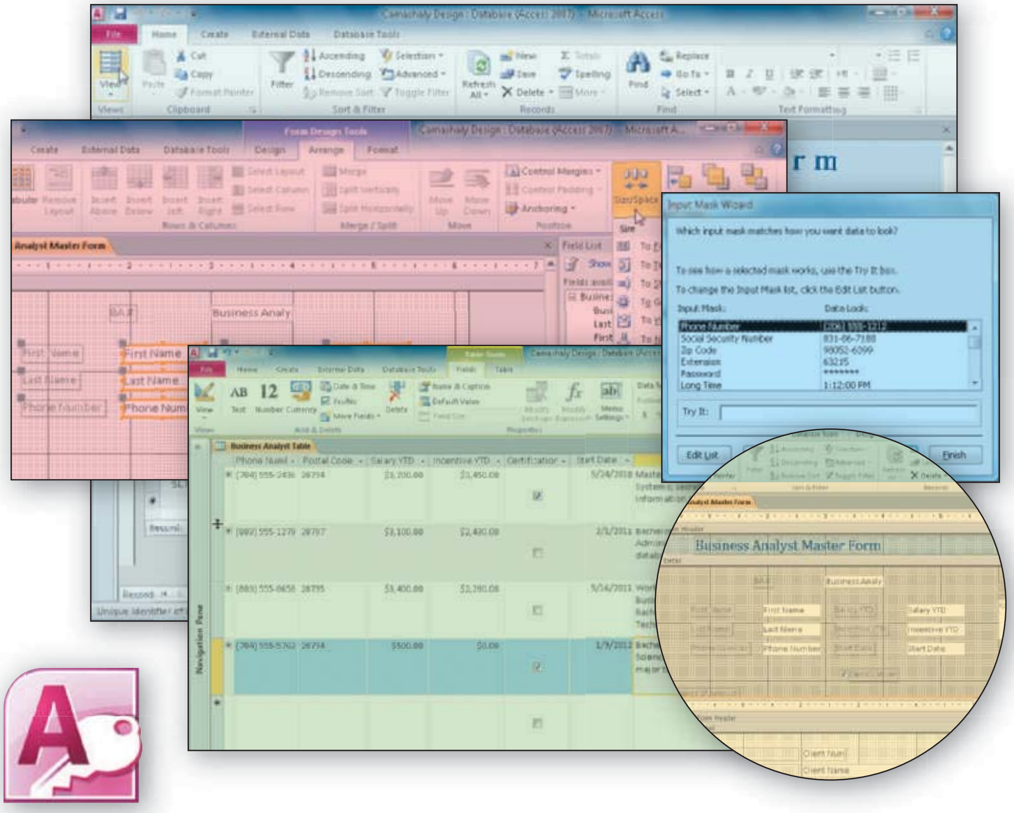
If you are using the Microsoft Access 2010 Complete or the Microsoft Access 2010 Comprehensive text, open the Senior Care database that you used in Chapter 3. Otherwise, see your instructor for information on accessing the files required in this book. Use the concepts and techniques presented in this chapter to perform each of the following tasks:

a. Create a report that includes data from both the Helper table and the Client table. Include the Helper Number, First Name, and Last Name fields from the Helper table. Include the Client Number, First Name, Last Name, and Services Needed fields from the Client table. Group the report by helper number, and sort the report by client number. Change the page layout to Landscape.

b. Create a form for the Client table. Include the Client Number, First Name, Last Name, Amount Paid, Balance, Helper Number, and Services Needed fields.

Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

5 Multitable Forms



Objectives

You will have mastered the material in this project when you can:

- Add Yes/No, Date/Time, Memo, OLE Object, and Attachment fields
- Use the Input Mask Wizard
- Update fields and enter data
- Change row and column size
- Create a form with a subform in Design view
- Modify a subform and form design
- Enhance the form title
- Change tab stops and tab order
- Use the form to view data and attachments
- View object dependencies
- Use Date/Time, Memo, and Yes/No fields in a query
- Create a form with a datasheet

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

5 Multitable Forms

Introduction

BTW

Q&As

For a complete list of the Q&As found in many of the step-by-step sequences in this book, visit the Access 2010 Q&A Web page (scsite.com/ac2010/qa).

This chapter adds several additional fields to the Camashaly database that require special data types. It then creates a form incorporating data from two tables. The two tables, Business Analyst and Client, are related in a one-to-many relationship. That is, one business analyst is related to *many* clients, but each client is related to only *one* business analyst. The Business Analyst Table is called the "one" table in the relationship and the Client table is called the "many" table. The form will show one business analyst at a time, but also will include the many clients of that business analyst. This chapter also creates queries that use the added fields.

Project — Multitable Forms

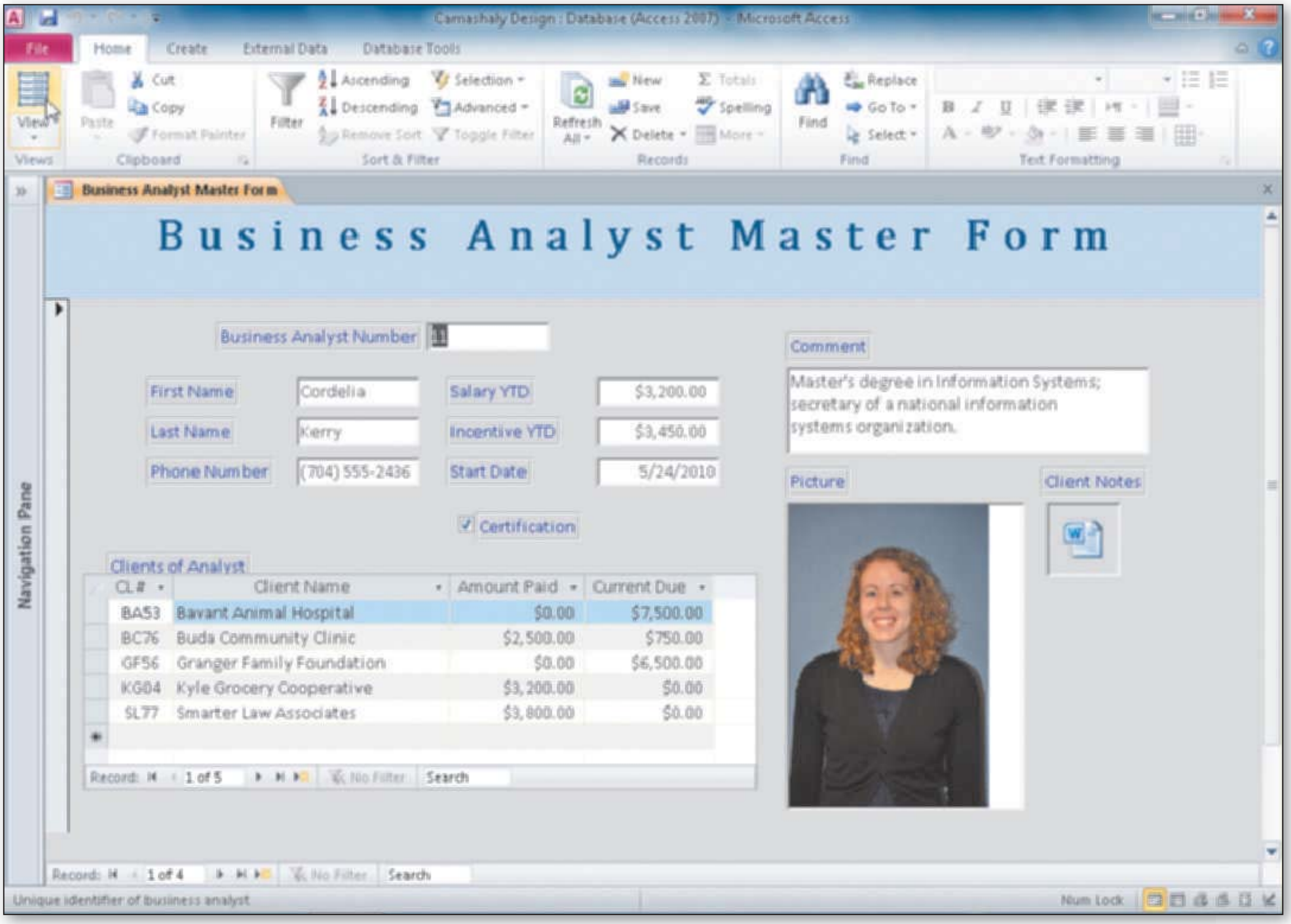
BTW

BTWs

For a complete list of the BTWs found in the margins of this book, visit the Access 2010 BTW Web page (scsite.com/ac2010/btw).

Camashaly Design uses its database to keep records about clients and business analysts. After using the database for several months, however, Camashaly has found that it needs to maintain additional data on its business analysts. The company wants to identify those business analysts who have a professional certificate in business analysis, store the start date of each business analyst in the database, and include notes about each business analyst as well as the business analyst's picture. Additionally, business analysts now maintain files about potential contacts. These files are separate from the database; some are maintained in Word and others in Excel. Camashaly would like a way to attach these files to the corresponding business analyst's record in the database. Finally, Camashaly wants to add the Phone Number field to the Business Analyst Table. Users should type only the digits in the telephone number and then have Access format the number appropriately. If the user enters 7195558364, for example, Access will format the number as (719) 555-8364.

After the proposed fields have been added to the database, Camashaly wants users to be able to use a form that incorporates the Client and Business Analyst tables and that includes the newly added fields as well as some of the existing fields. The form also should include the client number, name, amount paid, and current due amount for the clients of each business analyst. Camashaly would like to see multiple clients on the screen at the same time (Figure 5–1). The database should allow users to scroll through all the clients of a business analyst and to open any of the attachments concerning the business analyst's Client Notes. Finally, Camashaly requires queries that use the Certification, Start Date, and Comment fields.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Find
Text Formatting
Navigation Pane
Business Analyst Master Form

Business Analyst Master Form

Business Analyst Number	11		
First Name	Cordelia	Salary YTD	$3,200.00
Last Name	Kerry	Incentive YTD	$3,450.00
Phone Number	(704) 555-2436	Start Date	5/24/2010

☑ Certification

Comment: Master's degree in Information Systems; secretary of a national information systems organization.

Picture

Client Notes

Clients of Analyst

CL #	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	$0.00	$7,500.00
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	$2,500.00	$750.00
GF56	Granger Family Foundation	$0.00	$6,500.00
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	$3,200.00	$0.00
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	$3,800.00	$0.00

Record: 1 of 5 No Filter Search

Record: 1 of 4 No Filter Search

Unique identifier of business analyst

Num Lock

Figure 5–1

Overview

As you read through this chapter, you will learn how to create forms by performing these general tasks:

- Add the Certification, Start Date, Comment, Picture, and Client Notes fields to the Business Analyst Table and assign each field the appropriate data type.
- Add the Phone Number to the Business Analyst Table and create an appropriate input mask to automatically format the number.
- Create the Business Analyst Master Form and add the fields from the Business Analyst Table at the appropriate positions.
- Add a subform containing the Client Number, Client Name, Amount Paid, and Current Due fields from the Client table.
- Enhance the form by applying colors and various special effects.
- Create and run queries that involve the Certification, Start Date, and Comment fields.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Plan Ahead

Report and Form Design Guidelines

When designing reports and forms in Access, you must determine whether new fields are required and identify the source (table or tables) of the data. The decisions you make will affect the design of reports and forms. To design reports and forms, you should follow these general guidelines:

1. **When new fields are needed, determine the purpose of those fields to see if they need special data types.** Special data types will be needed for those fields that contain dates, contain values of Yes or No, or record an extended description of something. Fields containing pictures also require a special data type, as do fields containing attachments of files created in other applications.
2. **When a form is required, determine whether the form requires data from more than one table.** Determine whether all the data is found in a single table or whether it comes from multiple related tables.
3. **If the form requires data from more than one table, determine the relationship between the tables.** Identify one-to-many relationships. For each relationship, identify the "one" table and the "many" table.
4. **If the form requires data from more than one table, determine on which of the tables the form is to be based.** Which table contains data that is the focus of the form? For example, determine whether it is a form about business analysts that happens to require some client data to be effective or whether it is a form about clients that also includes some business analyst data as additional information. The table on which the form is based is the main table.
5. **Determine the fields from each table that need to be on the form.** Decide exactly how the form will be used and identify the fields that are necessary to support this use. Determine whether there are any additional fields that, while not strictly necessary, would make the form more functional. For example, if a user is entering a business analyst number on a form based on clients, it may be helpful to also see the name of the business analyst with that number.

When necessary, more specific details concerning the above decisions and/or actions are presented at appropriate points within the chapter. The chapter also will identify the use of these guidelines in the design of forms such as the one shown in Figure 5–1.

To Start Access

The following steps, which assume Windows 7 is running, start Access based on a typical installation. You may need to ask your instructor how to start Access for your computer.

1. Click the Start button on the Windows 7 taskbar to display the Start menu.
2. Type `Microsoft Access` as the search text in the 'Search programs and files' text box and watch the search results appear on the Start menu.
3. Click Microsoft Access 2010 in the search results on the Start menu to start Access.
4. If the Access window is not maximized, click the Maximize button next to the Close button on its title bar to maximize the window.

BTW

The Ribbon and Screen Resolution

Access may change how the groups and buttons within the groups appear on the Ribbon, depending on the computer's screen resolution. Thus, your Ribbon may look different from the ones in this book if you are using a screen resolution other than 1024 × 768.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Open a Database from Access

The following steps open the Camashaly Design database from the Access folder in the CIS 101 folder on the USB flash drive.

1. With your USB flash drive connected to one of the computer's USB ports, click File on the Ribbon to open the Backstage view.
2. Click Open in the Backstage view to display the Open dialog box.
3. Navigate to the location of the file to be opened (in this case, the USB flash drive, then to the CIS 101 folder [or your class folder], and then to the Access folder).
4. Click Camashaly Design to select the file to be opened.
5. Click the Open button (Open dialog box) to open the selected file and display the opened database in the Access window.
6. If a Security Warning appears, click the Enable Content option button.

Adding Special Fields

Having analyzed its requirements, the management of Camashaly has identified a need for some new fields for the Business Analyst Table. They need a Phone Number field and they want to assist users in entering the correct format for a phone number, so the field will use an input mask. An **input mask** specifies how data is to be entered and how it will appear. Camashaly also needs a Certification field, which uses a value of Yes or No to indicate whether an analyst is certified; this field's data type will be Yes/No. They need a Start Date field, which will be a Date/Time field, that is, a field whose data type is Date/Time. They need a Comment field, which will be a Memo field. Because no special text formatting, such as bold or italic, is required in the Comment field, the value of the Text Format property will remain Plain Text rather than Rich Text. The Client Notes field, which must be able to contain multiple attachments for each business analyst, will be an Attachment field. The Picture field is the only field whose data type is uncertain — it could be either OLE Object, which can contain objects created by a variety of applications, or Attachment.

Certainly OLE Object is an appropriate data type for a picture, because when you store an image as an OLE object, the image stays with the database. On the other hand, if an Attachment field contains a picture, the field will display the picture. For other types of attachments, such as Word documents and Excel spreadsheets, however, the Attachment field displays an icon representing the attachment. Camashaly Design has decided to use OLE Object as the Picture field data type for two reasons. First, the form shown in Figure 5–1 contains another field that must be an Attachment field, the Client Notes field. In Datasheet view, an Attachment field appears as a paper clip rather than the field name. Thus, if the Picture field were also an Attachment field, the form would display two paper clips, leading to potential confusion. A second potential problem with using an Attachment field for pictures occurs when you have multiple attachments to a record. Only the first attachment routinely appears in the field on either a datasheet or form. Thus, if the picture were not the first attachment, it would not appear.

BTW

Memo Fields
If you need to keep a historical record of changes to a memo field, set the value for the Append Only property to yes.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Plan Ahead

Determine the purpose of new fields to see if they need special data types.
If you determine that you need new fields in a table, you then need to determine data types for these fields. Special data types include Yes/No, Date/Time, Memo, OLE Object, Attachment, and Hyperlink. To standardize the appearance of data, you can create an input mask, which applies common formatting to date, phone number, and other types of information.

- **Determine whether an input mask is appropriate.** Sometimes the data in the field should be displayed in a special way, for example, with parentheses and a hyphen like a phone number, or separated into three groups of digits like a Social Security number. If so, should Access assist the user in entering the data in the right format? For example, by including an input mask in a field, Access can automatically insert the parentheses and a hyphen when a user enters a phone number.
- **Determine whether the Yes/No data type is appropriate.** A field is a good candidate for the Yes/No data type if the only possible field values are Yes or No, True or False, or On or Off.
- **Determine whether the Date/Time data type is appropriate.** If a field contains a date, assigning it the Date/Time data type accomplishes several things. First, Access will ensure that the only values entered in the field are legitimate dates. Second, you can perform date arithmetic. For example, you can subtract one date from another to find the number of days between the two dates. Finally, you can sort the field and the dates will sort chronologically.
- **Determine whether the Memo data type is appropriate.** A field that contains text that is variable in length and potentially very lengthy is an appropriate use of the Memo data type. If you want to use special text effects, such as bold and italic, you can assign the field the Memo data type and change the value of the field's Text Format property from Plain Text to Rich Text. You can also collect history on the changes to a Memo field by changing the value of the field's Append Only property from No to Yes. If you do so, when you right-click the field and click Show Column History on the shortcut menu, you will see a record of all changes made to the field.
- **Determine whether the OLE Object data type is appropriate.** Does the field contain objects created by other applications that support **OLE (Object Linking and Embedding)** as a server? OLE is a feature of Microsoft Windows that creates a special relationship between Microsoft Access and the application that created the object. When you edit the object, Microsoft Access returns automatically to the application that created the object.
- **Determine whether the Attachment data type is appropriate.** Will the field contain one or more attachments that were created in other applications? If so, the Attachment data type is appropriate. It allows you to store multiple attachments on each record. You can view and manipulate these attachments in their original application.
- **Determine whether the Hyperlink data type is appropriate.** Will the field contain links to other Office documents or to Web pages? If so, Hyperlink is appropriate.

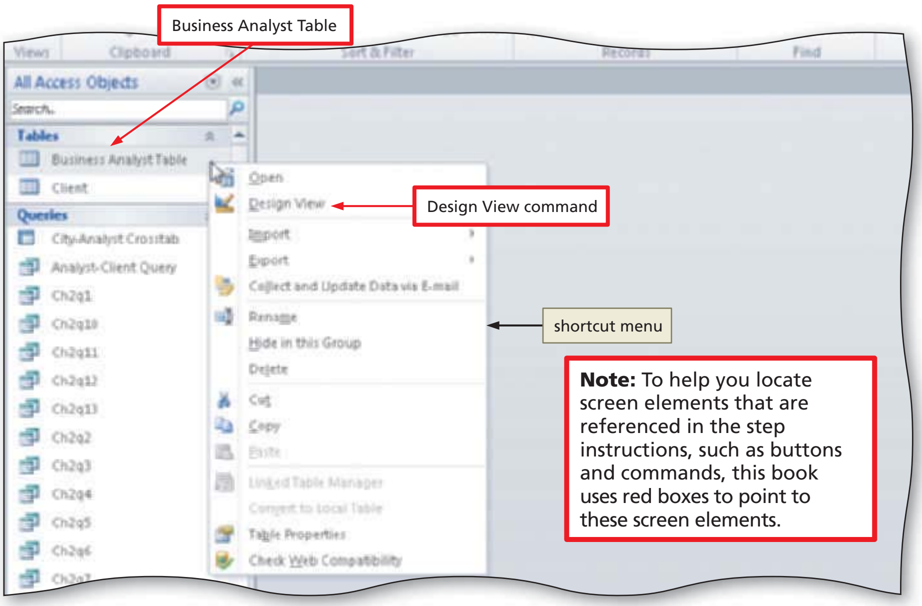
To Add Fields with New Data Types to a Table

You add the new fields to the Business Analyst Table by modifying the design of the table and inserting the fields at the appropriate position in the table structure. The following steps add the Certification, Start Date, Comment, Picture, and Client Notes fields to the Business Analyst Table.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

1

- If necessary, open the Navigation Pane.
- Right-click the Business Analyst Table to display a shortcut menu (Figure 5–2).


Business Analyst Table
All Access Objects
Tables
Business Analyst Table
Client
Queries
City-Analyst Crosstab
Analyst-Client Query
Ch2q1
Ch2q10
Ch2q11
Ch2q12
Ch2q13
Ch2q2
Ch2q3
Ch2q4
Ch2q5
Ch2q6
Ch2q7
Open
Design View
Import
Export
Collect and Update Data via E-mail
Rename
Hide in this Group
Delete
Cut
Copy
Paste
Linked Table Manager
Convert to Local Table
Table Properties
Check Web Compatibility
Design View command
shortcut menu

Note: To help you locate screen elements that are referenced in the step instructions, such as buttons and commands, this book uses red boxes to point to these screen elements.

Figure 5–2

2

- Click Design View on the shortcut menu to open the table in Design view (Figure 5–3).

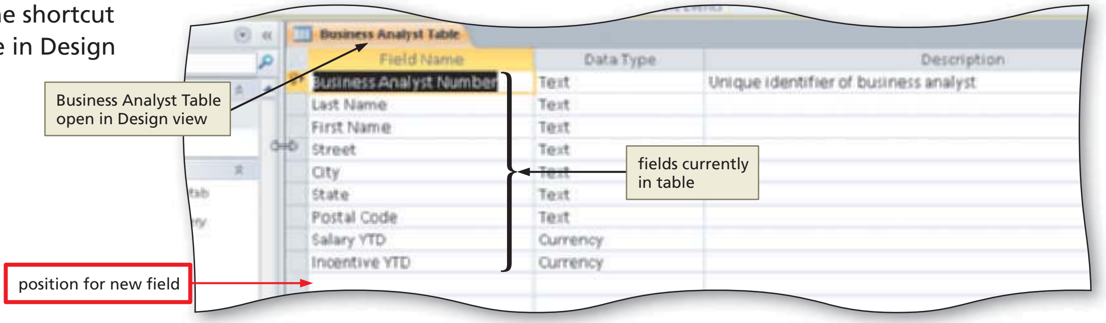

Business Analyst Table open in Design view
Business Analyst Table
Field Name
Data Type
Description
Business Analyst Number
Text
Unique identifier of business analyst
Last Name
Text
First Name
Text
Street
Text
City
Text
State
Text
Postal Code
Text
Salary YTD
Currency
Incentive YTD
Currency
fields currently in table
position for new field

Figure 5–3

3

- Click the first open field to select the position for the first additional field.
- Type `Certification` as the field name, press the TAB key, select Yes/No as the data type, and then press the TAB key twice to move to the next field.
- In a similar fashion, add a field with `Start Date` as the field name and Date/Time as the data type, a field with `Comment` as the field name and Memo as the data type, a field with `Picture` as the field name and OLE Object as the data type, and a field with `Client Notes` as the field name and Attachment as the data type (Figure 5–4).

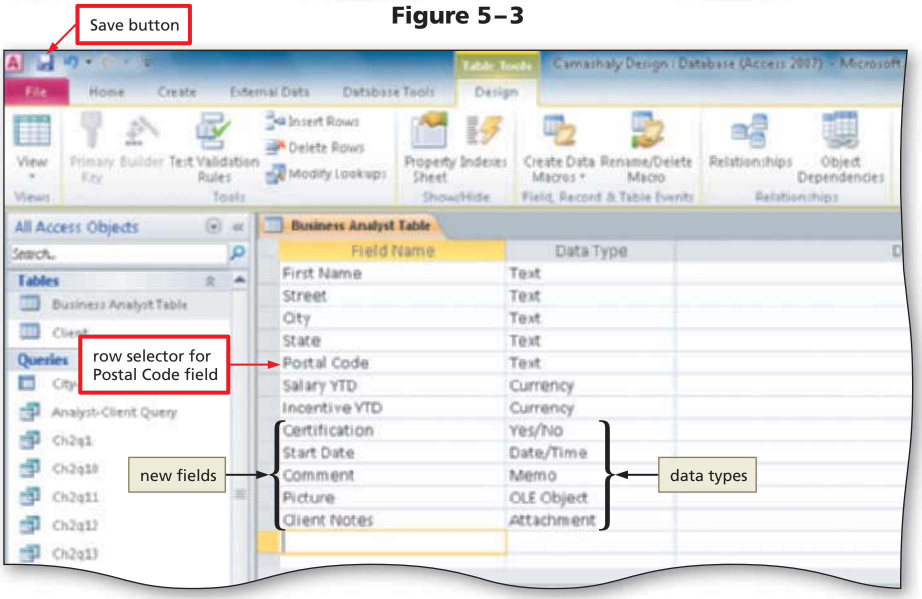

Save button
Table Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
View
Primary Key
Builder
Test Validation Rules
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Modify Lookups
Property Sheet
Indexes
Create Data Macros
Rename/Delete Macro
Relationships
Object Dependencies
Views
Tools
Show/Hide
Field, Record & Table Events
Relationships
All Access Objects
Tables
Business Analyst Table
Client
Queries
Analyst-Client Query
Ch2q1
Ch2q10
Ch2q11
Ch2q12
Ch2q13
Business Analyst Table
Field Name
Data Type
First Name
Text
Street
Text
City
Text
State
Text
Postal Code
Text
Salary YTD
Currency
Incentive YTD
Currency
Certification
Yes/No
Start Date
Date/Time
Comment
Memo
Picture
OLE Object
Client Notes
Attachment
row selector for Postal Code field
new fields
data types

Figure 5–4

Q&A

Why use Date/Time as a data type for date fields rather than Text?

If you use Date/Time, the computer will ensure that only legitimate dates are entered in the field. In addition, you can perform appropriate arithmetic with dates. You also can sort by date.

4

- Click the Save button on the Quick Access Toolbar to save your changes.

To Use the Input Mask Wizard

An **input mask** specifies how data is to be entered and how it will appear. You can enter an input mask directly or you can use the Input Mask Wizard. The wizard assists you in the creation of the input mask by allowing you to select from a list of the most frequently used input masks.

To use the Input Mask Wizard, select the Input Mask property in the field's property sheet and then select the Build button. The following steps add the Phone Number field and then specify how the telephone number is to appear by using the Input Mask Wizard.

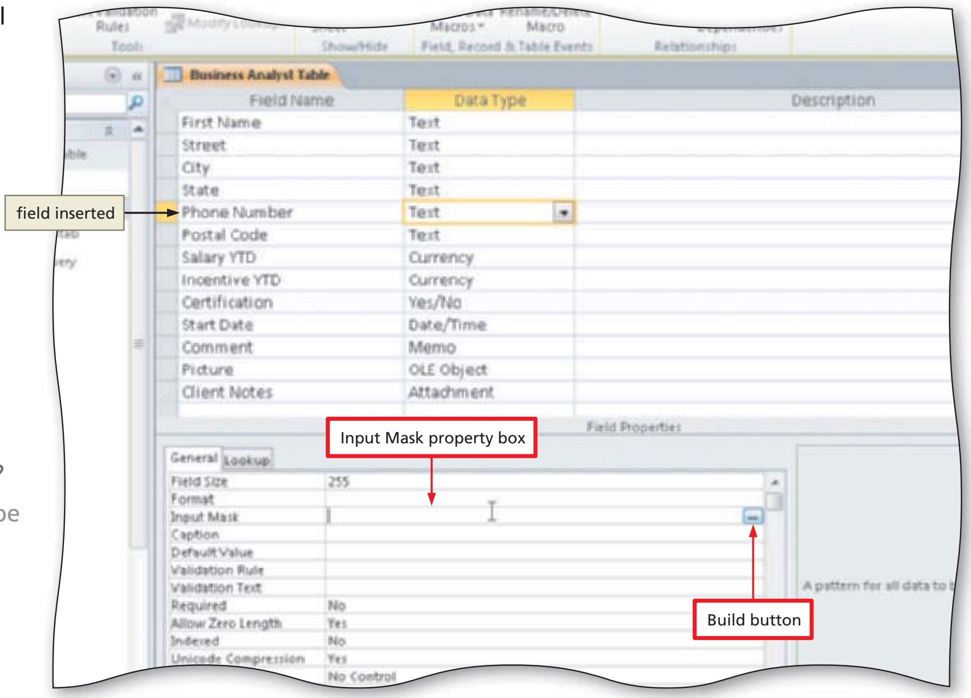
1

- Click the row selector for the Postal Code field (shown in Figure 5–4), and then press the INSERT key to insert a blank row above Postal Code.
- Click the Field Name column for the new field.
- Type `Phone Number` as the field name and then press the TAB key to enter the field.
- Click the Input Mask property box (Figure 5–5).

Q&A

Do I need to change the data type?

No. Text is the appropriate data type for the Phone Number field.



field inserted
Input Mask property box
Build button
Business Analyst Table
Field Properties
General
Lookup

Field Name	Data Type	Description
First Name	Text	
Street	Text	
City	Text	
State	Text	
Phone Number	Text	
Postal Code	Text	
Salary YTD	Currency	
Incentive YTD	Currency	
Certification	Yes/No	
Start Date	Date/Time	
Comment	Memo	
Picture	OLE Object	
Client Notes	Attachment	

Field Size 255
Format
Input Mask
Caption
Default Value
Validation Rule
Validation Text
Required No
Allow Zero Length Yes
Indexed No
Unicode Compression Yes
No Control

A pattern for all data to b

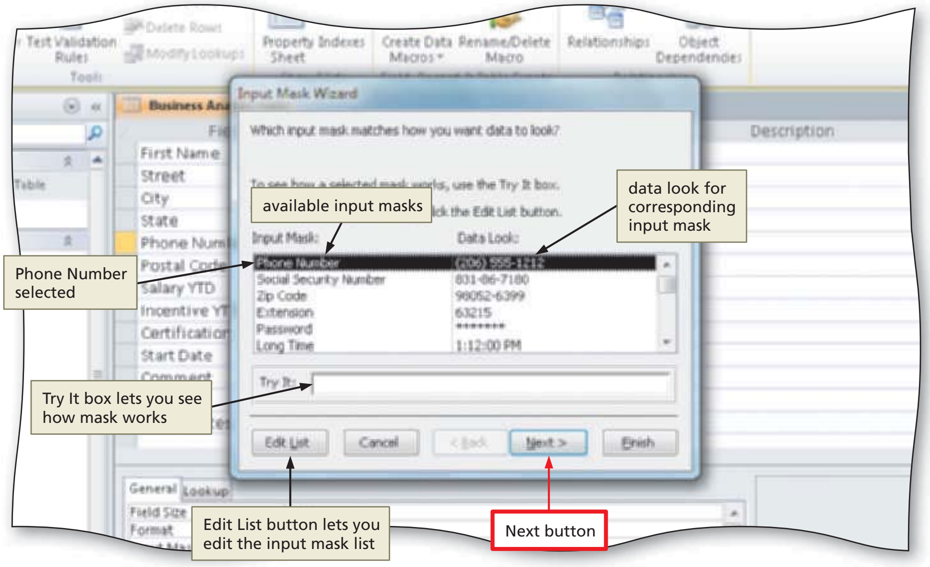
Figure 5–5

2

- Click the Build button to use a wizard to enter the input mask.
- If a dialog box appears asking you to save the table, click the Yes button. (If a dialog box displays a message that the Input Mask Wizard is not installed, check with your instructor before proceeding with the following steps.)
- Ensure that Phone Number is selected (Figure 5–6).

Experiment

- Click different input masks and enter data in the Try It text box to see the effect of the input mask. When done, click the Phone Number input mask.



Input Mask Wizard
available input masks
data look for corresponding input mask
Phone Number selected
Try It box lets you see how mask works
Edit List button lets you edit the input mask list
Next button
Edit List
Cancel
< Back
Next >
Finish

Which input mask matches how you want data to look?

To see how a selected mask works, use the Try It box.

To change the Input Mask list, click the Edit List button.

Input Mask:	Data Look:
Phone Number	(206) 555-1212
Social Security Number	831-86-7180
Zip Code	98052-6399
Extension	63215
Password	********
Long Time	1:12:00 PM

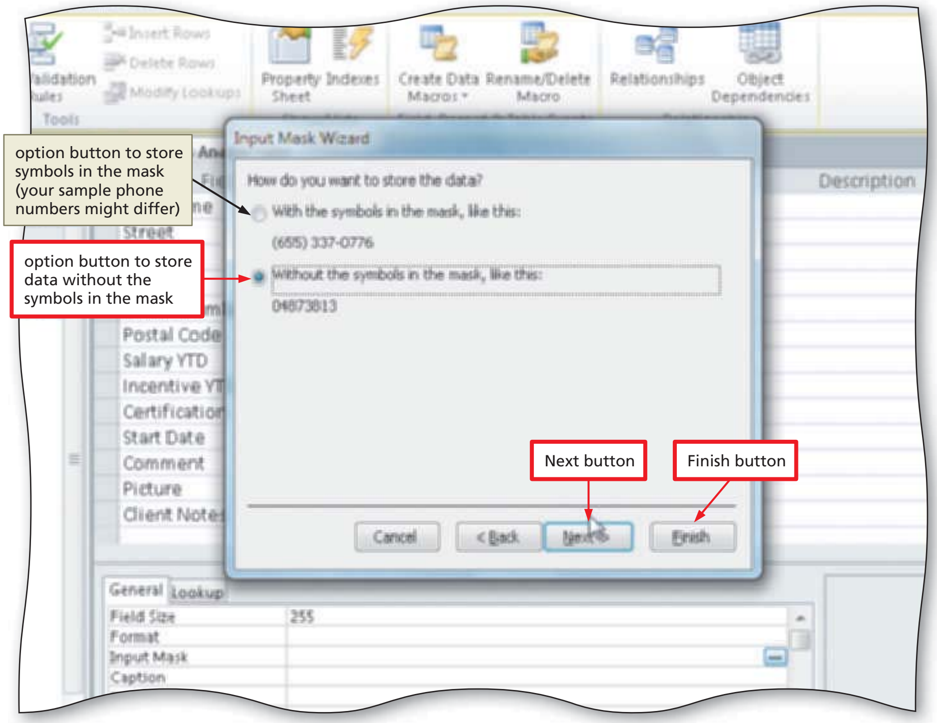
Try It:

Figure 5–6

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3

- Click the Next button to move to the next Input Mask Wizard screen, where you then are given the opportunity to change the input mask.
- Because you do not need to change the mask, click the Next button a second time (Figure 5–7).


Validation Rules
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Modify Lookups
Tools
Property Sheet
Indexes
Create Data Macros
Rename/Delete Macro
Relationships
Object Dependencies
Description
Street
Postal Code
Salary YTD
Incentive YTD
Certification
Start Date
Comment
Picture
Client Notes
General
Lookup
Field Size
Format
Input Mask
Caption

Input Mask Wizard

How do you want to store the data?

○ With the symbols in the mask, like this:

(655) 337-0776

● Without the symbols in the mask, like this:

04873813

Cancel | < Back | Next > | Finish

Field Size 255

option button to store symbols in the mask (your sample phone numbers might differ)

option button to store data without the symbols in the mask

Next button

Finish button

Figure 5–7

4

- Be sure the 'Without the symbols in the mask, like this' option button is selected, click the Next button to move to the next Input Mask Wizard screen, and then click the Finish button (Figure 5–8).

Q&A Why doesn't the data type change to Input Mask?

The data type of the Phone Number field is still Text. The only thing that changed is one of the field properties, the Input Mask property.

Q&A Could I have typed the value in the Input Mask property myself, rather than using the wizard?

Yes. Input masks can be complex, however, so it is usually easier and safer to use the wizard.

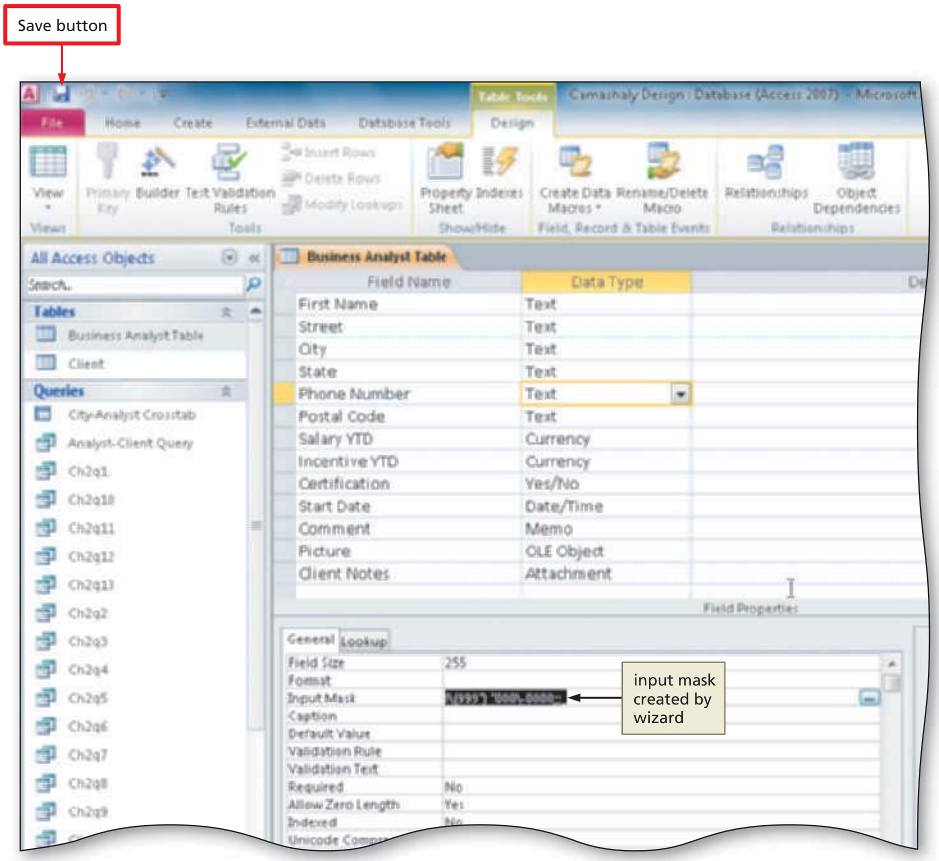


Table Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
View
Primary Key
Builder
Test Validation Rules
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Modify Lookups
Property Sheet
Indexes
Create Data Macros
Rename/Delete Macro
Relationships
Object Dependencies
Views
Tools
Show/Hide
Field, Record & Table Events
Relationships
All Access Objects
Search...
Tables
Business Analyst Table
Client
Queries
City-Analyst Crosstab
Analyst-Client Query
Ch2q1
Ch2q10
Ch2q11
Ch2q12
Ch2q13
Ch2q2
Ch2q3
Ch2q4
Ch2q5
Ch2q6
Ch2q7
Ch2q8
Ch2q9
Business Analyst Table
Field Properties
General
Lookup

Field Name	Data Type
First Name	Text
Street	Text
City	Text
State	Text
Phone Number	Text
Postal Code	Text
Salary YTD	Currency
Incentive YTD	Currency
Certification	Yes/No
Start Date	Date/Time
Comment	Memo
Picture	OLE Object
Client Notes	Attachment

Field Size	255
Format	
Input Mask	[illegible]
Caption	
Default Value	
Validation Rule	
Validation Text	
Required	No
Allow Zero Length	Yes
Indexed	No
Unicode Compression	

Save button

input mask created by wizard

Figure 5–8

5

- Click the Save button on the Quick Access Toolbar to save your changes.
- Close the Business Analyst Table.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Adding Fields in Datasheet View

BTW

Input Mask Characters
When you create an input mask, Access adds several characters. These characters control the literal values that appear when you enter data. For example, the first backslash in the input mask in Figure 5–8 displays the opening parenthesis. The double quotes force Access to display the closing parenthesis and a space. The second backslash forces Access to display the hyphen that separates the first and second part of the phone number.

You can also add fields in Datasheet view. One way to do so is to use the Add & Delete group on the Table Tools Fields tab (Figure 5–9). Select the field that precedes the position where you want to add the new field and then click the appropriate button. You can click the Text button to add a Text field, the Number button to add a Number field, the Currency button to add a Currency field, and so on. Alternatively, you can click the More Fields button as shown in the figure to display the Data Type gallery. You then can click a data type in the gallery to add a field with that type.

The gallery gives some additional control on the data type. For example, if you click the Check Box version of a Yes/No field, the field will be displayed as a check box, which is the common way to display such a field. If instead you click the Yes/No version of a Yes/No field, the value in the field will be displayed as either the word, Yes, or the word, No.

If you scroll down in the Data Type gallery, you will find a Quick Start section. The commands in this section give you quick ways of adding some common types of fields. For example, clicking Address in the Quick Start section immediately adds several fields: Address, City, State Province, Zip Postal, and Country Region. Clicking Start and End Dates immediately adds both a Start Date field and an End Date field.

In Datasheet view, you can rename fields by right-clicking the field name, clicking Rename Field on the shortcut menu, and then typing the new name. Delete a field by clicking the field and then clicking the Delete button (Table Tools Fields tab | Add & Delete group). Move a field from one location to another by dragging the field.

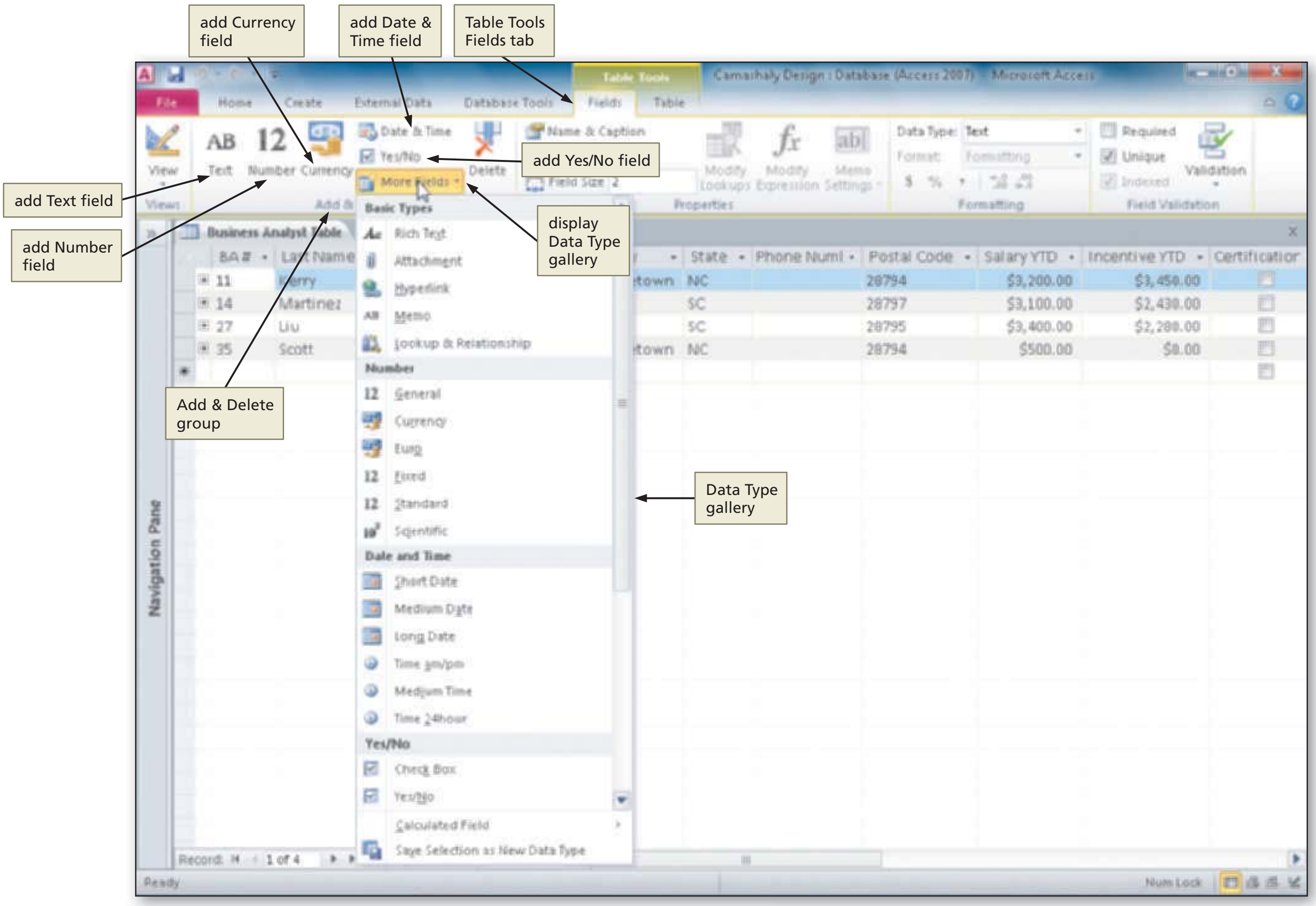

add Currency field
add Date & Time field
Table Tools Fields tab
add Yes/No field
add Text field
add Number field
display Data Type gallery
Add & Delete group
Data Type gallery
Text
Number
Currency
Date & Time
Yes/No
More Fields
Delete
Basic Types
Rich Text
Attachment
Hyperlink
Memo
Lookup & Relationship
Number
General
Currency
Euro
Fixed
Standard
Scientific
Date and Time
Short Date
Medium Date
Long Date
Time am/pm
Medium Time
Time 24hour
Yes/No
Check Box
Yes/No
Calculated Field
Save Selection as New Data Type

Figure 5–9

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Updating the New Fields

After adding the new fields to the table, the next task is to enter data into the fields. The data type determines the manner in which this is accomplished. The following sections cover the methods for updating fields with an input mask, Yes/No fields, Date/Time fields, Memo fields, OLE fields, and Attachment fields. They also show how you would enter data in Hyperlink fields.

To Enter Data Using an Input Mask

When you are entering data in a field that has an input mask, Access will insert the appropriate special characters in the proper positions. This means Access automatically will insert the parentheses around the area code, the space following the second parenthesis, and the hyphen in the Phone Number field. The following steps use the input mask to add the telephone numbers.

1

- Open the Business Analyst Table and close the Navigation Pane.
- Click at the beginning of the Phone Number field on the first record to display an insertion point in the field (Figure 5–10).

Q&A

I don't see the parentheses and hyphen as shown in the figure. Did I do something wrong?

It depends on exactly where you click as to whether you will see the symbols. In any case, as soon as you start typing in the field, the symbols should appear.

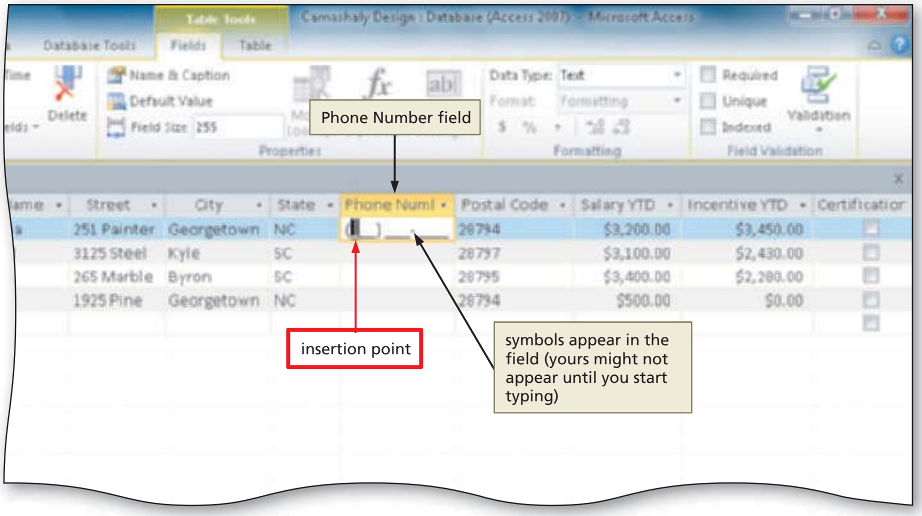


Table Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
Database Tools
Fields
Table
Delete
Name & Caption
Default Value
Field Size 255
Properties
Data Type: Text
Format: Formatting
$ %
Formatting
Required
Unique
Indexed
Validation
Field Validation

ame	Street	City	State	Phone Numl	Postal Code	Salary YTD	Incentive YTD	Certification
a	251 Painter	Georgetown	NC	(___) ___-____	28794	$3,200.00	$3,450.00	☐
	3125 Steel	Kyle	SC		28797	$3,100.00	$2,430.00	☐
	265 Marble	Byron	SC		28795	$3,400.00	$2,280.00	☐
	1925 Pine	Georgetown	NC		28794	$500.00	$0.00	☐

Phone Number field

insertion point

symbols appear in the field (yours might not appear until you start typing)

Figure 5–10

2

- Type **7045552436** as the telephone number (Figure 5–11).

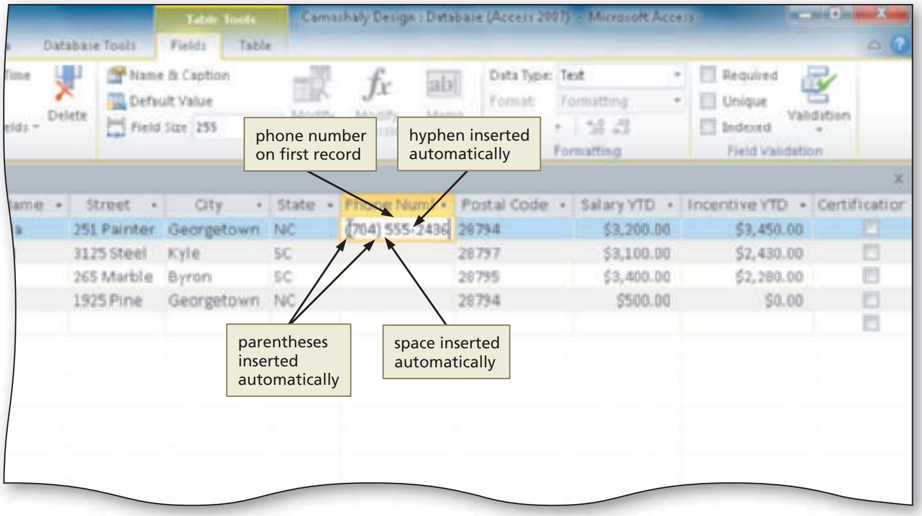


Table Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
Database Tools
Fields
Table
Delete
Name & Caption
Default Value
Field Size 255
Data Type: Text
Format: Formatting
Formatting
Required
Unique
Indexed
Validation
Field Validation

ame	Street	City	State	Phone Numl	Postal Code	Salary YTD	Incentive YTD	Certification
a	251 Painter	Georgetown	NC	(704) 555-2436	28794	$3,200.00	$3,450.00	☐
	3125 Steel	Kyle	SC		28797	$3,100.00	$2,430.00	☐
	265 Marble	Byron	SC		28795	$3,400.00	$2,280.00	☐
	1925 Pine	Georgetown	NC		28794	$500.00	$0.00	☐

phone number on first record

hyphen inserted automatically

parentheses inserted automatically

space inserted automatically

Figure 5–11

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3

- Use the same technique to enter the remaining telephone numbers, as shown in Figure 5–12.

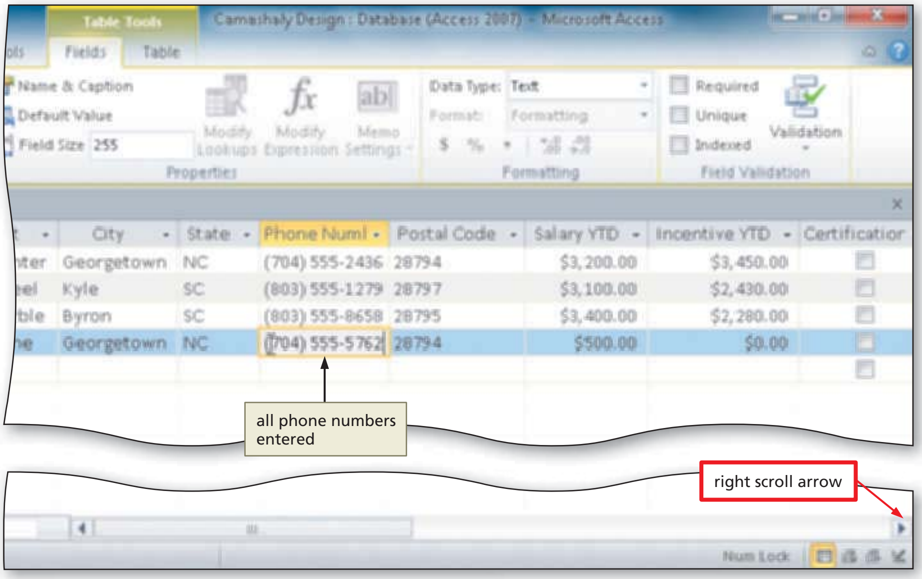


Table Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
Fields
Table
Name & Caption
Default Value
Field Size 255
Modify Lookups
Modify Expression
Memo Settings
Properties
Data Type: Text
Format: Formatting
Formatting
Required
Unique
Indexed
Validation
Field Validation
Num Lock

	City	State	Phone Numl	Postal Code	Salary YTD	Incentive YTD	Certification
nter	Georgetown	NC	(704) 555-2436	28794	$3,200.00	$3,450.00	☐
eel	Kyle	SC	(803) 555-1279	28797	$3,100.00	$2,430.00	☐
ble	Byron	SC	(803) 555-8658	28795	$3,400.00	$2,280.00	☐
ne	Georgetown	NC	(704) 555-5762	28794	$500.00	$0.00	☐

all phone numbers entered

right scroll arrow

Figure 5–12

To Enter Data in Yes/No Fields

Fields that are Yes/No fields contain check boxes. To set the value to Yes, place a check mark in the check box. To set a value to No, leave the check box blank. The following steps set the value of the Certification field, a Yes/No field, to Yes for the first and fourth records.

1

- Repeatedly click the right scroll arrow (shown in Figure 5–12) until the new fields appear.
- Click the check box in the Certification field on the first record to place a check mark in the box (Figure 5–13).

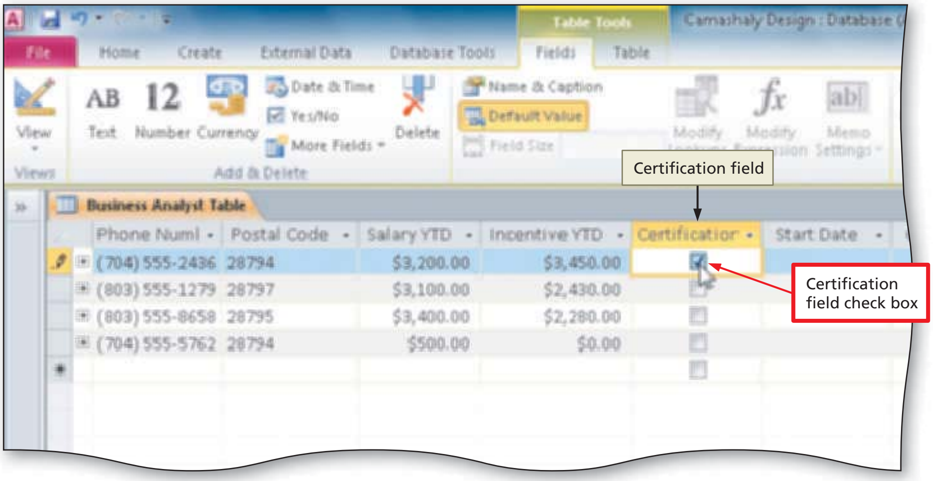


Table Tools
Camashaly Design : Database
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Fields
Table
View
Views
AB Text
12 Number
Currency
Date & Time
Yes/No
More Fields
Delete
Add & Delete
Name & Caption
Default Value
Field Size
Modify Lookups
Modify Expression
Memo Settings
Business Analyst Table

Phone Numl	Postal Code	Salary YTD	Incentive YTD	Certification	Start Date
(704) 555-2436	28794	$3,200.00	$3,450.00	☑	
(803) 555-1279	28797	$3,100.00	$2,430.00	☐	
(803) 555-8658	28795	$3,400.00	$2,280.00	☐	
(704) 555-5762	28794	$500.00	$0.00	☐	

Certification field

Certification field check box

Figure 5–13

Q&A

What is the meaning of the check mark?

A check mark indicates the value in the Certification field is Yes. If there is no check mark, the value is No.

2

- Click the check box in the Certification field on the fourth record to place a check mark in the box.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Enter Data in Date/Time Fields

To enter data in Date/Time fields, you can simply type the dates and include slashes (/). As an alternative, you can click the field, click the Date Picker that will appear next to the field, and then use the calendar to select the date. The following step adds the start dates for the business analysts.

1

- Click the Start Date field on the first record, type `5/24/2010` as the date on the first record, and then press the DOWN ARROW key.
- Type `2/1/2011` as the start date on the second record, and then press the DOWN ARROW key.
- Type `5/16/2011` as the start date on the third record, and then press the DOWN ARROW key.
- Type `1/9/2012` as the start date on the fourth record (Figure 5–14).

Q&A

How do I use the Date Picker?

Click the Date Picker to display a calendar. Scroll to the month and year you want and then click the desired day of the month.

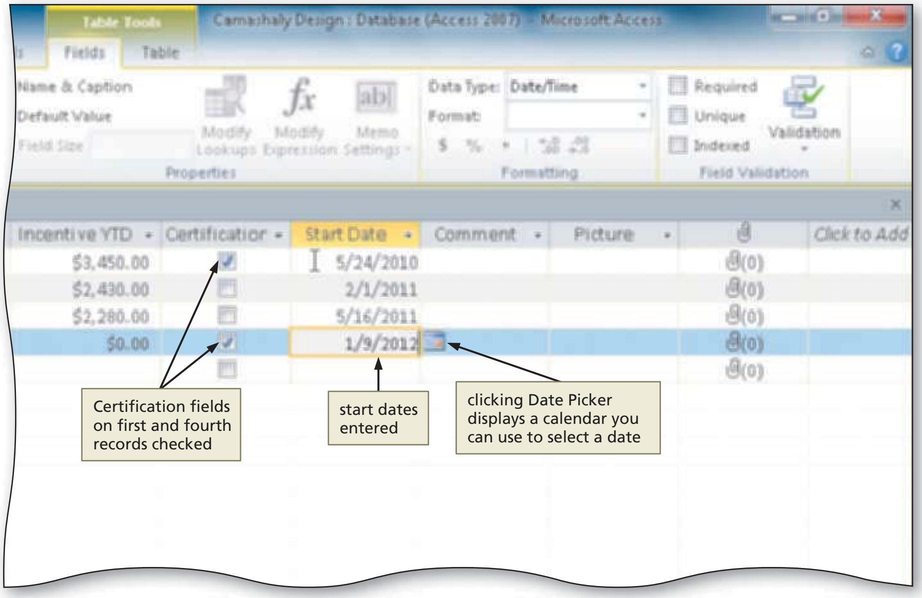


Table Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
Fields
Table
Name & Caption
Default Value
Field Size
Modify Lookups
Modify Expression
Memo Settings
Properties
Format:
Formatting
Required
Unique
Indexed
Validation
Field Validation
Click to Add

Data Type: Date/Time

Incentive YTD	Certification	Start Date	Comment	Picture		Click to Add
$3,450.00	☑	5/24/2010			(0)	
$2,430.00	☐	2/1/2011			(0)	
$2,280.00	☐	5/16/2011			(0)	
$0.00	☑	1/9/2012			(0)	
	☐				(0)	

Certification fields on first and fourth records checked

start dates entered

clicking Date Picker displays a calendar you can use to select a date

Figure 5–14

Experiment

- Click the Date Picker on the last record and use it to assign a date. When finished, change the date to 1/9/2012.

To Enter Data in Memo Fields

To update a memo field, simply type the data in the field. With the current row and column spacing on the screen, only a small portion of the memo will appear. To correct this problem, you will change the spacing later to allow more room for the memo. The following steps enter each business analyst's comment.

1

- If necessary, click the right scroll arrow (shown in Figure 5–12) so the Comment field appears.
- Click the Comment field on the first record, and then type `Master's degree in Information Systems; secretary of a national information systems organization.` as the entry (Figure 5–15).

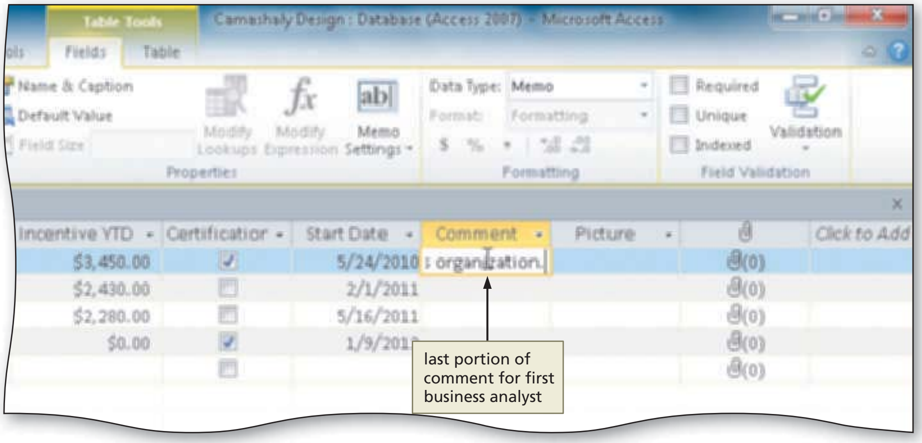


Table Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
Fields
Table
Name & Caption
Default Value
Field Size
Modify Lookups
Modify Expression
Memo Settings
Properties
Format:
Formatting
Required
Unique
Indexed
Validation
Field Validation
Click to Add

Data Type: Memo

Incentive YTD	Certification	Start Date	Comment	Picture		Click to Add
$3,450.00	☑	5/24/2010	s organization.		(0)	
$2,430.00	☐	2/1/2011			(0)	
$2,280.00	☐	5/16/2011			(0)	
$0.00	☑	1/9/2012			(0)	
	☐				(0)	

last portion of comment for first business analyst

Figure 5–15

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2

- Click the Comment field on the second record, and then type `Bachelor's degree in Business Administration; veteran; has database experience.` as the entry.
- Click the Comment field on the third record, and then type `Working on a Master's degree in Business Administration; has a Bachelor's degree in Information Technology.` as the entry.
- Click the Comment field on the fourth record, and then type `Bachelor's degree in Computer Science; active in promoting CS as a major to young adults.` as the entry (Figure 5–16).

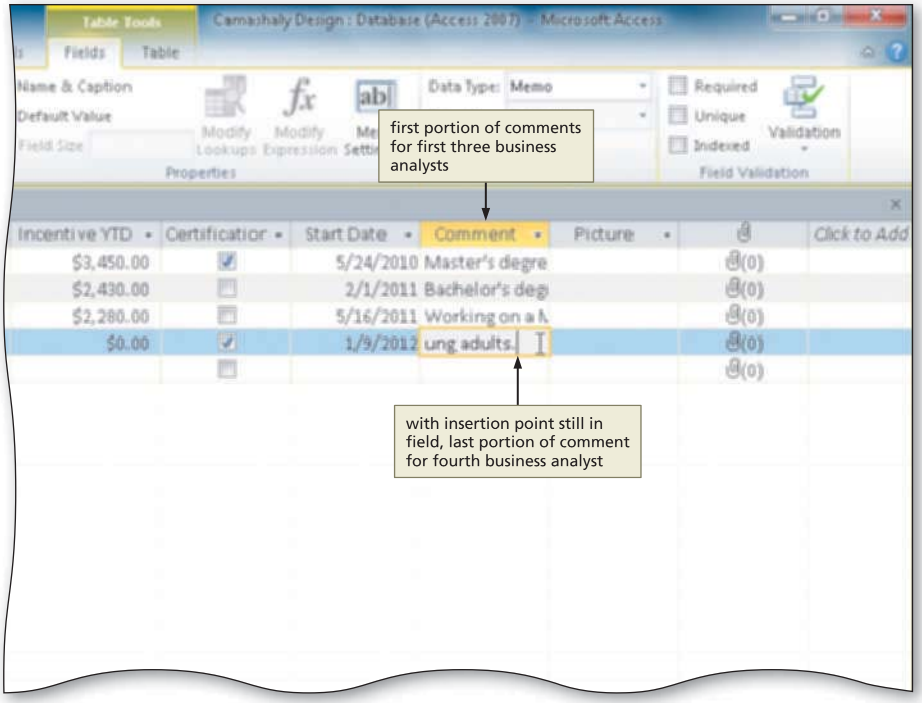


Table Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
Fields
Table
Name & Caption
Default Value
Field Size
Modify Lookups
Modify Expression
Data Type: Memo
Required
Unique
Indexed
Validation
Properties
Field Validation
Incentive YTD
Certification
Start Date
Comment
Picture
Click to Add
$3,450.00
$2,430.00
$2,280.00
$0.00
5/24/2010 Master's degre
2/1/2011 Bachelor's deg
5/16/2011 Working on a N
1/9/2012 ung adults.
(0)

first portion of comments for first three business analysts

with insertion point still in field, last portion of comment for fourth business analyst

Figure 5–16

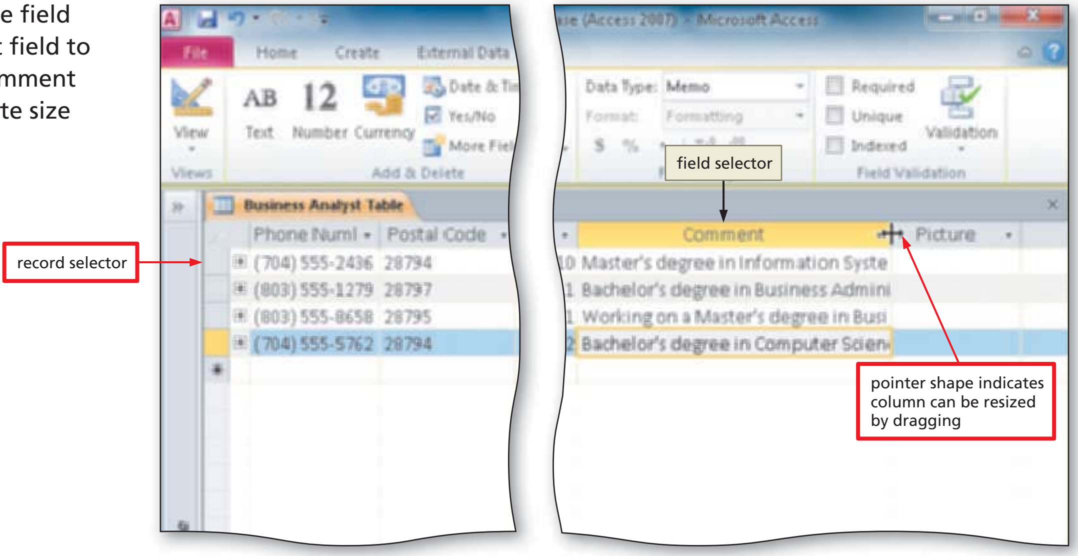
To Change the Row and Column Size

Only a small portion of the comments appears in the datasheet. To allow more of the information to appear, you can expand the size of the rows and the columns. You can change the size of a column by using the field selector. The **field selector** is the bar containing the field name. To change the size of a row, you use a record's **record selector**, which is the small box at the beginning of each record.

The following steps resize the column containing the Comment field and the rows of the table so a larger portion of the Comment field text will appear.

1

- Drag the right edge of the field selector for the Comment field to the right to resize the Comment column to the approximate size shown in Figure 5–17.


File
Home
Create
External Data
View
Text
Number
Currency
Date & Time
Yes/No
More Fields
Views
Add & Delete
Business Analyst Table
Phone Numb
Postal Code
(704) 555-2436 28794
(803) 555-1279 28797
(803) 555-8658 28795
(704) 555-5762 28794
ase (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
Data Type: Memo
Format: Formatting
Required
Unique
Indexed
Validation
Field Validation
Comment
Picture
Master's degree in Information Syste
Bachelor's degree in Business Admini
Working on a Master's degree in Busi
Bachelor's degree in Computer Scien

record selector

field selector

pointer shape indicates column can be resized by dragging

Figure 5–17

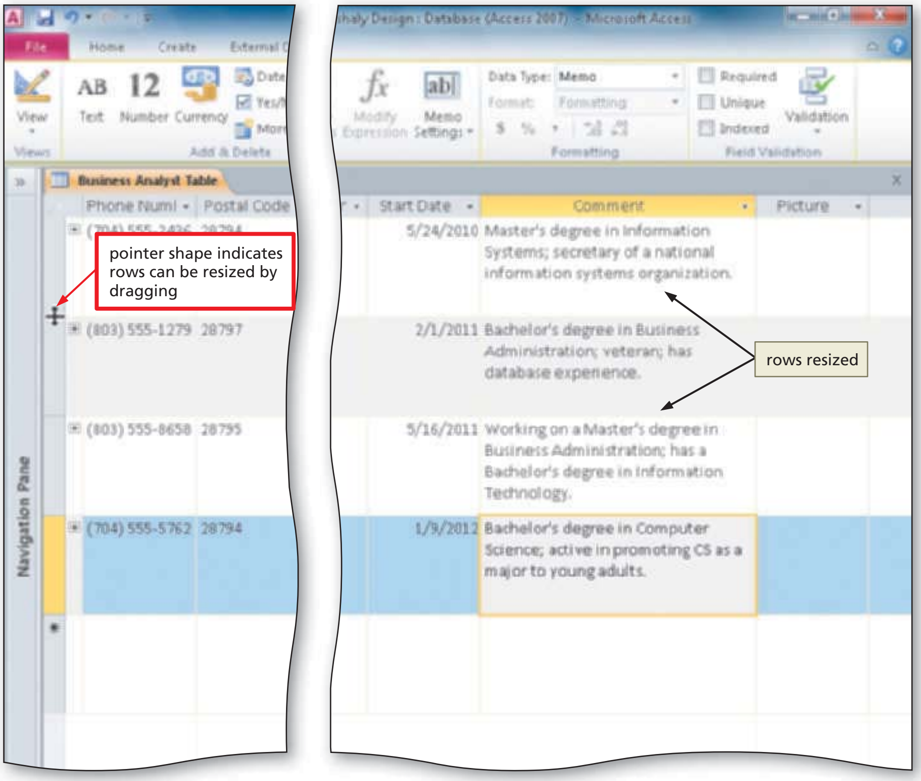
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2

- Drag the lower edge of the record selector to approximately the position shown in Figure 5–18.

Q&A Can rows be different sizes?

No. All rows must be the same size.


File
Home
Create
External
View
Views
AB Text
12 Number
Currency
Date
Yes/
More
Add & Delete
Modify Expression
Memo Settings
Data Type: Memo
Format: Formatting
Formatting
Required
Unique
Indexed
Validation
Field Validation
Business Analyst Table
Navigation Pane

Phone Numb	Postal Code	Start Date	Comment	Picture
(704) 555-2436	28794	5/24/2010	Master's degree in Information Systems; secretary of a national information systems organization.	
(803) 555-1279	28797	2/1/2011	Bachelor's degree in Business Administration; veteran; has database experience.	
(803) 555-8658	28795	5/16/2011	Working on a Master's degree in Business Administration; has a Bachelor's degree in Information Technology.	
(704) 555-5762	28794	1/9/2012	Bachelor's degree in Computer Science; active in promoting CS as a major to young adults.	

pointer shape indicates rows can be resized by dragging

rows resized

Figure 5–18

Other Ways

1. Right-click record selector, click Row Height to change row spacing
2. Right-click field selector, click Field Width to change column size

Undoing Changes to Row Height and Column Width

If you later find that the changes you made to the row height or the column width are no longer appropriate, you can undo them. To undo changes to the row height, right-click the row selector, click Row Height on the shortcut menu, and then click the Standard Height check box in the Row Height dialog box. To undo changes to the column width, right-click the field selector, click Field Width on the shortcut menu, and then click the Standard Width check box in the Column Width dialog box.

To Enter Data in OLE Object Fields

To insert data into an OLE Object field, you use the Insert Object command on the OLE field's shortcut menu. The Insert Object command presents a list of the various types of objects that can be inserted. Access then opens the corresponding application to create the object; for example, Microsoft Drawing. If the object already is created and stored in a file, as is the case in this project, you simply insert it directly from the file.

The following steps insert pictures into the Picture field. The pictures will be visible as photographs in the form; however, the table will display the text, Bitmap Image, in the Picture field. The steps assume that the pictures are located in a folder called AccessData on your USB drive. If your pictures are located elsewhere, you will need to make the appropriate changes.

1

- Ensure the Picture field appears on your screen, and then right-click the Picture field on the first record to produce a shortcut menu (Figure 5–19).

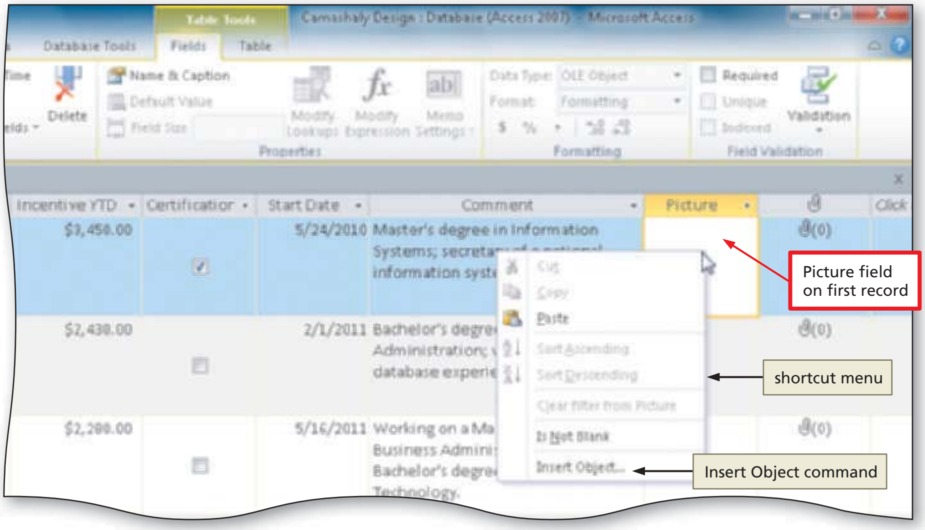

Picture field on first record
shortcut menu
Insert Object command
Cut
Copy
Paste
Sort Ascending
Sort Descending
Clear filter from Picture
Is Not Blank
Insert Object...

Figure 5–19

2

- Click Insert Object on the shortcut menu to display the Microsoft Access dialog box (Figure 5–20).

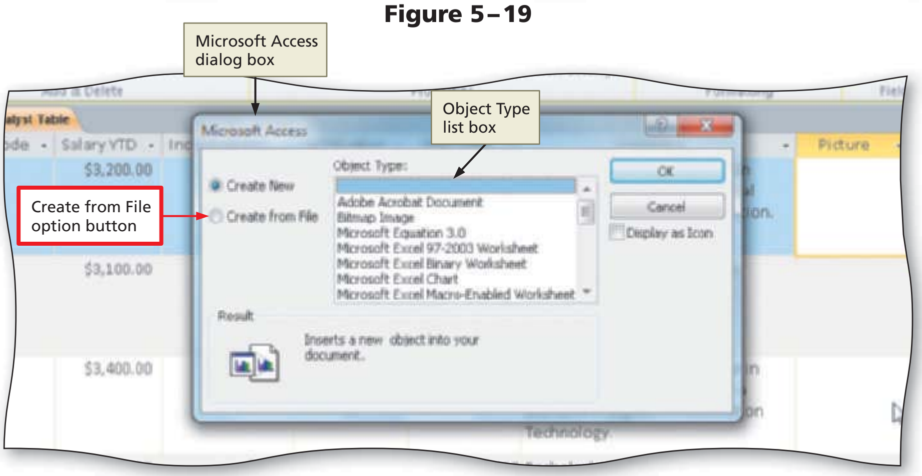

Microsoft Access dialog box
Object Type list box
Create from File option button
Microsoft Access
Create New
Create from File
Object Type:
Adobe Acrobat Document
Bitmap Image
Microsoft Equation 3.0
Microsoft Excel 97-2003 Worksheet
Microsoft Excel Binary Worksheet
Microsoft Excel Chart
Microsoft Excel Macro-Enabled Worksheet
OK
Cancel
Display as Icon
Result
Inserts a new object into your document.

Figure 5–20

3

- Click the 'Create from File' option button, and then click the Browse button to display the Browse dialog box.
- Navigate to the AccessData folder on your USB drive in the Browse dialog box. (If your pictures are located elsewhere, navigate to the folder where they are located instead of the AccessData folder.)
- Click Pict1 and then click the OK button (Browse dialog box) to select the appropriate picture (Figure 5–21).

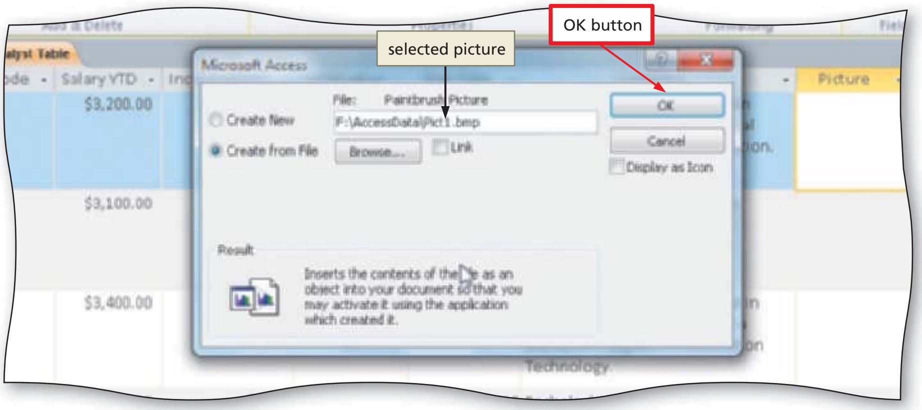

selected picture
OK button
Microsoft Access
Create New
Create from File
File: Paintbrush Picture
F:\AccessData\Pict1.bmp
Browse...
Link
OK
Cancel
Display as Icon
Result
Inserts the contents of the file as an object into your document so that you may activate it using the application which created it.

Figure 5–21

4

- Click the OK button to insert the picture into the table.

Q&A

I don't see the picture. I just see the words, Bitmap Image. Is that correct?

Yes. You will see the actual picture when you use this field in a form.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Bitmap Image

The entries in the Picture field all should be the words, Bitmap Image. You will not see the actual picture of the business analyst. The entries may initially be something other than the words, Bitmap Image, but, if so, they should change to the words, Bitmap Image, after you move to another record. They also should change after you close and reopen the table.

TO CHANGE PICTURE FIELD ENTRIES TO BITMAP IMAGE

If the entries do not change to the words, Bitmap Image, there is a problem either with the graphics filters that are installed or with the file associations for BMP files. You would use a slightly different technique to add the pictures, as in the following steps:

1. Right-click the Picture field, click Insert Object, *and then* select the Bitmap Image object type from the Object Type list.
2. Click the OK button to open the Paint application.
3. Click the Paste button arrow (Home tab | Clipboard group), and then click the Paste from command.
4. Navigate to the location for the desired BMP file, select the file, and then click the OK button.
5. Click the Paint button, which is just to the left of the Home tab, and then click the Update document command to update the table with the selected picture.
6. Click the Paint button a second time, and then click the 'Exit and return to document' command to return to the table.

BTW

OLE Fields

OLE fields can occupy a great deal of space. To save space in your database, you can convert a picture from Bitmap Image to Picture (Device Independent Bitmap). To make the conversion, right-click the field, click Bitmap Image Object, click Convert, and then select Picture (Device Independent Bitmap) in the Convert dialog box.

To Enter the Remaining Pictures

The following step adds the remaining pictures. If you have the problem indicated in the previous section, you should use the suggested technique to add the pictures.

1. Insert the pictures into the second, third, and fourth records using the techniques illustrated in the previous set of steps. For the second record, select the picture named Pict2. For the third record, select the picture named Pict3. For the fourth record, select Pict4.

To Enter Data in Attachment Fields

To insert data into an Attachment field, you use the Manage Attachments command on the Attachment field's shortcut menu. The Manage Attachments command displays the Attachments dialog box, which you can use to attach as many files as necessary to the field. The following steps attach two files to the first business analyst and one file to the fourth business analyst. The second and third business analysts currently have no attachments.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

①

- Ensure the Client Notes field, which has a paper clip in the field selector, appears on your screen, and then right-click the Client Notes field on the first record to produce a shortcut menu (Figure 5–22).

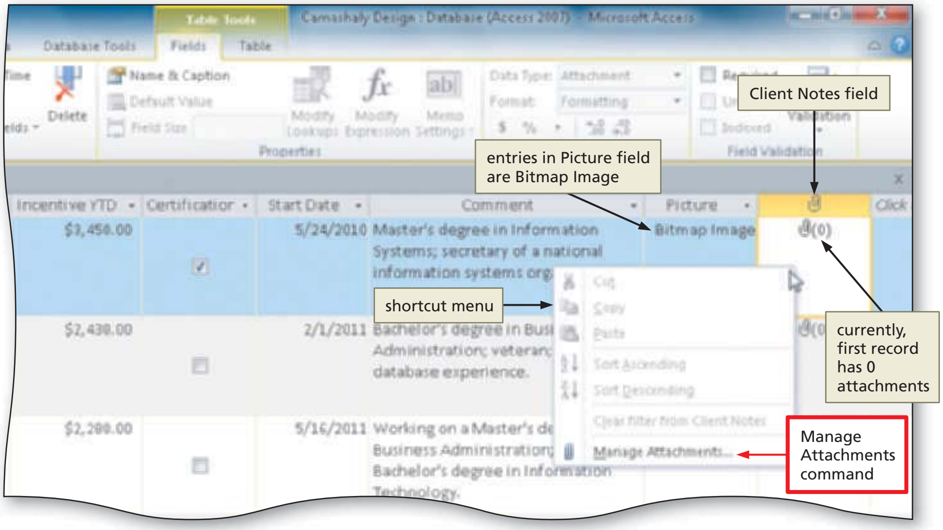

Client Notes field
entries in Picture field are Bitmap Image
shortcut menu
currently, first record has 0 attachments
Manage Attachments command
Cut
Copy
Paste
Sort Ascending
Sort Descending
Clear filter from Client Notes
Manage Attachments...

Figure 5–22

②

- Click Manage Attachments on the shortcut menu to display the Attachments dialog box (Figure 5–23).

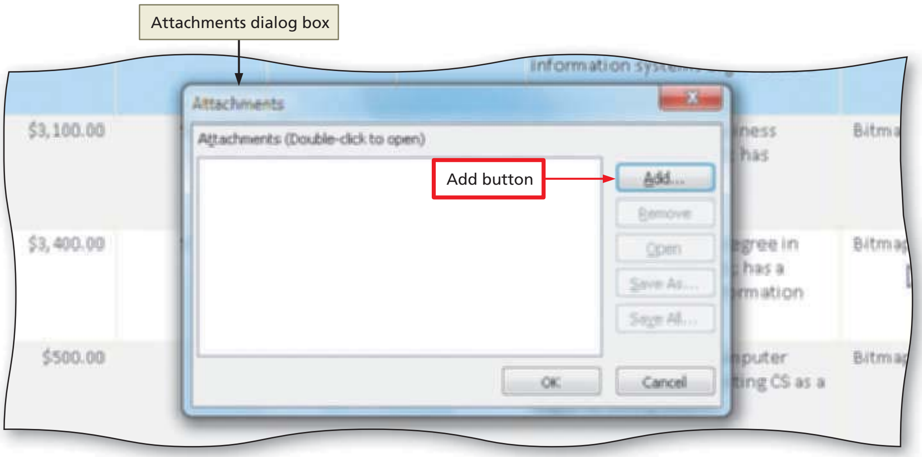

Attachments dialog box
Attachments
Attachments (Double-click to open)
Add button
Add...
Remove
Open
Save As...
Save All...
OK
Cancel

Figure 5–23

③

- Click the Add button (Attachments dialog box) to add an attachment.
- Navigate to the AccessData folder on your USB drive in the Choose File dialog box. (If your files are located elsewhere, navigate to the folder where they are located instead of the AccessData folder.)
- Click Cordelia Kerry Clients, a Word file, and then click the Open button (Choose File dialog box) to attach the file.
- Click the Add button (Attachments dialog box).
- Click the Cordelia Kerry Potential Clients, an Excel file, and then click the Open button to attach the file (Figure 5–24).

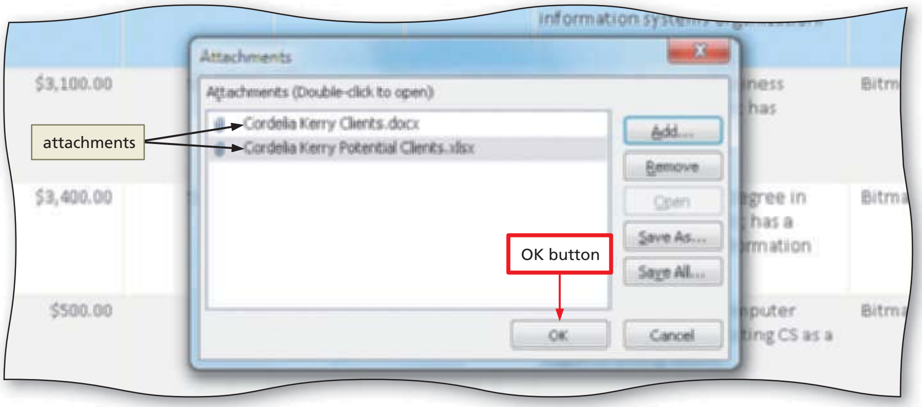
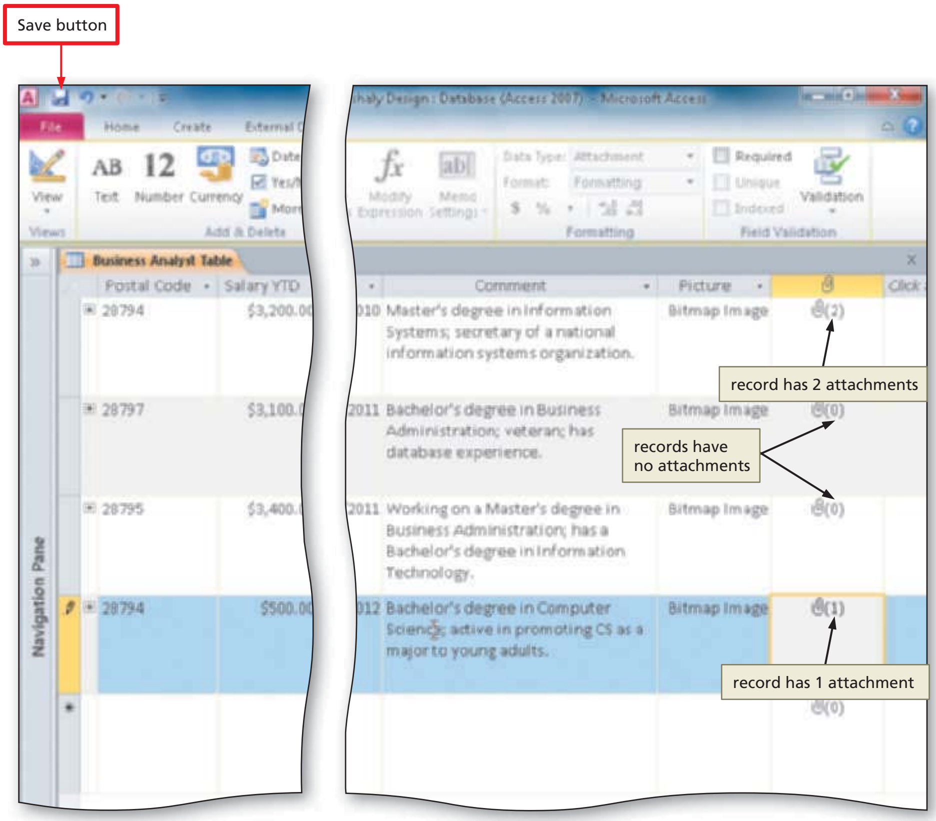

attachments
Attachments
Attachments (Double-click to open)
Cordelia Kerry Clients.docx
Cordelia Kerry Potential Clients.xlsx
OK button
Add...
Remove
Open
Save As...
Save All...
OK
Cancel

Figure 5–24

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

4

- Click the OK button (Attachments dialog box) to close the Attachments dialog box.
- Using the same technique, attach the Jeff Scott Potential Clients file to the fourth record (Figure 5–25). (The second and third records have no attachments.)


File
Home
Create
External
View
Views
AB Text
12 Number
Currency
Date
Yes/
More
Add & Delete
Modify Expression
Memo Settings
Data Type: Attachment
Format: Formatting
$ %
Formatting
Required
Unique
Indexed
Validation
Field Validation
Business Analyst Table
Navigation Pane
hahaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access

Postal Code	Salary YTD	Comment	Picture		Click
28794	$3,200.00	010 Master's degree in Information Systems; secretary of a national information systems organization.	Bitmap Image	(2)	
28797	$3,100.	2011 Bachelor's degree in Business Administration; veteran; has database experience.	Bitmap Image	(0)	
28795	$3,400.	2011 Working on a Master's degree in Business Administration; has a Bachelor's degree in Information Technology.	Bitmap Image	(0)	
28794	$500.00	012 Bachelor's degree in Computer Science; active in promoting CS as a major to young adults.	Bitmap Image	(1)	
				(0)	

Save button

record has 2 attachments

records have no attachments

record has 1 attachment

Figure 5–25

To Enter Data in Hyperlink Fields

If you had a Hyperlink field, you would insert data by using the following steps.

1. Right-click the Hyperlink field in which you want to enter data to display a shortcut menu.
2. Click Hyperlink on the shortcut menu to display the Hyperlink submenu.
3. Click Edit Hyperlink on the Hyperlink submenu to display the Insert Hyperlink dialog box.
4. Type the desired Web address in the Address text box.
5. Click the OK button (Insert Hyperlink dialog box).

To Save the Properties and Close the Table

The row and column spacing are table properties. When changing any table properties, the changes apply only as long as the table is active *unless they are saved*. Once you have saved them, they will apply every time you open the table.

The following steps first save the properties and then close the table.

1 Click the Save button on the Quick Access Toolbar to save the changes to the table properties.

2 Close the table.

Break Point: If you wish to stop working through the chapter at this point, you can resume the project at a later time by starting Access, opening the database called Camashaly Design, and continuing to follow the steps from this location forward.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Viewing Pictures and Attachments in Datasheet View

BTW **Attachment Fields**
To view attachments, you must have the application that created the attachment file installed on your computer.

Although the pictures do not appear on the screen, you can view them within the table. To view the picture of a particular business analyst, right-click the Picture field for the business analyst. Click Bitmap Image Object on the shortcut menu, and then click Open. The picture will appear. Once you have finished viewing the picture, close the window containing the picture by clicking its Close button.

You can view the attachments in the Client Notes field by right-clicking the field and then clicking Manage Attachments on the shortcut menu. The attachments then appear in the Attachments dialog box. To view an attachment, click the attachment and then click the Open button (Attachments dialog box). The attachment will appear in its original application. After you have finished viewing the attachment, close the original application and close the dialog box.

Multitable Form Techniques

With the additional fields in place, Camashaly Design management is ready to incorporate data from both the Business Analyst and Client tables in a single form. The form will display data concerning one business analyst. It also will display data concerning the many clients assigned to the business analyst. The relationship between business analysts and clients is a one-to-many relationship in which the Business Analyst Table is the "one" table and the Client table is the "many" table.

To include the data for the many clients of a business analyst on the form, the client data will appear in a **subform**, which is a form that is contained within another form. The form in which the subform is contained is called the main form. Thus, the **main form** will contain business analyst data, and the subform will contain client data.

Plan Ahead

Determine on which of the tables the form is to be based.
Once you determine that you need data from more than one table, you need to determine the main table and its relationship to any other table.

- **Determine the main table the form is intended to view and/or update.** You need to identify the purpose of the form and the table it is really intended to show, which is the main table. If the database contains a table that could be omitted and still have the form make sense, that is *not* the main table.
- **Determine how the additional table should fit into the form.** If the additional table is the "many" part of the relationship, the data should probably be in a subform or datasheet. If the additional table is the "one" part of the relationship, the data should probably appear simply as fields on the form.

Plan Ahead

Determine the fields from each table that need to be on the form.
After you decide on which tables the form is based, you need to decide which fields to include.

- **Determine the fields from the main table that should be included on the form.** Identify the fields that users want on the form and determine whether a particular order for the fields would be most useful.
- **Determine the fields from the additional table that should be included on the form.** Identify the fields from the additional table that would be helpful in updating or viewing the fields from the main table and determine whether users should be able to change these fields using the form. (Often they should not be able to change the fields.)

To Create a Form in Design View

You can create a form in Design view, which gives you the most flexibility in laying out the form using a blank design on which you place objects. The following steps create a form in Design view.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

1

- If necessary, open the Navigation Pane and be sure the Business Analyst Table is selected.
- Click Create on the Ribbon to display the Create tab (Figure 5–26).

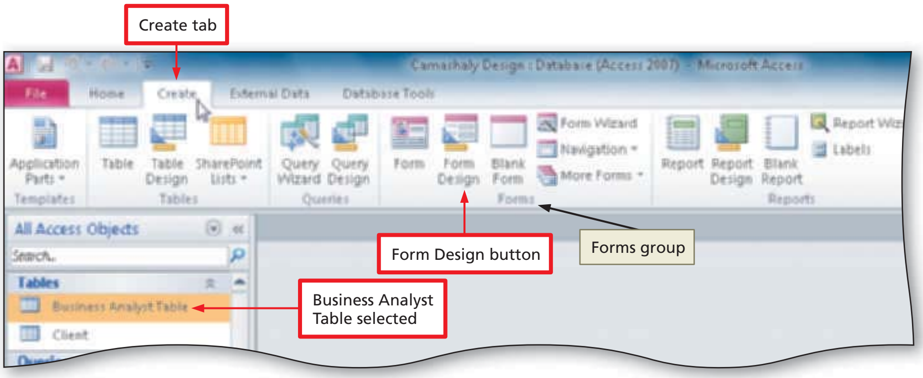

Create tab
Form Design button
Forms group
Business Analyst Table selected

Figure 5–26

2

- Click the Form Design button (Create tab | Forms group) to create a new form in Design view.
- Close the Navigation Pane.
- If a field list does not appear, click the Add Existing Fields button (Form Design Tools Design tab | Tools group) to display a field list (Figure 5–27). If you don't see the tables listed, click Show all tables. (Your list might show all fields in the Client table.)

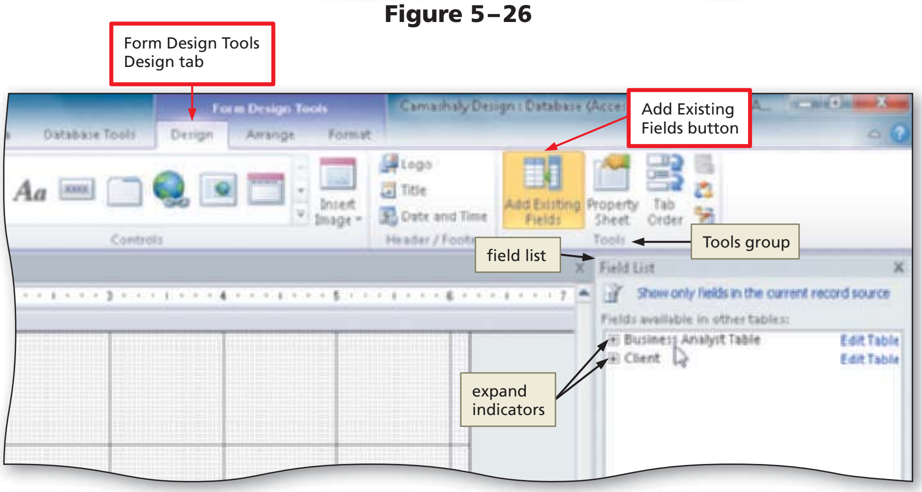

Form Design Tools Design tab
Add Existing Fields button
field list
Tools group
expand indicators

Figure 5–27

Q&A How do I display the fields in the Business Analyst Table?

Click the expand indicator (+) in front of the Business Analyst Table to display the fields.

To Add a Control for a Field to the Form Design

To place a control for a field on a form, drag the field from the field list to the desired position. The following steps place the Business Analyst Number field on the form.

1

- If necessary, click the expand indicator for the Business Analyst Table to display the fields in the table. Point to the Business Analyst Number field in the field list for the Business Analyst Table, press the left mouse button, and then drag the field to the approximate position shown in Figure 5–28.

Q&A Do I have to be exact?

No. Just be sure you are in the same general location.

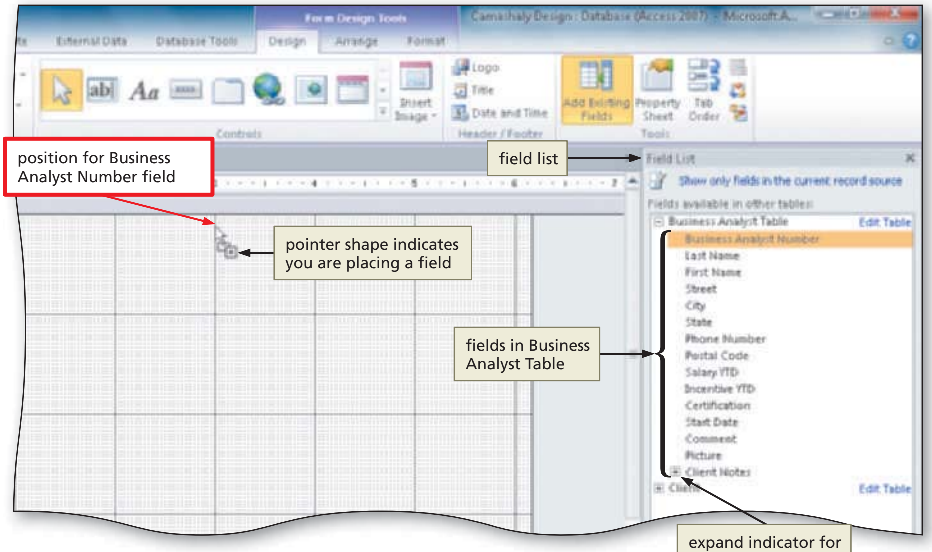
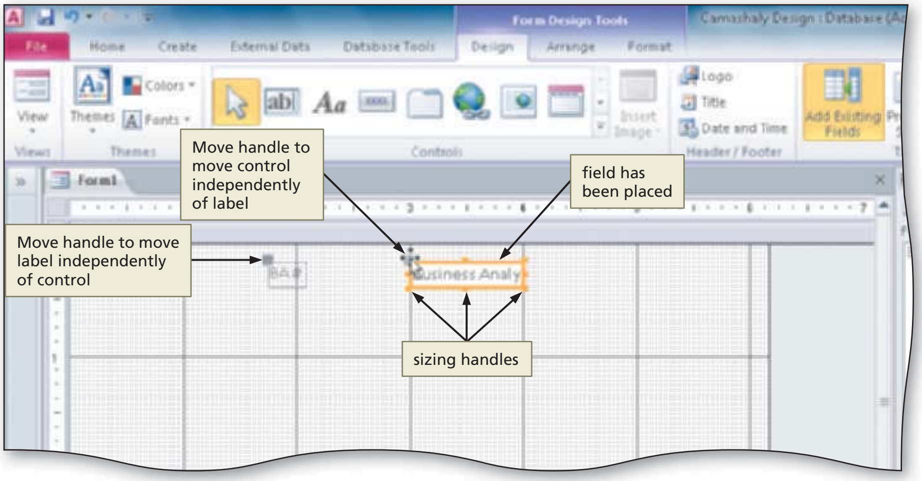

position for Business Analyst Number field
field list
pointer shape indicates you are placing a field
fields in Business Analyst Table
expand indicator for Attachment field

Figure 5–28

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2

- Release the left mouse button to place a control for the field (Figure 5–29).



Move handle to move control independently of label

field has been placed

Move handle to move label independently of control

sizing handles

Figure 5–29

To Save the Form

Before continuing with the form creation, it is a good idea to save the form. The following steps save the form and assign it the name Business Analyst Master Form.

1 Click the Save button on the Quick Access Toolbar.

2 Type `Business Analyst Master Form` as the name of the form.

3 Click the OK button to save the form.

To Add Controls for Additional Fields

The following step places controls for the First Name, Last Name, Phone Number, Salary YTD, Incentive YTD, Start Date, and Certification fields on the form by dragging the fields from the field list.

1

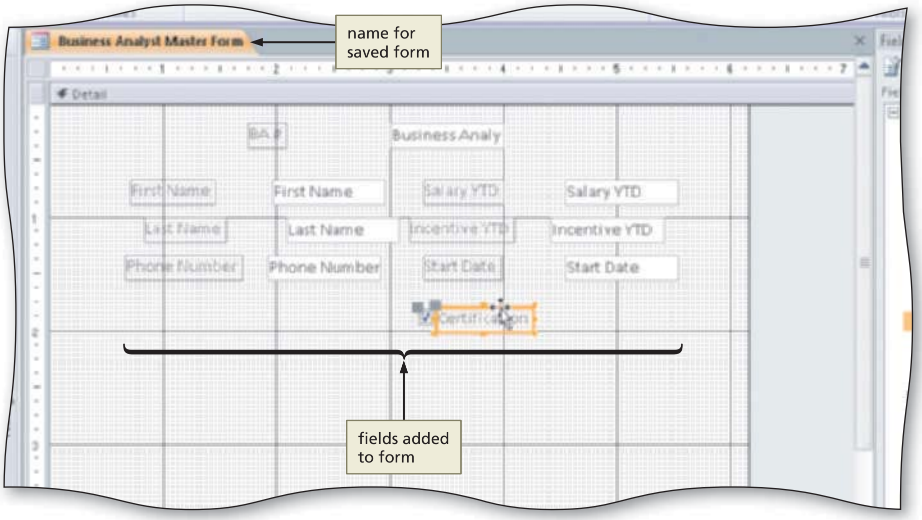
- Drag the First Name, Last Name, Phone Number, Salary YTD, Incentive YTD, Start Date, and Certification fields and their labels to the approximate positions shown in Figure 5–30.

Q&A Do I have to align them precisely?

You can, but you do not need to. In the next steps, you will instruct Access to align the fields properly.

Q&A What if I drag the wrong field from the field list? Can I undo my action?

Yes. Click the Undo button.



name for saved form

fields added to form

Figure 5–30

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Align Controls on the Left

Often, you will want form controls to be aligned in some fashion. For example, the controls may be aligned so their right edges are even with each other. In another case, controls may be aligned so their top edges are even. To ensure that a collection of controls is aligned properly with each other, select all of the affected controls, and then use the appropriate alignment button on the Arrange tab.

There are two ways to select multiple controls. One way is to use a ruler. If you click a position on the horizontal ruler, you will select all the controls for which a portion of the control is under that position on the ruler. Similarly, if you click a position on the vertical ruler, you will select all the controls for which a portion of the control is to the right of that position on the ruler.

The second way to select multiple controls is to select the first control by clicking it. Then, select all the other controls by holding down the SHIFT key while clicking the control.

The following steps select the First Name, Last Name, and Phone Number controls and then align them so their left edges line up.

1

- Click the First Name control (the white space, not the label) to select the control.
- Hold the SHIFT key down and click the Last Name control to select an additional control.
- Hold the SHIFT key down, click the Phone Number control to select a third control, and then release the SHIFT key.

Q&A

I selected the wrong collection of fields. How can I start over?

Simply begin the process again, making sure you do not hold the SHIFT key down when you select the first field.

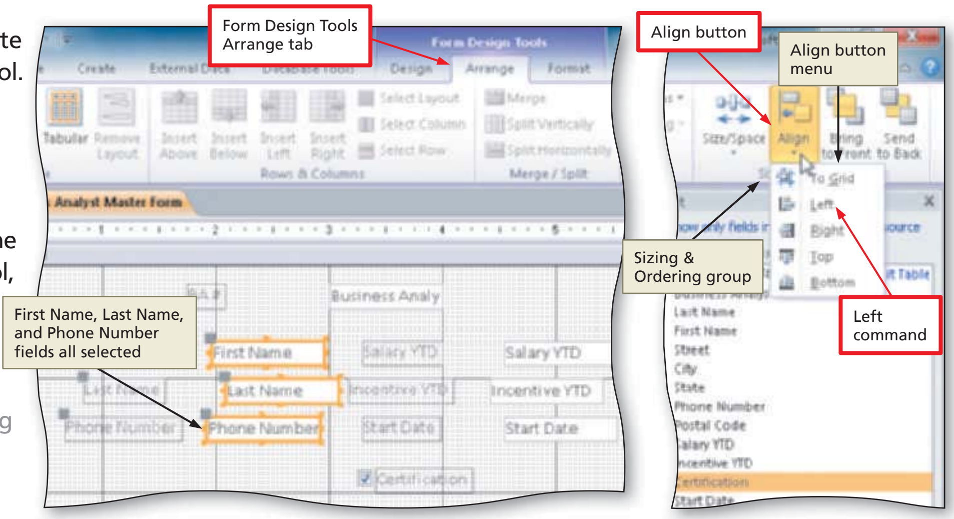

Form Design Tools Arrange tab
Align button
Align button menu
Sizing & Ordering group
Left command
First Name, Last Name, and Phone Number fields all selected
Analyst Master Form
First Name
Last Name
Phone Number
Salary YTD
Incentive YTD
Start Date
Business Analy
Certification
To Grid
Left
Right
Top
Bottom

Figure 5–31

- Click Arrange on the Ribbon to display the Form Design Tools Arrange tab.
- Click the Align button (Form Design Tools Arrange tab | Sizing & Ordering group) to display the Align menu (Figure 5–31).

2

- Click the Left command on the Align menu to align the controls on the left (Figure 5–32).

3

- Click outside any of the selected controls to deselect the controls.
- Using the same technique, align the labels for the First Name, Last Name, and Phone Number fields on the left.
- Using the same technique, align the Salary YTD, Incentive YTD, and Start Date fields on the left.
- If necessary, align the labels for the Salary YTD, Incentive YTD, and Start Date fields on the left.

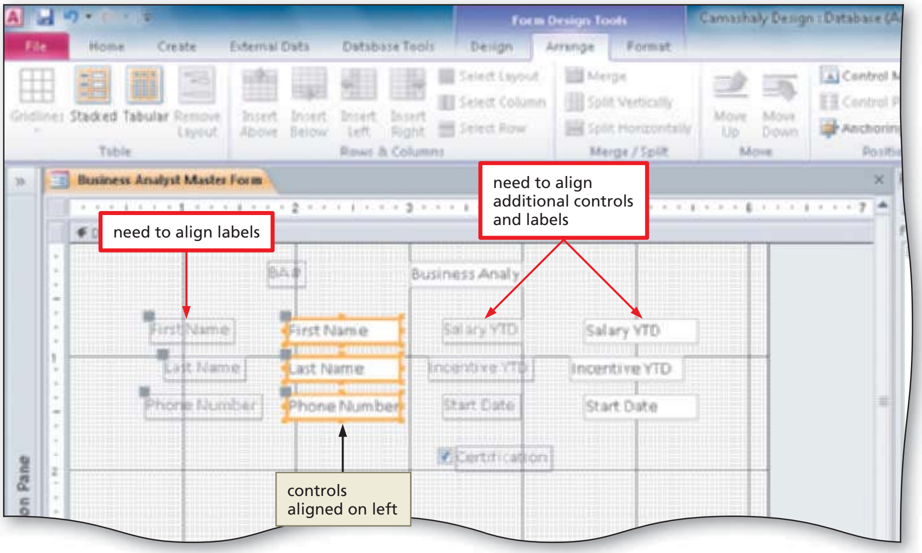

need to align labels
need to align additional controls and labels
controls aligned on left
Business Analyst Master Form
First Name
Last Name
Phone Number
Salary YTD
Incentive YTD
Start Date
Business Analy
Certification

Figure 5–32

Other Ways

1. Right-click selected controls, click Align

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Align Controls on the Top and Adjust Vertical Spacing

You also can align controls so that their top edges line up. In addition, you can adjust spacing so that the vertical spacing between controls is the same. The following steps align the First Name and Salary YTD controls so that they are aligned on the top. Once these controls are aligned, you adjust the vertical spacing so that same amount of space separates each row of controls.

1

- Click the label for the First Name control to select the control.
- Hold the SHIFT key down and click the First Name control to select the additional control.
- Hold the SHIFT key down and click the label for the Salary YTD control to select the label as well.
- Hold the SHIFT key down and click the Salary YTD control to select an additional control.
- Click the Align button (Form Design Tools Arrange tab | Sizing & Ordering group) to display the Align menu (Figure 5–33).

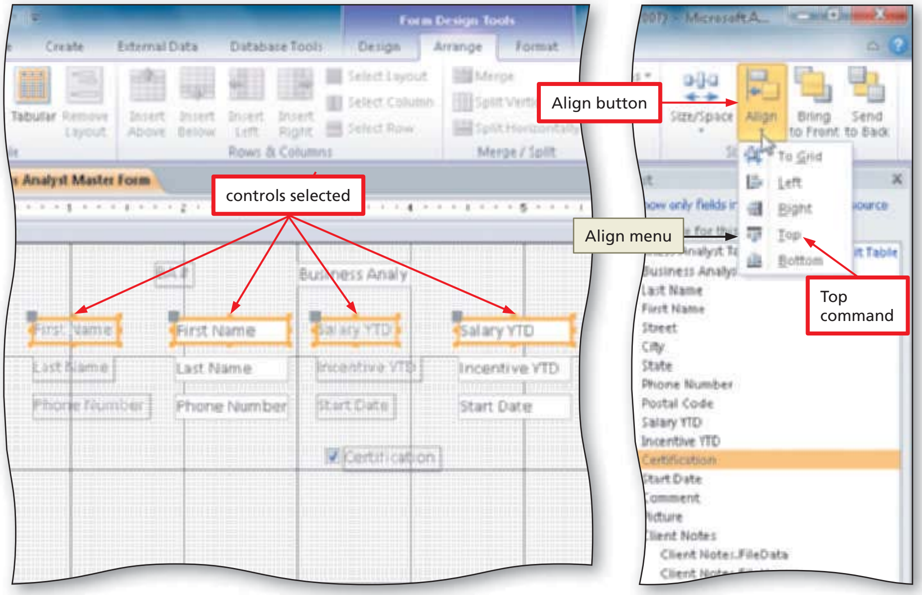

Align button
controls selected
Align menu
Top command
To Grid
Left
Right
Top
Bottom

Figure 5–33

2

- Click the Top command on the Align menu to align the controls on the top.
- Click outside any of the selected controls to deselect the controls.
- Select the First Name, Last Name, Phone Number, Salary YTD, Incentive YTD, and Start Date fields.
- Click the Size/Space button (Form Design Tools Arrange tab | Sizing & Ordering group) to display the Size/Space menu (Figure 5–34).

3

- Click Equal Vertical on the Size/Space menu to specify the spacing.

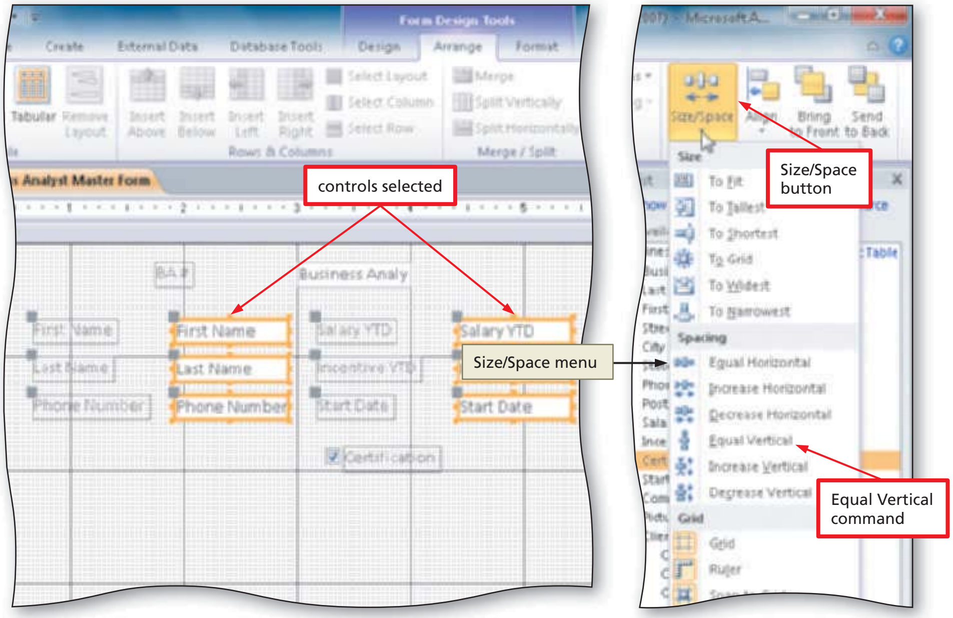

controls selected
Size/Space button
Size/Space menu
Equal Vertical command
Size
To Fit
To Tallest
To Shortest
To Grid
To Widest
To Narrowest
Spacing
Equal Horizontal
Increase Horizontal
Decrease Horizontal
Equal Vertical
Increase Vertical
Decrease Vertical
Grid
Grid
Ruler

Figure 5–34

Q&A

What is the purpose of the other commands on the Size/Space menu?

You can adjust the spacing to fit the available space. You can adjust the space to match the tallest, shortest, widest, or narrowest section. You can adjust the space to match the closest grid points. You can specify equal horizontal spacing. Finally, you can increase or decrease either the vertical or the horizontal spacing.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Move the Field List

Sometimes Access will obscure part of the form with the field list, making it difficult to place fields in the desired locations. To solve this problem, you can move the field list to a different location. The following step moves the field list in preparation for placing controls in the area it currently occupies.

1

- Move the field list to the approximate position shown in Figure 5–35 by dragging its title bar.

Q&A

My field list changed size when I moved it. How can I return it to its original size?

Point to the border of the field list so that the mouse pointer changes to a double-headed arrow. You then can drag to adjust the size.

Q&A

Can I make the field list smaller so I can see more of the screen?

Yes, you can adjust the size to whatever is most comfortable for you.

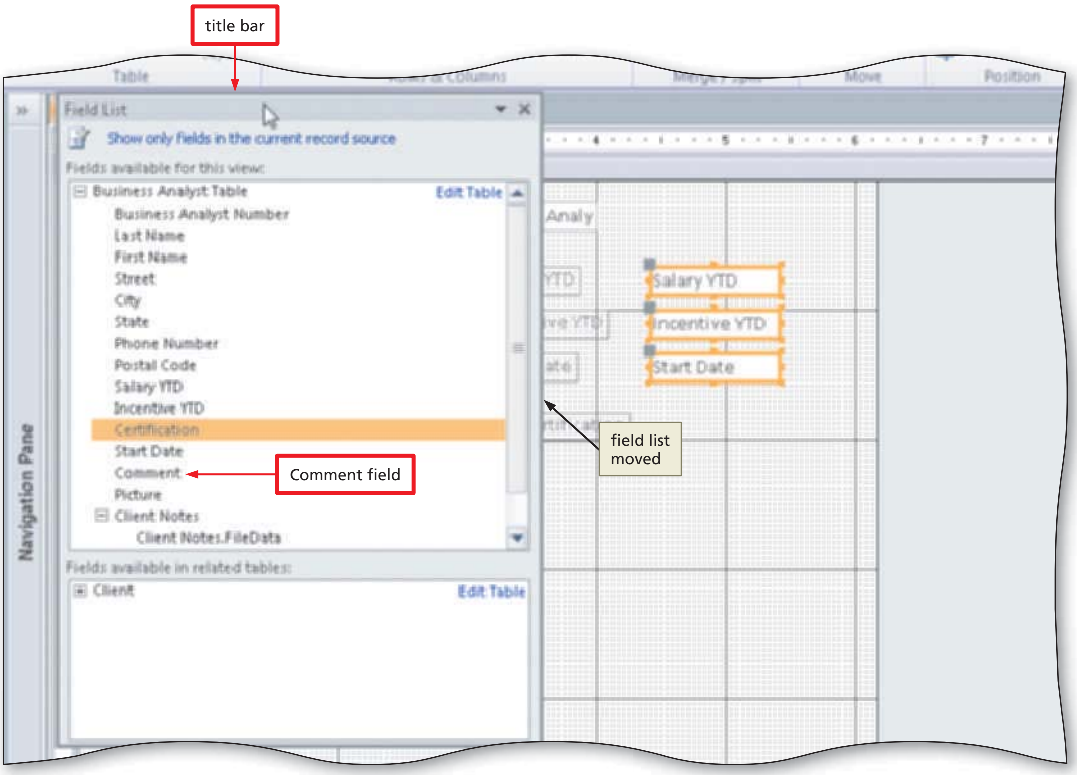

title bar
Field List
Show only fields in the current record source
Fields available for this view:
Business Analyst Table
Edit Table
Business Analyst Number
Last Name
First Name
Street
City
State
Phone Number
Postal Code
Salary YTD
Incentive YTD
Certification
Start Date
Comment
Picture
Client Notes
Client Notes.FileData
Fields available in related tables:
Client
Edit Table
Comment field
Navigation Pane
Salary YTD
Incentive YTD
Start Date
field list moved

Figure 5–35

To Add Controls for the Remaining Fields

The following steps place controls for the Comment, Picture, and Client Notes fields and also move their attached labels to the desired position.

1

- Drag the control for the Comment field from the field list to the approximate position shown in Figure 5–36.

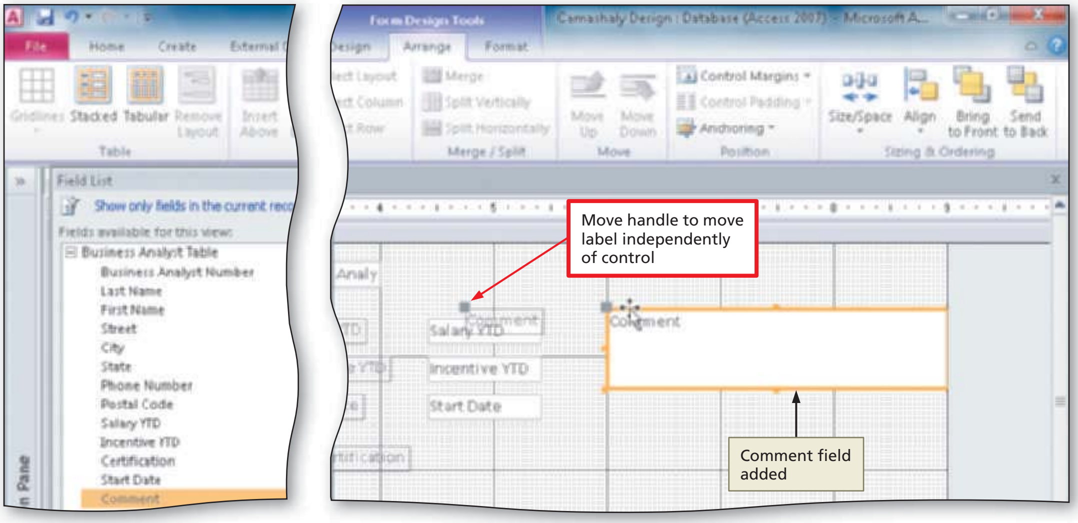

Form Design Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft A...
File
Home
Create
External
Design
Arrange
Format
Gridlines
Stacked
Tabular
Remove Layout
Insert Above
Table
Merge
Split Vertically
Split Horizontally
Merge / Split
Move Up
Move Down
Move
Control Margins
Control Padding
Anchoring
Position
Size/Space
Align
Bring to Front
Send to Back
Sizing & Ordering
Field List
Show only fields in the current record source
Fields available for this view:
Business Analyst Table
Business Analyst Number
Last Name
First Name
Street
City
State
Phone Number
Postal Code
Salary YTD
Incentive YTD
Certification
Start Date
Comment
Move handle to move label independently of control
Comment
Salary YTD
Incentive YTD
Start Date
Comment field added

Figure 5–36

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2

- Move the label for the Comment field to the position shown in Figure 5–37 by dragging its Move handle.

Q&A

I started to move the label and the control moved along with it. What did I do wrong?

You were not pointing at the handle to move the label independently of the control. Make sure you are pointing to the little box in the upper-left corner of the label.

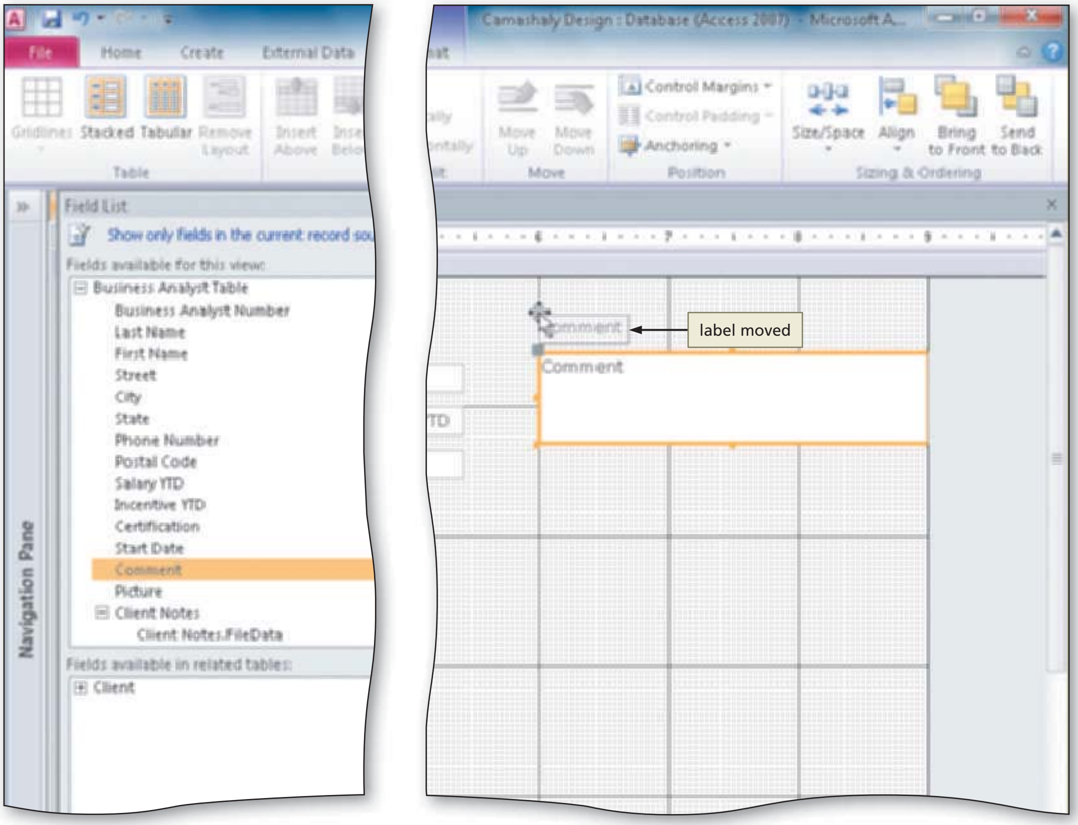

File
Home
Create
External Data
Gridlines
Stacked
Tabular
Remove Layout
Insert Above
Table
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft A...
Move Up
Move Down
Move
Control Margins
Control Padding
Anchoring
Position
Size/Space
Align
Bring to Front
Send to Back
Sizing & Ordering
Navigation Pane
Field List
Show only fields in the current record source
Fields available for this view:
Business Analyst Table
Business Analyst Number
Last Name
First Name
Street
City
State
Phone Number
Postal Code
Salary YTD
Incentive YTD
Certification
Start Date
Comment
Picture
Client Notes
Client Notes.FileData
Fields available in related tables:
Client
Comment
Comment
label moved

Figure 5–37

3

- Using the same techniques, move the control for the Picture field to the approximate position shown in Figure 5–38 and move its label to the position shown in the figure.

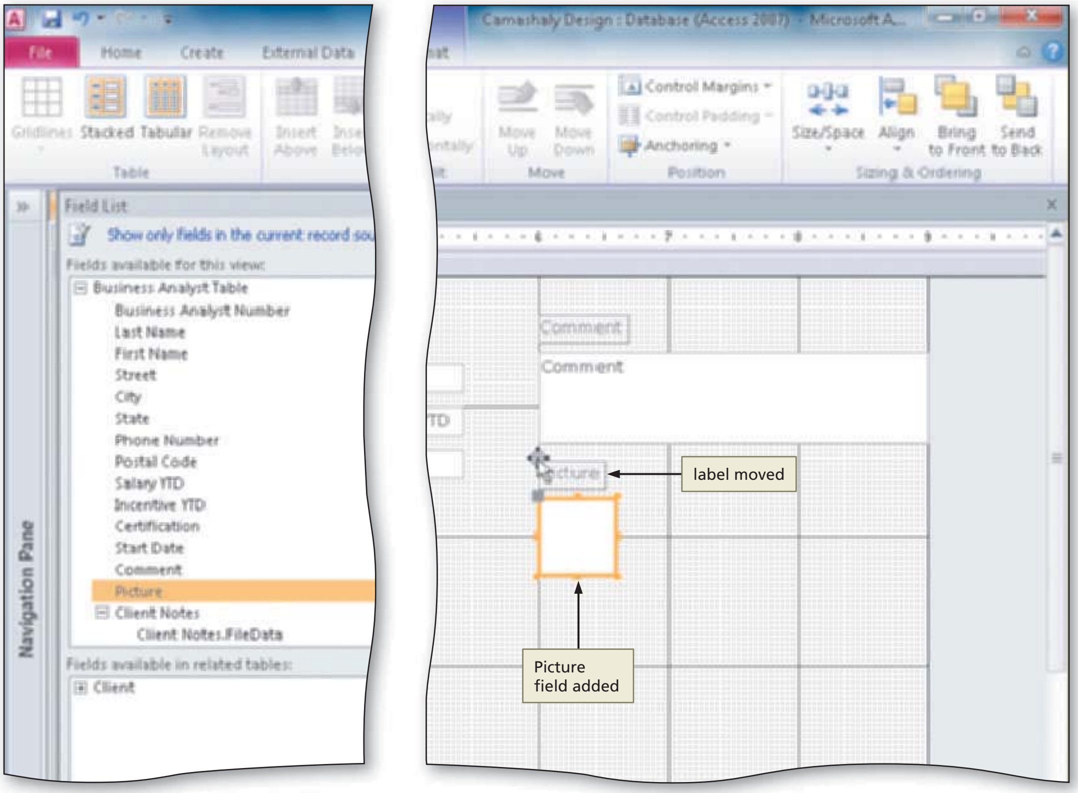
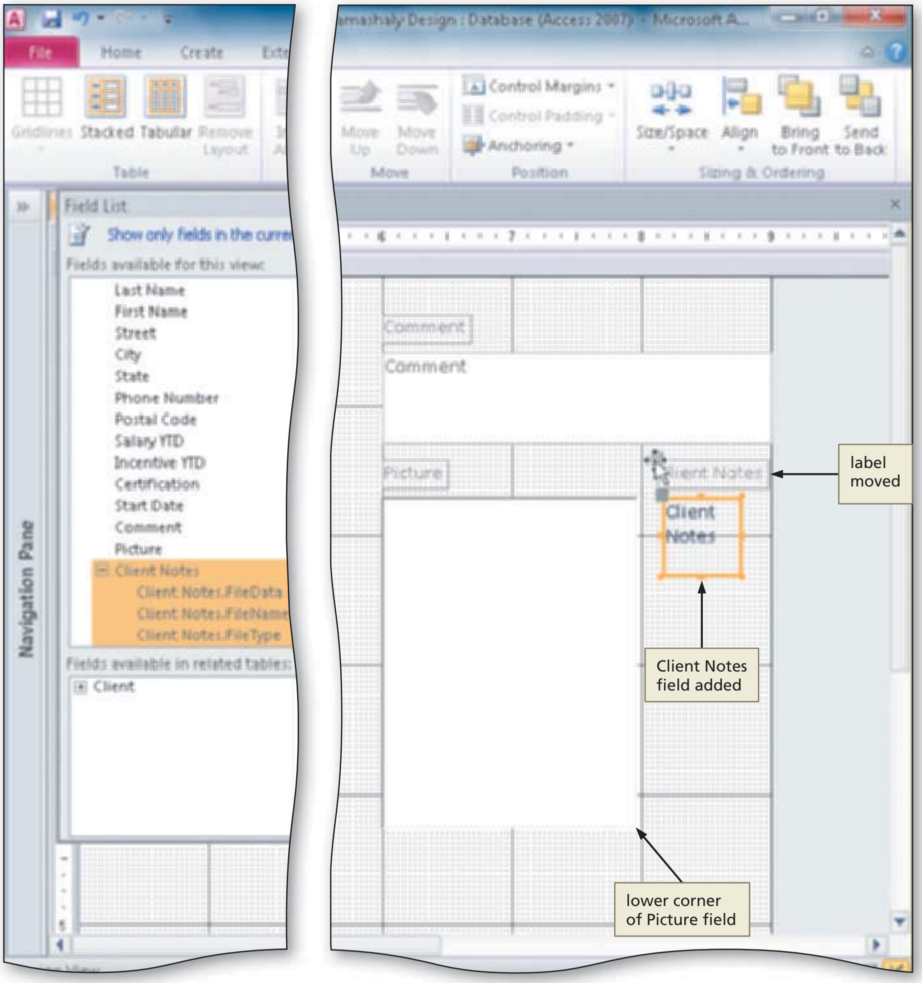

File
Home
Create
External Data
Gridlines
Stacked
Tabular
Remove Layout
Insert Above
Table
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft A...
Move Up
Move Down
Move
Control Margins
Control Padding
Anchoring
Position
Size/Space
Align
Bring to Front
Send to Back
Sizing & Ordering
Navigation Pane
Field List
Show only fields in the current record source
Fields available for this view:
Business Analyst Table
Business Analyst Number
Last Name
First Name
Street
City
State
Phone Number
Postal Code
Salary YTD
Incentive YTD
Certification
Start Date
Comment
Picture
Client Notes
Client Notes.FileData
Fields available in related tables:
Client
Comment
Comment
Picture
label moved
Picture field added

Figure 5–38

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

4

- Click the control for the Picture field and drag the lower-right corner to the approximate position shown in Figure 5–39 to resize the control.
- Add the control for the Client Notes field in the position shown in the figure and move its attached label to the position shown in the figure.


File
Home
Create
Gridlines
Stacked
Tabular
Remove Layout
Table
Move Up
Move Down
Move
Control Margins
Control Padding
Anchoring
Position
Size/Space
Align
Bring to Front
Send to Back
Sizing & Ordering
Navigation Pane
Field List
Show only fields in the current
Fields available for this view:
Last Name
First Name
Street
City
State
Phone Number
Postal Code
Salary YTD
Incentive YTD
Certification
Start Date
Comment
Picture
Client Notes
Client Notes.FileData
Client Notes.FileName
Client Notes.FileType
Fields available in related tables:
Client
Comment
Comment
Picture
Client Notes
Client Notes

label moved

Client Notes field added

lower corner of Picture field

Figure 5–39

Q&A When would I need to click the expand indicator for the Client Notes field?

By clicking the expand indicator, you have access to three special properties of the field: FileData, FileName, and FileType. If you drag one of these onto the form, you will only get the corresponding information in the control. For example, if you drag Client Notes.FileName, the control will display the file name for the attachment. Most of the time, you want the field itself, so you would not use any of these properties.

5

- Close the field list by displaying the Design tab and then clicking the Add Existing Fields button (Form Design Tools Design tab | Tools group), which is shown in Figure 5–27.

Q&A Where will the field list be positioned the next time I display it?

Usually it will be in the position it was when you closed it. If that is the case and you want it in its typical position, move it there by dragging its title bar.

Other Ways

1. Click Close button for field list

To Use a Shortcut Menu to Change the Fill/Back Color

You can use the Fill/Back Color button on the Form Design Tools Design tab to change the background color of a form. In some cases, you also can use a shortcut menu. The following steps use a shortcut menu to change the background color of the form to gray.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

1

- Right-click in the approximate position shown in Figure 5–40 to produce a shortcut menu.

Q&A Does it matter where I right-click?

You can right-click anywhere on the form as long as you are outside of all the controls.

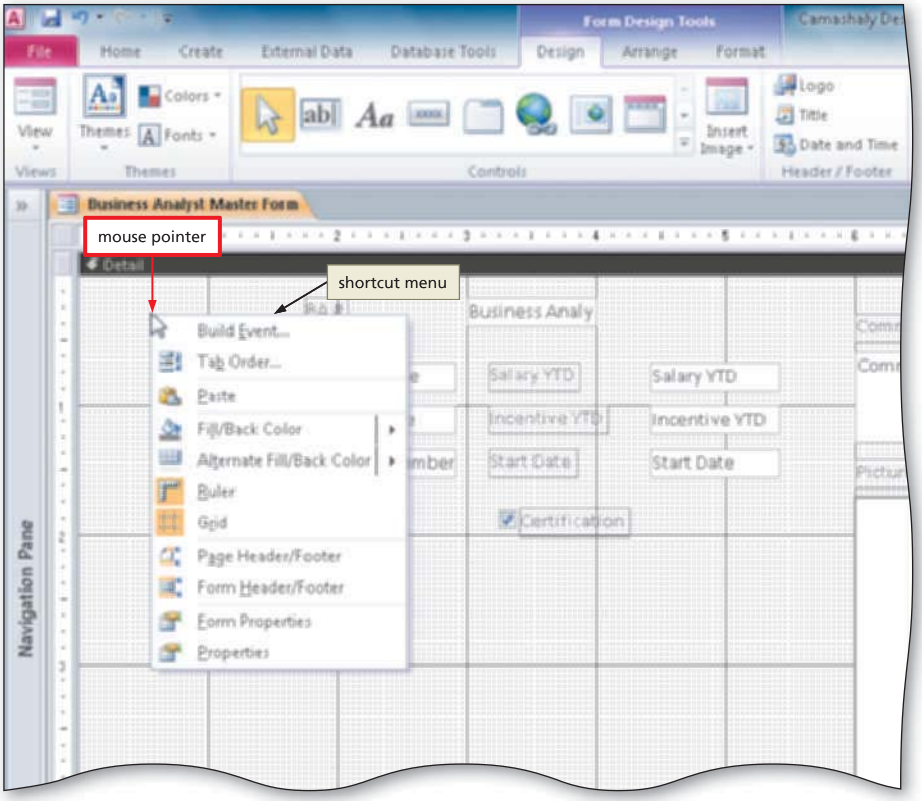

mouse pointer
shortcut menu
Build Event...
Tab Order...
Paste
Fill/Back Color
Alternate Fill/Back Color
Ruler
Grid
Page Header/Footer
Form Header/Footer
Form Properties
Properties
Business Analyst Master Form
Detail
Navigation Pane
Form Design Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
View
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Controls
Insert Image
Logo
Title
Date and Time
Header / Footer
Salary YTD
Incentive YTD
Start Date
Certification

Figure 5–40

2

- Point to the Fill/Back Color command arrow on the shortcut menu to display a color palette (Figure 5–41).

3

- Click the gray color shown in Figure 5–41 to change the fill/back color to gray.

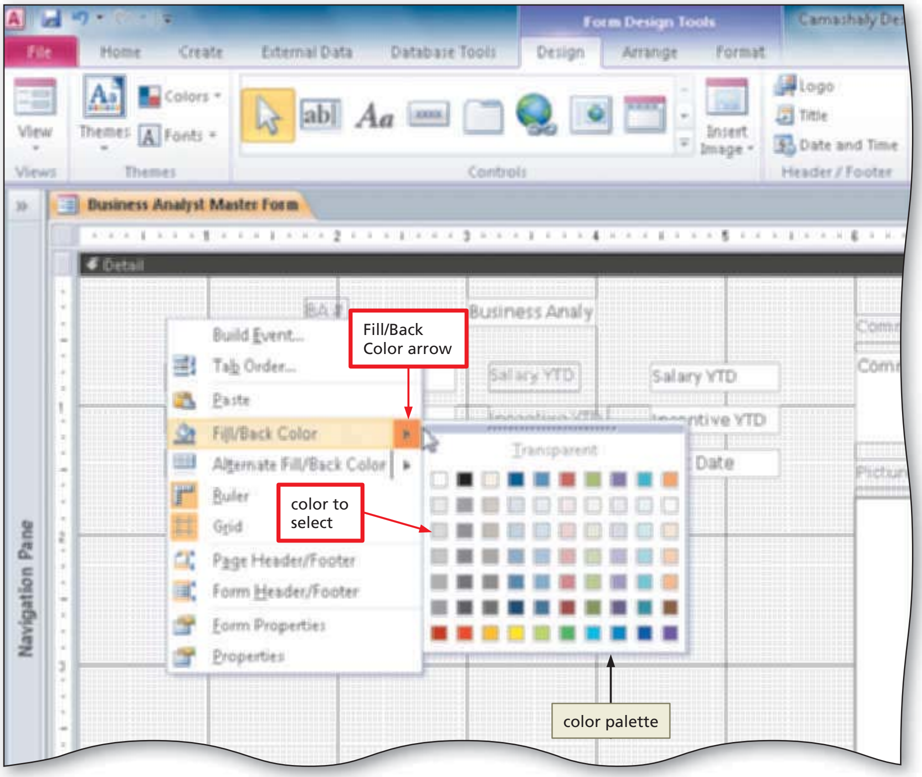

Fill/Back Color arrow
color to select
color palette
Transparent
Build Event...
Tab Order...
Paste
Fill/Back Color
Alternate Fill/Back Color
Ruler
Grid
Page Header/Footer
Form Header/Footer
Form Properties
Properties
Business Analyst Master Form
Detail
Navigation Pane
Form Design Tools

Figure 5–41

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Add a Title

A form should have a descriptive title. The following step adds a title to the form.

1

- Be sure the Design tab is selected.
- Click the Title button (Form Design Tools Design tab | Header/Footer group) to add a title to the form (Figure 5–42).

Q&A Why is there a new section?

The form title belongs in the Form Header section. When you clicked the Title button, Access added the Form Header section automatically and placed the title in it.

Q&A Could I add a Form Header section without having to click the Title button?

Yes. Right-click anywhere on the form background and click Form Header/Footer on the shortcut menu.

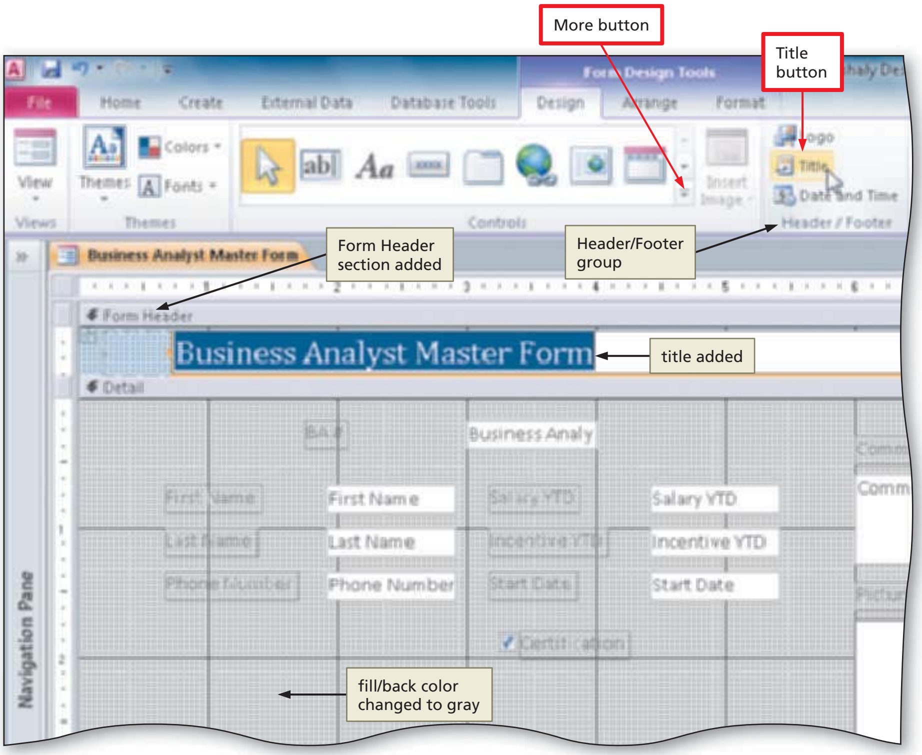

More button
Title button
Form Header section added
Header/Footer group
title added
fill/back color changed to gray
Form Design Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
View
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Controls
Insert Image
Logo
Title
Date and Time
Header / Footer
Business Analyst Master Form
Form Header
Business Analyst Master Form
Detail
Business Analy
First Name
Last Name
Phone Number
Salary YTD
Incentive YTD
Start Date
Certification
Navigation Pane

Figure 5–42

To Place a Subform

The Controls group on the Form Design Tools Design tab contains buttons called tools that you use to place a variety of types of controls on a form. To place a subform on a form, you use the Subform/Subreport tool. If the Use Control Wizards button is selected, a wizard will guide you through the process of adding the subform. The following steps use the Subform Wizard to place a subform.

1

- Click the More button (Form Design Tools Design tab | Controls group) to display a gallery of available tools (Figure 5–43).

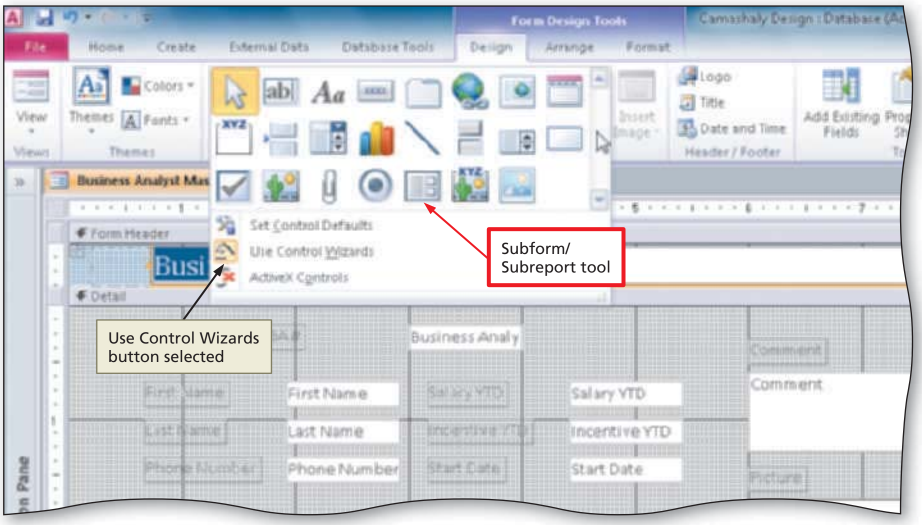

Subform/ Subreport tool
Use Control Wizards button selected
Form Design Tools
Camashaly Design : Database
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
View
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Views
Logo
Title
Date and Time
Header / Footer
Insert Image
Add Existing Fields
Set Control Defaults
Use Control Wizards
ActiveX Controls
Business Analyst Mas
Form Header
Busi
Detail
Business Analy
First Name
Last Name
Phone Number
Salary YTD
Incentive YTD
Start Date
Comment
Picture

Figure 5–43

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

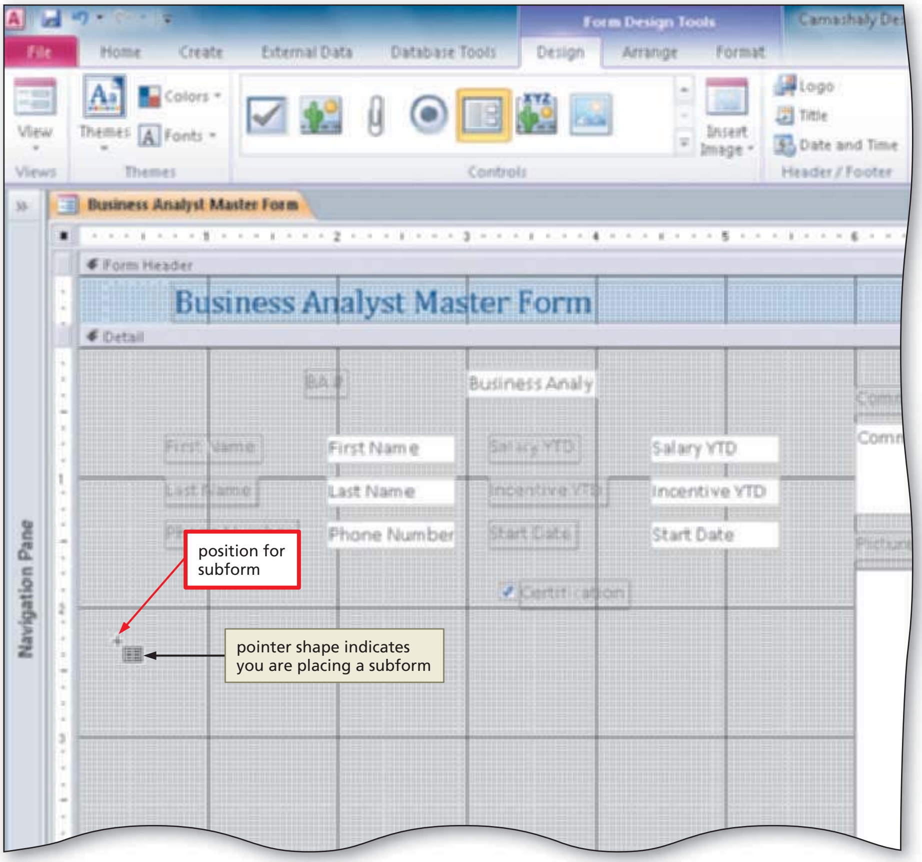
2

- Be sure the Use Control Wizards button is selected, click the Subform/Subreport tool on the Form Design Tools Design tab, and then move the mouse pointer to the approximate position shown in Figure 5–44.

Q&A

How can I tell whether the Use Control Wizards button is selected?

The icon for the Use Control Wizards button will be highlighted, as shown in Figure 5–43. If it is not, click the Use Control Wizards button to highlight it, and then click the Subform/Subreport tool.


File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Form Design Tools
View
Views
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Controls
Insert Image
Logo
Title
Date and Time
Header / Footer
Navigation Pane
Business Analyst Master Form
Form Header
Business Analyst Master Form
Detail
BA #
First Name
Last Name
Phone Number
Salary YTD
Incentive YTD
Start Date
Certification

position for subform

pointer shape indicates you are placing a subform

Figure 5–44

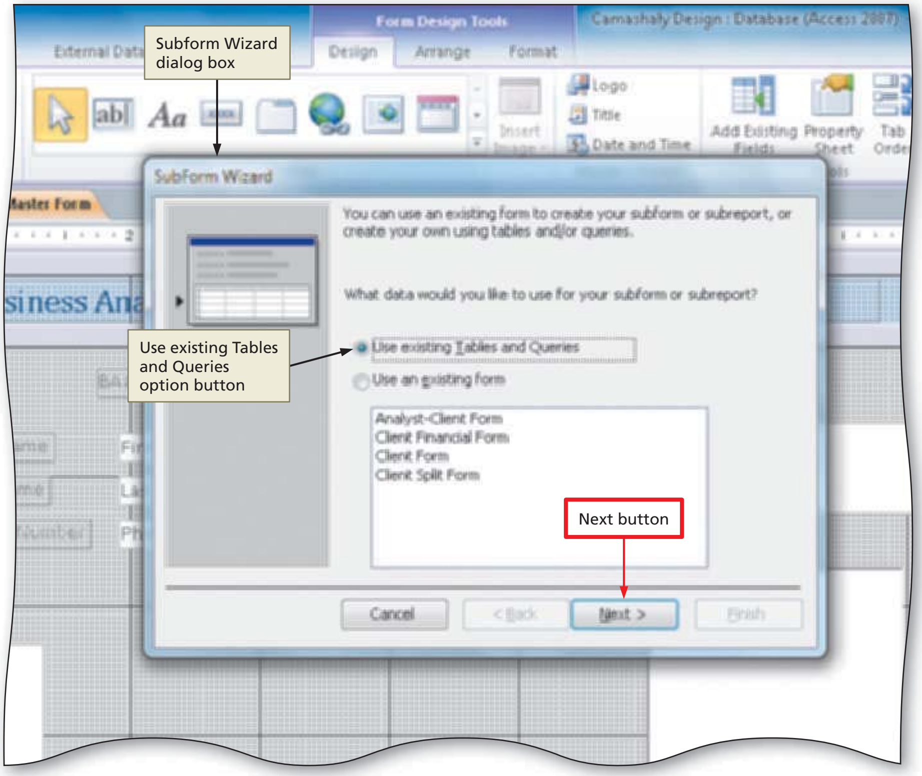
3

- Click the position shown in Figure 5–44 and then ensure the 'Use existing Tables and Queries' option button is selected (SubForm Wizard dialog box) (Figure 5–45).

Q&A

My control is placed on the screen, but no wizard appeared. What should I do?

Press the DELETE key to delete the control you placed. Ensure that the Use Control Wizards button is selected, as described previously.


External Data
Form Design Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Logo
Title
Date and Time
Insert Image
Add Existing Fields
Property Sheet
Tab Order
SubForm Wizard
Cancel
< Back
Next >
Finish

Subform Wizard dialog box

You can use an existing form to create your subform or subreport, or create your own using tables and/or queries.

What data would you like to use for your subform or subreport?

● Use existing Tables and Queries

○ Use an existing form

Analyst-Client Form
Client Financial Form
Client Form
Client Split Form

Use existing Tables and Queries option button

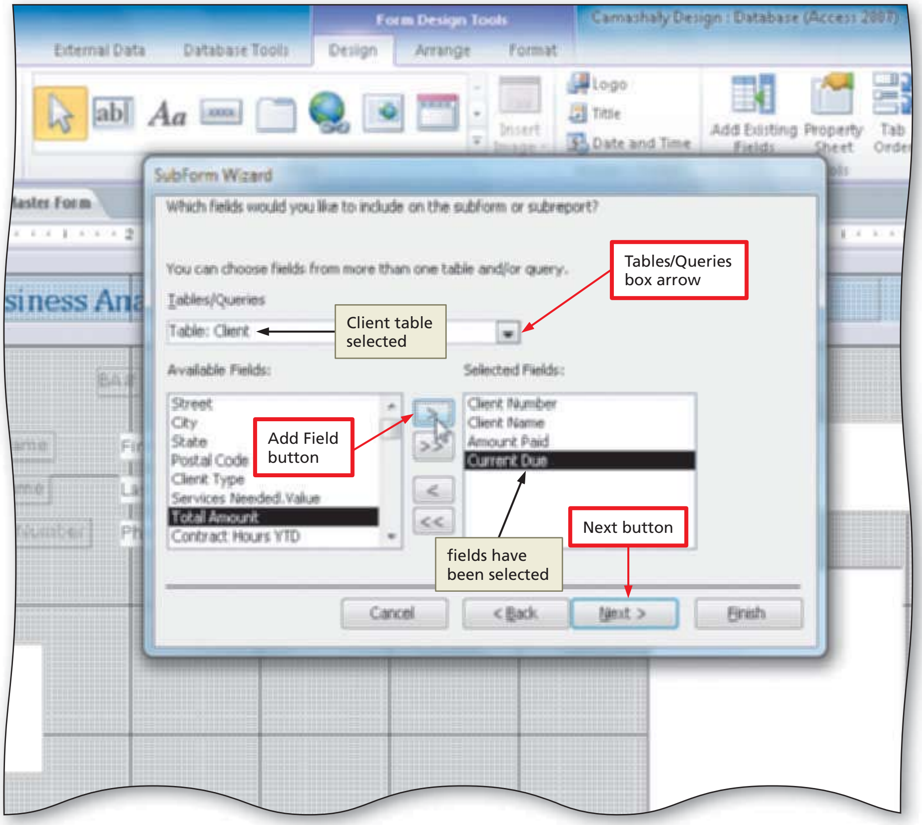
Next button

Figure 5–45

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

4

- Click the Next button.
- Click the Tables/Queries box arrow and then click the Client table to select the table that contains the fields for the subform.
- Add the Client Number, Client Name, Amount Paid, and Current Due fields by clicking the field and then clicking the Add Field button (SubForm Wizard dialog box) (Figure 5–46).


Form Design Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Logo
Title
Date and Time
Insert Image
Add Existing Fields
Property Sheet
Tab Order
Master Form
siness Ana

SubForm Wizard

Which fields would you like to include on the subform or subreport?

You can choose fields from more than one table and/or query.

Tables/Queries

Table: Client

Available Fields:

Street
City
State
Postal Code
Client Type
Services Needed.Value
Total Amount
Contract Hours YTD

Selected Fields:

Client Number
Client Name
Amount Paid
Current Due

Cancel | < Back | Next > | Finish

Tables/Queries box arrow

Client table selected

Add Field button

fields have been selected

Next button

Figure 5–46

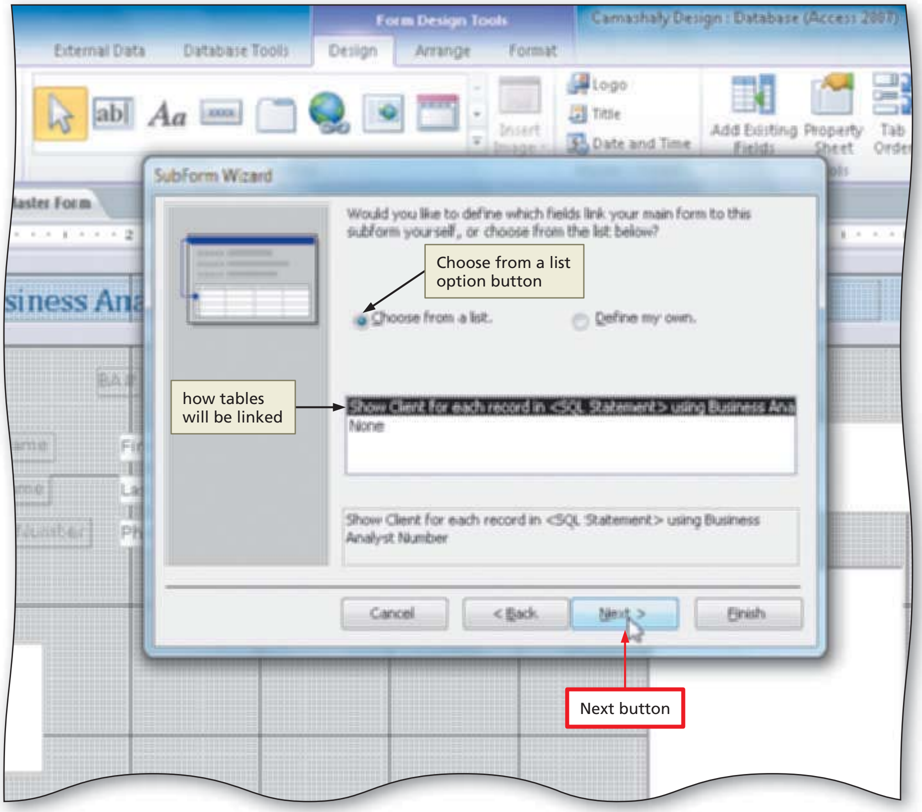
5

- Click the Next button to move to the next SubForm Wizard dialog box.
- Be sure the 'Choose from a list' option button is selected (Figure 5–47).

Q&A

Why do I use this option?

Most of the time, Access will have determined the appropriate fields to link the subform and the main form and placed an entry specifying those fields in the list. By choosing from the list, you can take advantage of the information that Access has created for you. The other option is to define your own, in which case you would need to specify the appropriate fields.


Form Design Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Logo
Title
Date and Time
Insert Image
Add Existing Fields
Property Sheet
Tab Order
Master Form
siness Ana

SubForm Wizard

Would you like to define which fields link your main form to this subform yourself, or choose from the list below?

● Choose from a list.   ○ Define my own.

Show Client for each record in <SQL Statement> using Business Ana
None

Show Client for each record in <SQL Statement> using Business Analyst Number

Cancel | < Back | Next > | Finish

Choose from a list option button

how tables will be linked

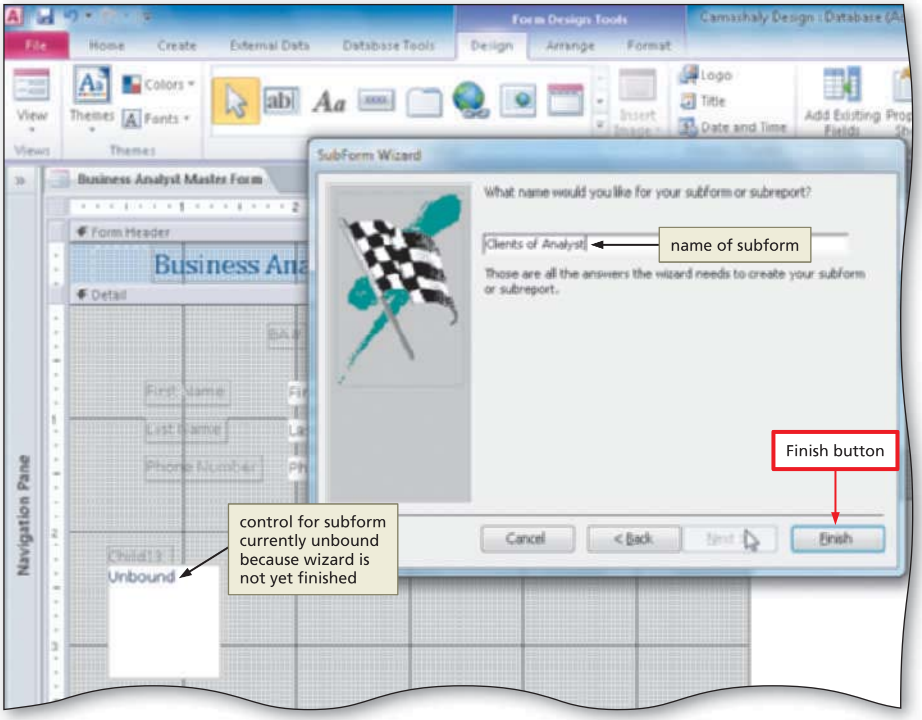
Next button

Figure 5–47

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

6

- Click the Next button.
- Type `Clients of Analyst` as the name of the subform (Figure 5–48).



SubForm Wizard

What name would you like for your subform or subreport?

Clients of Analyst

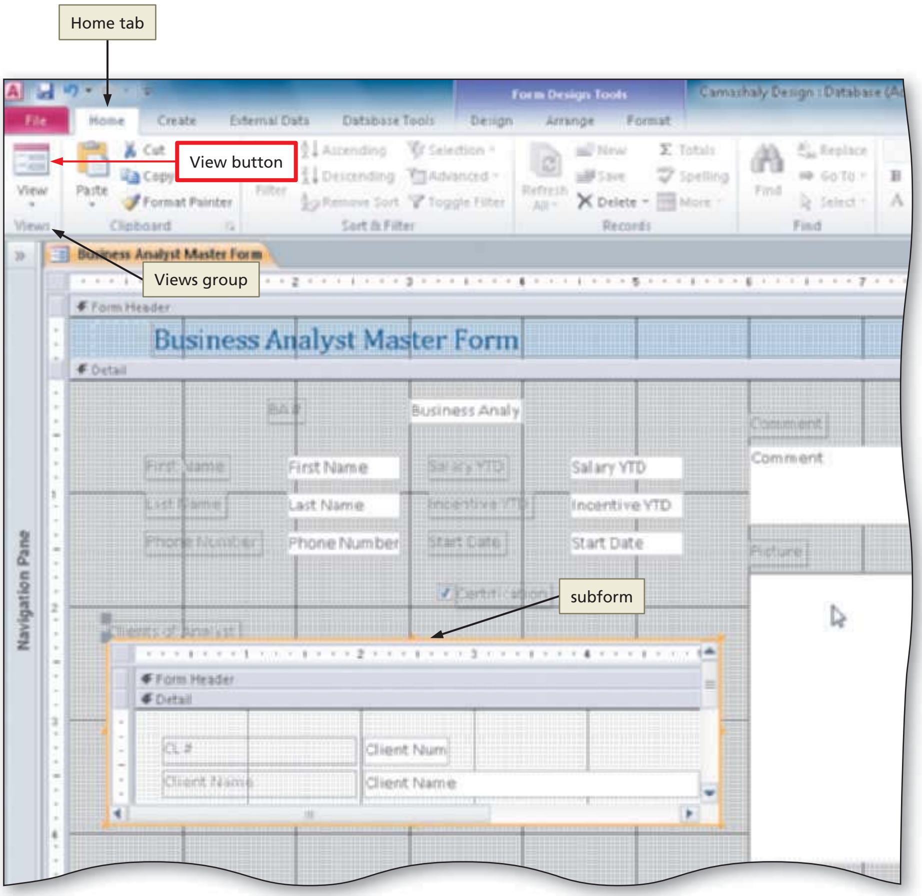
Those are all the answers the wizard needs to create your subform or subreport.

name of subform
Finish button
control for subform currently unbound because wizard is not yet finished
Unbound
Cancel
< Back
Next >
Finish
Business Analyst Master Form
Navigation Pane

Figure 5–48

7

- Click the Finish button to place the subform (Figure 5–49).



Home tab
View button
Views group
subform
Business Analyst Master Form
Clients of Analyst
Navigation Pane

Figure 5–49

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

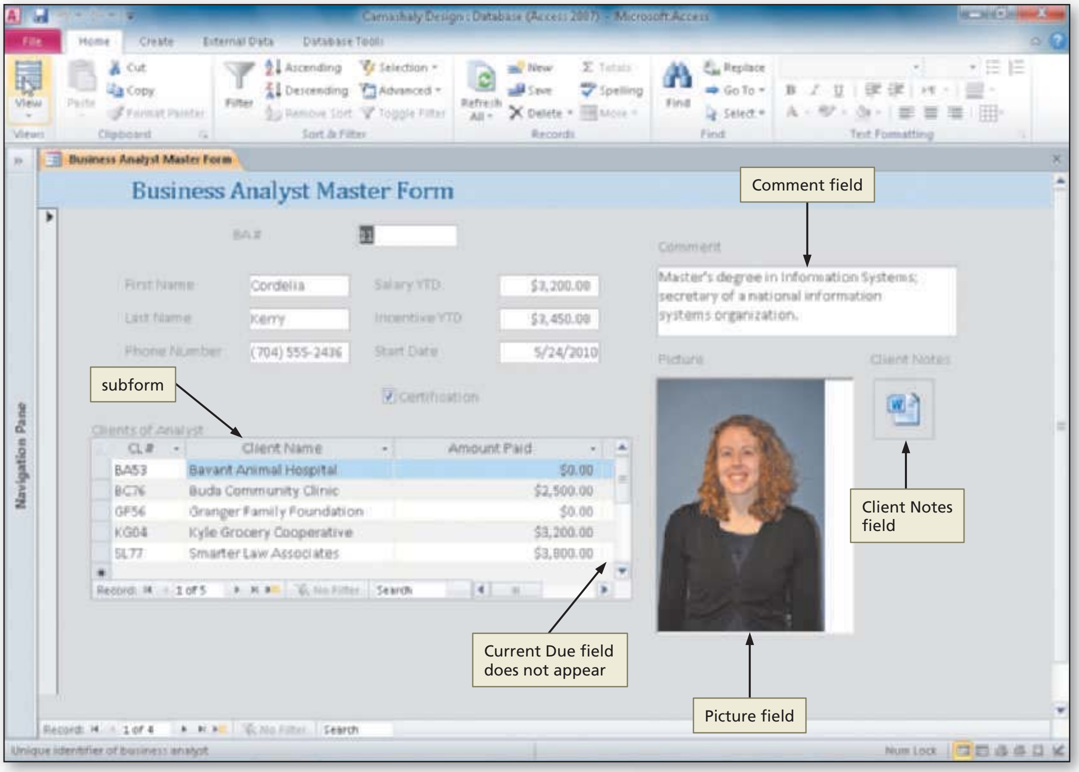
To View the Form

When working with a form in Design view, you can see the effect of the changes you have made by viewing the form in Form view. The following step views the form in Form view.

1
- Click the View button (Home tab | Views group) to view the form in Form view (Figure 5–50).

Q&A Everything looks good except the subform. I do not see all the fields I should see. What should I do?

You need to modify the subform, which you will do in the upcoming steps.



Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Find
Text Formatting
Navigation Pane
Business Analyst Master Form
Num Lock

Business Analyst Master Form

BA # 11

First Name Cordelia

Last Name Kerry

Phone Number (704) 555-2436

Salary YTD $3,200.00

Incentive YTD $3,450.00

Start Date 5/24/2010

☑ Certification

Comment

Master's degree in Information Systems; secretary of a national information systems organization.

Picture

Client Notes

Clients of Analyst

CL #	Client Name	Amount Paid
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	$0.00
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	$2,500.00
GF56	Granger Family Foundation	$0.00
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	$3,200.00
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	$3,800.00

Record: 1 of 5 No Filter Search

Record: 1 of 4 No Filter Search

Unique identifier of business analyst

Comment field

subform

Client Notes field

Current Due field does not appear

Picture field

Figure 5–50

To Close and Save a Form

The following steps first save and then close the Business Analyst Master Form.

1 Click the Save button on the Quick Access Toolbar to save the form.

2 Close the Business Analyst Master Form by clicking the Close button for the form.

Break Point: If you wish to stop working through the chapter at this point, you can resume the project at a later time by starting Access, opening the database called Camashaly Design, and continuing to follow the steps from this location forward.

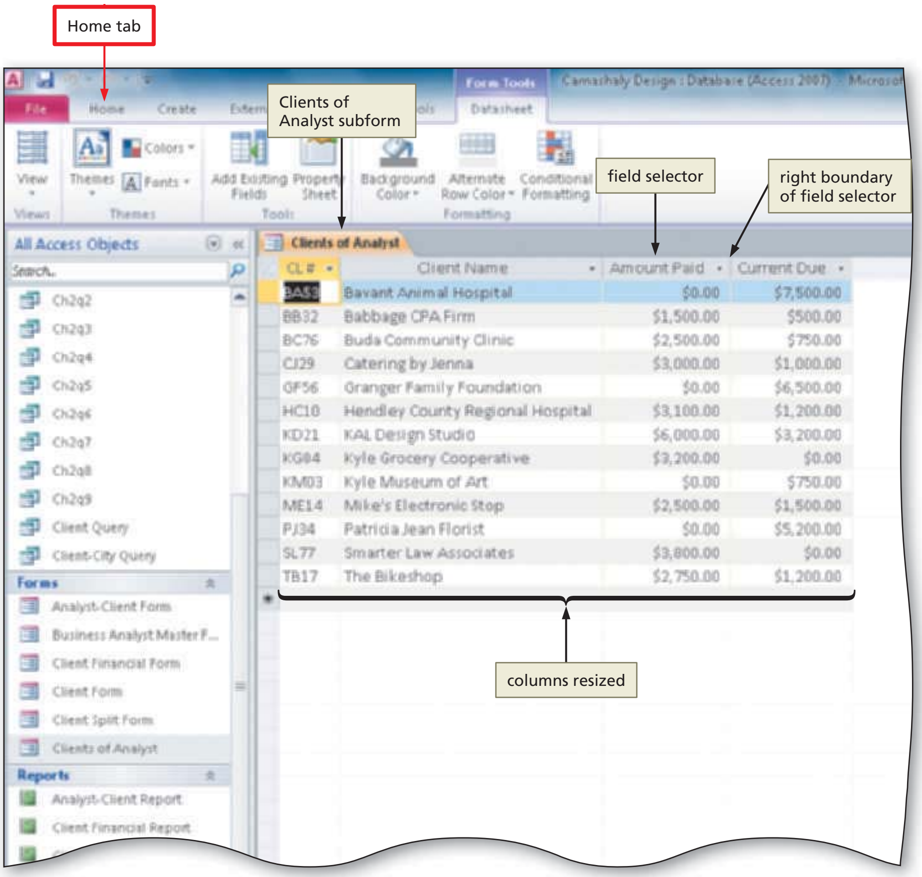
To Modify a Subform

The next task is to resize the columns in the subform, which appears on the form in Datasheet view. The subform exists as a separate object in the database; it is stored independently of the main form. The following steps open the subform and then resize the columns. They then center the data in the Client Number column.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

1

- Open the Navigation Pane.
- Right-click the Clients of Analyst form to produce a shortcut menu.
- Click Open on the shortcut menu to open the form.
- Resize the columns to best fit the data by double-clicking the right boundaries of the field selectors (Figure 5–51).


Home tab
Clients of Analyst subform
field selector
right boundary of field selector
columns resized
Form Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft
File
Home
Create
Datasheet
View
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Add Existing Fields
Property Sheet
Background Color
Alternate Row Color
Conditional Formatting
Views
Tools
Formatting
All Access Objects
Search...
Ch2q2
Ch2q3
Ch2q4
Ch2q5
Ch2q6
Ch2q7
Ch2q8
Ch2q9
Client Query
Client-City Query
Forms
Analyst-Client Form
Business Analyst Master F...
Client Financial Form
Client Form
Client Split Form
Clients of Analyst
Reports
Analyst-Client Report
Client Financial Report
Clients of Analyst

CL #	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	$0.00	$7,500.00
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	$1,500.00	$500.00
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	$2,500.00	$750.00
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	$3,000.00	$1,000.00
GF56	Granger Family Foundation	$0.00	$6,500.00
HC10	Hendley County Regional Hospital	$3,100.00	$1,200.00
KD21	KAL Design Studio	$6,000.00	$3,200.00
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	$3,200.00	$0.00
KM03	Kyle Museum of Art	$0.00	$750.00
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	$2,500.00	$1,500.00
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	$0.00	$5,200.00
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	$3,800.00	$0.00
TB17	The Bikeshop	$2,750.00	$1,200.00

Figure 5–51

2

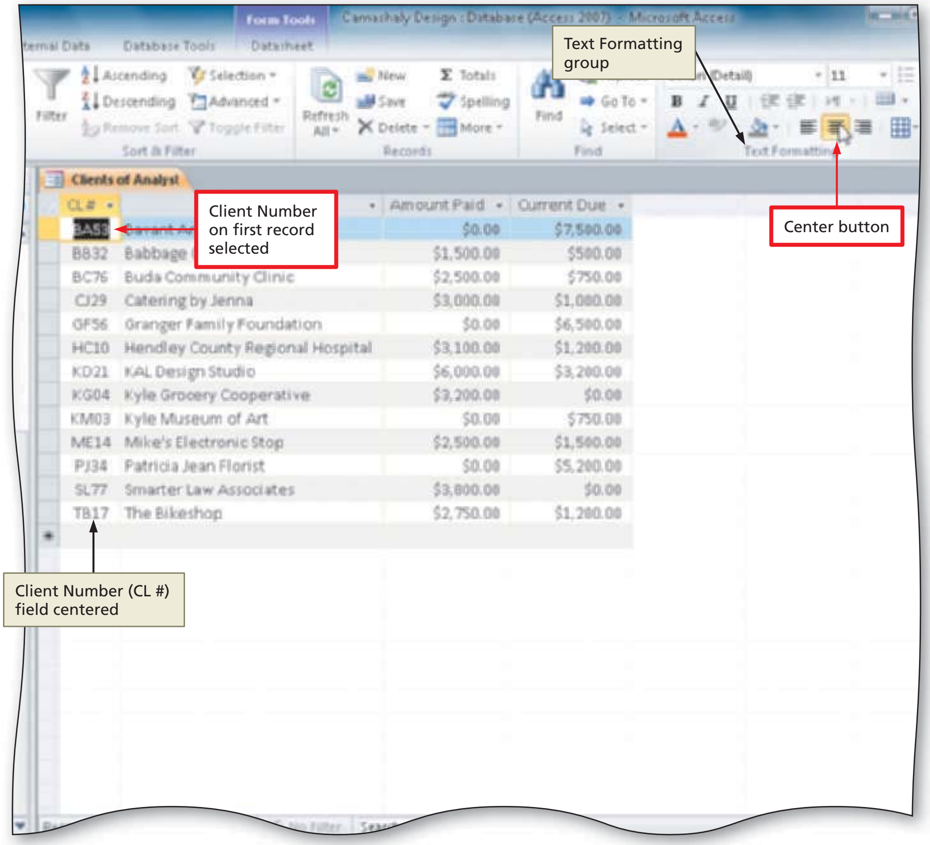
- Click Home on the Ribbon to display the Home tab.
- Click the Client Number field on the first record.

Q&A

Did it have to be the first record?

No. The whole column will be aligned at once no matter which record you pick.

- Click the Center button (Home tab | Text Formatting group) to center the data in the column (Figure 5–52).


Text Formatting group
Client Number on first record selected
Center button
Client Number (CL #) field centered
Form Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
External Data
Database Tools
Datasheet
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Sort & Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Records
Find
Go To
Select
Find
B
I
U
Text Formatting
Clients of Analyst

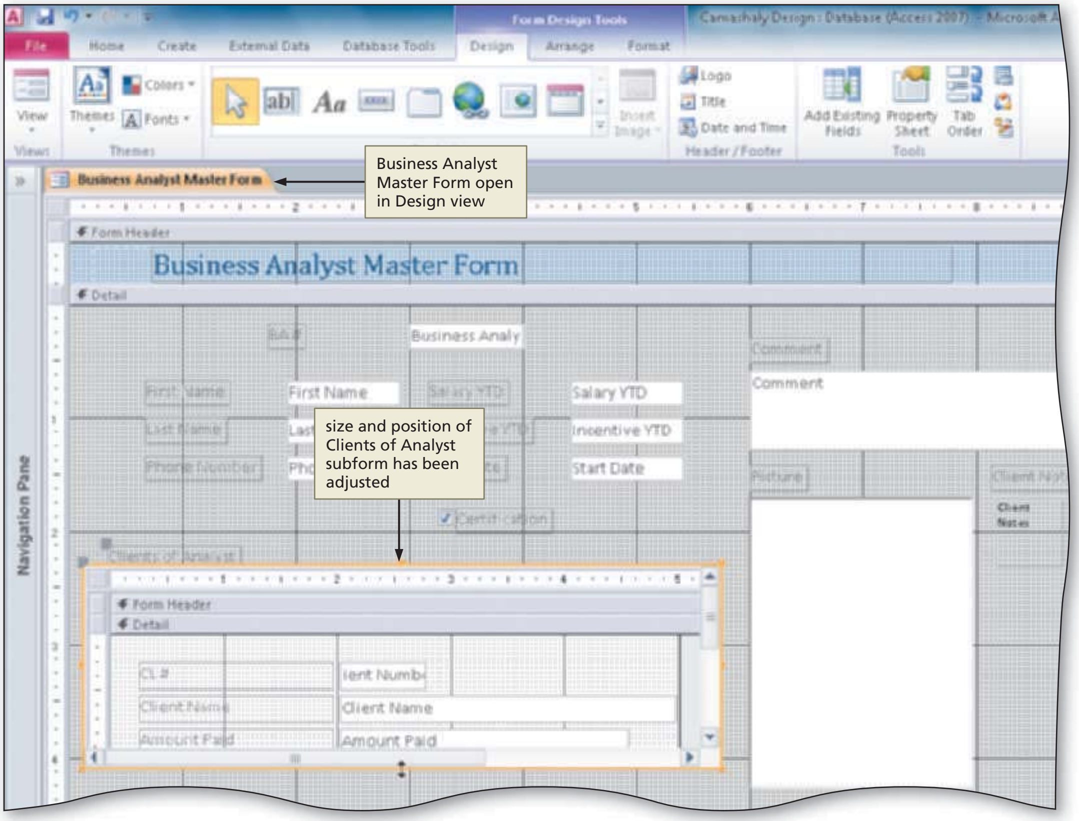
CL #		Amount Paid	Current Due
BA53	Bavant A	$0.00	$7,500.00
BB32	Babbage	$1,500.00	$500.00
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	$2,500.00	$750.00
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	$3,000.00	$1,000.00
GF56	Granger Family Foundation	$0.00	$6,500.00
HC10	Hendley County Regional Hospital	$3,100.00	$1,200.00
KD21	KAL Design Studio	$6,000.00	$3,200.00
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	$3,200.00	$0.00
KM03	Kyle Museum of Art	$0.00	$750.00
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	$2,500.00	$1,500.00
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	$0.00	$5,200.00
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	$3,800.00	$0.00
TB17	The Bikeshop	$2,750.00	$1,200.00

Figure 5–52

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3

- Save your changes and then close the subform.
- Open the Business Analyst Master Form in Design view and then close the Navigation Pane.
- Click the boundary of the subform to select it.
- Adjust the approximate size and position of the subform to match the one shown in Figure 5–53.


Form Design Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft A
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
View
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Insert Image
Logo
Title
Date and Time
Add Existing Fields
Property Sheet
Tab Order
Views
Themes
Header / Footer
Tools
Business Analyst Master Form
Navigation Pane
Form Header
Business Analyst Master Form
Detail
BA #
Business Analy
Comment
First Name
First Name
Salary YTD
Salary YTD
Comment
Last Name
Incentive YTD
Phone Number
Start Date
Picture
Client Notes
Certification
Clients of Analyst
Form Header
Detail
CL #
lient Numbe
Client Name
Client Name
Amount Paid
Amount Paid

Business Analyst Master Form open in Design view

size and position of Clients of Analyst subform has been adjusted

Figure 5–53

4

- Click the View button (Form Design Tools Design tab | Views group) to view the form in Form view (Figure 5–54).

Q&A

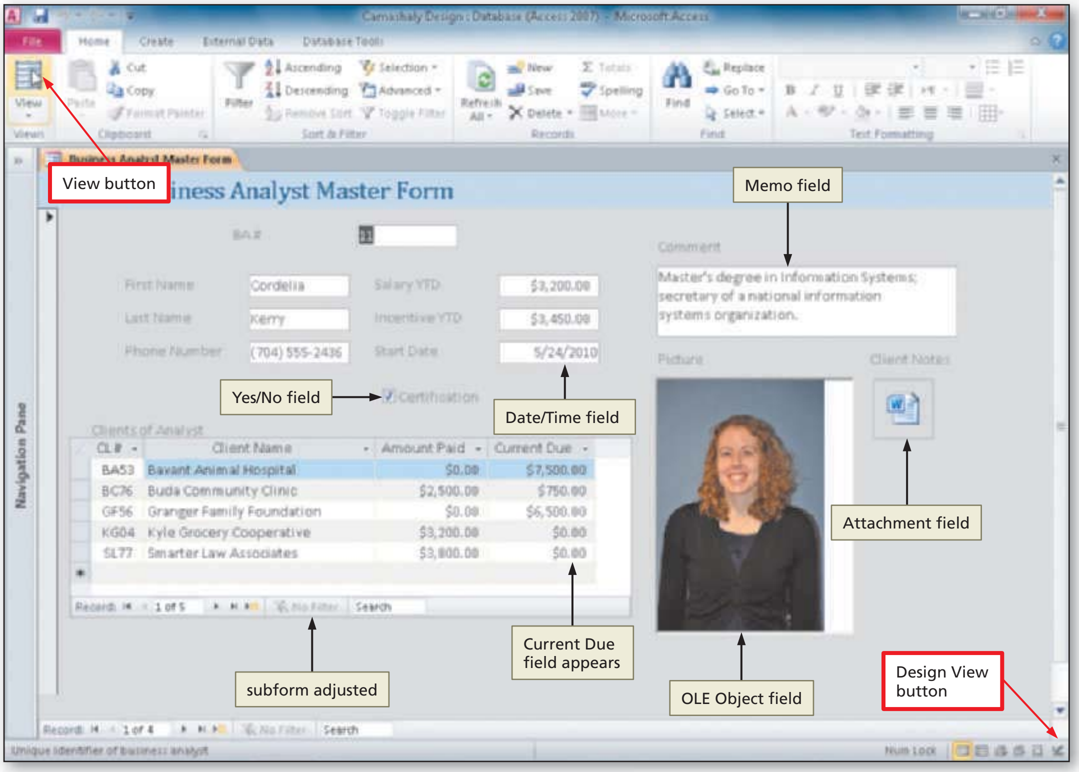
Could I have clicked the View button arrow and then clicked Form View?

Yes. You always can use the arrow. If the icon for the view you want appears on the face of the View button, however, you also can just click the button.

Q&A

Could I have clicked the Form View button in the lower-right corner of the screen to move to Form view?

Yes. Those buttons are always an option. Use whichever approach you find most convenient.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Find
Text Formatting
Business Analyst Master Form
Navigation Pane
BA #
First Name
Last Name
Phone Number
Salary YTD
Incentive YTD
Start Date
Certification
Comment
Picture
Client Notes
Clients of Analyst
Record: 1 of 5
No Filter
Search
Record: 1 of 4
No Filter
Search
Unique identifier of business analyst
Num Lock

Business Analyst Master Form

BA #: 11

First Name: Cordelia

Last Name: Kerry

Phone Number: (704) 555-2436

Salary YTD: $3,200.00

Incentive YTD: $3,450.00

Start Date: 5/24/2010

☑ Certification

Comment: Master's degree in Information Systems; secretary of a national information systems organization.

CL #	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	$0.00	$7,500.00
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	$2,500.00	$750.00
GF56	Granger Family Foundation	$0.00	$6,500.00
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	$3,200.00	$0.00
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	$3,800.00	$0.00

View button

Memo field

Yes/No field

Date/Time field

Attachment field

Current Due field appears

subform adjusted

OLE Object field

Design View button

Figure 5–54

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Change a Label

In Datasheet view, shortening the heading for the Business Analyst Number column to BA # made sense. With business analyst numbers only being two characters long, having a short column heading enabled the column to have a reasonable width. You accomplished that by changing the caption for the Business Analyst Number field to BA #. In the form, there is plenty of room for the full field name to appear in the label. The following steps change the contents of the label from BA # to Business Analyst Number.

1

- Return to Design view, and then click the label for the Business Analyst Number to select the label.
- Click the label a second time to produce an insertion point.
- Erase the current label (BA #) and then type `Business Analyst Number` as the new label (Figure 5–55).

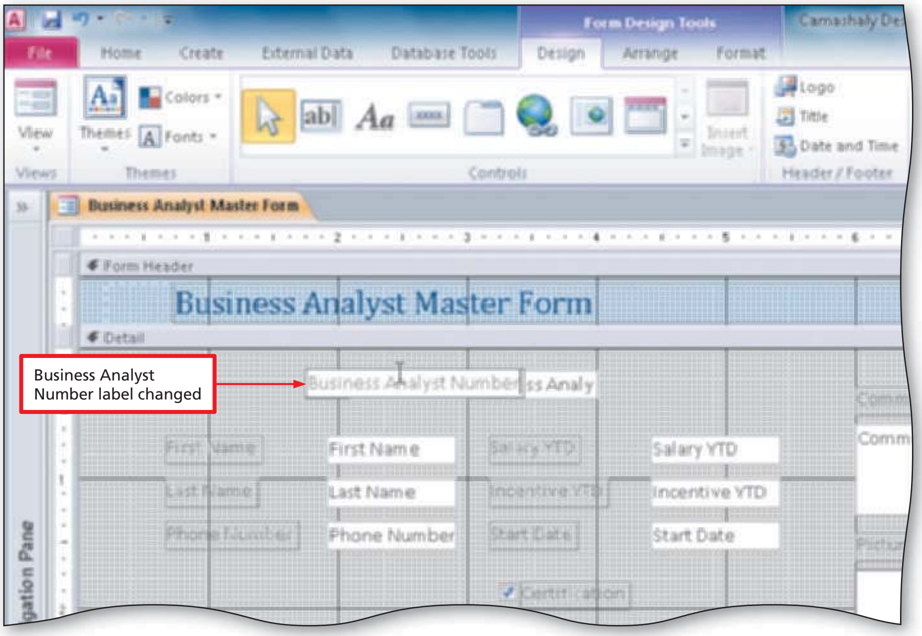

Form Design Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
View
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Logo
Title
Date and Time
Insert Image
Views
Controls
Header / Footer
Business Analyst Master Form
Form Header
Business Analyst Master Form
Detail
Business Analyst Number label changed
Business Analyst Number
First Name
Last Name
Phone Number
Salary YTD
Incentive YTD
Start Date
Certification
Navigation Pane

Figure 5–55

2

- Click outside the label to deselect it.
- Click the label to select it.

Q&A Why did I need to deselect the label and then select it again?

With the insertion point appearing in the label, you could not move the label. By deselecting it and then selecting it again, the label will be selected, but there will be no insertion point.

- Drag the Move handle in the upper-left corner to move the label to the approximate position shown in Figure 5–56.

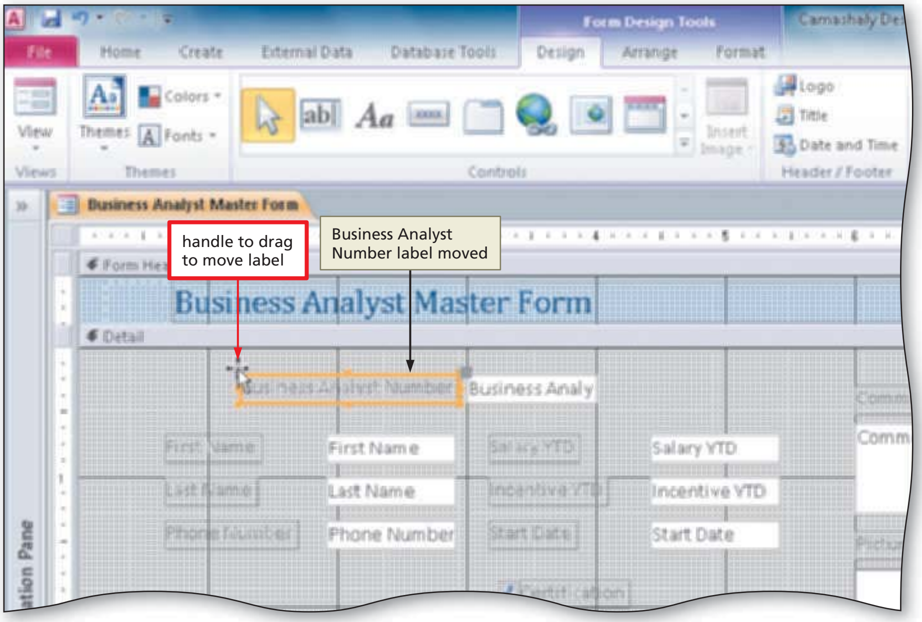

Form Design Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Business Analyst Master Form
handle to drag to move label
Business Analyst Number label moved
Business Analyst Master Form
Detail
Business Analyst Number
First Name
Last Name
Phone Number
Salary YTD
Incentive YTD
Start Date
Navigation Pane

Figure 5–56

3

- Save your changes.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Size Mode for Pictures

The portion of a picture that appears as well as the way it appears is determined by the property called **size mode**. The possible size modes are as follows:

1. Clip — This size mode displays only the portion of the picture that will fit in the space allocated to it.
2. Stretch — This size mode expands or shrinks the picture to fit the precise space allocated on the screen. For photographs, usually this is not a good choice because fitting a photograph to the allocated space can distort the image, giving it a stretched appearance.
3. Zoom — This size mode does the best job of fitting the picture to the allocated space without changing the look of the picture. The entire picture will appear and be proportioned correctly. Some white space may be visible either above or to the right of the picture, however.

TO CHANGE THE SIZE MODE

Currently, the size mode should be Zoom, which is appropriate. If it were not and you wanted to change it, you would use the following steps.

1. Click the control containing the picture, and then click the Property Sheet button (Form Design Tools Design tab | Tools group) to display the control's property sheet.
2. Click the Size Mode property, and then click the Size Mode property box arrow.
3. Click Zoom and then close the property sheet by clicking its Close button.

To Change Special Effects and Colors

Access allows you to change many of the characteristics of the labels in the form. You can change the border style and color, the background color, the font, and the font size. You also can apply special label effects, such as raised or sunken. The following steps change the font color and add special effects of the labels.

1

- Click the Business Analyst Number label to select it.
- Select each of the remaining labels by holding down the SHIFT key while clicking the label. Be sure to include the label for the subform (Figure 5–57).

Q&A Does the order in which I select the labels make a difference?

No. The only thing that is important is that they are all selected when you are done.

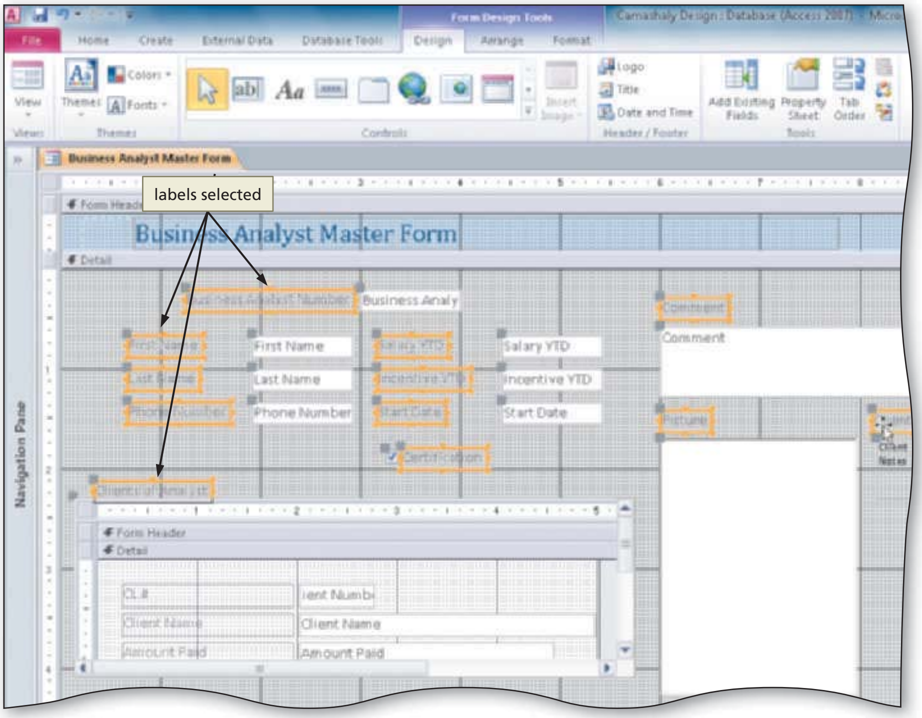

labels selected
Form Design Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
View
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Controls
Insert Image
Logo
Title
Date and Time
Header / Footer
Add Existing Fields
Property Sheet
Tab Order
Tools
Business Analyst Master Form
Navigation Pane
Form Header
Detail
Business Analyst Master Form
Business Analy
First Name
Last Name
Phone Number
Salary YTD
Incentive YTD
Start Date
Comment
Client Name
Amount Paid

Figure 5–57

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2

- Display the Format tab.
- Click the Font Color arrow (Form Design Tools Format tab | Font group) to display a color palette (Figure 5–58).

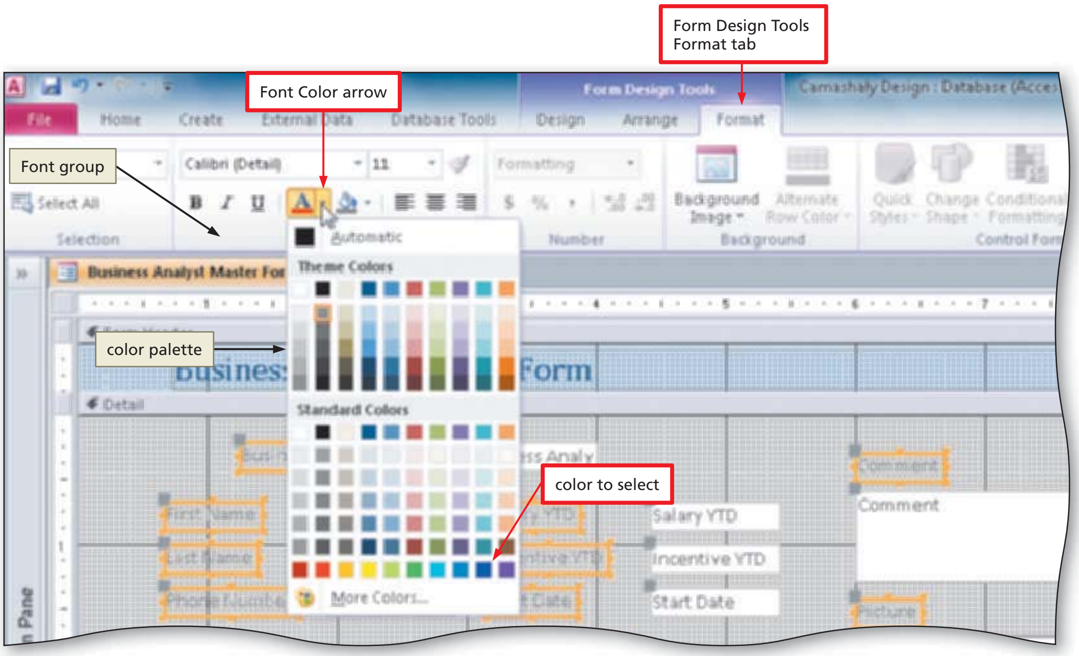

Form Design Tools Format tab
Font Color arrow
Font group
color palette
color to select

Figure 5–58

3

- Click the blue color in the second position from the right in the bottom row of Standard Colors to change the font color for the labels.

Experiment

- Try other colors by clicking the Font Color arrow and then clicking the other color to see which colors you think would be good choices for the font. When done, select the blue color.

- Display the Design tab.

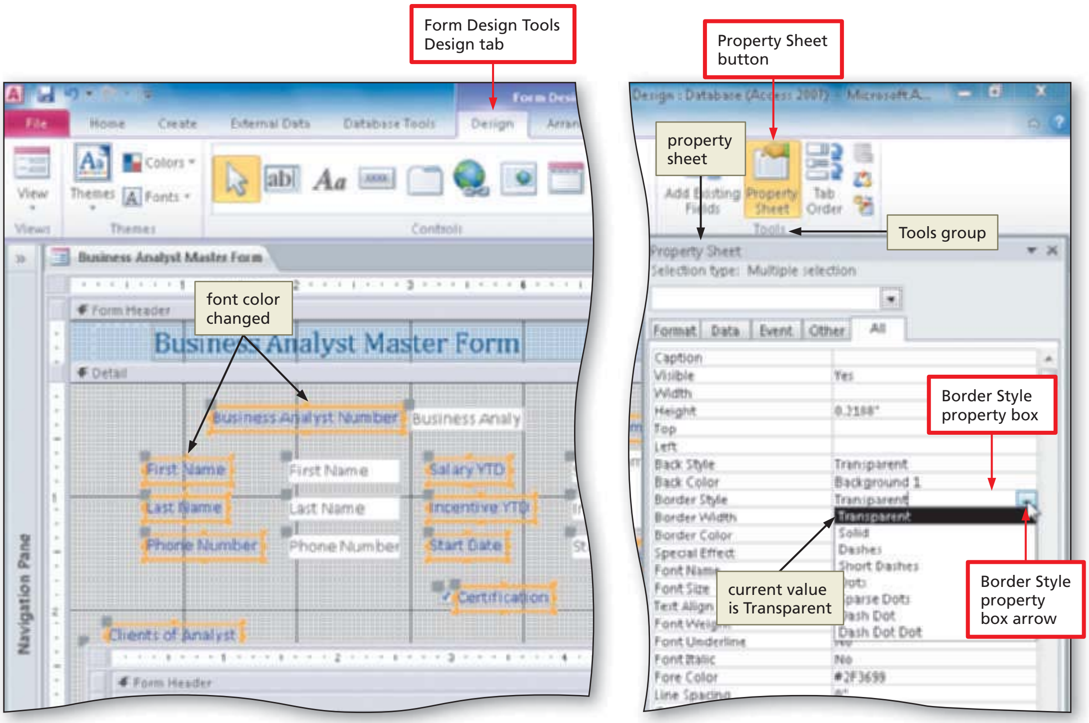

Form Design Tools Design tab
Property Sheet button
property sheet
Tools group
font color changed
Business Analyst Master Form
Border Style property box
current value is Transparent
Border Style property box arrow

Figure 5–59

- Click the Property Sheet button (Form Design Tools Design tab | Tools group) to produce the property sheet for the selected labels. If your property sheet still appears on the left side of the screen, drag it back to the right. Make sure the All tab is selected.

- Click the Border Style property box to display the Border Style property box arrow, and then click the arrow to display a menu of border styles (Figure 5–59).

Q&A

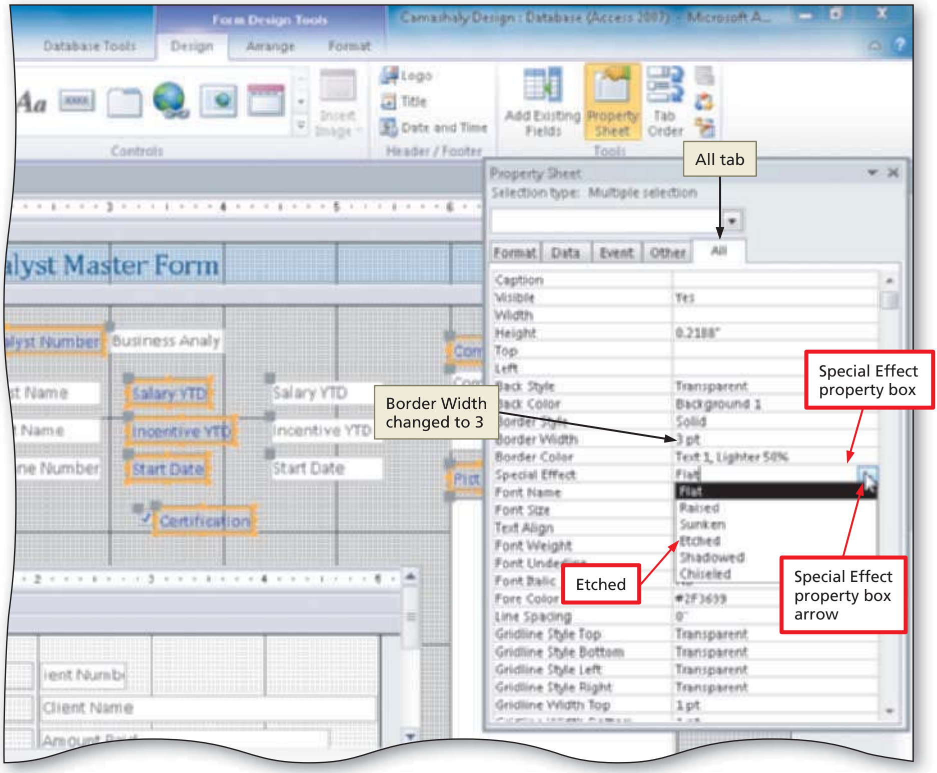
The property sheet is too small to display the property box arrow. Can I change the size of the property sheet?

Yes. Point to the border of the property sheet so that the mouse pointer changes to a two-headed arrow. You then can drag to adjust the size.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

4

- Click Solid in the menu of border styles to select a border style.
- Click the Border Width property box to display the Border Width property box arrow, and then click the arrow to display a menu of border widths.
- Click 3 pt to change the border width to 3 pt.
- Click the Special Effect property box to display the Special Effect property box arrow, and then click the arrow to display a menu of special effects (Figure 5–60).


All tab

Special Effect property box

Border Width changed to 3

Etched

Special Effect property box arrow

Property Sheet

Selection type: Multiple selection

Caption	
Visible	Yes
Width	
Height	0.2188"
Top	
Left	
Back Style	Transparent
Back Color	Background 1
Border Style	Solid
Border Width	3 pt
Border Color	Text 1, Lighter 50%
Special Effect	Flat
Font Name	
Font Size	
Text Align	
Font Weight	
Font Underline	
Font Italic	
Fore Color	#2F3699
Line Spacing	0"
Gridline Style Top	Transparent
Gridline Style Bottom	Transparent
Gridline Style Left	Transparent
Gridline Style Right	Transparent
Gridline Width Top	1 pt

Form Design Tools
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Controls
Logo
Title
Date and Time
Insert Image
Header / Footer
Add Existing Fields
Property Sheet
Tab Order
Tools
Format
Data
Event
Other
All
Flat
Raised
Sunken
Etched
Shadowed
Chiseled
Analyst Master Form
Business Analyst Number
Salary YTD
Incentive YTD
Start Date
Certification
Client Name

Figure 5–60

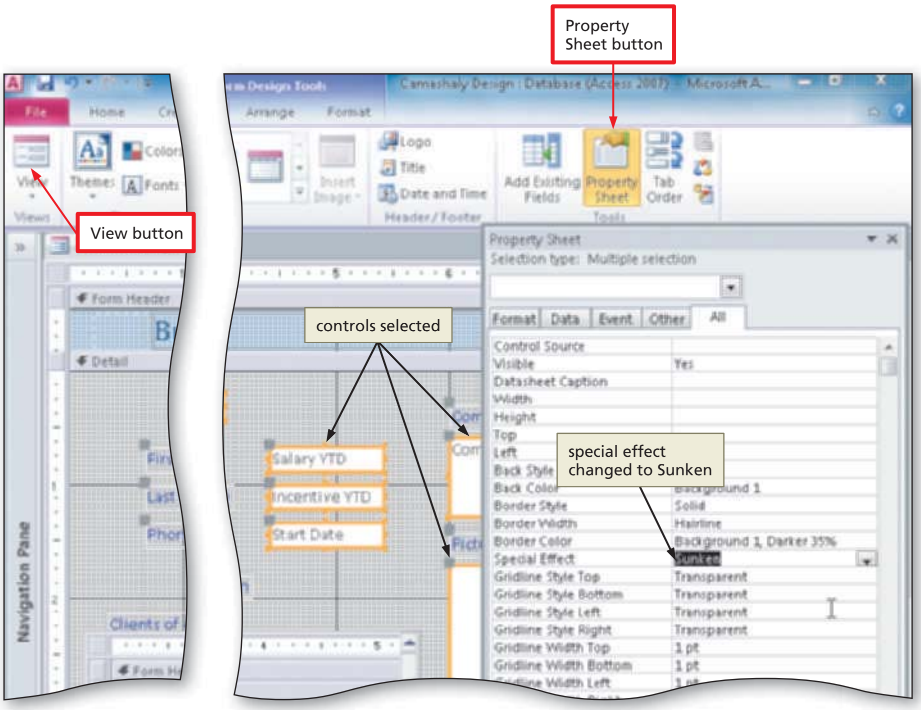
5

- Click Etched in the menu of special effects to select a special effect.

Experiment

- Try other special effects. In each case, view the form to see the special effect you selected and then return to Design view. When done, select Etched.

- Close the property sheet.
- Click the Business Analyst Number control (the white space, not the label) to select it.
- Select each of the remaining controls by holding down the SHIFT key while clicking the control. Do not include the subform.
- Display the property sheet.
- Select Sunken for the special effect (Figure 5–61).


Property Sheet button

View button

controls selected

special effect changed to Sunken

Property Sheet

Selection type: Multiple selection

Control Source	
Visible	Yes
Datasheet Caption	
Width	
Height	
Top	
Left	
Back Style	
Back Color	Background 1
Border Style	Solid
Border Width	Hairline
Border Color	Background 1, Darker 35%
Special Effect	Sunken
Gridline Style Top	Transparent
Gridline Style Bottom	Transparent
Gridline Style Left	Transparent
Gridline Style Right	Transparent
Gridline Width Top	1 pt
Gridline Width Bottom	1 pt
Gridline Width Left	1 pt

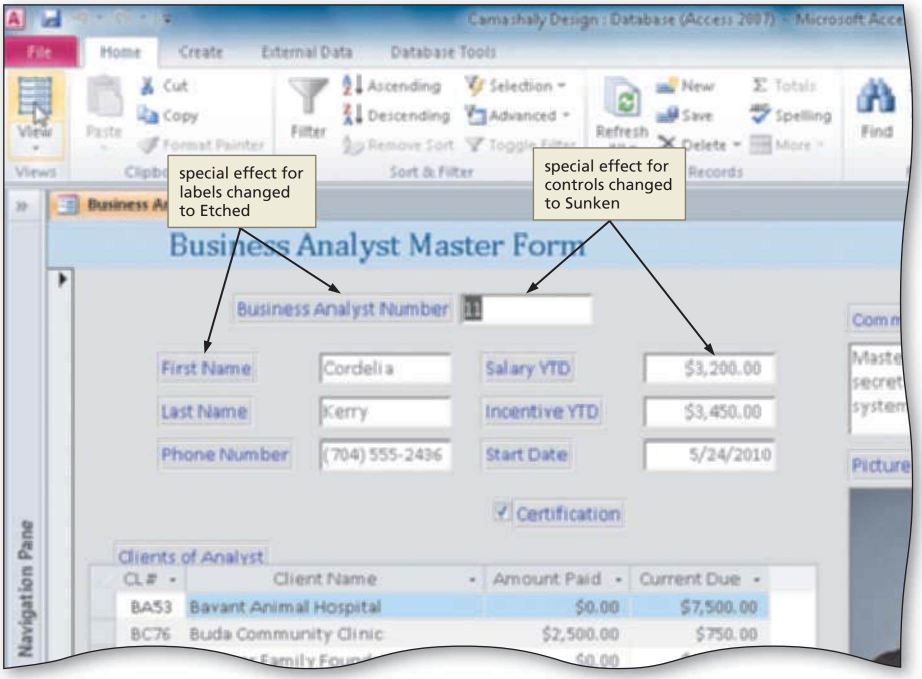
File
Home
View
Views
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Form Header
Detail
Navigation Pane
Form Design Tools
Arrange
Format
Logo
Title
Date and Time
Insert Image
Header / Footer
Add Existing Fields
Property Sheet
Tab Order
Tools
Format
Data
Event
Other
All
Salary YTD
Incentive YTD
Start Date

Figure 5–61

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

6

- Close the property sheet by clicking the Property Sheet button (Form Design Tools Design tab | Tools group).
- Click the View button to view the form in Form view (Figure 5–62).


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Acce
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Views
Clipbo
Sort & Filter
Records
Business A
Navigation Pane
Com
Maste
secret
system
Picture

special effect for labels changed to Etched

special effect for controls changed to Sunken

Business Analyst Master Form

Business Analyst Number 11

First Name Cordelia

Last Name Kerry

Phone Number (704) 555-2436

Salary YTD $3,200.00

Incentive YTD $3,450.00

Start Date 5/24/2010

✓ Certification

Clients of Analyst

CL #	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	$0.00	$7,500.00
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	$2,500.00	$750.00

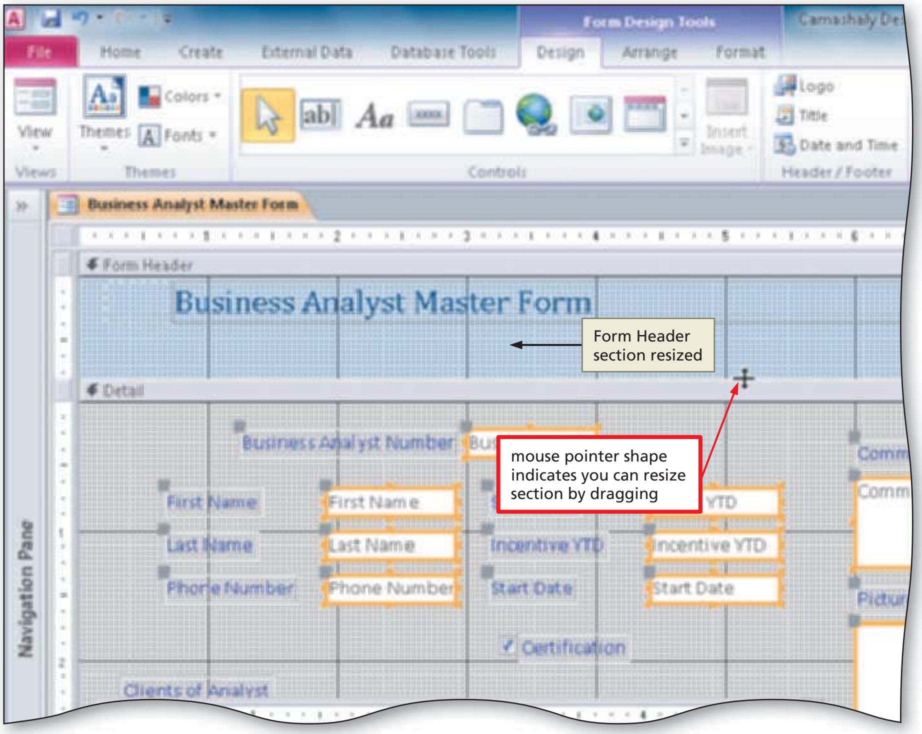
Figure 5–62

To Modify the Appearance of a Form Title

You can enhance the title in a variety of ways. These include moving it, resizing it, changing the font size, changing the font weight, and changing the alignment. The following steps enhance the form title.

1

- Return to Design view.
- Resize the Form Header section by dragging down the lower boundary of the section to the approximate position shown in Figure 5–63.


Form Design Tools
Camashaly De
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
View
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Insert Image
Logo
Title
Date and Time
Views
Themes
Controls
Header / Footer
Business Analyst Master Form
Form Header
Business Analyst Master Form
Detail
Business Analyst Number
Bu
First Name
First Name
Last Name
Last Name
Phone Number
Phone Number
YTD
Incentive YTD
Incentive YTD
Start Date
Start Date
Certification
Clients of Analyst
Comm
Comm
Pictur
Navigation Pane

Form Header section resized

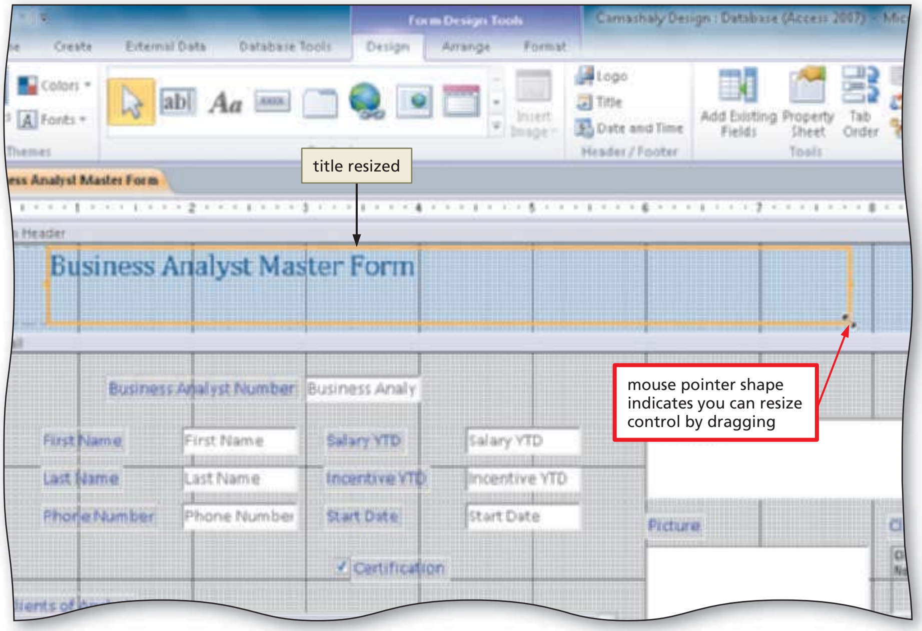
mouse pointer shape indicates you can resize section by dragging

Figure 5–63

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2

- Click the control containing the form title to select the control.
- Drag the lower-right sizing handle to resize the control to the approximate size shown in Figure 5–64.


Form Design Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Mic
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Colors
Fonts
Themes
Logo
Title
Date and Time
Header / Footer
Insert Image
Add Existing Fields
Property Sheet
Tab Order
Tools
ess Analyst Master Form
Header
Business Analyst Master Form
Business Analyst Number
Business Analy
First Name
Last Name
Phone Number
Salary YTD
Incentive YTD
Start Date
Certification
Picture

title resized

mouse pointer shape indicates you can resize control by dragging

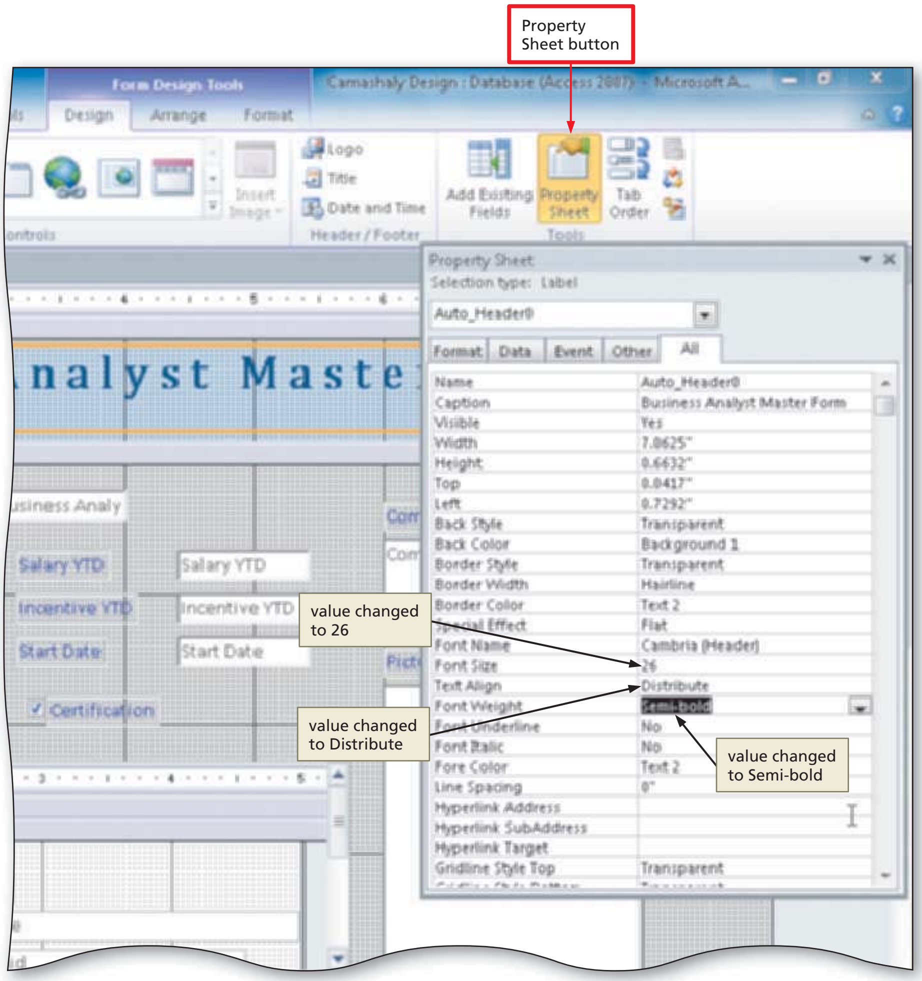
Figure 5–64

3

- Click the Property Sheet button (Form Design Tools Design tab | Tools group) to display the control's property sheet.
- Click the Font Size property box, click the Font Size property box arrow, and then click 26 to change the font size.
- In a similar fashion, change the Text Align property value to Distribute and the Font Weight property value to Semi-bold (Figure 5–65).

4

- Close the property sheet by clicking the Property Sheet button (Form Design Tools Design tab | Tools group).


Property Sheet button

Form Design Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft A...
Design
Arrange
Format
Logo
Title
Date and Time
Insert Image
Header / Footer
Add Existing Fields
Property Sheet
Tab Order
Tools
nalyst Maste
Salary YTD
Incentive YTD
Start Date
Certification

Property Sheet
Selection type: Label
Auto_Header0

Format | Data | Event | Other | All

Name	Auto_Header0
Caption	Business Analyst Master Form
Visible	Yes
Width	7.0625"
Height	0.6632"
Top	0.0417"
Left	0.7292"
Back Style	Transparent
Back Color	Background 1
Border Style	Transparent
Border Width	Hairline
Border Color	Text 2
Special Effect	Flat
Font Name	Cambria (Header)
Font Size	26
Text Align	Distribute
Font Weight	Semi-bold
Font Underline	No
Font Italic	No
Fore Color	Text 2
Line Spacing	0"
Hyperlink Address	
Hyperlink SubAddress	
Hyperlink Target	
Gridline Style Top	Transparent

value changed to 26

value changed to Distribute

value changed to Semi-bold

Figure 5–65

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Change a Tab Stop

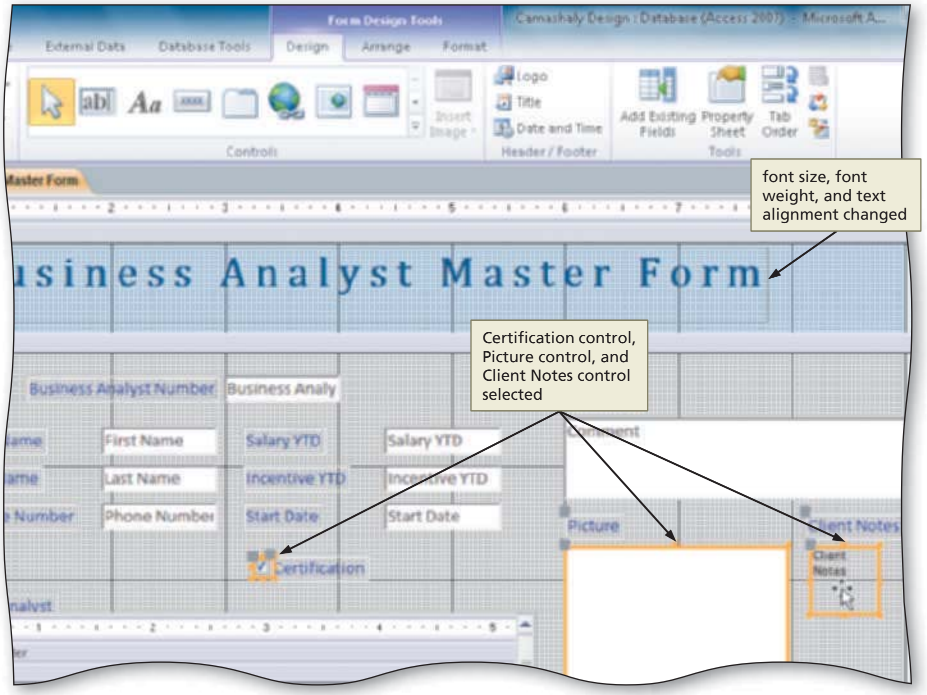
Users may repeatedly press the TAB key to move through the controls on the form; however, they should bypass the Certification, Picture, and Client Notes controls. To omit these controls from the tab stop sequence, the following steps change the value of the Tab Stop property for the controls from Yes to No.

1

- Click the Certification control to select it.
- In addition, select the Picture control and the Client Notes control by holding down the SHIFT key while clicking each control (Figure 5–66).

2

- Click the Property Sheet button (Form Design Tools Design tab | Tools group) to display the property sheet.
- Make sure the All tab (Property Sheet) is selected, click the down scroll arrow until the Tab Stop property appears, click the Tab Stop property, click the Tab Stop property box arrow, and then click No.
- Close the property sheet.


Form Design Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft A...
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Logo
Title
Date and Time
Insert Image
Controls
Header / Footer
Add Existing Fields
Property Sheet
Tab Order
Tools
Master Form
usiness Analyst Master Form
Business Analyst Number
Business Analy
First Name
Last Name
Phone Number
Salary YTD
Incentive YTD
Start Date
Comment
Picture
Client Notes
Certification

font size, font weight, and text alignment changed

Certification control, Picture control, and Client Notes control selected

Figure 5–66

Q&A What is the effect of this change?
When a user tabs through the controls, he or she will bypass the Certification control, the Picture control, and the Client Notes control.

Q&A I don't see the Tab Stop property. What did I do wrong?
You clicked the labels for the controls, not the controls.

- Click the Save button on the Quick Access Toolbar to save your changes.

3

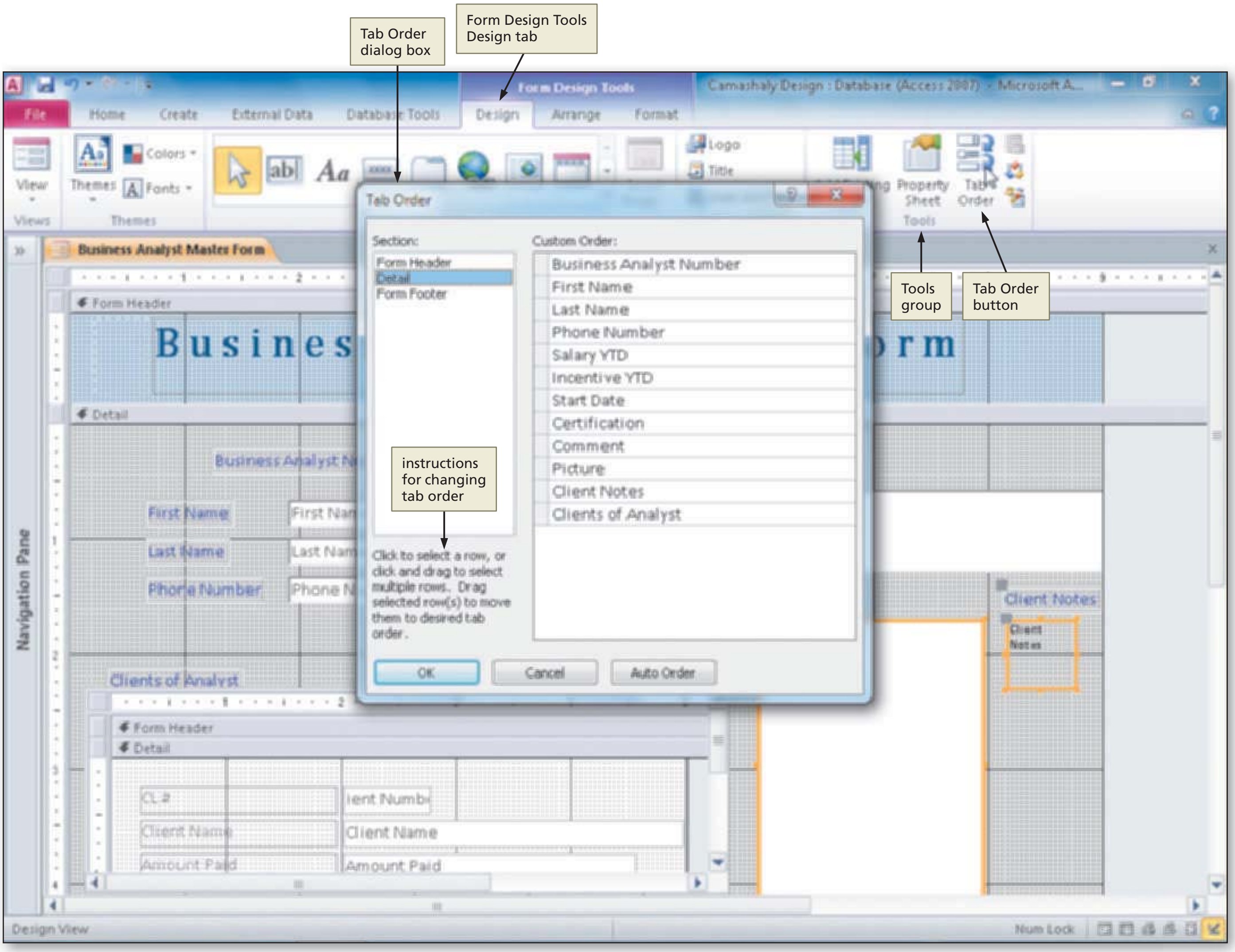
- Click the View button to view the form in Form view. It should look like the form shown in Figure 5–1.
- Close the form.

Break Point: If you wish to stop working through the chapter at this point, you can resume the project at a later time by starting Access, opening the database called Camashaly Design, and continuing to follow the steps from this location forward.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Changing the Tab Order

Users can repeatedly press the TAB key to move through the fields on a form. Access determines the order in which the fields are encountered in this process. If you prefer a different order, you can change the order by clicking the Tab Order button (Form Design Tools Design tab | Tools group). You can then use the Tab Order dialog box (Figure 5–67) to change the order by dragging rows to their desired position as indicated in the dialog box.


Tab Order dialog box
Form Design Tools Design tab
Tools group
Tab Order button
instructions for changing tab order
Tab Order
Section:
Form Header
Detail
Form Footer
Custom Order:
OK
Cancel
Auto Order

Business Analyst Number
First Name
Last Name
Phone Number
Salary YTD
Incentive YTD
Start Date
Certification
Comment
Picture
Client Notes
Clients of Analyst

Click to select a row, or click and drag to select multiple rows. Drag selected row(s) to move them to desired tab order.

Figure 5–67

To Use the Form

To use a form to view data, right-click the form in the Navigation Pane, and then click Open on the shortcut menu that appears. You then can use the Navigation buttons at the bottom of the screen to move among business analysts. You can use the Navigation buttons in the subform to move among the clients of the business analyst currently shown on the screen. The following steps use the form to display desired data.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

1

- Open the Navigation Pane if it is currently closed.
- Right-click the Business Analyst Master Form and then click Open on the shortcut menu.
- Close the Navigation Pane.
- Right-click the Client Notes field to display a shortcut menu (Figure 5–68).

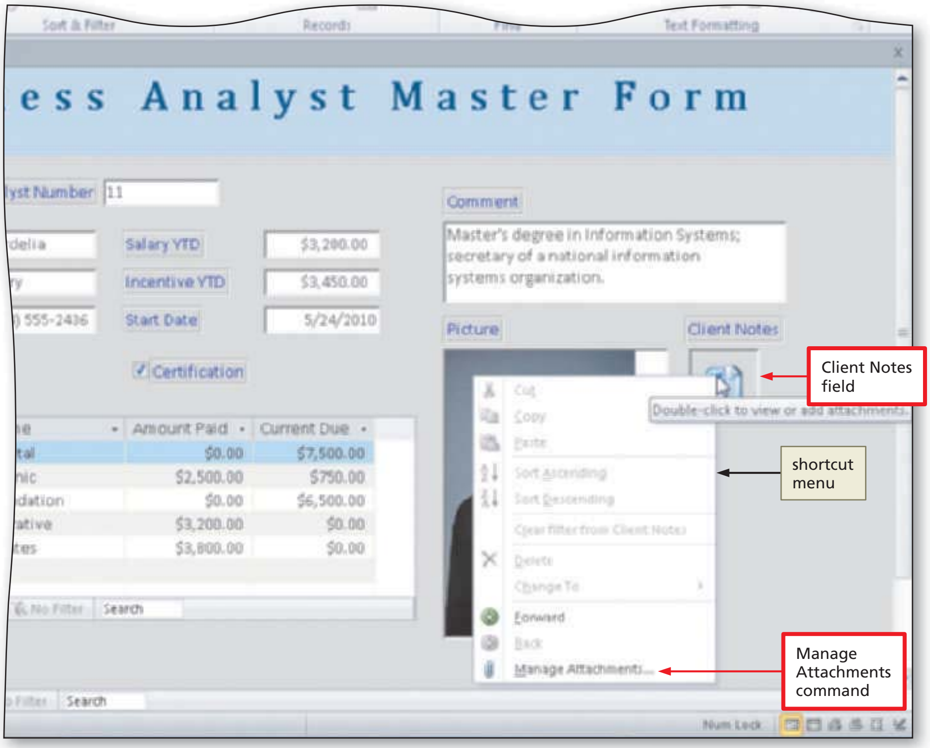

ess Analyst Master Form
Client Notes field
shortcut menu
Manage Attachments command
Cut
Copy
Paste
Sort Ascending
Sort Descending
Clear filter from Client Notes
Delete
Change To
Forward
Back
Manage Attachments...
Double-click to view or add attachments

Figure 5–68

2

- Click the Manage Attachments command on the shortcut menu to display the Attachments dialog box (Figure 5–69).

Q&A

How do I use this dialog box?

Select an attachment and click the Open button to view the attachment in its original application. Click the Add button to add a new attachment or the Remove button to remove the selected attachment. By clicking the Save button, you can save the selected attachment as a file in whatever location you specify. You can save all attachments at once by clicking the Save All button.

Experiment

- Open both attachments to see how they look in the original applications. When finished, close each original application.

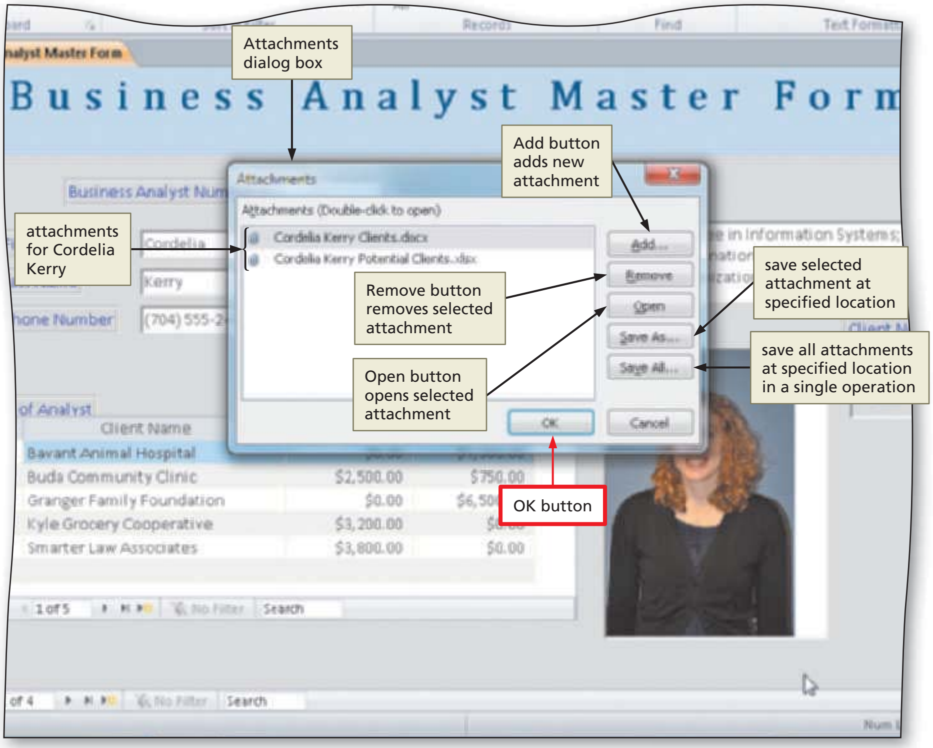
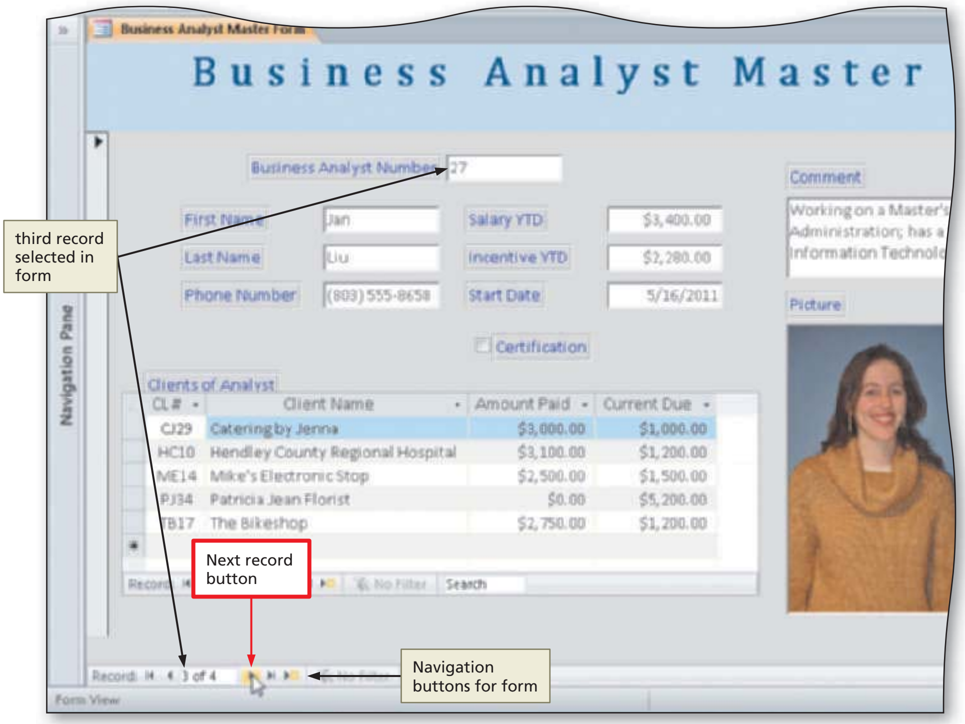

Business Analyst Master Form
Attachments dialog box
Add button adds new attachment
attachments for Cordelia Kerry
Remove button removes selected attachment
Open button opens selected attachment
save selected attachment at specified location
save all attachments at specified location in a single operation
OK button
Attachments
Attachments (Double-click to open)
Cordelia Kerry Clients.docx
Cordelia Kerry Potential Clients.xlsx
Add...
Remove
Open
Save As...
Save All...
OK
Cancel

Figure 5–69

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3

- Click the OK button to close the Attachments dialog box.
- Click the form's Next record button twice to display the data for business analyst 27 (Figure 5–70).



Business Analyst Master

Business Analyst Number	27		
First Name	Jan	Salary YTD	$3,400.00
Last Name	Liu	Incentive YTD	$2,280.00
Phone Number	(803) 555-8658	Start Date	5/16/2011

☐ Certification

Comment: Working on a Master's / Administration; has a / Information Technolo

Picture

Clients of Analyst

CL #	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	$3,000.00	$1,000.00
HC10	Hendley County Regional Hospital	$3,100.00	$1,200.00
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	$2,500.00	$1,500.00
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	$0.00	$5,200.00
TB17	The Bikeshop	$2,750.00	$1,200.00

Record: 3 of 4

third record selected in form

Next record button

Navigation buttons for form

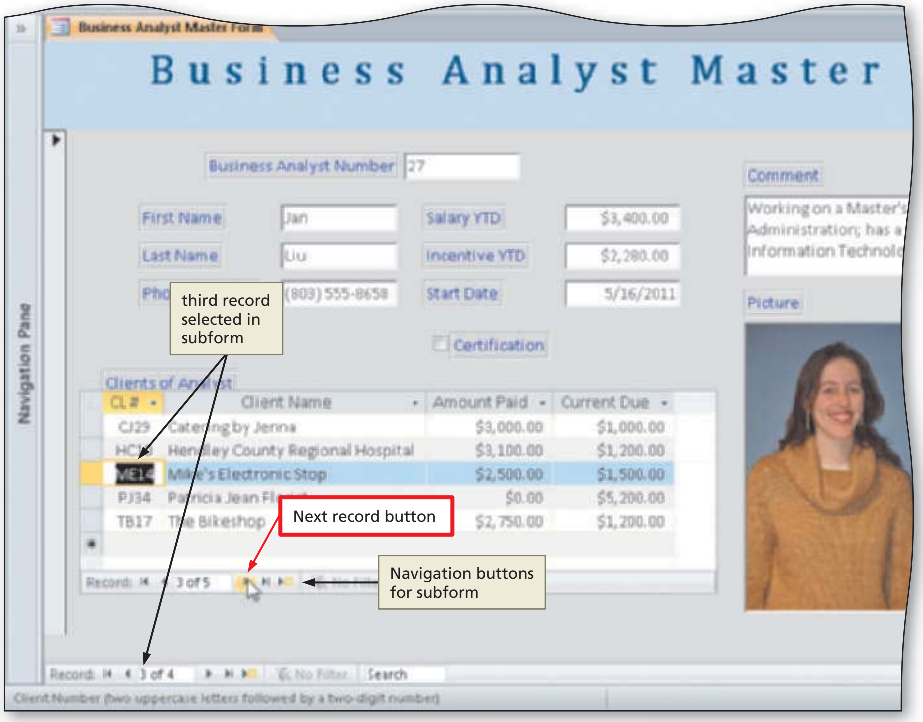
Figure 5–70

4

- Click the subform's Next record button twice to highlight the third client of business analyst 27 (Figure 5–71).

5

- Close the form.



Business Analyst Master

Business Analyst Number	27		
First Name	Jan	Salary YTD	$3,400.00
Last Name	Liu	Incentive YTD	$2,280.00
Phone Number	(803) 555-8658	Start Date	5/16/2011

☐ Certification

Comment: Working on a Master's / Administration; has a / Information Technolo

Picture

Clients of Analyst

CL #	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	$3,000.00	$1,000.00
HC10	Hendley County Regional Hospital	$3,100.00	$1,200.00
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	$2,500.00	$1,500.00
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	$0.00	$5,200.00
TB17	The Bikeshop	$2,750.00	$1,200.00

Record: 3 of 5 (subform)

Record: 3 of 4 (form)

Client Number (two uppercase letters followed by a two-digit number)

third record selected in subform

Next record button

Navigation buttons for subform

Figure 5–71

Other Ways

1. Double-click Attachments control

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Navigation in the Form

The previous steps illustrated the way you work with a main form and subform. Clicking the Navigation buttons for the main form moves to a different business analyst. Clicking the Navigation buttons for the subform moves to a different client of the business analyst who appears in the main form. The following are other actions you can take within the form:

1. To move from the last field in the main form to the first field in the subform, press the TAB key. To move back to the last field in the main form, press CTRL+SHIFT+TAB.
2. To move from the last field in the subform to the first field in the next record's main form, press CTRL+TAB.
3. To switch from the main form to the subform using the mouse, click anywhere in the subform. To switch back to the main form, click any control in the main form. Clicking the background of the main form will not cause the switch to occur.

Object Dependencies

In Access, objects can depend on other objects. For example, a report depends on the table or query on which it is based. A change to the structure of the table or query could affect the report. You can view information on dependencies between database objects. Viewing a list of objects that use a specific object helps in the maintenance of a database and avoids errors when changes are made to the objects involved in the dependency. For example, many items, such as queries and forms, use data from the Client table and thus depend on the Client table. By clicking the Object Dependencies button, you can see what items are based on the object. You also can see the items on which the object depends.

If you are unfamiliar with a database, viewing object dependencies can help you better understand the structure of the database. Viewing object dependencies is especially useful after you have made changes to the structure of tables. An understanding of which reports, forms, and queries depend on a table can assist in making any necessary changes.

To View Object Dependencies

The following steps view the objects that depend on the Client table.

1

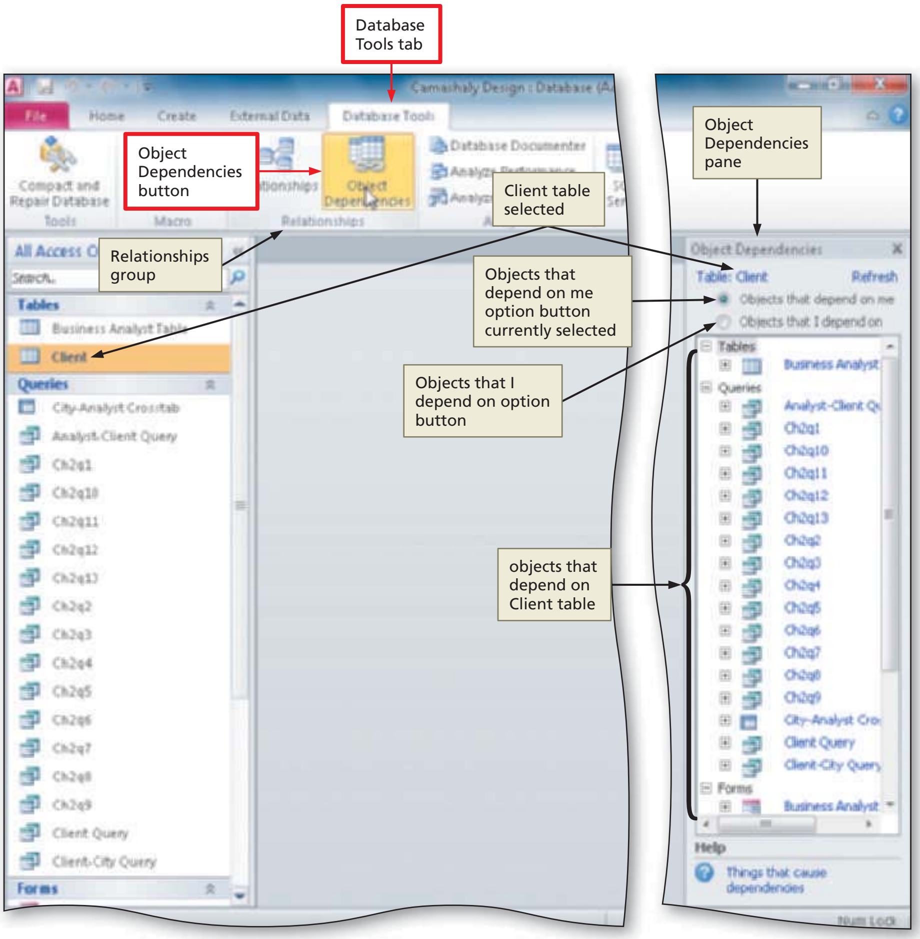
- Open the Navigation Pane and click the Client table.
- Display the Database Tools tab.
- Click the Object Dependencies button (Database Tools tab | Relationships group) to display the Object Dependencies pane.
- If necessary, click the 'Objects that depend on me' option button to select it (Figure 5–72).

Experiment

- Click the 'Objects that I depend on' option button to see the objects on which the Client table depends. Then try both options for other objects in the database.

2

- Close the Object Dependencies pane by clicking the Object Dependencies button (Database Tools tab | Relationships group) a second time.



Database Tools tab
Object Dependencies button
Client table selected
Relationships group
Objects that depend on me option button currently selected
Objects that I depend on option button
objects that depend on Client table
Object Dependencies pane
Object Dependencies
Table: Client
Refresh
Objects that depend on me
Objects that I depend on
Tables
Business Analyst
Queries
Analyst-Client Query
Ch2q1
Ch2q10
Ch2q11
Ch2q12
Ch2q13
Ch2q2
Ch2q3
Ch2q4
Ch2q5
Ch2q6
Ch2q7
Ch2q8
Ch2q9
City-Analyst Crosstab
Client Query
Client-City Query
Forms
Business Analyst
Help
Things that cause dependencies

Figure 5–72

Date/Time, Memo, and Yes/No Fields in Queries

By specifying business analyst start dates using Date/Time fields, Camashaly Design can run queries to find business analysts hired before or after a certain date. Other uses of the date field might include calculating an analyst's length of service by subtracting the start date from the current date. Similarly, management can search for business analysts with specific qualifications by adding memos and Yes/No fields.

To use Date/Time fields in queries, you simply type the dates, including the slashes. To search for records with a specific date, you must type the date. You also can use comparison operators. To find all the business analysts whose start date is prior to January 1, 2011, for example, you type <1/1/2011 as the criterion.

You also can use Memo fields in queries. Typically, you will want to find all the records on which the Memo field contains a specific word or phrase. To do so, you use wildcards. For example, to find all the business analysts who have the word, Information, somewhere in the Comment field, you type *Information* as the criterion. The asterisk at the beginning indicates that any characters can appear before the word, Information. The asterisk at the end indicates that any characters can appear after the word, Information.

To use Yes/No fields in queries, type the word, Yes, or the word, No, as the criterion. The following steps create and run queries that use Date/Time, Memo, and Yes/No fields.

BTW

Searching Memo Fields

When you search memo fields, consider alternative spellings and phrases. For example, Computer Science also can be referenced as CS.

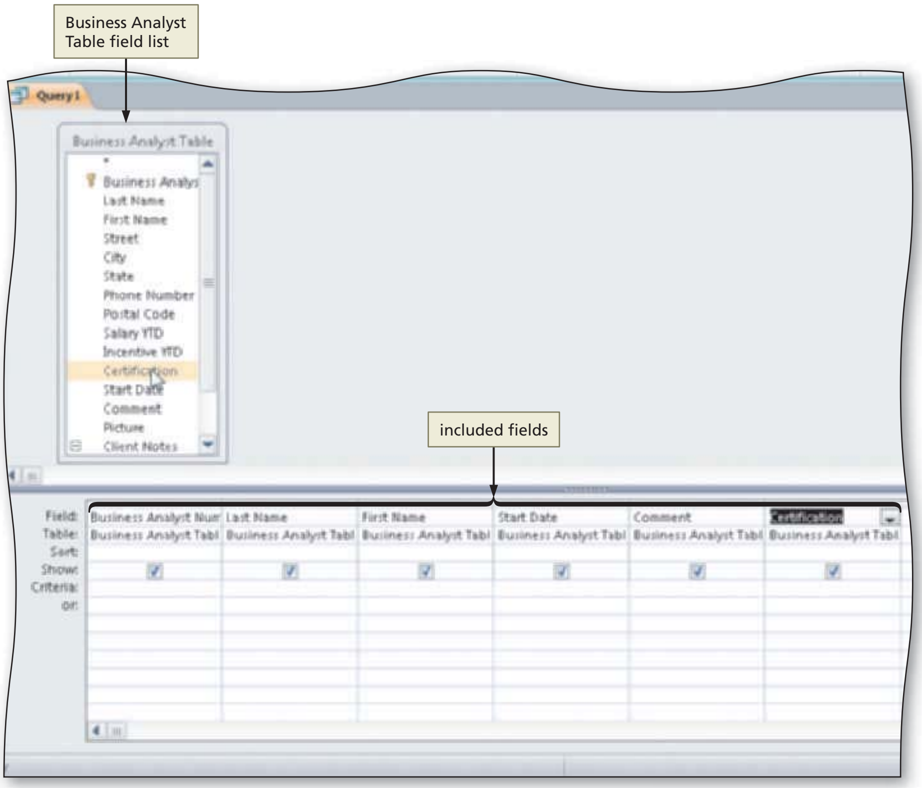
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Use Date/Time, Memo, and Yes/No Fields in a Query

The following steps use Date/Time, Memo, and Yes/No fields in queries to search for business analysts who meet specific criteria.

1

- Create a query for the Business Analyst Table and include the Business Analyst Number, Last Name, First Name, Start Date, Comment, and Certification fields in the query (Figure 5–73).


Query1
Business Analyst Table
*
Business Analys
Last Name
First Name
Street
City
State
Phone Number
Postal Code
Salary YTD
Incentive YTD
Certification
Start Date
Comment
Picture
Client Notes

Business Analyst Table field list

included fields

Field:	Business Analyst Num	Last Name	First Name	Start Date	Comment	Certification
Table:	Business Analyst Tabl	Business Analyst Tabl	Business Analyst Tabl	Business Analyst Tabl	Business Analyst Tabl	Business Analyst Tabl
Sort:						
Show:	☑	☑	☑	☑	☑	☑
Criteria:						
or:						

Figure 5–73

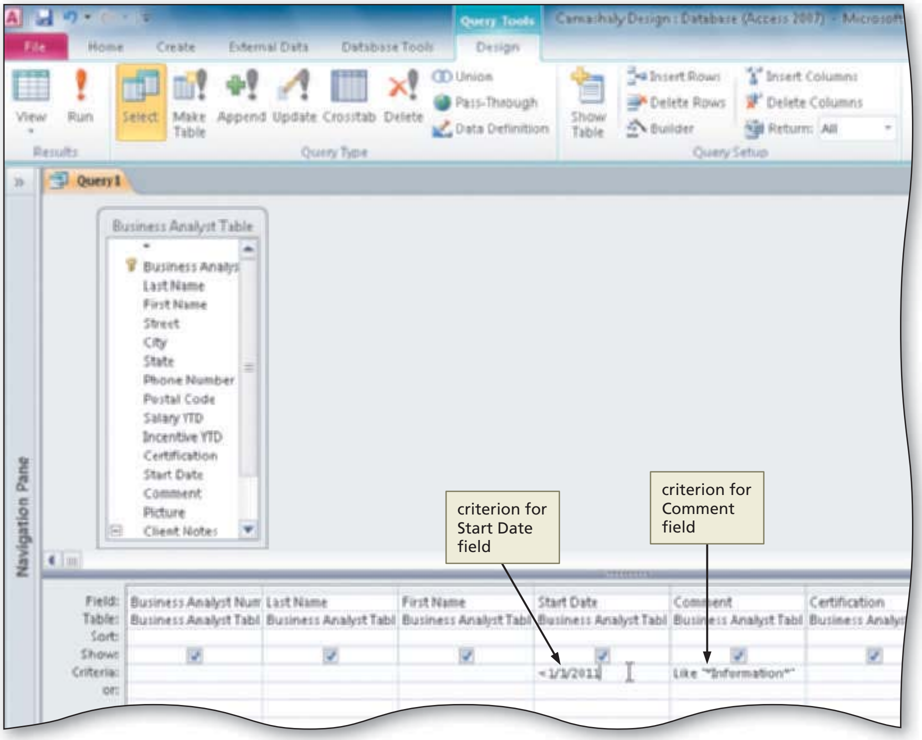
2

- Click the Criteria row under the Comment field and then type `*Information*` as the criterion.
- Click the Criteria row under the Start Date field, and then type `<1/1/2011` as the criterion (Figure 5–74).

Q&A

What happened to the criteria for the Comment field?

Access automatically reformatted it appropriately by adding the word, like, and placing quotation marks around the criterion.


Query Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
View
Run
Select
Make Table
Append
Update
Crosstab
Delete
Union
Pass-Through
Data Definition
Show Table
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Builder
Insert Columns
Delete Columns
Return:
All
Results
Query Type
Query Setup
Navigation Pane
Query1
Business Analyst Table
*
Business Analys
Last Name
First Name
Street
City
State
Phone Number
Postal Code
Salary YTD
Incentive YTD
Certification
Start Date
Comment
Picture
Client Notes

criterion for Start Date field

criterion for Comment field

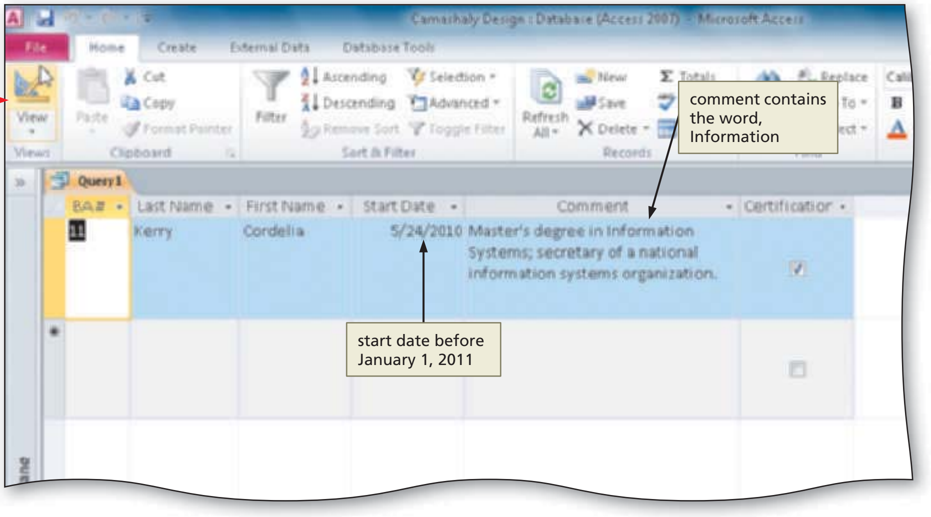
Field:	Business Analyst Num	Last Name	First Name	Start Date	Comment	Certification
Table:	Business Analyst Tabl	Business Analyst Tabl	Business Analyst Tabl	Business Analyst Tabl	Business Analyst Tabl	Business Analyst
Sort:						
Show:	☑	☑	☑	☑	☑	☑
Criteria:				<1/1/2011	Like "*Information*"	
or:						

Figure 5–74

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3

- Click the View button to view the results (Figure 5–75).


View button
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Replace
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Query1
comment contains the word, Information
start date before January 1, 2011

BA #	Last Name	First Name	Start Date	Comment	Certification
11	Kerry	Cordelia	5/24/2010	Master's degree in Information Systems; secretary of a national information systems organization.	☑

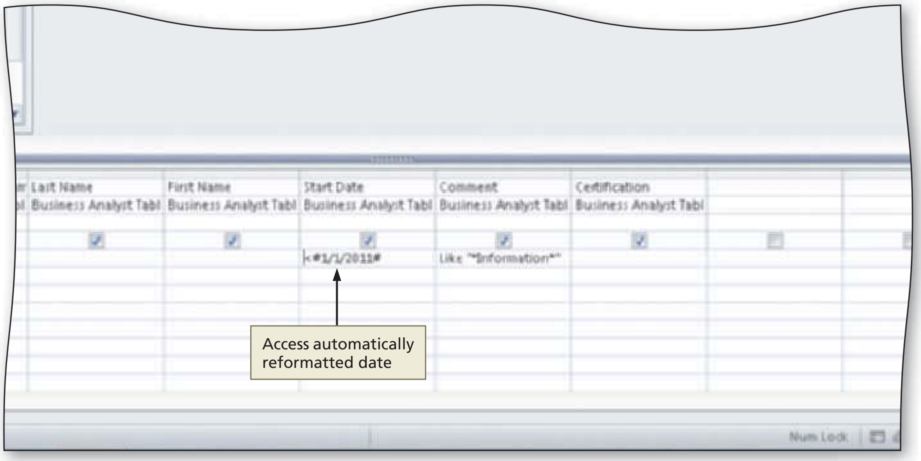
Figure 5–75

4

- Click the View button to return to Design view (Figure 5–76).

Q&A Why does the date have number signs (#) around it?

This is the date format in Access. You usually do not have to enter the number signs because Access will insert them automatically.


Access automatically reformatted date
Num Lock

Field:	Last Name	First Name	Start Date	Comment	Certification
Table:	Business Analyst Tabl	Business Analyst Tabl	Business Analyst Tabl	Business Analyst Tabl	Business Analyst Tabl
Show:	☑	☑	☑	☑	☑
Criteria:			<#1/1/2011#	Like "*Information*"	

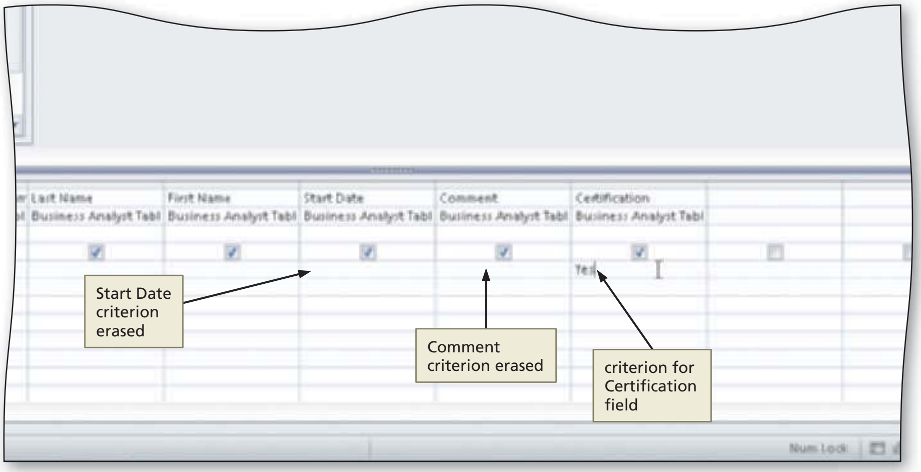
Figure 5–76

5

- Erase the criteria in the Start Date and Comment fields.
- Click the Criteria row under the Certification field and then type `Yes` as the criterion (Figure 5–77).

Q&A Do I have to type Yes?

You also could type True.


Start Date criterion erased
Comment criterion erased
criterion for Certification field
Num Lock

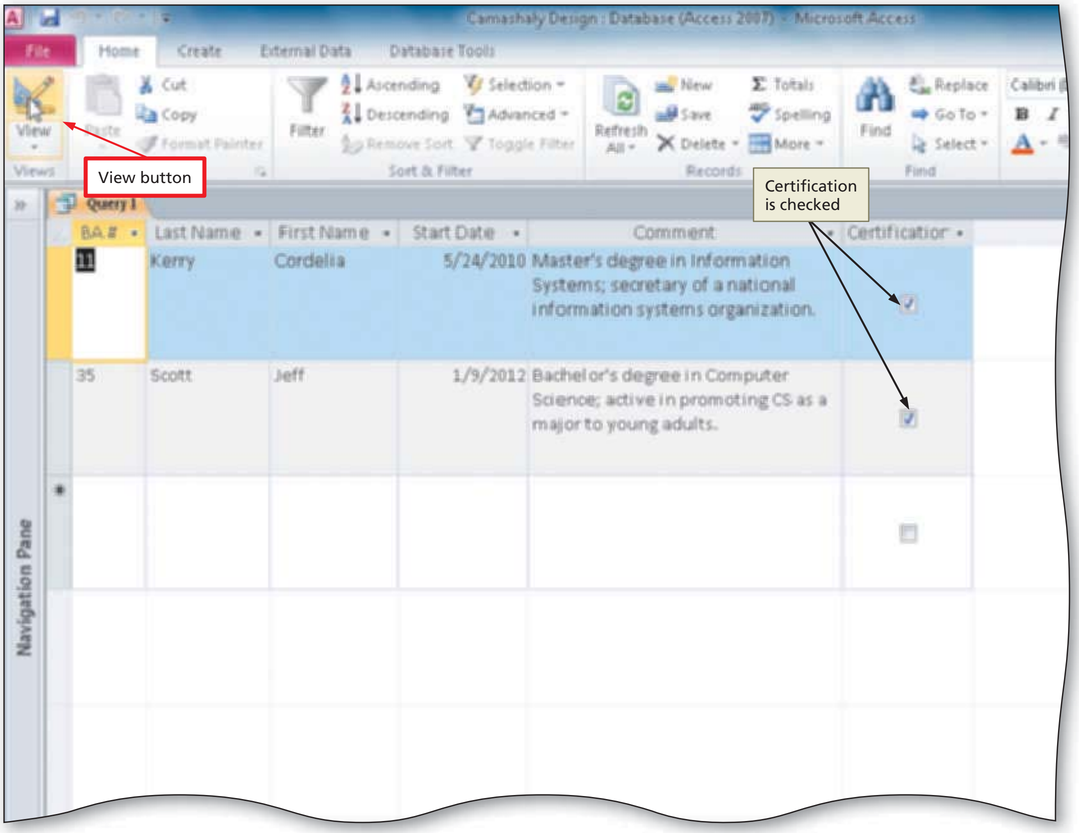
Field:	Last Name	First Name	Start Date	Comment	Certification
Table:	Business Analyst Tabl	Business Analyst Tabl	Business Analyst Tabl	Business Analyst Tabl	Business Analyst Tabl
Show:	☑	☑	☑	☑	☑
Criteria:					Yes

Figure 5–77

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

6

- Click the View button to view the results (Figure 5–78).


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Views
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Sort & Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Records
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Find
Calibri
B
I
A
Query1
Navigation Pane

View button

Certification is checked

BA #	Last Name	First Name	Start Date	Comment	Certification
11	Kerry	Cordelia	5/24/2010	Master's degree in Information Systems; secretary of a national information systems organization.	☑
35	Scott	Jeff	1/9/2012	Bachelor's degree in Computer Science; active in promoting CS as a major to young adults.	☑
*					☐

Figure 5–78

Experiment

- Try other combinations of values in the Start Date field, the Comment field, and/or the Certification field. In each case, view the results.

7

- Close the query without saving the results.

Datasheets in Forms

BTW

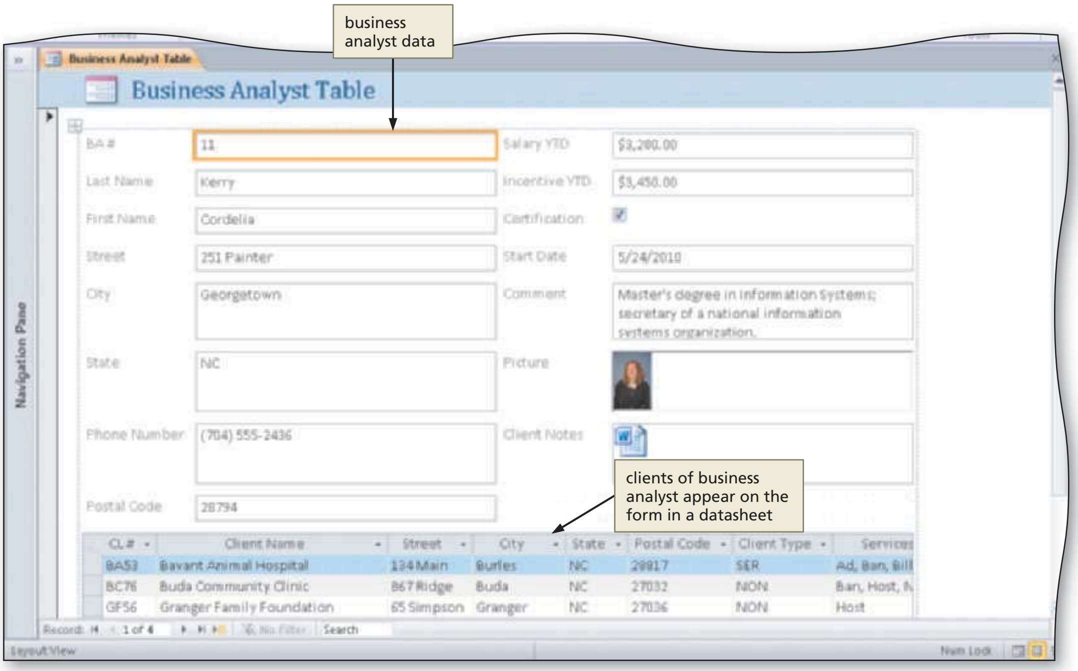
Date Fields in Queries
To test for the current date in a query, type Date() in the Criteria row of the appropriate column. Typing <Date() in the Criteria row for the Start Date, for example, finds those business analysts who started anytime before the date on which you run the query.

In forms created in Layout view, subforms are not available, but you can achieve similar functionality to subforms by including datasheets. Like subforms, the datasheets contain data for the “many” table in the relationship.

Creating a Simple Form with a Datasheet

If you create a simple form for a table that is the “one” table in a one-to-many relationship, Access automatically includes the “many” table in a datasheet within the form. If you create a simple form for the Business Analyst Table, for example, Access will include the Client table in a datasheet within the form, as in Figure 5–79. The clients in the datasheet will be the clients of the business analyst currently on the screen, in this case, Cordelia Kerry.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.


Business Analyst Table
Navigation Pane
Layout View
Num Lock

business analyst data

Business Analyst Table

BA #	11	Salary YTD	$3,200.00
Last Name	Kerry	Incentive YTD	$3,450.00
First Name	Cordelia	Certification	☑
Street	251 Painter	Start Date	5/24/2010
City	Georgetown	Comment	Master's degree in Information Systems; secretary of a national information systems organization.
State	NC	Picture	
Phone Number	(704) 555-2436	Client Notes	
Postal Code	28794		

clients of business analyst appear on the form in a datasheet

CL #	Client Name	Street	City	State	Postal Code	Client Type	Services
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	134 Main	Burles	NC	28817	SER	Ad, Ban, Bill
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	867 Ridge	Buda	NC	27032	NON	Ban, Host, N
GF56	Granger Family Foundation	65 Simpson	Granger	NC	27036	NON	Host

Record: 1 of 4 No Filter Search

Figure 5–79

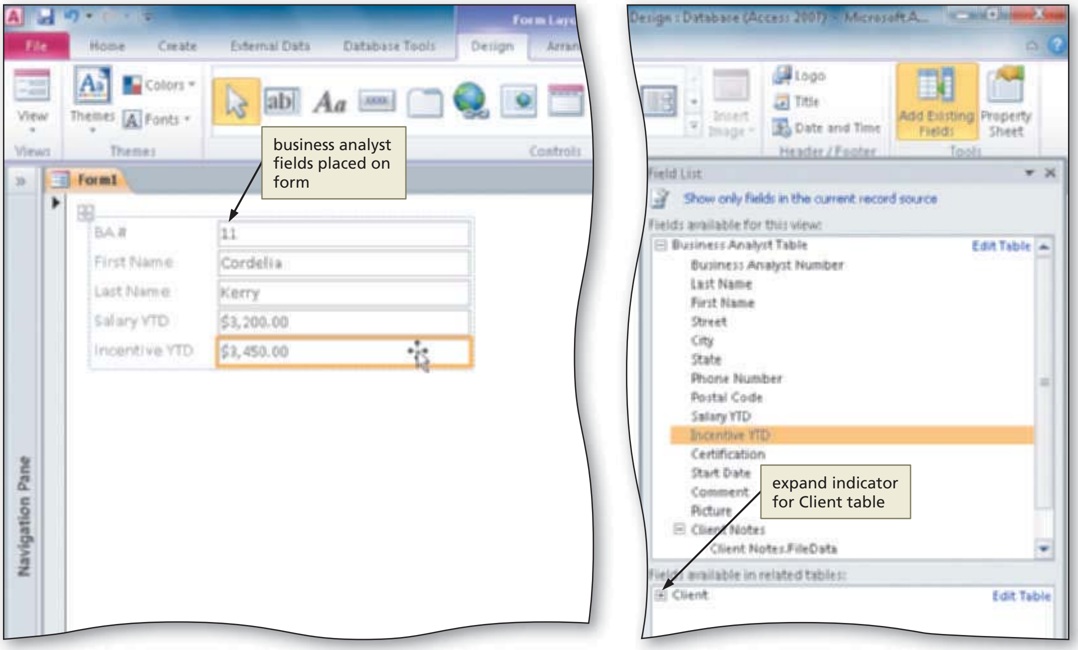
To Create a Simple Form with a Datasheet

To create a simple form with a datasheet, you would use the following steps.

1. Select the table in the Navigation Pane that is the “one” part of a one-to-many relationship.
2. Display the Create tab.
3. Click the Form button (Create tab | Forms group).

Creating a Form with a Datasheet in Layout View

You can create a form with a datasheet in Layout view. To do so, you would first use the field list to add any fields from the “one” table, as shown in Figure 5–80, in which fields from the Business Analyst Table have been added to the form.


Form Layout
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arran
View
Views
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Themes
Controls
Form1
Navigation Pane
Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft A...
Insert Image
Logo
Title
Date and Time
Header / Footer
Add Existing Fields
Property Sheet
Tools

business analyst fields placed on form

BA #	11
First Name	Cordelia
Last Name	Kerry
Salary YTD	$3,200.00
Incentive YTD	$3,450.00

Field List

Show only fields in the current record source

Fields available for this view:

- Business Analyst Table — Edit Table
  - Business Analyst Number
  - Last Name
  - First Name
  - Street
  - City
  - State
  - Phone Number
  - Postal Code
  - Salary YTD
  - Incentive YTD
  - Certification
  - Start Date
  - Comment
  - Picture
  - Client Notes
    - Client Notes.FileData

Fields available in related tables:

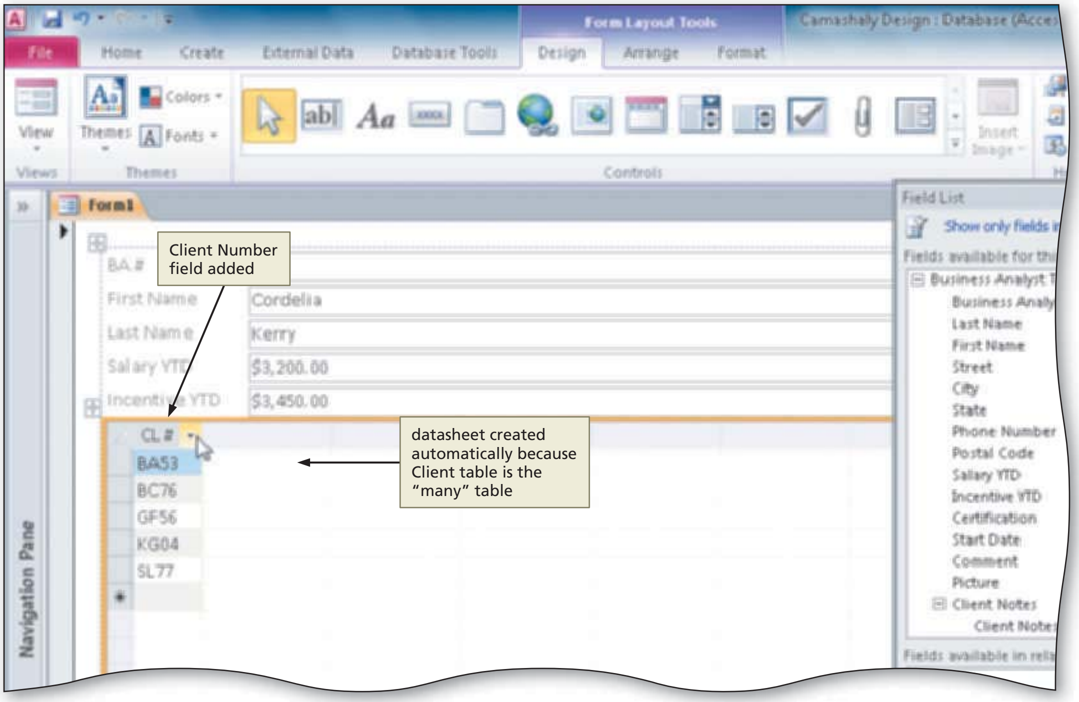
- Client — Edit Table

expand indicator for Client table

Figure 5–80

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Next, you would use the field list to add a single field from the "many" table, as shown in Figure 5–81, in which the Client Number field has been added. Access will automatically create a datasheet containing this field.


Form Layout Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Acces
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
View
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Views
Themes
Controls
Insert Image
Form1
Navigation Pane
Field List
Show only fields i
Fields available for thi
Business Analyst T
Business Analy
Last Name
First Name
Street
City
State
Phone Number
Postal Code
Salary YTD
Incentive YTD
Certification
Start Date
Comment
Picture
Client Notes
Client Note
Fields available in rela

BA #	
First Name	Cordelia
Last Name	Kerry
Salary YTD	$3,200.00
Incentive YTD	$3,450.00

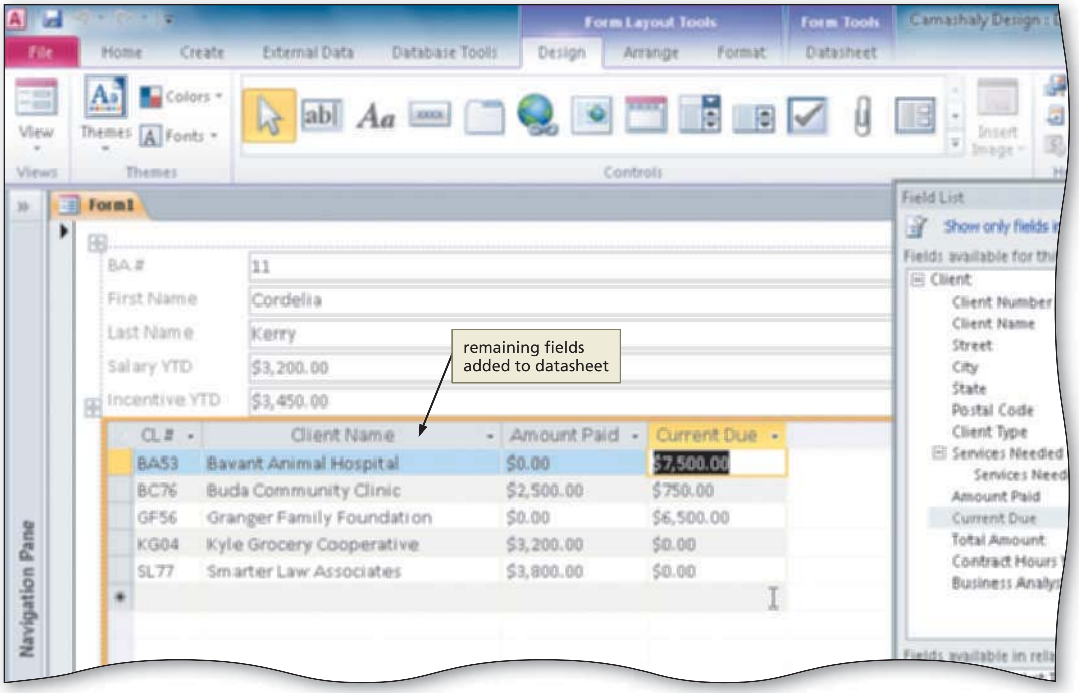
CL #
BA53
BC76
GF56
KG04
SL77

Client Number field added

datasheet created automatically because Client table is the "many" table

Figure 5–81

Finally, you would click the datasheet to select it and then use the field list to add the other fields from the "many" table that you want to be included in the form, as shown in Figure 5–82.


Form Layout Tools
Form Tools
Camashaly Design : D
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Datasheet
View
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Views
Themes
Controls
Insert Image
Form1
Navigation Pane
Field List
Show only fields i
Fields available for thi
Client
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Client Type
Services Needed
Services Need
Amount Paid
Current Due
Total Amount
Contract Hours Y
Business Analy
Fields available in rela

BA #	11
First Name	Cordelia
Last Name	Kerry
Salary YTD	$3,200.00
Incentive YTD	$3,450.00

CL #	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	$0.00	$7,500.00
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	$2,500.00	$750.00
GF56	Granger Family Foundation	$0.00	$6,500.00
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	$3,200.00	$0.00
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	$3,800.00	$0.00

remaining fields added to datasheet

Figure 5–82

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

TO CREATE A FORM WITH A DATASHEET IN LAYOUT VIEW

Specifically, to create a form with a datasheet in Layout view, you would use the following steps.

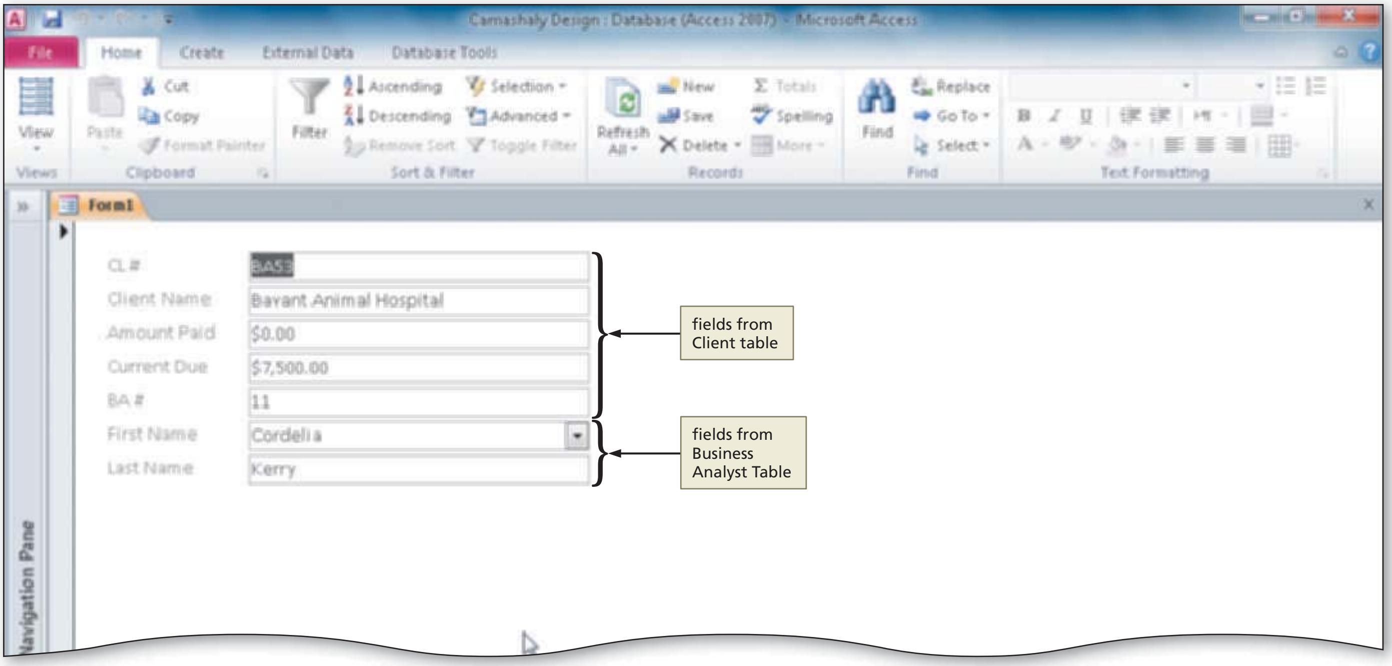
1. Display the Create tab.
2. Click the Blank Form button (Create tab | Forms group) to create a form in Layout view.
3. If a field list does not appear, click the Add Existing Fields button (Form Design Tools Design tab | Tools group) to display a field list.
4. If necessary, click Show all tables to display the available tables.
5. Click the expand indicator (the plus sign) for the "one" table to display the fields in the table and then drag the fields to the desired positions.
6. Click the expand indicator for the "many" table and drag the first field for the datasheet onto the form to create the datasheet.
7. Drag the remaining fields for the datasheet from the field list to the desired locations in the datasheet.

BTW

Certification
The Microsoft Office Specialist (MOS) program provides an opportunity for you to obtain a valuable industry credential – proof that you have the Access 2010 skills required by employers. For more information, visit the Access 2010 Certification Web page (scsite.com/ac2010/cert).

Creating a Multitable Form Based on the Many Table

All the forms discussed so far in this chapter were based on the "one" table, in this case, the Business Analyst Table. The records from the "one" table were included in a subform. You can also create a multitable form based on the "many" table, in this case, the Client table. Such a form is shown in Figure 5–83.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Find
Text Formatting
Form1
Navigation Pane

CL #	BAS3
Client Name	Bavant Animal Hospital
Amount Paid	$0.00
Current Due	$7,500.00
BA #	11
First Name	Cordelia
Last Name	Kerry

fields from Client table

fields from Business Analyst Table

Figure 5–83

In this form, the Client Number, Client Name, Amount Paid, Current Due, and Business Analyst Number fields are in the Client table. The First Name and Last Name fields are found in the Business Analyst Table and are included in the form to help to identify the business analyst whose number appears in the Business Analyst Number field.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

TO CREATE A MULTITABLE FORM BASED ON THE MANY TABLE

To create a multitable form based on the "many" table, you would use the following steps.

1. Click the Blank Form button (Create tab | Forms group) to create a form in Layout view.
2. If a field list does not appear, click the Add Existing Fields button on the Design tab to display a field list.
3. Drag the fields for the "many" table to the desired positions.
4. Drag the fields for the "one" table to the desired positions.

BTW

Quick Reference
For a table that lists how to complete the tasks covered in this book using the mouse, Ribbon, shortcut menu, and keyboard, see the Quick Reference Summary at the back of this book, or visit the Access 2010 Quick Reference Web page (scsite.com/ac2010/qr).

To Quit Access

The following steps quit Access.

① Click the Close button on the right side of the title bar to quit Access.

② If a Microsoft Access dialog box appears, click the Save button to save any changes made to the object since the last save.

Chapter Summary

In this chapter you have learned to use Yes/No, Date/Time, Memo, OLE Object, and Attachment data types; create and use an input mask; create a form and add a subform; enhance the look of the controls on a form; use a form with a subform; create queries involving Yes/No, Date/Time, and Memo fields; view object dependencies; and create forms containing datasheets in Layout view. The items listed below include all the new Access skills you have learned in this chapter.

1. Add Fields with New Data Types to a Table (AC 278)
2. Use the Input Mask Wizard (AC 280)
3. Enter Data Using an Input Mask (AC 283)
4. Enter Data in Yes/No Fields (AC 284)
5. Enter Data in Date/Time Fields (AC 285)
6. Enter Data in Memo Fields (AC 285)
7. Change the Row and Column Size (AC 286)
8. Enter Data in OLE Object Fields (AC 287)
9. Change Picture Field Entries to Bitmap Images (AC 289)
10. Enter Data in Attachment Fields (AC 289)
11. Enter Data in Hyperlink Fields (AC 291)
12. Create a Form in Design View (AC 292)
13. Add a Control for a Field to the Form Design (AC 293)
14. Add Controls for Additional Fields (AC 294)
15. Align Controls on the Left (AC 295)
16. Align Controls on the Top and Adjust Vertical Spacing (AC 296)
17. Move the Field List (AC 297)
18. Add Controls for the Remaining Fields (AC 297)
19. Use a Shortcut Menu to Change the Fill/Back Color (AC 299)
20. Add a Title (AC 301)
21. Place a Subform (AC 301)
22. View the Form (AC 305)
23. Modify a Subform (AC 305)
24. Change a Label (AC 308)
25. Change the Size Mode (AC 309)
26. Change Special Effects and Colors (AC 309)
27. Modify the Appearance of a Form Title (AC 312)
28. Change a Tab Stop (AC 314)
29. Use the Form (AC 315)
30. View Object Dependencies (AC 319)
31. Use Date/Time, Memo, and Yes/No Fields in a Query (AC 320)
32. Create a Simple Form with a Datasheet (AC 323)
33. Create a Form with a Datasheet in Layout View (AC 325)
34. Create a Multitable Form Based on the Many Table (AC 326)

If you have a SAM 2010 user profile, your instructor may have assigned an autogradable version of this assignment. If so, log into the SAM 2010 Web site at www.cengage.com/sam2010 to download the instruction and start files.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Learn It Online

Test your knowledge of chapter content and key terms.

Instructions: To complete the Learn It Online exercises, start your browser, click the Address bar, and then enter the Web address **`scsite.com/ac2010/learn`**. When the Access 2010 Learn It Online page is displayed, click the link for the exercise you want to complete and then read the instructions.

Chapter Reinforcement TF, MC, and SA

A series of true/false, multiple choice, and short answer questions that test your knowledge of the chapter content.

Flash Cards

An interactive learning environment where you identify chapter key terms associated with displayed definitions.

Practice Test

A series of multiple choice questions that test your knowledge of chapter content and key terms.

Who Wants To Be a Computer Genius?

An interactive game that challenges your knowledge of chapter content in the style of a television quiz show.

Wheel of Terms

An interactive game that challenges your knowledge of chapter key terms in the style of the television show *Wheel of Fortune*.

Crossword Puzzle Challenge

A crossword puzzle that challenges your knowledge of key terms presented in the chapter.

Apply Your Knowledge

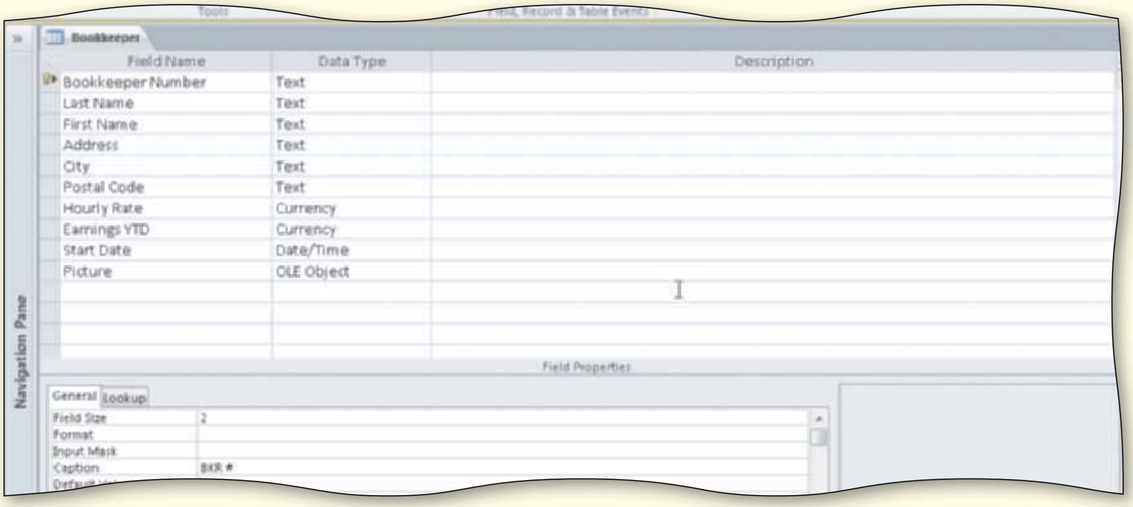
Reinforce the skills and apply the concepts you learned in this chapter.

Adding Date/Time and OLE Fields, Using an Input Mask Wizard, and Querying Date/Time Fields

Instructions: Start Access. If you are using the Microsoft Access 2010 Complete or the Microsoft Access 2010 Comprehensive text, open the Babbage CPA Firm database that you used in Chapter 4. Otherwise, see your instructor for information on accessing the files required in this book.

Perform the following tasks:

1. Add the Start Date and Picture fields to the Bookkeeper table structure, as shown in Figure 5–84. Create an input mask for the Start Date field. Use the Short Date input mask type.



Field Name	Data Type	Description
Bookkeeper Number	Text	
Last Name	Text	
First Name	Text	
Address	Text	
City	Text	
Postal Code	Text	
Hourly Rate	Currency	
Earnings YTD	Currency	
Start Date	Date/Time	
Picture	OLE Object	

Field Size	2
Format	
Input Mask	
Caption	BKR #

Figure 5–84

Continued >

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Apply Your Knowledge *continued*

2. Add the data shown in Table 5–1 to the Bookkeeper table.

Table 5–1 Data for Bookkeeper Table

Bookkeeper Number	Start Date	Picture
22	03/07/2011	Pict1.bmp
24	06/07/2010	Pict2.bmp
34	05/09/2011	Pict3.bmp
38	02/06/2012	Pict4.bmp

3. Query the Bookkeeper table to find all bookkeepers who started after January 1, 2012. Include the Bookkeeper Number, First Name, Last Name, Hourly Rate, and Earnings YTD in the query results. Save the query as Start Date Query.
4. Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

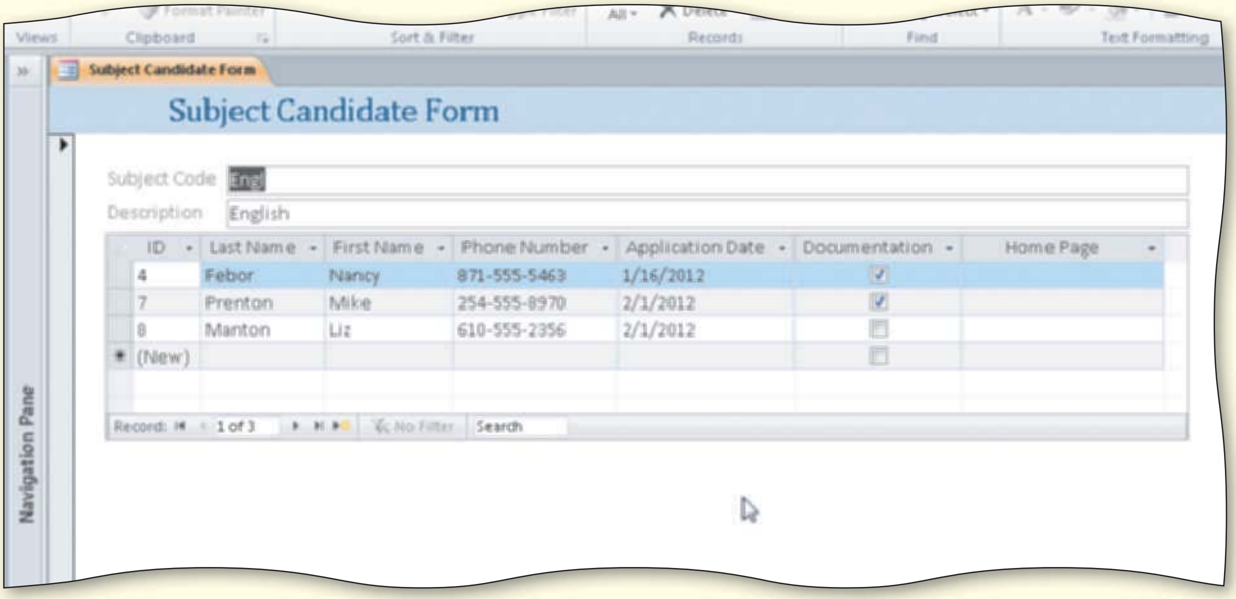
Extend Your Knowledge

Extend the skills you learned in this chapter and experiment with new skills. You may need to use Help to complete the assignment.

Adding Hyperlink Fields and Creating Multitable Forms Using Layout View

Instructions: Start Access. Open the Any School District database. See the inside back cover of this book for instructions on downloading the Data Files for Students, or contact your instructor for more information about accessing the required files.

The Human Resources director at Any School District has several job openings for the two high schools in the district. To keep track of teacher candidates, she created a database. She would like a Hyperlink field added to this database. You will add this field. You also will create the form shown in Figure 5–85.



Subject Candidate Form

Subject Code Engl

Description English

ID	Last Name	First Name	Phone Number	Application Date	Documentation	Home Page
4	Febor	Nancy	871-555-5463	1/16/2012	☑	
7	Prenton	Mike	254-555-8970	2/1/2012	☑	
8	Manton	Liz	610-555-2356	2/1/2012	☐	
(New)					☐	

Figure 5–85

Perform the following tasks:

1. Open the Candidate table in Design view and add a Hyperlink field. Insert the field after the Documentation field. Use Home Page as the name of the field.
2. Open the Candidate table in Datasheet view and add data for the Hyperlink field to the first record. If the teachers at your school have individual Web pages, link to one of those pages. Otherwise, use your school home page as the URL. Resize the column to ensure that the complete URL is visible in the datasheet.
3. Use Layout view to create the multitable form shown in Figure 5–85. The Candidate table appears as a subform in the form. Use Subject Candidate Form as the title and save the form with the same name. Decrease the size of the subform.
4. Create a query for the Candidate table to find all candidates who have not submitted documentation. Include the ID, first name, last name, and phone number in the query results. Save the query as Documentation Query.
5. Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

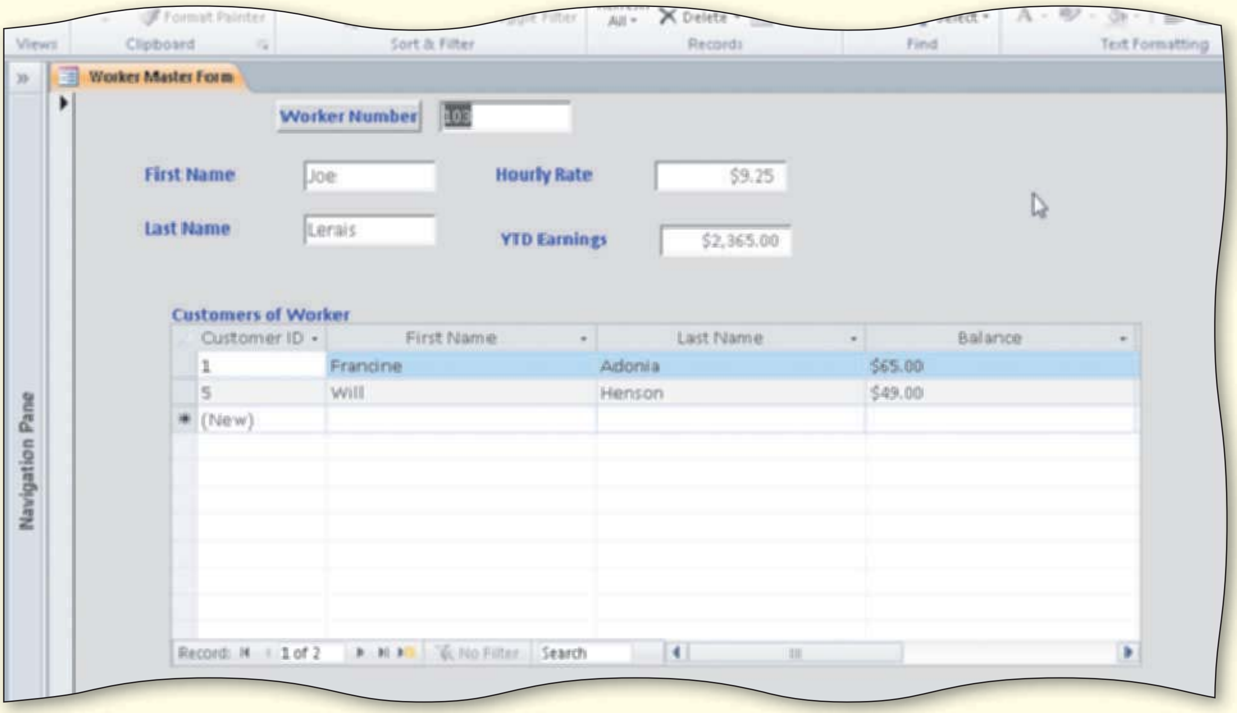
Make It Right

Analyze a database and correct all errors and/or improve the design.

Correcting Form Design Errors

Instructions: Start Access. Open the LawnAndGarden database. See the inside back cover of this book for instructions on downloading the Data Files for Students, or contact your instructor for more information about accessing the required files.

The LawnAndGarden database contains data for a company that provides lawn and gardening services. The owner of the company has created the form shown in Figure 5–86 but he has encountered some problems with modifying the form.



Worker Number 103

First Name Joe

Last Name Lerais

Hourly Rate $9.25

YTD Earnings $2,365.00

Customers of Worker

Customer ID	First Name	Last Name	Balance
1	Francine	Adonia	$65.00
5	Will	Henson	$49.00
(New)			

Figure 5–86

Continued >

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Make It Right *continued*

The Worker Master Form currently has the Raised special effect for the Worker Number label. All labels should have a raised special effect. The Worker Number control has a Sunken special effect. All other controls except the subform also should have the sunken special effect property. The subform is too big and needs to be resized. The Balance and Amount Paid fields should be right-aligned. The Last Name and YTD Earnings controls should be aligned to the top. The Hourly Rate and YTD Earnings labels should be aligned to the left. Finally, the form needs a title. The owner would like the title, Worker Master Form. The title should have a raised appearance, a text alignment of Distribute with a font size of 24, and a font weight of bold.

Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

In the Lab

Design, create, modify, and/or use a database following the guidelines, concepts, and skills presented in this chapter. Labs are listed in order of increasing difficulty.

Lab 1: Adding Fields and Creating Multitable Forms for the ECO Clothesline Database

Problem: ECO Clothesline needs to maintain additional data on each sales rep. The company needs to add the date each rep started as well as notes concerning the sales rep and a picture of the sales rep. The company wants a form that displays sales rep information and the customers for whom they are responsible.

Instructions: If you are using the Microsoft Access 2010 Complete or the Microsoft Access 2010 Comprehensive text, open the ECO Clothesline database that you used in Chapter 4. Otherwise, see the inside back cover of this book for instructions on downloading the Data Files for Students, or contact your instructor for more information about accessing the required files.

Perform the following tasks:

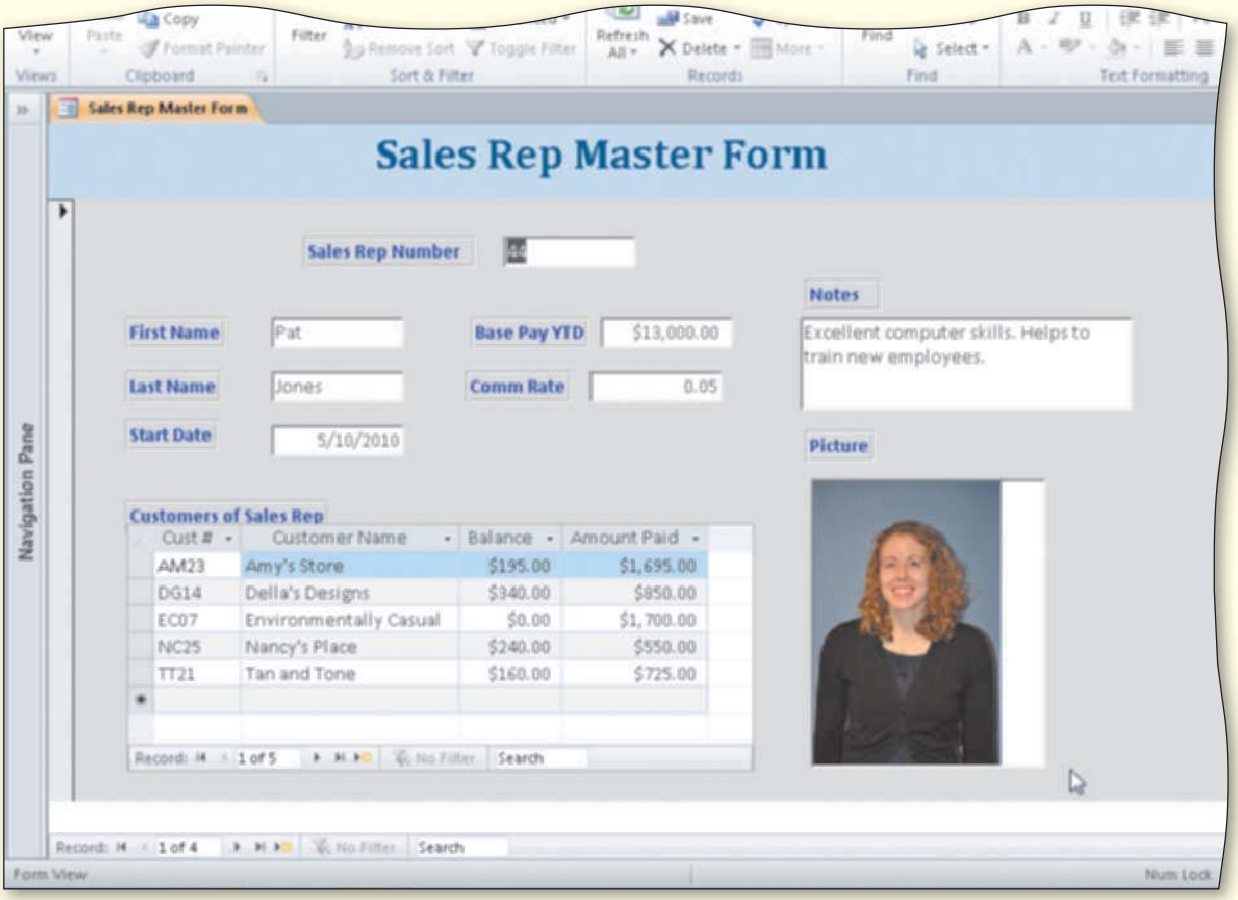
1. Add the Start Date, Notes, and Picture fields to the end of the Sales Rep table. Save the changes to the structure of the table.
2. Add the data shown in Table 5–2 to the Sales Rep table. Adjust the row and column spacing to best fit the data. Save the changes to the layout of the table.

Table 5–2 Data for Sales Rep Table

Sales Rep Number	Start Date	Notes	Picture
44	5/10/2010	Excellent computer skills. Helps to train new employees.	Pict1.bmp
49	6/14/2010	Has a BBA in Marketing. Working on an MBA in Management.	Pict4.bmp
51	5/23/2011	Certified Personal Trainer. Enjoys working with health and fitness centers.	Pict2.bmp
55	1/16/2012	Has an AA degree. Working on a BBA in Management.	Pict3.bmp

3. Create the form shown in Figure 5–87. Use Sales Rep Master Form as the name of the form and Customers of Sales Rep as the name of the subform. Users should not be able to tab through the Picture control. The title is centered with a font size of 24 and a font weight of bold.
4. Query the Sales Rep table to find all sales reps who started before January 1, 2012, and who have computer skills. Include the Sales Rep Number, First Name, Last Name, and Notes fields in the query results. Save the query as Computer Skills Query.
5. Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.


View
Views
Paste
Copy
Format Painter
Clipboard
Filter
Remove Sort
Toggle Filter
Sort & Filter
Refresh All
Save
Delete
More
Records
Find
Select
Find
Text Formatting
Sales Rep Master Form
Navigation Pane
Record: 1 of 5
No Filter
Search
Record: 1 of 4
No Filter
Search
Form View
Num Lock

Sales Rep Master Form

Sales Rep Number	[illegible]		
First Name	Pat	Base Pay YTD	$13,000.00
Last Name	Jones	Comm Rate	0.05
Start Date	5/10/2010		

Notes: Excellent computer skills. Helps to train new employees.

Picture

Customers of Sales Rep

Cust #	Customer Name	Balance	Amount Paid
AM23	Amy's Store	$195.00	$1,695.00
DG14	Della's Designs	$340.00	$850.00
EC07	Environmentally Casual	$0.00	$1,700.00
NC25	Nancy's Place	$240.00	$550.00
TT21	Tan and Tone	$160.00	$725.00

Figure 5–87

In the Lab

Lab 2: Adding Fields and Creating Multitable Forms for the Walburg Energy Alternatives Database

Problem: The management of Walburg Energy Alternatives has found that they need to maintain additional data on suppliers. Management needs to keep track of the last date an order was placed, whether the vendor accepts returns, and whether the vendor allows online ordering. Management also would like to attach to each vendor's record Excel files that contain historical cost data. Walburg Energy Alternatives requires a form that displays information about the vendor as well as the items that are purchased from vendors.

Instructions: If you are using the Microsoft Access 2010 Complete or the Microsoft Access 2010 Comprehensive text, open the Walburg Energy Alternatives database that you used in Chapter 4. Otherwise, see the inside back cover of this book for instructions on downloading the Data Files for Students, or contact your instructor for more information about accessing the required files.

Perform the following tasks:

1. Add the fields Last Order Date, Returns, Online Ordering, and Cost History to the end of the Vendor table structure. Last Order Date is a Date/Time field, Returns and Online Ordering are Yes/No fields, and Cost History is an Attachment field. Create an input mask for the Last Order Date that uses the Short Date input mask.

Continued >

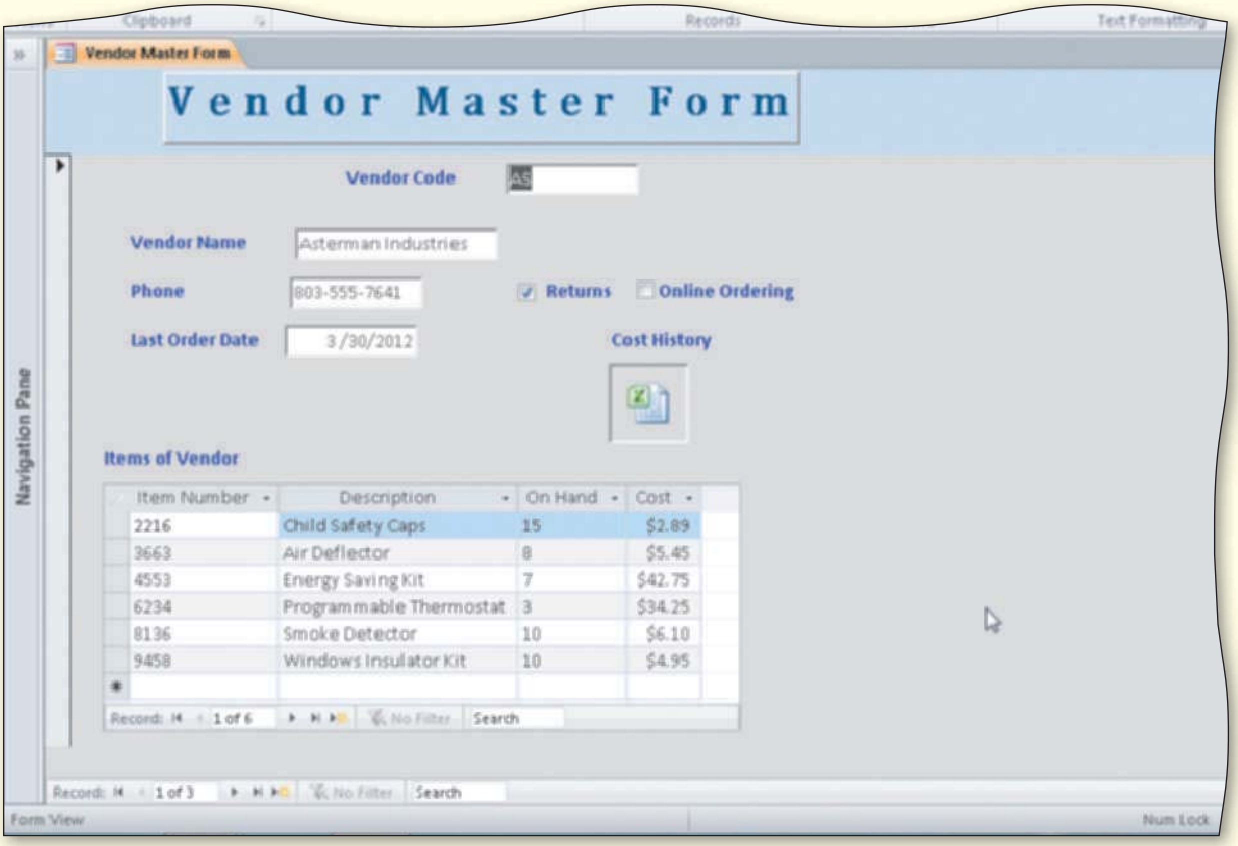
In the Lab *continued*

2. Add the data shown in Table 5–3 to the Vendor table.

Table 5–3 Data for Vendor Table

Vendor Code	Last Order Date	Returns	Online Ordering	Cost History
AS	3/30/2012	Yes	No	AS_History.xlsx
JM	3/26/2012	No	Yes	JM_History.xlsx
SD	4/4/2012	Yes	Yes	SD_History.xlsx

3. Create the form shown in Figure 5–88. Use Vendor Master Form as the name of the form and Items of Vendor as the name of the subform. The title is raised, semi-bold, and distributed with a font size of 24. The labels are blue, bold, and etched with a transparent border style. The fields have a sunken special effect.



Vendor Code: AS

Vendor Name: Asterman Industries

Phone: 803-555-7641

☑ Returns ☐ Online Ordering

Last Order Date: 3/30/2012

Items of Vendor

Item Number	Description	On Hand	Cost
2216	Child Safety Caps	15	$2.89
3663	Air Deflector	8	$5.45
4553	Energy Saving Kit	7	$42.75
6234	Programmable Thermostat	3	$34.25
8136	Smoke Detector	10	$6.10
9458	Windows Insulator Kit	10	$4.95

Record: 1 of 6 No Filter Search

Record: 1 of 3 No Filter Search

Figure 5–88

4. Open the Vendor Master Form and then open the cost history for Asterman Industries. Change the previous cost for item 4553 to $40.95. Save the change to the workbook.
5. Query the Vendor table to find all vendors that accept returns and allow online ordering. Include the Vendor Code and Name in the query results. Save the query as Returns-Online Query.
6. Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

In the Lab

Lab 3: Adding Fields and Creating Multitable Forms for the Philamar Training Database

Problem: The management of Philamar Training needs to maintain additional data on trainers. Management needs to store the date the trainer started, comments about each trainer, whether the trainer has MOS certification, and a picture of the trainer. Management wants a form that displays trainer information and the clients they represent.

Instructions: If you are using the Microsoft Access 2010 Complete or the Microsoft Access 2010 Comprehensive text, open the Philamar Training database that you used in Chapter 4. Otherwise, see the inside back cover of this book for instructions on downloading the Data Files for Students, or contact your instructor for more information about accessing the required files. Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

Instructions Part 1: Add the Start Date, Notes, MOS Certification, and Picture fields to the Trainer table and then add the data shown in Table 5–4 to the Trainer table. Be sure the datasheet displays the entire comment.

Table 5–4 Data for Trainer Table

Trainer Number	Start Date	Notes	Mos Certification	Picture
42	5/10/2010	Has done corporate training for 5 years.	Yes	Pict1.bmp
48	10/11/2010	Specialist in database design and development.	No	Pict2.bmp
53	4/25/2011	Teaches computing courses at the community college.	Yes	Pict4.bmp
67	1/4/2012	Previous elementary school teacher.	No	Pict3.bmp

Instructions Part 2: Create a form for the Trainer table that is similar in design to the form shown in Figure 5–1 on page AC 275. Include all fields from the Trainer table except Address, City, State, and Postal Code. Include the Client Number, Client Name, Amount Paid, and Current Due fields from the Client table in the Clients of Trainer subform. Users should not be able to tab to the Picture field and should tab to the Notes field before the MOS Certification field. Save the form as Trainer Master Form.

Instructions Part 3: Find all trainers that have MOS certification and started before January 1, 2011. Include the Trainer Number, First Name, and Last Name fields in the query result. Save the query as Certification Query.

Cases and Places

Apply your creative thinking and problem solving skills to design and implement a solution.

See the inside back cover of this book for instructions for downloading the Data Files for Students, or see your instructor for information on accessing the required files.

1: Adding Fields and Creating Multitable Forms for the Chamber of Commerce Database

Academic

If you are using the Microsoft Access 2010 Complete or the Microsoft Access 2010 Comprehensive text, open the Chamber of Commerce database that you used in Chapter 4. Otherwise, see your instructor for more information about accessing the required files.

Continued >

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

As part of your internship with the Chamber of Commerce, you worked temporarily as an ad rep when one of the reps was on vacation. This provided an opportunity to learn more about the marketing strategies of some of the advertisers. Now the Chamber has asked you to do some additional database work. Use the concepts and techniques presented in this chapter to perform each of the following tasks:

a. Add the Phone Number, Start Date, and Comment fields to the Ad Rep table. Place the Phone Number field after the Postal Code field and use an input mask of your choosing for both the Phone Number and the Start Date fields. Place the Start Date and Comment fields at the end of the table. Add the data shown in Table 5–5 to the Ad Rep table. Be sure the datasheet displays the entire comment.

Table 5–5 Data for Ad Rep Table

Ad Rep Number	Phone Number	Start Date	Comment
22	215-555-1234	10/4/2010	Excellent copy editor.
29	610-555-2345	3/11/2011	Records radio advertisements for chamber.
32	215-555-8976	9/12/2011	Also works as a freelance journalist.
35	610-555-6578	3/15/2012	Semi-retired with extensive sales experience.

b. Create an Ad Rep Master Form for the Ad Rep table that is similar in design to the form shown in Figure 5–1 on page AC 275. Include all fields from Ad Rep table except Address, City, and Postal Code. Include an Advertisers of Ad Rep subform that includes the advertiser number, advertiser name, advertiser type, balance, and amount paid.

c. Create an Advertiser Update form for the Advertiser table. Include the advertiser number, advertiser name, balance, amount paid, advertiser type, and ad rep number. Include the first name and last name from the Ad Rep table. Users should not be able to change the ad rep name data.

Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

2: Creating Multitable Forms for the Consignment Database

Personal

If you are using the Microsoft Access 2010 Complete or the Microsoft Access 2010 Comprehensive text, open the Consignment database that you used in Chapter 4. Otherwise, see your instructor for more information about accessing the required files. Because many individuals volunteer at the consignment shop, you have been asked to simplify the task of entering data on sellers. Use the concepts and techniques presented in this chapter to perform each of the following tasks:

a. Create a Seller Master Form for the Seller table that is similar in design to the form shown in Figure 5–1 on page AC 275. Include all fields in the Seller table on the form. The Items of Seller subform should display all fields in the Items table except Seller Code. Customize the form by adding special effects to controls and labels as well as changing the background color of the form. Add the current date to the form header.

b. Create a query for the Items table to find all items posted during the month of March. Include the Item Number, Description, and Date Posted fields in the query results. Save the query as March Items Query.

Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

3: Adding Fields and Creating Multitable Forms for the Senior Care Database

Professional

If you are using the Microsoft Access 2010 Complete or the Microsoft Access 2010 Comprehensive text, open the Senior Care database that you used in Chapter 4. Otherwise, see your instructor for more information about accessing the required files. You and your co-owner have decided that you need

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

to add some additional data to the Helper table. Use the concepts and techniques presented in this chapter to perform each of the following tasks:

a. Add a Phone Number and a Comment field to the Helper table. Add the Phone Number field after the First Name field. Create an input mask of your choosing for the Phone Number field. Add the Comment field to the end of the table. Change the Text Format property for the Comment field to Rich Text and the Append Only property to Yes.

b. Add the data shown in Table 5–6 to the Helper table. Make sure all data appears in the datasheet.

Table 5–6 Data for Helper Table

Helper Number	Phone Number	Comment
203	803-555-3456	Has previous nursing home experience.
205	704-555-9876	Speaks Spanish. Has an AA degree.
207	704-555-2341	Excellent organizational skills.
209	803-555-4554	Has a chauffer's license.

c. Create a Helper Master Form for the Helper table. Include all fields from the Helper table. Include a Clients of Helper subform that includes the client number, client first name and last name, amount paid, and balance. Use your own design specifications for the form.

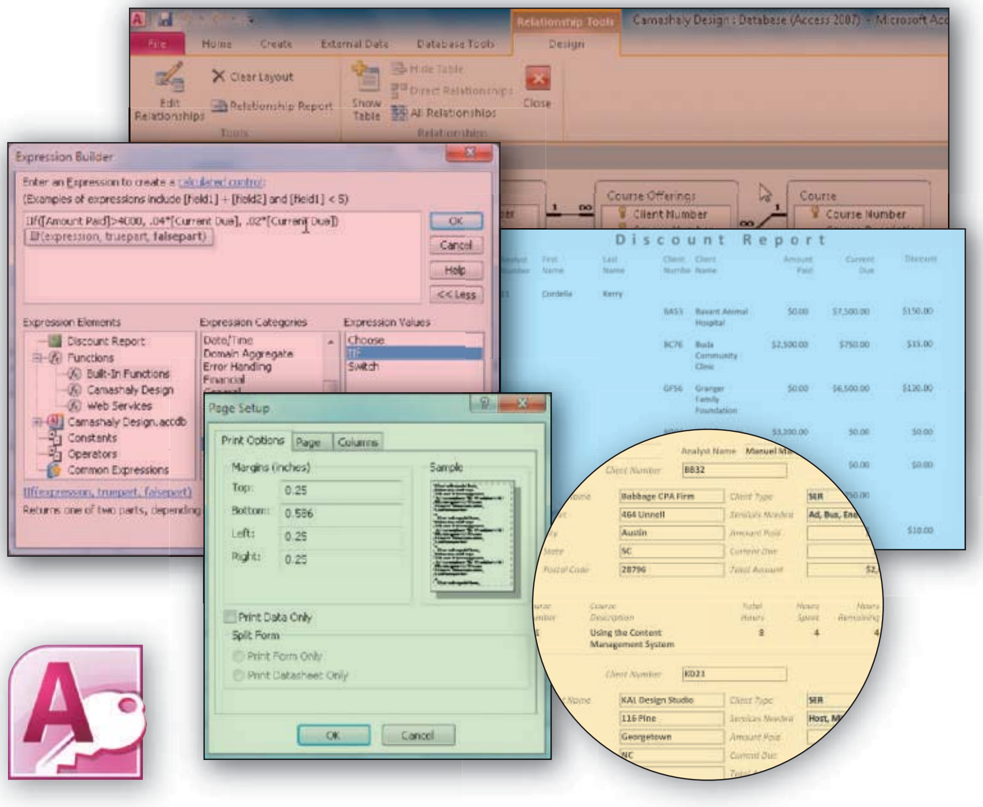
d. Open the Helper Master Form and bold the word Spanish in the Comment field for helper 205. Add the following sentence to the Comment field for helper 207: Working on an AA degree. Be sure the complete comment for helper 207 displays in the datasheet.

e. Create a query that finds all clients who need hygiene services and have a helper who speaks Spanish. Include the client number, client first and last names, helper number, and helper last name in the query results. Save the query as Hygiene-Spanish Query.

Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

6 Advanced Report Techniques


Relationship Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Acc
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Edit Relationships
Clear Layout
Relationship Report
Show Table
Hide Table
Direct Relationships
All Relationships
Close
Expression Builder
OK
Cancel
Help
<< Less
Expression Elements
Expression Categories
Expression Values
Discount Report
Page Setup
Print Options
Page
Columns
Margins (inches)
Sample
Print Data Only
Course Offerings
Client Number
Course
Course Number
Discount Report

Objectives

You will have mastered the material in this project when you can:

- Create and relate additional tables
- Create queries for reports
- Create reports in Design view
- Add fields and text boxes to a report
- Format report controls
- Group and ungroup report controls
- Update multiple report controls
- Add and modify a subreport
- Modify section properties
- Add a title, page number, and date
- Preview, print, and publish a report
- Add totals and subtotals
- Include a conditional value in a report

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

6 Advanced Report Techniques

Introduction

BTW **Q&As**
For a complete list of the Q&As found in many of the step-by-step sequences in this book, visit the Access 2010 Q&A Web page (scsite.com/ac2010/qa).

In this chapter, you will create two reports in Design view. Both reports feature grouping and sorting. The first report contains a subreport, which is a report that is contained within another report. The subreport contains data from a query and is related to data in the main report. The second report uses aggregate functions to calculate subtotals and grand totals. It also uses a function to calculate a value where the calculation will vary from record to record depending on whether a given criterion is true.

Project — Advanced Report Techniques

BTW **BTWs**
For a complete list of the BTWs found in the margins of this book, visit the Access 2010 BTW Web page (scsite.com/ac2010/btw).

BTW **The Ribbon and Screen Resolution**
Access may change how the groups and buttons within the groups appear on the Ribbon, depending on the computer's screen resolution. Thus, your Ribbon may look different from the ones in this book if you are using a screen resolution other than 1024 × 768.

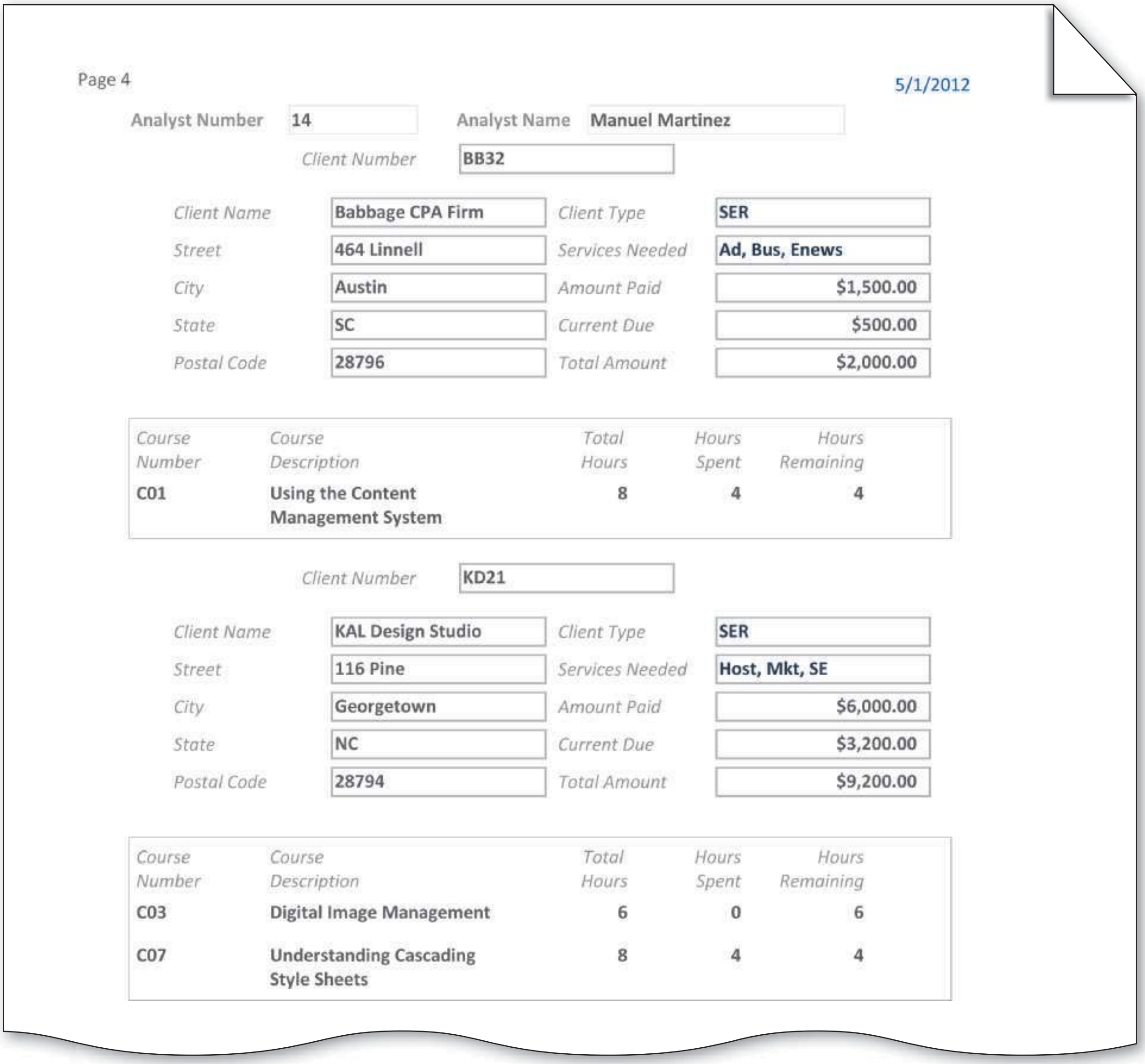
The owners of Camashaly Design want a master list of business analysts. This list should be available as an Access report. For each business analyst, the report is to include full details for all the clients assigned to the business analyst. In addition, Camashaly offers a range of educational courses designed to help clients understand the various marketing tools available to them. For clients who are taking courses, the report should list the specific courses being offered to the client. The actual report is shown in Figure 6–1a. The report is organized by business analyst, with the data for each analyst beginning on a new page. For each business analyst, the report lists the number, first name, and last name. Following the business analyst number and name, the report lists data for each client served by that business analyst. The client data includes the number, name, street, city, state, postal code, client type, services needed, amount paid, current due, and total amount. For each course the client is taking, the report lists the course number, description, total hours the course requires, hours already spent, and hours remaining.

Many organizations offer discounts as a way of rewarding current clients and attracting new clients. The owners of Camashaly are considering offering a discount on the current due amount to its current clients. The exact amount of the discount depends on how much the client already has paid. If the amount paid is more than $4,000, the discount will be 4% of the current due amount. If the amount paid is $4,000 or less, then the discount will be 2% of the current due amount. To assist in determining the discount, Camashaly needs a report like the one shown in Figure 6–1b on page AC 340. The report groups clients by business analyst. It includes subtotals of both the Amount Paid and Current Due fields. Also, although not visible in the figure, it includes grand totals of both fields at the end of the report. Finally, it shows the discount amount, which is calculated by multiplying the current due amount by .04 (4%) for those clients for whom the amount paid is more than $4,000 and by .02 (2%) for all others.

Overview

As you read through this chapter, you will learn how to create the reports by performing these general tasks:

- Create and relate additional tables.
- Create queries for a report.
- Create a report, specify grouping and sorting, and add fields and text boxes to the report.
- Add a subreport to the report.
- Add a title, page number, and date to the report.
- Print and publish a report.
- Create a second report, specify grouping and sorting, and add fields and text boxes to the report.
- Add totals and subtotals to the report, and add a text box that uses a function.



Page 4 5/1/2012

Analyst Number 14 Analyst Name Manuel Martinez

Client Number BB32

Client Name	Babbage CPA Firm	Client Type	SER
Street	464 Linnell	Services Needed	Ad, Bus, Enews
City	Austin	Amount Paid	$1,500.00
State	SC	Current Due	$500.00
Postal Code	28796	Total Amount	$2,000.00

Course Number	Course Description	Total Hours	Hours Spent	Hours Remaining
C01	Using the Content Management System	8	4	4

Client Number KD21

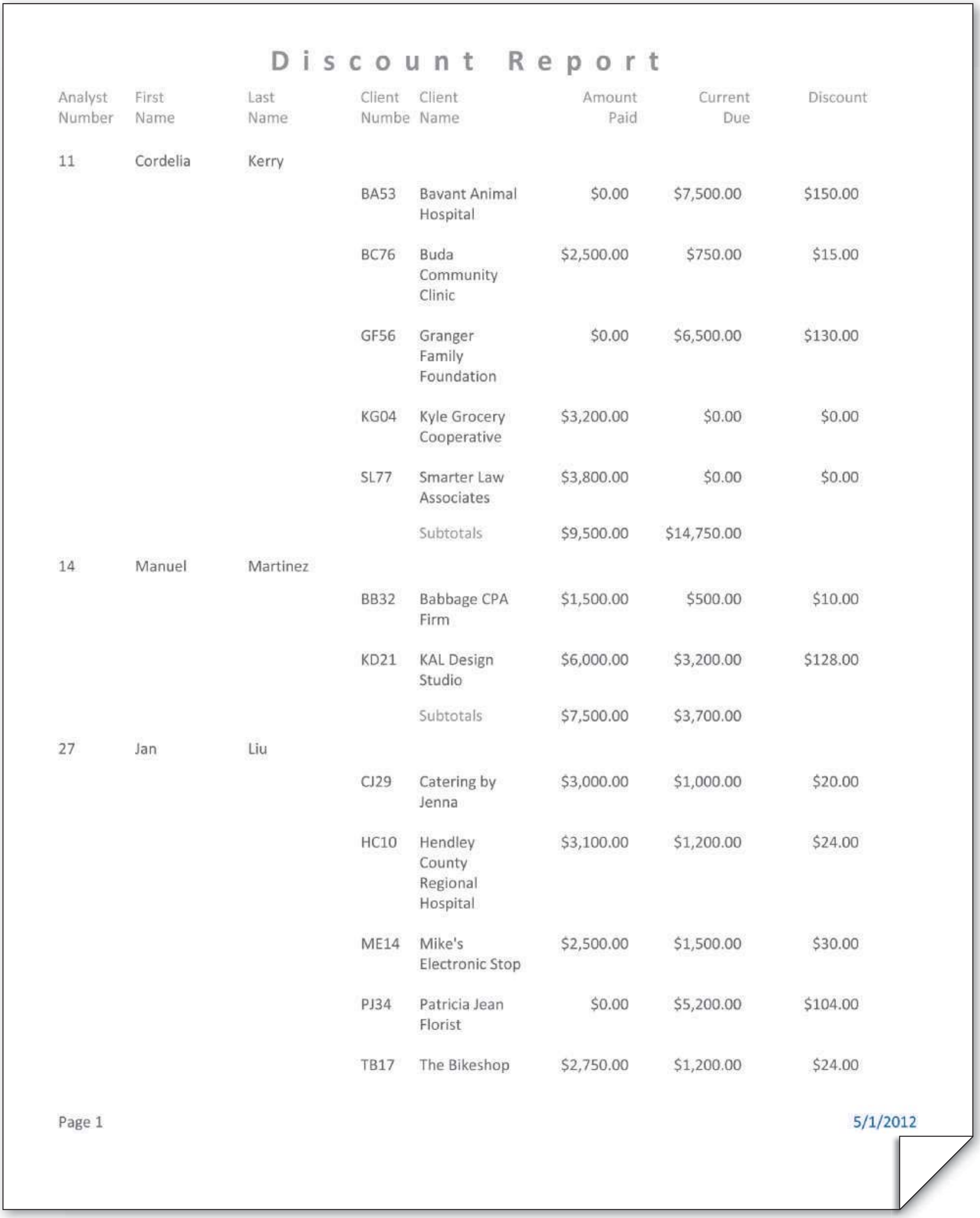
Client Name	KAL Design Studio	Client Type	SER
Street	116 Pine	Services Needed	Host, Mkt, SE
City	Georgetown	Amount Paid	$6,000.00
State	NC	Current Due	$3,200.00
Postal Code	28794	Total Amount	$9,200.00

Course Number	Course Description	Total Hours	Hours Spent	Hours Remaining
C03	Digital Image Management	6	0	6
C07	Understanding Cascading Style Sheets	8	4	4

(a) Business Analyst Master List – Page 4

Figure 6–1

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.



Discount Report

Analyst Number	First Name	Last Name	Client Numbe	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due	Discount
11	Cordelia	Kerry					
			BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	$0.00	$7,500.00	$150.00
			BC76	Buda Community Clinic	$2,500.00	$750.00	$15.00
			GF56	Granger Family Foundation	$0.00	$6,500.00	$130.00
			KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	$3,200.00	$0.00	$0.00
			SL77	Smarter Law Associates	$3,800.00	$0.00	$0.00
				Subtotals	$9,500.00	$14,750.00	
14	Manuel	Martinez					
			BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	$1,500.00	$500.00	$10.00
			KD21	KAL Design Studio	$6,000.00	$3,200.00	$128.00
				Subtotals	$7,500.00	$3,700.00	
27	Jan	Liu					
			CJ29	Catering by Jenna	$3,000.00	$1,000.00	$20.00
			HC10	Hendley County Regional Hospital	$3,100.00	$1,200.00	$24.00
			ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	$2,500.00	$1,500.00	$30.00
			PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	$0.00	$5,200.00	$104.00
			TB17	The Bikeshop	$2,750.00	$1,200.00	$24.00

Page 1

5/1/2012

(b) Discount Report

Figure 6 – 1

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Plan Ahead

Report Design Guidelines

When designing a report, the requirements of the users and the decisions you make will affect the appearance of the report. As you create reports and subreports, such as the ones shown in Figure 6–1, you should follow these general guidelines:

1. **Determine the intended audience and purpose of the report.** Identify the user or users of the report and determine how they will use it. Specify the necessary data and level of detail to include in the report.
2. **Determine the source of data for the report.** Determine whether all the data is in a single table or whether it comes from multiple related tables. The data may be found in a query. You might need to create multiple reports for a query where the criterion for a field changes, in which case, you would use a parameter query and enter the criterion when you run the report. If the data comes from multiple related tables, you might want to create a query and use the query as a source of data.
3. **Determine the fields that belong on the report.** Identify the data items that are needed by the user of the report.
4. **Determine the organization of the report.** The report may be enhanced by displaying the fields in a particular order and arranged in a certain way. Should the records in the report be grouped in some way? Should the report contain any subreports?
5. **Determine any calculations required for the report.** Should the report contain totals or subtotals? Are there any special calculations? If so, you may need to include functions to handle calculations. For example, the Business Analyst Master List contains a Total Amount field that is calculated by adding the contents of the Amount Paid field and the Current Due field. The Discount Report contains a Discount field, which is calculated by multiplying the amount in the Current Due field by 4% if the amount in the Amount Paid field is greater than $4,000 and by 2% otherwise.
6. **Determine the format and style of the report.** What information should be in the report heading? Do you want a title and date, for example? Do you want a logo? What should be in the body of the report? What should the style be? In other words, what visual characteristics should the various portions of the report have? Does the organization have specific style requirements for reports?

When necessary, more specific details concerning the above decisions and/or actions are presented at appropriate points in the chapter. The chapter also will identify the use of these guidelines in the design of the reports such as the ones shown in Figure 6–1.

To Start Access

The following steps, which assume Windows 7 is running, start Access based on a typical installation. You may need to ask your instructor how to start Access for your computer.

① Click the Start button on the Windows 7 taskbar to display the Start menu.

② Type `Microsoft Access` as the search text in the 'Search programs and files' text box and watch the search results appear on the Start menu.

③ Click Microsoft Access 2010 in the search results on the Start menu to start Access.

④ If the Access window is not maximized, click the Maximize button next to the Close button on its title bar to maximize the window.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Open a Database from Access

The following steps open the Camashaly Design database from the Access folder in the CIS 101 folder on the USB flash drive.

1. With your USB flash drive connected to one of the computer's USB ports, click File on the Ribbon to open the Backstage view.
2. Click Open in the Backstage view to display the Open dialog box.
3. Navigate to the location of the file to be opened (in this case, the USB flash drive, then to the CIS 101 folder [or your class folder], and then to the Access folder).
4. Click Camashaly Design to select the file to be opened.
5. Click the Open button (Open dialog box) to open the selected file and display the opened database in the Access window.
6. If a Security Warning appears, click the Enable Content option button.

BTW

Copy the Structure of a Table

If you want to create a table that has a structure similar to an existing table, you can copy the structure of the table only. Select the table in the Navigation Pane and click Copy, then click Paste. In the Paste Table As dialog box, type the new table name and click the Structure Only option button. Then, click the OK button. To modify the new table, open it in Design view.

Additional Tables

Because the business analysts at Camashaly work collaboratively with clients, they are frequently asked to present courses on various Internet and Web development topics. Camashaly would like to incorporate this data in the Camashaly Design database.

Before creating the reports, you need to create two additional tables for the Camashaly Design database. The first table, Course, is shown in Tables 6–1a and 6–1b. As described in Table 6–1a, each course has a number and a description. The table also includes the total hours for which the course usually is offered and its increments; that is, the standard time blocks in which the course usually is offered. Table 6–1b contains the specific courses that the business analysts at Camashaly Design offer to their clients. The first row, for example, indicates that course C01 is called Using the Content Management System. It typically is offered in two-hour increments for a total of eight hours.

BTW

Many-to-Many Relationships

There is a many-to-many relationship between the Client table and the Course table. To implement a many-to-many relationship in a relational database management system such as Access, you create a third table, often called a junction or intersection table, that has as its primary key the combination of the primary keys of each of the tables involved in the many-to-many relationship. The primary key of the Course Offerings table is the combination of the Client Number and the Course Number fields.

Table 6–1a Structure of Course Table

Field Name	Data Type	Field Size	Comments
Course Number	Text	3	Primary Key
Course Description	Text	40	
Hours	Number	Integer	
Increments	Number	Integer	

Table 6–1b Course Table

Course Number	Course Description	Hours	Increments
C01	Using the Content Management System	8	2
C02	HTML Basics	4	1
C03	Digital Image Management	6	3
C04	JavaScript Basics	12	3
C05	Understanding Social Networks	2	2
C06	Using Shopping Carts	4	2
C07	Understanding Cascading Style Sheets	8	2
C08	Podcasting	6	3

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

The second table is Table 6–2a, Course Offerings, which contains a client number, a course number, the total number of hours that the course is scheduled for the client, and the number of hours already spent in the course. The primary key of the Course Offerings table is a combination of the Client Number and Course Number fields.

Table 6–2b gives the data for the Course Offerings table. For example, the first record shows that client number BA53 currently has scheduled course C05 (Understanding Social Networks). The course is scheduled for 2 hours, and they have not yet spent any hours in class.

If you examine the data in Table 6–2b, you see that the Client Number field cannot be the primary key for the Course Offerings table. The fourth and fifth records, for example, both have a client number of HC10. The Course Number field also cannot be the primary key. The first and fifth records, for example, both have course number C05. Rather, the primary key is the combination of both Client Number and Course Number.

Table 6–2a Structure of Course Offerings Table

Field Name	Data Type	Field Size	Description
Client Number	Text	4	Part of Primary Key
Course Number	Text	3	Part of Primary Key
Total Hours	Number	Integer	
Hours Spent	Number	Integer	

Table 6–2b Course Offerings Table

Client Number	Course Number	Total Hours	Hours Spent
BA53	C05	2	0
BB32	C01	8	4
CJ29	C03	6	3
HC10	C04	12	6
HC10	C05	2	1
KD21	C03	6	0
KD21	C07	8	4
KG04	C01	8	6
KG04	C05	2	0
KG04	C08	6	4
ME14	C06	4	2
PJ34	C06	4	2
SL77	C04	12	9
SL77	C08	6	2
TB17	C02	4	2

BTW

AutoNumber Field as Primary Key
When you create a table in Datasheet view, Access automatically creates an ID field with the AutoNumber data type as the primary key field. As you add records to the table, Access increments the ID field so that each record will have a unique value in the field. AutoNumber fields are useful when there is no data field in a table that is a suitable primary key.

To Create the New Tables

You can create new Access tables in either Datasheet view or Design view. In Design view, you define the structure of the tables. The steps to create the new tables are similar to the steps you used previously to add fields to an existing table and to define primary keys. The only difference is the way you specify a primary key consisting of more than one field. First, you select both fields that make up the primary key by clicking the row selector for the first field, and then hold down the SHIFT key while clicking the row selector for the second field. Once the fields are selected, you can use the Primary Key button to indicate that the primary key consists of both fields.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

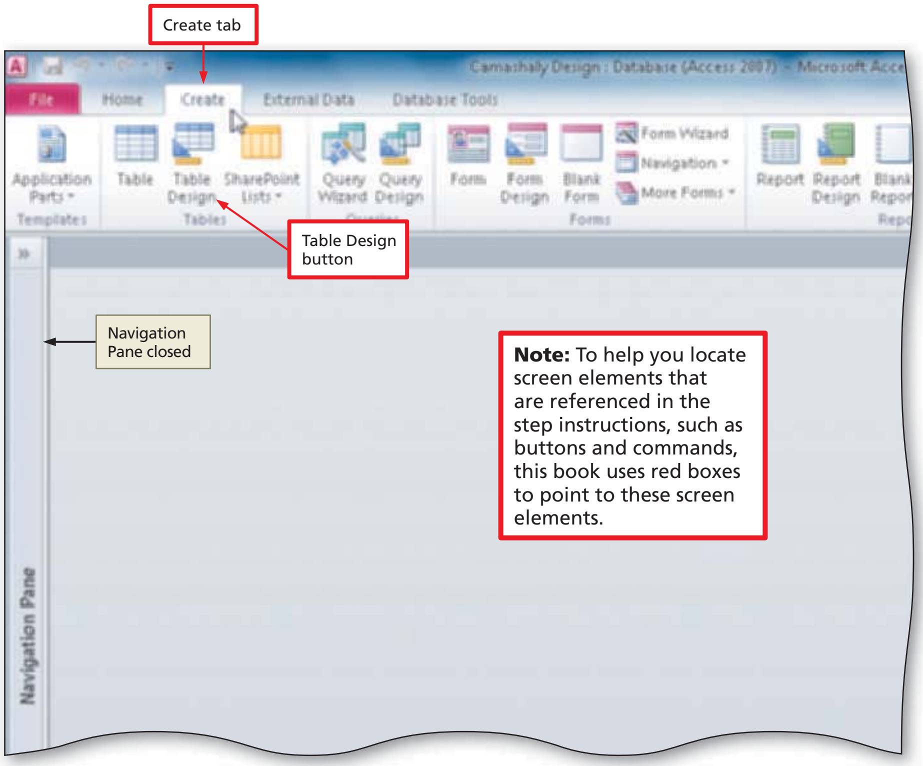
The following steps create the tables in Design view.

1

- If necessary, close the Navigation Pane.
- Display the Create tab (Figure 6–2).

2

- Click the Table Design button (Create tab | Tables group) to create a table in Design view.
- Enter the information for the fields in the Course table as indicated in Table 6–1a on page AC 342, selecting Course Number as the primary key.
- Save the table using the name `Course` and close the table.

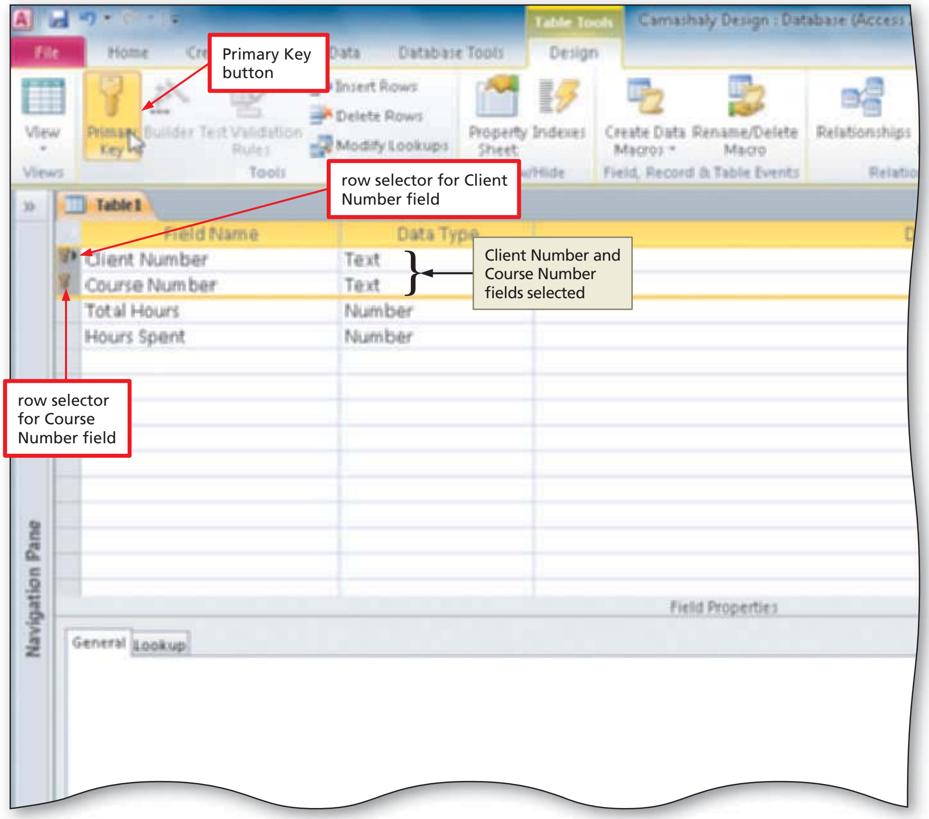

Create tab
Table Design button
Navigation Pane closed
Navigation Pane

Note: To help you locate screen elements that are referenced in the step instructions, such as buttons and commands, this book uses red boxes to point to these screen elements.

Figure 6–2

3

- Display the Create tab and then click the Table Design button (Create tab | Tables group) to create a second table in Design view.
- Enter the information for the fields in the Course Offerings table as indicated in Table 6–2a on page AC 343.
- Click the row selector for the Client Number field.
- Hold down the SHIFT key and then click the row selector for the Course Number field so both fields are selected.
- Click the Primary Key button (Table Tools Design tab | Tools group) to select the combination of the two fields as the primary key (Figure 6–3).


Primary Key button
row selector for Client Number field
Client Number and Course Number fields selected
row selector for Course Number field
Navigation Pane
Field Properties
General
Lookup

Field Name	Data Type
Client Number	Text
Course Number	Text
Total Hours	Number
Hours Spent	Number

Figure 6–3

4

- Save the table using the name `Course Offerings` and close the table.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Import the Data

Now that the tables have been created, you need to add data to them. You could enter the data manually, or if the data is already in electronic form, you could import the data. The data for the Course and Course Offerings tables is included in the Data Files for Students. The files are text files formatted as delimited files. The Course data is in a tab-delimited text (.txt) file, and the Course Offerings data is in a comma-separated values (.csv) file. The following steps import the data.

1. With the Camashaly Design database open, display the External Data tab and then click the Text File button (External Data tab | Import & Link group) to display the Get External Data – Text File dialog box.
2. Click the Browse button (Get External Data – Text File dialog box) and select the location of the file to be imported (for example, the folder called AccessData on drive F:). Select the Course file and click the Open button.
3. Select the 'Append a copy of records to the table' option button, select the Course table from the drop-down list, and then click the OK button. With the Delimited option button selected, click the Next button.
4. With the Tab option button selected, click the 'First Row Contains Field Names' check box, click the Next button, and then click the Finish button.
5. Click the Close button to close the Get External Data – Text Box dialog box without saving the import steps.
6. Use the technique shown in Steps 1 through 5 to import the Course Offerings.csv file into the Course Offerings table. Be sure the Comma option button is selected and there is a check mark in the 'First Row Contains Field Names' check box.

Q&A

I got an error message after I clicked the Finish button that indicated there were errors. The data was not imported. What should I do?

First, click the Cancel button to terminate the process. Then, review the structure of the table in Design view to ensure that the field names are all spelled correctly and that the data types are correct. Correct any errors you find, save your work, and then redo the steps to import the data.

BTW

Importing and Linking Files
You can import and link Excel workbooks, Access databases, ODBC databases such as SQL Server, text files, SharePoint lists, HTML documents, Outlook folders, and dBASE files. You can import but not link XML files.

Linking versus Importing

When an external table or worksheet is imported, or converted, into an Access database, a copy of the data is placed in a table in the database. The original data still exists, just as it did before, but no further connection exists between it and the data in the database. Changes to the original data do not affect the data in the database. Likewise, changes in the database do not affect the original data.

It also is possible to link data stored in a variety of formats to Access databases. To do so, you would select the 'Link to the data source by creating a linked table' option button when importing data, rather than the 'Import the source data into a new table in the current database' or 'Append a copy of the records to the table' option buttons. With linking, the connection is maintained; changes made to the data in the external table or worksheet affect the Access table.

To identify that a table is linked to other data, Access displays an arrow in front of the table in the Navigation Pane. In addition, an icon is displayed in front of the name that indicates the type of file to which the data is linked. For example, an Excel icon in front of the name indicates that the table is linked to an Excel worksheet.

BTW

Linking
Two of the primary reasons to link data from another program to Access are to use the query and report features of Access. When you link an Access database to data in another program, all changes to the data must be made in the source program. For example, if you link an Excel workbook to an Access database, you cannot edit the linked table in Access. You must make all changes to the data in Excel.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

The Linked Table Manager

After you link tables between a worksheet and a database or between two databases, you can modify many of the linked table's features. For example, you can rename the linked table, set view properties, and set links between tables in queries. If you move, rename, or modify linked tables, you can use the Linked Table Manager within the Database Tools tab to update the links.

To Relate Several Tables

The new tables need to be related to the existing tables in the Camashaly Design database. The Client and Course Offerings tables are related through the Client Number fields in both. The Course and Course Offerings tables are related through the Course Number fields in both. The following steps illustrate the process of relating the tables.

1

- If necessary, close any open datasheet on the screen by clicking its Close button, and then display the Database Tools tab.
- Click the Relationships button (Database Tools tab | Relationships group) to open the Relationships window (Figure 6–4).

Q&A

I only see one table, did I do something wrong?

Click the All Relationships button to display all tables in relationships.

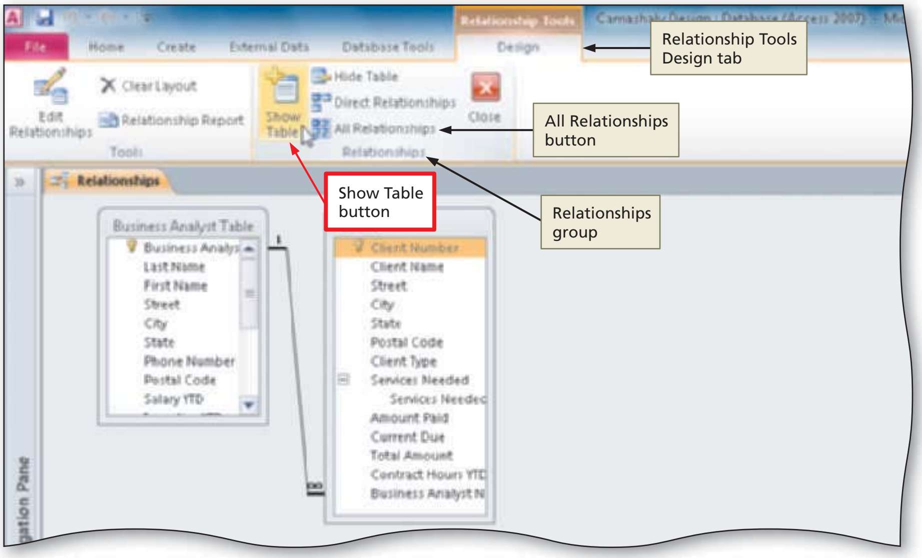

Relationship Tools Design tab
All Relationships button
Show Table button
Relationships group
Relationship Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Edit Relationships
Clear Layout
Relationship Report
Tools
Show Table
Hide Table
Direct Relationships
All Relationships
Relationships
Close
Relationships
Business Analyst Table
Business Analyst
Last Name
First Name
Street
City
State
Phone Number
Postal Code
Salary YTD
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Client Type
Services Needed
Services Needed
Amount Paid
Current Due
Total Amount
Contract Hours YTD
Business Analyst N
Navigation Pane

Figure 6–4

2

- Click the Show Table button (Relationship Tools Design tab | Relationships group) to display the Show Table dialog box (Figure 6–5).

3

- Click the Course Offerings table, click the Add button (Show Table dialog box), click the Course table, click the Add button again, and then click the Close button.

Q&A

I cannot see the Course Offerings table. Should I repeat the step?

If you can't see the table, it is behind the dialog box. You do not need to repeat the step.

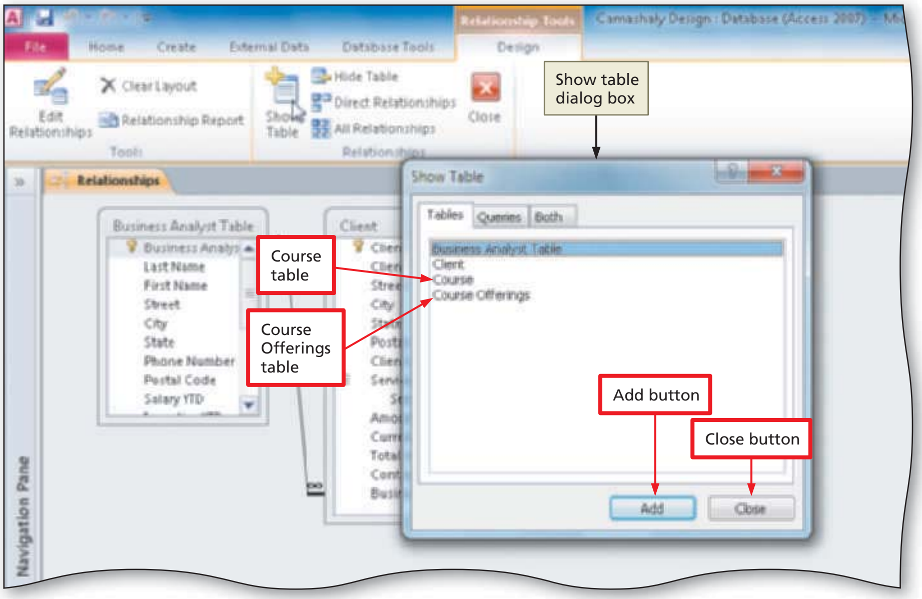

Show table dialog box
Course table
Course Offerings table
Add button
Close button
Show Table
Tables
Queries
Both
Business Analyst Table
Client
Course
Course Offerings
Add
Close
Business Analyst Table
Client
Navigation Pane

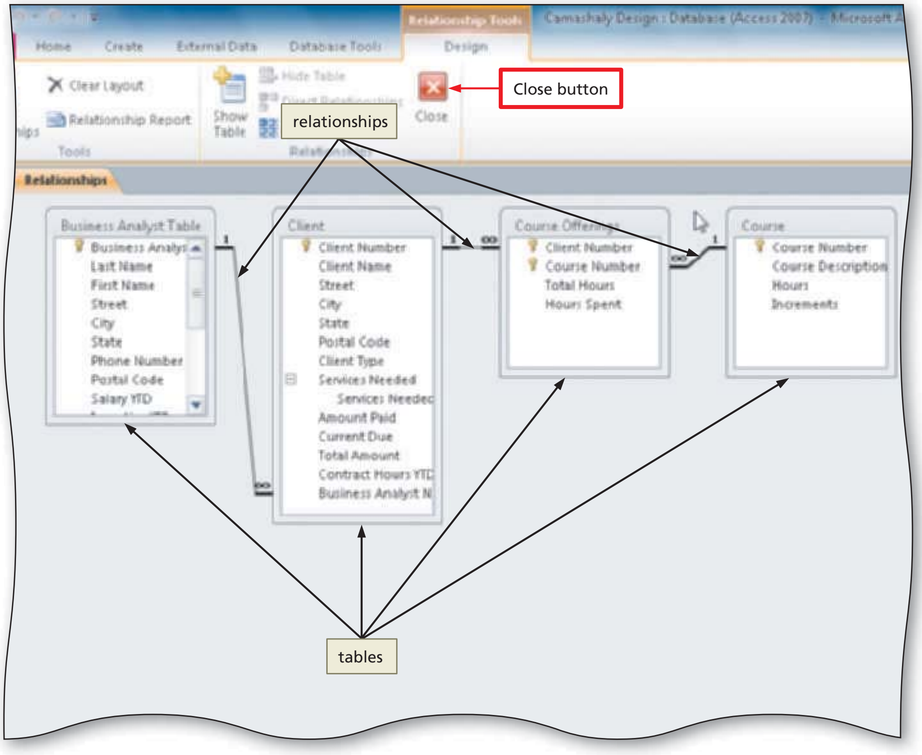
Figure 6–5

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

- Point to the Client Number field in the Client table, press the left mouse button, drag to the Client Number field in the Course Offerings table, and then release the left mouse button to display the Edit Relationships dialog box. Click the Enforce Referential Integrity check box (Edit Relationships dialog box) and then click the Create button to create the relationship.
- Drag the Course Number field from the Course table to the Course Number field in the Course Offerings table. Click the Enforce Referential Integrity check box (Edit Relationships dialog box) and then click the Create button to create the relationship (Figure 6–6).

4

- Click the Save button to save the changes and then click the Close button (Relationship Tools Design tab | Relationships group).


Relationship Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft A
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Clear Layout
Relationship Report
Tools
Show Table
Hide Table
Direct Relationships
Close
Relationships
Business Analyst Table
Business Analyst
Last Name
First Name
Street
City
State
Phone Number
Postal Code
Salary YTD
Client
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Client Type
Services Needed
Services Needed
Amount Paid
Current Due
Total Amount
Contract Hours YTD
Business Analyst N
Course Offerings
Client Number
Course Number
Total Hours
Hours Spent
Course
Course Number
Course Description
Hours
Increments
1
∞

Close button

relationships

tables

Figure 6–6

Creating Reports in Design View

Previously, you have used both Layout view and the Report Wizard to create reports. However, you simply can create the report in Design view. You also can use Design view to modify a report created by the wizard. If you do not use the wizard before moving to Design view, the design will be empty. It is then up to you to place all the fields in the desired locations. It is also up to you to specify any sorting or grouping that is required.

Whether you use the wizard or simply use Design view, you must determine on which table or query to base the report. If the report is to be based on a query, you first must create the query, unless, of course, it already exists.

BTW

Modify Composite Primary Keys

To change part of a composite primary key, open the table in Design view, click any field that participates in the primary key, and click the Primary Key button to remove the primary key. If the fields are adjacent to each other, click the row selector for the first field, hold down the SHIFT key and click the row selector for the second field. Then click the Primary Key button.

To Create a Query for the Report

Camashaly's requirements for the reports specify that it would be convenient to use two queries for the report. These queries do not yet exist. You will need to create the two queries. The first query relates business analysts and clients, and the second query relates courses and course offerings. The following steps create the Business Analysts and Clients query.

1 If necessary, close the Navigation Pane, display the Create tab, and then click the Query Design button (Create tab | Queries group) to create a new query.

2 If necessary click the Business Analyst Table, click the Add button (Show Table dialog box), click the Client table, click the Add button, close the Show Table dialog box by clicking its Close button, and then resize the field lists to display as many fields as possible.

3 Double-click the Business Analyst Number, First Name, and Last Name fields from the Business Analyst Table to display them in the design grid.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

4. Double-click the Client Number, Client Name, Street, City, State, Postal Code, Client Type, Services Needed, Amount Paid, and Current Due fields from the Client table to add the fields to the design grid.

5. View the query results and scroll through the fields to make sure you have included all the necessary fields. If you have omitted a field, return to Design view and add it.

6. Click the Save button on the Quick Access Toolbar to save the query, type `Business Analysts and Clients` as the name of the query, and then click the OK button.

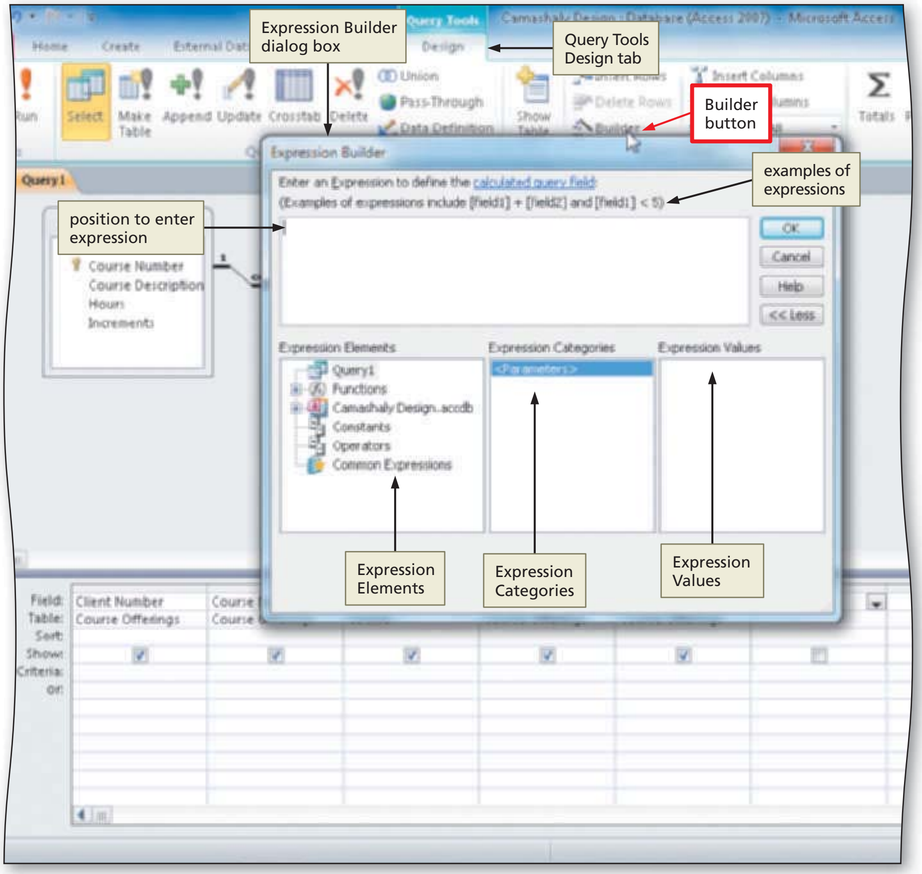
7. Close the query.

To Create an Additional Query for the Report

Camashaly Design needs to include in the Business Analyst Master List the number of hours that remain in a course offering. The following steps create the Course Offerings and Courses query that includes a calculated field for hours remaining. The hours remaining are calculated by subtracting hours spent from total number of hours.

1.

- Display the Create tab and then click the Query Design button (Create tab | Queries group) to create a new query.
- Click the Course table, click the Add button (Show Table dialog box), click the Course Offerings table, click the Add button, and then click the Close button to close the Show Table dialog box.
- Double-click the Client Number and Course Number fields from the Course Offerings table to add the fields to the design grid.
- Double-click the Course Description field from the Course table.
- Double-click the Total Hours and Hours Spent fields from the Course Offerings table to add the fields to the design grid.
- Click the first open column in the design grid to select it.
- Click the Builder button (Query Tools Design tab | Query Setup group) to display the Expression Builder dialog box (Figure 6–7).


Expression Builder dialog box
Query Tools Design tab
Builder button
examples of expressions
position to enter expression
Expression Elements
Expression Categories
Expression Values
Home
Create
External Data
Design
Query Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
Run
Select
Make Table
Append
Update
Crosstab
Delete
Union
Pass-Through
Data Definition
Show Table
Delete Rows
Builder
Insert Columns
Totals
Query1
Expression Builder
Course Number
Course Description
Hours
Increments
OK
Cancel
Help
<< Less
Query1
Functions
Camashaly Design.accdb
Constants
Operators
Common Expressions
<Parameters>
Field:
Table:
Sort:
Show:
Criteria:
or:
Client Number
Course Offerings

Enter an Expression to define the calculated query field:
(Examples of expressions include [field1] + [field2] and [field1] < 5)

Figure 6–7

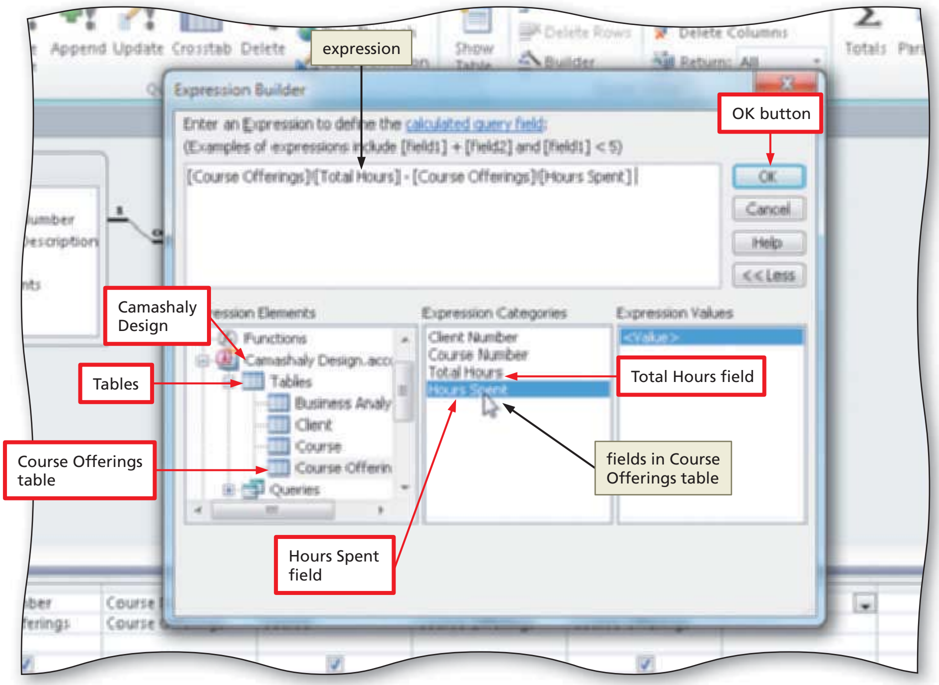
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2

- Double-click Camashaly Design in the Expression Elements section to display the categories of objects within the Camashaly Design database, and then double-click Tables to display a list of tables.
- Click the Course Offerings table to select it.
- Double-click the Total Hours field to add it to the expression.
- Type a minus sign (–) to add it to the expression.
- Double-click the Hours Spent field to add it to the expression (Figure 6–8).

Q&A Why are the fields preceded by a table name and an exclamation point?

This notation qualifies the field; that is, it indicates to which table the field belongs.



[Course Offerings]![Total Hours] - [Course Offerings]![Hours Spent]

expression
OK button
Camashaly Design
Tables
Course Offerings table
Total Hours field
fields in Course Offerings table
Hours Spent field
Expression Builder
Enter an Expression to define the calculated query field:
(Examples of expressions include [field1] + [field2] and [field1] < 5)
OK
Cancel
Help
<< Less
Expression Elements
Functions
Camashaly Design.accdb
Tables
Business Analyst
Client
Course
Course Offerings
Queries
Expression Categories
Client Number
Course Number
Total Hours
Hours Spent
Expression Values
<Value>

Figure 6–8

Q&A Could I type the expression instead of using the Expression Builder?

Yes. You could type it directly into the design grid. You could also right-click the column and click Zoom to allow you to type the expression in the Zoom dialog box. Finally, you could use the Expression Builder, but simply type the expression rather than clicking any buttons. Use whichever method you find most convenient.

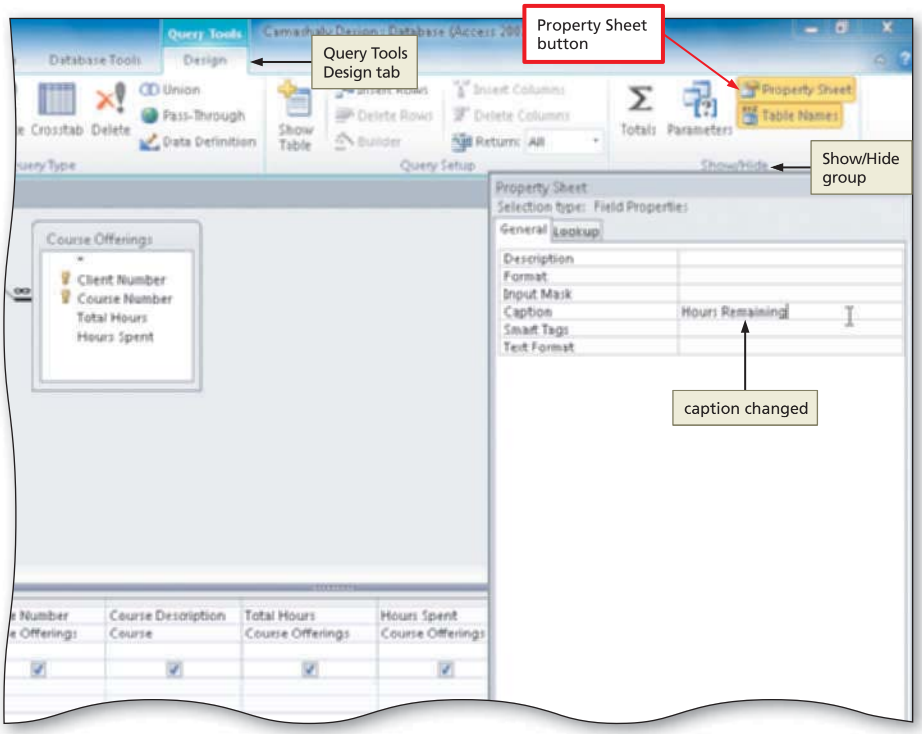
3

- Click the OK button (Expression Builder dialog box).
- With the field in the grid where you entered the expression selected, click the Property Sheet button (Query Tools Design tab | Show/Hide group) to display the property sheet for the new field.

Q&A The wrong property sheet appeared. What went wrong? What should I do?

You either did not click in the right location, or you have not yet completed entering the expression. The easiest way to ensure you have done both is to click any other column in the grid and then click the column with the expression.

- Click the Caption property box and type `Hours Remaining` as the caption (Figure 6–9).



Caption: Hours Remaining

Property Sheet button
Query Tools Design tab
Show/Hide group
caption changed
Query Tools
Database Tools
Design
Union
Pass-Through
Data Definition
Crosstab
Delete
Show Table
Builder
Return: All
Totals
Parameters
Property Sheet
Table Names
Property Sheet
Selection type: Field Properties
General
Lookup
Description
Format
Input Mask
Smart Tags
Text Format
Course Offerings
Client Number
Course Number
Total Hours
Hours Spent

Figure 6–9

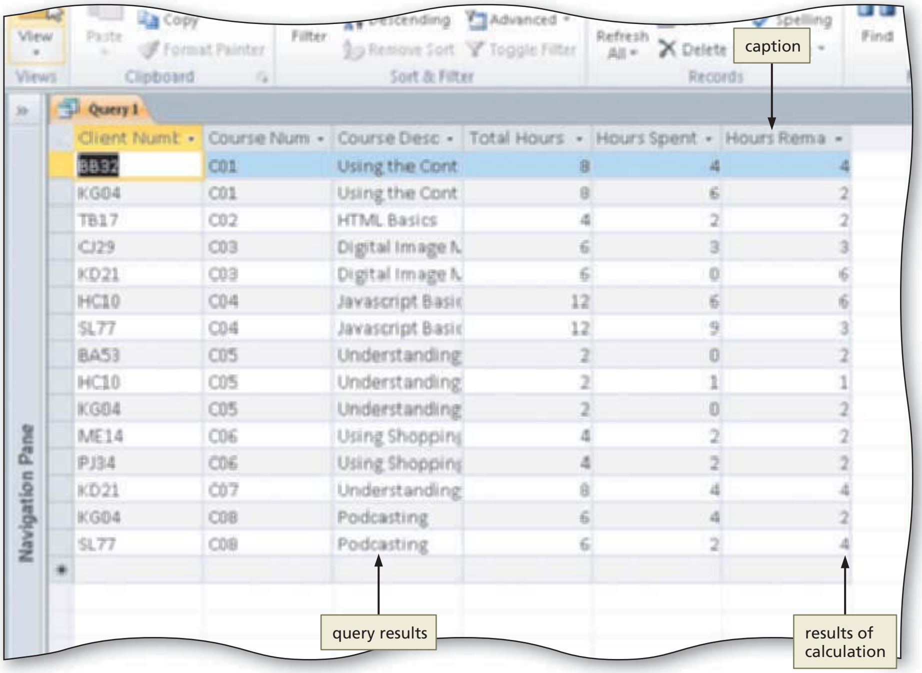
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

4

- Close the property sheet and then view the results of the query (Figure 6–10). (Your results might be in a different order.)

5

- Verify that your query results match those in the figure. If not, return to Design view and make the necessary corrections.
- Click the Save button, type `Course Offerings and Courses` as the name of the query, and then click the OK button to save the query.
- Close the query.



Client Numb	Course Num	Course Desc	Total Hours	Hours Spent	Hours Rema
BB32	C01	Using the Cont	8	4	4
KG04	C01	Using the Cont	8	6	2
TB17	C02	HTML Basics	4	2	2
CJ29	C03	Digital Image N	6	3	3
KD21	C03	Digital Image N	6	0	6
HC10	C04	Javascript Basic	12	6	6
SL77	C04	Javascript Basic	12	9	3
BA53	C05	Understanding	2	0	2
HC10	C05	Understanding	2	1	1
KG04	C05	Understanding	2	0	2
ME14	C06	Using Shopping	4	2	2
PJ34	C06	Using Shopping	4	2	2
KD21	C07	Understanding	8	4	4
KG04	C08	Podcasting	6	4	2
SL77	C08	Podcasting	6	2	4

Figure 6–10

Plan Ahead

Determine the fields that belong on the report.

If you determine that data should be presented as a report, you then need to determine what tables and fields contain the data for the report.

- **Examine the requirements for the report in general to determine the tables.** Do the requirements only relate to data in a single table, or does the data come from multiple tables? Is the data in a query, or could you create a query that contains some or all of the fields necessary for the report?
- **Examine the specific requirements for the report to determine the fields necessary.** Look for all the data items that are specified for the report. Each item should correspond to a field in a table, or it should be able to be computed from a field in a table. This information gives you the list of fields to include in the query.
- **Determine the order of the fields.** Examine the requirements to determine the order in which the fields should appear. Be logical and consistent in your ordering. For example, in an address, the city should come before the state, and the state should come before the postal code, unless there is some compelling reason for another order.

Plan Ahead

Determine the organization of the report.

Determine various details concerning how the data in your report is to be organized.

- **Determine sort order.** Is there a special order in which the records should appear?
- **Determine grouping.** Should the records be grouped in some fashion? If so, what information should appear before the records in a group? If, for example, clients are grouped by business analyst number, the number of the business analyst should probably appear before the group. Should the business analyst name also appear? What should appear after the group? For example, are there some fields for which subtotals should be calculated? If so, the subtotals would come after the group.

(continued)

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Plan Ahead

(continued)

- **Determine whether to include a subreport.** Rather than use grouping, you may choose to include a subreport, as shown in the Business Analyst Master List on page AC 339. The data concerning course offerings for the client could have been presented by grouping the course offerings' data by client number. The headings currently in the subreport would have appeared in the group header. Instead, it is presented in a subreport. Subreports, which are reports in their own right, offer more flexibility in formatting than group headers and footers. More important, in the Business Analyst Master List, some clients do not have any course offerings. If this information were presented using grouping, the group header will still appear for these clients. With a subreport, clients who have no course offerings do not appear.

To Create an Initial Report in Design View

Creating the report shown in Figure 6–1a on page AC 339 from scratch involves creating the initial report in Design view, adding the subreport, modifying the subreport separately from the main report, and then making the final modifications to the main report.

When you want to create a report from scratch, you use Design view rather than the Report Wizard. The Report Wizard is suitable for simple, customized reports. With Report Design, you can make advanced design changes, such as adding subreports. The following steps create the initial version of the Business Analyst Master List and select the **record source** for the report; that is, the table or query that will furnish the data for the report. The steps then specify sorting and grouping for the report.

1

- Display the Create tab.
- Click the Report Design button (Create tab | Reports group) to create a report in Design view.
- Ensure the selector for the entire report, the box in the upper-left corner of the report, is selected.
- Click the Property Sheet button (Report Design Tools Design tab | Tools group) to display a property sheet.
- With the All tab (Property Sheet) selected, click the Record Source property box arrow to display the list of available tables and queries (Figure 6–11).

Q&A

Can I make the property sheet box wider so I can see more of the items in the Record Source list?

Yes, you can make the property sheet wider by dragging its right border.

Q&A

The right side of the property sheet is cut off. Can I move the property sheet?

Yes, you can move the property sheet by dragging its title bar.

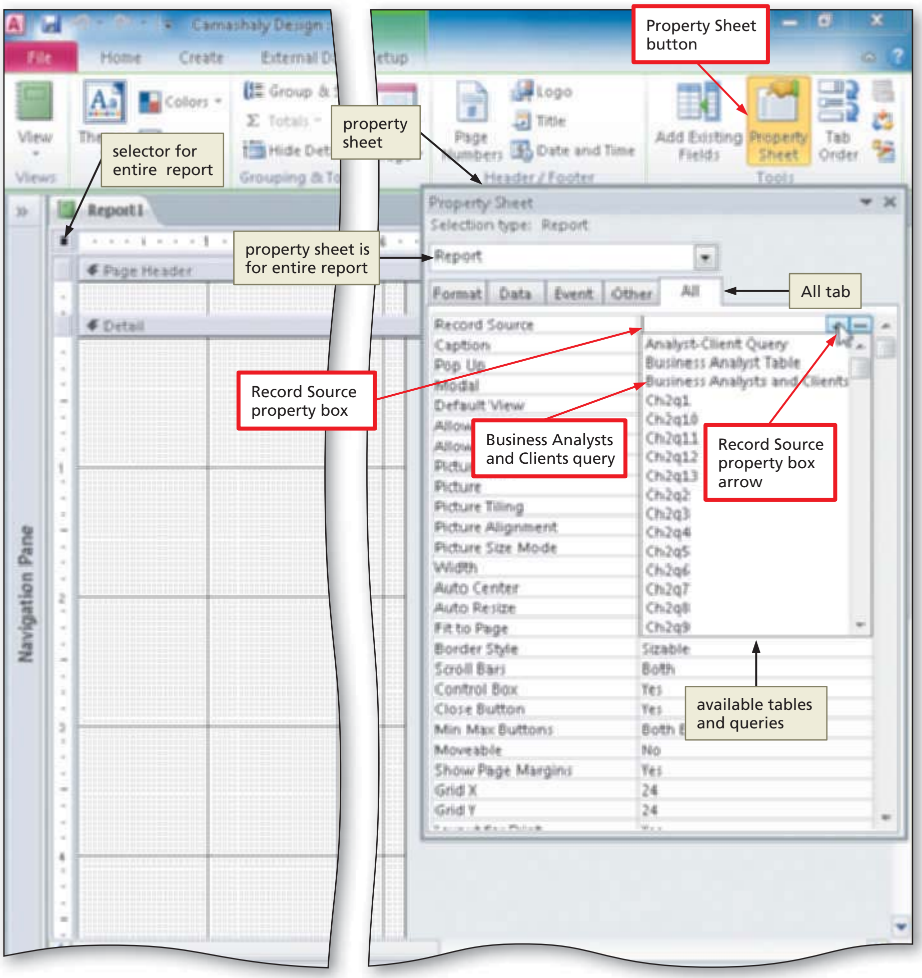

Property Sheet button
property sheet
selector for entire report
property sheet is for entire report
All tab
Record Source property box
Business Analysts and Clients query
Record Source property box arrow
available tables and queries

Figure 6–11

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2

- Click the Business Analysts and Clients query to select the query as the record source for the report.
- Close the property sheet by clicking the Property Sheet button (Report Design Tools Design tab | Tools group).
- Click the Group & Sort button (Report Design Tools Design tab | Grouping & Totals group) to display the Group, Sort, and Total pane (Figure 6–12).

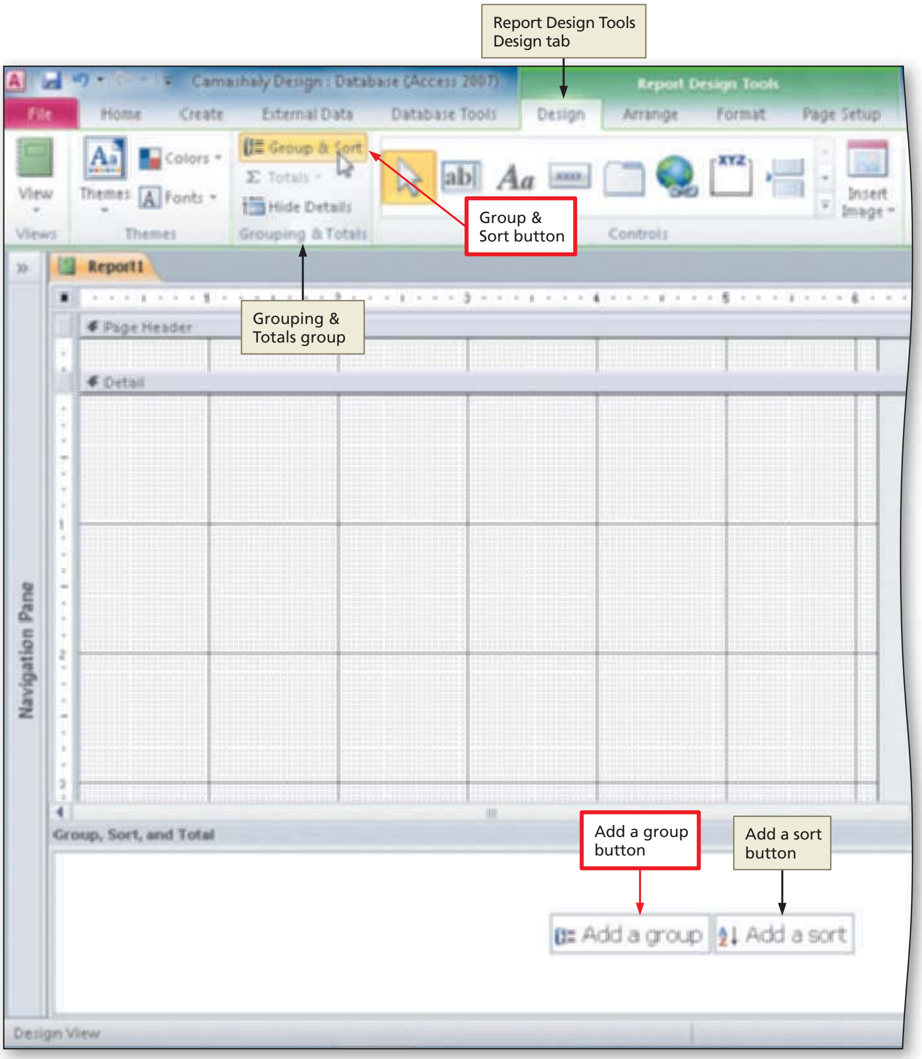

Report Design Tools Design tab
Group & Sort button
Grouping & Totals group
Add a group button
Add a sort button
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
Report Design Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
View
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Group & Sort
Totals
Hide Details
Views
Grouping & Totals
Controls
Insert Image
Report1
Page Header
Detail
Navigation Pane
Group, Sort, and Total
Add a group
Add a sort
Design View

Figure 6–12

3

- Click the 'Add a group' button to display the list of available fields for grouping (Figure 6–13).

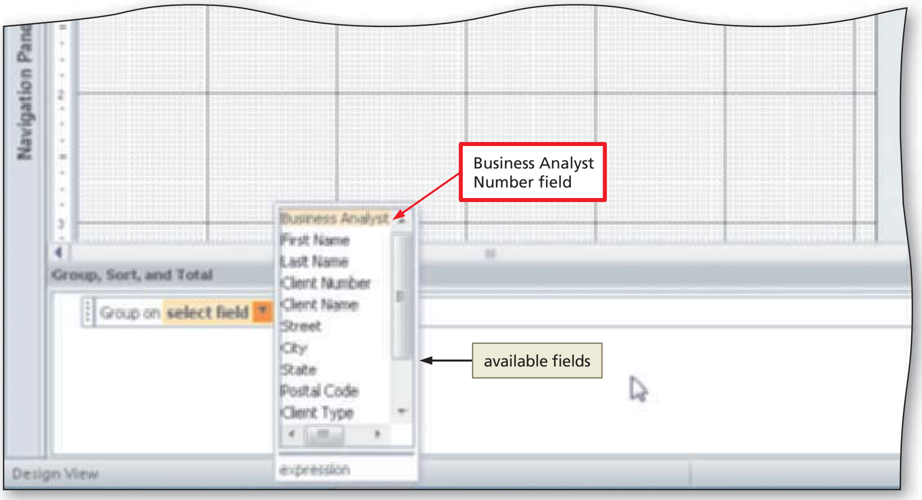

Business Analyst Number field
available fields
Navigation Pane
Group, Sort, and Total
Group on select field
Business Analyst
First Name
Last Name
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Client Type
expression
Design View

Figure 6–13

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

4

- Click the Business Analyst Number field to group by business analyst number (Figure 6–14).

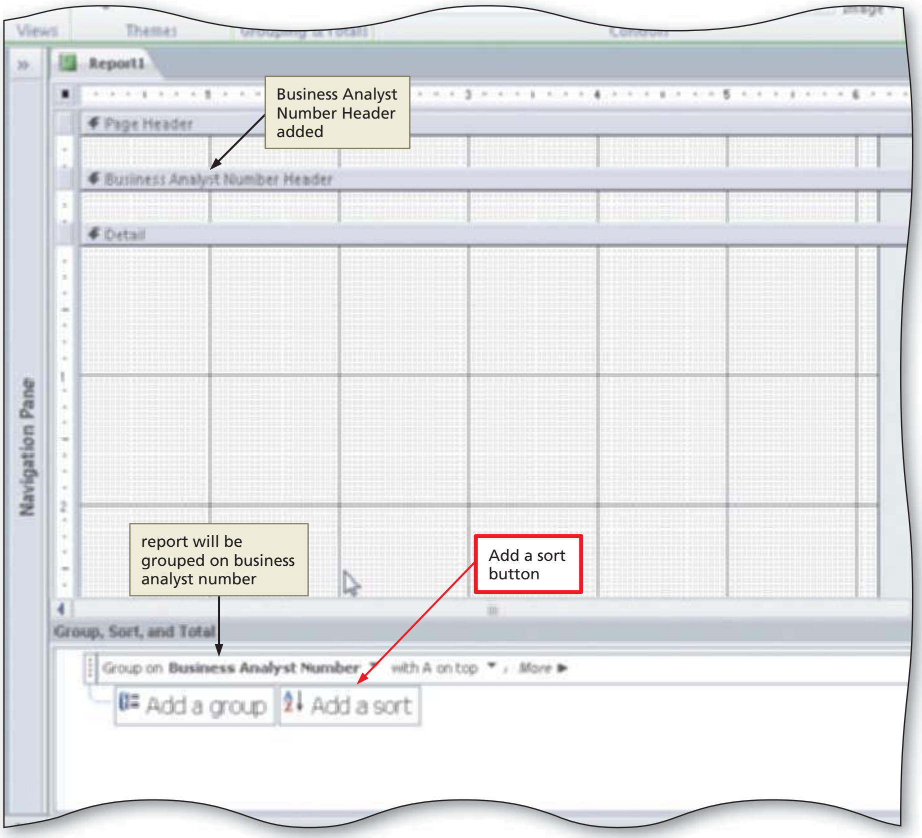

Report1
Page Header
Business Analyst Number Header
Detail
Navigation Pane
Business Analyst Number Header added
report will be grouped on business analyst number
Add a sort button
Group, Sort, and Total
Group on Business Analyst Number with A on top More ▶
Add a group
Add a sort

Figure 6–14

5

- Click the 'Add a sort' button to display the list of available fields for sorting (Figure 6–15).

6

- Click the Client Number field to sort by client number.

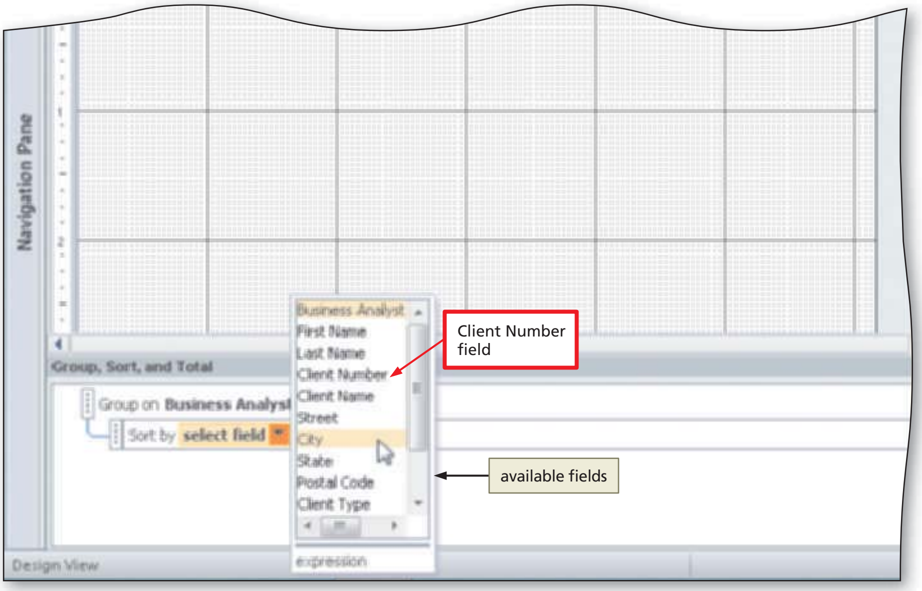

Navigation Pane
Group, Sort, and Total
Group on Business Analyst
Sort by select field
Business Analyst
First Name
Last Name
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Client Type
expression
Design View
Client Number field
available fields

Figure 6–15

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Save the Report

Before proceeding with the next steps in the modification of the report, it is a good idea to save your work. The following steps save the report as Business Analyst Master List.

1. Click the Save button on the Quick Access Toolbar.
2. Type `Business Analyst Master List` as the report name.
3. Click the OK button.

BTW

Expression Builder
The Expression Builder provides easy access to built-in functions, table names, and field names. In Access 2010, the Expression Builder was enhanced to include IntelliSense that shows you options as you type. It also displays help for the currently selected expression value.

Recall from Chapter 4 that a report contains three types of controls: bound controls, unbound controls, and calculated controls. As you learned previously, reports contain standard sections, including the Report Header, Report Footer, Page Header, Page Footer, and Detail sections. When the data in a report is grouped, there are two additional possible sections. The contents of the **Group Header section** are printed before the records in a particular group, and the contents of the **Group Footer section** are printed after the group. In the Discount Report (Figure 6–1b), for example, which is grouped by business analyst number, the Group Header section contains the business analyst number and name, and the Group Footer section contains subtotals of the Amount Paid and Current Due fields.

To Add Fields to the Report in Design View

When you have determined the fields that are necessary for the report, you need to add them. You can add the fields to the report by dragging them from the field list to the appropriate position on the report. The following steps add the fields to the report.

1

- Remove the Group, Sort, and Total pane by clicking the Group & Sort button (Report Design Tools Design tab | Grouping & Totals group).
- Click the Add Existing Fields button (Report Design Tools Design tab | Tools group) to display a field list.
- Drag the Business Analyst Number field to the approximate position shown in Figure 6–16.

Q&A

My field list does not look like the one in the figure. It has several tables listed, and at the top it has Show only fields in the current record source. Yours has Show all tables. What should I do?

Click the 'Show only field in the current record source' link. Your field list should then match the one in the figure.

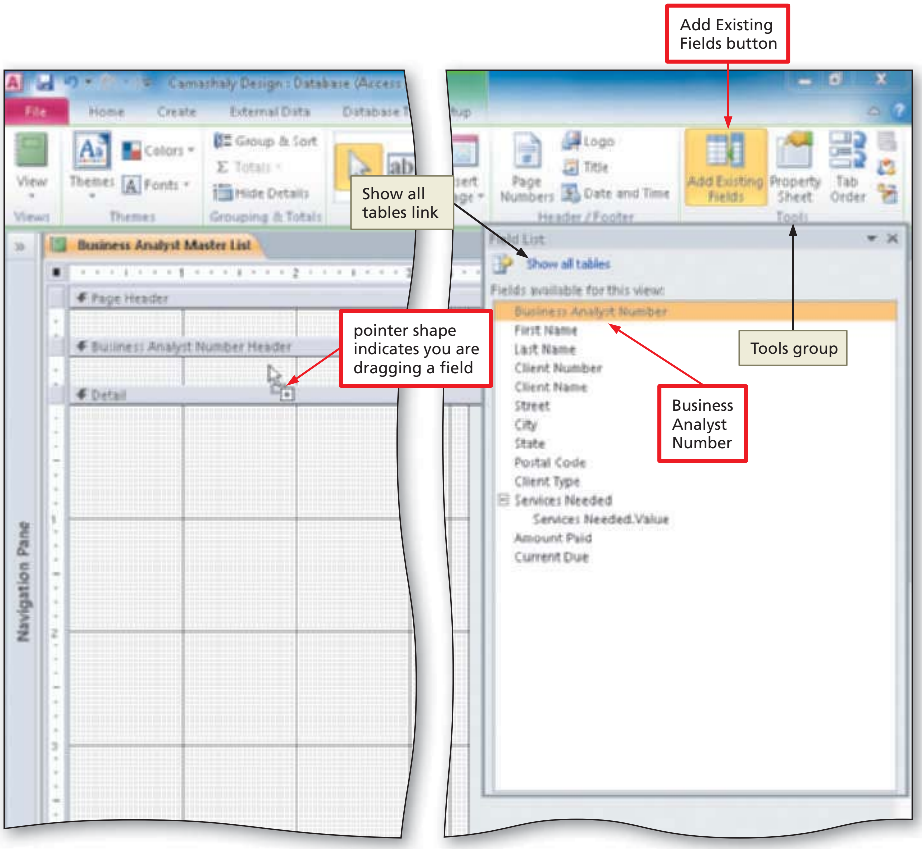

Add Existing Fields button
Show all tables link
pointer shape indicates you are dragging a field
Tools group
Business Analyst Number
Business Analyst Master List
Page Header
Business Analyst Number Header
Detail
Field List
Show all tables
Fields available for this view:
Business Analyst Number
First Name
Last Name
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Client Type
Services Needed
Services Needed.Value
Amount Paid
Current Due
Navigation Pane

Figure 6–16

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2

- Release the left mouse button to place the field (Figure 6–17).

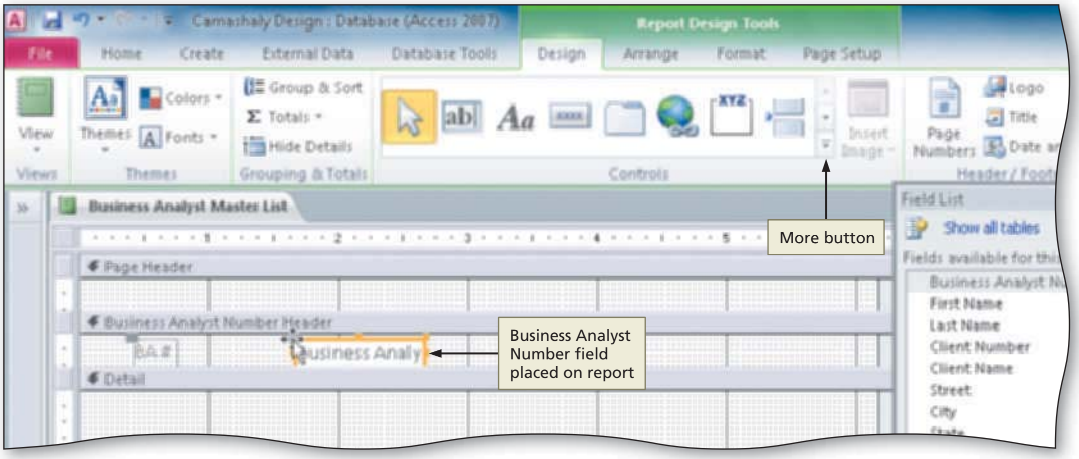


Figure 6–17

3

- Place the remaining fields in the positions shown in Figure 6–18.
- Display the Arrange tab.
- Adjust the positions of the labels to those shown in the figure. If any field is not in the correct position, drag it to its correct location. To move the control or the attached label separately, drag the large handle in the upper-left corner of the control or label. You can align controls using the Align button (Report Design Tools Arrange tab | Sizing & Ordering group) or adjust spacing by using the Size/Space button (Report Design Tools Arrange tab | Sizing & Ordering group).

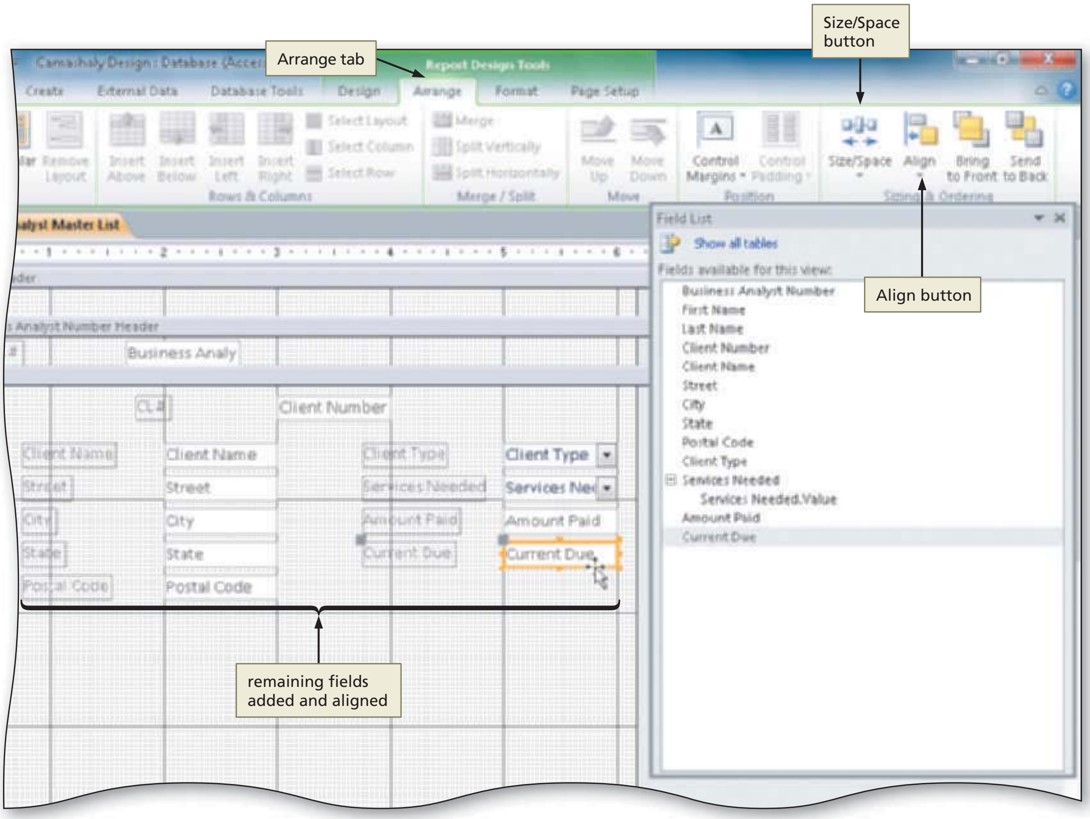


Figure 6–18

Experiment

- Select more than one control and then experiment with the Size/Space and the Align buttons (Report Design Tools Arrange tab | Sizing & Ordering group) to see their effects. After trying each one, click the Undo button to undo the change.

4

- Display the Design tab.
- Remove the field list by clicking the Add Existing Fields button (Report Design Tools Design tab | Tools group), which is shown in Figure 6–16.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Change Labels

The labels for the Business Analyst Number and Client Number fields currently contain the captions BA # and CL # for the fields. Because there is plenty of room on the report to display longer names for both fields, you can make the report more descriptive by changing the labels. The following step changes the contents of the label for the Business Analyst Number field from BA # to Analyst Number. They also change the contents of the label for the Client Number field from CL # to Client Number.

1

- Click the label for the Business Analyst Number field twice, once to select it and the second time to produce an insertion point.
- Use the BACKSPACE or DELETE key to erase the current entry in the label and then type `Analyst Number` as the new entry.
- Click the label for the Client Number field twice to produce an insertion point.
- Use the BACKSPACE or DELETE key to erase the current entry in the label and then type `Client Number` as the new entry (Figure 6–19).

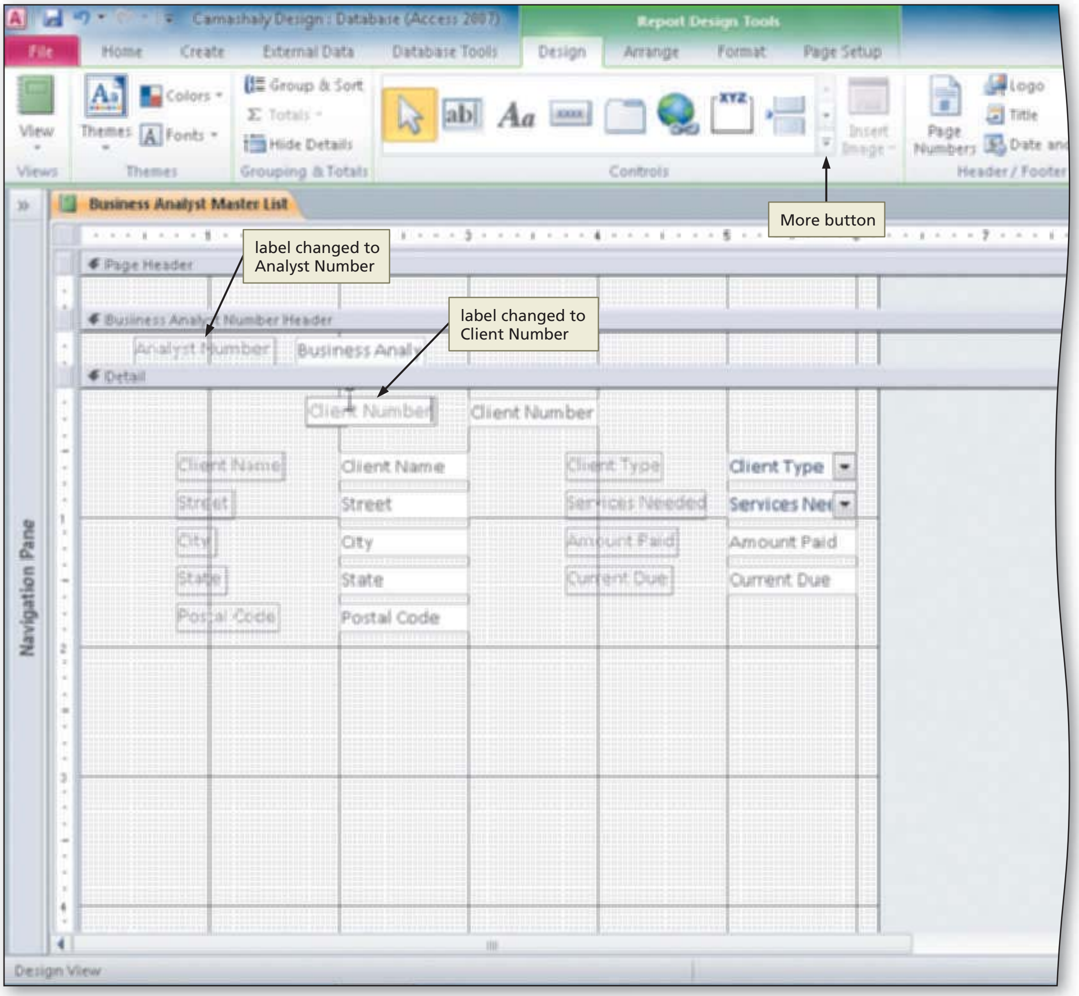

Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
Report Design Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
View
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Group & Sort
Totals
Hide Details
Views
Themes
Grouping & Totals
Controls
Insert Image
Page Numbers
Logo
Title
Date and
Header / Footer
Business Analyst Master List
More button
label changed to Analyst Number
label changed to Client Number
Page Header
Business Analyst Number Header
Analyst Number
Business Analy
Detail
Client Number
Client Number
Client Name
Client Name
Client Type
Client Type
Street
Street
Services Needed
Services Nee
City
City
Amount Paid
Amount Paid
State
State
Current Due
Current Due
Postal Code
Postal Code
Navigation Pane
Design View

Figure 6–19

BTW

Control Tools
You also can scroll the list of tools in the Control group by clicking the arrows at the right side of the group. The More button (shown in Figure 6–19) displays all the controls at once.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Using Other Tools in the Controls Group

Previously, you used the Subform/Subreport tool within the Controls group on the Design tab to place special controls on a form. The Controls group has additional tools available. A description of the additional tools appears in Table 6–3.

Table 6–3 Additional Tools in the Controls Group

Tool	Description	Button
Select	Enables sizing, moving, or editing of existing controls. If you click another tool and then want to cancel the effect of the tool before using it, you can click the Select tool.	
Text Box	Creates a text box for entering, editing, and displaying data. You can also bind the text box to a field in the underlying table or query.	ab|
Label	Creates a label, a box containing identifying text that is independent of other controls, such as a title.	Aa
Button	Creates a command button.	xxxx
Tab Control	Creates a tab control, which contains a series of tabbed pages. Each tabbed page can contain its own controls.	
Hyperlink	Inserts a hyperlink to an existing file, Web page, database object, or e-mail address.	
Option Group	Creates an option group, a rectangle containing a collection of option buttons. To select an option, you simply click the corresponding option button.	XYZ
Insert or Remove Page Break	Inserts or removes a physical page break (typically in a report).	
Combo box	Creates a combo box, which is a combination of a text box and a list box.	
Chart	Creates a chart.	
Line	Draws a line on a form or report.	
Toggle Button	Adds a toggle button. With a toggle button, a user can make a Yes/No selection by clicking the button. The button either appears to be pressed (for Yes) or not pressed (for No).	
List Box	Creates a list box, a box that allows the user to select from a list of options.	
Rectangle	Creates a rectangle.	
Check Box	Inserts a check box. With a check box, a user can make multiple Yes/No selections.	☑
Unbound Object Frame	Inserts an OLE object (for example, a graph, picture, sound file, or video) that is not contained in a field in a table within the database.	
Attachment	Inserts an Attachment field.	
Option Button	Inserts an option button. With an option button, a user can make a single Yes/No selection from among a collection of at least two choices.	◉
Subform/ Subreport	Creates a subform (a form contained within another form) or a subreport (a report contained within another report).	
Bound Object Frame	Inserts an OLE object (for example, a graph, picture, sound file, or video) that is contained in a field in a table within the database.	XYZ
Image	Inserts a frame into which you can insert a graphic. The graphic will be the same for all records.	

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Add Text Boxes

You can place a text box on a report or form by using the Text Box tool in the Controls group on the Design tab. The text box consists of a control that is initially unbound and an attached label. When you enter an expression in the text box, it becomes a calculated control. If the expression is just a single field (for example, =[Amount Paid]), it would be a bound control. Expressions also can be arithmetic operations; for example, calculating the sum of amount paid and current due. Many times, you need to **concatenate**, or combine, two or more text data items into a single expression; the process is called **concatenation**. To concatenate strings, you use the **ampersand (&)** operator. The process of converting an unbound control to a bound control is called **binding**.

The following steps add text boxes and create calculated controls.

1

- Click the Text Box tool (Report Design Tools Design tab | Controls group) and move the pointer to the approximate position shown in Figure 6–20.

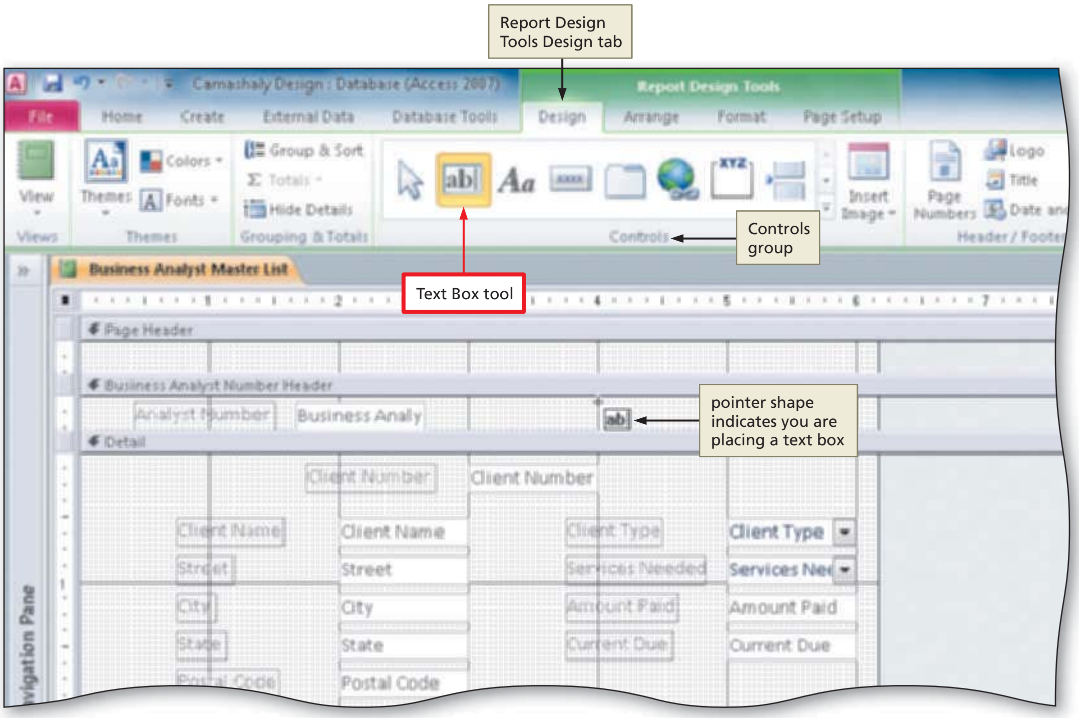

Report Design Tools Design tab
Text Box tool
Controls group
pointer shape indicates you are placing a text box
Business Analyst Master List
Page Header
Business Analyst Number Header
Detail

Figure 6–20

2

- Click the position shown in Figure 6–20 to place a text box on the report (Figure 6–21).

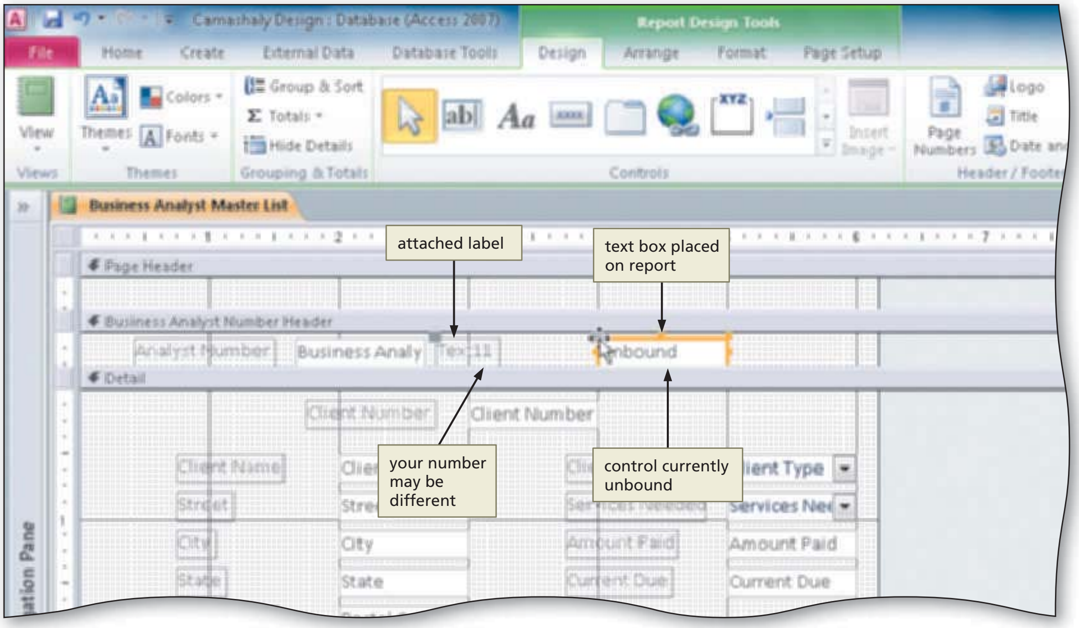

attached label
text box placed on report
your number may be different
control currently unbound
Business Analyst Master List
Page Header
Business Analyst Number Header
Detail
Unbound

Figure 6–21

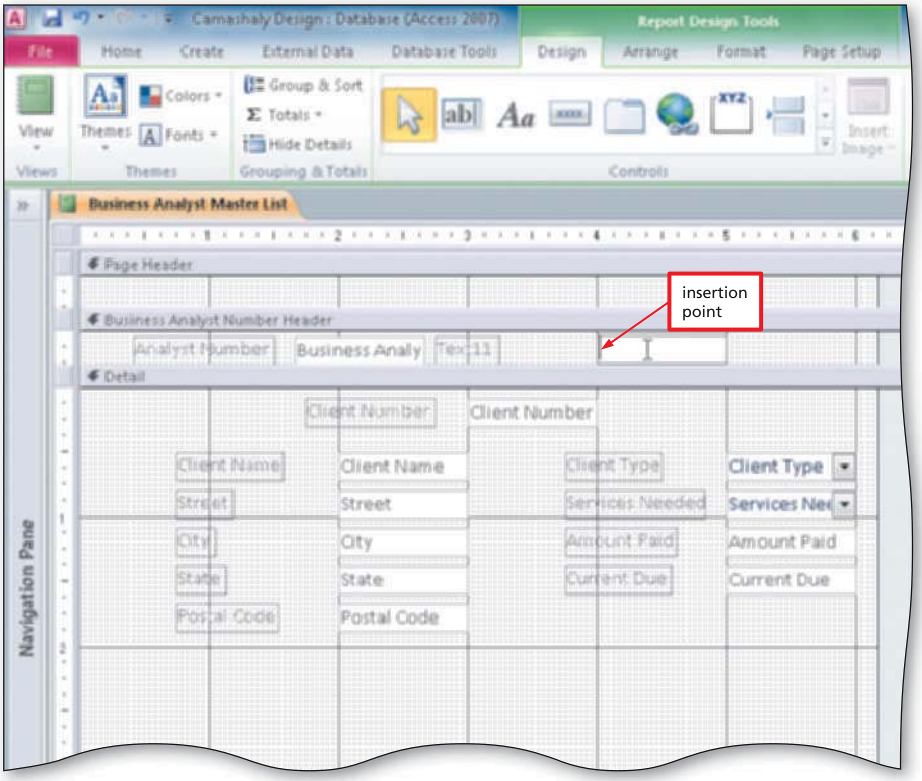
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3

- Click in the text box to produce an insertion point (Figure 6–22).

Q&A I inadvertently clicked somewhere else, so the text box was no longer selected. When I clicked the text box a second time, it was selected, but there was no insertion point. What should I do?

Simply click another time.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
Report Design Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
View
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Group & Sort
Totals
Hide Details
Controls
Insert Image
Views
Grouping & Totals
Business Analyst Master List
Page Header
Business Analyst Number Header
Analyst Number
Business Analy
Text11
Detail
Client Number
Client Name
Client Type
Services Needed
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Amount Paid
Current Due
Navigation Pane

insertion point

Figure 6–22

4

- In the text box, type `=[First Name]&' '&[Last Name]` as the entry.

Q&A What is the result of the expression I just entered?

The expression will display the first name of the business analyst, followed by a space, and then the last name of the business analyst. Any extra spaces at the end of the first name will be removed.

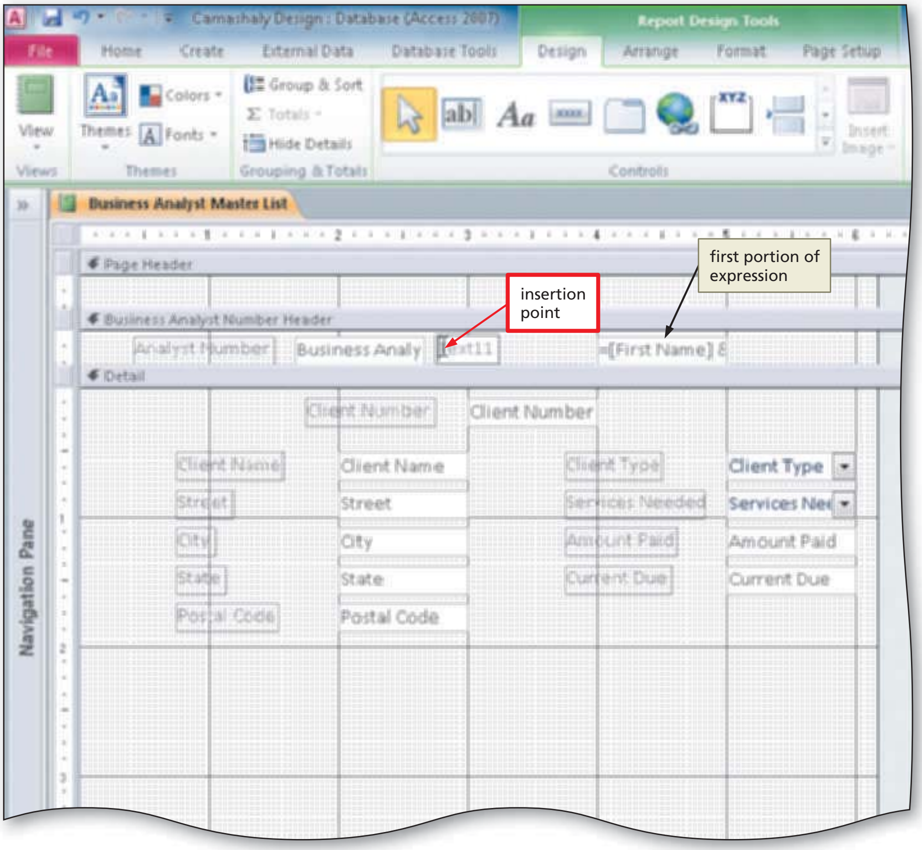
Q&A Could I use the Expression Builder instead of typing the expression?

Yes. Click the Property Sheet button and then click the Build button, which contains three dots, next to the Control Source property.

Q&A Do I need to use single quotes (')?

No. You also could use double quotes (").

- Click in the text box label to select the label and then click the label a second time to produce an insertion point (Figure 6–23).


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
Report Design Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
View
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Group & Sort
Totals
Hide Details
Controls
Insert Image
Views
Grouping & Totals
Business Analyst Master List
Page Header
Business Analyst Number Header
Analyst Number
Business Analy
Text11
=[First Name] &
Detail
Client Number
Client Name
Client Type
Services Needed
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Amount Paid
Current Due
Navigation Pane

first portion of expression

insertion point

Figure 6–23

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

5

- Use the BACKSPACE or DELETE key to erase the current entry in the label and then type `Analyst Name` as the new entry.
- Click outside the label to deselect it and then drag the label to the position shown in the figure by dragging the Move handle in the upper-left corner of the label (Figure 6–24).

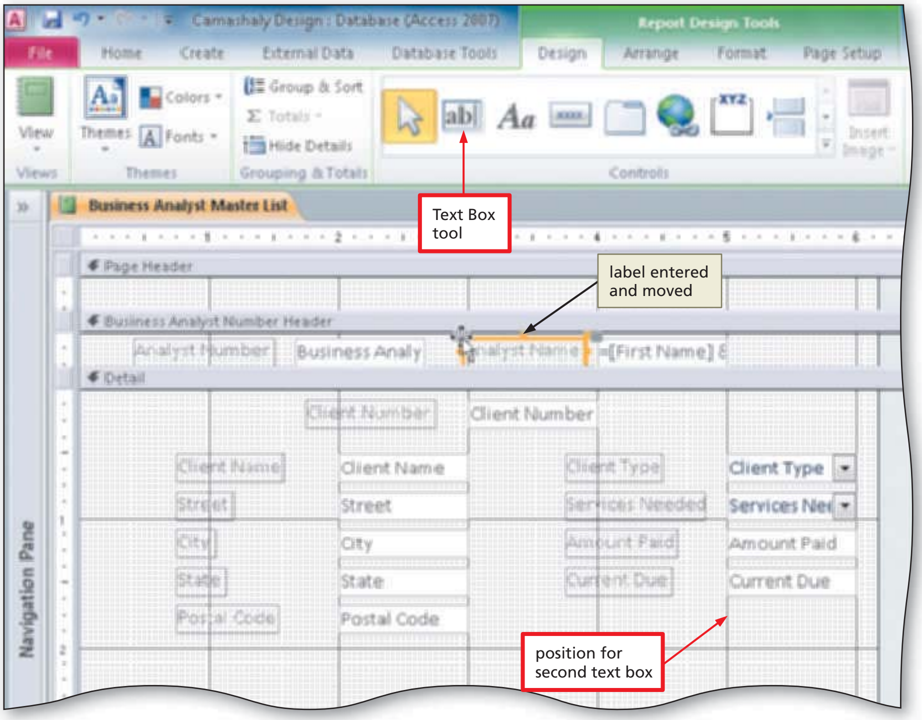

Text Box tool
label entered and moved
position for second text box
Business Analyst Master List
Page Header
Business Analyst Number Header
Detail
Analyst Number
Business Analy
Analyst Name
=[First Name] &
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Client Type
Services Needed
Amount Paid
Current Due
Navigation Pane

Figure 6–24

6

- Use the techniques in Steps 1 to 5 to place a second text box in the position indicated in Figure 6–24. Type `=[Amount Paid]+[Current Due]` as the expression in the text box, drag the label to the position shown in the figure, erase the contents of the label, and type `Total Amount` in the label (Figure 6–25).

Q&A My label is not in the correct position. What should I do?

Click outside the label to deselect it, click the label, and then drag it to the desired position.

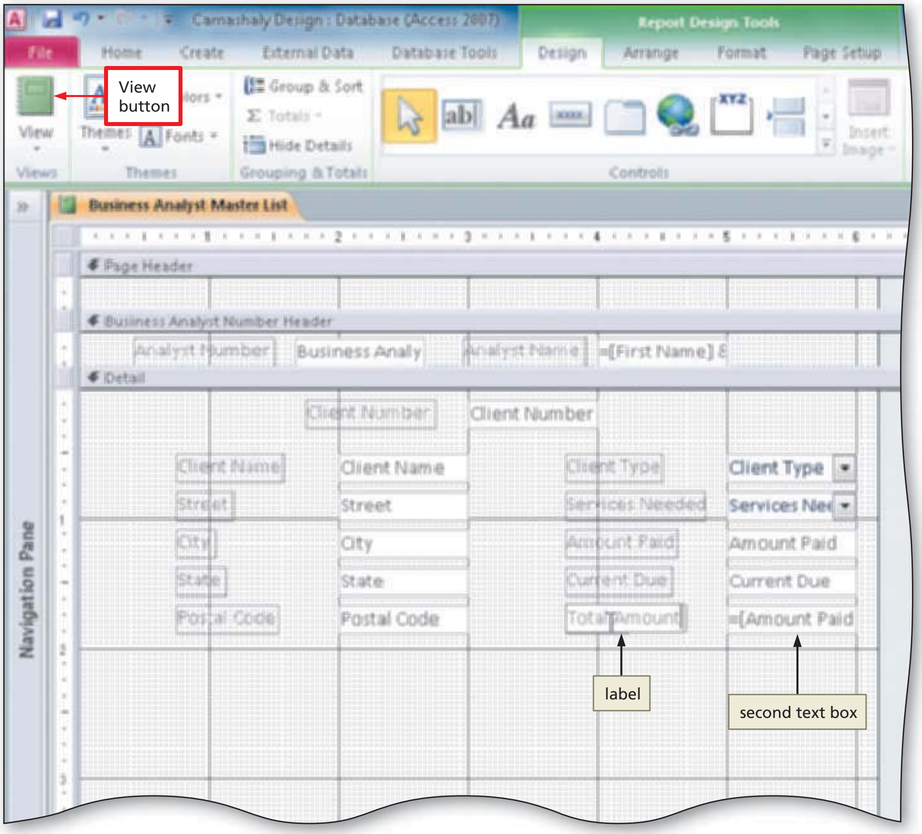

View button
label
second text box
Business Analyst Master List
Page Header
Business Analyst Number Header
Detail
Analyst Number
Business Analy
Analyst Name
=[First Name] &
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Client Type
Services Needed
Amount Paid
Current Due
Total Amount
=[Amount Paid
Navigation Pane

Figure 6–25

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To View the Report in Print Preview

As you are working on a report in Design view, it is useful to periodically view the report to gauge how it will look containing data. One way to do so is to use Print Preview. The following steps view the report in Print Preview.

1

- Click the View button arrow (Report Design Tools Design tab | Views group) to produce the View button menu.
- Click Print Preview on the View button menu to view the report in Print Preview (Figure 6–26).

Q&A What would happen if I clicked the View button instead of the View button arrow?

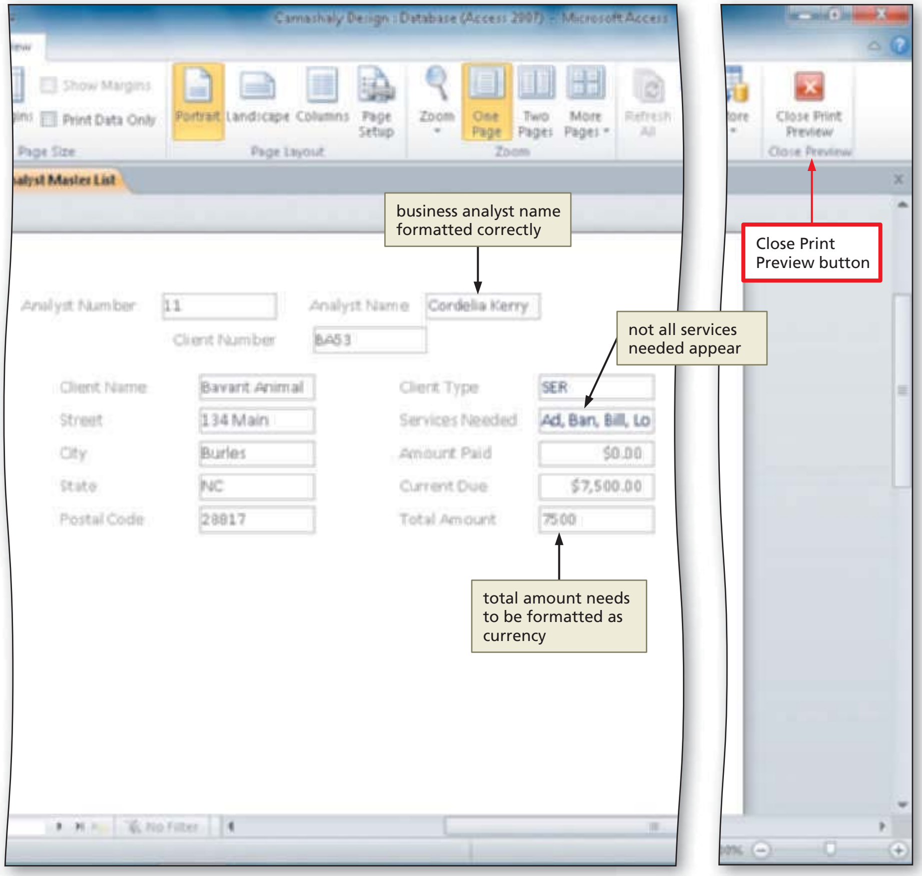
The icon on the View button is the icon for Report View, so you would view the results in Report view. This is another useful way to view a report, but compared with Print Preview, Report View does not give as accurate a picture of how the final printed report will look.

Q&A The total amount does not appear as currency, and the Services Needed field does not display all the values. How can I fix these issues?

You will see how to fix these issues in the next sections.

2

- Click the Close Print Preview button on the Print Preview tab to return to Design view.



Analyst Number 11
Analyst Name Cordelia Kerry
Client Number BA53
Client Name Bavant Animal
Street 134 Main
City Burles
State NC
Postal Code 28817
Client Type SER
Services Needed Ad, Ban, Bill, Lo
Amount Paid $0.00
Current Due $7,500.00
Total Amount 7500

business analyst name formatted correctly

not all services needed appear

total amount needs to be formatted as currency

Close Print Preview button

Figure 6–26

Other Ways

1. Click Print Preview button on Status bar

To Format a Control

When you add a calculated control to a report, you often need to format the control. You can use a control's property sheet to change the value in the appropriate property. If a property does not appear on the screen, you have two choices. You can click the tab on which the property is located. For example, if it were a control related to data, you would click the Data tab to only show data-related properties. Many people, however, prefer to click the All tab, which shows all properties, and then simply scroll through the properties, if necessary, until locating the appropriate property. The following steps change the format of the Total Amount control to Currency by changing the value of the Format property and the Decimal Places property.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

1

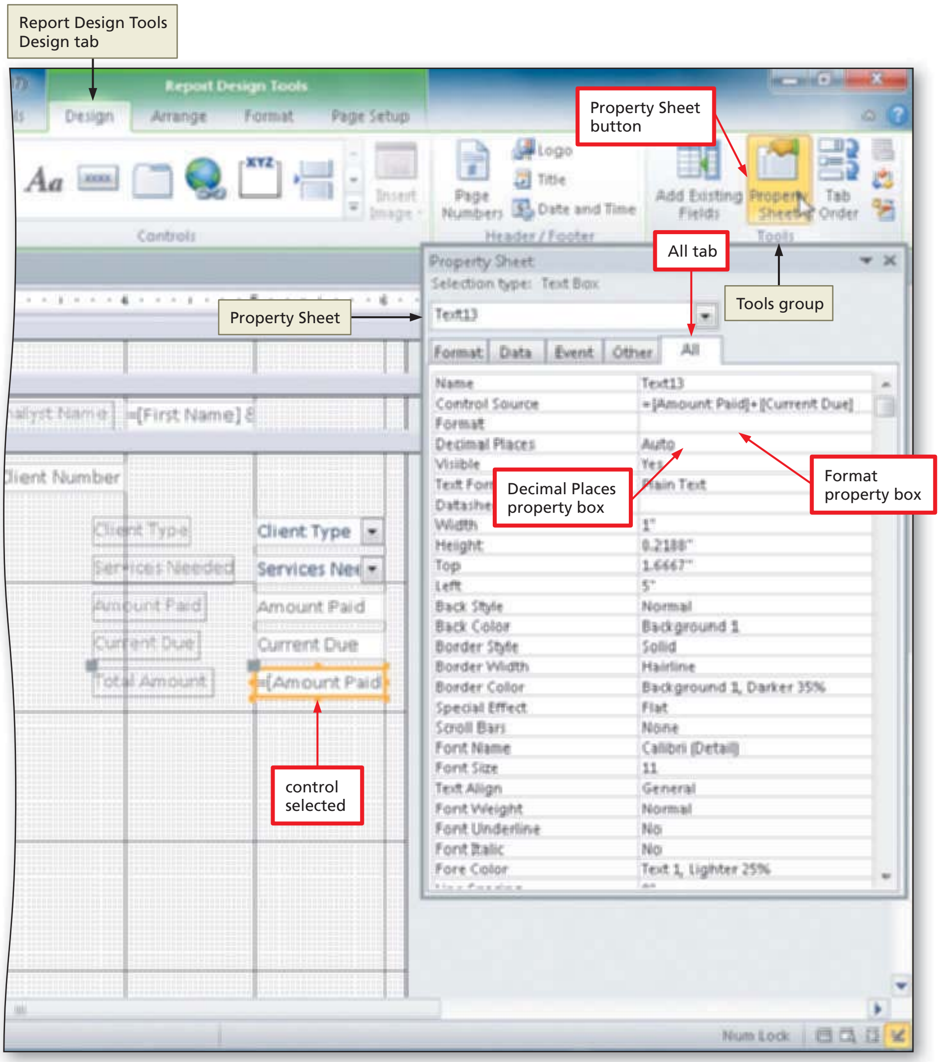
- Click the control containing the expression for Total Amount to select it and then click the Property Sheet button (Report Design Tools Design tab | Tools group) to display the property sheet.
- If necessary, click the All tab (Figure 6–27).

Experiment

- Click the other tabs in the property sheet to see the types of properties on each tab. When finished, once again click the All tab.

2

- Click the Format property box, click the arrow that appears, and then click Currency to select Currency as the format.
- Click the Decimal Places property box, click the arrow that appears, and then click 2 to select two decimal places.
- Remove the property sheet by clicking the Property Sheet button (Report Design Tools Design tab | Tools group) a second time.
- Preview the report using Print Preview to see the effect of the property changes.


Report Design Tools Design tab
Property Sheet button
All tab
Tools group
Property Sheet
Decimal Places property box
Format property box
control selected
Report Design Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
Controls
Insert Image
Page Numbers
Logo
Title
Date and Time
Header / Footer
Add Existing Fields
Property Sheet
Tab Order
Tools
Client Number
Client Type
Services Needed
Amount Paid
Current Due
Total Amount
=[First Name] &
=[Amount Paid]
Num Lock

Property Sheet
Selection type: Text Box
Text13
Format | Data | Event | Other | All

Name	Text13
Control Source	=[Amount Paid]+[Current Due]
Format	
Decimal Places	Auto
Visible	Yes
Text For	Plain Text
Datashe	
Width	1"
Height	0.2188"
Top	1.6667"
Left	5"
Back Style	Normal
Back Color	Background 1
Border Style	Solid
Border Width	Hairline
Border Color	Background 1, Darker 35%
Special Effect	Flat
Scroll Bars	None
Font Name	Calibri (Detail)
Font Size	11
Text Align	General
Font Weight	Normal
Font Underline	No
Font Italic	No
Fore Color	Text 1, Lighter 25%

Figure 6–27

Other Ways

1. Right-click control, click Properties

To Group Controls

If your report contains a collection of controls that you frequently will want to modify in the same way, you can simplify the process of selecting all the controls by grouping them. Once they are grouped, selecting any control in the group automatically selects all of the controls in the group. You then can apply the desired change to all the controls.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

The following steps group the controls within the Detail section.

1

- Click the Client Number control to select it.

Q&A Do I click the white space or the label?

The white space.

- While holding the SHIFT key down, click all the other controls in the Detail section to select them.

Q&A Does it matter in which order I select the other controls?

No. It is only important that you ultimately select all the controls.

- Release the SHIFT key.
- Display the Arrange tab.
- Click the Size/Space button (Report Design Tools Arrange tab | Sizing & Ordering group) to display the Size/Space button menu (Figure 6–28).

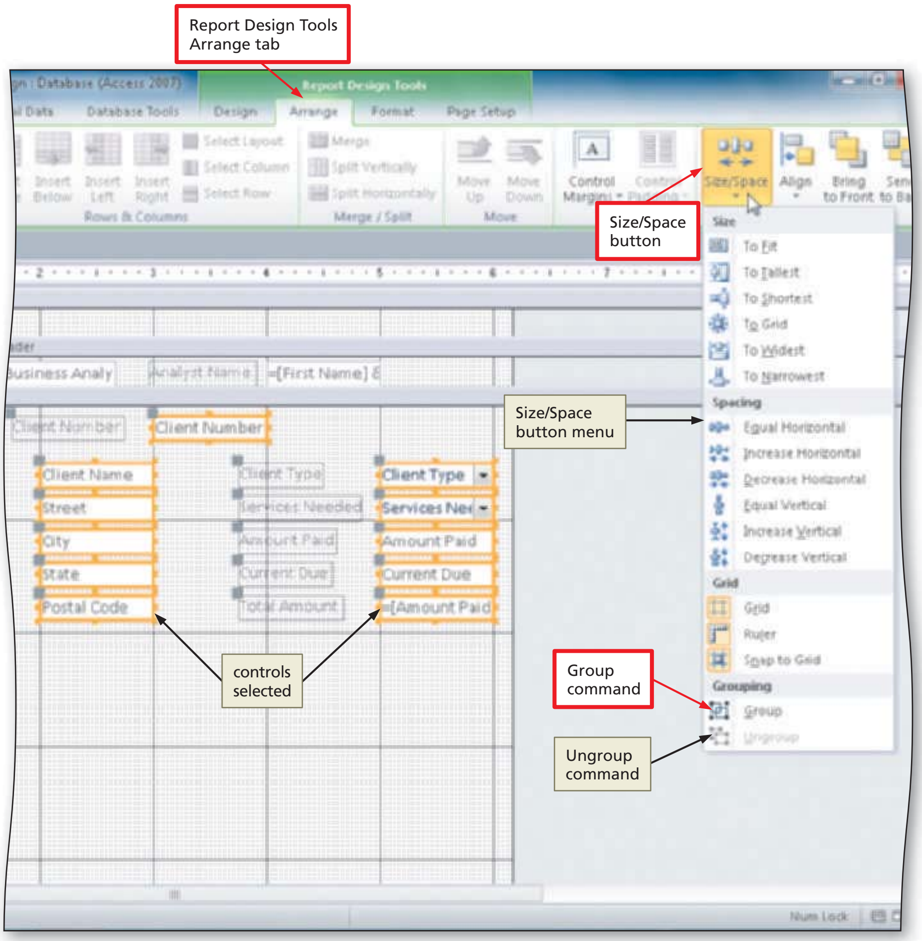

Report Design Tools Arrange tab
Size/Space button
Size/Space button menu
controls selected
Group command
Ungroup command
Size
To Fit
To Tallest
To Shortest
To Grid
To Widest
To Narrowest
Spacing
Equal Horizontal
Increase Horizontal
Decrease Horizontal
Equal Vertical
Increase Vertical
Decrease Vertical
Grid
Grid
Ruler
Snap to Grid
Grouping
Group
Ungroup
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Client Type
Services Needed
Amount Paid
Current Due
Total Amount

Figure 6–28

2

- Click Group on the Size/Space button menu to group the controls.

Q&A What if I make a mistake and group the wrong collection of controls?

Ungroup the controls using the steps shown in the next section, and then group the correct collection of controls.

TO UNGROUP CONTROLS

If you no longer need to simultaneously modify all the controls you have placed in a group, you can ungroup the controls. To do so, you would use the following steps.

1. Click any of the controls in a group to select the entire group.
2. Display the Arrange tab.
3. Click the Size/Space button (Report Design Tools Arrange tab | Sizing & Ordering group) to display the Size/Space button menu.
4. Click the Ungroup button on the Size/Space button menu to ungroup the controls.

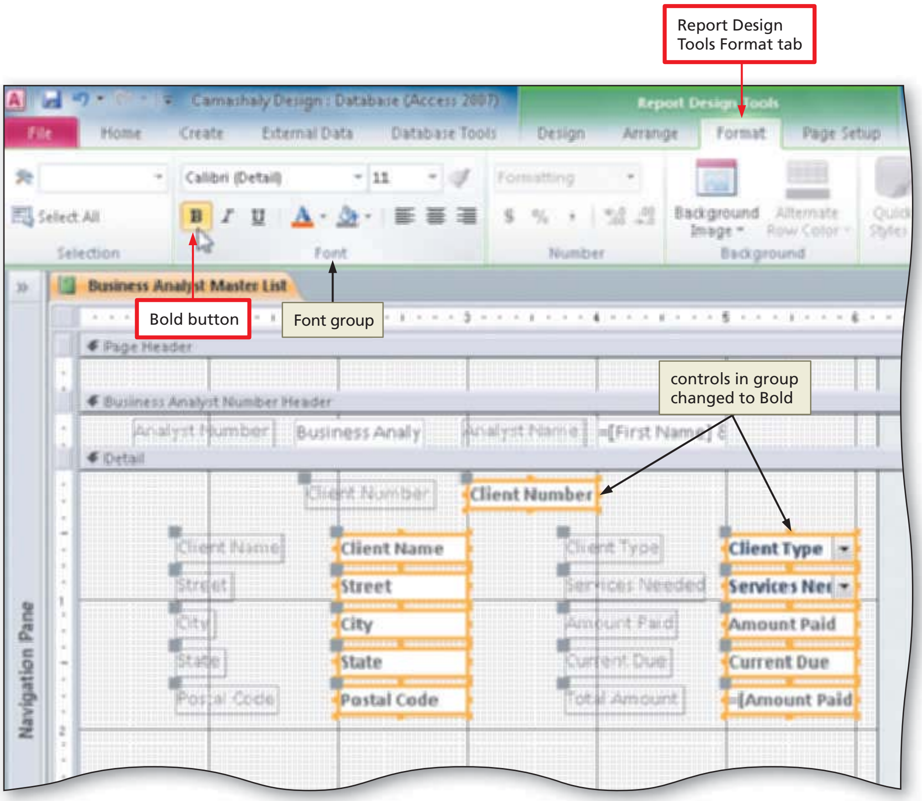
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Modify Grouped Controls

To modify grouped controls, click any control in the group to select the entire group. Any change you then make affects all controls in the group. The following steps bold the controls in the group, resize them, and then change the border style.

1

- If necessary, click any one of the grouped controls to select the group.
- Display the Format tab.
- Click the Bold button (Report Design Tools Format tab | Font group) to bold all the controls in the group (Figure 6–29).


Report Design Tools Format tab

Bold button

Font group

controls in group changed to Bold

Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
Report Design Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
Select All
Calibri (Detail)
11
Formatting
Background Image
Alternate Row Color
Quick Styles
Selection
Font
Number
Background
Business Analyst Master List
Page Header
Business Analyst Number Header
Detail
Navigation Pane
Analyst Number
Business Analy
Analyst Name
=[First Name] &
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Client Type
Services Needed
Services Nee
Amount Paid
Current Due
Total Amount
=[Amount Paid]

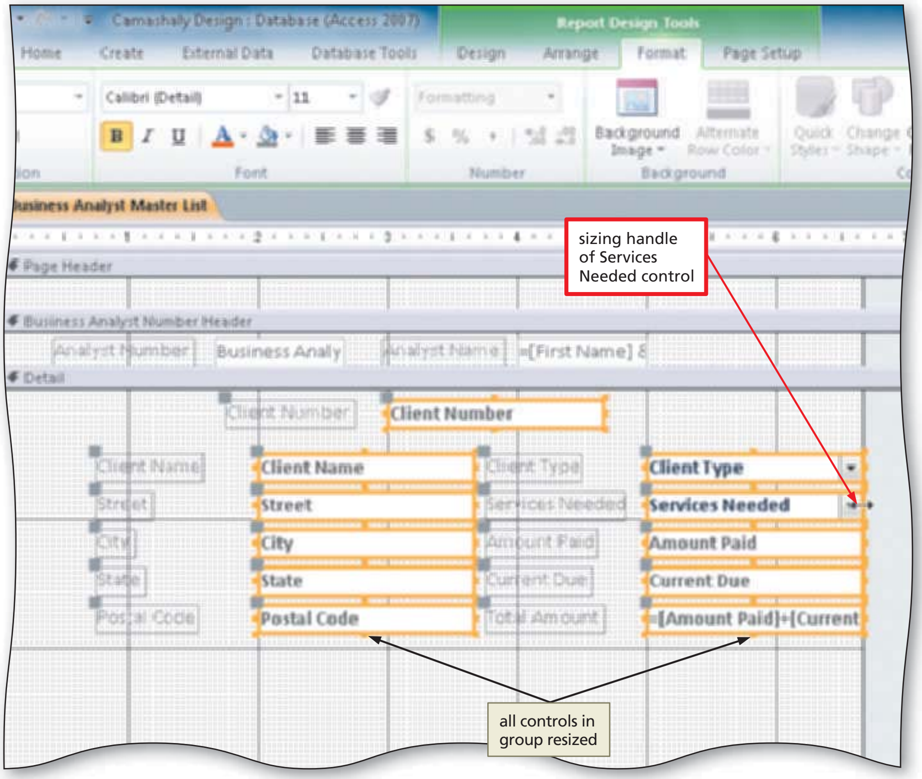
Figure 6–29

2

- Display the Design tab.
- Drag the right sizing handle of the Services Needed field to the approximate position shown in Figure 6–30 to resize all the controls in the group.

Q&A How do I change only one control in the group?

Double-click the control to select just the one control and not the entire group. You then can make any change you want to that control.


sizing handle of Services Needed control

all controls in group resized

Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
Report Design Tools
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
Calibri (Detail)
11
Formatting
Background Image
Alternate Row Color
Quick Styles
Change Shape
Font
Number
Background
Business Analyst Master List
Page Header
Business Analyst Number Header
Detail
Analyst Number
Business Analy
Analyst Name
=[First Name] &
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Client Type
Services Needed
Amount Paid
Current Due
Total Amount
=[Amount Paid]+[Current

Figure 6–30

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3

- Click the Property Sheet button (Report Design Tools Design tab | Tools group) to display the property sheet for the grouped controls.
- With the All tab (Property Sheet) selected, ensure the Border Style property is set to Solid. If it is not, click the Border Style property box to display an arrow, click the arrow to display the list of available border styles, and click Solid.
- Click the Border Width property box to display an arrow and then click the arrow to display the list of available border widths (Figure 6–31).

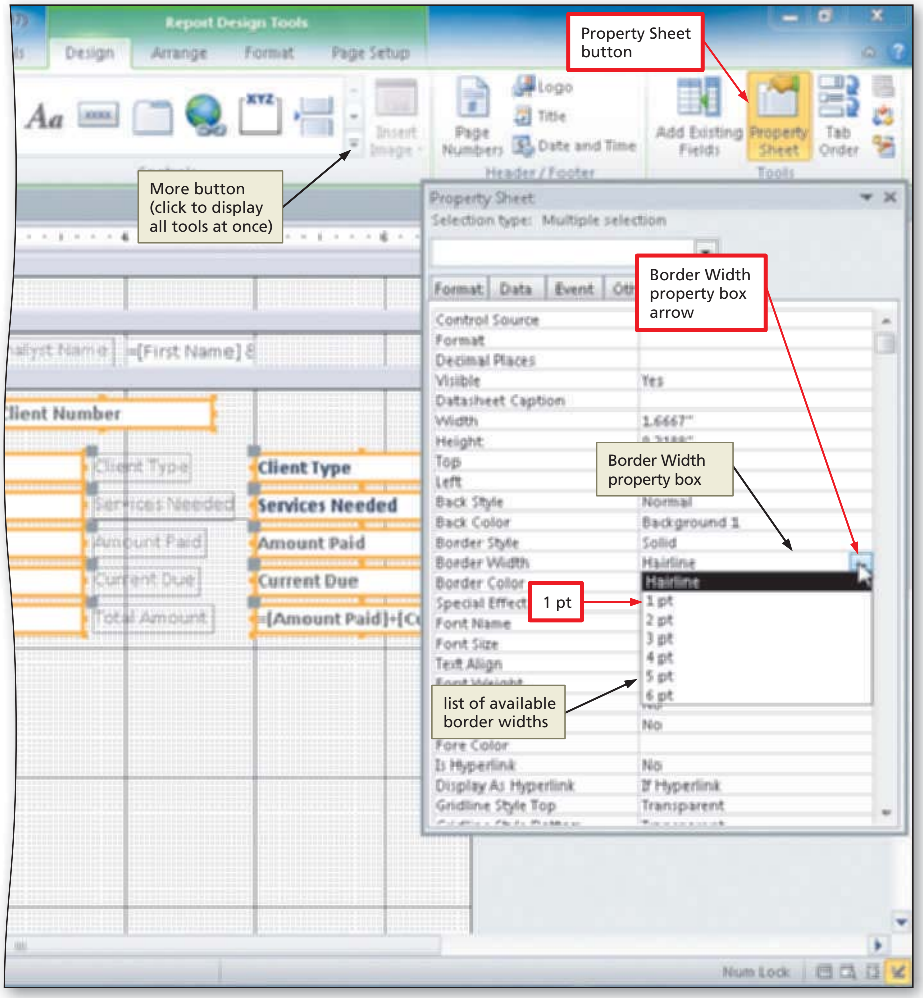

Property Sheet button
More button (click to display all tools at once)
Border Width property box arrow
Border Width property box
1 pt
list of available border widths

Figure 6–31

4

- Click 1 pt to select the border width.

Experiment

- Try the other border styles and widths to see their effects. In each case, view the report and then return to Design view. When finished, once again select Solid as the border style and 1 pt as the border width.
- Close the property sheet.

To Modify Multiple Controls That Are Not Grouped

To modify multiple controls that are not grouped together, you must simultaneously select all the controls you want to modify. To do so, click one of the controls and then hold the SHIFT key down while selecting the others. The following steps italicize all the labels in the Detail section and then bold all the controls and labels in the Business Analyst Number Header section. Finally, the steps increase the size of the Business Analyst Name control so that the entire name will be visible.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

1

- Click the label for the Client Number control to select it.
- While holding the SHIFT key down, click the labels for all the other controls in the Detail section to select them.
- Release the SHIFT key.
- Display the Format tab.
- Click the Italic button (Report Design Tools Format tab | Font group) to italicize the labels (Figure 6–32).

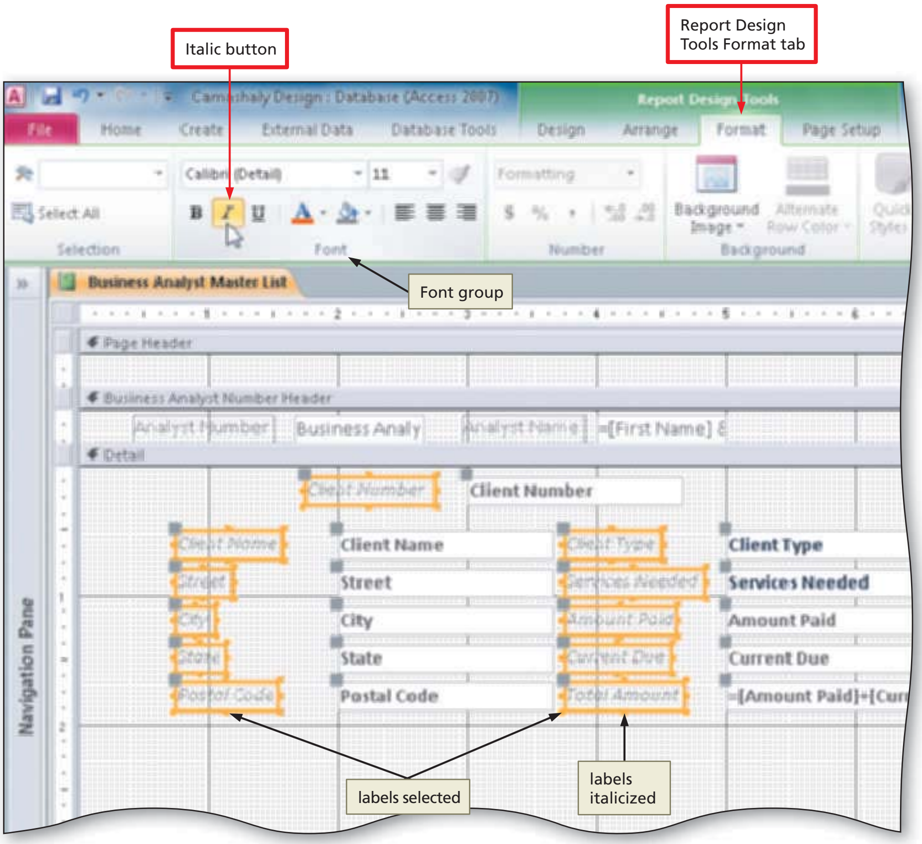

Italic button
Report Design Tools Format tab
Font group
labels selected
labels italicized

Figure 6–32

2

- Click in the vertical ruler to the left of the Business Analyst Number Header section to select all the controls in the section.

Q&A

What exactly is selected when I click in the vertical ruler?

If you picture a horizontal line through the point you clicked, any control that intersects that horizontal line would be selected.

- Click the Bold button (Report Design Tools Format tab | Font group) to bold all the selected controls (Figure 6–33).

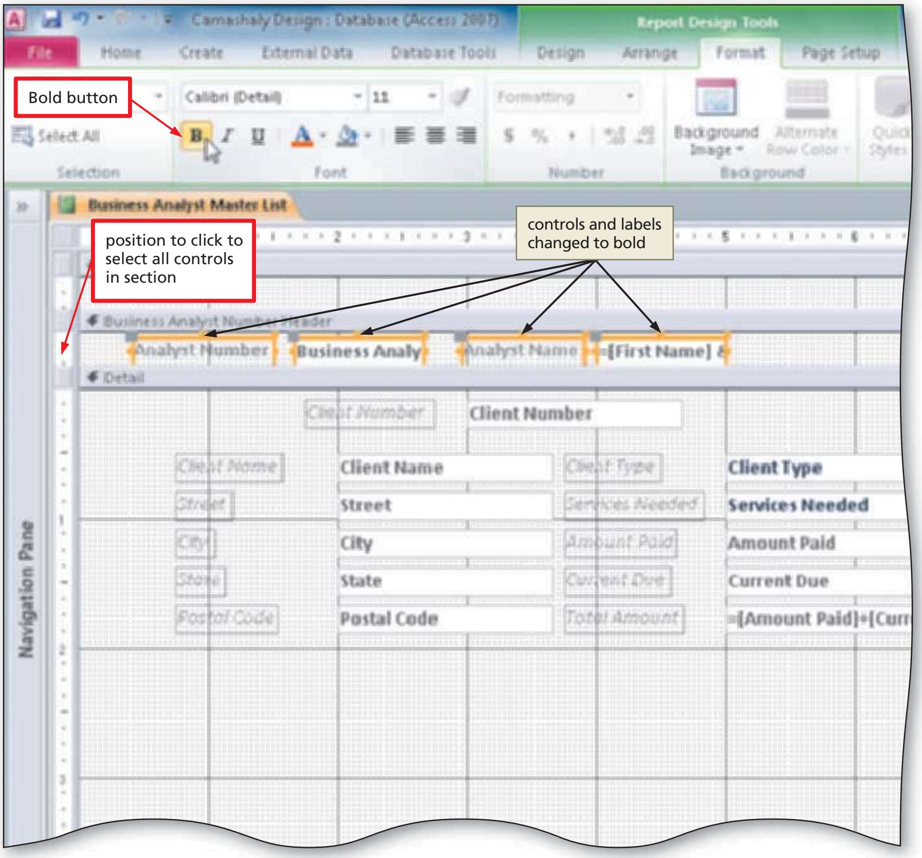

Bold button
controls and labels changed to bold
position to click to select all controls in section

Figure 6–33

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3

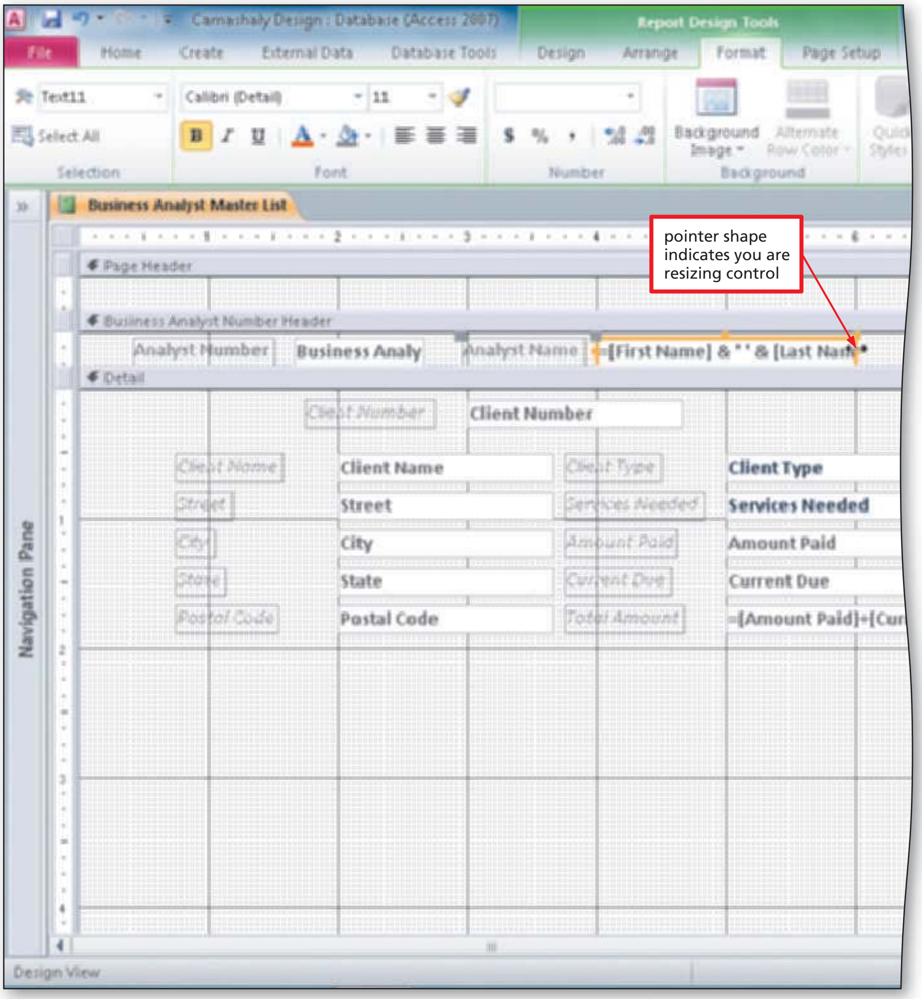
- Click outside the selected controls to deselect them. Click the control containing the expression for the business analyst's name to select it.

Q&A

Why do I have to deselect the controls and then select one of them a second time?

If you do not do so, any action you take would apply to all the selected controls rather than just the one you want.

- Drag the right sizing handle of the selected control to the approximate position shown in Figure 6–34.
- View the report and then make any necessary adjustments.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
Report Design Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
Text11
Select All
Selection
Calibri (Detail)
11
Font
Number
Background Image
Alternate Row Color
Background
Quick Styles
Business Analyst Master List
Page Header
Business Analyst Number Header
Analyst Number
Business Analy
Analyst Name
=[First Name] & " " & [Last Name]
Detail
Client Number
Client Number
Client Name
Client Name
Client Type
Client Type
Street
Street
Services Needed
Services Needed
City
City
Amount Paid
Amount Paid
State
State
Current Due
Current Due
Postal Code
Postal Code
Total Amount
=[Amount Paid]+[Cur
Navigation Pane
Design View

pointer shape indicates you are resizing control

Figure 6–34

Undoing and Saving

Remember that if you make a mistake, you often can correct it by clicking the Undo button on the Quick Access Toolbar. Clicking the Undo button will reverse your most recent change. You also can click the Undo button more than once to reverse multiple changes.

You should save your work frequently. That way, if you have problems that the Undo button will not fix, you can close the report without saving it and open it again. The report will be in exactly the state it was in at the time you saved it.

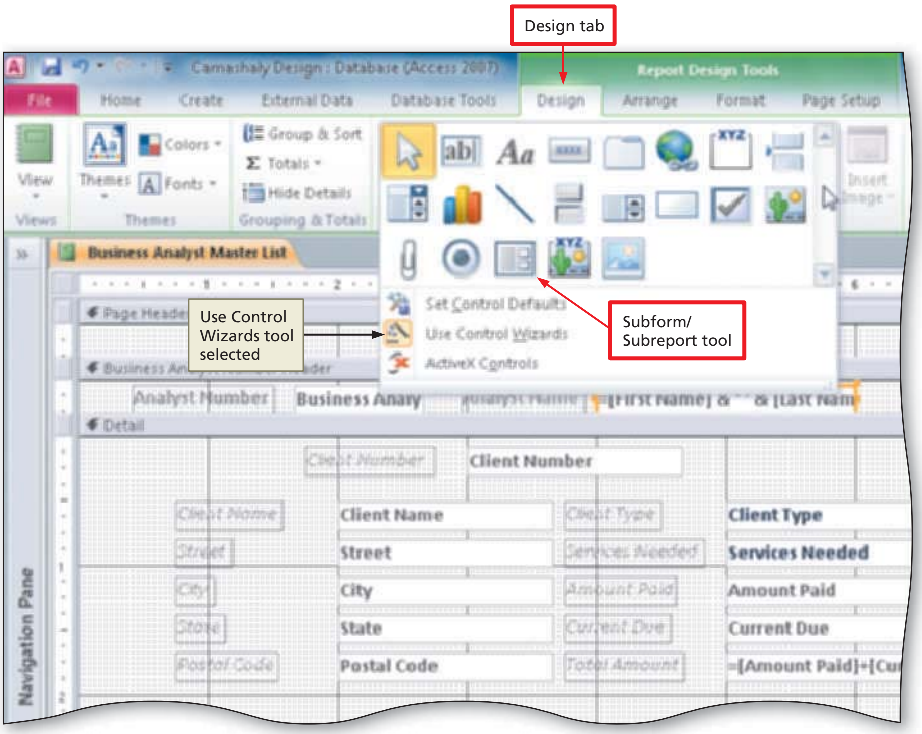
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Add a Subreport

To add a subreport to a report, you use the Subform/Subreport tool on the Design tab. Provided the Use Control Wizards button is selected, a wizard will guide you through the process of adding the subreport. The following steps add a subreport to display the course data.

1

- Display the Design tab.
- Click the More button (Report Design Tools Design tab | Controls group) (shown in Figure 6–31) to display a menu of available tools (Figure 6–35).



Design tab

Use Control Wizards tool selected

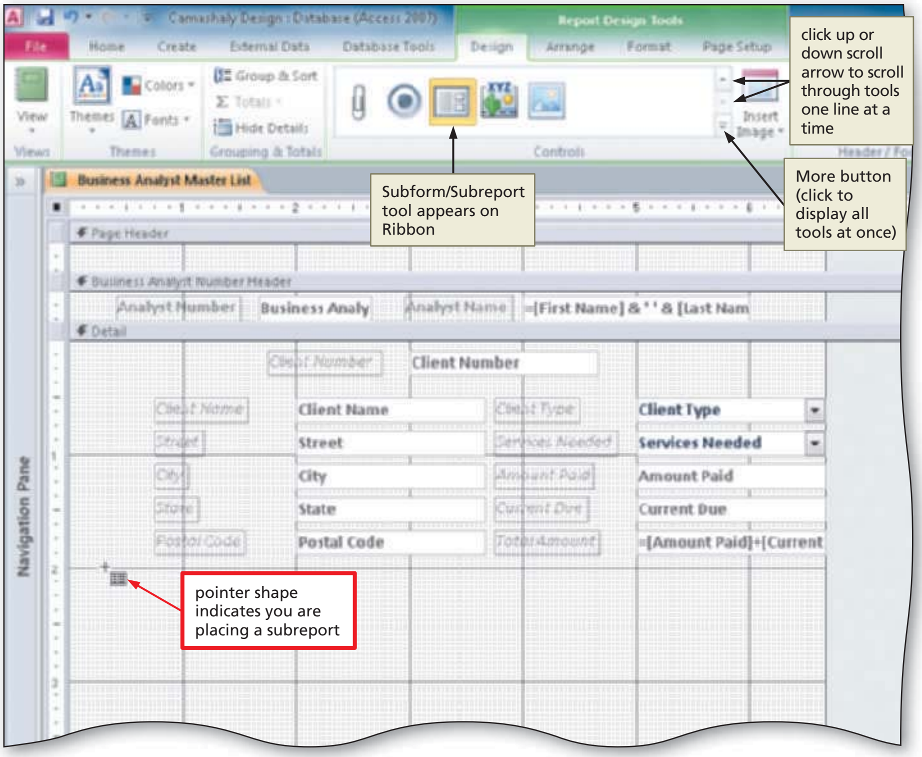
Subform/ Subreport tool

Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
Report Design Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
View
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Group & Sort
Totals
Hide Details
Views
Grouping & Totals
Insert Image
Business Analyst Master List
Page Header
Business Analyst Number Header
Set Control Defaults
Use Control Wizards
ActiveX Controls
Analyst Number
Business Analy
=[First Name] & " " & [Last Nam
Detail
Client Number
Client Name
Client Type
Street
Services Needed
City
Amount Paid
State
Current Due
Postal Code
Total Amount
=[Amount Paid]+[Cu
Navigation Pane

Figure 6–35

2

- Be sure the Use Control Wizards button is selected, click the Subform/Subreport tool, and then move the mouse pointer, which has changed to a plus sign with a subreport, to the approximate position shown in Figure 6–36.



click up or down scroll arrow to scroll through tools one line at a time

Subform/Subreport tool appears on Ribbon

More button (click to display all tools at once)

pointer shape indicates you are placing a subreport

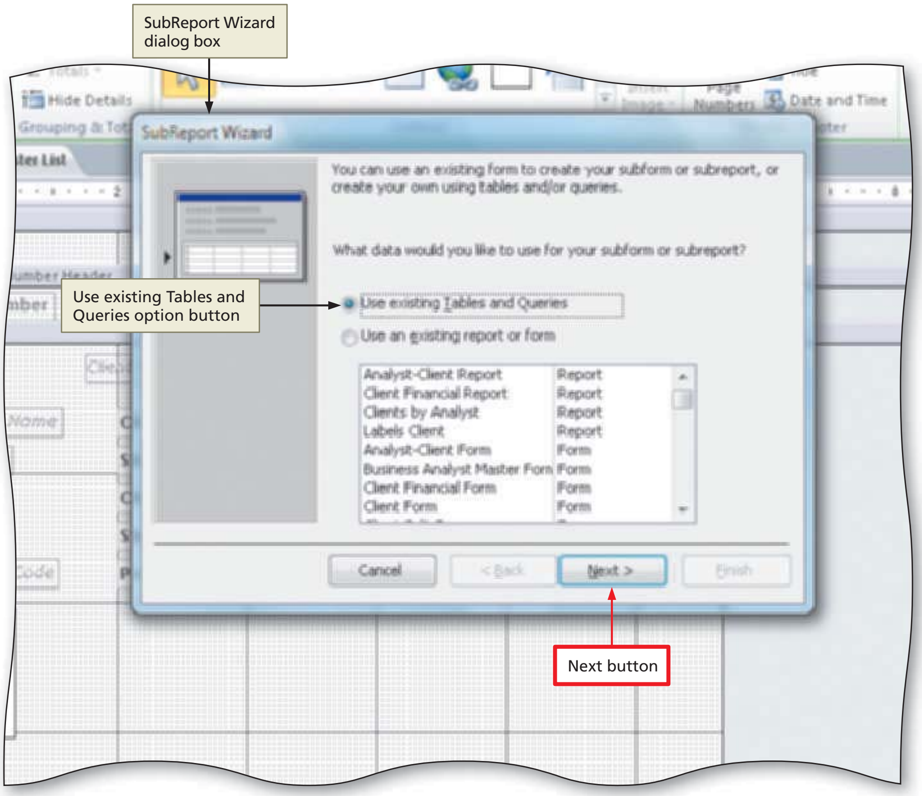
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
Report Design Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
View
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Group & Sort
Totals
Hide Details
Views
Grouping & Totals
Controls
Insert Image
Header / Fo
Business Analyst Master List
Page Header
Business Analyst Number Header
Analyst Number
Business Analy
Analyst Name
=[First Name] & " " & [Last Nam
Detail
Client Number
Client Name
Client Type
Street
Services Needed
City
Amount Paid
State
Current Due
Postal Code
Total Amount
=[Amount Paid]+[Current
Navigation Pane

Figure 6–36

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3

- Click the position shown in Figure 6–36 to place the subreport and display the SubReport Wizard dialog box. Be sure the 'Use existing Tables and Queries' option button is selected (Figure 6–37).



SubReport Wizard dialog box

You can use an existing form to create your subform or subreport, or create your own using tables and/or queries.

What data would you like to use for your subform or subreport?

● Use existing Tables and Queries

○ Use an existing report or form

Analyst-Client Report	Report
Client Financial Report	Report
Clients by Analyst	Report
Labels Client	Report
Analyst-Client Form	Form
Business Analyst Master Form	Form
Client Financial Form	Form
Client Form	Form

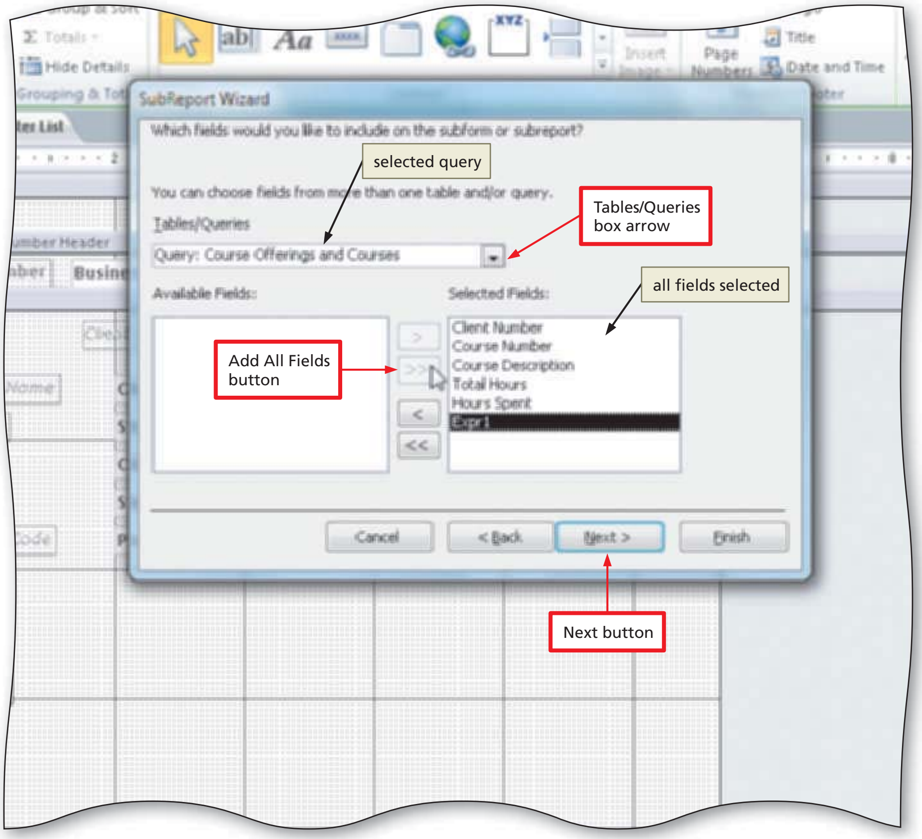
Use existing Tables and Queries option button

Next button

Figure 6–37

4

- Click the Next button.
- Click the Tables/Queries box arrow.
- Scroll down until Query: Course Offerings and Courses is visible, click Query: Course Offerings and Courses, and then click the Add All Fields button to select all the fields in the query (Figure 6–38).



Which fields would you like to include on the subform or subreport?

You can choose fields from more than one table and/or query.

Tables/Queries: Query: Course Offerings and Courses

Available Fields:

Selected Fields:
Client Number
Course Number
Course Description
Total Hours
Hours Spent
Expr1

selected query

Tables/Queries box arrow

all fields selected

Add All Fields button

Next button

Figure 6–38

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

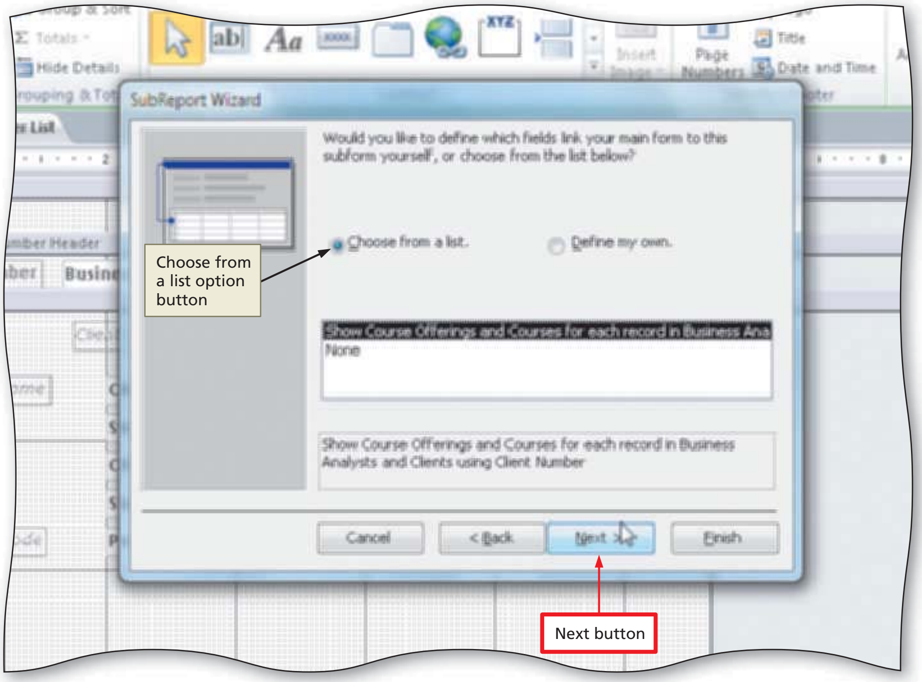
5

- Click the Next button and then ensure the ‘Choose from a list’ option button is selected (Figure 6–39).

Q&A

What is the purpose of this dialog box?

You use this dialog box to indicate the fields that link the main report (referred to as “form”) to the subreport (referred to as “subform”). If the fields have the same name, as they often will, you can simply select Choose from a list and then accept the selection Access already has made.


SubReport Wizard
Cancel
< Back
Next >
Finish

Would you like to define which fields link your main form to this subform yourself, or choose from the list below?

● Choose from a list.

○ Define my own.

Show Course Offerings and Courses for each record in Business Ana

None

Show Course Offerings and Courses for each record in Business Analysts and Clients using Client Number

Choose from a list option button

Next button

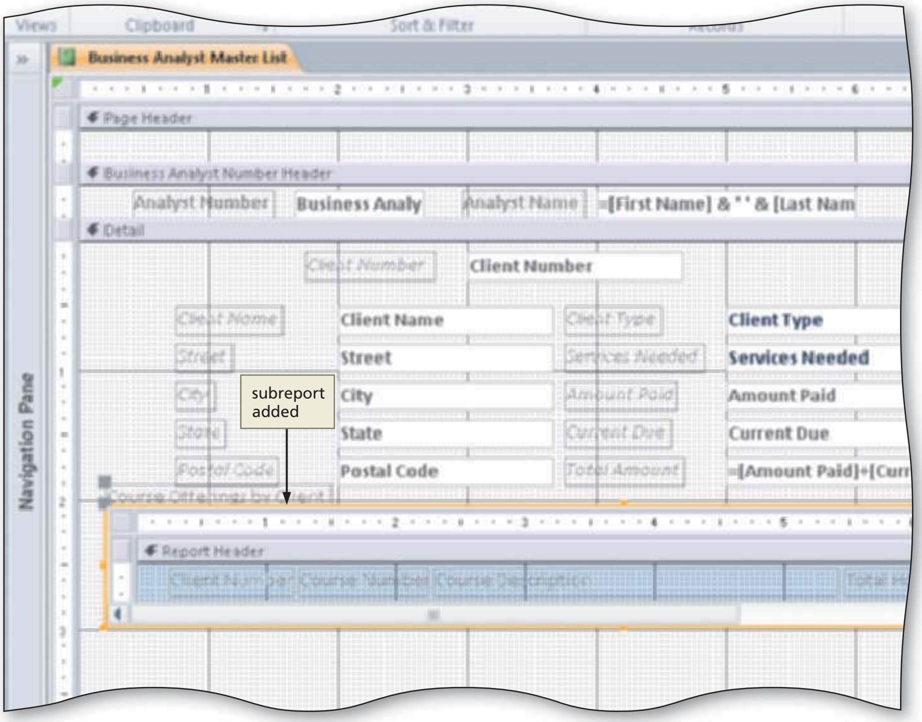
Figure 6–39

6

- Click the Next button, type `Course Offerings by Client` as the name of the subreport, and then click the Finish button to add the subreport to the Business Analyst Master List report (Figure 6–40).

7

- Click outside the subreport to deselect the subreport.
- Click the Save button on the Quick Access Toolbar to save your changes.
- Close the Business Analyst Master List report.


Business Analyst Master List
Page Header
Business Analyst Number Header
Analyst Number
Business Analy
Analyst Name
=[First Name] & " " & [Last Nam
Detail
Client Number
Client Number
Client Name
Client Name
Client Type
Client Type
Street
Street
Services Needed
Services Needed
City
City
Amount Paid
Amount Paid
State
State
Current Due
Current Due
Postal Code
Postal Code
Total Amount
=[Amount Paid]+[Curr
Course Offerings by Client
Report Header
Client Number
Course Number
Course Description
Total Ho
Navigation Pane

subreport added

Figure 6–40

Break Point: If you wish to stop working through the chapter at this point, you can resume the project at a later time by starting Access, opening the database called Camashaly Design, and continuing to follow the steps from this location forward.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Open the Subreport in Design View

The subreport appears as a separate report in the Navigation Pane. It can be modified just like any other report. The following step opens the subreport in Design view.

1

- Open the Navigation Pane, scroll down so that the Course Offerings by Client report appears, and then right-click the Course Offerings by Client report to produce a shortcut menu.
- Click Design View on the shortcut menu to open the subreport in Design view.
- Close the Navigation Pane (Figure 6–41).

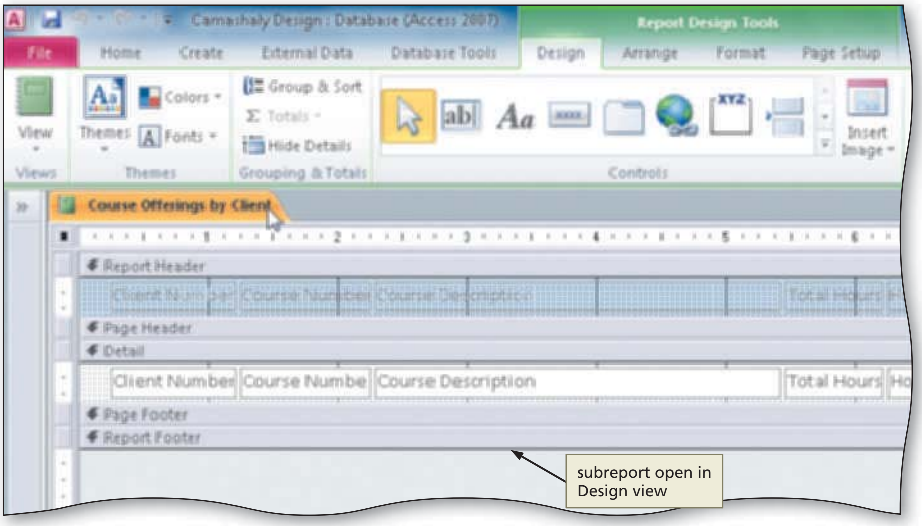

Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
Report Design Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
View
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Group & Sort
Totals
Hide Details
Views
Grouping & Totals
Controls
Insert Image
Course Offerings by Client
Report Header
Client Number
Course Number
Course Description
Total Hours
Page Header
Detail
Page Footer
Report Footer
subreport open in Design view

Figure 6–41

Print Layout Issues

If there is a problem with your report, for example, a report that is too wide for the printed page, you will get a green triangular symbol in the upper-left corner of the report. The green triangle is called an error indicator. Clicking it displays an Error Checking Options button. Clicking the Error Checking Options button produces the Error Checking Options menu, as shown in Figure 6–42.

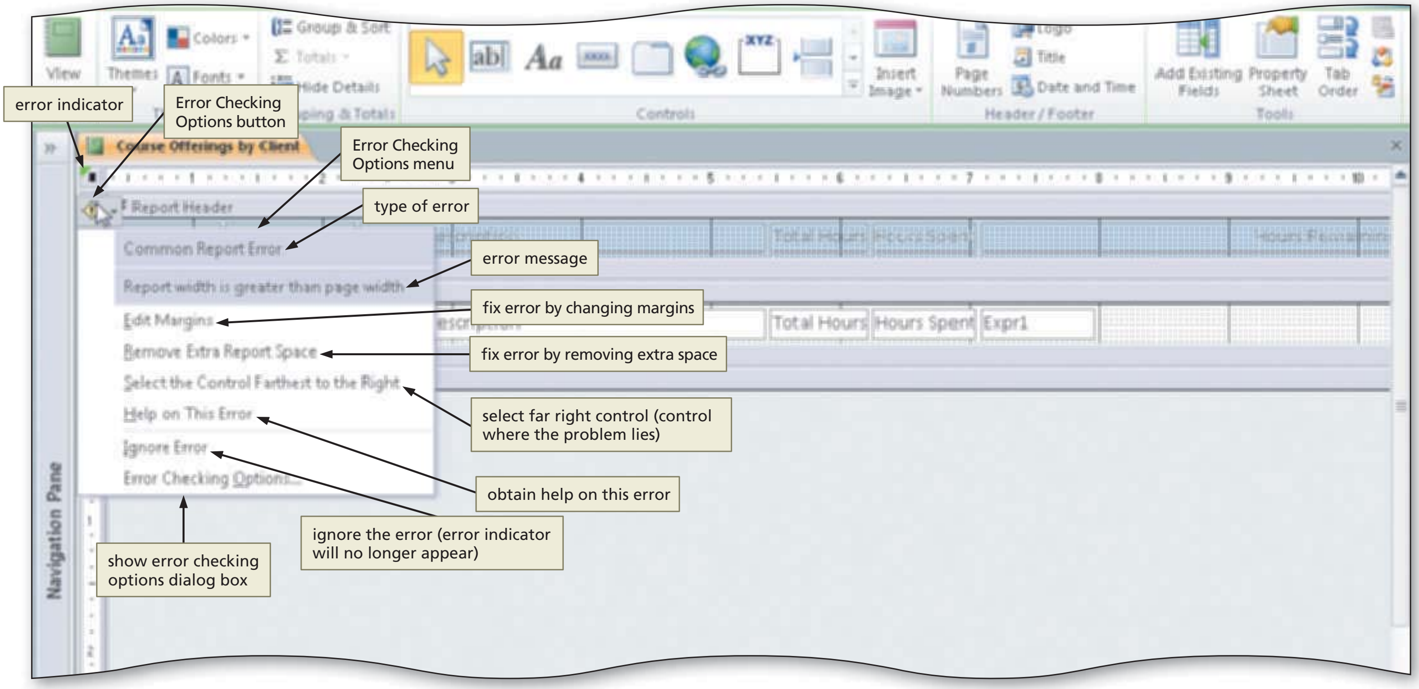

View
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Group & Sort
Totals
Hide Details
Grouping & Totals
Controls
Insert Image
Page Numbers
Logo
Title
Date and Time
Header / Footer
Add Existing Fields
Property Sheet
Tab Order
Tools
Course Offerings by Client
Report Header
Navigation Pane
Common Report Error
Report width is greater than page width
Edit Margins
Remove Extra Report Space
Select the Control Farthest to the Right
Help on This Error
Ignore Error
Error Checking Options...
Total Hours
Hours Spent
Expr1
error indicator
Error Checking Options button
Error Checking Options menu
type of error
error message
fix error by changing margins
fix error by removing extra space
select far right control (control where the problem lies)
obtain help on this error
ignore the error (error indicator will no longer appear)
show error checking options dialog box

Figure 6–42

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

BTW

Subreports

Subreports provide more control in presenting data effectively than multiple levels of grouping can. Because grouping places headers in columns, it often can be difficult to determine the relationship between the group header and the detail. Also, you might want to present subreports side by side. You cannot do that with grouping.

The first line in the menu is simply a statement of the type of error that occurred. The second is a description of the specific error; in this case, the fact that the report width is greater than the page width. This situation could lead to data not appearing where you expect it to, as well as the printing of some blank pages.

The next three lines provide alternatives for addressing the error. You could change the margins to allow more space for the report. You could remove some extra space. You could select the control farthest to the right and move it. The fourth line gives more detailed help on the error. The Ignore Error command instructs Access to not consider this situation an error. Selecting Ignore Error would cause the error indicator to disappear. The final line displays the Error Checking Options dialog box, where you can make other changes.

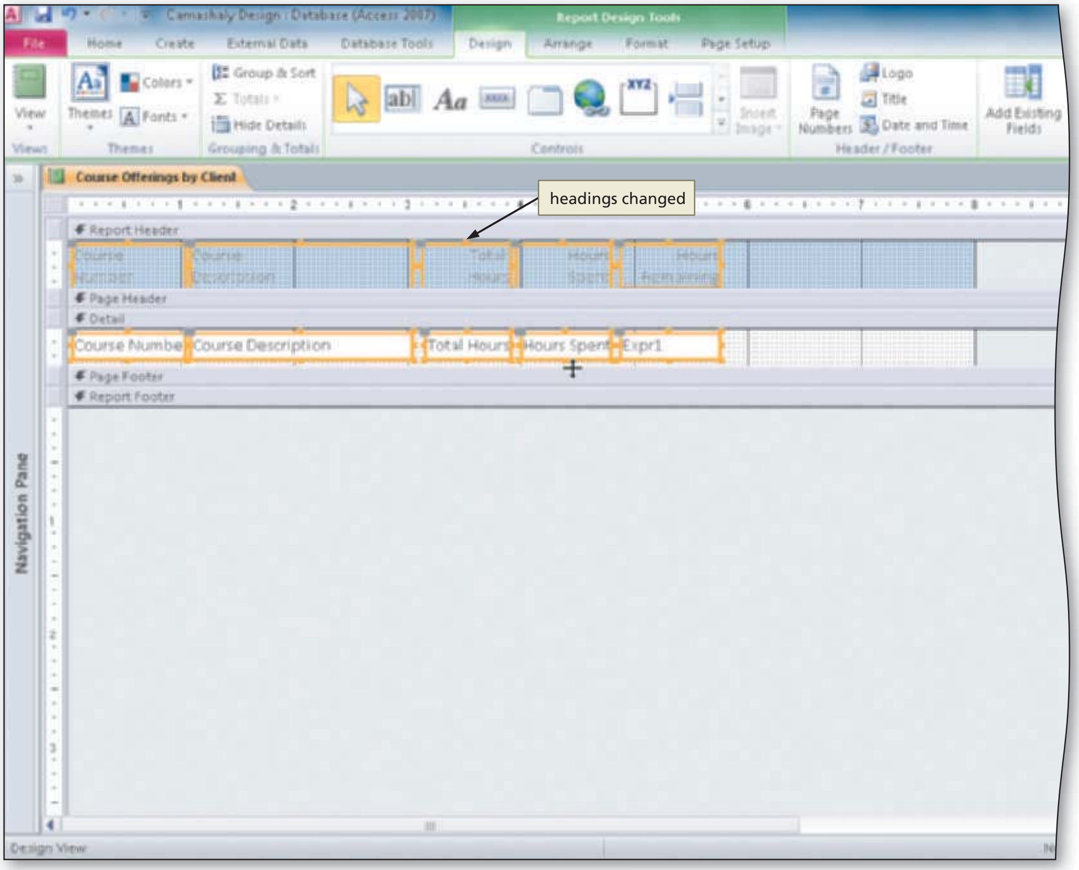
Later in this chapter, you will fix the problem by changing the width of the report, so you do not need to take any action at this time.

To Modify the Controls in the Subreport

Because the client number appears in the main report, it does not need to be duplicated in the subreport. In addition, the column headers in the subreport should extend over two lines, as shown in Figure 6–1a on page AC 339. The following step modifies the subreport by deleting the Client Number control and revising the column headings.

1

- Click the Client Number control in the Detail section to select the control. Hold the SHIFT key down and click the Client Number control in the Report Header section to select both controls.
- With both controls selected, press the DELETE key to delete the controls.
- Change the labels in the Report Header section to match those shown in Figure 6–43. To extend a heading over two lines, click in front of the second word to produce an insertion point and then press SHIFT+ENTER to move the second word to a second line.
- Change the sizes and positions of the controls to match those in the figure by selecting the controls and dragging the sizing handles.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
Report Design Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
View
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Group & Sort
Totals
Hide Details
Insert Image
Page Numbers
Logo
Title
Date and Time
Add Existing Fields
Views
Grouping & Totals
Controls
Header / Footer
Course Offerings by Client
Report Header
Course Number
Course Description
Total Hours
Hours Spent
Hours Remaining
Page Header
Detail
Course Numbe
Course Description
Total Hours
Hours Spent
Expr1
Page Footer
Report Footer
Navigation Pane
Design View

headings changed

Figure 6–43

Q&A

Why does Expr1 appear in the Detail section under the Hours Remaining label?

Expr1 indicates that Hours Remaining is a calculated control.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Experiment

- There is currently a space between the two names in the Report Header labels. To delete the space, click immediately after the first word to produce an insertion point and then press the DELETE key. Try the various alignments (left, right, and center) before removing the space. Remove the space and try the various alignments again to see if the removal of the space makes any difference. When finished, make sure your labels look like the one in the figure.

To Change the Can Grow Property

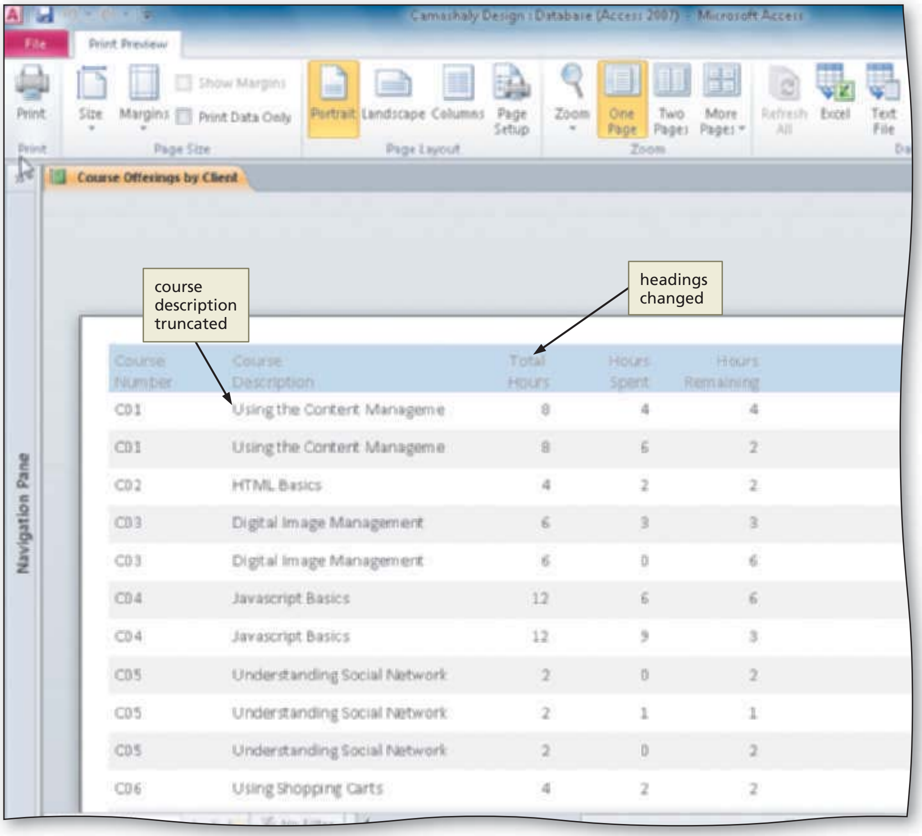
If you preview the report, you will see that some of the course descriptions are too long to fit in the available space. This problem can be addressed in several ways.

1. Move the controls to allow more space in between controls. Then, drag the appropriate handles on the controls that need to be expanded to enlarge them.
2. Use the Font Size property to select a smaller font size. This will allow more data to fit in the same space.
3. Use the Can Grow property. By changing the value of this property from No to Yes, the data can be spread over two lines, thus allowing all the data to print. Access will split data at natural break points, such as commas, spaces, and hyphens.

The third approach is the easiest to use and also produces a very readable report. The following steps change the Can Grow property for the Course Description field. First, you preview the report to verify that there are some course descriptions that are too long for the available space and then make the necessary corrections.

1

- Click the View button arrow and then click Print Preview to preview the report (Figure 6–44).


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Print Preview
Print
Size
Margins
Show Margins
Print Data Only
Page Size
Portrait
Landscape
Columns
Page Setup
Page Layout
Zoom
One Page
Two Pages
More Pages
Refresh All
Excel
Text File
Course Offeings by Client
Navigation Pane

course description truncated

headings changed

Course Number	Course Description	Total Hours	Hours Spent	Hours Remaining
C01	Using the Content Manageme	8	4	4
C01	Using the Content Manageme	8	6	2
C02	HTML Basics	4	2	2
C03	Digital Image Management	6	3	3
C03	Digital Image Management	6	0	6
C04	Javascript Basics	12	6	6
C04	Javascript Basics	12	9	3
C05	Understanding Social Network	2	0	2
C05	Understanding Social Network	2	1	1
C05	Understanding Social Network	2	0	2
C06	Using Shopping Carts	4	2	2

Figure 6–44

2

- Click the Close Print Preview button to return to Design view.
- Click the Course Description control to select it.
- Click the Property Sheet button (Report Design Tools Design tab | Tools group) to display the property sheet.
- With the All tab selected, scroll down until the Can Grow property appears, and then click the Can Grow property box arrow to display the list of possible values for the Can Grow property (Figure 6–45).

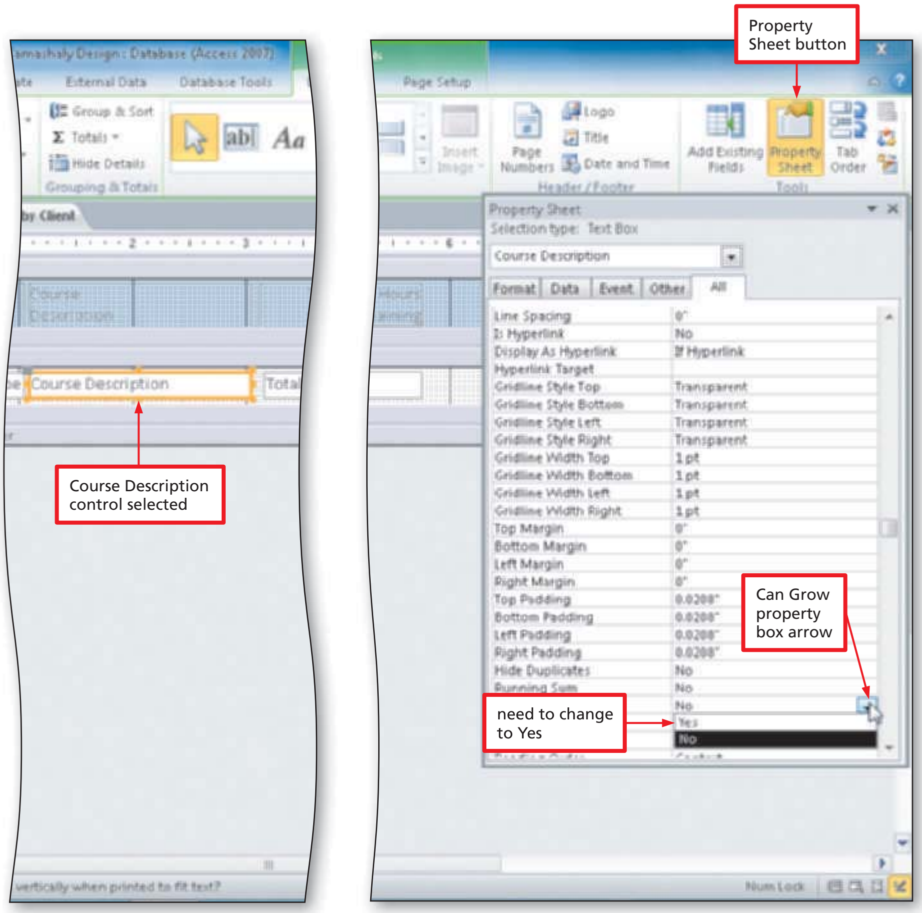
Q&A

What is the effect of the Can Shrink property?

If the value of the Can Shrink property is set to Yes, Access will remove blank lines that occur when the field is empty.

3

- Click Yes in the list to allow the Course Description control to grow as needed.
- Close the property sheet.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
External Data
Database Tools
Group & Sort
Totals
Hide Details
Grouping & Totals
by Client
Course Description
Total
Hours Remaining
Page Setup
Insert Image
Page Numbers
Logo
Title
Date and Time
Header / Footer
Add Existing Fields
Property Sheet
Tab Order
Tools
vertically when printed to fit text?
Num Lock

Property Sheet
Selection type: Text Box

Course Description

Format | Data | Event | Other | All

Line Spacing	0"
Is Hyperlink	No
Display As Hyperlink	If Hyperlink
Hyperlink Target	
Gridline Style Top	Transparent
Gridline Style Bottom	Transparent
Gridline Style Left	Transparent
Gridline Style Right	Transparent
Gridline Width Top	1 pt
Gridline Width Bottom	1 pt
Gridline Width Left	1 pt
Gridline Width Right	1 pt
Top Margin	0"
Bottom Margin	0"
Left Margin	0"
Right Margin	0"
Top Padding	0.0208"
Bottom Padding	0.0208"
Left Padding	0.0208"
Right Padding	0.0208"
Hide Duplicates	No
Running Sum	No
	No

Yes
No

Property Sheet button

Course Description control selected

Can Grow property box arrow

need to change to Yes

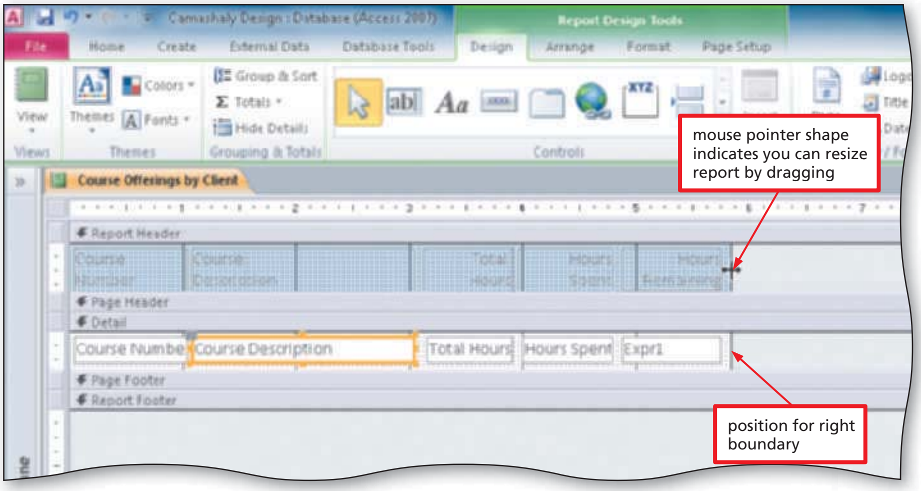
Figure 6–45

To Change the Appearance of the Controls in the Subreport

The following steps change the controls in the Detail section to Bold and the controls in the Report Header section to italic. They also change the background color in the Report Header section to white.

1

- Drag the right boundary of the subreport to the approximate position shown in Figure 6–46.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
Report Design Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
View
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Group & Sort
Totals
Hide Details
Views
Themes
Grouping & Totals
Controls
Logo
Title
Course Offerings by Client
Report Header
Course Number
Course Description
Total Hours
Hours Spent
Hours Remaining
Page Header
Detail
Course Numbe
Course Description
Total Hours
Hours Spent
Expr1
Page Footer
Report Footer

mouse pointer shape indicates you can resize report by dragging

position for right boundary

Figure 6–46

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2

- Display the Format tab.
- Click the ruler to the left of the controls in the Detail section to select the controls, and then click the Bold button (Report Design Tools Format tab | Font group) to bold the controls.
- Click the ruler to the left of the controls in the Report Header section to select the controls, and then click the Italic button (Report Design Tools Format tab | Font group) to italicize the controls.
- Click the title bar for the Report Header to select the header without selecting any of the controls in the header.
- Click the Background Color button arrow (Report Design Tools Format tab | Font group) to display a color palette (Figure 6–47).

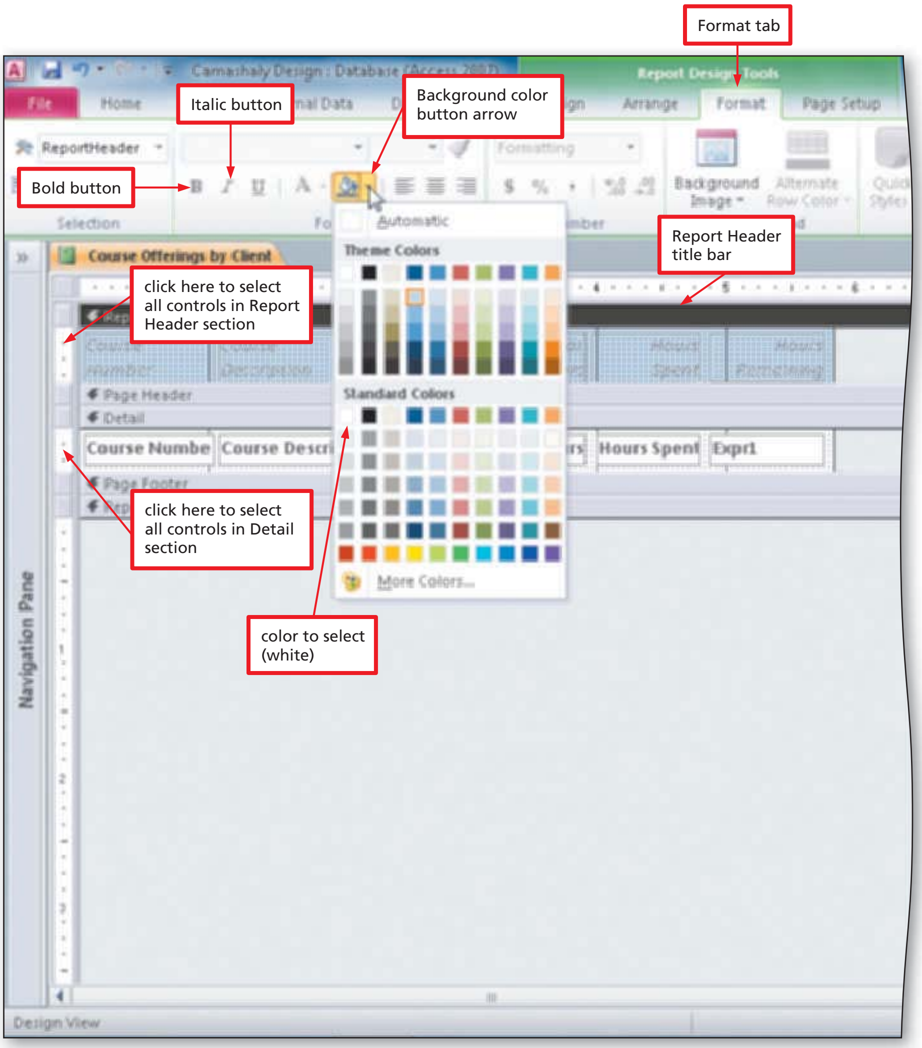

Format tab
Italic button
Background color button arrow
Bold button
Report Header title bar
click here to select all controls in Report Header section
click here to select all controls in Detail section
color to select (white)
Report Design Tools
Home
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
ReportHeader
Selection
Automatic
Theme Colors
Standard Colors
More Colors...
Background Image
Alternate Row Color
Course Offerings by Client
Page Header
Detail
Course Numbe
Course Descri
Hours Spent
Expr1
Page Footer
Navigation Pane
Design View

Figure 6–47

3

- Click White in the first row, first column of the Standard Colors to change the background color to white.

Q&A

What is the difference between clicking a color in the Theme colors and clicking a color in the Standard Colors?

The theme colors are specific to the currently selected theme. The first column, for example, represents "background 1," one of the selected background colors in the theme. The various entries in the column represent different intensities of the color at the top of the column. The colors would be different if a different theme were selected. If you select one of the theme colors and a different theme is selected in the future, the color you selected would change to the color in the same location. On the other hand, if you select a standard color, a change of theme would have no effect on the color.

- Click the Save button on the Quick Access Toolbar to save the changes.
- Close the Course Offerings by Client subreport.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Resize the Subreport and the Report in Design View

The following steps resize the subreport control in the main report and then resize the main report.

1

- Open the Navigation Pane.
- Open the Business Analyst Master List in Design view.
- Close the Navigation Pane.
- Click the subreport and then drag the right sizing handle to change the size to the approximate size shown in Figure 6–48, and then drag the subreport to the approximate position shown in the figure.

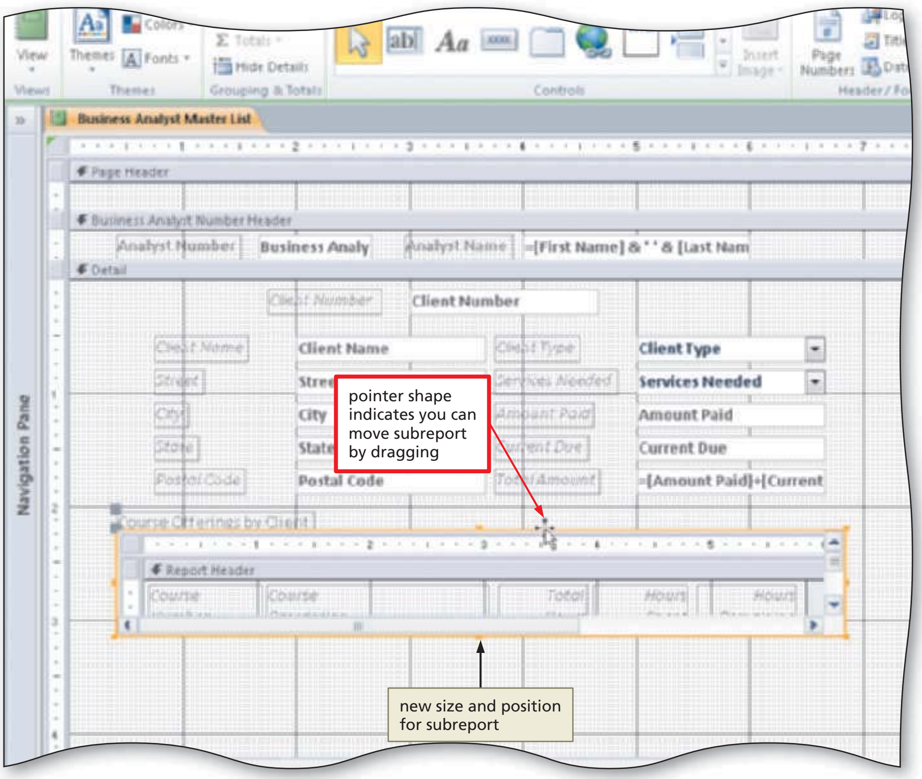

Business Analyst Master List
Page Header
Business Analyst Number Header
Detail
Navigation Pane
Course Offerings by Client
Report Header
pointer shape indicates you can move subreport by dragging
new size and position for subreport

Figure 6–48

2

- Scroll down in the main report so that the lower boundary of the Detail section appears, and then drag the lower boundary of the section so that there is approximately the same amount of space below the subreport as that shown in Figure 6–49.

Q&A

I scrolled down to see the lower boundary of the Detail section and the controls are no longer on the screen. What is the easiest way to drag the boundary when the position to which I want to drag it is not visible?

You do not need to see the location to drag to it. As you get close to the top of the visible portion of the screen, Access will automatically scroll. You might find it easier, however, to drag the boundary near the top of the visible portion of the report, use the scroll bar to scroll up, and then drag some more. You might have to scroll a couple of times.

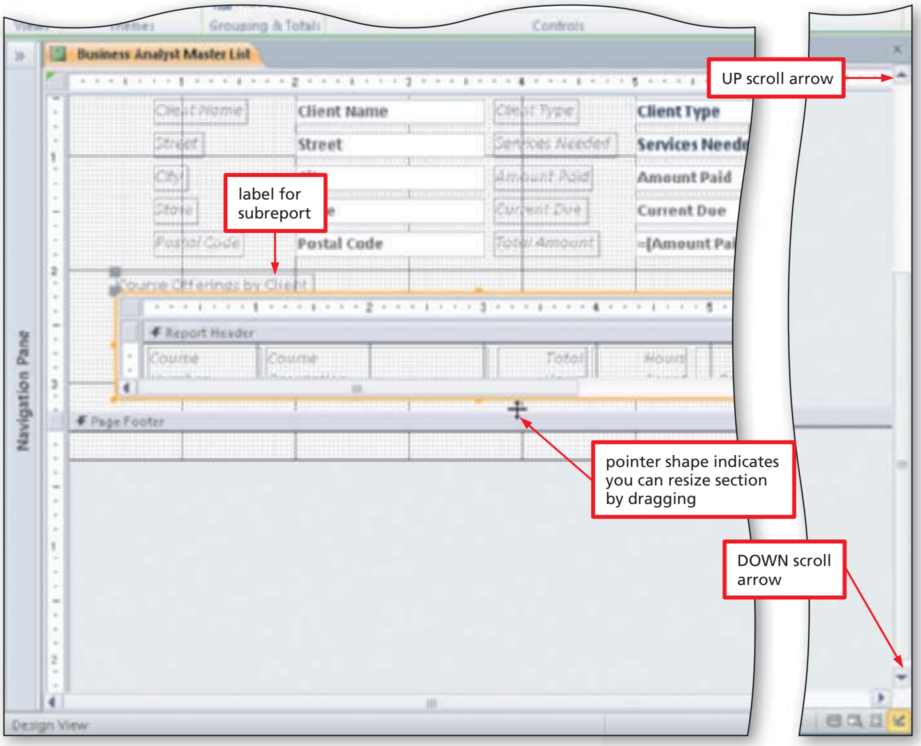

Business Analyst Master List
UP scroll arrow
label for subreport
Course Offerings by Client
Report Header
Page Footer
pointer shape indicates you can resize section by dragging
DOWN scroll arrow
Navigation Pane
Design View

Figure 6–49

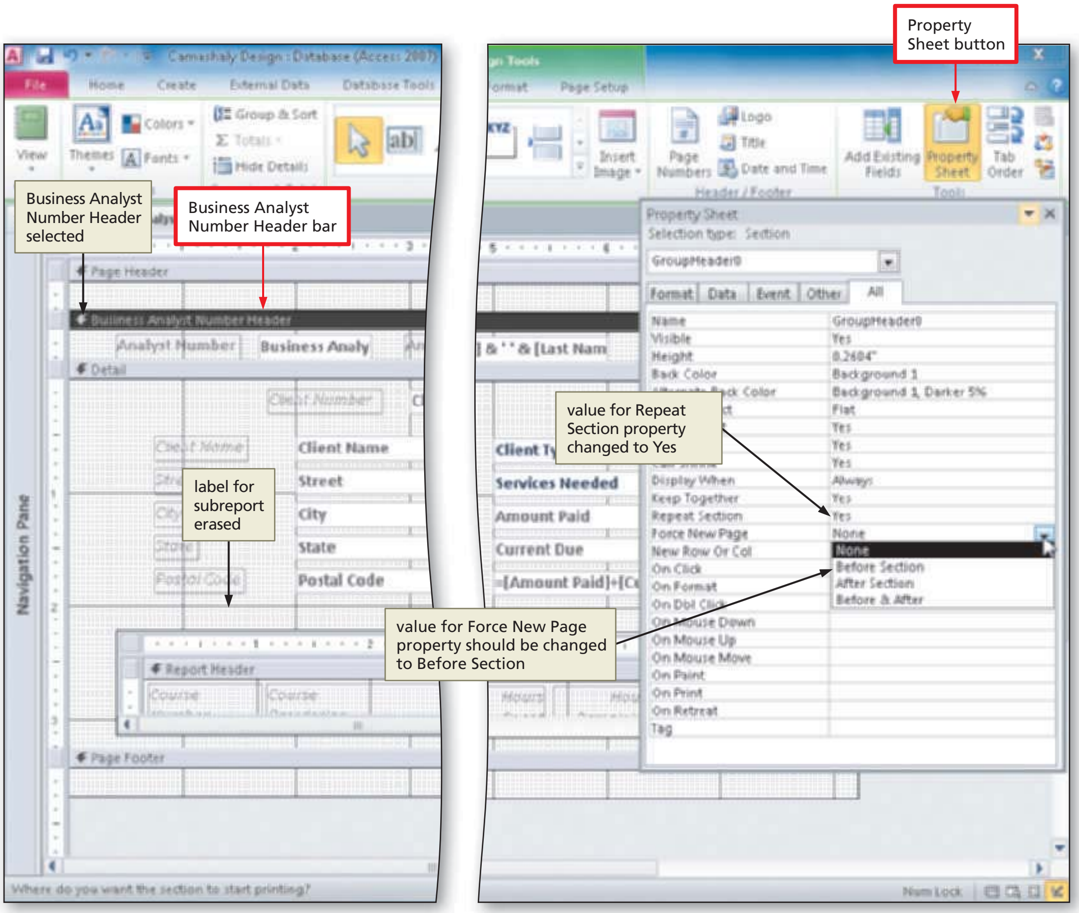
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Modify Section Properties

The following step first deletes the label for the subreport and then makes two modifications to the Business Analyst Number Header section. The first modification, which causes the contents of the Group Header section to appear at the top of each page, changes the Repeat Section property to Yes. Without this change, the business analyst number and name would only appear at the beginning of the group of clients of that business analyst. If the list of clients occupies more than one page, it would not be apparent on subsequent pages which business analyst is associated with those clients. The second modification changes the Force New Page property to Before Section, causing each section to begin at the top of a page.

1

- If necessary, scroll back up to the top of the report, and then click the label for the subreport (the label that reads Course Offerings by Client), and then press the DELETE key to delete the label.
- Click the Business Analyst Number Header bar to select the header, and then click the Property Sheet button (Report Design Tools Design tab | Tools group) to display the property sheet.
- With the All tab selected, click the Repeat Section property box, click the arrow that appears, and then click Yes to cause the contents of the group header to appear at the top of each page of the report.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Format
Page Setup
View
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Group & Sort
Totals
Hide Details
Insert Image
Page Numbers
Logo
Title
Date and Time
Header / Footer
Add Existing Fields
Property Sheet
Tab Order
Tools
Page Header
Business Analyst Number Header
Analyst Number
Business Analy
Detail
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Report Header
Course
Page Footer
Client Ty
Services Needed
Amount Paid
Current Due
=[Amount Paid]+[C
Navigation Pane
Where do you want the section to start printing?
Num Lock

Property Sheet
Selection type: Section
GroupHeader0
Format | Data | Event | Other | All

Name: GroupHeader0
Visible: Yes
Height: 0.2604"
Back Color: Background 1
Alternate Back Color: Background 1, Darker 5%
Flat
Yes
Yes
Yes
Display When: Always
Keep Together: Yes
Repeat Section: Yes
Force New Page: None
New Row Or Col: None / Before Section / After Section / Before & After
On Click
On Format
On Dbl Click
On Mouse Down
On Mouse Up
On Mouse Move
On Paint
On Print
On Retreat
Tag

Property Sheet button

Business Analyst Number Header selected

Business Analyst Number Header bar

label for subreport erased

value for Repeat Section property changed to Yes

value for Force New Page property should be changed to Before Section

Figure 6–50

- Click the Force New Page property box, and then click the arrow that appears to display the menu of possible values (Figure 6–50).

2

- Click Before Section to cause a new group to begin at the top of the next page.
- Close the property sheet.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Add a Title, Page Number, and Date

You can add a title, a page number, and a date to a report or apply other formatting using buttons on the Design tab. The following steps add a title, page number, and date to the Business Analyst Master List report. The date is automatically added to the report header. The steps move the date to the page header by first cutting the date from its original position and then pasting it into the page header.

1

- Display the Design tab, and then click the Title button (Report Design Tools Design tab | Header/Footer group) to add a title.

Q&A

The title is the same as the name of the report object. Can I change the report title without changing the name of the report object in the database?

Yes. The report title is a label, and you can change it using any of the techniques that you used for changing column headings and other labels.

- Click the Page Numbers button (Report Design Tools Design tab | Header/Footer group) to display the Page Numbers dialog box.
- Be sure the Page N and Top of Page [Header] option buttons are selected.
- If necessary, click the Alignment arrow and select Left (Figure 6–51).

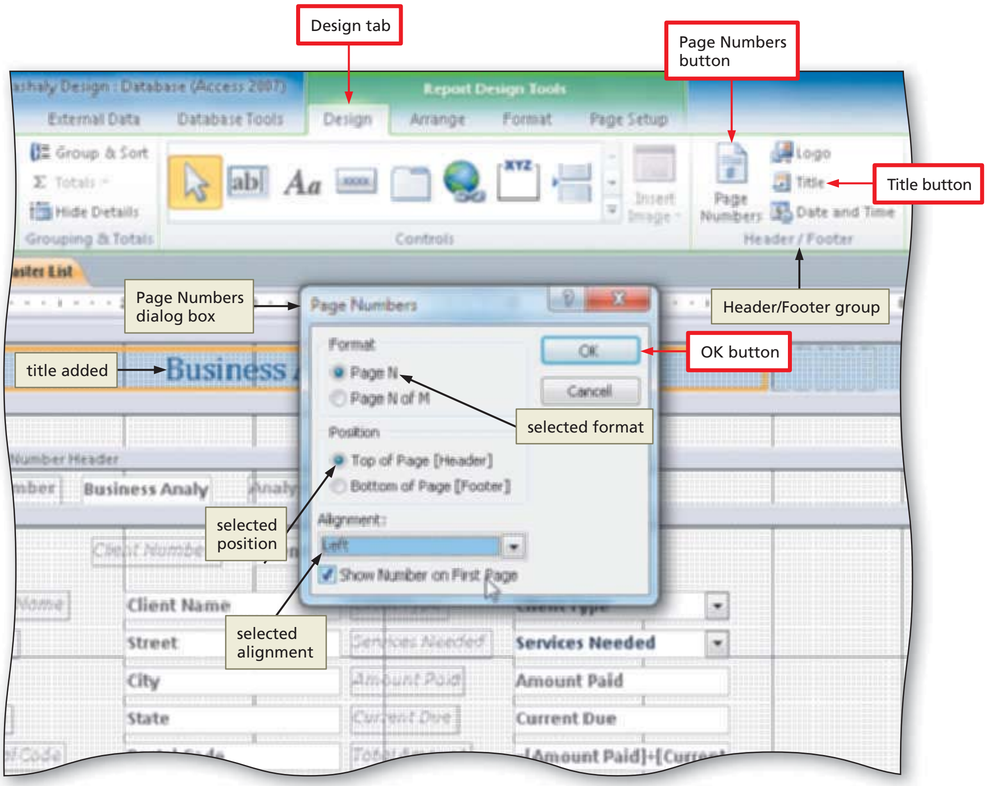

Design tab
Page Numbers button
Title button
Header/Footer group
Page Numbers dialog box
title added
OK button
selected format
selected position
selected alignment
Page Numbers
Format
Page N
Page N of M
Position
Top of Page [Header]
Bottom of Page [Footer]
Alignment:
Left
Show Number on First Page
OK
Cancel

Figure 6–51

2

- Click the OK button (Page Numbers dialog box) to add the page number.
- Click the Date and Time button (Report Design Tools Design tab | Header/Footer group) to display the Date and Time dialog box.
- Click the option button for the third date format and click the Include Time check box to remove the check mark (Figure 6–52).

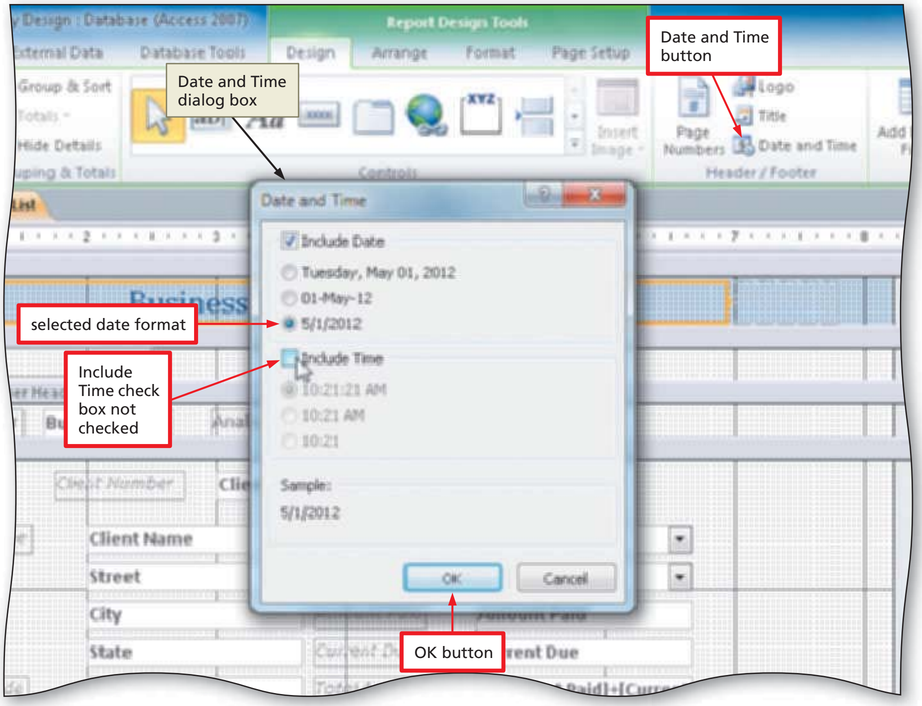

Date and Time button
Date and Time dialog box
selected date format
Include Time check box not checked
OK button
Date and Time
Include Date
Tuesday, May 01, 2012
01-May-12
5/1/2012
Include Time
10:21:21 AM
10:21 AM
10:21
Sample:
5/1/2012
OK
Cancel

Figure 6–52

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3

- Click the OK button (Date and Time dialog box) to add the date to the Report Header and display the Home tab (Figure 6–53).

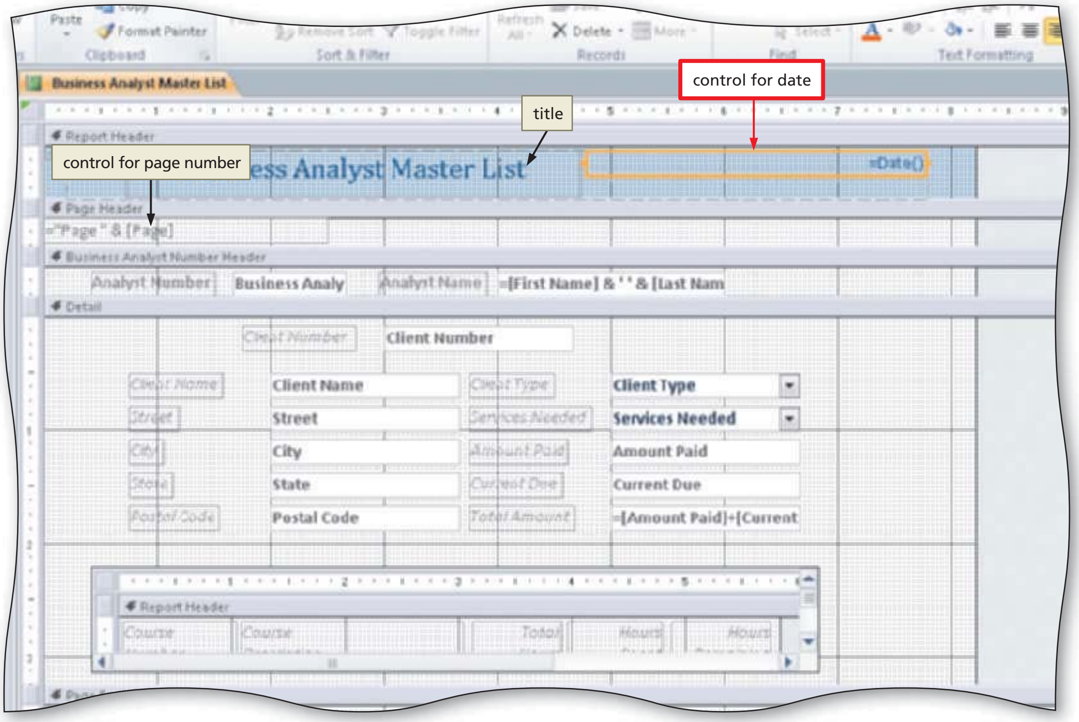

control for date
title
control for page number
Business Analyst Master List
=Date()
="Page " & [Page]

Figure 6–53

4

- With the control containing the date selected, click the Cut button (Home tab | Clipboard group) to cut the date, click the title bar for the page header to select the page header, and then click the Paste button (Home tab | Clipboard group) to paste the Date control at the beginning of the page header.
- Drag the Date control, which is currently sitting on top of the Page Number control, to the position shown in Figure 6–54.

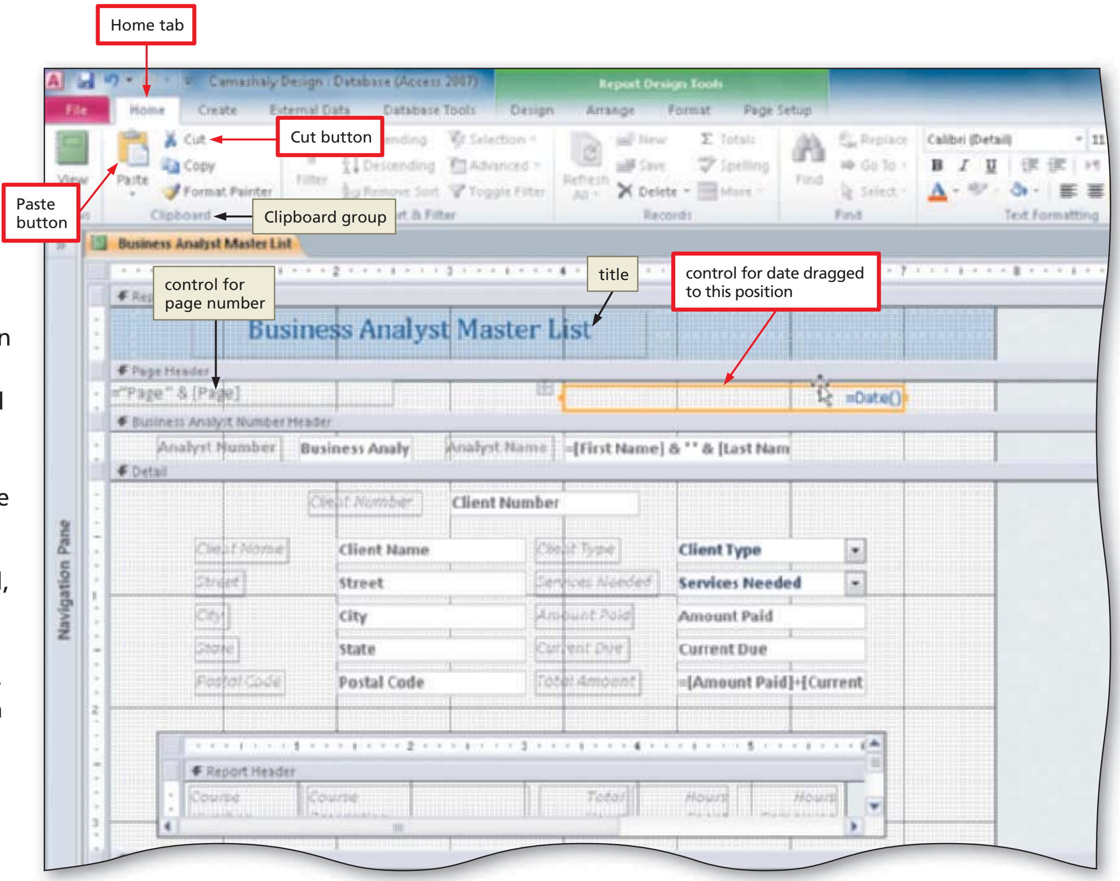

Home tab
Cut button
Paste button
Clipboard group
control for page number
title
control for date dragged to this position
Business Analyst Master List
=Date()
="Page " & [Page]

Figure 6–54

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Remove the Alternate Color

An **alternate color** is a color different from the main color and appears on every other line in a datasheet or report. Using alternate colors can sometimes make a datasheet or report more readable. In reports with multiple sections, however, the alternate colors can be confusing. Access automatically assigns alternate colors within the report. If you do not want these alternate colors, you must remove them. The following steps remove the alternate colors from the various sections in the report, starting with the Detail section.

1

- Right-click the Detail section to produce a shortcut menu.
- Point to the Alternate Fill/Back Color arrow to produce a color palette (Figure 6–55).

2

- Click None on the color palette to specify that there is to be no alternate color for the selected section.
- Using the same techniques, remove the alternate color from all other sections, including the subreport. (For some sections, the command may be dimmed.)

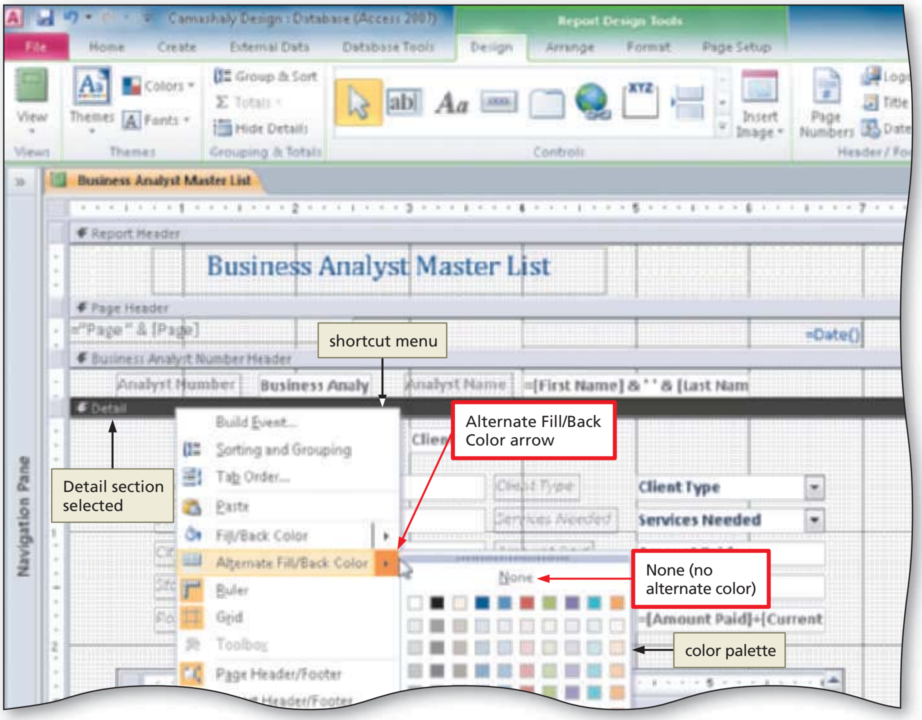

shortcut menu
Alternate Fill/Back Color arrow
Detail section selected
None (no alternate color)
color palette
Business Analyst Master List
Build Event...
Sorting and Grouping
Tab Order...
Paste
Fill/Back Color
Alternate Fill/Back Color
Ruler
Grid
Toolbox
Page Header/Footer
None

Figure 6–55

To Save and Close the Report

The following steps save the final report and then close the report.

1. Click the Save button on the Quick Access Toolbar to save the report.
2. Close the report by clicking the Close ‘Business Analyst Master List’ button.

BTW

Dates
The Access default theme assigns a blue color to the date. To change the date color, select the control and click the Property Sheet button. Click the Fore Color property box, click the arrow that appears and select the color of your choice.

To Print the Report

The following steps print the Business Analyst Master List report.

1. With the Business Analyst Master List selected in the Navigation Pane, click File on the Ribbon to open the Backstage view.
2. Click the Print tab in the Backstage view to display the Print gallery.
3. Click the Quick Print button to print the report.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

TO PUBLISH A REPORT

You can make a report available through e-mail by publishing the report as either a PDF or XPS file. If you wanted to do so, you would use the following steps.

1. Select the report to be published in the Navigation Pane.
2. Display the External Data tab.
3. Click the PDF or XPS button (External Data tab | Export group) to display the Publish as PDF or XPS dialog box.
4. Select the appropriate Save as type (either PDF or XPS).
5. Select either 'Standard (publishing online and printing)' or 'Minimum size (publishing online).'
6. If you want to publish only a range of pages, click the Options button and select the desired range.
7. Click the Publish button to publish the report in the desired format.
8. If you want to save the export steps, click the Save button and then click the 'Save export steps' check box. If not, click the Close button.

Break Point: If you wish to stop working through the chapter at this point, you can resume the project at a later time by starting Access, opening the database called Camashaly Design, and continuing to follow the steps from this location forward.

To Create a Second Report

Camashaly Design also would like a report that groups clients by business analyst. The report should include subtotals and grand totals. Finally, it should show the discount amount for each client. The discount amount is based on the current due amount. Clients who owe more than $4,000 will receive a 4% discount, and clients who owe $4,000 or less will receive a 2% discount. The following steps create the Discount Report, select the record source, and specify grouping and sorting options.

1. Close the Navigation Pane.
2. Display the Create tab and then click the Report Design button (Create tab | Reports group) to create a report in Design view.
3. Ensure the selector for the entire report, which is the box in the upper-left corner of the report, is selected, and then click the Property Sheet button (Report Design Tools Design tab | Tools group) to display a property sheet.
4. With the All tab selected, click the Record Source property box arrow, and then click the Business Analysts and Clients query to select the query as the record source for the report.
5. Close the property sheet.
6. Click the Group & Sort button (Report Design Tools Design tab | Grouping & Totals group) to display the Group, Sort, and Total pane.
7. Click the 'Add a group' button to display the list of available fields for grouping, and then click the Business Analyst Number field to group by business analyst number.
8. Click the 'Add a sort' button to display the list of available fields for sorting, and then click the Client Number field to sort by client number.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

9 Remove the Group, Sort, and Total pane by clicking the Group & Sort button (Report Design Tools Design tab | Grouping & Totals group).

10 Click the Save button on the Quick Access Toolbar, type `Discount Report` as the report name, and click the OK button to save the report.

Q&A

Why save it at this point?

You do not have to save it at this point. It is a good idea to save it often, however. Doing so will give you a convenient point from which to restart if you have problems. If you have problems, you could close the report without saving it. When you reopen the report, it will be in the state it was in when you last saved it.

To Add and Move Fields in a Report

As with the previous report, you can add a field to the report by dragging the field from the field list. You can drag an attached label separately from the control to which it is attached by dragging the Move handle in its upper-left corner. This technique does not work, however, if you want to drag the attached label to a different section from the control's section. If you want the label to be in a different section, you must select the label, cut the label, select the section to which you want to move the label, and then paste the label. You then can move the label to the desired location.

The following steps add the Business Analyst Number field to the Business Analyst Number Header section and then move the label to the Page Header section.

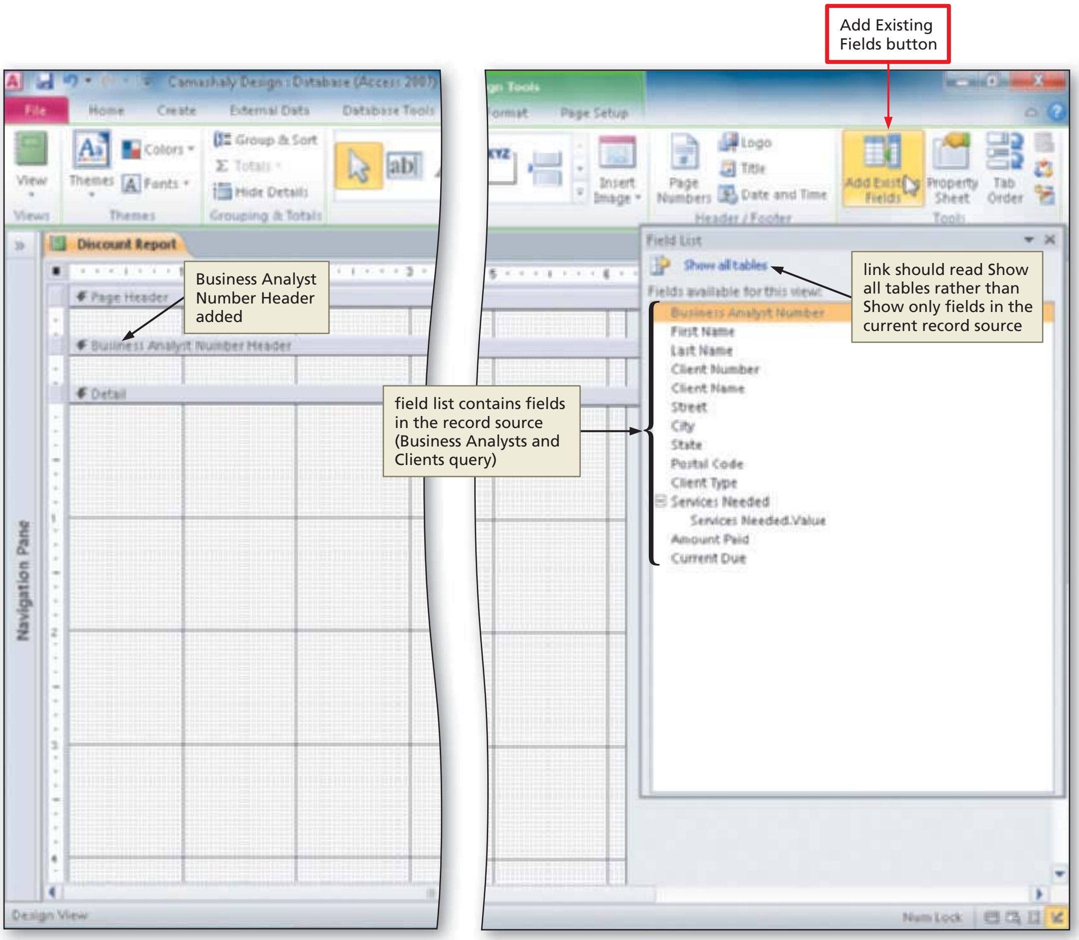
1

- Click the Add Existing Fields button (Report Design Tools Design tab | Tools group) to display a field list. (Figure 6–56).

Q&A

My field list displays Show only fields in the current record source, not Show all tables, as in the figure. What should I do?

Click the 'Show only fields in the current record source' link at the top of the field list to display only those fields in the Business Analysts and Clients query.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Format
Page Setup
View
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Group & Sort
Totals
Hide Details
Views
Grouping & Totals
Insert Image
Page Numbers
Logo
Title
Date and Time
Header / Footer
Add Existing Fields
Property Sheet
Tab Order
Tools
Discount Report
Page Header
Business Analyst Number Header
Detail
Navigation Pane
Field List
Show all tables
Fields available for this view:
Business Analyst Number
First Name
Last Name
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Client Type
Services Needed
Services Needed.Value
Amount Paid
Current Due
Design View
Num Lock

Add Existing Fields button

Business Analyst Number Header added

link should read Show all tables rather than Show only fields in the current record source

field list contains fields in the record source (Business Analysts and Clients query)

Figure 6–56

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2

- Drag the Business Analyst Number field to the approximate position shown in Figure 6–57.

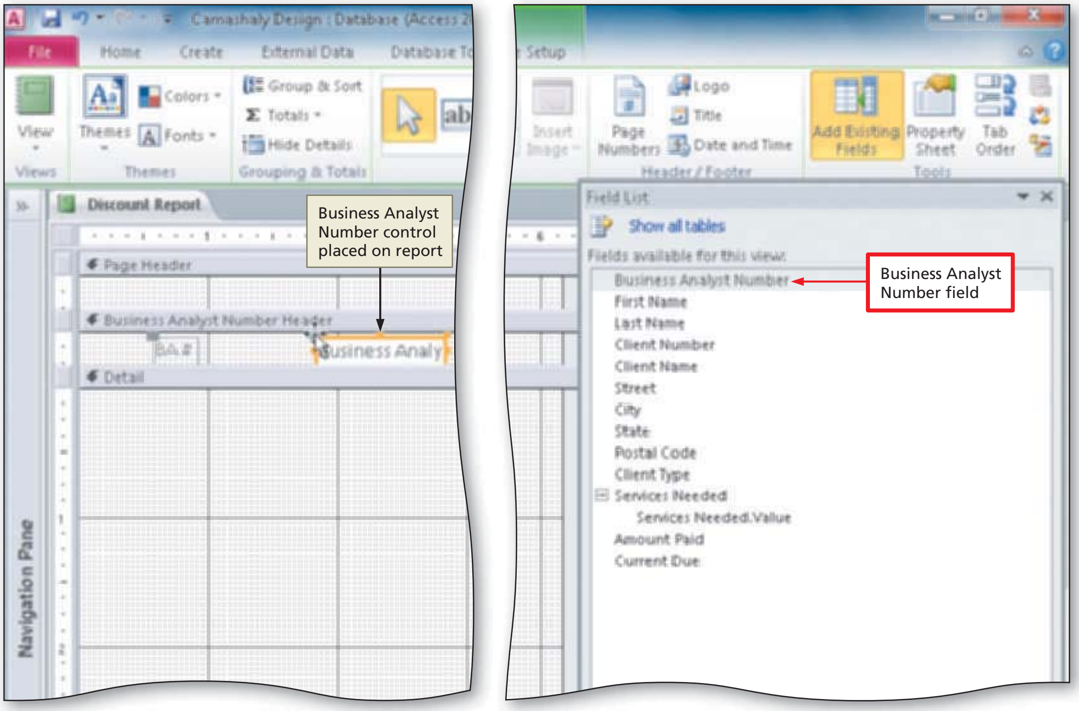

Business Analyst Number control placed on report
Business Analyst Number field
Discount Report
Page Header
Business Analyst Number Header
Detail
Field List
Show all tables
Fields available for this view:
Business Analyst Number
First Name
Last Name
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Client Type
Services Needed
Services Needed.Value
Amount Paid
Current Due
Navigation Pane

Figure 6–57

3

- Click the label for the Business Analyst Number control to select it (Figure 6–58).

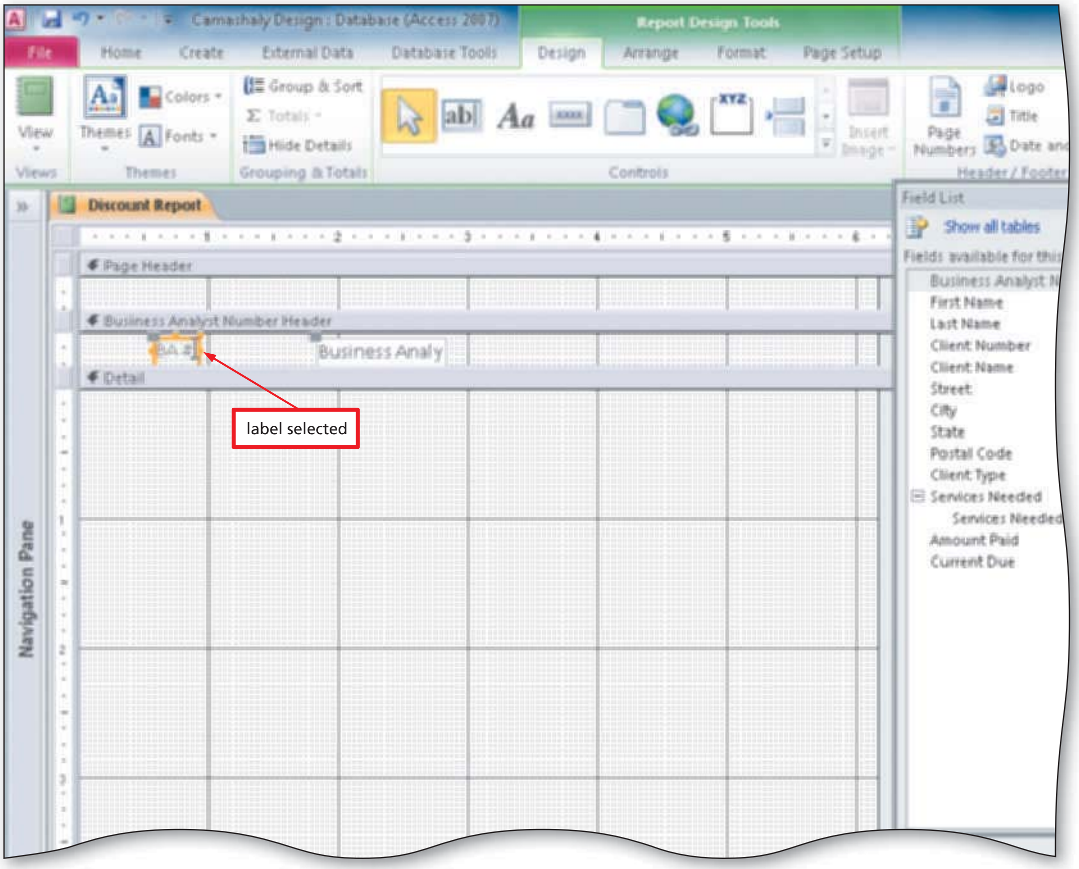

label selected
Report Design Tools
Discount Report
Page Header
Business Analyst Number Header
Detail
Field List
Navigation Pane

Figure 6–58

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

4

- Display the Home tab.
- Click the Cut button (Home tab | Clipboard group) to cut the label.
- Click the Page Header bar to select the page header (Figure 6–59).

Q&A Do I have to click the bar, or could I click somewhere else within the section?

You also could click within the section. Clicking the bar is usually safer, however. If you click in a section intending to select the section, but click within one of the controls in the section, you will select the control rather than the section. Clicking the bar always selects the section.

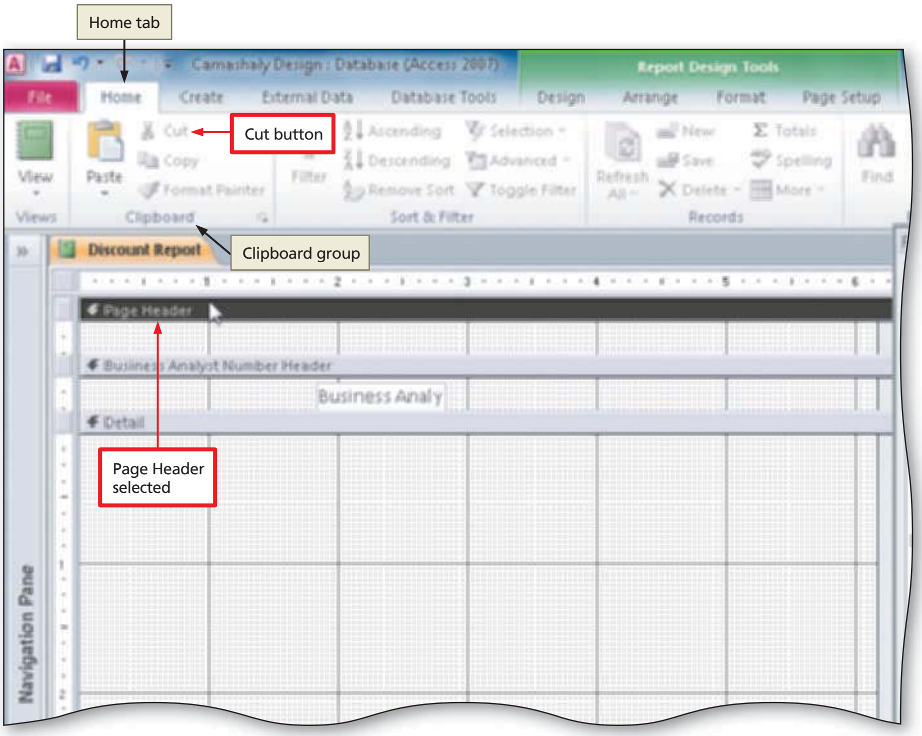

Home tab
Cut button
Clipboard group
Page Header selected
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
Report Design Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
View
Paste
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Discount Report
Page Header
Business Analyst Number Header
Business Analy
Detail
Navigation Pane

Figure 6–59

5

- Click the Paste button (Home tab | Clipboard group) to paste the label in the Page Header section (Figure 6–60).

Q&A When would I want to click the Paste button arrow rather than just the button?

Clicking the arrow displays the Paste button menu, which includes the Paste command and two additional commands. Paste Special allows you to paste data into different formats. Paste Append, which is available if you have cut or copied a record, allows you to paste the record to a table with a similar structure. If you want the simple Paste command, you can just click the button.

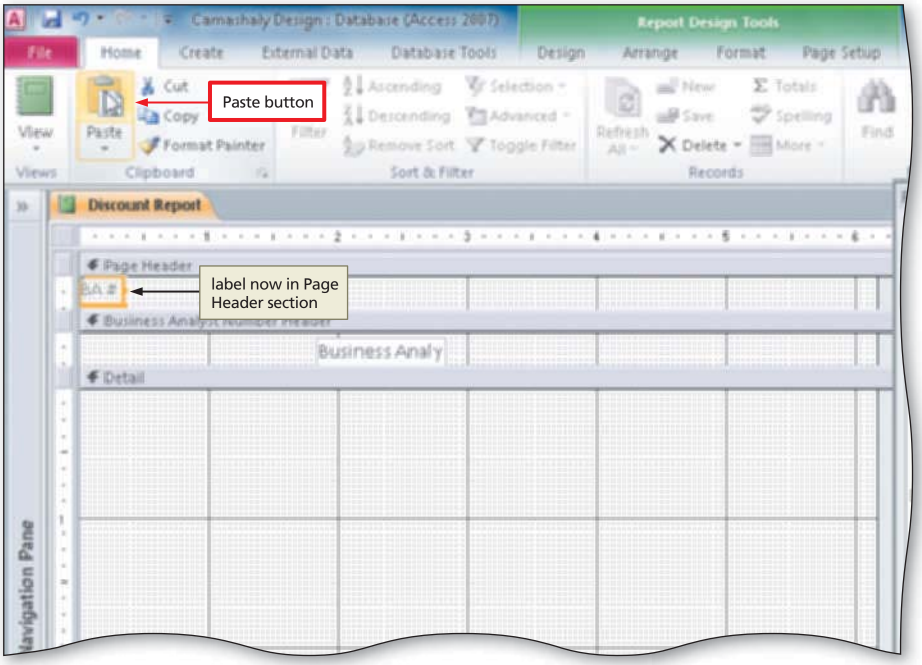

Paste button
label now in Page Header section
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
Report Design Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
View
Paste
Filter
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Discount Report
Page Header
BA #
Business Analyst Number Header
Business Analy
Detail
Navigation Pane

Figure 6–60

6

- Click in the label to produce an insertion point, use the BACKSPACE or DELETE key to erase the current entry in the label, and then type `Analyst Number` as the new entry.
- Click in the label in front of the word, Number, to produce an insertion point.
- Press SHIFT+ENTER to move the word, Number, to a second line.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Add the Remaining Fields

The following steps add the remaining fields by dragging them into the Detail section. They next save the report, move the labels into the Page Header section, and move the controls containing the fields to the appropriate locations.

1

- Resize and move the Business Analyst Number control to the approximate size and position shown in Figure 6–61.
- Resize the Business Analyst Number label to the size shown in the figure.
- Drag the First Name, Last Name, Client Number, Client Name, Amount Paid, and Current Due fields into the Detail section, as shown in the figure.

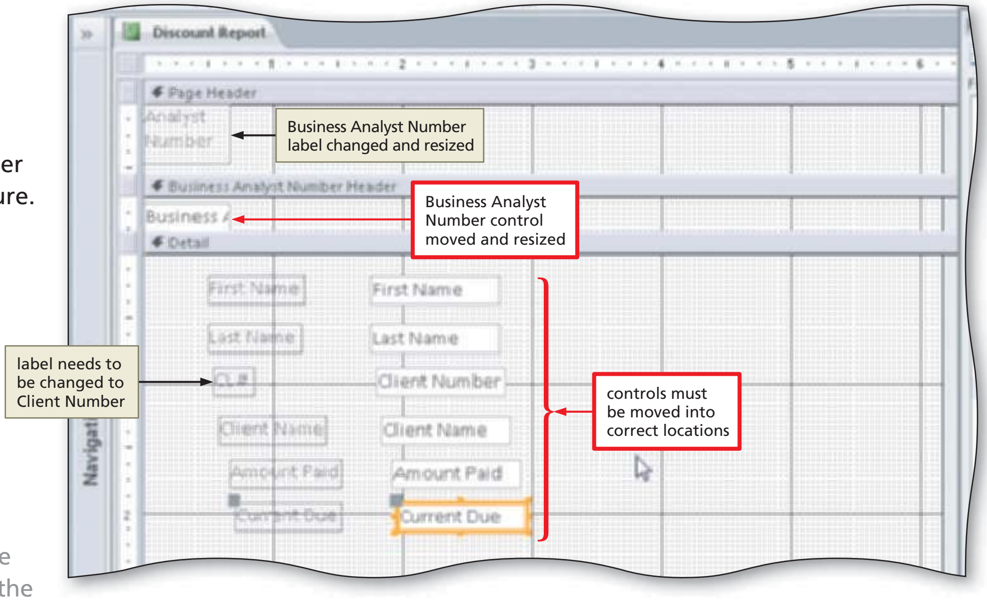

Discount Report
Page Header
Analyst Number
Business Analyst Number label changed and resized
Business Analyst Number Header
Business A
Business Analyst Number control moved and resized
Detail
First Name
Last Name
CL #
Client Number
Client Name
Amount Paid
Current Due
label needs to be changed to Client Number
controls must be moved into correct locations
Navigation

Figure 6–61

Q&A Why drag them to the positions shown in the figure? That is not where they appear on the report. Could I drag them all at once?

Dragging them gets them onto the report, where you can now move the controls and labels individually to the desired locations. You can drag multiple fields by selecting the first field, holding down the SHIFT key, and then selecting other adjacent fields. To select fields that are not adjacent to each other, use the CTRL key. How you choose to select fields and drag them onto the report is a matter of personal preference.

2

- Close the field list.
- One at a time, cut each of the labels, paste the label into the Page Header section, and then resize, reformat, and move the labels to the approximate positions shown in Figure 6–62.

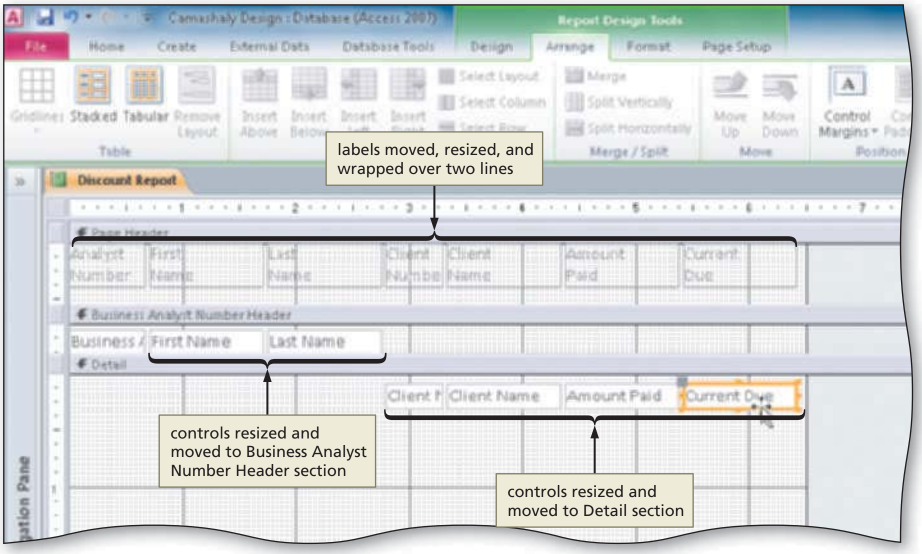

Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
Report Design Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
Gridlines
Stacked
Tabular
Remove Layout
Table
Insert Above
Insert Below
Insert Left
Insert Right
Select Layout
Select Column
Select Row
Merge
Split Vertically
Split Horizontally
Merge / Split
Move Up
Move Down
Move
Control Margins
Position
labels moved, resized, and wrapped over two lines
Discount Report
Page Header
Analyst Number
First Name
Last Name
Client Number
Client Name
Amount Paid
Current Due
Business Analyst Number Header
Business A
First Name
Last Name
Detail
Client N
Client Name
Amount Paid
Current Due
controls resized and moved to Business Analyst Number Header section
controls resized and moved to Detail section
Navigation Pane

Figure 6–62

Q&A When I paste the label, it always places it at the left edge, superimposing the Business Analyst Number control. Can I change where Access places it?

Unfortunately, when you paste to a different section, Access places the control at the left edge. You will need to drag each control to its proper location after pasting it into the Page Header section.

- One at a time, resize and move the First Name and Last Name controls to the approximate positions in the Business Analyst Number Header section shown in the figure.
- One at a time, resize and move the Client Number, Client Name, Amount Paid, and Current Due controls to the approximate positions in the Detail section shown in the figure.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

- Display the Arrange tab.
- Use the Align button (Report Design Tools Arrange tab | Sizing & Ordering group) as necessary to align all the controls as shown in Figure 6–62 on the previous page.

To Change the Can Grow Property

The following steps change the Can Grow property for the Client Name control so that names that are too long to fit in the available space will extend to additional lines.

1. Select the Client Name control.
2. Display the property sheet and scroll down until the Can Grow property appears.
3. Click the Can Grow property box and then click the Can Grow property box arrow to display the menu of available values for the Can Grow property.
4. Click Yes to change the value for the Can Grow property.
5. Close the property sheet.

To Resize the Detail Section

The following step resizes the Detail section of the Discount Report to remove most of the extra space below the controls in the section.

1

- Scroll down so that the lower boundary of the Detail section appears, and then drag the lower boundary of the section to a position just slightly below the controls in the section.

Q&A

I scrolled down to see the lower boundary of the Detail section, and the controls are no longer on the screen. What is the easiest way to drag the boundary when the position to which I want to drag it is not visible?

You do not need to see the location to drag to it. As you get close to the top of the visible portion of the screen, Access will automatically scroll. You might find it easier, however, to drag it near the top of the visible portion of the report, use the scroll bar to scroll up, and then drag some more. You might have to scroll a couple of times.

Plan Ahead

Determine any calculations required for the report.

Determine details concerning any calculations required for the report.

- **Determine whether to include calculations in the group and report footers.** The group footers or report footers might require calculated data such as subtotals or grand totals. Determine whether the report needs other statistics that must be calculated (for example, average).
- **Determine whether any additional calculations are required.** Are there any special calculations? If so, determine the fields that are involved and how they are to be combined. Determine whether any of the calculations depend on whether a criterion is true or false, in which case the calculations are conditional.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Totals and Subtotals

To add totals or other statistics to a footer, add a text box control. You can use any of the aggregate functions: COUNT, SUM, AVG (average), MAX (largest value), MIN (smallest value), STDEV (standard deviation), VAR (variance), FIRST, and LAST. To use a function, type an equal (=) sign, followed by the function name. You then include a set of parentheses containing the item for which you want to perform the calculation. If the item name contains spaces, such as Amount Paid, you must enclose it in square brackets. For example, to calculate the sum of the amount paid values, the expression would be =SUM([Amount Paid]).

Access will perform the calculation for the appropriate collection of records. If you enter this expression in the Business Analyst Number Footer section, Access only will calculate the total for clients with the given business analyst; that is, it will calculate the appropriate subtotal. If you enter the expression in the Report Footer section, Access will calculate the total for all clients.

To Add Totals and Subtotals

An analysis of requirements at Camashaly indicated that the Discount Report should contain subtotals and grand totals of amounts paid and current due. The following steps first display the Business Analyst Number Footer section and then add the total of amount paid and current due to both the Business Analyst Number Footer section and the Report Footer section. The steps label the totals in the Business Analyst Number Footer section as subtotals and the totals in the Report Footer section as grand totals. The steps change the format of the new controls to currency and the number of decimal places to 2.

1

- If necessary, display the Design tab.
- Click the Group & Sort button (Report Design Tools Design tab | Grouping & Totals group) to display the Group, Sort, and Total pane.
- Click Group on Business Analyst Number (Figure 6–63).

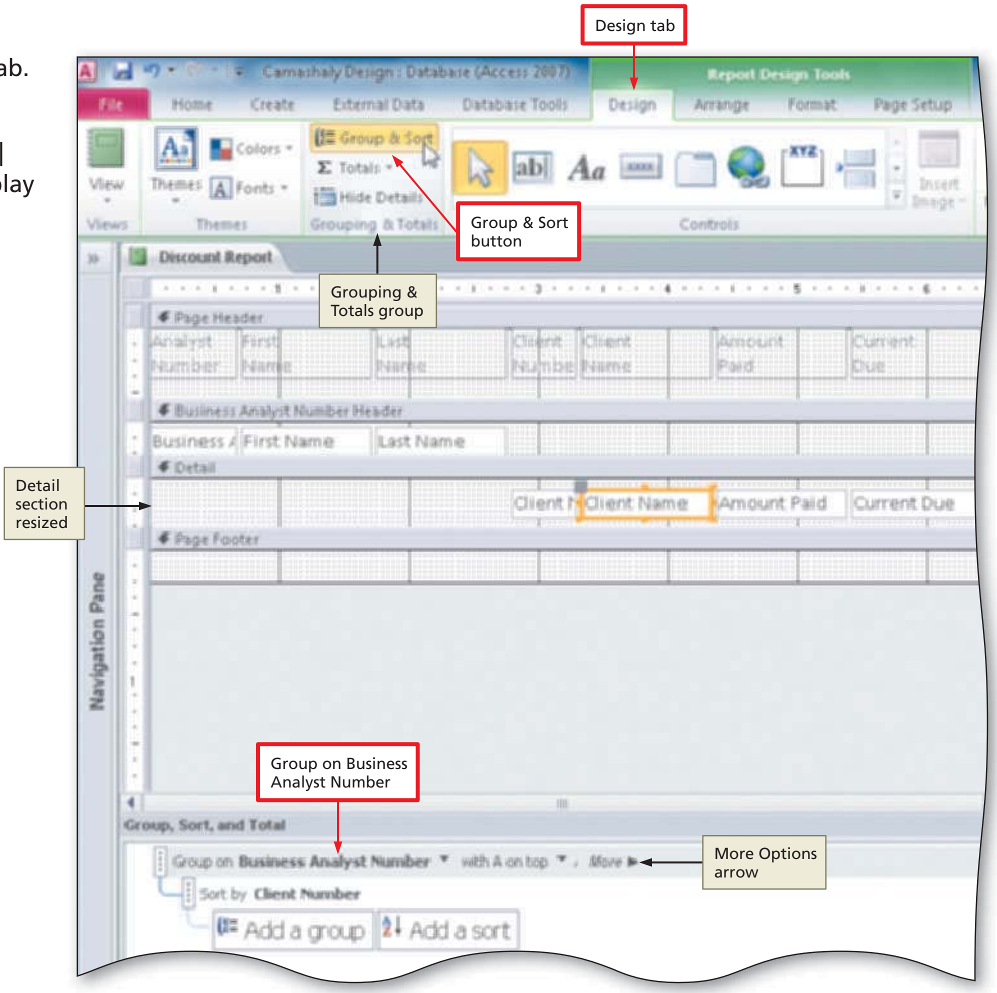
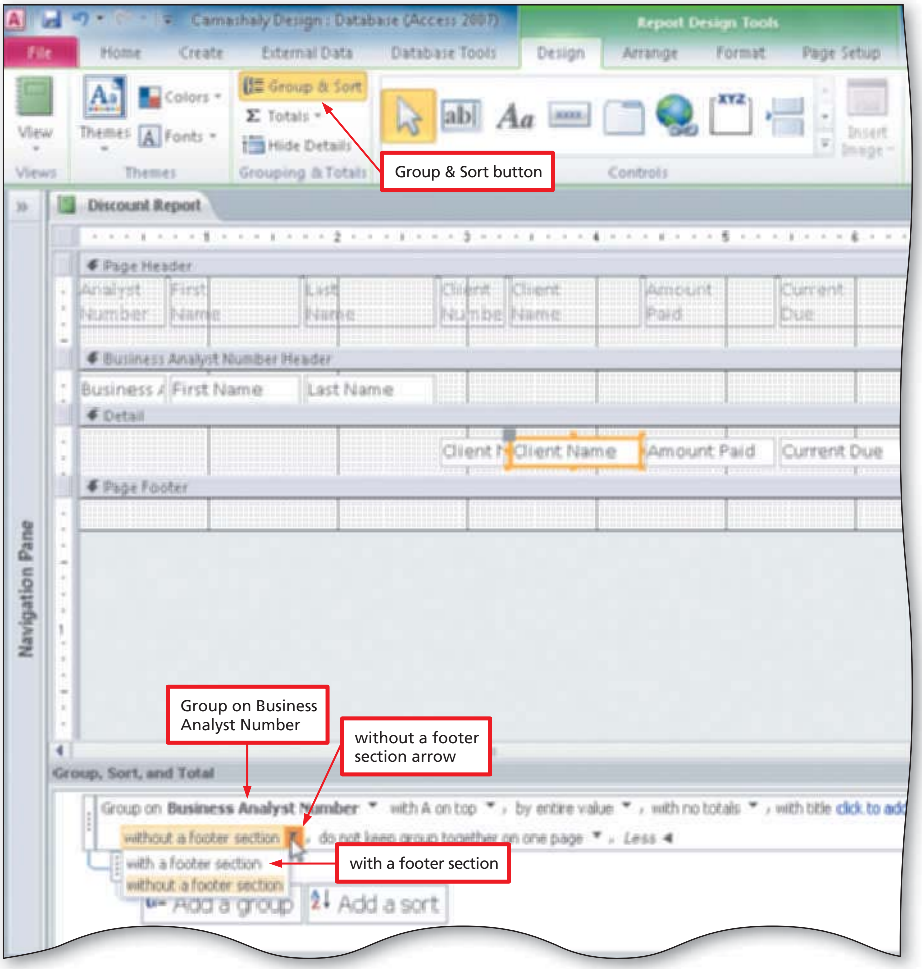

Design tab
Group & Sort button
Grouping & Totals group
Detail section resized
Group on Business Analyst Number
More Options arrow
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
Report Design Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
View
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Group & Sort
Totals
Hide Details
Grouping & Totals
Controls
Insert Image
Discount Report
Page Header
Analyst Number
First Name
Last Name
Client Number
Client Name
Amount Paid
Current Due
Business Analyst Number Header
Business A
First Name
Last Name
Detail
Client N
Client Name
Amount Paid
Current Due
Page Footer
Navigation Pane
Group, Sort, and Total
Group on Business Analyst Number with A on top More
Sort by Client Number
Add a group
Add a sort

Figure 6–63

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2

- Click the More arrow to display additional options for grouping.
- Click the 'without a footer section' arrow to display the available options (Figure 6–64).


Group & Sort button
Group on Business Analyst Number
without a footer section arrow
with a footer section

Group on **Business Analyst Number** ▾ , with A on top ▾ , by entire value ▾ , with no totals ▾ , with title click to add

without a footer section ▾ , do not keep group together on one page ▾ , Less ◄

Figure 6–64

3

- Click 'with a footer section' to add a footer.
- Close the Group, Sort, and Total pane by clicking the Group & Sort button (Report Design Tools Design tab | Grouping & Totals group).
- Click the Text Box tool (Report Design Tools Design tab | Controls group), and then point to the position shown in Figure 6–65.

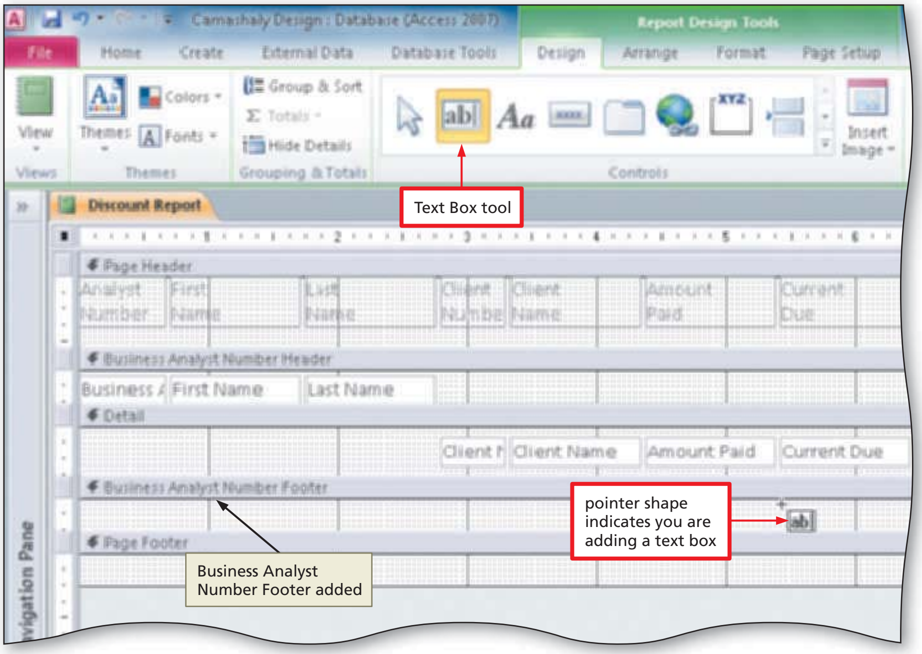

Text Box tool
pointer shape indicates you are adding a text box
Business Analyst Number Footer added

Figure 6–65

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

4

- Click the position shown in Figure 6–65 to place a text box (Figure 6–66).

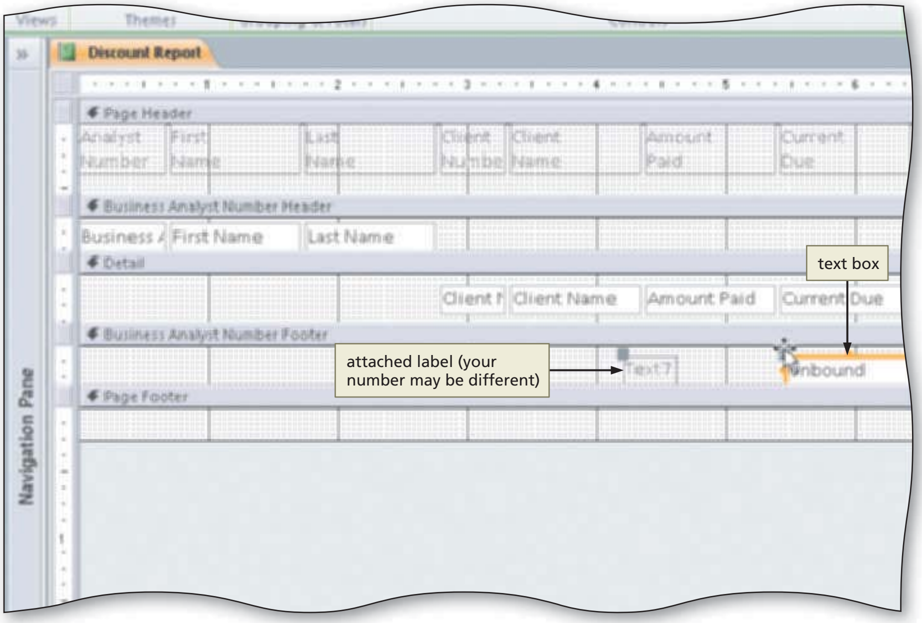

text box
attached label (your number may be different)
Discount Report
Page Header
Business Analyst Number Header
Detail
Business Analyst Number Footer
Page Footer
Text7
Unbound
Navigation Pane

Figure 6–66

5

- Click the text box to produce an insertion point.
- Type `=Sum([Current Due])` in the control to enter the expression calculation, and then press the ENTER key.
- Click the text box label to select it.
- Click the label a second time to produce an insertion point.
- Use the DELETE or BACKSPACE key to delete the Text7 (your number might be different).
- Type `Subtotals` as the label.
- Click outside the label to deselect it.
- Resize and align the Current Due controls in the Detail section and the Business Analyst Number Footer section as shown in Figure 6–67.

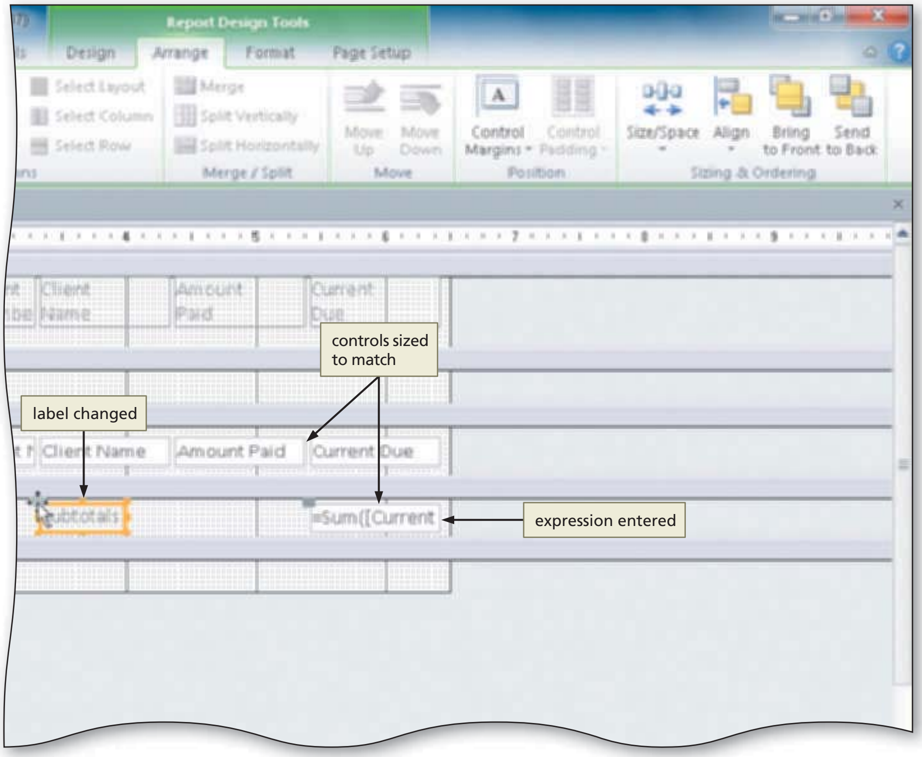

Report Design Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
controls sized to match
label changed
expression entered
Subtotals
=Sum([Current

Figure 6–67

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

6

- Click the Text Box tool (Report Design Tools Design tab | Controls group), and then click in the Business Analyst Number Footer section just to the left of the control for the sum of Current Due to place another text box.
- Click the text box to produce an insertion point, type **`=Sum([Amount Paid])`** in the control, and then press the ENTER key to enter the expression (Figure 6–68).

Q&A Could I add the controls in the other order?

Yes. The only problem is that the label of the second control overlaps the first control. Adding the controls in the order shown in the steps reduces the overlap. It is not a major difference, however.

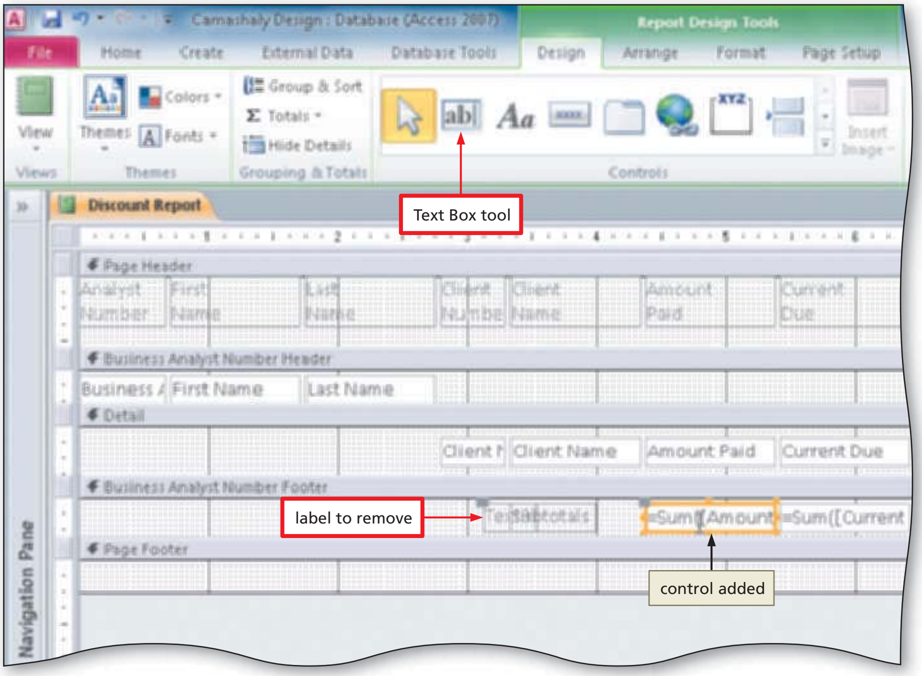

Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
Report Design Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
View
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Group & Sort
Totals
Hide Details
Insert Image
Views
Grouping & Totals
Controls
Text Box tool
Discount Report
Page Header
Analyst Number
First Name
Last Name
Client Numbe
Client Name
Amount Paid
Current Due
Business Analyst Number Header
Business A
First Name
Last Name
Detail
Client N
Client Name
Amount Paid
Current Due
Business Analyst Number Footer
label to remove
Text8 Subtotals
=Sum([Amount
=Sum([Current
control added
Page Footer
Navigation Pane

Figure 6–68

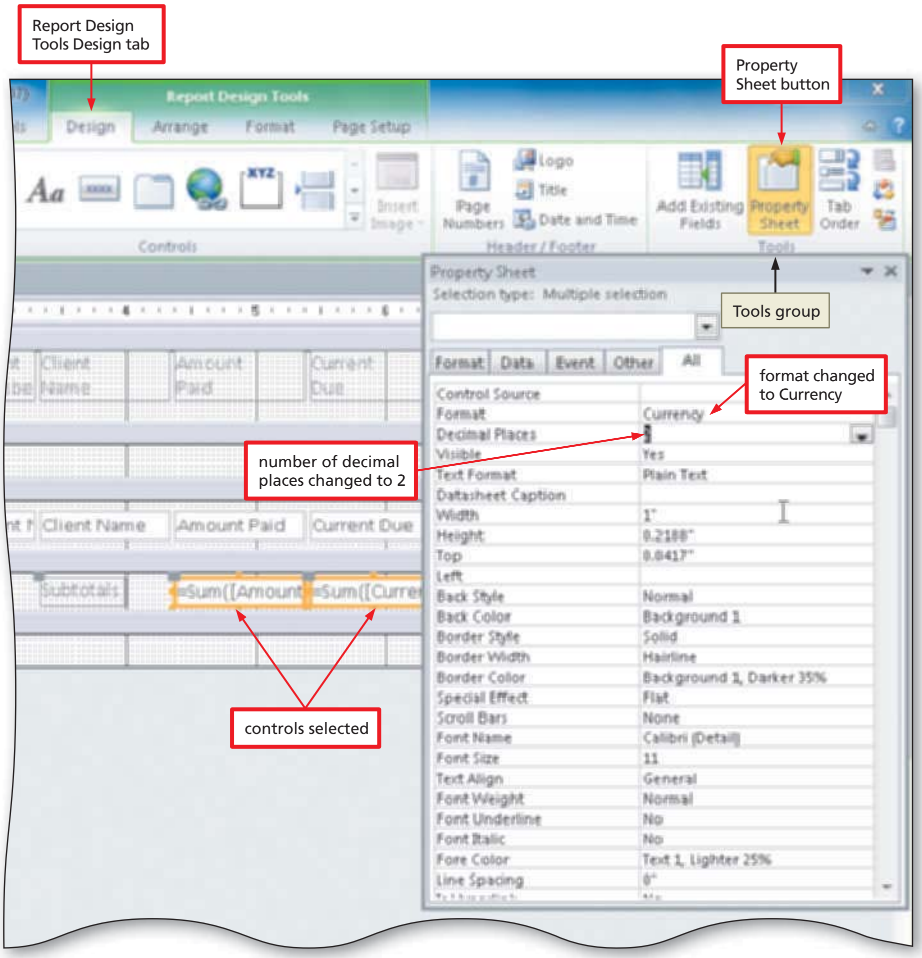
7

- Click the label to select it, and then press the DELETE key to delete the label.

Q&A I inadvertently deleted the other control rather than the label. What should I do?

The first thing to try is to click the Undo button on the Quick Access Toolbar to reverse your deletion. You then can delete the correct control. If that does not work for you, you can simply delete the remaining control or controls in the section and start these steps over.

- Click the control for the sum of Amount Paid to select it and then hold the SHIFT key and click the control for the sum of Current Due to select both controls.
- Click the Property Sheet button (Report Design Tools Design tab | Tools group) to display the property sheet.
- Change the format to Currency and the number of decimal places to 2 (Figure 6–69).


Report Design Tools Design tab
Report Design Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
Insert Image
Controls
Page Numbers
Logo
Title
Date and Time
Header / Footer
Add Existing Fields
Property Sheet
Tab Order
Tools
Property Sheet button
Tools group
Format
Data
Event
Other
All
format changed to Currency
number of decimal places changed to 2
Client Name
Amount Paid
Current Due
Subtotals
=Sum([Amount
=Sum([Curre
controls selected

Property Sheet
Selection type: Multiple selection

Control Source	
Format	Currency
Decimal Places	2
Visible	Yes
Text Format	Plain Text
Datasheet Caption	
Width	1"
Height	0.2188"
Top	0.0417"
Left	
Back Style	Normal
Back Color	Background 1
Border Style	Solid
Border Width	Hairline
Border Color	Background 1, Darker 35%
Special Effect	Flat
Scroll Bars	None
Font Name	Calibri (Detail)
Font Size	11
Text Align	General
Font Weight	Normal
Font Underline	No
Font Italic	No
Fore Color	Text 1, Lighter 25%
Line Spacing	0"

Figure 6–69

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

8

- Close the property sheet.
- Right-click any open area of the report to display a shortcut menu (Figure 6–70).

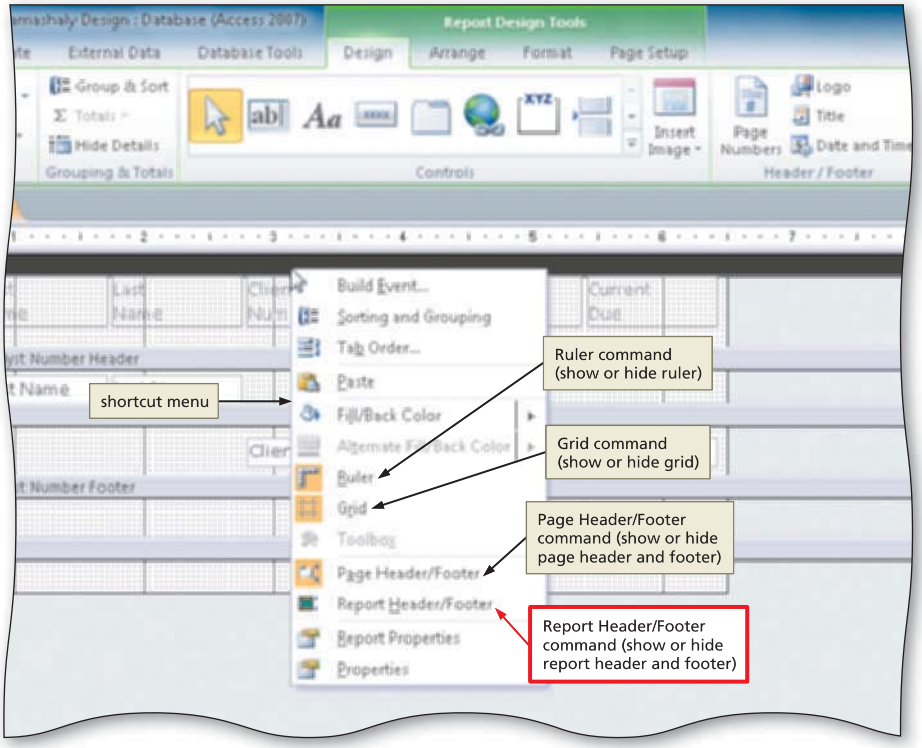

Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
Report Design Tools
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
Group & Sort
Totals
Hide Details
Grouping & Totals
Controls
Insert Image
Page Numbers
Logo
Title
Date and Time
Header / Footer
Build Event...
Sorting and Grouping
Tab Order...
Paste
Fill/Back Color
Alternate Fill/Back Color
Ruler
Grid
Toolbox
Page Header/Footer
Report Header/Footer
Report Properties
Properties
shortcut menu
Ruler command (show or hide ruler)
Grid command (show or hide grid)
Page Header/Footer command (show or hide page header and footer)
Report Header/Footer command (show or hide report header and footer)

Figure 6–70

9

- Click Report Header/Footer to display the Report Header and Footer sections.
- Click the ruler in the Business Analyst Number Footer to the left of the controls in the section to select the controls.
- Display the Home tab.
- Click the Copy button (Home tab | Clipboard group) to copy the selected controls to the Clipboard (Figure 6–71).

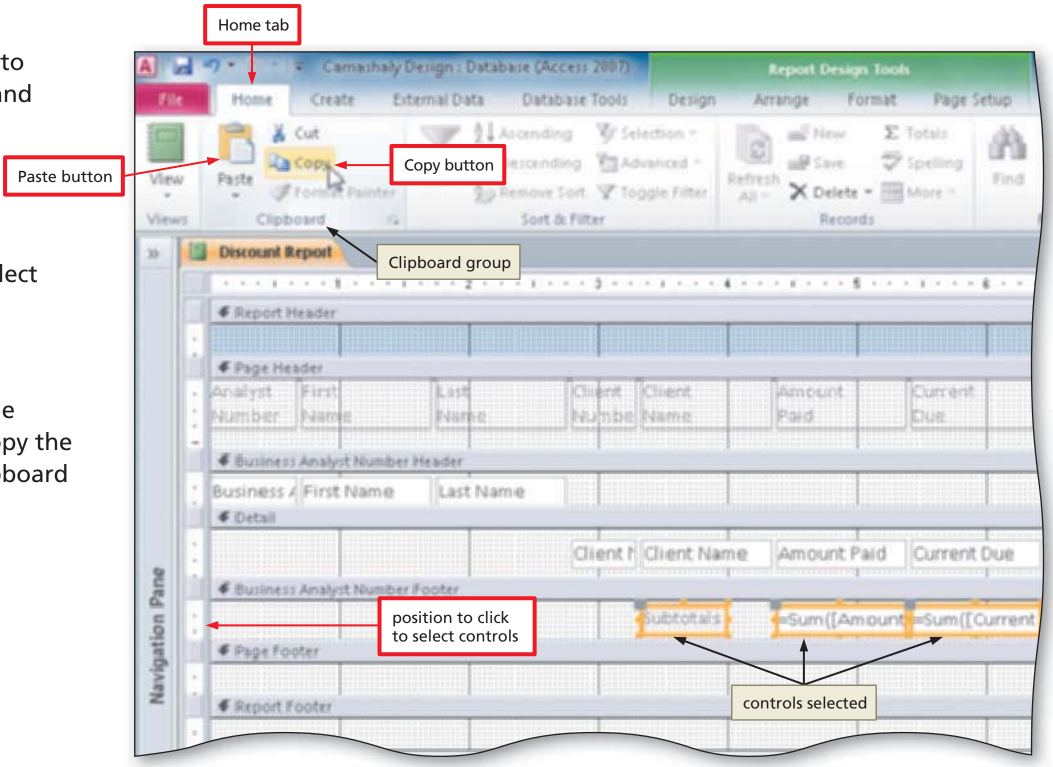

Home tab
Paste button
Copy button
Clipboard group
position to click to select controls
controls selected
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
Report Design Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Clipboard
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Sort & Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Records
Find
Navigation Pane
Discount Report
Report Header
Page Header
Analyst Number
First Name
Last Name
Client Number
Client Name
Amount Paid
Current Due
Business Analyst Number Header
Detail
Business Analyst Number Footer
Subtotals
=Sum([Amount
=Sum([Current
Page Footer
Report Footer

Figure 6–71

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

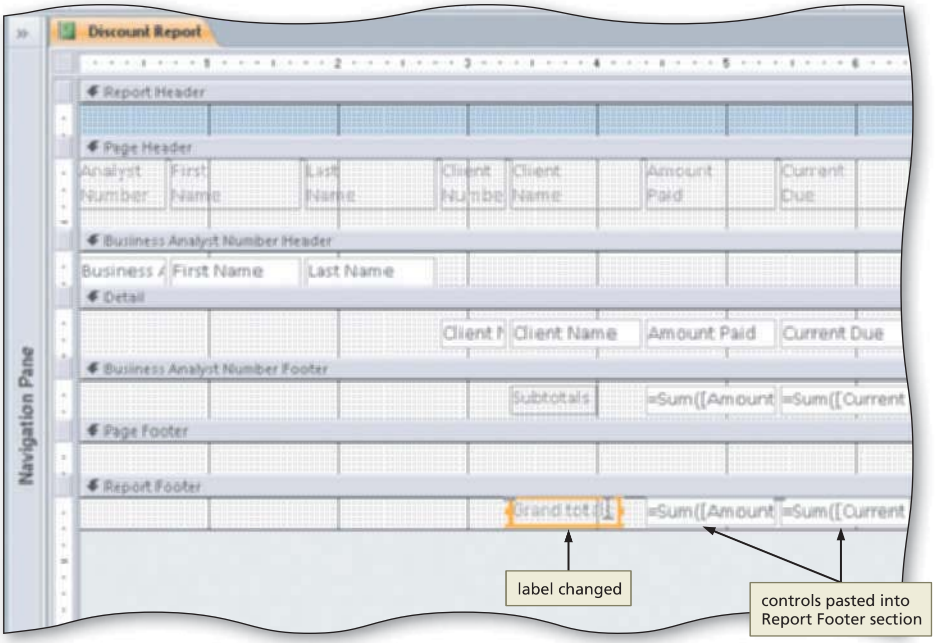
10

- Click the Report Footer bar to select the footer and then click the Paste button (Home tab | Clipboard group) to paste a copy of the controls into the report footer.
- Move the controls to the positions shown in Figure 6–72.
- Click the label in the Report Footer section to select the label and then click a second time to produce an insertion point.
- Use the BACKSPACE or DELETE key to erase the current contents, and then type `Grand totals` to change the label (Figure 6–72).

Q&A

Could I enter the controls just as I did earlier rather than copying and pasting?

Yes. Copying and pasting is a little simpler, but it is a matter of personal preference.


Discount Report
Navigation Pane
Report Header
Page Header
Analyst Number
First Name
Last Name
Client Numbe
Client Name
Amount Paid
Current Due
Business Analyst Number Header
Business A
First Name
Last Name
Detail
Client N
Client Name
Amount Paid
Current Due
Business Analyst Number Footer
Subtotals
=Sum([Amount
=Sum([Current
Page Footer
Report Footer
Grand tot
=Sum([Amount
=Sum([Current

label changed

controls pasted into Report Footer section

Figure 6–72

Grouping and Sorting Options

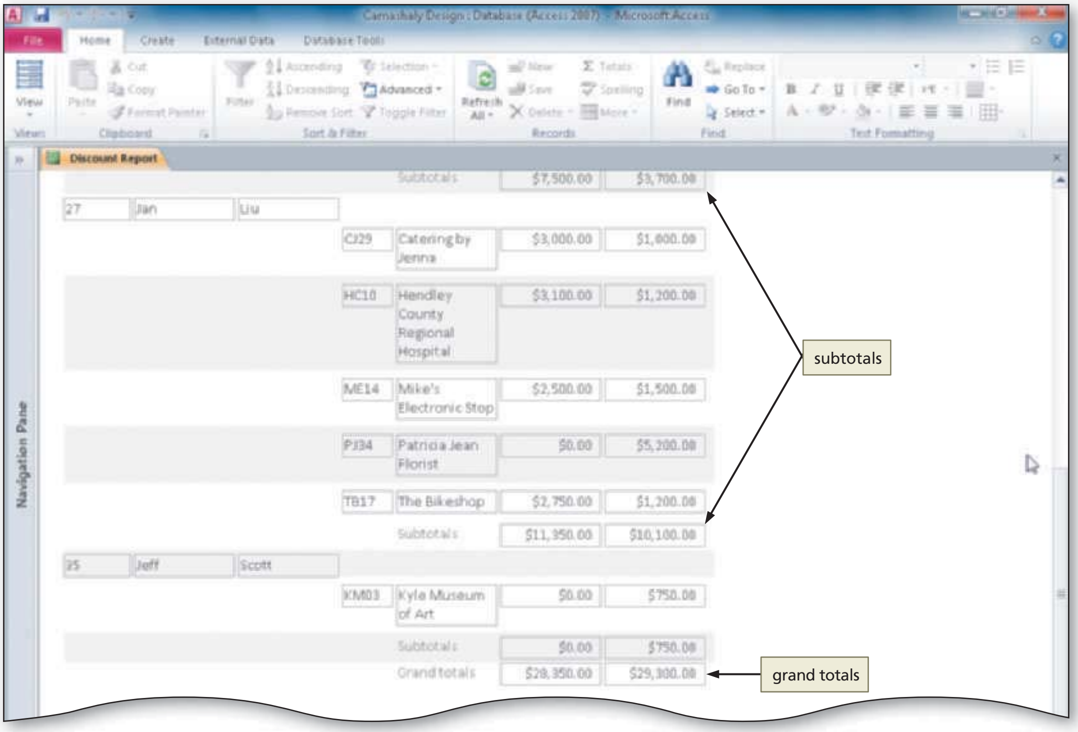
As you learned in Chapter 4, clicking the More button in the Group, Sort, and Total pane allows you to specify additional options for grouping and sorting. The additional options are: Value, which lets you choose the amount of the value on which to group; Totals, which lets you choose the values to be totaled; Title, which lets you customize the group title; Header section, which lets you include or omit a header section for the group; Footer section, which lets you include or omit a footer section for the group; and Keep together, which lets you specify whether Access is to attempt to keep portions of a group together on a page.

To View the Report

The following steps view the report in Report view, which is sometimes more convenient when you want to view the lower portion of the report.

1. Click the View button arrow on the Home tab to display the View button menu.
2. Click Report View on the View button menu to view the report in Report view.
3. Scroll down to the bottom of the report so that the grand totals appear on the screen (Figure 6–73).

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Find
Text Formatting
Discount Report
Navigation Pane

```
                         Subtotals    $7,500.00    $3,700.00
27    Jan    Liu
                  CJ29   Catering by  $3,000.00    $1,600.00
                         Jenna
                  HC10   Hendley      $3,100.00    $1,200.00
                         County
                         Regional
                         Hospital
                  ME14   Mike's       $2,500.00    $1,500.00
                         Electronic Stop
                  PJ34   Patricia Jean    $0.00    $5,200.00
                         Florist
                  TB17   The Bikeshop $2,750.00    $1,200.00
                         Subtotals   $11,350.00   $10,100.00
35    Jeff   Scott
                  KM03   Kyle Museum      $0.00      $750.00
                         of Art
                         Subtotals        $0.00      $750.00
                         Grand totals $28,350.00  $29,300.00
```

subtotals

grand totals

Figure 6–73

To Remove the Color from the Report Header

The following steps remove the color from the Report Header section by changing the background color for the header to white.

1

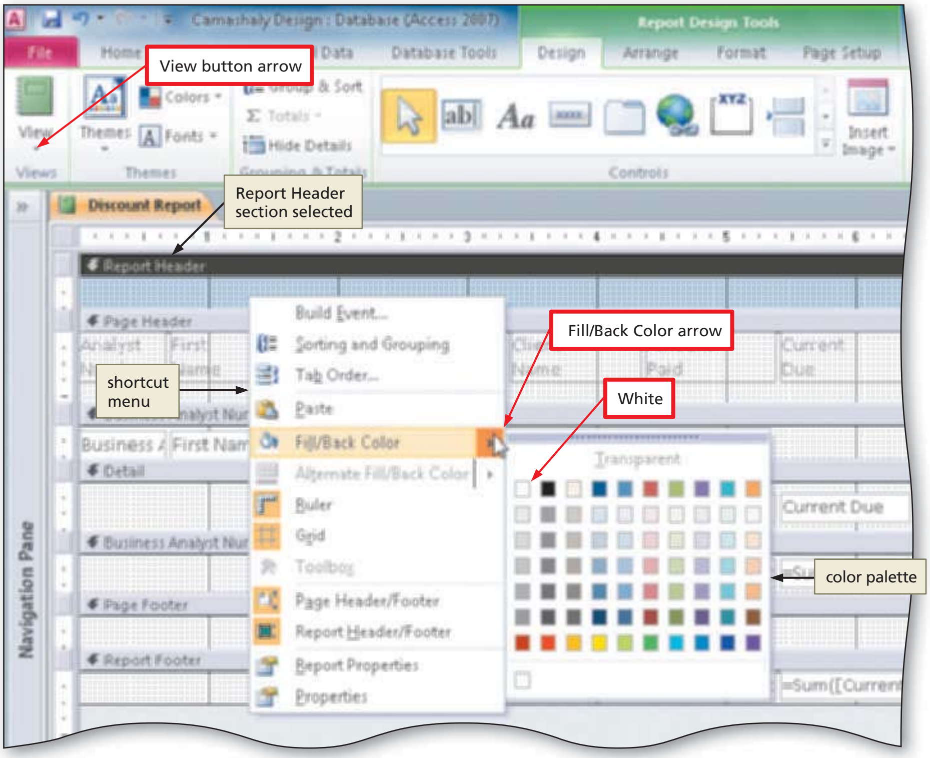
- Click the View button arrow and then click Design View to return to Design view.
- Right-click the report header to produce a shortcut menu.
- Point to the Fill/Back Color arrow on the shortcut menu to display a color palette (Figure 6–74).

2

- Click White in the first row, first column to change the background color to white.

Q&A Why do I not see standard colors and theme colors like I did when I changed the background color in the other report?

When you use the Background Color button on the Ribbon, you see both standard colors and theme colors. When you use the shortcut menu, you only see the standard colors.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
Report Design Tools
File
Home
Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
View
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Group & Sort
Totals
Hide Details
Insert Image
Views
Themes
Grouping & Totals
Controls
Discount Report
Report Header
Page Header
Analyst
First
Name
Business Analyst Nu
First Nam
Detail
Business Analyst Nur
Page Footer
Report Footer
Current Due
=Su
=Sum([Curren
Build Event...
Sorting and Grouping
Tab Order...
Paste
Fill/Back Color
Alternate Fill/Back Color
Ruler
Grid
Toolbox
Page Header/Footer
Report Header/Footer
Report Properties
Properties
Transparent
Navigation Pane

View button arrow

Report Header section selected

shortcut menu

Fill/Back Color arrow

White

color palette

Figure 6–74

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Assign a Conditional Value

The Camashaly requirements for this report also involved a conditional value related to the amount of a client's discount. To assign a conditional value, you will use the IIf function. The IIf function consists of the letters IIf followed by three items, called **arguments**, in parentheses. The first argument is a criterion; the second and third arguments are expressions. If the criterion is true, the function assigns the value of the expression in the second argument. If the criterion is false, the function assigns the value of the expression in the third argument. The IIf function you will use is IIf([Amount Paid]>4000, .04*[Current Due], .02*[Current Due]). This function applies the following rules: If the amount paid is greater than $4,000, the value assigned is .04*[Current Due], that is, 4% of the current due amount. If the amount paid is not greater than $4,000, the value assigned is .02*[Current Due], that is, 2% of the current due amount.

The following steps add a text box and then use the Expression Builder to enter the appropriate IIf function in the text box. The steps then change the format of the text box. The steps modify and move the label for the text box. They also add a title, page number, and date, and then change the alignment of the title. The steps then change the size of the report.

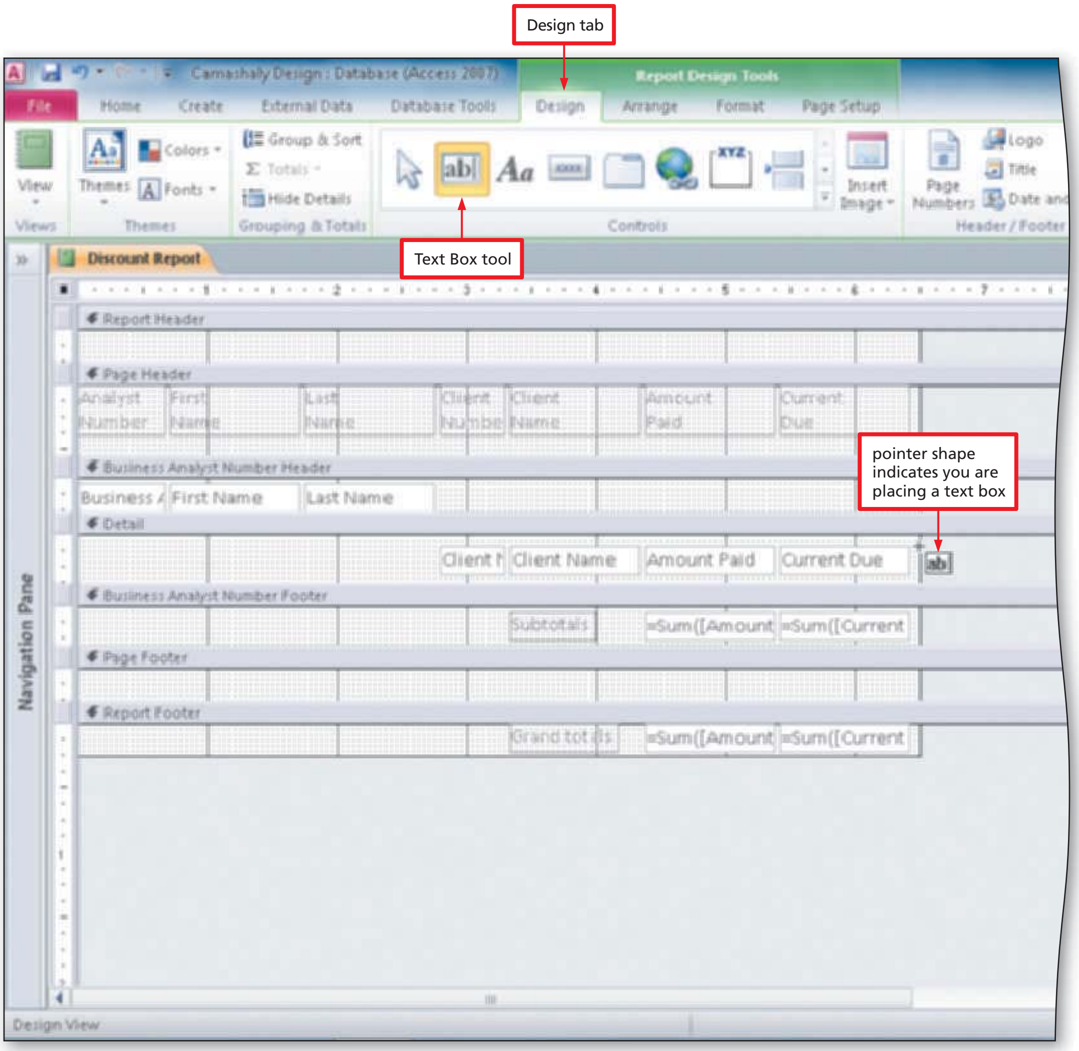
1

- If necessary, display the Design tab.
- Click the Text Box tool (Report Design Tools Design tab | Controls group) and point to the approximate position shown in Figure 6–75.

Q&A

How can I place the control accurately when there are no grid lines?

When you click the position for the control, Access automatically will expand the grid. You then can adjust the control using the grid.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
Report Design Tools
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
View
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Group & Sort
Totals
Hide Details
Views
Grouping & Totals
Controls
Insert Image
Page Numbers
Logo
Title
Date and
Header / Footer
Discount Report
Report Header
Page Header
Analyst Number
First Name
Last Name
Client Number
Client Name
Amount Paid
Current Due
Business Analyst Number Header
Business A
First Name
Last Name
Detail
Client N
Client Name
Amount Paid
Current Due
Business Analyst Number Footer
Subtotals
=Sum([Amount
=Sum([Current
Page Footer
Report Footer
Grand totals
=Sum([Amount
=Sum([Current
Navigation Pane
Design View
Design tab

Text Box tool

pointer shape indicates you are placing a text box

Figure 6–75

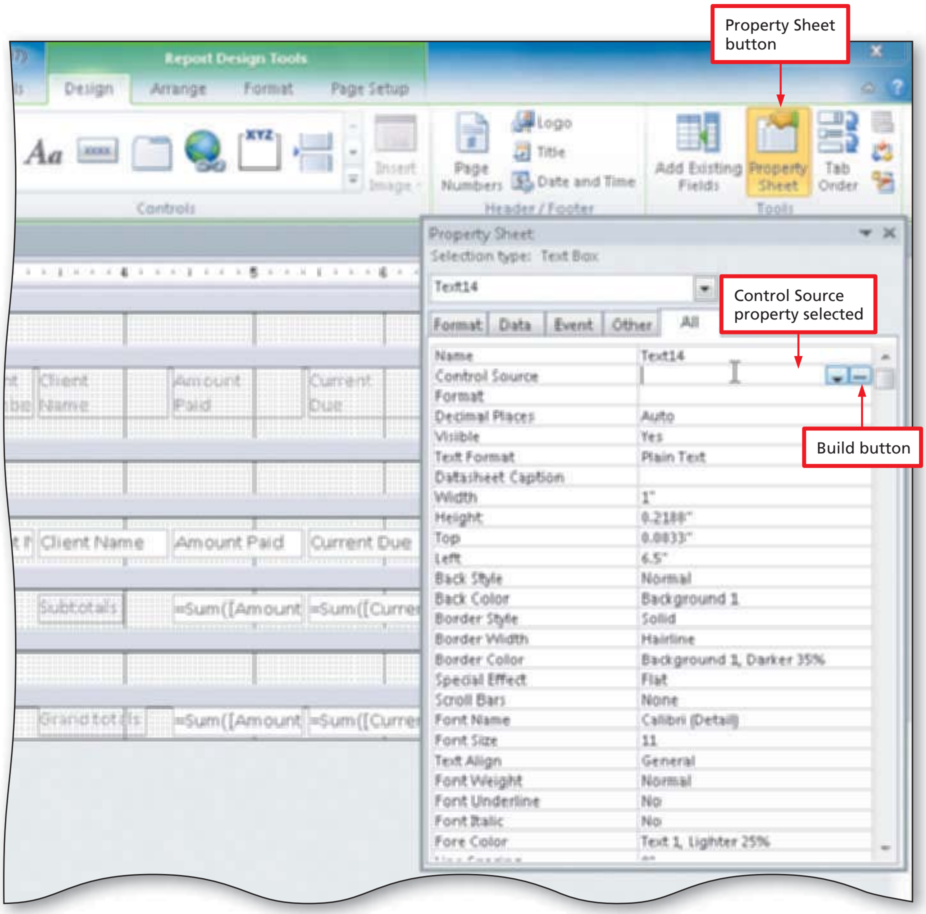
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2

- Click the position shown in Figure 6–75 to place a text box.
- Click the attached label to select it and then press the DELETE key to delete the attached label.
- Click the text box to select it, and then click the Property Sheet button (Report Design Tools Design tab | Tools group) to display a property sheet.
- Click the Control Source property to select it (Figure 6–76).

Q&A Why did I choose Control Source, not Record Source?

You use Record Source to select the source of the records in a report, usually a table or a query. You use the Control Source property to specify the source of data for the control. This allows you to bind an expression or field to a control.


Property Sheet button
Control Source property selected
Build button
Report Design Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
Controls
Insert Image
Page Numbers
Logo
Title
Date and Time
Header / Footer
Add Existing Fields
Property Sheet
Tab Order
Tools
Client Name
Amount Paid
Current Due
Subtotals
=Sum([Amount
=Sum([Curren
Grand totals
Format
Data
Event
Other
All

Property Sheet
Selection type: Text Box

Text14

Name	Text14
Control Source	
Format	
Decimal Places	Auto
Visible	Yes
Text Format	Plain Text
Datasheet Caption	
Width	1"
Height	0.2188"
Top	0.0833"
Left	6.5"
Back Style	Normal
Back Color	Background 1
Border Style	Solid
Border Width	Hairline
Border Color	Background 1, Darker 35%
Special Effect	Flat
Scroll Bars	None
Font Name	Calibri (Detail)
Font Size	11
Text Align	General
Font Weight	Normal
Font Underline	No
Font Italic	No
Fore Color	Text 1, Lighter 25%

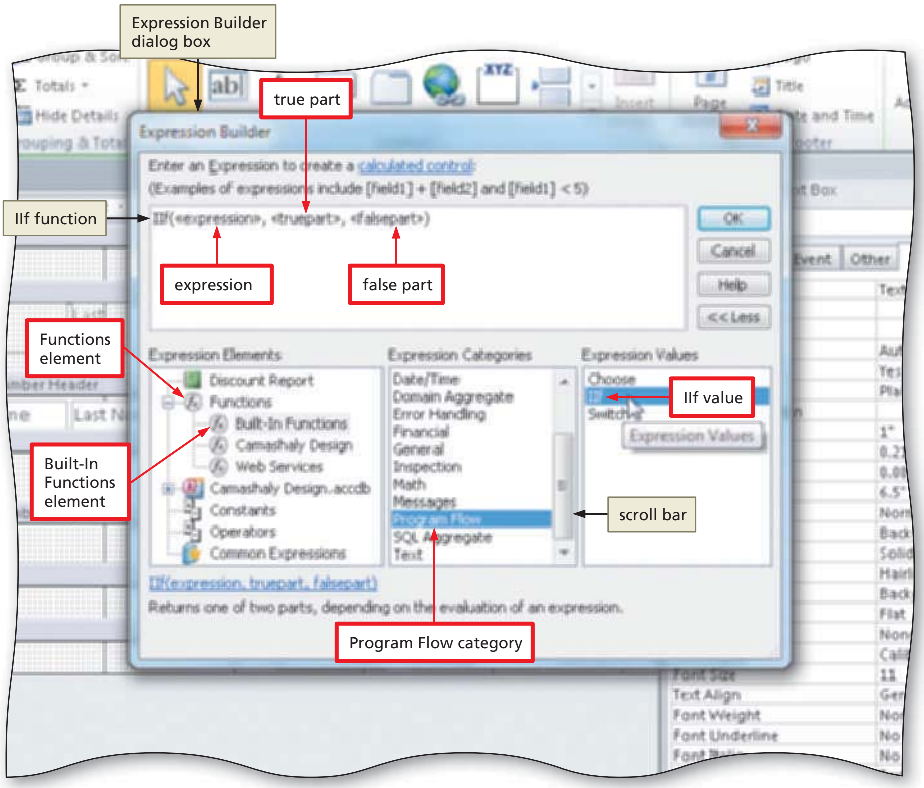
Figure 6–76

3

- Click the Build button to display the Expression Builder dialog box.
- Double-click Functions in the first column to display the function subfolders.
- Click Built-In Functions in the first column to display the various function categories in the second column.
- Scroll down in the second column so that Program Flow appears, and then click Program Flow to display the available program flow functions in the third column.
- Double-click IIf in the third column to select the IIf function (Figure 6–77).

Q&A Do I have to select Program Flow? Could I not just scroll down to IIf?

You do not have to select Program Flow. You could indeed scroll down to IIf. You will have to scroll through a large number of functions in order to get to IIf, however.


Expression Builder dialog box
true part
IIf function
expression
false part
Functions element
Built-In Functions element
IIf value
scroll bar
Program Flow category
Expression Builder
OK
Cancel
Help
<< Less
Expression Elements
Discount Report
Functions
Built-In Functions
Camashaly Design
Web Services
Camashaly Design.accdb
Constants
Operators
Common Expressions
Expression Categories
Date/Time
Domain Aggregate
Error Handling
Financial
General
Inspection
Math
Messages
Program Flow
SQL Aggregate
Text
Expression Values
Choose
IIf
Switch

Enter an Expression to create a calculated control:
(Examples of expressions include [field1] + [field2] and [field1] < 5)

IIf(«expression», «truepart», «falsepart»)

IIf(expression, truepart, falsepart)
Returns one of two parts, depending on the evaluation of an expression.

Figure 6–77

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

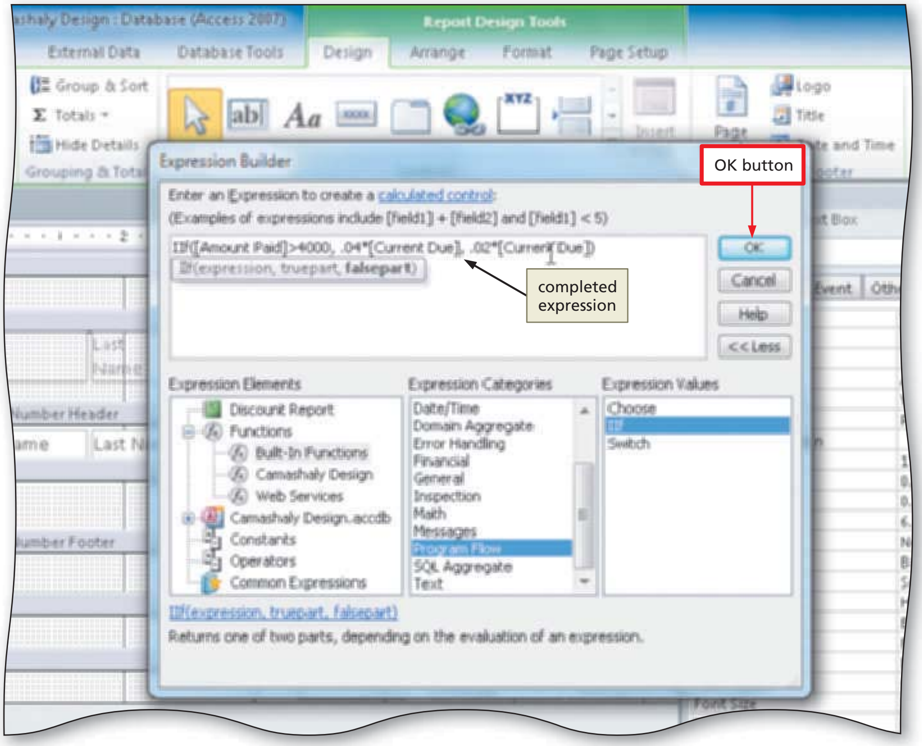
4

- Click the <expression> argument to select it and type `[Amount Paid]>4000` as the expression.
- Click the <truepart> argument to select it and type `.04*[Current Due]` as the true part.
- Click the <falsepart> argument to select it and type `.02*[Current Due]` as the false part (Figure 6–78).

Q&A

Are there other ways I could enter the expression?

Yes. You could just type the whole expression. On the other hand, you could select the function just as in these steps, and, when entering each argument, you could select the fields from the list of fields and click the desired operators.


Expression Builder

Enter an Expression to create a calculated control:

(Examples of expressions include [field1] + [field2] and [field1] < 5)

IIf([Amount Paid]>4000, .04*[Current Due], .02*[Current Due])

IIf(expression, truepart, falsepart)

Returns one of two parts, depending on the evaluation of an expression.

OK button
completed expression
OK
Cancel
Help
<< Less
Expression Elements
Discount Report
Functions
Built-In Functions
Camashaly Design
Web Services
Camashaly Design.accdb
Constants
Operators
Common Expressions
Expression Categories
Date/Time
Domain Aggregate
Error Handling
Financial
General
Inspection
Math
Messages
Program Flow
SQL Aggregate
Text
Expression Values
Choose
IIf
Switch
Report Design Tools
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
Group & Sort
Totals
Hide Details
Logo
Title
Date and Time

Figure 6–78

5

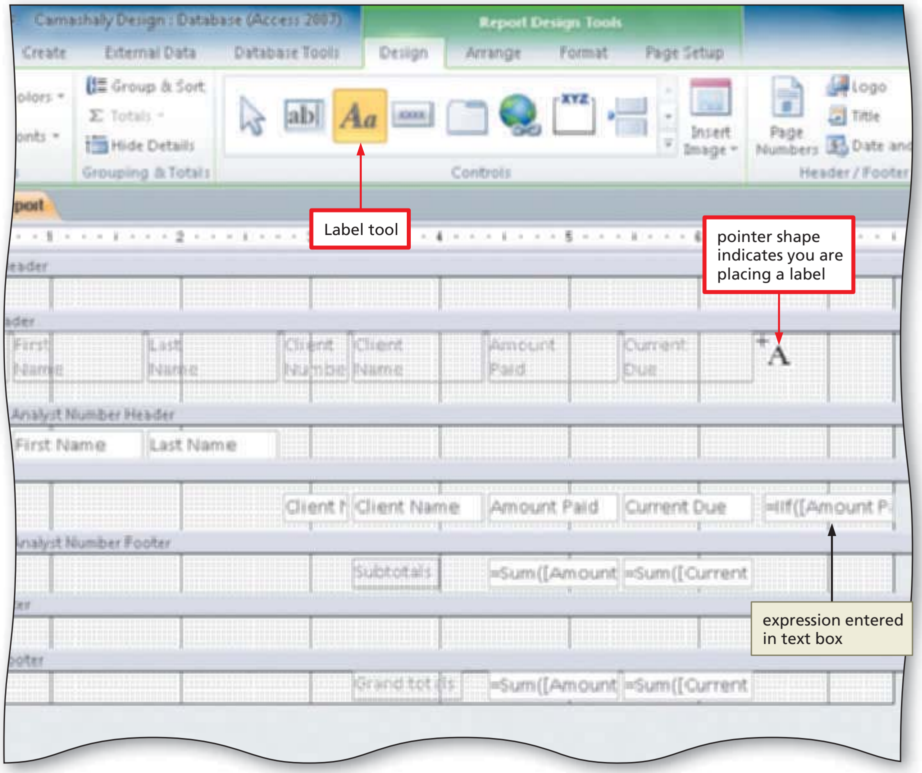
- Click the OK button (Expression Builder dialog box) to specify the expression as the control source for the text box.

Q&A

My property sheet is covering my OK button. What should I do?

Click in the Expression Builder dialog box to bring the entire dialog box in front of the property sheet.

- Change the Format to Currency.
- Change the number of decimal places to 2.
- Close the property sheet by clicking the Property Sheet button.
- Click the Label tool on the Design tab and point to the approximate position shown in Figure 6–79.



Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
Report Design Tools
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
Group & Sort
Totals
Hide Details
Grouping & Totals
Controls
Insert Image
Page Numbers
Logo
Title
Date and Time
Header / Footer
Label tool
pointer shape indicates you are placing a label
First Name
Last Name
Client Number
Client Name
Amount Paid
Current Due
Analyst Number Header
Analyst Number Footer
Subtotals
Grand totals
=Sum([Amount
=Sum([Current
=IIf([Amount P
expression entered in text box

Figure 6–79

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

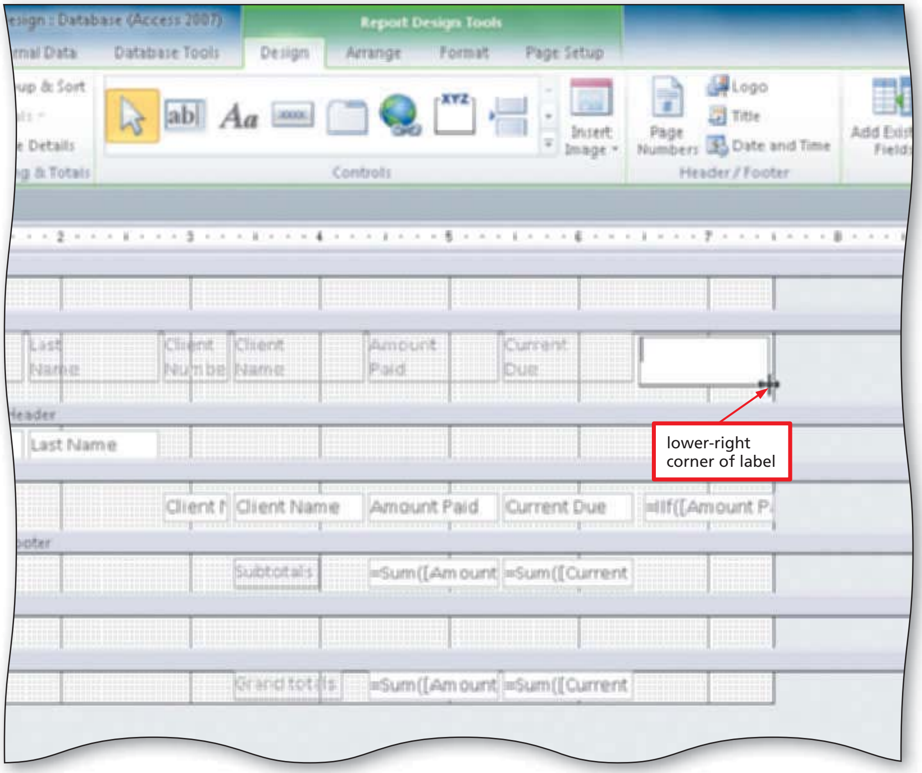
6

- Press and hold the left mouse button, drag the pointer to the approximate position as the lower-right corner of the label shown in Figure 6–80, and then release the left mouse button to place the label.

Q&A

I made the label the wrong size. What should I do?

With the label selected, drag the sizing handles to resize the label as needed. Drag the control in a position away from the sizing handles if you need to move the label.


Report Design Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
Controls
Insert Image
Page Numbers
Logo
Title
Date and Time
Header / Footer
Last Name
Client Number
Client Name
Amount Paid
Current Due
=IIf([Amount P
Subtotals
=Sum([Amount
=Sum([Current
Grand totals

lower-right corner of label

Figure 6–80

7

- Type `Discount` to enter the name of the label.
- Click outside the label to deselect the label and then select the Amount Paid, Current Due, and Discount labels.
- With the labels selected, display the Format tab and then click the Align Text Right button (Report Design Tools Format tab | Font group) to right-align the text within the labels.
- Move or resize the Discount label as necessary so that it aligns with the new text box and with the other controls in the Page Header section.
- Expand the Report Header section to the approximate size shown in Figure 6–81, place a label in the approximate position shown in the figure, and then type `Discount Report` in the label.

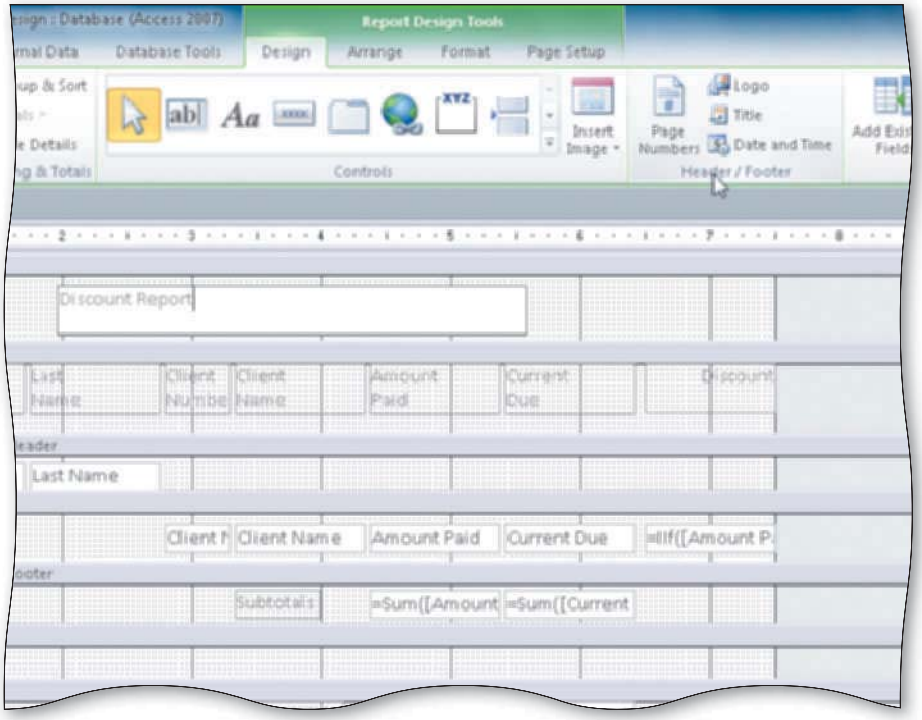
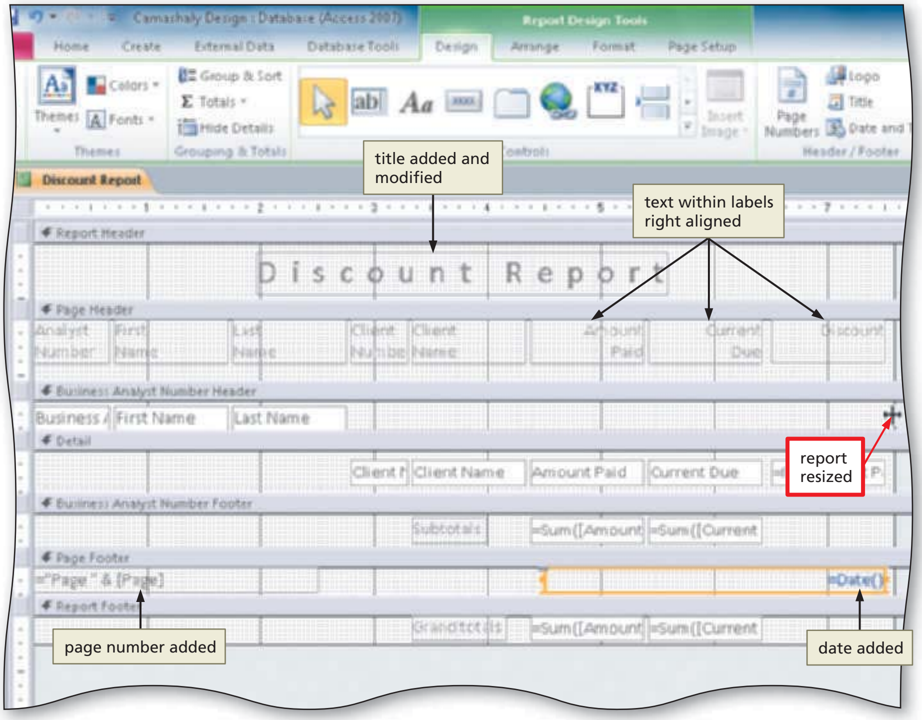

Report Design Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
Controls
Header / Footer
Discount Report
Last Name
Client Number
Client Name
Amount Paid
Current Due
Discount
=IIf([Amount P
Subtotals
=Sum([Amount
=Sum([Current

Figure 6–81

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

8

- Click outside the label to deselect it and then click the label in the report header a second time to select the entire label.
- Display the property sheet, change the font size to 20 and the text align property to Distribute, which spreads the letters evenly throughout the label. Change the font weight to Semi-bold, and then close the property sheet.
- If necessary, increase the size of the title control so that the entire title is displayed.
- Using the Design tab and the techniques on pages AC 378 through AC 379, add a page number to the page footer, and add a date (use the same format you have used previously in this chapter).
- Cut the date, and then paste it into the page footer. Drag the date so that the date is positioned in the approximate position shown in Figure 6–82.
- Drag the right boundary of the report to the position shown in the figure to reduce the width of the report.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007)
Report Design Tools
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
Themes
Colors
Fonts
Group & Sort
Totals
Hide Details
Grouping & Totals
Controls
Insert Image
Page Numbers
Logo
Title
Date and Time
Header / Footer
Discount Report
Report Header
Discount Report
Page Header
Analyst Number
First Name
Last Name
Client Number
Client Name
Amount Paid
Current Due
Discount
Business Analyst Number Header
Business A
First Name
Last Name
Detail
Client N
Client Name
Amount Paid
Current Due
Business Analyst Number Footer
Subtotals
=Sum([Amount
=Sum([Current
Page Footer
="Page " & [Page]
=Date()
Report Footer
Grand totals
=Sum([Amount
=Sum([Current

title added and modified

text within labels right aligned

report resized

page number added

date added

Figure 6–82

To Change the Border Style

If you print or preview the report, you will notice that all the controls have boxes around them. The box is the border and you can select the border style. The following steps remove the boxes around the controls by changing the border style to transparent.

1. Select all controls in the report. You can click the first one, and then hold the SHIFT key down while clicking all the others. Alternatively, you can click in the ruler to the left of the Report Header section and then hold the SHIFT key down while clicking to the left of all the other sections.
2. Display the Design tab.
3. Click the Property Sheet button (Report Design Tools Design tab | Tools group) to display the property sheet.
4. Click the Border Style property box and then click the Border Style property box arrow to display the menu of available border styles.
5. Click Transparent to change the border style.

BTW

Report Title Placement
You also can place a report title in a page header. One advantage of doing so is that the title will then print on each page of the report.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Remove the Alternate Color

Just as with the Business Analyst Master List, the Discount Report also has alternate colors that need to be removed. The following steps remove the alternate colors from the various sections in the report, starting with the Detail section.

1. Right-click the Detail section to produce a shortcut menu.
2. Point to the Alternate Fill/Back Color arrow to produce a color palette.
3. Click None on the color palette to specify that there is to be no alternate color for the selected section.
4. Using the same techniques, remove the alternate color from all other sections. (For some sections, the command may be dimmed.)

Obtaining Help on Functions

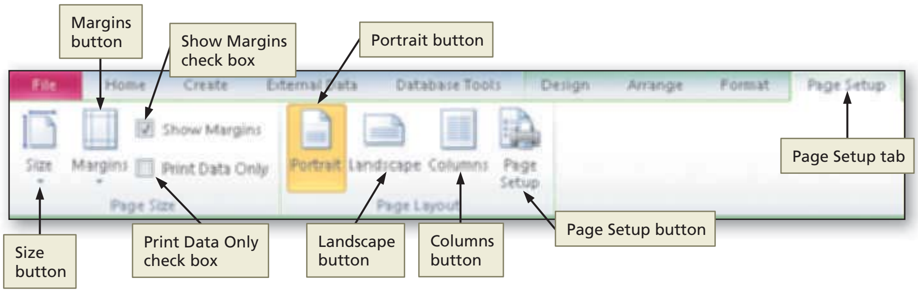
There are many functions available in Access for a variety of purposes. To see the list of functions, use the Expression Builder. Double-click Functions in the first column and then click Built-In Functions. You then can scroll through the entire list of functions in the third column. Alternatively, you can click a function category in the second column, in which case the third column only will contain the functions in that category. To obtain detailed help on a function, highlight the function in the third column and click the Help button. The Help presented will show the syntax of the function, that is, the specific rule for how you must type the function and any arguments. It will give you general comments on the function as well as examples illustrating the use of the function.

BTW

Arguments
An argument is a piece of data on which a function operates. For example, in the expression =SUM ([Amount Paid]), Amount Paid is the argument because the SUM function will calculate the total of Amount Paid.

Page Setup Tab

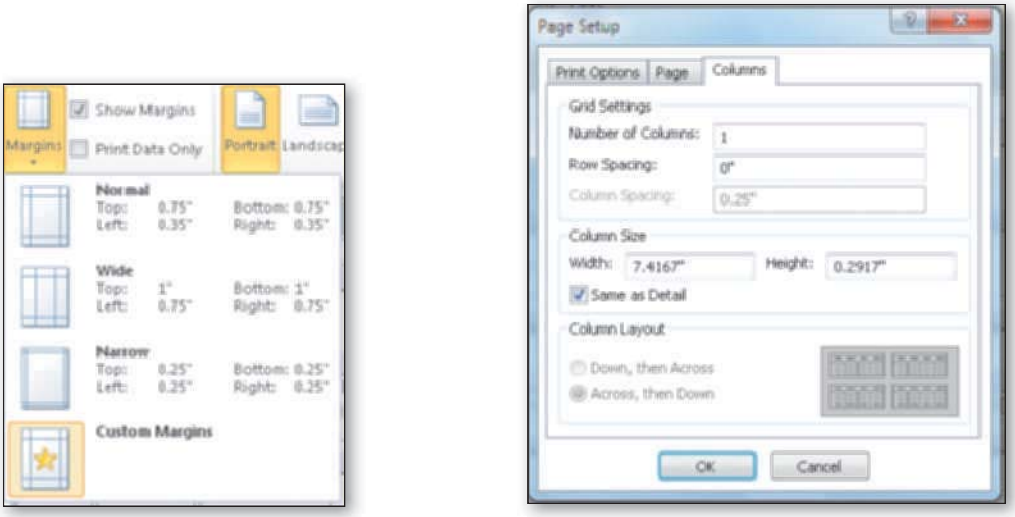
You can use the buttons on the Page Setup tab to change margins, orientation, and other page setup characteristics of the report (Figure 6–83a). If you click the Margins button, you can choose from among some predefined margins or set your own custom margins (Figure 6–83b). If you click the Columns button, you will see the Page Setup dialog box with the Columns tab selected (Figure 6–83c). You can use this tab to specify multiple columns in a report as well as the column spacing. If you click the Page Setup button, you will see the Page Setup dialog box with the Print Options tab selected (Figure 6–83d). You can use this tab to specify custom margins. You can specify orientation by clicking the Page tab (Figure 6–83e). You also can select paper size, paper source, and printer using this tab.


Margins button
Show Margins check box
Portrait button
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Arrange
Format
Page Setup
Size
Margins
Show Margins
Print Data Only
Portrait
Landscape
Columns
Page Setup
Page Size
Page Layout
Page Setup tab
Size button
Print Data Only check box
Landscape button
Columns button
Page Setup button

(a) Page Setup tab

Figure 6–83

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.



Normal
Top: 0.75" Bottom: 0.75"
Left: 0.35" Right: 0.35"

Wide
Top: 1" Bottom: 1"
Left: 0.75" Right: 0.75"

Narrow
Top: 0.25" Bottom: 0.25"
Left: 0.25" Right: 0.25"

Custom Margins

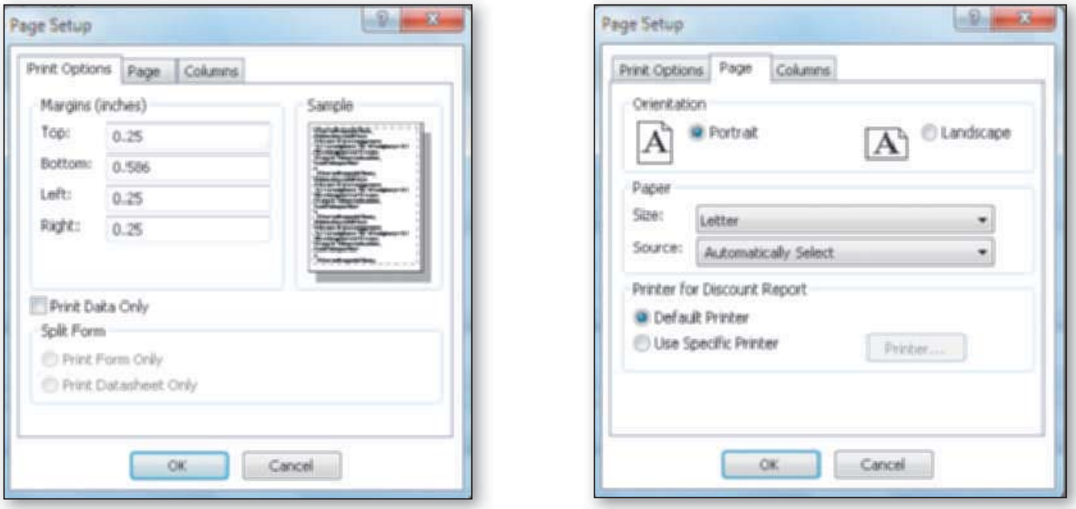
Grid Settings
Number of Columns: 1
Row Spacing: 0"
Column Spacing: 0.25"

Column Size
Width: 7.4167" Height: 0.2917"
☑ Same as Detail

Column Layout
○ Down, then Across
● Across, then Down

(b) Margins button menu

(c) Columns tab



Margins (inches)
Top: 0.25
Bottom: 0.586
Left: 0.25
Right: 0.25

☐ Print Data Only

Split Form
○ Print Form Only
○ Print Datasheet Only

Orientation
● Portrait ○ Landscape

Paper
Size: Letter
Source: Automatically Select

Printer for Discount Report
● Default Printer
○ Use Specific Printer

(d) Print Options tab

(e) Page tab

Figure 6–83

To Change the Report Margins

If you look at the horizontal ruler in Figure 6–82 on page AC 398, you will notice that the report width is slightly over seven inches. Because the report probably will print on standard 8½" × 11" paper, a seven-inch report with one-inch margins on the left and right, which would result in a nine-inch width, will not fit. To allow the report to fit on the page, you need to reduce the margins. There are two ways to change the margins. You can click the Margins button on the Page Setup tab and then select from some predefined options. If you want more control, you can click the Page Setup button to display the Page Setup dialog box. You then can specify your own margins, change the orientation, and also specify multiple columns if you want a multicolumn report.

BTW

Default Names for Controls

Because each control has properties associated with it, Access assigns a default name to each new control. The default name includes a control identifier and a number. For example, if you create a text box on a report, the default name may be Text32. You should change the default name to something meaningful to make it easier to remember the purpose of the control.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

The following steps use the Margins button to select Narrow margins.

1. Display the Page Setup tab.
2. Click the Margins button (Report Design Tools Page Setup tab | Page Size group).
3. If necessary, click Narrow to specify the Narrow margin option.

Fine-Tuning a Report

When you have finished a report, you should review several of its pages in Print Preview to make sure the layout is precisely what you want. You may find that you need to increase the size of a control, which you can do by selecting the control and dragging the appropriate sizing handle. You may realize you need an additional control, which you could add by using the appropriate tool in the Controls group or by dragging a field from the field list.

In both cases, you have a potential problem. You may not have the room to increase the size or to add an additional control. If the control is part of a control layout that you had when you modified earlier reports in Layout view, you can resize controls or add new fields, and the remaining fields automatically adjust for the change. In Design view with individual controls, you must make any necessary adjustments manually.

BTW **Certification**
The Microsoft Office Specialist (MOS) program provides an opportunity for you to obtain a valuable industry credential — proof that you have the Access 2010 skills required by employers. For more information, visit the Access 2010 Certification Web page (scsite.com/ac2010/cert).

TO MAKE ROOM FOR RESIZING OR ADDITIONAL CONTROLS

To make room for resizing a control or for adding additional controls, you would use the following steps.

1. Select all controls to the right of the control you want to resize or the position where you want to add another control.
2. Drag any of the selected controls to the right to make room for the change.

BTW **Quick Reference**
For a table that lists how to complete the tasks covered in this book using the mouse, Ribbon, shortcut menu, and keyboard, see the Quick Reference Summary at the back of this book, or visit the Access 2010 Quick Reference Web page (scsite.com/ac2010/qr).

To Save and Close a Report

Now that you have completed your work on your report, you should save the report and close it. The following steps first save your work on the report and then close the report.

1. Click the Save button on the Quick Access Toolbar to save your work.
2. Close the Discount Report.

To Print a Report

The following steps print the report.

1. With the Discount Report selected in the Navigation Pane, click File on the Ribbon to open the Backstage view.
2. Click the Print tab in the Backstage view to display the Print gallery.
3. Click the Quick Print button to print the report and compare your results to Figure 6–1b on page AC 340.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Quit Access

The following steps quit Access.

1. Click the Close button on the right side of the title bar to quit Access.
2. If a Microsoft Access dialog box appears, click the Save button to save any changes made to the object since the last save.

Chapter Summary

In this chapter you have learned to create and relate additional tables; create queries for a report; create reports in Design view; add fields and text boxes to a report; format controls; group and ungroup controls; modify multiple controls; add and modify a subreport; modify section properties; add a title, page number, and date; add totals and subtotals; use a function in a text box; and publish a report. The items listed below include all the new Access skills you have learned in this chapter.

1. Create the New Tables (AC 343)
2. Relate Several Tables (AC 346)
3. Create an Additional Query for the Report (AC 348)
4. Create an Initial Report in Design View (AC 351)
5. Add Fields to the Report in Design View (AC 354)
6. Change Labels (AC 356)
7. Add Text Boxes (AC 358)
8. View the Report in Print Preview (AC 361)
9. Format a Control (AC 361)
10. Group Controls (AC 362)
11. Ungroup Controls (AC 363)
12. Modify Grouped Controls (AC 364)
13. Modify Multiple Controls That Are Not Grouped (AC 365)
14. Add a Subreport (AC 368)
15. Open the Subreport in Design View (AC 371)
16. Modify the Controls in the Subreport (AC 372)
17. Change the Can Grow Property (AC 373)
18. Change the Appearance of the Controls in the Subreport (AC 374)
19. Resize the Subreport and the Report in Design View (AC 376)
20. Modify Section Properties (AC 377)
21. Add a Title, Page Number, and Date (AC 378)
22. Remove the Alternate Color (AC 380)
23. Publish a Report (AC 381)
24. Add and Move Fields in a Report (AC 382)
25. Add the Remaining Fields (AC 385)
26. Resize the Detail Section (AC 386)
27. Add Totals and Subtotals (AC 387)
28. Remove the Color from the Report Header (AC 393)
29. Assign a Conditional Value (AC 394)
30. Make Room for Resizing or Additional Controls (AC 401)

SAM If you have a SAM 2010 user profile, your instructor may have assigned an autogradable version of this assignment. If so, log into the SAM 2010 Web site at www.cengage.com/sam2010 to download the instruction and start files.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Learn It Online

Test your knowledge of chapter content and key terms.

Instructions: To complete the Learn It Online exercises, start your browser, click the Address bar, and then enter the Web address **`scsite.com/ac2010/learn`**. When the Access 2010 Learn It Online page is displayed, click the link for the exercise you want to complete and then read the instructions.

Chapter Reinforcement TF, MC, and SA

A series of true/false, multiple choice, and short answer questions that test your knowledge of the chapter content.

Flash Cards

An interactive learning environment where you identify chapter key terms associated with displayed definitions.

Practice Test

A series of multiple choice questions that test your knowledge of chapter content and key terms.

Who Wants To Be a Computer Genius?

An interactive game that challenges your knowledge of chapter content in the style of a television quiz show.

Wheel of Terms

An interactive game that challenges your knowledge of chapter key terms in the style of the television show *Wheel of Fortune*.

Crossword Puzzle Challenge

A crossword puzzle that challenges your knowledge of key terms presented in the chapter.

Apply Your Knowledge

Reinforce the skills and apply the concepts you learned in this chapter.

Adding a Table and Creating a Report with a Subreport

Instructions: Start Access. If you are using the Microsoft Access 2010 Complete or the Microsoft Access 2010 Comprehensive text, open the Babbage CPA Firm database that you used in Chapter 5. Otherwise, see your instructor for information on accessing the files required in this book.

Perform the following tasks:

1. Create a table in which to store data about bookkeeping services performed for clients. Use Accounts as the name of the table. The Accounts table has the structure shown in Table 6–4.

Table 6–4 Structure of Accounts Table

Field Name	Data Type	Field Size	Description
Client Number	Text	3	Part of Primary Key
Service Date	Date/Time (Change Format property to Short Date)		Part of Primary Key
Hours Worked	Number (Change Format property to Fixed and Decimal Places to 2)	Single	

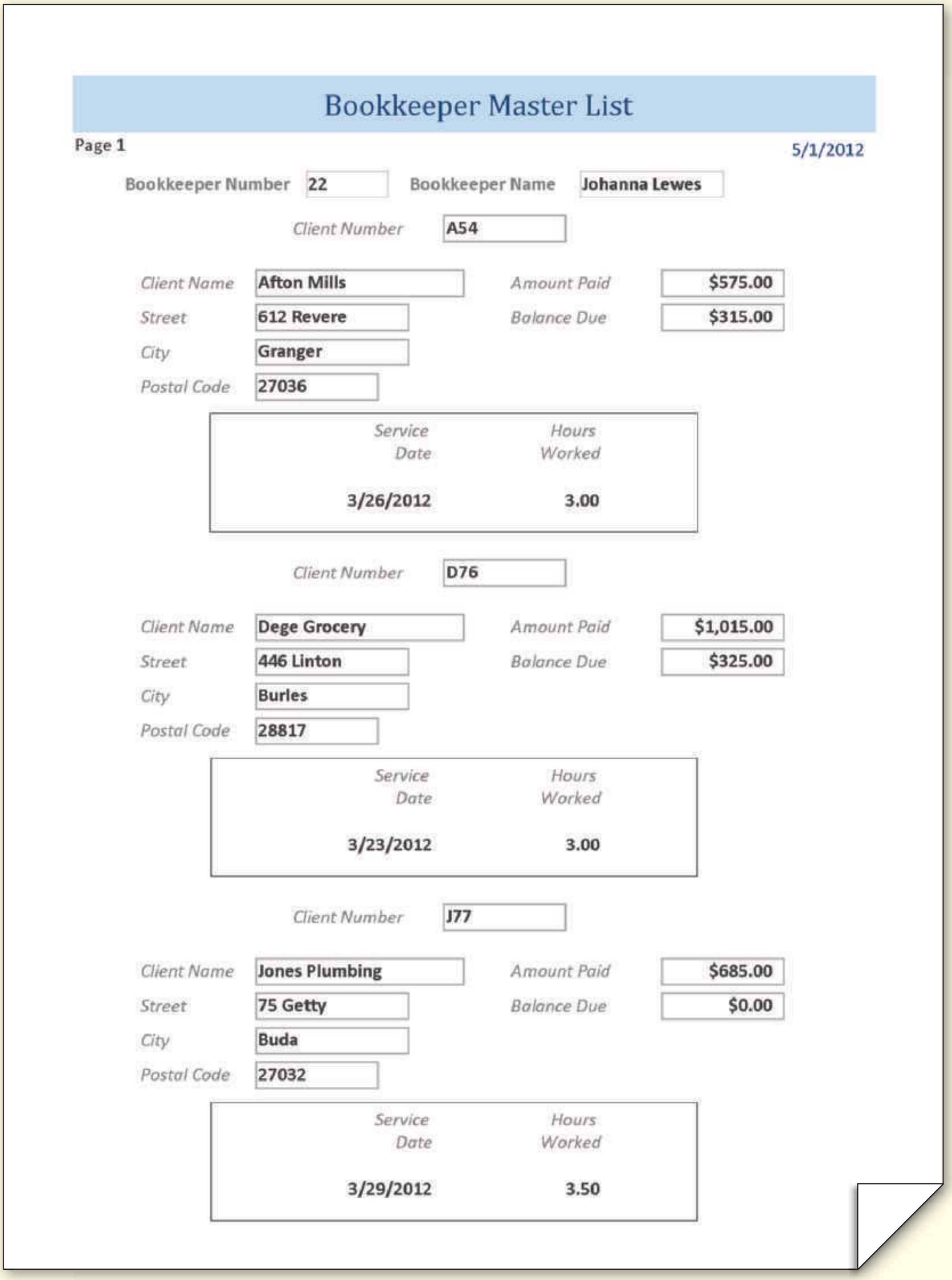
2. Import the Accounts.xlsx workbook to the Accounts table.
3. Create a one-to-many relationship between the Client table and the Accounts table.
4. Create a query that joins the Bookkeeper and Client tables. Include the Bookkeeper Number, First Name, and Last Name fields from the Bookkeeper table. Include all fields except the bookkeeper number from the Client table. Save the query as Bookkeepers and Clients.

Continued >

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Apply Your Knowledge *continued*

5. Create the report shown in Figure 6–84. The report uses the query that you created in Step 4 and the Accounts table. Use the name Bookkeeper Master List for the report. The report is in the same style as the Business Analyst Master List shown in Figure 6–1a on page AC 339.



Bookkeeper Master List

Page 1 5/1/2012

Bookkeeper Number 22 Bookkeeper Name Johanna Lewes

Client Number A54

Client Name	Afton Mills	Amount Paid	$575.00
Street	612 Revere	Balance Due	$315.00
City	Granger		
Postal Code	27036		

Service Date	Hours Worked
3/26/2012	3.00

Client Number D76

Client Name	Dege Grocery	Amount Paid	$1,015.00
Street	446 Linton	Balance Due	$325.00
City	Burles		
Postal Code	28817		

Service Date	Hours Worked
3/23/2012	3.00

Client Number J77

Client Name	Jones Plumbing	Amount Paid	$685.00
Street	75 Getty	Balance Due	$0.00
City	Buda		
Postal Code	27032		

Service Date	Hours Worked
3/29/2012	3.50

Figure 6–84

6. Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Extend Your Knowledge

Extend the skills you learned in this chapter and experiment with new skills. You may need to use Help to complete the assignment.

Modifying Reports

Instructions: Copy the Camashaly Design database and rename the database to Chapter 6 Camashaly Design. Start Access and open the database that you copied and renamed.

Perform the following tasks:

1. Open the Business Analyst Master List in Design view. Add your name to the report footer. Your name should appear on the left.
2. Change the report title from Business Analyst Master List to Business Analyst/Course Master List. Change the font color to red and underline the title. Change the report header background to white. Change the date format to Long Date. Change the border width for the subreport control to 4 pt.
3. Open the Discount Report in Design view. Calculate the average aggregate statistics for both the Amount Paid and Current Due columns. Place these statistics in the report footer only. Include an appropriate label for the statistics. Use conditional formatting to format the discount value in a bold red font for all records where the value is equal to or greater than $100.
4. Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

Make It Right

Analyze a database and correct all errors and/or improve the design.

Correcting Report Design Errors

Instructions: Start Access. Open the Condo Rentals database. See the inside back cover of this book for instructions on downloading the Data Files for Students, or contact your instructor for more information about accessing the required files.

The Condo Rentals database contains data about a company that rents condos in a popular resort community. The owner of the company has created the report shown in Design view in Figure 6–85, but there are a few problems. She really wanted to concatenate the first and last name of the owner with the label, Name. Bold the control and the label. The title of the report should be centered across the report and should appear in the report header, not in the page header. The page number and the date should appear in the page header, not the page footer. Finally, she would like to add a label to the report footer. The label should contain the text, End of Report, to indicate the end of the report. Bold the end-of-report label.

Continued >

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Make It Right *continued*

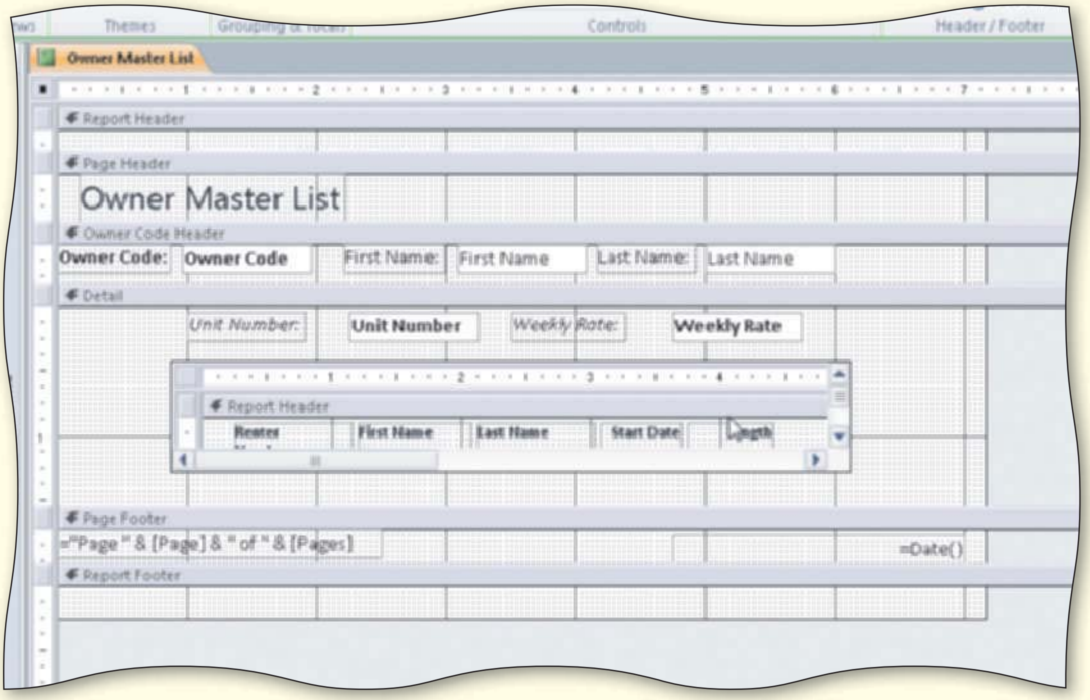

Themes
Grouping & Totals
Controls
Header / Footer
Owner Master List
Report Header
Page Header
Owner Master List
Owner Code Header
Owner Code:
Owner Code
First Name:
First Name
Last Name:
Last Name
Detail
Unit Number:
Unit Number
Weekly Rate:
Weekly Rate
Report Header
Renter
First Name
Last Name
Start Date
Length
Page Footer
="Page " & [Page] & " of " & [Pages]
=Date()
Report Footer

Figure 6–85

Correct these errors and submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

In the Lab

Design, create, modify, and/or use a database following the guidelines, concepts, and skills presented in this chapter. Labs are listed in order of increasing difficulty.

Lab 1: Adding Tables and Creating Reports for the ECO Clothesline Database

Problem: ECO Clothesline needs to maintain data on a weekly basis on the open orders for its customers. These are orders that have not yet been delivered. To track this information requires a new table, an Open Orders table. The company also needs a report that displays sales rep information as well as information about customers and any open orders that the customer has. The company would like to show its appreciation to current customers by discounting the amount customers currently owe.

Instructions: If you are using the Microsoft Access 2010 Complete or the Microsoft Access 2010 Comprehensive text, open the ECO Clothesline database that you used in Chapter 5. Otherwise, see the inside back cover of this book for instructions on downloading the Data Files for Students, or contact your instructor for more information about accessing the required files.

Perform the following tasks:

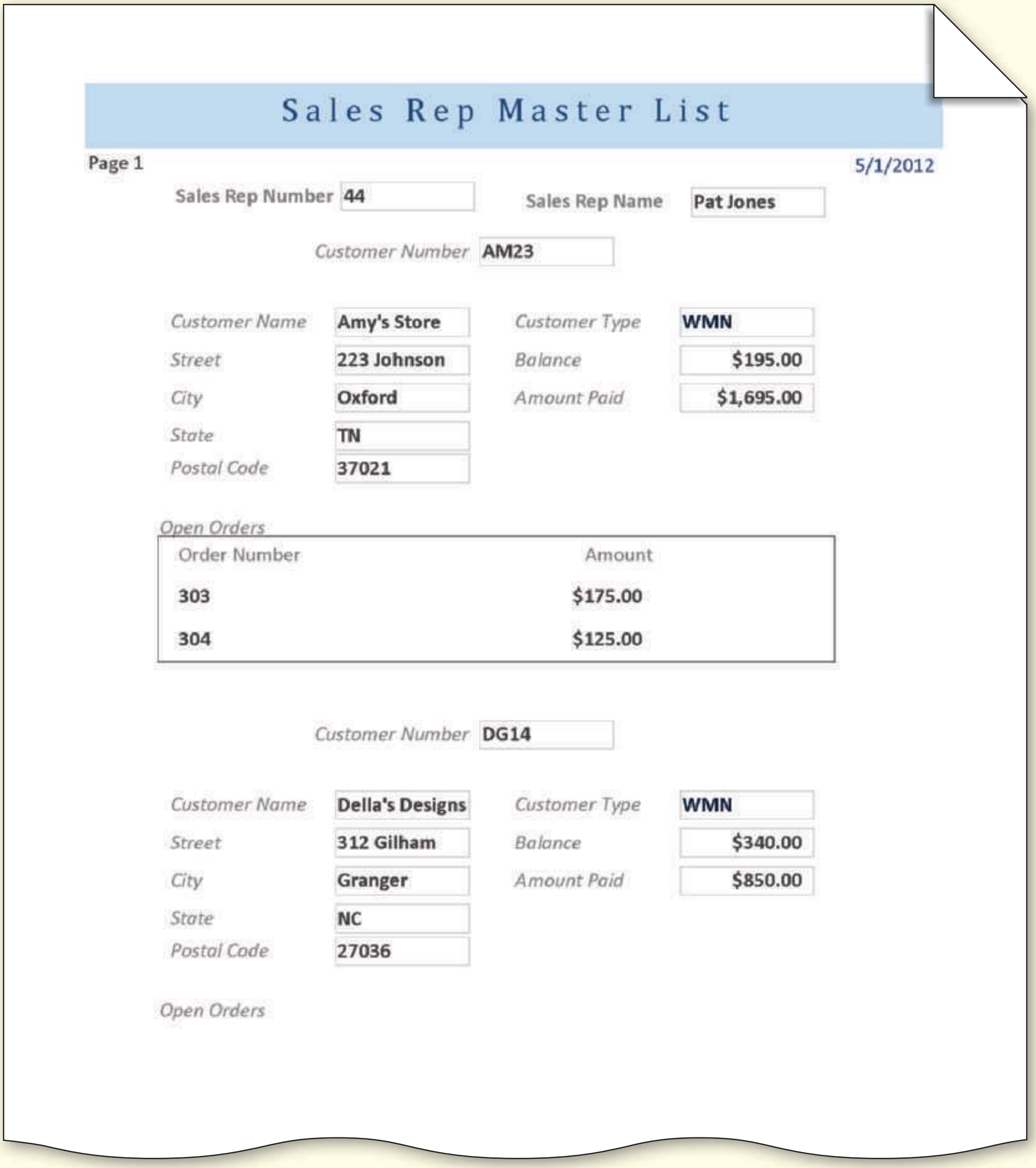
1. Create the Open Orders table using the structure shown in Table 6–5.

Table 6–5 Structure of Open Orders Table

Field Name	Data Type	Field Size	Description
Order Number	Text	4	Primary Key: Yes
Amount	Currency		
Customer Number	Text	4	Foreign Key: matches primary key of Customer table

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2. Import the Open Orders.txt file into the Open Orders table.
3. Create a one-to-many relationship between the Customer table and the Open Orders table.
4. Create a query that joins the Sales Rep and the Customer tables. Include the Sales Rep Number, Last Name, and First Name fields from the Sales Rep table. Include all fields except the Sales Rep Number field from the Customer table. Save the query as Sales Reps and Customers.
5. Create the report shown in Figure 6–86. The report uses the Sales Reps and Customers query as the basis for the main report and the Open Orders table as the basis for the subreport. Use the name Sales Rep Master List for the report. The report title has a Text Align property value of Distribute. The Border Width property is hairline and the subreport label is Open Orders. The report is similar in style to the Business Analyst Master List shown in Figure 6–1a on page AC 339.



Sales Rep Master List

Page 1
5/1/2012

Sales Rep Number 44
Sales Rep Name Pat Jones

Customer Number AM23

Customer Name Amy's Store
Street 223 Johnson
City Oxford
State TN
Postal Code 37021
Customer Type WMN
Balance $195.00
Amount Paid $1,695.00

Open Orders

Order Number	Amount
303	$175.00
304	$125.00

Customer Number DG14

Customer Name Della's Designs
Street 312 Gilham
City Granger
State NC
Postal Code 27036
Customer Type WMN
Balance $340.00
Amount Paid $850.00

Open Orders

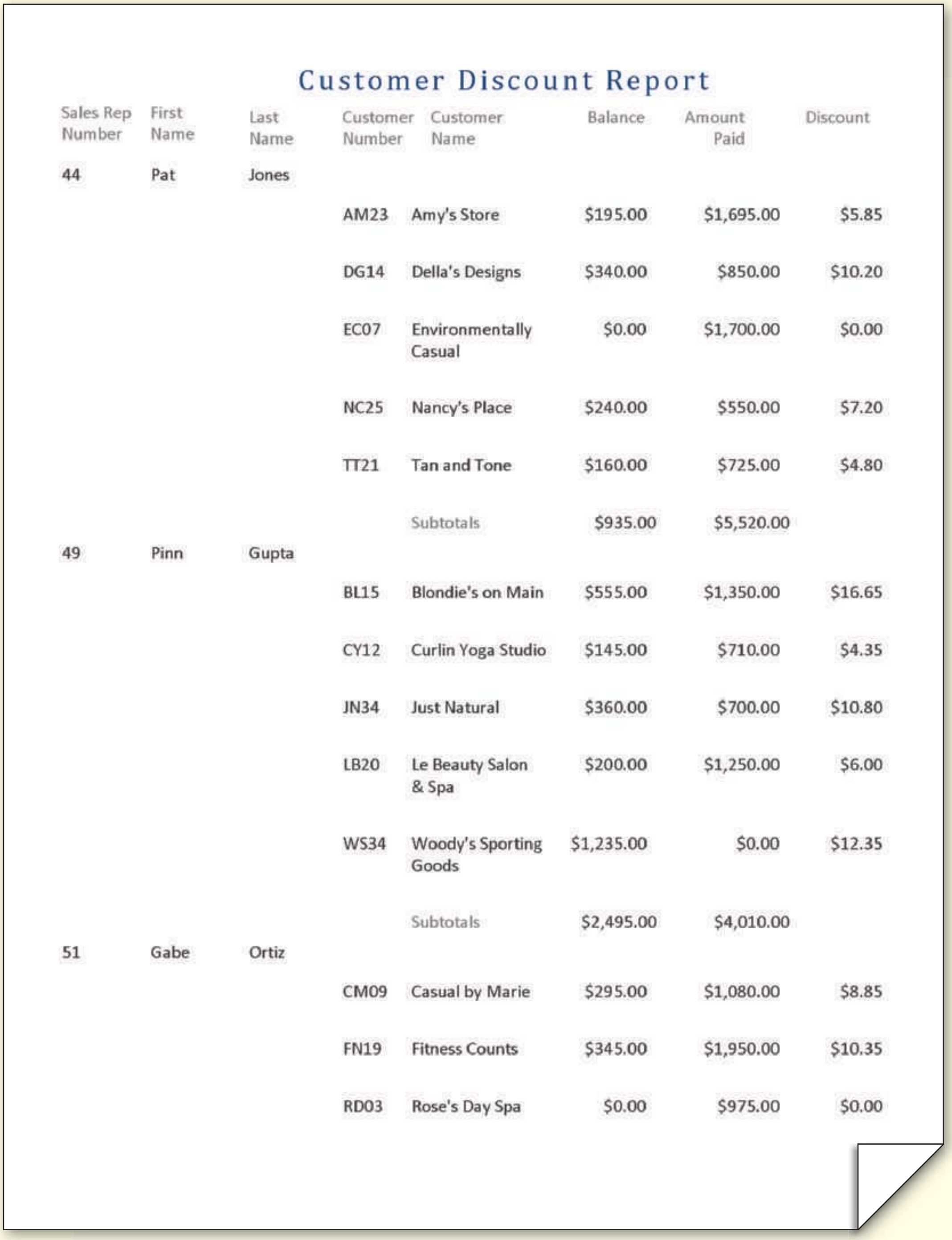
Figure 6–86

Continued >

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

In the Lab *continued*

6. Create the Customer Discount Report shown in Figure 6–87. The report uses the Sales Reps and Customers query. Customers who have paid $500 or more will receive a 3% discount on the remaining balance, and customers who have paid less than $500 will receive a 1% discount on the remaining balance. The report includes subtotals and grand totals for the Balance and Amount Paid fields. The report is similar in style to the Discount Report shown in Figure 6–1b on page AC 340.
7. Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.



Customer Discount Report

Sales Rep Number	First Name	Last Name	Customer Number	Customer Name	Balance	Amount Paid	Discount
44	Pat	Jones					
			AM23	Amy's Store	$195.00	$1,695.00	$5.85
			DG14	Della's Designs	$340.00	$850.00	$10.20
			EC07	Environmentally Casual	$0.00	$1,700.00	$0.00
			NC25	Nancy's Place	$240.00	$550.00	$7.20
			TT21	Tan and Tone	$160.00	$725.00	$4.80
				Subtotals	$935.00	$5,520.00	
49	Pinn	Gupta					
			BL15	Blondie's on Main	$555.00	$1,350.00	$16.65
			CY12	Curlin Yoga Studio	$145.00	$710.00	$4.35
			JN34	Just Natural	$360.00	$700.00	$10.80
			LB20	Le Beauty Salon & Spa	$200.00	$1,250.00	$6.00
			WS34	Woody's Sporting Goods	$1,235.00	$0.00	$12.35
				Subtotals	$2,495.00	$4,010.00	
51	Gabe	Ortiz					
			CM09	Casual by Marie	$295.00	$1,080.00	$8.85
			FN19	Fitness Counts	$345.00	$1,950.00	$10.35
			RD03	Rose's Day Spa	$0.00	$975.00	$0.00

Figure 6–87

In the Lab

Lab 2: Adding Tables and Creating Reports for the Walburg Energy Alternatives Database

Problem: The manager of the Walburg Energy Alternatives store needs to track items that are being reordered from vendors. The manager must know when an item was ordered and how many were ordered. He also needs a report that displays vendor information as well as information about items and the order status of items. Walburg is considering an in-store sale and would like a report that shows the regular selling price as well as the sale price of all items.

Instructions: If you are using the Microsoft Access 2010 Complete or the Microsoft Access 2010 Comprehensive text, open the Walburg Energy Alternatives database that you used in Chapter 5. Otherwise, see the inside back cover of this book for instructions on downloading the Data Files for Students, or contact your instructor for more information about accessing the required files.

Perform the following tasks:

1. Create a table in which to store the item reorder information using the structure shown in Table 6–6. Use Reorder as the name of the table. Import the data from the Reorder.xlsx workbook.

Table 6–6 Structure of Reorder Table

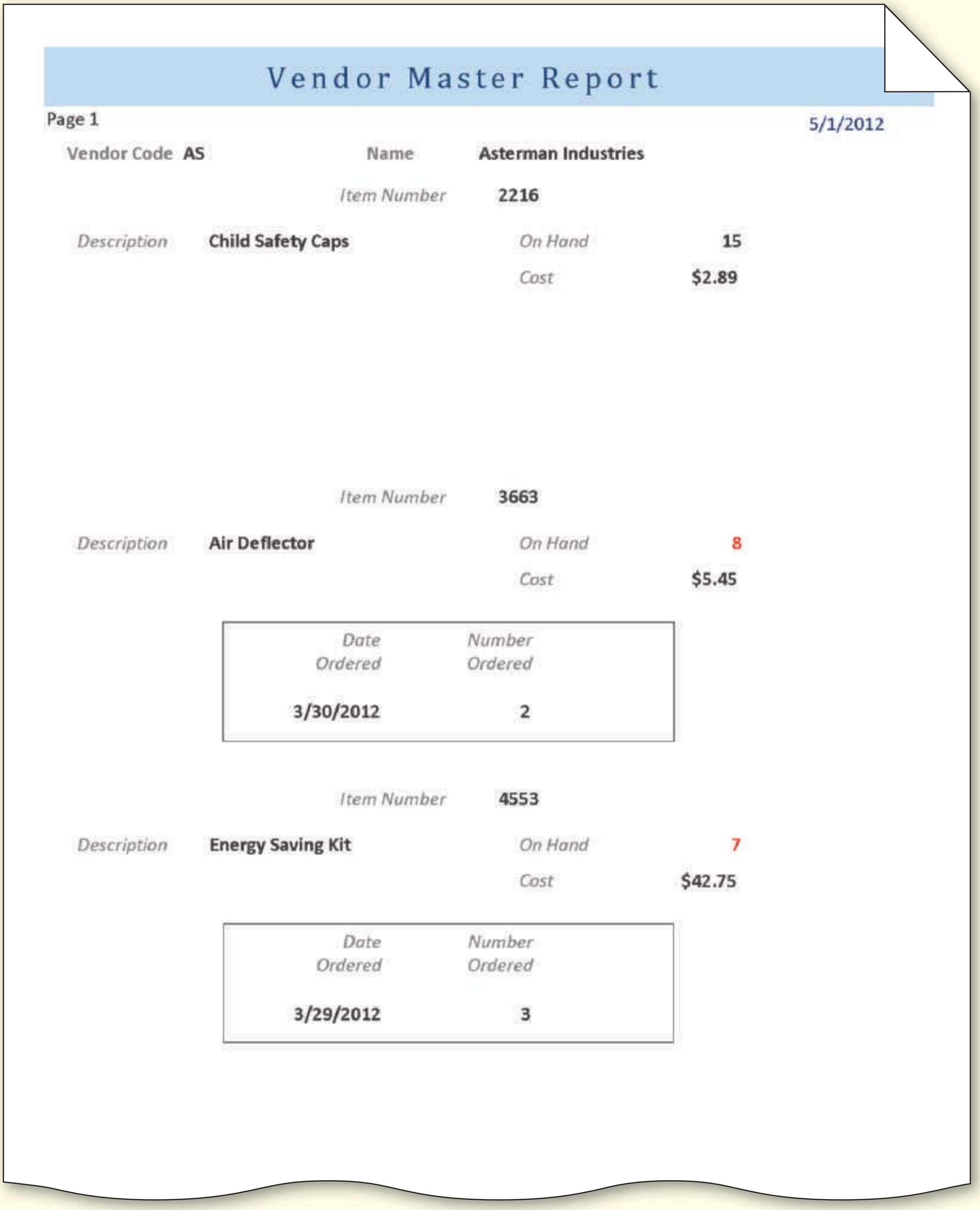
Field Name	Data Type	Field Size	Description
Item Number	Text	4	Part of Primary Key
Date Ordered	Date/Time (Use Short Date format)		Part of Primary Key
Number Ordered	Number	Integer	

2. Add the Reorder table to the Relationships window and establish a one-to-many relationship between the Item table and the Reorder table.
3. Create the report shown in Figure 6–88. The report uses the Vendor-Item Query that was previously created as the basis for the main report and the Reorder table as the basis for the subreport. Use the name Vendor Master Report for the report. The report is the same style as that demonstrated in the project. Use conditional formatting to display the on hand value in bold red font color for all items with fewer than 10 items on hand. Change the Border Style property to Transparent. Change the Text Align property for the title to Distribute.

Continued >

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

In the Lab *continued*



Vendor Master Report

Page 1

5/1/2012

Vendor Code **AS** Name **Asterman Industries**

Item Number **2216**

Description **Child Safety Caps** *On Hand* **15**

Cost **$2.89**

Item Number **3663**

Description **Air Deflector** *On Hand* **8**

Cost **$5.45**

Date Ordered	*Number Ordered*
3/30/2012	**2**

Item Number **4553**

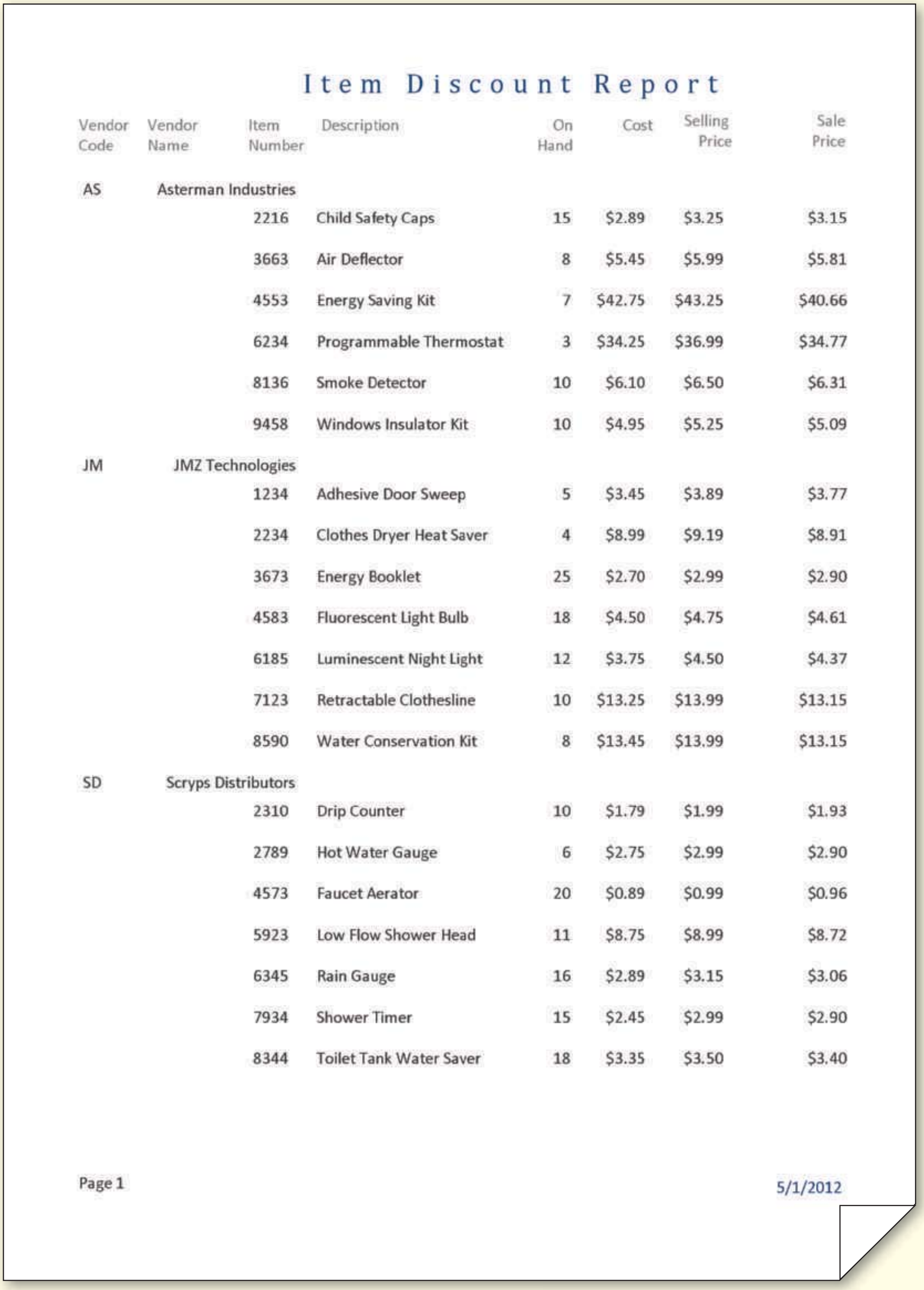
Description **Energy Saving Kit** *On Hand* **7**

Cost **$42.75**

Date Ordered	*Number Ordered*
3/29/2012	**3**

Figure 6–88

4. Open the Vendor-Item Query in Design view and add the Selling Price field to the query. Save the query.
5. Create the Item Discount Report shown in Figure 6–89. The report uses the Vendor-Item Query and calculates the sale amount for each item. Items with a selling price of $10.00 or more have a 6% discount and 3% otherwise. Note that the report shows the sale price, not the discount. The report is similar to the Discount Report shown in Figure 6–1b on page AC 340. However, there are no group subtotals or report grand totals. The page number and the current date appear in the page footer. Change the Can Grow property for the Description field to Yes.



Item Discount Report

Vendor Code	Vendor Name	Item Number	Description	On Hand	Cost	Selling Price	Sale Price
AS	Asterman Industries						
		2216	Child Safety Caps	15	$2.89	$3.25	$3.15
		3663	Air Deflector	8	$5.45	$5.99	$5.81
		4553	Energy Saving Kit	7	$42.75	$43.25	$40.66
		6234	Programmable Thermostat	3	$34.25	$36.99	$34.77
		8136	Smoke Detector	10	$6.10	$6.50	$6.31
		9458	Windows Insulator Kit	10	$4.95	$5.25	$5.09
JM	JMZ Technologies						
		1234	Adhesive Door Sweep	5	$3.45	$3.89	$3.77
		2234	Clothes Dryer Heat Saver	4	$8.99	$9.19	$8.91
		3673	Energy Booklet	25	$2.70	$2.99	$2.90
		4583	Fluorescent Light Bulb	18	$4.50	$4.75	$4.61
		6185	Luminescent Night Light	12	$3.75	$4.50	$4.37
		7123	Retractable Clothesline	10	$13.25	$13.99	$13.15
		8590	Water Conservation Kit	8	$13.45	$13.99	$13.15
SD	Scryps Distributors						
		2310	Drip Counter	10	$1.79	$1.99	$1.93
		2789	Hot Water Gauge	6	$2.75	$2.99	$2.90
		4573	Faucet Aerator	20	$0.89	$0.99	$0.96
		5923	Low Flow Shower Head	11	$8.75	$8.99	$8.72
		6345	Rain Gauge	16	$2.89	$3.15	$3.06
		7934	Shower Timer	15	$2.45	$2.99	$2.90
		8344	Toilet Tank Water Saver	18	$3.35	$3.50	$3.40

Page 1

5/1/2012

Figure 6 – 89

6. Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

In the Lab

Lab 3: Adding Tables and Creating a Report for the Philamar Training Database

Problem: Philamar Training needs to track the classes its trainers offer to clients. The company also needs a report that displays trainer information as well as information about clients and class offerings.

Instructions: If you are using the Microsoft Access 2010 Complete or the Microsoft Access 2010 Comprehensive text, open the Philamar Training database that you used in Chapter 5. Otherwise, see the inside back cover of this book for instructions on downloading the Data Files for Students, or contact your instructor for more information about accessing the required files.

Instructions Part 1: Create two tables in which to store the data concerning classes and class offerings. The Class table contains data about the classes that Philamar offers. The Class Offerings table contains data about classes currently being offered by the trainers. The structure of the Class table is shown in Table 6–7, and the structure of the Class Offerings table is shown in Table 6–8.

Table 6–7 Structure of Class Table

Field Name	Data Type	Field Size	Description
Class Code	Text	3	Primary Key
Class Description	Text	40	
Hours	Number	Integer	
Increments	Number	Integer	

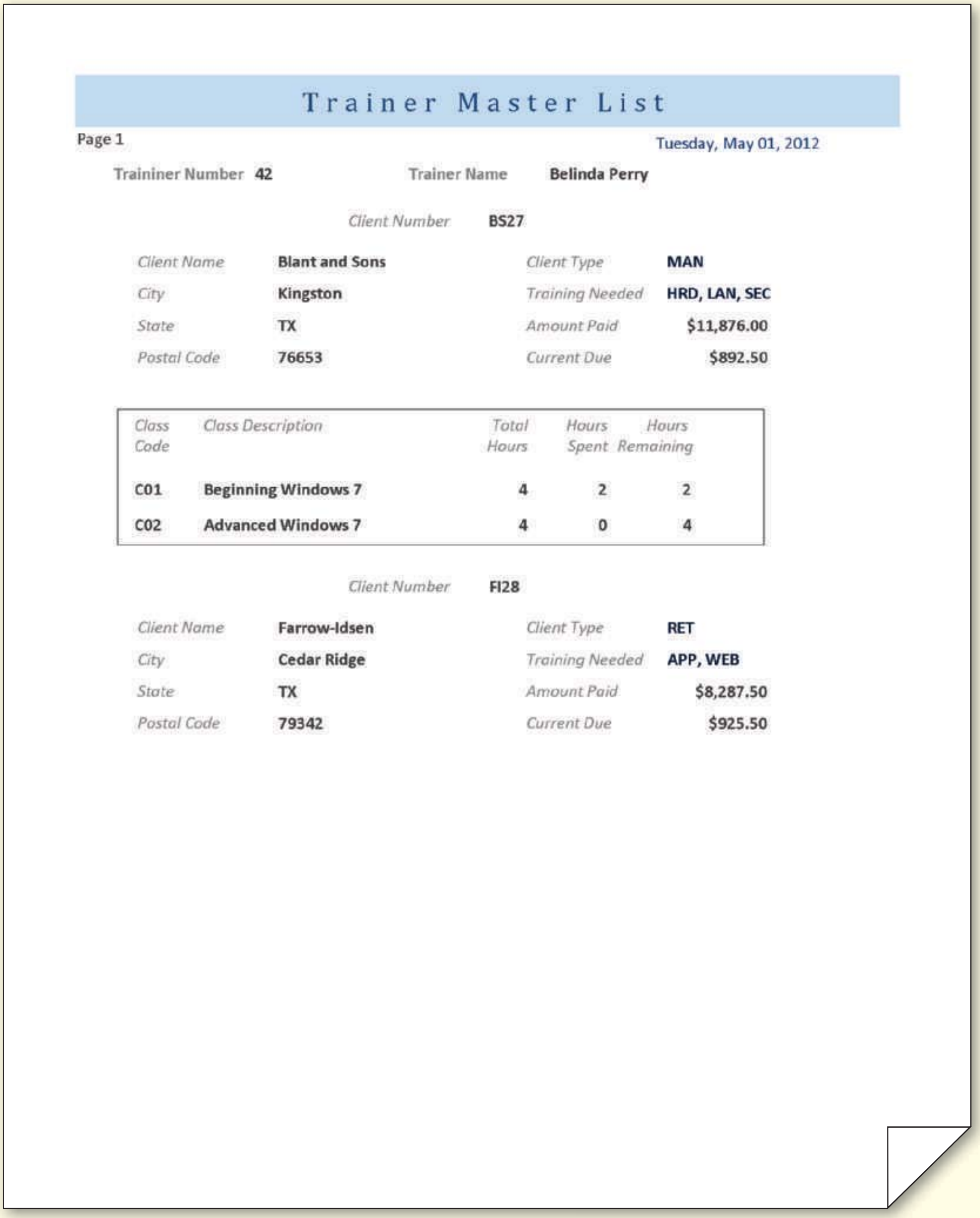
Table 6–8 Structure of Class Offerings Table

Field Name	Data Type	Field Size	Description
Client Number	Text	4	Part of Primary Key
Class Code	Text	3	Part of Primary Key
Total Hours	Number	Integer	
Hours Spent	Number	Integer	

The data for the Class table is in the Class.txt file, and the data for the Class Offerings table is in the Class Offerings.csv file. Add the data to the two tables and then update the relationships for the Philamar Training database.

Instructions Part 2: Create a query that joins the Trainer and Client tables. Include the trainer number, first name, and last name from the Trainer table. Include all fields except trainer number from the Client table. Save the query as Trainers and Clients. Create a query that joins the Class and Class Offerings table. Include the Client Number and Class Code fields from the Class Offerings table. Then, include the Class Description, Total Hours, and Hours Spent fields. Add a calculated field, Hours Remaining, that contains the difference between Total Hours and Hours Spent. Save the query as Class Offerings and Classes. The query should be similar to the Course and Course Offerings query created in the chapter.

Instructions Part 3: Create the report shown in Figure 6–90. The report is based on the two queries created in Part 2. The Date control uses the Long Date format, the title uses Distribute as the Text Align property, and there are no borders. The report is similar in style to the Business Analyst Master List shown in Figure 6–1a on page AC 339.



Trainer Master List

Page 1

Tuesday, May 01, 2012

Traininer Number **42** Trainer Name **Belinda Perry**

Client Number **BS27**

Client Name	**Blant and Sons**	*Client Type*	**MAN**
City	**Kingston**	*Training Needed*	**HRD, LAN, SEC**
State	**TX**	*Amount Paid*	**$11,876.00**
Postal Code	**76653**	*Current Due*	**$892.50**

Class Code	*Class Description*	*Total Hours*	*Hours Spent*	*Hours Remaining*
C01	**Beginning Windows 7**	**4**	**2**	**2**
C02	**Advanced Windows 7**	**4**	**0**	**4**

Client Number **FI28**

Client Name	**Farrow-Idsen**	*Client Type*	**RET**
City	**Cedar Ridge**	*Training Needed*	**APP, WEB**
State	**TX**	*Amount Paid*	**$8,287.50**
Postal Code	**79342**	*Current Due*	**$925.50**

Figure 6–90

Cases and Places

Apply your creative thinking and problem solving skills to design and implement a solution.

See the inside back cover of this book for instructions for downloading the Data Files for Students, or see your instructor for information on accessing the required files.

1: Adding Tables and Creating a Report for the Chamber of Commerce Database

Academic

If you are using the Microsoft Access 2010 Complete or the Microsoft Access 2010 Comprehensive text, open the Chamber of Commerce database that you used in Chapter 5. Otherwise, see your instructor for more information about accessing the required files.

Your internship with the Chamber of Commerce has taught you the value of a good advertising strategy. Now the Chamber would like you to help them track active advertising accounts. Advertisers contract with the chamber to advertise for one month. The same ad may run for several months or be replaced monthly with an ad of a different size or design. The Chamber must track the active accounts for the current year. They also need a report grouped by ad rep that includes client and active account information. Use the concepts and techniques presented in this chapter to perform each of the following tasks:

a. Create the two tables necessary to track active accounts. The structure for the Ad Categories table is shown in Table 6–9, and the structure for the Active Accounts table is shown in Table 6–10. Import the Active Accounts text file into the Active Accounts table and the Ad Categories text file into the Ad Categories table. Then, update the relationships for the Chamber of Commerce database.

Table 6–9 Structure of Ad Categories Table

Field Name	Data Type	Field Size	Description
Category Code	Text	2	Primary Key
Category Description	Text	40	

Table 6–10 Structure of Active Accounts Table

Field Name	Data Type	Field Size	Description
Advertiser Number	Text	4	Part of Primary Key
Ad Month	Text	3	Part of Primary Key
Category Code	Text	3	Foreign Key: matches primary key of Ad Categories table

b. Create a query to join the Ad Rep table and the Advertiser table. Include the Ad Rep Number, First Name, and Last Name fields from the Ad Rep table. Include all fields from the Advertiser table except the Ad Rep Number fields. Save the query as Ad Reps and Advertisers. Create a query to join the Active Accounts and the Ad Categories table. Include the Advertiser Number, Ad Month, Category Code, and Category Description fields. Save the query as Ad Categories and Active Accounts.

c. Create an Ad Rep Master Report that uses the Ad Reps and Advertisers query as the basis for the main report and the Ad Categories and Active Accounts query as the basis for the subreport. The report should be similar to the report shown in Figure 6–1a on page AC 339. Concatenate the ad rep first and last names. Place the page number in the page footer.

Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2: Adding Tables and Creating a Report for the Consignment Database

Personal

If you are using the Microsoft Access 2010 Complete or the Microsoft Access 2010 Comprehensive text, open the Consignment database that you used in Chapter 5. Otherwise, see your instructor for more information about accessing the required files. The volunteer group that manages the consignment shop would like you to prepare two reports for them. Both reports group data by seller code. They also would like to link to the database an Excel workbook that lists suggested prices for used items. Use the concepts and techniques presented in this chapter to perform each of the following tasks:

a. Create a query that joins the Seller table and Items table. Include the Seller Code, First Name, and Last Name fields from the Seller table. Include the Item Number, Description, Price, and Date Posted fields from the Items table. Save the query as Sellers and Items Query.

b. Create a report that is similar in style to the Discount Report shown in Figure 6–1b on page AC 340. Group the report by seller code and include the seller's first name and last name. The Detail section should include the item number, description, date posted, and price. Create a calculated control, Sale Price, that displays the sale price (not the discount) for all items. Items that have a price of $20.00 or more will have a 4% discount. Items that have a price of less than $20.00 will have a 2% discount. Do not include any subtotals or grand totals. Name the report Item Sale Report. Select your own fonts for the report.

c. Create a report that is similar in style to the Discount Report shown in Figure 6–1b on page AC 340. Group the report by seller code and include the seller's first name and last name. The Detail section should include the item number, description, date posted, and price. Create a calculated control, Reduced Price, that displays the Reduced Price (not the discount) for all items. Items that have a date posted earlier than March 4, 2012, will have a 5% discount. Items that have a date posted of March 4, 2012, or later will have a 3% discount. Do not include any subtotals or grand totals. Name the report Reduced Price Report. Select your own fonts for the report.

d. Link the Prices worksheet to the database. Rename the linked Prices table as Suggested Prices. Then, use the Linked Table Manager to update the link between the Excel worksheet and the Access table.

Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

3: Adding Tables and Creating a Report for the Senior Care Database

Professional

If you are using the Microsoft Access 2010 Complete or the Microsoft Access 2010 Comprehensive text, open the Senior Care database that you used in Chapter 5. Otherwise, see your instructor for more information about accessing the required files. You and your co-owner have decided that you need to better track the number of hours that helpers work. You also need a report that will list helpers as well as the clients they serve. Use the concepts and techniques presented in this chapter to perform each of the following tasks:

a. Create a table in which to store data about the services offered to clients. The table has the same structure as the Accounts table shown in Table 6–4, except that the field size for the Client Number field should be 4. (*Hint:* See the BTW on copying the structure of a table.) Name the table Services and import the Services.xlsx workbook. Update the relationships for the Senior Care database.

b. Create a query that joins the Helper and the Client tables. Include the Helper Number, First Name, and Last Name fields from the Helper table. Include all fields from the Client table except the Helper Number field. Save the query as Helpers and Clients.

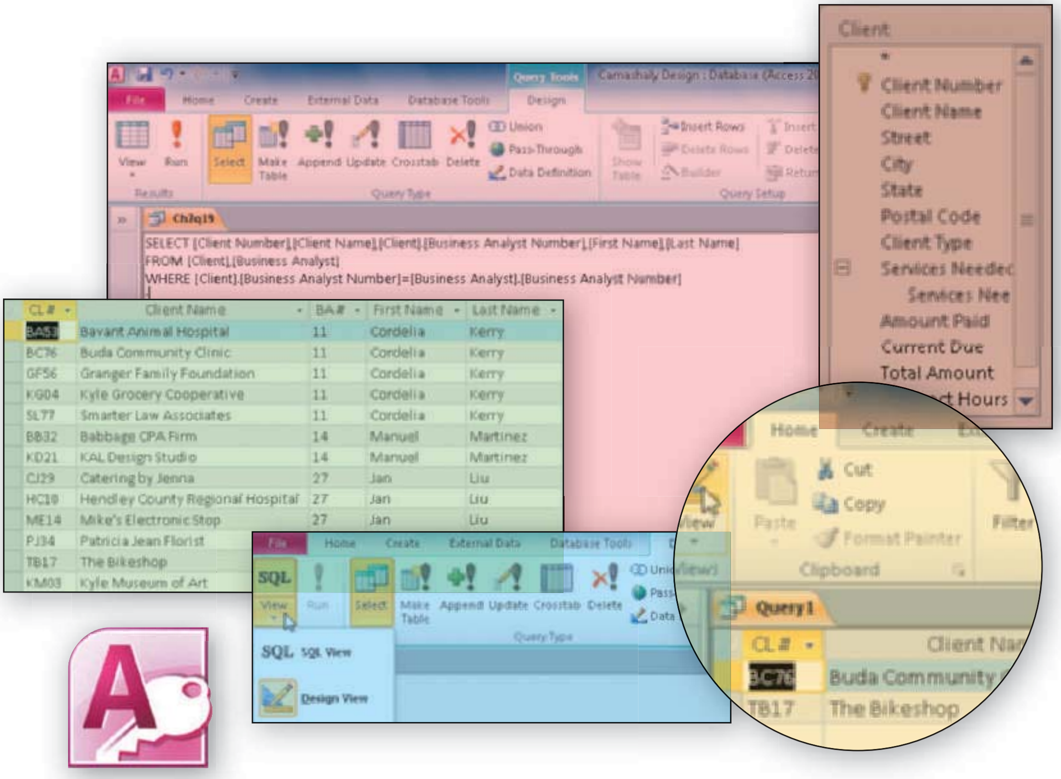
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

c. Create a Helper Master Report that uses the Helpers and Clients query as the basis for the main report and the Services table as the basis for the subreport. The report should be similar to the report shown in Figure 6–1a on page AC 339. Add a Total Amount field to the main report that is the sum of Amount Paid and Balance. (*Hint:* This calculation is for each client record.) Concatenate the helper first and last names. (*Hint:* Because the fields First Name and Last Name are in both tables, you must qualify the field names in the concatenation formula.) Be sure to change the labels for client first name and client last name so that the table name is not included on the report.

Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

7 Using SQL



```
SELECT [Client Number],[Client Name],[Client].[Business Analyst Number],[First Name],[Last Name]
FROM [Client],[Business Analyst]
WHERE [Client].[Business Analyst Number]=[Business Analyst].[Business Analyst Number]
```

CL #	Client Name	BA #	First Name	Last Name
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	11	Cordelia	Kerry
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	11	Cordelia	Kerry
GF56	Granger Family Foundation	11	Cordelia	Kerry
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	11	Cordelia	Kerry
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	11	Cordelia	Kerry
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	14	Manuel	Martinez
KD21	KAL Design Studio	14	Manuel	Martinez
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	27	Jan	Liu
HC10	Hendley County Regional Hospital	27	Jan	Liu
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	27	Jan	Liu
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist			
TB17	The Bikeshop			
KM03	Kyle Museum of Art			

File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Query Tools
View
Run
Select
Make Table
Append
Update
Crosstab
Delete
Union
Pass-Through
Data Definition
Show Table
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Builder
Results
Query Type
Query Setup
Ch7q19
Client
Client Number
Client Name
Street
City
State
Postal Code
Client Type
Services Needed
Services Nee
Amount Paid
Current Due
Total Amount
Hours
SQL
SQL View
Design View
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Paste
Filter
Clipboard
Query1
Buda Community
The Bikeshop

Objectives

You will have mastered the material in this project when you can:

- Change the font or font size for SQL queries
- Create SQL queries
- Include fields in SQL queries
- Include simple and compound criteria in SQL queries
- Use computed fields and built-in functions in SQL queries
- Sort the results in SQL queries
- Use aggregate functions in SQL queries
- Group the results in SQL queries
- Join tables in SQL queries
- Use subqueries
- Compare SQL queries with Access-generated SQL
- Use INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE queries to update a database

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

7 | Using SQL

Introduction

Q&A

Q&As
For a complete list of the Q&As found in many of the step-by-step sequences in this book, visit the Access 2010 Q&A Web page (scsite.com/ac2010/qa).

The language called **SQL** (**Structured Query Language**) is a very important language for querying and updating databases. It is the closest thing to a universal database language, because the vast majority of database management systems, including Access, use it in some fashion. Although some users will be able to do all their queries through the query features of Access without ever using SQL, those in charge of administering and maintaining the database system should be familiar with this important language. Access also can be used as an interface to other database management systems, such as SQL Server. To use or interface with SQL Server requires knowledge of SQL. SQL is supported by virtually every DBMS.

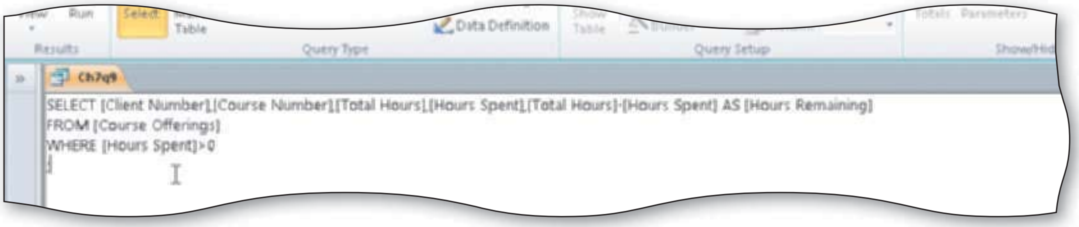
Project — Using SQL

The owners of Camashaly Design want to be able to use the extended data management capabilities available through SQL. In becoming familiar with SQL, Camashaly would like to create a wide variety of SQL queries.

BTW

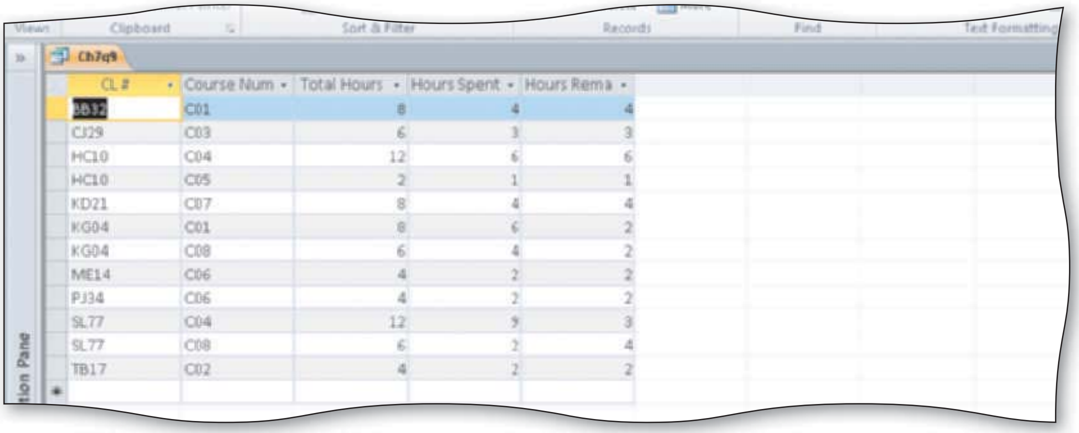
BTWs
For a complete list of the BTWs found in the margins of this book, visit the Access 2010 BTW Web page (scsite.com/ac2010/btw).

Similar to creating queries in Design view, SQL provides a way of querying relational databases. In SQL, however, instead of making entries in the design grid, you type commands into SQL view to obtain the desired results, as shown in Figure 7–1a. You then can click the View button to view the results just as when you are creating queries in Design view. The results for the query in Figure 7–1a are shown in Figure 7–1b.



```
SELECT [Client Number],[Course Number],[Total Hours],[Hours Spent],[Total Hours]-[Hours Spent] AS [Hours Remaining]
FROM [Course Offerings]
WHERE [Hours Spent]>0
;
```

(a) Query in SQL



CL #	Course Num	Total Hours	Hours Spent	Hours Rema
BB32	C01	8	4	4
CJ29	C03	6	3	3
HC10	C04	12	6	6
HC10	C05	2	1	1
KD21	C07	8	4	4
KG04	C01	8	6	2
KG04	C08	6	4	2
ME14	C06	4	2	2
PJ34	C06	4	2	2
SL77	C04	12	9	3
SL77	C08	6	2	4
TB17	C02	4	2	2

(b) Results

Figure 7–1

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Overview

As you read through this chapter, you will learn how to create SQL queries by performing these general tasks:

- Create queries involving criteria.
- Sort the results of a query.
- Group records in a query and perform group calculations.
- Join tables in queries.
- Create a query that involves a subquery.
- Update data using the INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE commands.

Plan Ahead

SQL Query Guidelines.

When querying a database using SQL, you must design queries appropriately, identifying the required fields, tables, criteria, sorting, grouping, and operations to use. Querying in SQL also requires proper expression of queries using SQL clauses and formatting.

1. **Select the fields for the query.** Examine the requirements for the query you are constructing to determine which fields are to be included.
2. **Determine which table or tables contain these fields.** For each field, determine the table in which it is located.
3. **Determine criteria.** Determine any criteria that data must satisfy to be included in the results. If there are more than two tables in the query, determine the criteria to be used to ensure the data matches correctly.
4. **Determine sort order.** Is the data to be sorted in some way? If so, by what field or fields is it to be sorted?
5. **Determine grouping.** Is the data to be grouped in some way? If so, by what field is it to be grouped? Identify any calculations to be made for the group.
6. **Determine any update operations to be performed.** Determine whether rows need to be inserted, changed, or deleted. Determine the tables involved.

When necessary, more specific details concerning the above decisions and/or actions are presented at appropriate points in the chapter. The chapter also will identify the use of these guidelines in creating SQL queries such as the one shown in Figure 7–1.

To Start Access

The following steps, which assume Windows 7 is running, start Access based on a typical installation. You may need to ask your instructor how to start Access for your computer.

① Click the Start button on the Windows 7 taskbar to display the Start menu.

② Type `Microsoft Access` as the search text in the 'Search programs and files' text box and watch the search results appear on the Start menu.

③ Click Microsoft Access 2010 in the search results on the Start menu to start Access.

④ If the Access window is not maximized, click the Maximize button next to the Close button on its title bar to maximize the window.

BTW

The Ribbon and Screen Resolution

Access may change how the groups and buttons within the groups appear on the Ribbon, depending on the computer's screen resolution. Thus, your Ribbon may look different from the ones in this book if you are using a screen resolution other than 1024 × 768.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Open a Database from Access

The following steps open the Camashaly Design database from the USB flash drive.

BTW

Datasheet Font Size
You also can use the Access Options dialog box to change the default font and font size for datasheets. To do so, click Datasheet in the Access Options dialog box and make the desired changes in the Default font area.

1. With your USB flash drive connected to one of the computer's USB ports, click File on the Ribbon to open the Backstage view.
2. Click Open in the Backstage view to display the Open dialog box.
3. Navigate to the location of the file to be opened (in this case, the USB flash drive, then to the CIS 101 folder [or your class folder], and then to the Access folder).
4. Click Camashaly Design to select the file to be opened.
5. Click the Open button (Open dialog box) to open the selected file and display the opened database in the Access window.
6. If a Security Warning appears, click the Enable Content option button.

SQL Background

In this chapter, you query and update a database using the language called **SQL** (**Structured Query Language**). Similar to using the design grid in the Access Query window, SQL provides users with the capability of querying a relational database. Because SQL is a language, however, you must enter **commands** to obtain the desired results, rather than completing entries in the design grid. SQL uses commands to update tables and to retrieve data from tables. The commands that are used to retrieve data are usually called **queries**.

SQL was developed under the name SEQUEL at the IBM San Jose research facilities as the data manipulation language for IBM's prototype relational model DBMS, System R, in the mid-1970s. In 1980, it was renamed SQL to avoid confusion with an unrelated hardware product called SEQUEL. It is used as the data manipulation language for IBM's current production offerings in the relational DBMS arena — SQL/DS and DB2. Most relational DBMSs, including Microsoft Access and Microsoft SQL Server, use a version of SQL as a data manipulation language.

Some people pronounce SQL by pronouncing the three letters, that is, "ess-que-ell." It is very common, however to pronounce it as the name under which it was developed originally, that is, "sequel."

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Change the Font Size

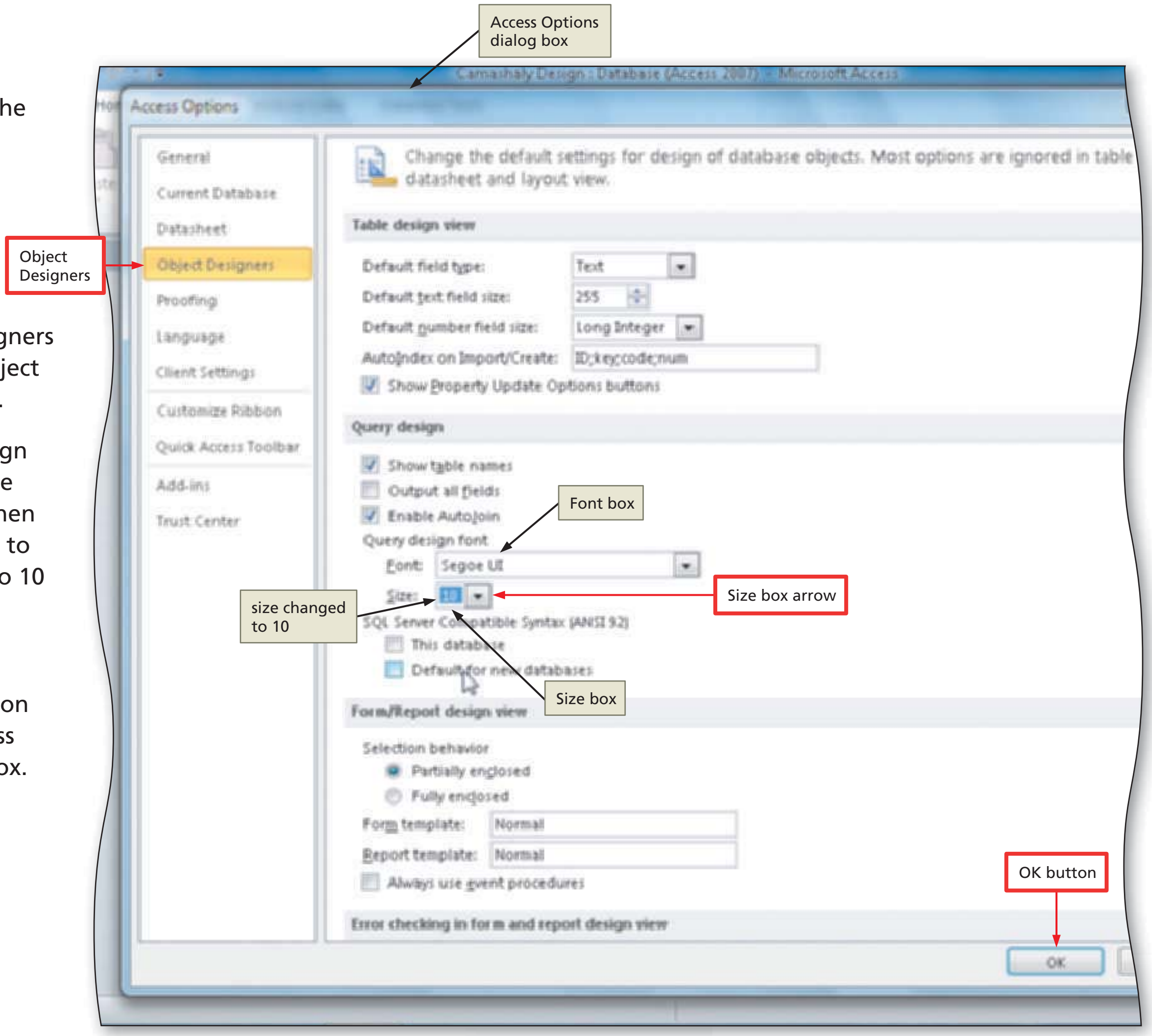
You can change the font and/or the font size for queries using the Options button in the Backstage view and then Object Designers in the list of options in the Access Options dialog box. There usually is not a compelling reason to change the font, unless there is a strong preference for some other font. It often is worthwhile to change the font size, however. With the default size of 8, the queries can be hard to read. Increasing the font size to 10 can make a big difference. The following steps change the font size for queries to 10.

1

- Click File on the Ribbon to open the Backstage view.
- Click Options to display the Access Options dialog box.
- Click Object Designers to display the Object Designer options.
- In the Query design area, click the Size box arrow, and then click 10 in the list to change the size to 10 (Figure 7–2).

2

- Click the OK button to close the Access Options dialog box.


Access Options dialog box
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
Access Options
General
Current Database
Datasheet
Object Designers
Proofing
Language
Client Settings
Customize Ribbon
Quick Access Toolbar
Add-ins
Trust Center
Object Designers
Font box
Size box arrow
size changed to 10
Size box
OK button
OK

Change the default settings for design of database objects. Most options are ignored in table datasheet and layout view.

Table design view

Default field type: Text

Default text field size: 255

Default number field size: Long Integer

AutoIndex on Import/Create: ID;key;code;num

☑ Show Property Update Options buttons

Query design

☑ Show table names

☐ Output all fields

☑ Enable AutoJoin

Query design font

Font: Segoe UI

Size: 10

SQL Server Compatible Syntax (ANSI 92)

☐ This database

☐ Default for new databases

Form/Report design view

Selection behavior

● Partially enclosed

○ Fully enclosed

Form template: Normal

Report template: Normal

☐ Always use event procedures

Error checking in form and report design view

Figure 7–2

SQL Queries

When you query a database using SQL, you type commands in a blank window rather than filling in the design grid. When the command is complete, you can view your results just as you do with queries you create using the design grid.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Create a New SQL Query

You begin the creation of a new **SQL query**, which is a query expressed using the SQL language, just as you begin the creation of any other query in Access. The only difference is that you will use SQL view instead of Design view. The following steps create a new SQL query.

1

- Close the Navigation Pane.
- Display the Create tab.
- Click the Query Design button (Create tab | Queries group) to create a query.
- Close the Show Table dialog box without adding any tables.
- Click the View button arrow (Query Tools Design tab | Results group) to display the View menu (Figure 7–3).

Q&A Why did the icon on the View button change to SQL, and why are there only two items on the menu instead of the usual five?

Without any tables selected, you cannot view any results. You only can use the normal Design view or SQL view.

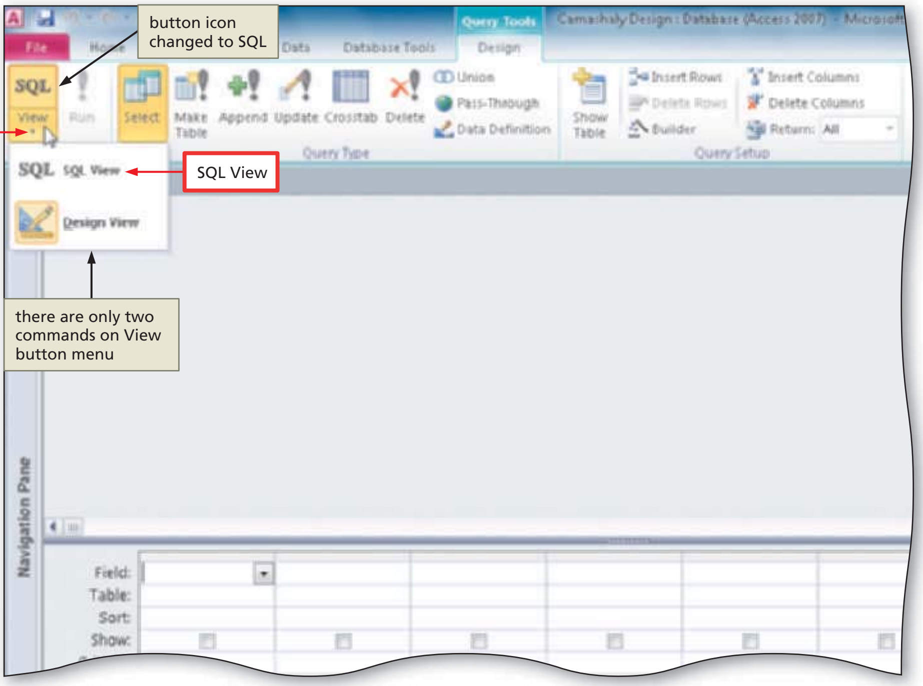

button icon changed to SQL
View button arrow
SQL View
there are only two commands on View button menu
SQL
View
Run
Select
Make Table
Append
Update
Crosstab
Delete
Union
Pass-Through
Data Definition
Show Table
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Builder
Insert Columns
Delete Columns
Return: All
Query Type
Query Setup
SQL View
Design View
Navigation Pane
Field:
Table:
Sort:
Show:

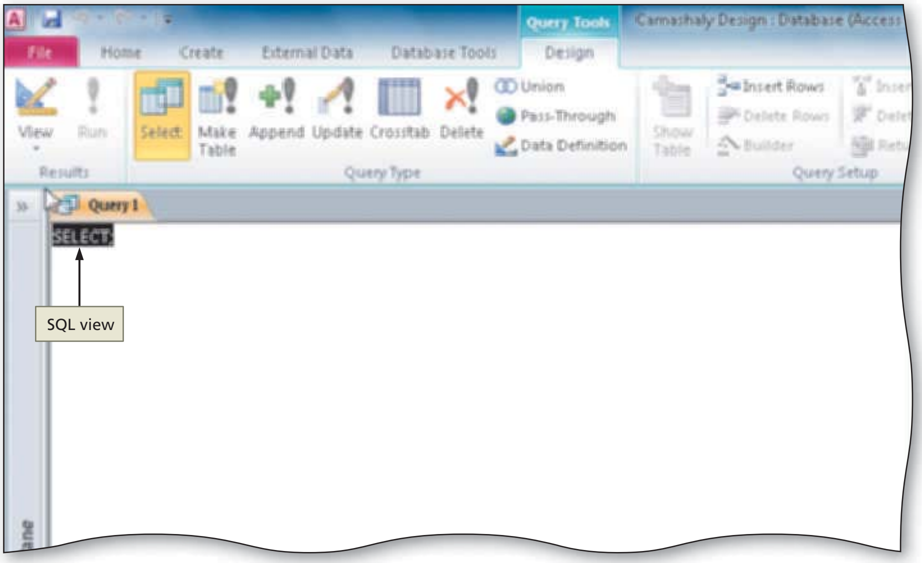
Figure 7–3

2

- Click SQL View to view the query in SQL view (Figure 7–4).

Q&A What happened to the design grid?

In SQL view, you specify the queries by typing SQL commands rather than making entries in the design grid.


File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Query Tools
View
Run
Select
Make Table
Append
Update
Crosstab
Delete
Union
Pass-Through
Data Definition
Show Table
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Builder
Results
Query Type
Query Setup
Query1
SQL view

```
SELECT;
```

Figure 7–4

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

SQL Commands

The basic form of SQL expressions is quite simple: SELECT-FROM-WHERE. The command begins with a **SELECT clause**, which consists of the word, SELECT, followed by a list of those fields you want to include. The fields will appear in the results in the order in which they are listed in the expression. Next, the command contains a **FROM clause**, which consists of the word, FROM, followed by a list of the table or tables involved in the query. Finally, there is an optional **WHERE clause**, which consists of the word, WHERE, followed by any criteria that the data you want to retrieve must satisfy. The command ends with a semicolon (;), which in this text will appear on a separate line.

SQL has no special format rules for placement of terms, capitalization, and so on. The style used by this text is to place the word FROM on a new line, and then place the word WHERE, when it is used, on the next line. This makes the commands easier to read. This text also shows words that are part of the SQL language in uppercase and others in a combination of uppercase and lowercase. Because it is a common convention, and necessary in some versions of SQL, place a semicolon (;) at the end of each command.

Microsoft Access has its own version of SQL that, unlike some other versions of SQL, allows spaces within field names and table names. There is a restriction, however, to the way such names are used in SQL queries. When a name containing a space appears in SQL, it must be enclosed in square brackets. For example, Client Number must appear as [Client Number] because the name includes a space. On the other hand, City does not need to be enclosed in square brackets because its name does not include a space. For consistency, all names in this text are enclosed in square brackets. Thus, the City field would appear as [City] even though the brackets technically are not required by SQL.

BTW

SQL Standards

The International Organization for Standardization (ISO) and the American National Standards Institute (ANSI) recognize SQL as a standardized language. Different relational database management systems may support the entire set of standardized SQL commands or only a subset.

To Include Only Certain Fields

To include only certain fields in a query, list them after the word, SELECT. If you want to list all rows in the table, you do not need to include the word, WHERE. The following steps create a query for Camashaly Design that will list the number, name, amount paid, and current due amount of all clients.

BTW

Context-Sensitive Help in SQL

When you are working in SQL view, you can obtain context-sensitive help on any of the keywords in your query. To do so, click anywhere in the word about which you want to obtain help and press F1.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

1

- Type `SELECT [Client Number],[Client Name],[Amount Paid],[Current Due]` as the first line of the command, and then press the ENTER key.
- Type `FROM [Client]` as the second line, press the ENTER key, and then type a semicolon (`;`) on the third line.
- Click the View button (Query Tools Design tab | Results group) to view the results (Figure 7–5).

Q&A My screen displays a dialog box that asks me to enter a parameter value. What did I do wrong?

You typed a field name incorrectly. Click Cancel to close the dialog box and then correct your SQL statement.

Q&A Why does CL # appear as the column heading for the Client Number field?

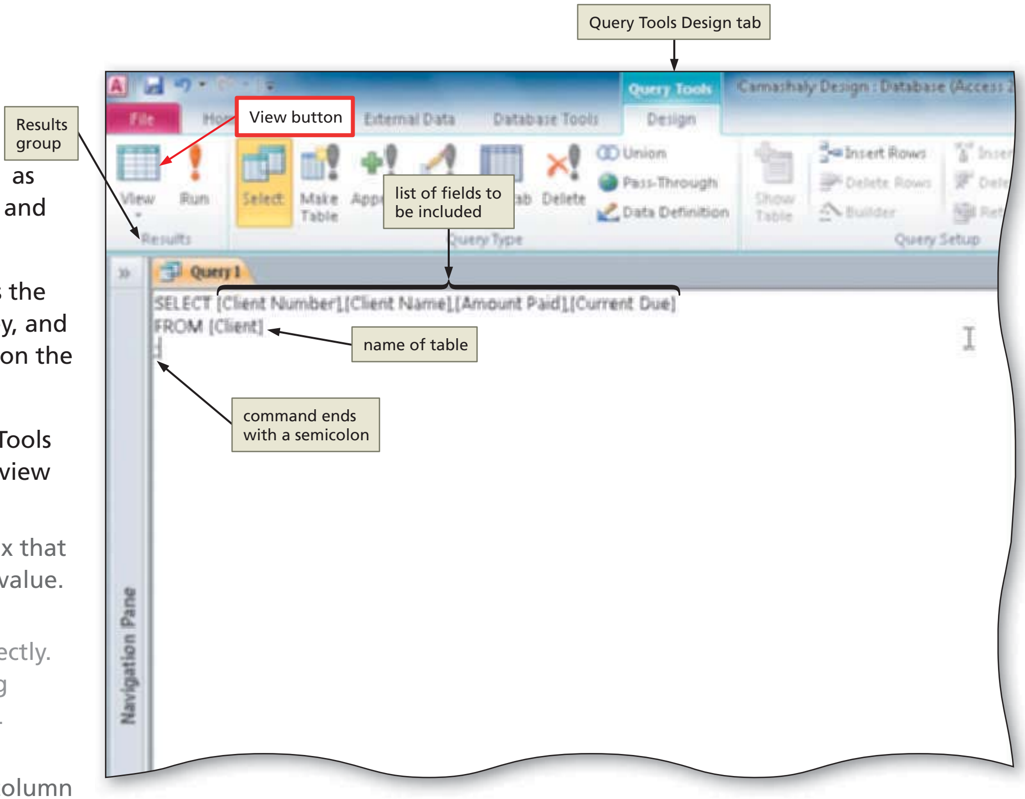
This is the caption for the field. If the field has a special caption defined, Access will use the caption rather than the field name. You will learn how to change this later in this chapter.

Q&A Can I save the query if I want to use it again?

You certainly can. Click the Save button on the Quick Access Toolbar and assign a name in the Save As dialog box.

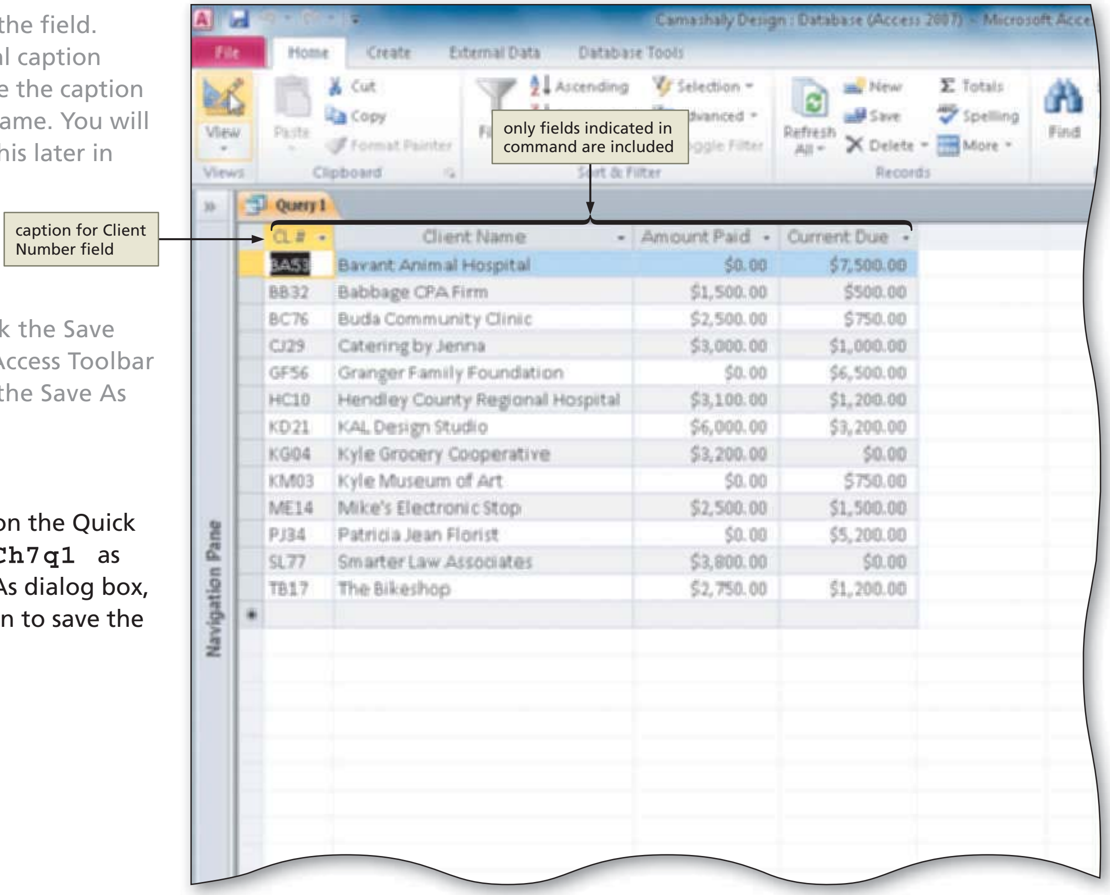
2

- Click the Save button on the Quick Access Toolbar, type `Ch7q1` as the name in the Save As dialog box, and click the OK button to save the query as Ch7q1.


Query Tools Design tab
Results group
View button
list of fields to be included
name of table
command ends with a semicolon
File
Home
External Data
Database Tools
Query Tools
Design
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2
View
Run
Select
Make Table
Append
Delete
Union
Pass-Through
Data Definition
Show Table
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Builder
Results
Query Type
Query Setup
Query 1
Navigation Pane

```
SELECT [Client Number],[Client Name],[Amount Paid],[Current Due]
FROM [Client]
;
```

(a) Query


only fields indicated in command are included
caption for Client Number field
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Acce
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Ascending
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Query 1
Navigation Pane

CL #	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	$0.00	$7,500.00
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	$1,500.00	$500.00
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	$2,500.00	$750.00
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	$3,000.00	$1,000.00
GF56	Granger Family Foundation	$0.00	$6,500.00
HC10	Hendley County Regional Hospital	$3,100.00	$1,200.00
KD21	KAL Design Studio	$6,000.00	$3,200.00
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	$3,200.00	$0.00
KM03	Kyle Museum of Art	$0.00	$750.00
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	$2,500.00	$1,500.00
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	$0.00	$5,200.00
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	$3,800.00	$0.00
TB17	The Bikeshop	$2,750.00	$1,200.00

(b) Results

Figure 7–5

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Prepare to Enter a New SQL Query

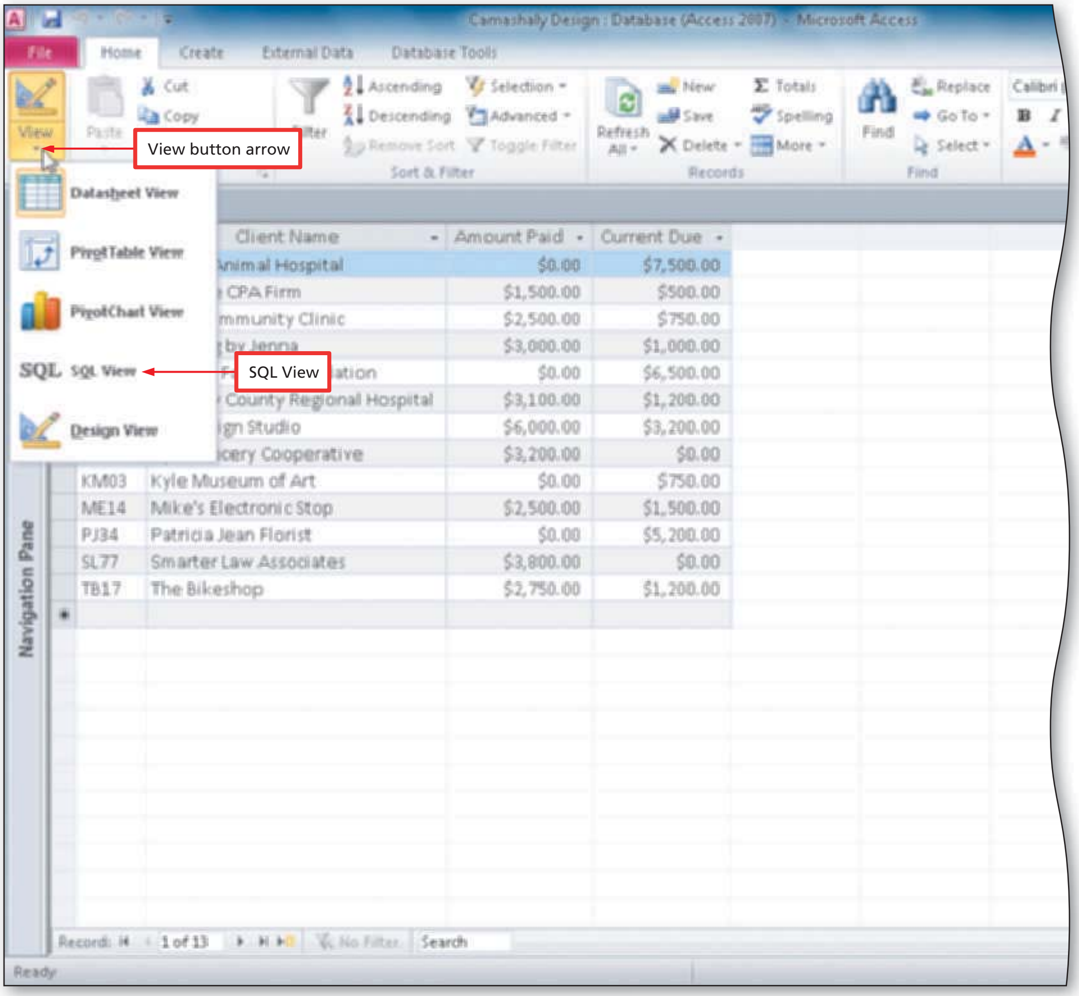
To enter a new SQL query, you could close the window, click the No button when asked if you want to save your changes, and then begin the process from scratch. A quicker alternative is to use the View menu and then select SQL View. You then will be returned to SQL view with the current command appearing. At that point, you could erase the current command and then enter a new one. (If the next command is similar to the previous one, it might be simpler to modify the current command instead of erasing it and starting over.) The following steps show how to prepare to enter a new SQL query.

1

- Click the View button arrow (Home tab | Views group) to display the View button menu (Figure 7–6).

2

- Click SQL View to return to SQL view.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Sort & Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Records
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Find
View button arrow
Datasheet View
PivotTable View
PivotChart View
SQL View
Design View
SQL View
Navigation Pane
Record: 1 of 13
No Filter
Search
Ready

	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due
	nimal Hospital	$0.00	$7,500.00
	CPA Firm	$1,500.00	$500.00
	mmunity Clinic	$2,500.00	$750.00
	by Jenna	$3,000.00	$1,000.00
	ation	$0.00	$6,500.00
	County Regional Hospital	$3,100.00	$1,200.00
	gn Studio	$6,000.00	$3,200.00
	cery Cooperative	$3,200.00	$0.00
KM03	Kyle Museum of Art	$0.00	$750.00
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	$2,500.00	$1,500.00
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	$0.00	$5,200.00
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	$3,800.00	$0.00
TB17	The Bikeshop	$2,750.00	$1,200.00

Figure 7–6

Q&A Could I just click the View button, or do I have to click the arrow?

Because the icon on the button is not the icon for SQL view, you must click the arrow.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Include All Fields

To include all fields, you could use the same approach as in the previous steps, that is, list each field in the Client table after the word, SELECT. There is a shortcut, however. Instead of listing all the field names after SELECT, you can use the asterisk (*) symbol. This indicates that you want all fields listed in the order in which you described them to the system during data definition. The following steps list all fields and all records in the Client table.

1

- Press the DELETE key to delete the current command, type `SELECT *` as the first line of the command, and then press the ENTER key.
- Type `FROM [Client]` as the line, press the ENTER key, and type a semicolon (`;`) on the third line.
- View the results (Figure 7–7).

Q&A Can I use copy and paste commands when I enter SQL commands?

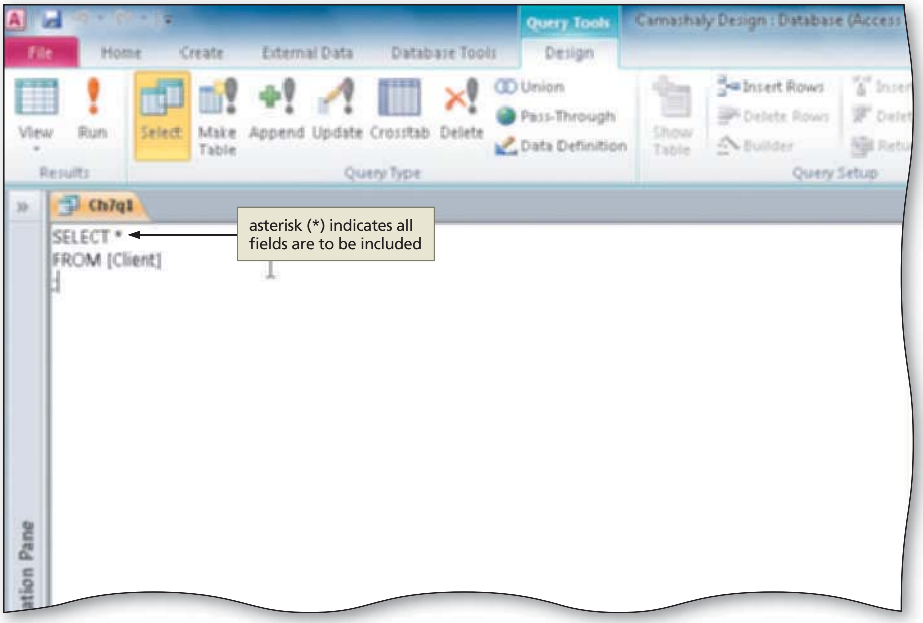
Yes, you can use copy and paste as well as other editing techniques, such as replacing text.

2

- Click File on the Ribbon to open the Backstage view, click Save Object As to display the Save As dialog box, type `Ch7q2` as the name for the saved query, and click the OK button to save the query as Ch7q2. Click File on the Ribbon to close the Backstage view and return to the query.

Q&A Why can't I just click the Save button on the Quick Access Toolbar as I did when I saved the previous query?

If you did, you would replace the previous query with the version you just created. Because you want to save both the previous query and the new one, you need to save the new version with a different name. To do so, you must use Save Object As, which is available through the Backstage view.

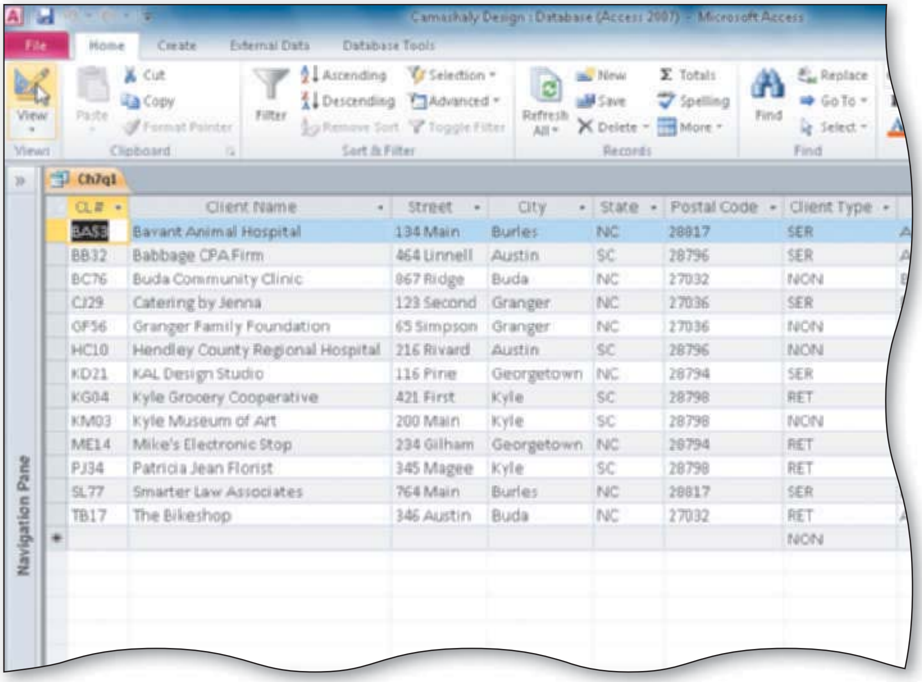


Query Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
View
Run
Select
Make Table
Append
Update
Crosstab
Delete
Union
Pass-Through
Data Definition
Show Table
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Builder
Results
Query Type
Query Setup
Ch7q1
Navigation Pane

```
SELECT *
FROM [Client]
;
```

asterisk (*) indicates all fields are to be included

(a) Query



Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Find
Ch7q1
Navigation Pane

CL #	Client Name	Street	City	State	Postal Code	Client Type
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	134 Main	Burles	NC	28817	SER
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	464 Linnell	Austin	SC	28796	SER
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	867 Ridge	Buda	NC	27032	NON
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	123 Second	Granger	NC	27036	SER
GF56	Granger Family Foundation	65 Simpson	Granger	NC	27036	NON
HC10	Hendley County Regional Hospital	216 Rivard	Austin	SC	28796	NON
KD21	KAL Design Studio	116 Pine	Georgetown	NC	28794	SER
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	421 First	Kyle	SC	28798	RET
KM03	Kyle Museum of Art	200 Main	Kyle	SC	28798	NON
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	234 Gilham	Georgetown	NC	28794	RET
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	345 Magee	Kyle	SC	28798	RET
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	764 Main	Burles	NC	28817	SER
TB17	The Bikeshop	346 Austin	Buda	NC	27032	RET
*						NON

(b) Results

Figure 7–7

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Determine criteria.
Examine the query or request to determine any restrictions or conditions that records must satisfy to be included in the results.

- **Determine the fields involved in the criteria.** For any criterion, determine the fields that are included in the criterion. Determine the data types for these fields. If the criterion uses a value that corresponds to a Text field, enclose the value in single quotation marks. If the criterion uses a date, enclose the value between number signs (for example, #4/15/2012#).
- **Determine comparison operators.** When fields are being compared to other fields or to specific values, determine the appropriate comparison operator (equals, less than, greater than, and so on). If a wildcard is involved, then the query will use the LIKE operator.
- **Determine join criteria.** If tables are being joined, determine the fields that must match.
- **Determine compound criteria.** If more than one criterion is involved, determine whether all individual criteria are to be true, in which case you will use the AND operator, or whether only one individual criterion needs to be true, in which case you will use the OR operator.

Plan Ahead

To Use a Criterion Involving a Numeric Field

To restrict the records to be displayed, include the word WHERE followed by a criterion as part of the command. If the field involved is a numeric field, you simply type the value. In typing the number, you do not type commas or dollar signs. The following steps create a query to list the client number and name of all clients whose current due amount is $0.00.

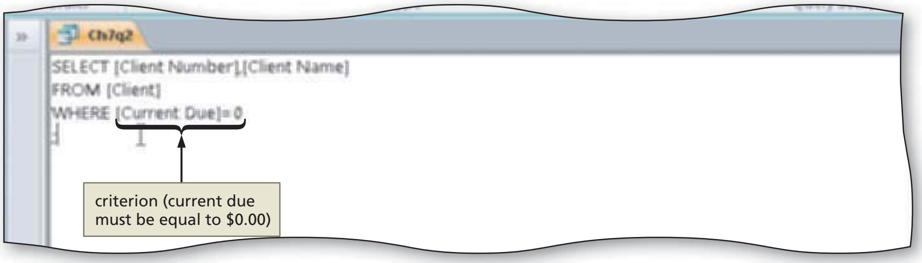
1

- Click the View button arrow, click SQL View to return to SQL view, and then delete the current command.
- Type `SELECT [Client Number],[Client Name]` as the first line of the command.
- Type `FROM [Client]` as the second line.
- Type `WHERE [Current Due]=0` as the third line, and then type a semicolon (`;`) on the fourth line.
- View the results (Figure 7–8).

Q&A

On my screen, the clients are listed in a different order. Did I do something wrong?

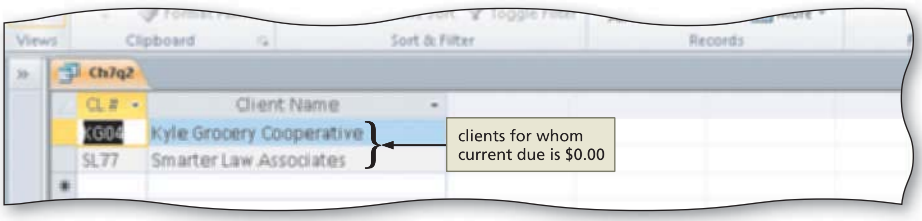
No. The order in which records display in a query result is random unless you specifically order the records. You will see how to order records later in this chapter.



```
SELECT [Client Number],[Client Name]
FROM [Client]
WHERE [Current Due]=0
;
```

criterion (current due must be equal to $0.00)

(a) Query



CL #	Client Name
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative
SL77	Smarter Law Associates

clients for whom current due is $0.00

(b) Results

Figure 7–8

2

- Save the query as Ch7q3. Return to the query.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Simple Criteria

The criterion following the word WHERE in the preceding query is called a simple criterion. A **simple criterion** has the form: field name, comparison operator, then either another field name or a value. The possible comparison operators are shown in Table 7–1. Note that there are two different versions for "not equal to" (<> and !=). You must use the one that is right for your particular implementation of SQL. If you use the wrong one, your system will let you know instantly. Simply use the other.

Table 7–1 Comparison Operators

Comparison Operator	Meaning
=	equal to
<	less than
>	greater than
<=	less than or equal to
>=	greater than or equal to
<> or !=	not equal to

To Use a Comparison Operator

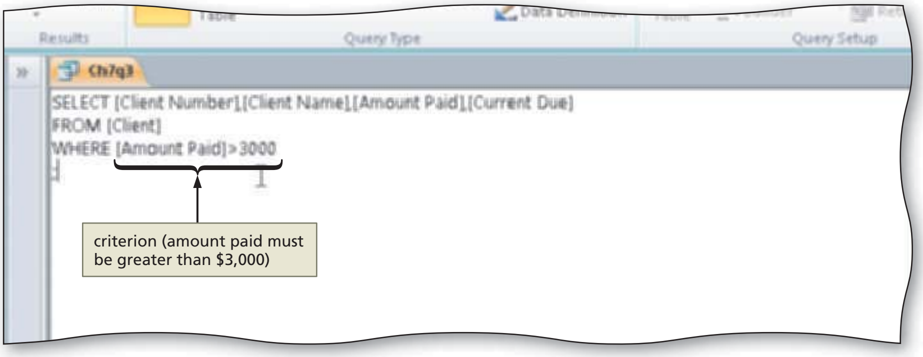
In the following steps, Camashaly Design uses a comparison operator to list the client number, client name, amount paid, and current due for all clients whose amount paid is greater than $3,000.

1

- Click the View button arrow, click SQL View to return to SQL view, and then delete the current command.
- Type `SELECT [Client Number],[Client Name],[Amount Paid],[Current Due]` as the first line of the command.
- Type `FROM [Client]` as the second line.
- Type `WHERE [Amount Paid]>3000` as the third line, and then type a semicolon (`;`) on the fourth line.
- View the results (Figure 7–9).

2

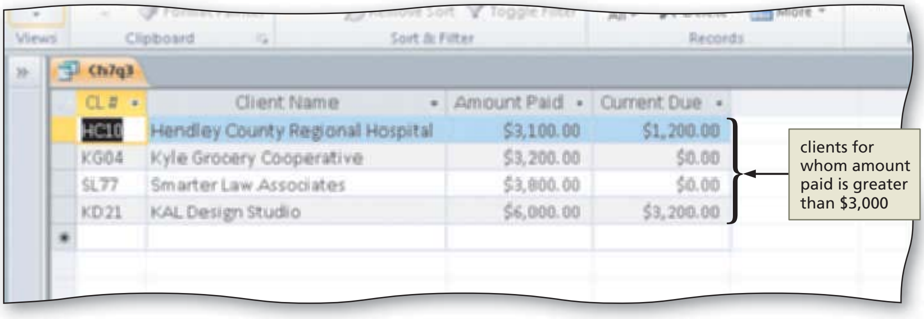
- Save the query as Ch7q4. Return to the query.



```
SELECT [Client Number],[Client Name],[Amount Paid],[Current Due]
FROM [Client]
WHERE [Amount Paid]>3000
```

criterion (amount paid must be greater than $3,000)

(a) Query



CL #	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due
HC10	Hendley County Regional Hospital	$3,100.00	$1,200.00
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	$3,200.00	$0.00
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	$3,800.00	$0.00
KD21	KAL Design Studio	$6,000.00	$3,200.00

clients for whom amount paid is greater than $3,000

(b) Results

Figure 7–9

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Use a Criterion Involving a Text Field

If the criterion involves a text field, the value must be enclosed in single quotation marks. The following example lists the client number and name of all of Camashaly Design's clients located in Buda, that is, all clients for whom the value in the City field is Buda.

1

- Return to SQL view, delete the previous query, and type **`SELECT [Client Number],[Client Name]`** as the first line of the command.
- Type **`FROM [Client]`** as the second line.
- Type **`WHERE [City]='Buda'`** as the third line and type a semicolon (**;**) on the fourth line.
- View the results (Figure 7–10).

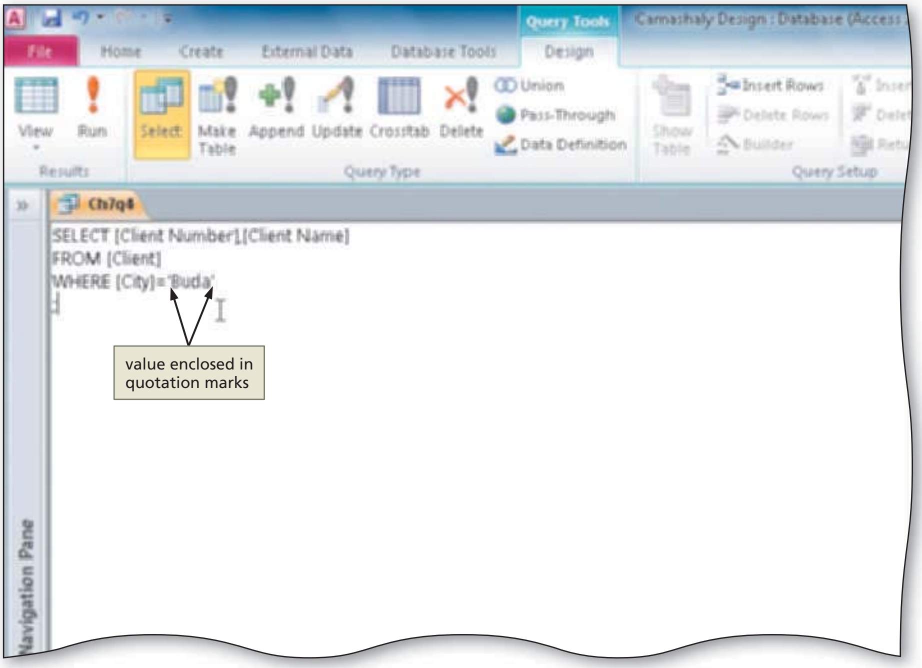
Q&A

Could I enclose the text field value in double quotation marks instead of single quotation marks?

Yes. It is usually easier, however, to use single quotes when entering SQL commands.

2

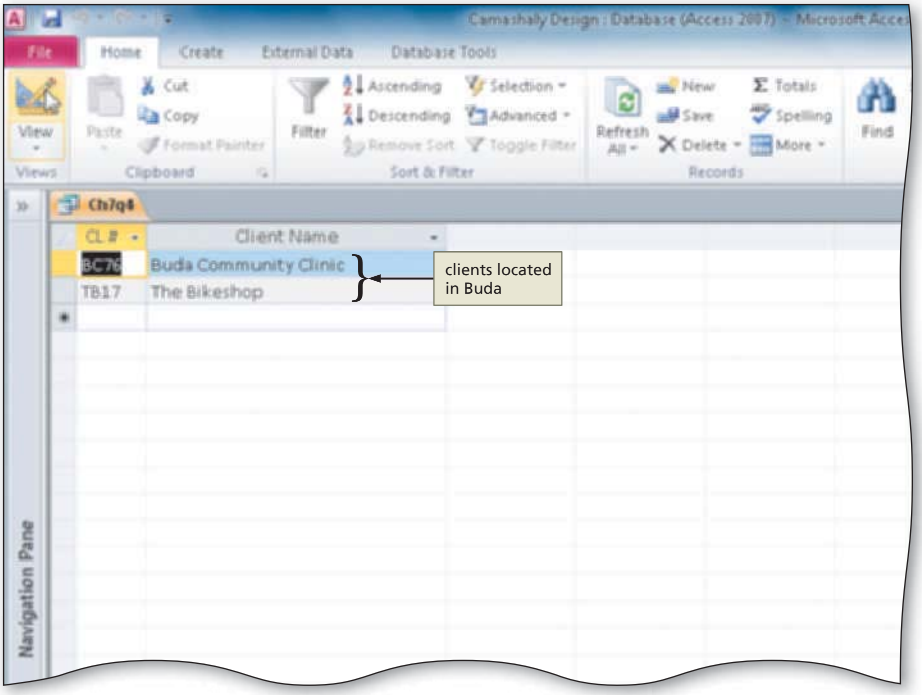
- Save the query as Ch7q5. Return to the query.


Query Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
View
Run
Select
Make Table
Append
Update
Crosstab
Delete
Union
Pass-Through
Data Definition
Show Table
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Builder
Results
Query Type
Query Setup
Ch7q4
Navigation Pane

```
SELECT [Client Number],[Client Name]
FROM [Client]
WHERE [City]='Buda'
;
```

value enclosed in quotation marks

(a) Query


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Acce
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Ch7q4
Navigation Pane

CL #	Client Name
BC76	Buda Community Clinic
TB17	The Bikeshop

clients located in Buda

(b) Results

Figure 7–10

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Use a Wildcard

In most cases, the conditions in WHERE clauses involve exact matches, such as retrieving rows for each customer located in the city of Buda. In some cases, however, exact matches do not work. For example, you might know that the desired value contains only a certain collection of characters. In such cases, you use the LIKE operator with a wildcard symbol. Rather than testing for equality, the LIKE operator uses one or more wildcard characters to test for a pattern match. One common wildcard in Access, the **asterisk** (*), represents any collection of characters. Thus, B* represents the letter, B, followed by any string of characters. Another wildcard symbol is the question mark (?), which represents any individual character. Thus T?m represents the letter, T, followed by any single character, followed by the letter, m, such as in Tim or Tom.

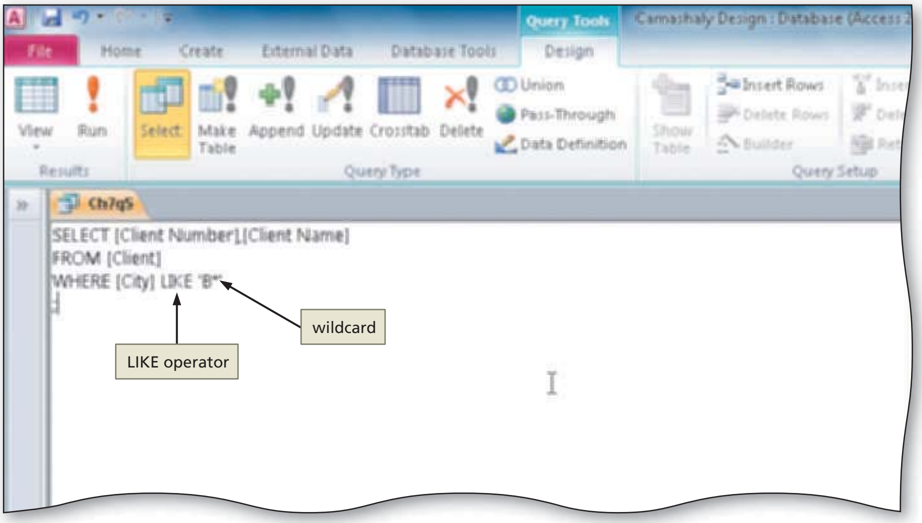
The following steps use a wildcard to display the client number and name for every client of Camashaly Design whose city begins with the letter, B.

1

- Return to SQL view, delete the previous query, and type `SELECT [Client Number],[Client Name]` as the first line of the command.
- Type `FROM [Client]` as the second line.
- Type `WHERE [City] LIKE 'B*'` as the third line and type a semicolon (`;`) on the fourth line.
- View the results (Figure 7–11).

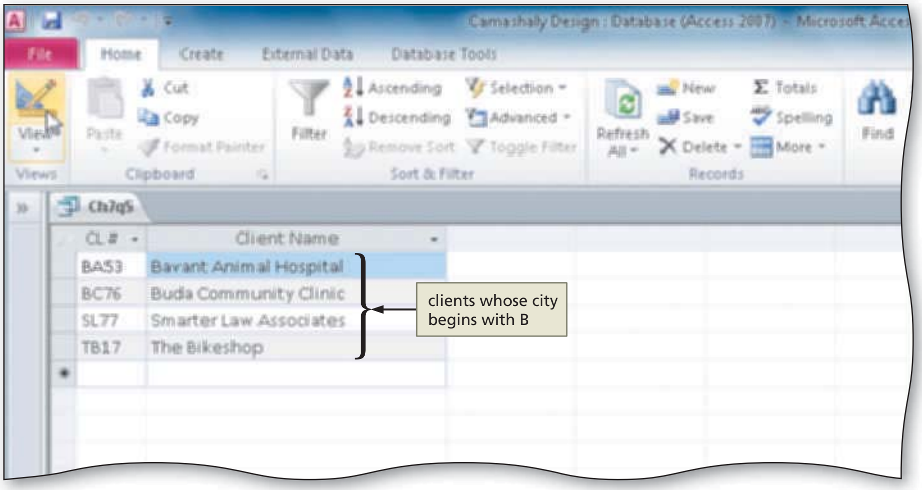
2

- Save the query as Ch7q6. Return to the query.


Query Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
View
Run
Select
Make Table
Append
Update
Crosstab
Delete
Union
Pass-Through
Data Definition
Show Table
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Builder
Results
Query Type
Query Setup
Ch7q5
wildcard
LIKE operator

```
SELECT [Client Number],[Client Name]
FROM [Client]
WHERE [City] LIKE 'B*'
;
```

(a) Query


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Acce
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Ch7q5
clients whose city begins with B

CL #	Client Name
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital
BC76	Buda Community Clinic
SL77	Smarter Law Associates
TB17	The Bikeshop

(b) Results

Figure 7–11

Break Point: If you wish to stop working through the chapter at this point, you can close Access now. You can resume the project at a later time by starting Access, opening the database called Camashaly Design, creating a new query in SQL view, and continuing to follow the steps from this location forward.

Compound Criteria

You are not limited to simple criteria. You also can use compound criteria. **Compound criteria** are formed by connecting two or more simple criteria using AND, OR, and NOT. When simple criteria are connected by the word AND, all the simple criteria must be true in order for the compound criterion to be true. When simple criteria are connected by the word OR, the compound criterion will be true whenever any of the simple criteria are true. Preceding a criterion by the word NOT reverses the truth or falsity of the original criterion. That is, if the original criterion is true, the new criterion will be false; if the original criterion is false, the new one will be true.

BTW

Wildcards

Other implementations of SQL do not use the asterisk (*) and question mark (?) wildcards. In SQL for Oracle and for SQL Server, the percent sign (%) is used as a wildcard to represent any collection of characters. In Oracle and SQL Server, the WHERE clause shown in Figure 7–11 on page AC 430 would be WHERE [City] LIKE 'B%'.

To Use a Compound Criterion Involving AND

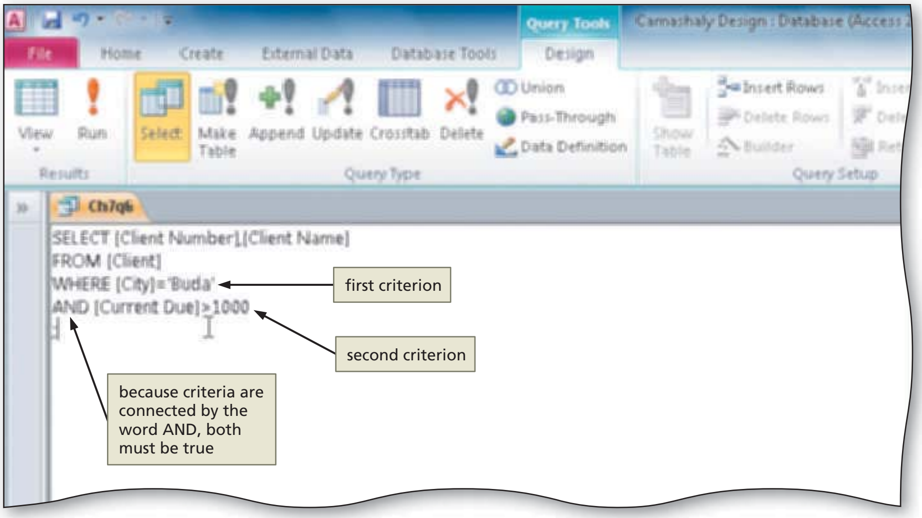
The following steps use a compound criterion to allow Camashaly Design to impose two conditions. In particular, the steps display the number and name of those clients located in Buda who have a current due amount greater than $1,000.

1

- Return to SQL view, delete the previous query, and type `SELECT [Client Number],[Client Name]` as the first line of the command.
- Type `FROM [Client]` as the second line.
- Type `WHERE [City]='Buda'` as the third line.
- Type `AND [Current Due]>1000` as the fourth line and type a semicolon (`;`) on the fifth line.
- View the results (Figure 7–12).

2

- Save the query as Ch7q7. Return to the query.


Query Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
View
Run
Select
Make Table
Append
Update
Crosstab
Delete
Union
Pass-Through
Data Definition
Show Table
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Builder
Results
Query Type
Query Setup
Ch7q6

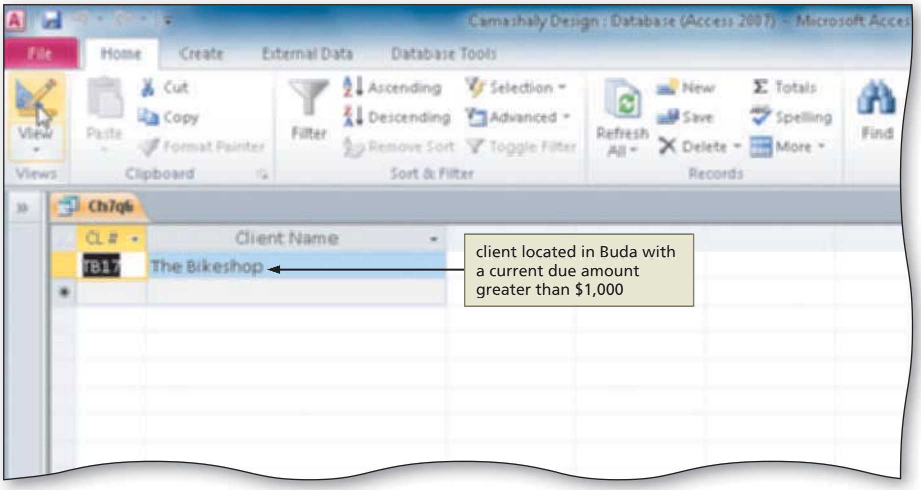
```
SELECT [Client Number],[Client Name]
FROM [Client]
WHERE [City]='Buda'
AND [Current Due]>1000
;
```

first criterion

second criterion

because criteria are connected by the word AND, both must be true

(a) Query


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Acces
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Ch7q6

CL #	Client Name
TB17	The Bikeshop

client located in Buda with a current due amount greater than $1,000

(b) Results

Figure 7–12

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Use a Compound Criterion Involving OR

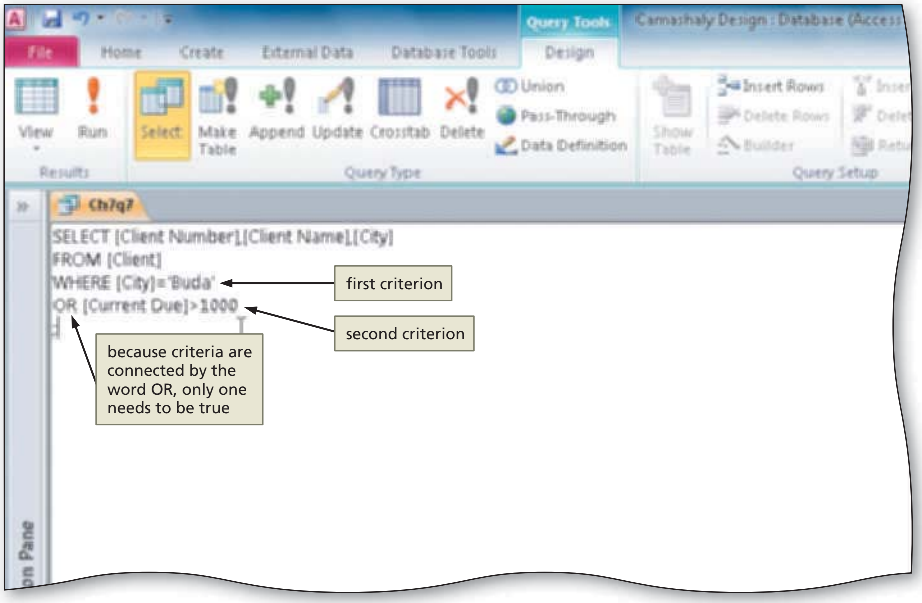
The following steps use a compound criterion to enable Camashaly Design to display the client number and name of those clients located in Buda or for whom the current due amount is greater than $1,000.

1

- Return to SQL view, delete the previous query, and type `SELECT [Client Number],[Client Name],[City]` as the first line of the command.
- Type `FROM [Client]` as the second line.
- Type `WHERE [City]='Buda'` as the third line.
- Type `OR [Current Due]>1000` as the fourth line and type a semicolon (`;`) on the fifth line.
- View the results (Figure 7–13).

2

- Save the query as Ch7q8. Return to the query.



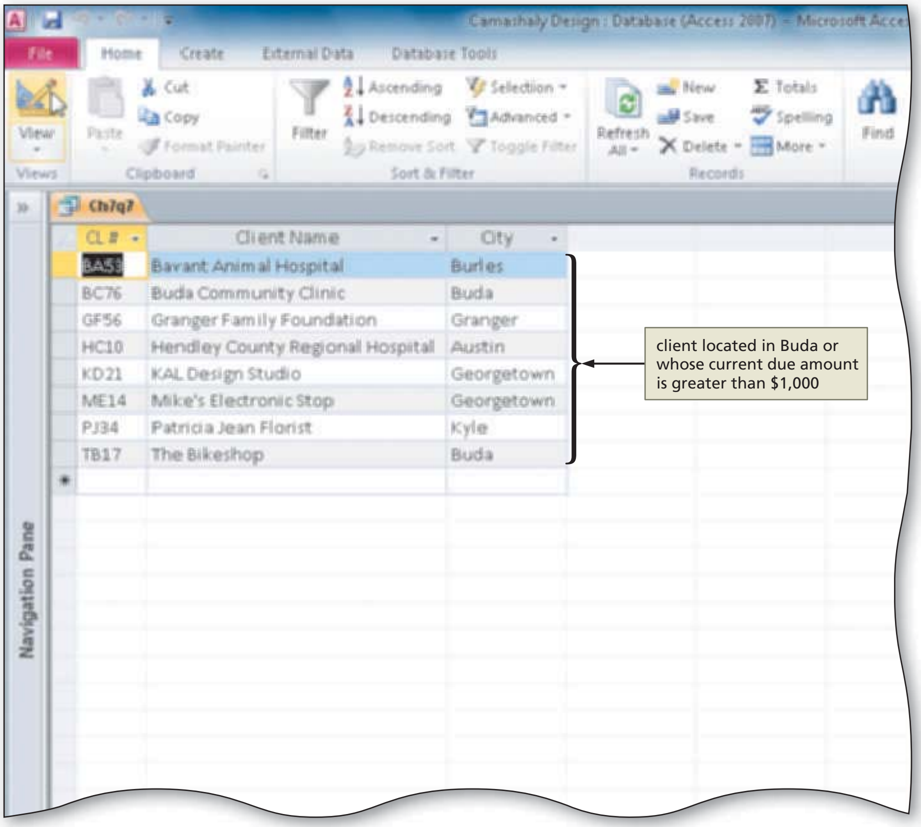
```
SELECT [Client Number],[Client Name],[City]
FROM [Client]
WHERE [City]='Buda'
OR [Current Due]>1000
```

first criterion

second criterion

because criteria are connected by the word OR, only one needs to be true

(a) Query



CL #	Client Name	City
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	Burles
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	Buda
GF56	Granger Family Foundation	Granger
HC10	Hendley County Regional Hospital	Austin
KD21	KAL Design Studio	Georgetown
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	Georgetown
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	Kyle
TB17	The Bikeshop	Buda

client located in Buda or whose current due amount is greater than $1,000

(b) Results

Figure 7–13

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Use NOT in a Criterion

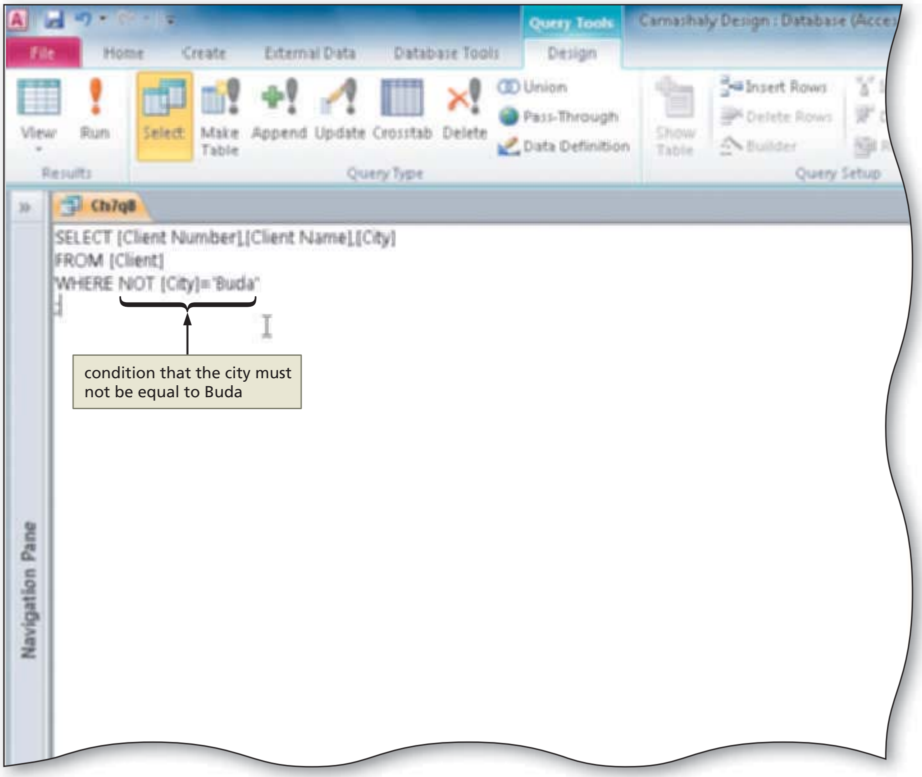
To use the word NOT in a criterion, precede the criterion with the word NOT. The following steps list the numbers and names of the clients of Camashaly Design not located in Buda.

1

- Return to SQL view and delete the previous query.
- Type **`SELECT [Client Number],[Client Name],[City]`** as the first line of the command.
- Type **`FROM [Client]`** as the second line.
- Type **`WHERE NOT [City]= 'Buda'`** as the third line and type a semicolon (**`;`**) on the fourth line.
- View the results (Figure 7–14).

2

- Save the query as Ch7q9. Return to the query.

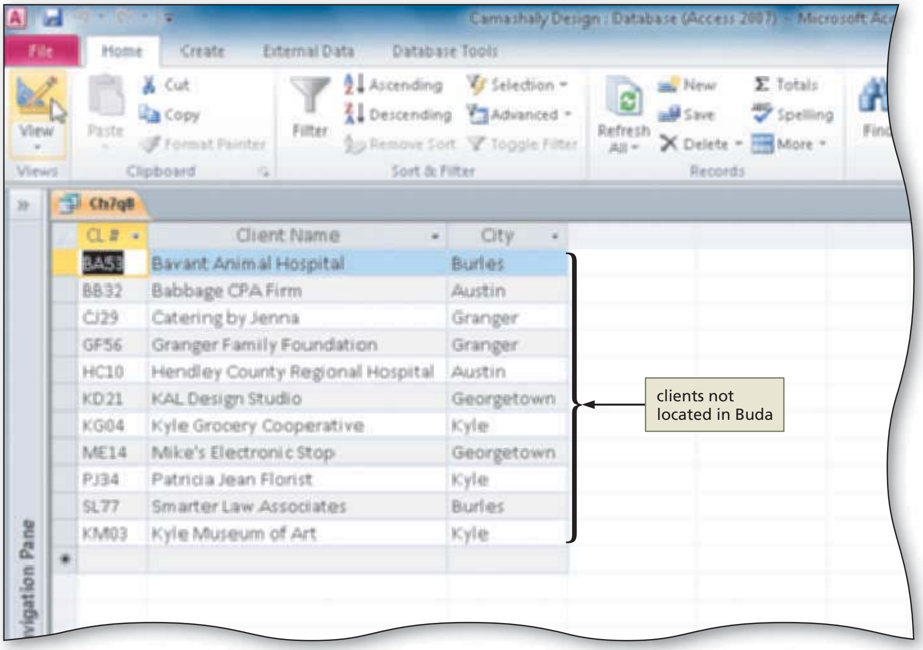


Query Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Acce
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
View
Run
Select
Make Table
Append
Update
Crosstab
Delete
Union
Pass-Through
Data Definition
Show Table
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Builder
Results
Query Type
Query Setup
Ch7q8
Navigation Pane

```
SELECT [Client Number],[Client Name],[City]
FROM [Client]
WHERE NOT [City]='Buda'
;
```

condition that the city must not be equal to Buda

(a) Query



Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Ac
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Fin
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Ch7q8
Navigation Pane

CL #	Client Name	City
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	Burles
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	Austin
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	Granger
GF56	Granger Family Foundation	Granger
HC10	Hendley County Regional Hospital	Austin
KD21	KAL Design Studio	Georgetown
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	Kyle
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	Georgetown
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	Kyle
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	Burles
KM03	Kyle Museum of Art	Kyle

clients not located in Buda

(b) Results

Figure 7–14

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Use a Computed Field

Just as with queries created in Design view, you can include fields in queries that are not in the database, but that can be computed from fields that are in the database. Such a field is called a computed or calculated field. Such computations can involve addition (+), subtraction (–), multiplication (*), or division (/). The query in the following steps computes the hours remaining, which is equal to the total hours minus the hours spent.

To indicate the contents of the new field (the computed field), you can name the field by following the computation with the word, AS, and then the name you want to assign the field. The following steps calculate the hours remaining for each course offered by subtracting the hours spent from the total hours and then assigning the name Hours Remaining to the calculation. The steps also list the Client Number, Course Number, Total Hours, and Hours Spent for all course offerings for which the number of hours spent is greater than 0.

1

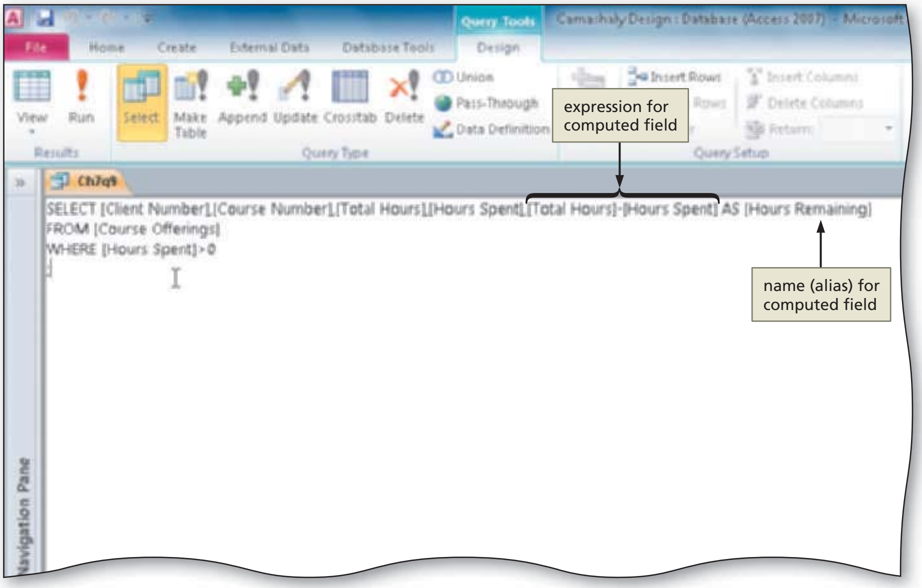
- Return to SQL view and delete the previous query.
- Type `SELECT [Client Number],[Course Number],[Total Hours],[Hours Spent],[Total Hours]-[Hours Spent] AS [Hours Remaining]` as the first line of the command.
- Type `FROM [Course Offerings]` as the second line.
- Type `WHERE [Hours Spent]>0` as the third line and type a semicolon on the fourth line.
- View the results (Figure 7–15).

Q&A The new name, Hours Remaining, is partially hidden. What should I do to see the entire name?

You could drag the right boundary of the field selector (the box containing Hours Remaining) to enlarge the field to the desired size. You also could double-click the right boundary of the field selector to resize the column so that it best fits the data.

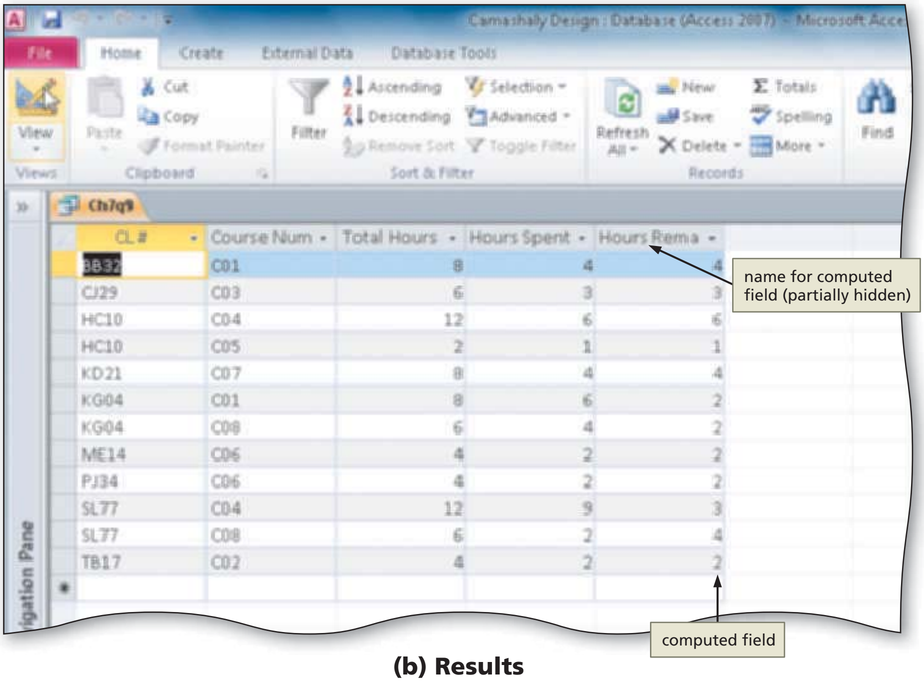
2

- Save the query as Ch7q10. Return to the query.


File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Query Tools
Design
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft
View
Run
Select
Make Table
Append
Update
Crosstab
Delete
Union
Pass-Through
Data Definition
Insert Rows
Insert Columns
Delete Columns
Return
Results
Query Type
Query Setup
Ch7q9
Navigation Pane
expression for computed field
name (alias) for computed field

```
SELECT [Client Number],[Course Number],[Total Hours],[Hours Spent],[Total Hours]-[Hours Spent] AS [Hours Remaining]
FROM [Course Offerings]
WHERE [Hours Spent]>0
```

(a) Query


File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Acce
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Ch7q9
Navigation Pane
name for computed field (partially hidden)
computed field

CL #	Course Num	Total Hours	Hours Spent	Hours Rema
BB32	C01	8	4	4
CJ29	C03	6	3	3
HC10	C04	12	6	6
HC10	C05	2	1	1
KD21	C07	8	4	4
KG04	C01	8	6	2
KG04	C08	6	4	2
ME14	C06	4	2	2
PJ34	C06	4	2	2
SL77	C04	12	9	3
SL77	C08	6	2	4
TB17	C02	4	2	2

(b) Results

Figure 7–15

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Sorting

Sorting in SQL follows the same principles as when using Design view to specify sorted query results, employing a sort key as the field on which data is to be sorted. SQL uses major and minor sort keys when sorting on multiple fields. By following a sort key with the word DESC with no comma in between, you can specify descending sort order. If you do not specify DESC, the data will be sorted in ascending order.

To sort the output, you include an **ORDER BY clause**, which consists of the words ORDER BY followed by the sort key. If there are two sort keys, the major sort key is listed first. Queries that you construct in Design view require that the major sort key is to the left of the minor sort key in the list of fields to be included. In SQL, there is no such restriction. The fields to be included in the query are in the SELECT clause, and the fields to be used for sorting are in the ORDER BY clause. The two clauses are totally independent.

Plan Ahead

Determine sort order.
Examine the query or request to see if it contains words such as order or sort that would imply that the order of the query results is important. If so, you need to sort the query.

- **Determine whether data is to be sorted.** Examine the requirements for the query looking for words like sorted by, ordered by, arranged by, and so on.
- **Determine sort keys.** Look for the fields that follow sorted by, ordered by, or any other words that signify sorting. If the requirements for the query include the phrase, ordered by client name, then Client Name is a sort key.
- **If there is more than one sort key, determine which one will be the major sort key and which will be the minor sort key.** Look for words that indicate which field is more important. For example, if the requirements indicate that the results are to be ordered by amount paid within analyst number, Business Analyst Number is the more important sort key.

To Sort the Results on a Single Field

The following steps list the client number, name, amount paid, current due, and analyst number for all clients. Camashaly Design wants this data to be sorted by client name.

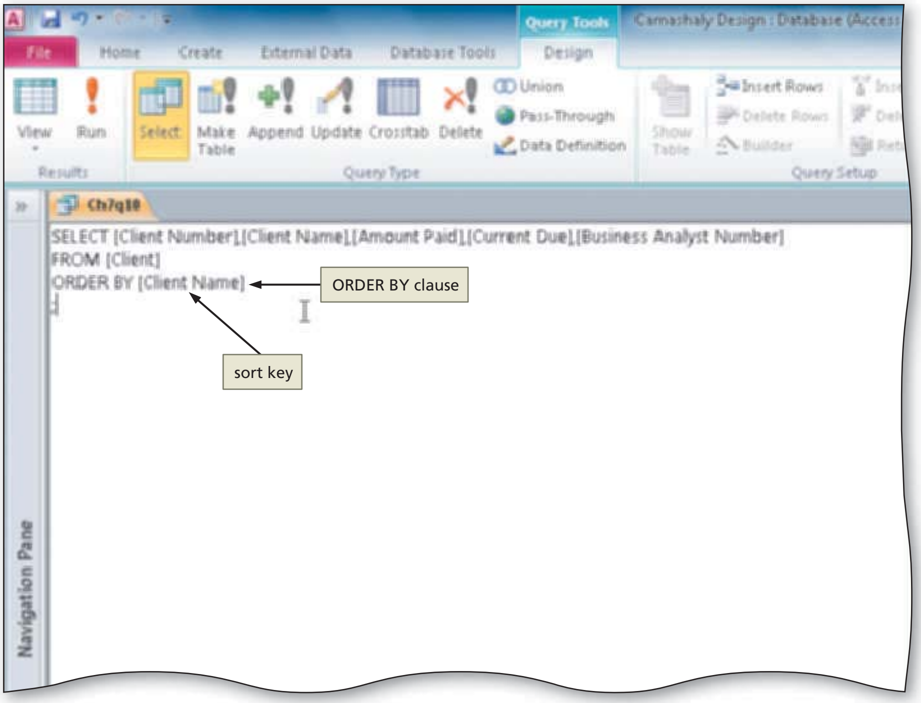
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

1

- Return to SQL view and delete the previous query.
- Type `SELECT [Client Number],[Client Name],[Amount Paid],[Current Due],[Business Analyst Number]` as the first line of the command.
- Type `FROM [Client]` as the second line.
- Type `ORDER BY [Client Name]` as the third line and type a semicolon (`;`) on the fourth line.
- View the results (Figure 7–16).

2

- Save the query as Ch7q11. Return to the query.

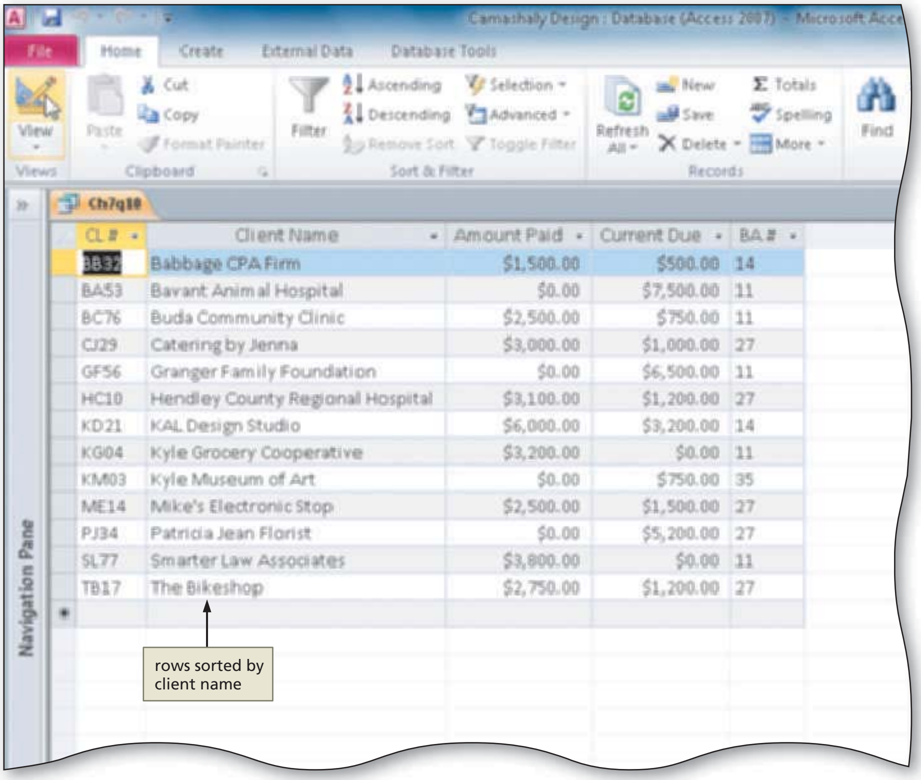

Query Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
View
Run
Select
Make Table
Append
Update
Crosstab
Delete
Union
Pass-Through
Data Definition
Show Table
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Builder
Results
Query Type
Query Setup
Ch7q10
Navigation Pane

```
SELECT [Client Number],[Client Name],[Amount Paid],[Current Due],[Business Analyst Number]
FROM [Client]
ORDER BY [Client Name]
;
```

ORDER BY clause

sort key

(a) Query


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Acce
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Ch7q10
Navigation Pane

CL #	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due	BA #
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	$1,500.00	$500.00	14
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	$0.00	$7,500.00	11
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	$2,500.00	$750.00	11
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	$3,000.00	$1,000.00	27
GF56	Granger Family Foundation	$0.00	$6,500.00	11
HC10	Hendley County Regional Hospital	$3,100.00	$1,200.00	27
KD21	KAL Design Studio	$6,000.00	$3,200.00	14
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	$3,200.00	$0.00	11
KM03	Kyle Museum of Art	$0.00	$750.00	35
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	$2,500.00	$1,500.00	27
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	$0.00	$5,200.00	27
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	$3,800.00	$0.00	11
TB17	The Bikeshop	$2,750.00	$1,200.00	27

rows sorted by client name

(b) Results

Figure 7–16

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Sort the Results on Multiple Fields

The following steps list the client number, name, amount paid, current due, and analyst number for all clients. This time, Camashaly wants the data to be sorted by amount paid within analyst number. That is, the data is to be sorted by analyst number. In addition, within the group of clients that have the same analyst number, the data is to be sorted further by amount paid. This means that the Business Analyst Number field is the major (primary) sort key and the Amount Paid field is the minor (secondary) sort key.

1

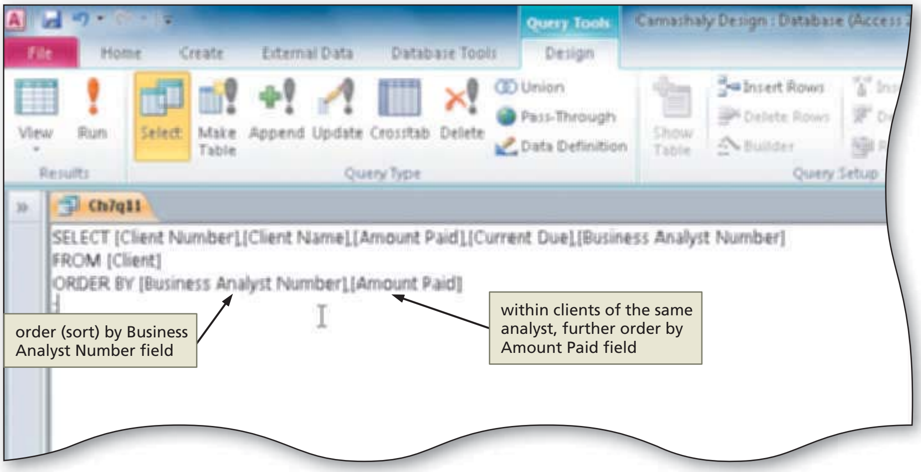
- Return to SQL view and delete the previous query.
- Type `SELECT [Client Number],[Client Name],[Amount Paid],[Current Due],[Business Analyst Number]` as the first line of the command.
- Type `FROM [Client]` as the second line.
- Type `ORDER BY [Business Analyst Number],[Amount Paid]` as the third line and type a semicolon (`;`) on the fourth line.
- View the results (Figure 7–17).

Experiment

- Try reversing the order of the sort keys to see the effect. Also, try to specify descending order for one or both of the sort keys. In each case, view the results to see the effect of your choice. When finished, return to the original sorting order for both fields.

2

- Save the query as Ch7q12. Return to the query.

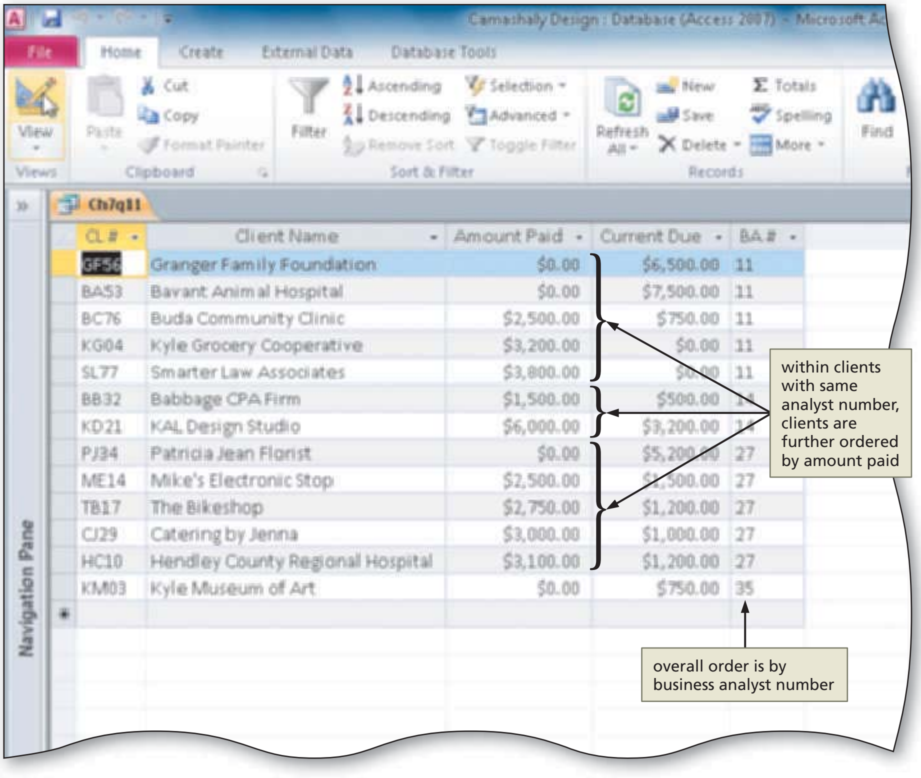

Query Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
View
Run
Select
Make Table
Append
Update
Crosstab
Delete
Union
Pass-Through
Data Definition
Show Table
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Builder
Results
Query Type
Query Setup
Ch7q11

```
SELECT [Client Number],[Client Name],[Amount Paid],[Current Due],[Business Analyst Number]
FROM [Client]
ORDER BY [Business Analyst Number],[Amount Paid]
```

order (sort) by Business Analyst Number field

within clients of the same analyst, further order by Amount Paid field

(a) Query


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Ac
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Ch7q11
Navigation Pane

CL #	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due	BA #
GF56	Granger Family Foundation	$0.00	$6,500.00	11
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	$0.00	$7,500.00	11
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	$2,500.00	$750.00	11
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	$3,200.00	$0.00	11
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	$3,800.00	$0.00	11
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	$1,500.00	$500.00	14
KD21	KAL Design Studio	$6,000.00	$3,200.00	14
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	$0.00	$5,200.00	27
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	$2,500.00	$1,500.00	27
TB17	The Bikeshop	$2,750.00	$1,200.00	27
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	$3,000.00	$1,000.00	27
HC10	Hendley County Regional Hospital	$3,100.00	$1,200.00	27
KM03	Kyle Museum of Art	$0.00	$750.00	35

within clients with same analyst number, clients are further ordered by amount paid

overall order is by business analyst number

(b) Results

Figure 7–17

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Sort the Results in Descending Order

To sort in descending order, you follow the name of the sort key with the DESC operator. The following steps list the client number, name, amount paid, current due, and analyst number for all clients. Camashaly wants the data to be sorted by descending current due within analyst number. That is, within the clients having the same analyst number, the data is to be sorted further by current due in descending order.

1

- Return to SQL view and delete the previous query.
- Type `SELECT [Client Number],[Client Name],[Amount Paid],[Current Due],[Business Analyst Number]` as the first line of the command.
- Type `FROM [Client]` as the second line.
- Type `ORDER BY [Business Analyst Number],[Current Due] DESC` as the third line and type a semicolon (`;`) on the fourth line.

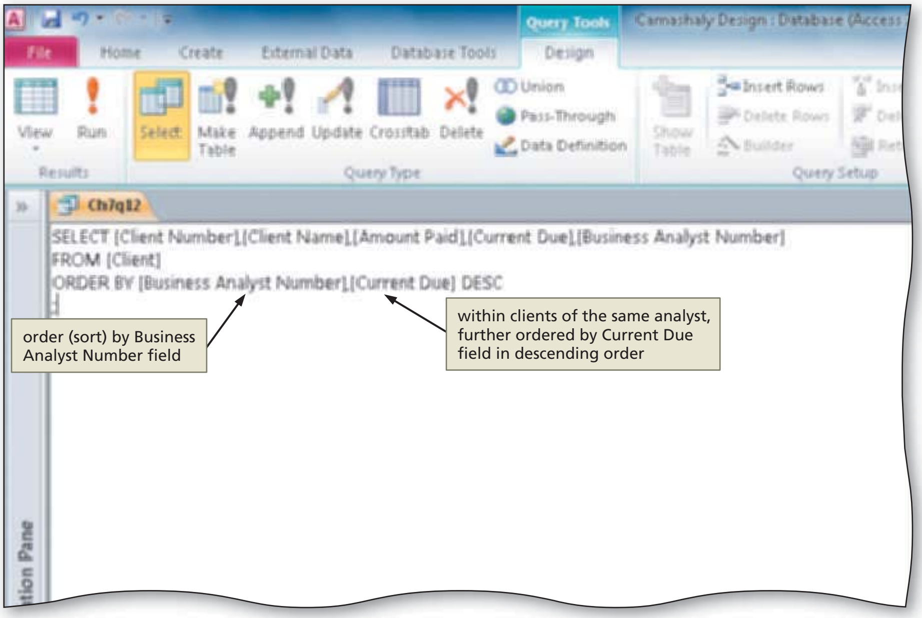
Q&A Don't I need a comma between [Current Due] and DESC?

No. In fact, you must not use a comma. If you did, SQL would assume that you want a field called DESC. Without the comma, SQL knows that the DESC indicates that the sort on the [Current Due] field is to be in descending order.

- View the results (Figure 7–18).

2

- Save the query as Ch7q13. Return to the query.

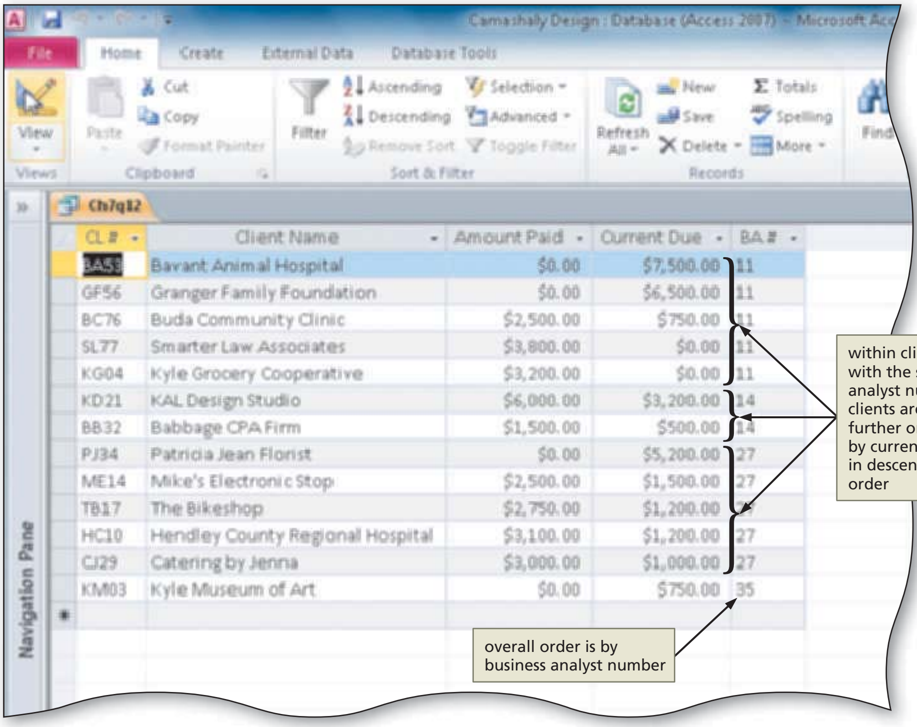

Query Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
View
Run
Select
Make Table
Append
Update
Crosstab
Delete
Union
Pass-Through
Data Definition
Show Table
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Builder
Results
Query Type
Query Setup
Ch7q12
Navigation Pane

```
SELECT [Client Number],[Client Name],[Amount Paid],[Current Due],[Business Analyst Number]
FROM [Client]
ORDER BY [Business Analyst Number],[Current Due] DESC
;
```

order (sort) by Business Analyst Number field

within clients of the same analyst, further ordered by Current Due field in descending order

(a) Query


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Acc
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Ch7q12
Navigation Pane

CL #	Client Name	Amount Paid	Current Due	BA #
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	$0.00	$7,500.00	11
GF56	Granger Family Foundation	$0.00	$6,500.00	11
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	$2,500.00	$750.00	11
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	$3,800.00	$0.00	11
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	$3,200.00	$0.00	11
KD21	KAL Design Studio	$6,000.00	$3,200.00	14
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	$1,500.00	$500.00	14
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	$0.00	$5,200.00	27
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	$2,500.00	$1,500.00	27
TB17	The Bikeshop	$2,750.00	$1,200.00	27
HC10	Hendley County Regional Hospital	$3,100.00	$1,200.00	27
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	$3,000.00	$1,000.00	27
KM03	Kyle Museum of Art	$0.00	$750.00	35

within clients with the same analyst number, clients are further ordered by current due in descending order

overall order is by business analyst number

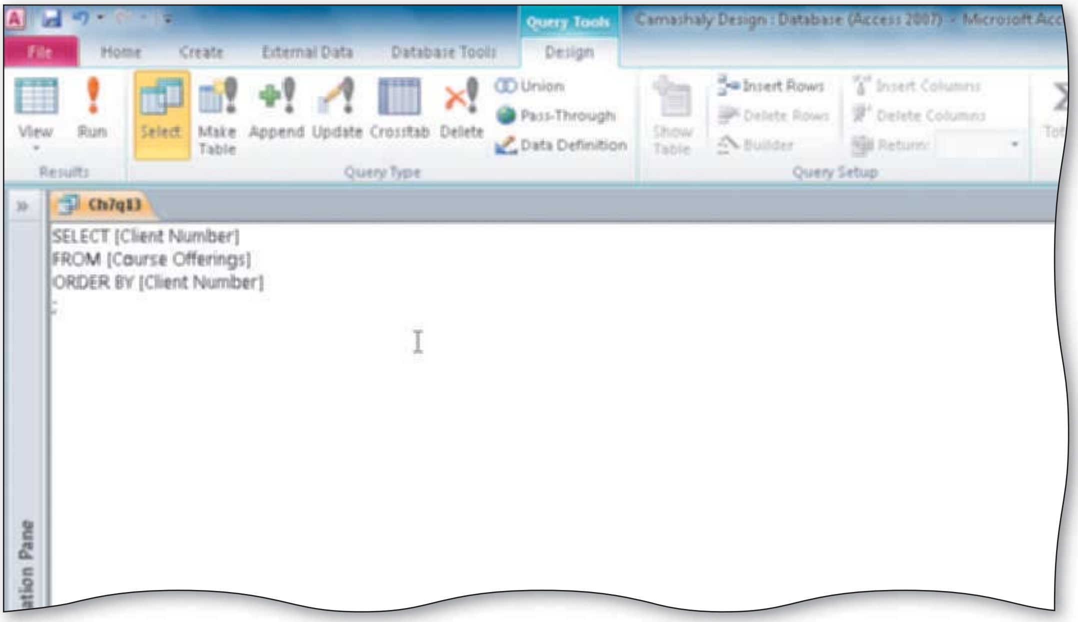
(b) Results

Figure 7–18

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

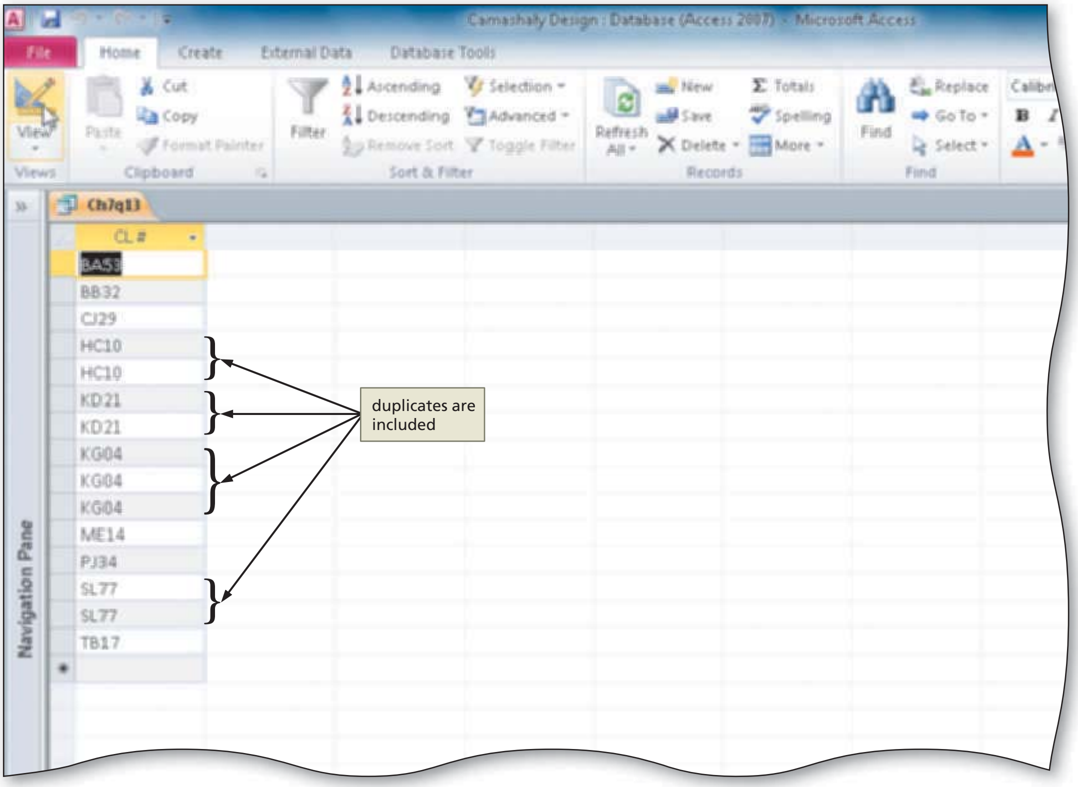
To Omit Duplicates When Sorting

When you sort data, duplicates normally are included. The query in Figure 7–19 sorts the client numbers in the Course Offerings table. Because any client can be offered many courses at a time, client numbers can be included more than once. Camashaly does not find this useful and would like to eliminate these duplicate client numbers.


Query Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Acc
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
View
Run
Select
Make Table
Append
Update
Crosstab
Delete
Union
Pass-Through
Data Definition
Show Table
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Builder
Insert Columns
Delete Columns
Return:
Results
Query Type
Query Setup
Ch7q13
Navigation Pane

```
SELECT [Client Number]
FROM [Course Offerings]
ORDER BY [Client Number]
;
```

(a) Query


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Find
Ch7q13
Navigation Pane
duplicates are included

CL #
BA53
BB32
CJ29
HC10
HC10
KD21
KD21
KG04
KG04
KG04
ME14
PJ34
SL77
SL77
TB17

(b) Results

Figure 7–19

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

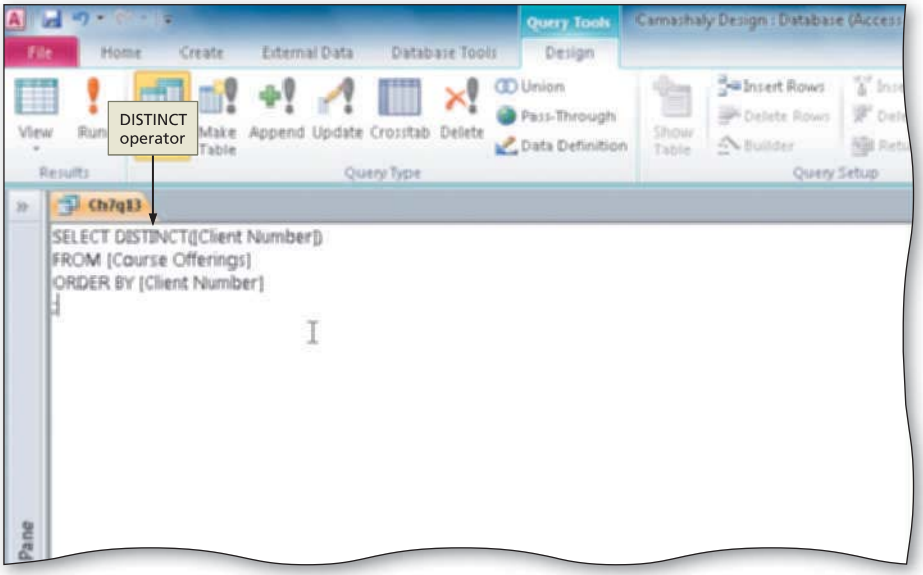
The **DISTINCT operator** eliminates duplicate values in the results of a query. To use the operator, you follow the word DISTINCT with the field name in parentheses. The following steps display the client numbers in the Course Offerings table in client number order, but with any duplicates removed.

1

- Return to SQL view and delete the previous query.
- Type `SELECT DISTINCT ([Client Number])` as the first line of the command.
- Type `FROM [Course Offerings]` as the second line.
- Type `ORDER BY [Client Number]` as the third line and type a semicolon (`;`) on the fourth line.
- View the results (Figure 7–20).

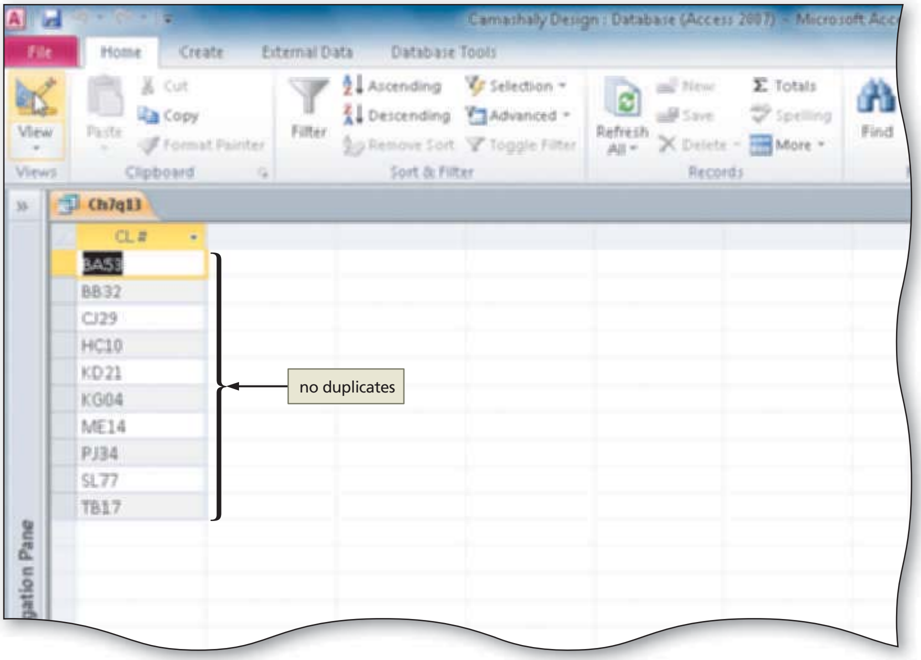
2

- Save the query as Ch7q14. Return to the query.


Query Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
View
Run
Make Table
Append
Update
Crosstab
Delete
Union
Pass-Through
Data Definition
Show Table
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Builder
Results
Query Type
Query Setup
Ch7q13
DISTINCT operator
Pane

```
SELECT DISTINCT([Client Number])
FROM [Course Offerings]
ORDER BY [Client Number]
```

(a) Query


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Acc
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Ch7q13
no duplicates
gation Pane

CL #
BA53
BB32
CJ29
HC10
KD21
KG04
ME14
PJ34
SL77
TB17

(b) Results

Figure 7–20

Break Point: If you wish to stop working through the chapter at this point, you can close Access now. You can resume the project at a later time by starting Access, opening the database called Camashaly Design, creating a new query in SQL view, and continuing to follow the steps from this location forward.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Use a Built-In Function

SQL has built-in functions, also called aggregate functions, to perform various calculations. Similar to the functions you learned about in Chapter 2, these functions in SQL are called COUNT, SUM, AVG, MAX, and MIN, respectively.

Camashaly uses the following steps to determine the number of clients assigned to analyst number 11 by using the COUNT function with an asterisk (*).

1

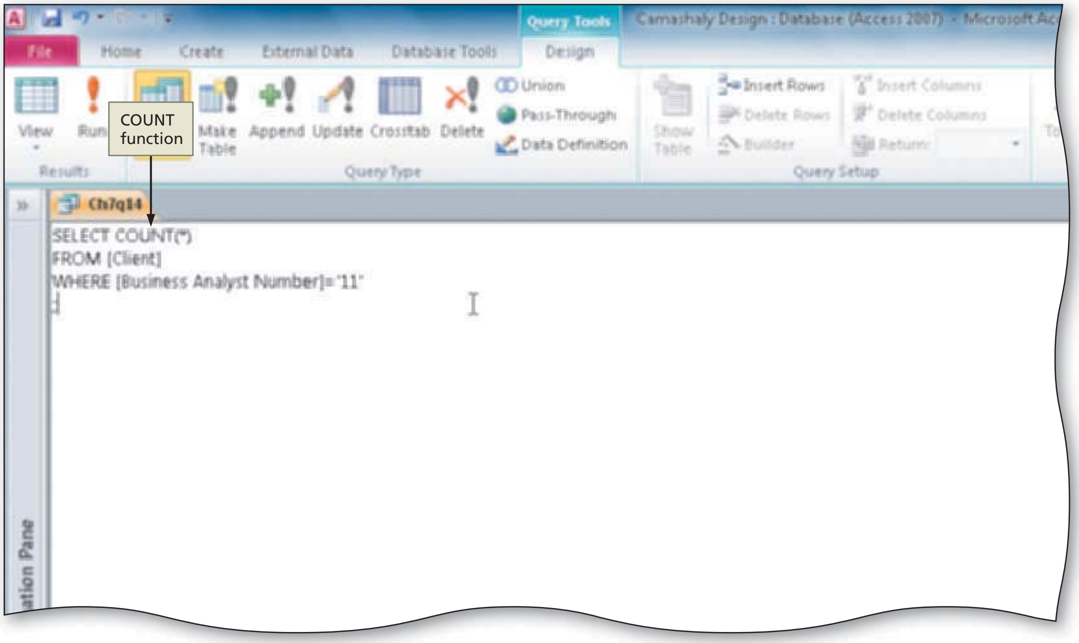
- Return to SQL view and delete the previous query.
- Type `SELECT COUNT(*)` as the first line of the command.
- Type `FROM [Client]` as the second line.
- Type `WHERE [Business Analyst Number]='11'` as the third line and type a semicolon (`;`) on the fourth line.
- View the results (Figure 7–21).

Q&A Why does Expr1000 appear in the column heading of the results?

Because the column is a computed column, it does not have a name. Access assigns a generic expression name. You can add a name for the column by including the AS clause in the query, and it is good practice to do so.

2

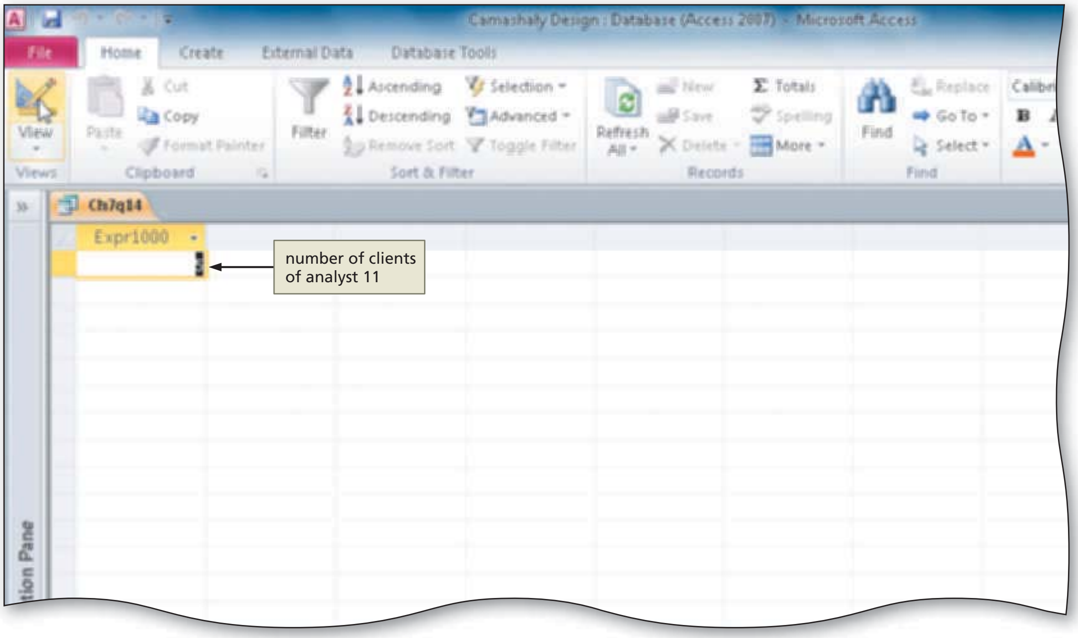
- Save the query as Ch7q15. Return to the query.


Query Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Ac
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
View
Run
Make Table
Append
Update
Crosstab
Delete
Union
Pass-Through
Data Definition
Show Table
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Builder
Insert Columns
Delete Columns
Return:
Results
Query Type
Query Setup
Ch7q14
Navigation Pane

COUNT function

```
SELECT COUNT(*)
FROM [Client]
WHERE [Business Analyst Number]='11'
```

(a) Query


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Find
Ch7q14
Expr1000
Navigation Pane

number of clients of analyst 11

(b) Results

Figure 7–21

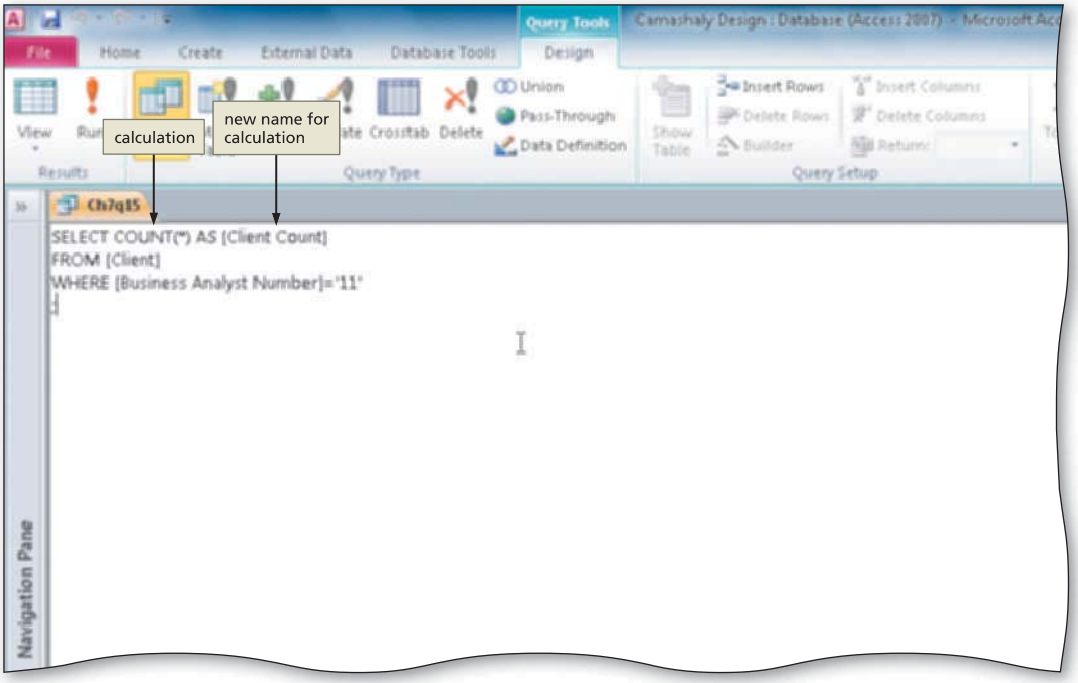
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Assign a Name to the Results of a Function

Camashaly Design would prefer to have a more meaningful name than Expr1000 for the results of counting client numbers. Fortunately, just as you can assign a name to a calculation that includes two fields, you can assign a name to the results of a function. To do so, follow the expression for the function with the word AS and then the name to be assigned to the result. The following steps assign the name, Client Count, to the expression in the previous query.

1

- Return to SQL view and delete the previous query.
- Type `SELECT COUNT(*) AS [Client Count]` as the first line of the command.
- Type `FROM [Client]` as the second line.
- Type `WHERE [Business Analyst Number]='11'` as the third line and type a semicolon (`;`) on the fourth line.
- View the results (Figure 7–22).

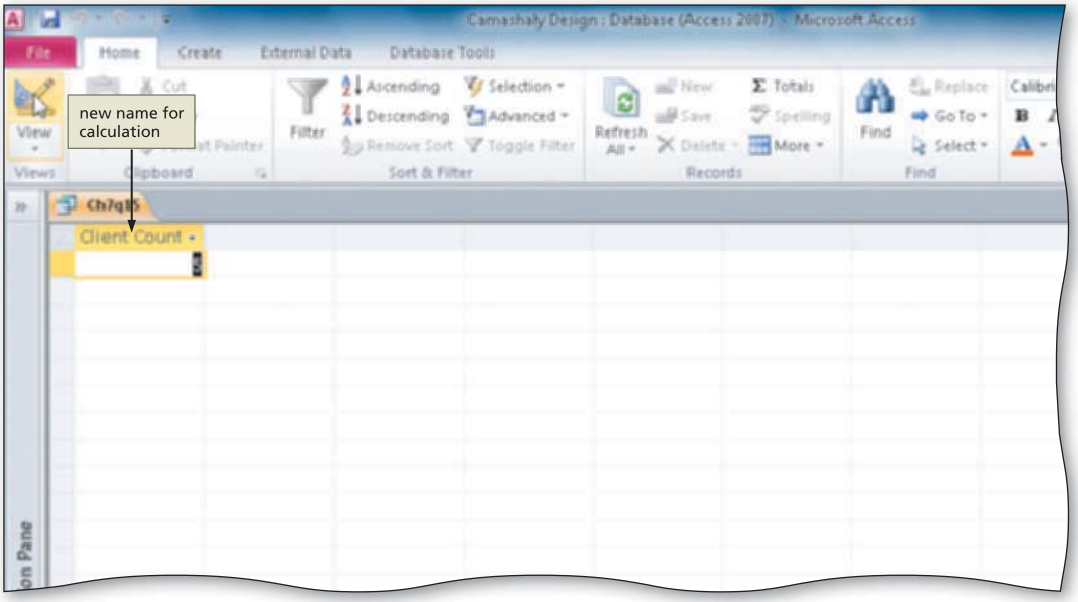

Query Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Acc
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
calculation
new name for calculation
Ch7q15
Navigation Pane

```
SELECT COUNT(*) AS [Client Count]
FROM [Client]
WHERE [Business Analyst Number]='11'
;
```

(a) Query

2

- Save the query as Ch7q16. Return to the query.


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
new name for calculation
Ch7q15
Client Count
3

(b) Results

Figure 7–22

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Use Multiple Functions in the Same Command

There are only two differences between COUNT and SUM, other than the obvious fact that they are computing different statistics. First, in the case of SUM, you must specify the field for which you want a total, instead of an asterisk (*); second, the field must be numeric. You could not calculate a sum of names or addresses, for example. The following steps use both the COUNT and SUM functions to count the number of clients and calculate the sum, or total, of their amount paid amounts.

1

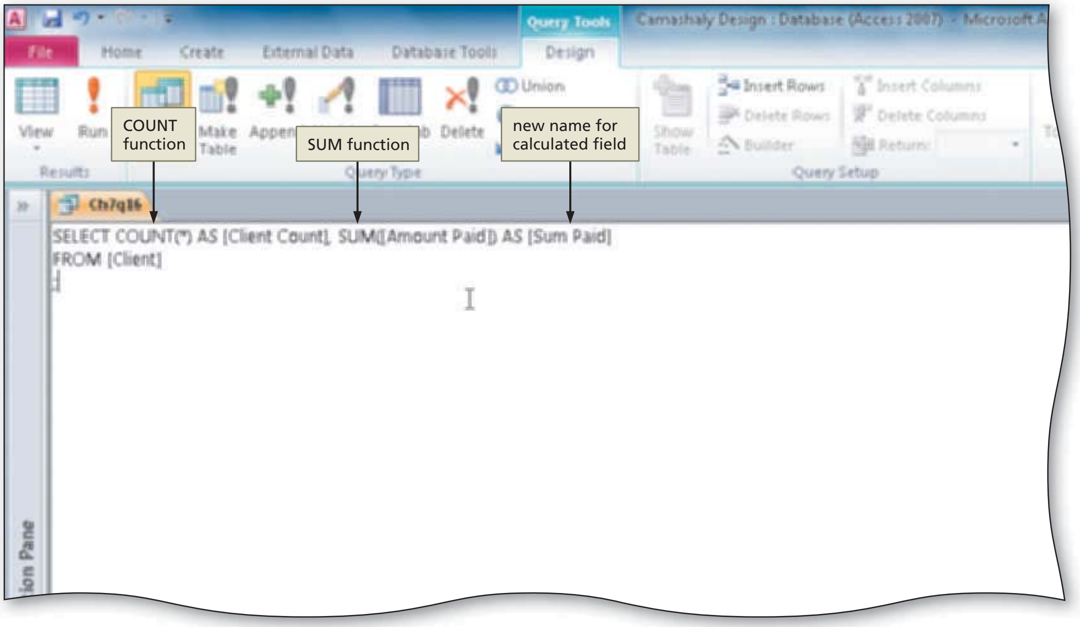
- Return to SQL view and delete the previous query.
- Type `SELECT COUNT(*) AS [Client Count], SUM([Amount Paid]) AS [Sum Paid]` as the first line of the command.
- Type `FROM [Client]` as the second line and type a semicolon (`;`) on the third line.
- View the results (Figure 7–23).

Experiment

- Try using the other functions in place of SUM. In each case, view the results to see the effect of your choice. When finished, once again select SUM.

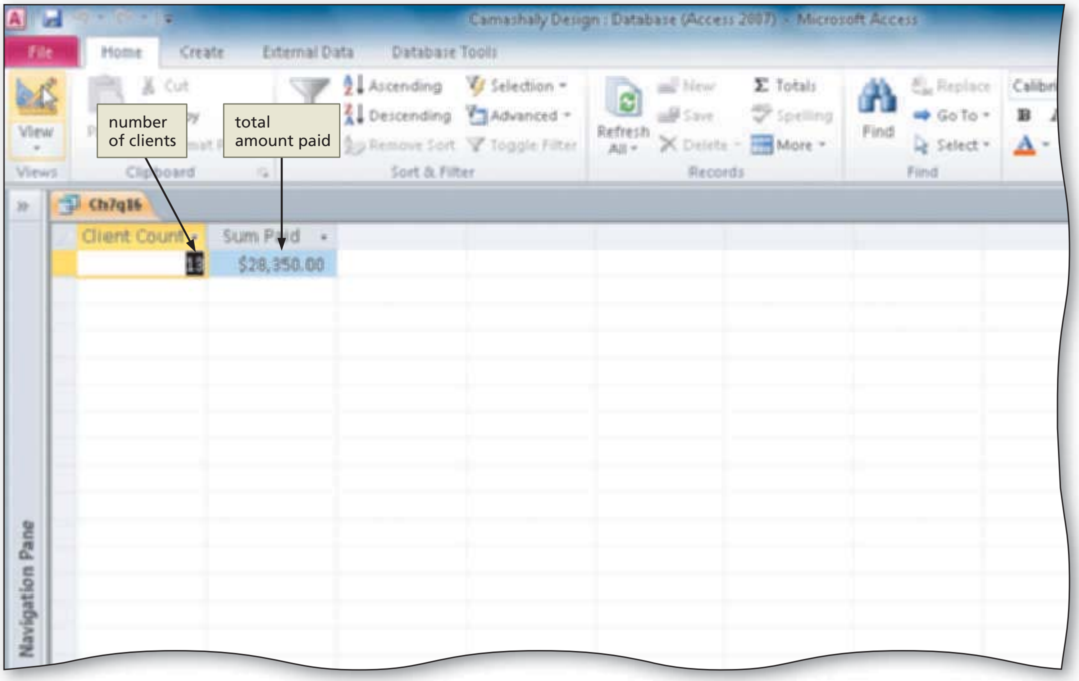
2

- Save the query as Ch7q17. Return to the query.


Query Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft A
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
View
Run
Make Table
Append
Delete
Union
Show Table
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Builder
Insert Columns
Delete Columns
Return:
Results
Query Type
Query Setup
Ch7q16
COUNT function
SUM function
new name for calculated field
Navigation Pane

```
SELECT COUNT(*) AS [Client Count], SUM([Amount Paid]) AS [Sum Paid]
FROM [Client]
;
```

(a) Query


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Views
Cut
Clipboard
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Sort & Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Records
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Find
Ch7q16
number of clients
total amount paid
Navigation Pane

Client Count	Sum Paid
13	$28,350.00

(b) Results

Figure 7–23

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

The use of AVG, MAX, and MIN is similar to SUM. The only difference is that a different statistic is calculated.

Grouping

Recall that grouping means creating groups of records that share some common characteristic. When you group rows, any calculations indicated in the SELECT command are performed for the entire group.

Plan Ahead

Determine grouping.

Examine the query or request to determine whether records should be organized by some common characteristic.

- **Determine whether data is to be grouped in some fashion.** Examine the requirements for the query to see if they contain individual rows or information about groups of rows.
- **Determine the field or fields on which grouping is to take place.** By which field is the data to be grouped? Look to see if the requirements indicate a field along with several group calculations.
- **Determine which fields or calculations are appropriate to display.** When rows are grouped, one line of output is produced for each group. The only output that can appear are statistics that are calculated for the group or fields whose values are the same for all rows in a group. For example, it would make sense to display the analyst number, because all the clients in the group have the same analyst number. It would not make sense to display the client number, because the client number will vary from one row in a group to another. SQL could not determine which client number to display for the group.

To Use Grouping

Camashaly Design wants to calculate the totals of the Amount Paid field, called Total Paid, and the Current Due field, called Total Due, for the clients of each analyst. To calculate the totals, the command will include the calculations, SUM([Amount Paid]) and SUM([Current Due]). To get totals for the clients of each analyst, the command also will include a **GROUP BY clause**, which consists of the words, GROUP BY, followed by the field used for grouping, in this case, Business Analyst Number.

Including GROUP BY Business Analyst Number will cause the clients for each analyst to be grouped together; that is, all clients with the same analyst number will form a group. Any statistics, such as totals, appearing after the word SELECT will be calculated for each of these groups. Using GROUP BY does not mean that the information will be sorted.

The following steps use the GROUP BY clause to produce the results Camashaly wants. The steps also rename the total amount paid as Sum Paid and the total current due as Sum Due by including appropriate AS clauses; finally, the steps sort the records by business analyst number.

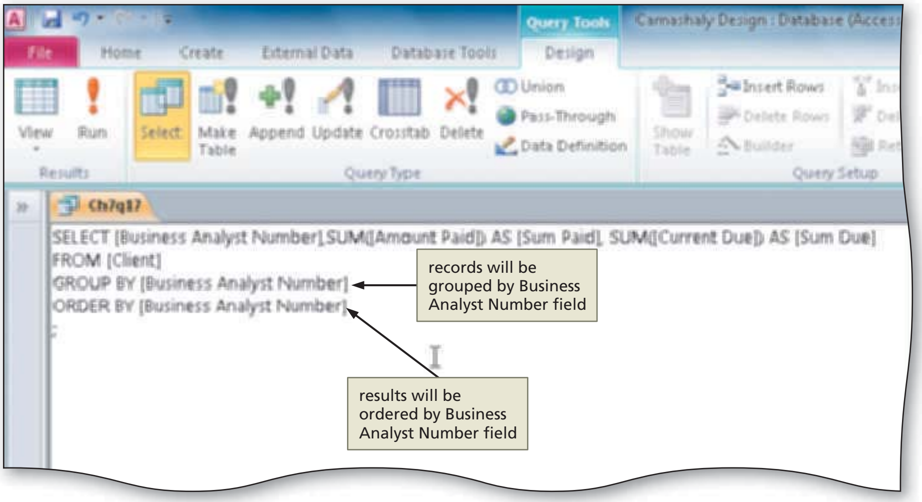
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

①

- Return to SQL view and delete the previous query.
- Type `SELECT [Business Analyst Number], SUM([Amount Paid]) AS [Sum Paid], SUM([Current Due]) AS [Sum Due]` as the first line of the command.
- Type `FROM [Client]` as the second line.
- Type `GROUP BY [Business Analyst Number]` as the third line.
- Type `ORDER BY [Business Analyst Number]` as the fourth line and type a semicolon (`;`) on the fifth line.
- View the results (Figure 7–24).

②

- Save the query as Ch7q18. Return to the query.

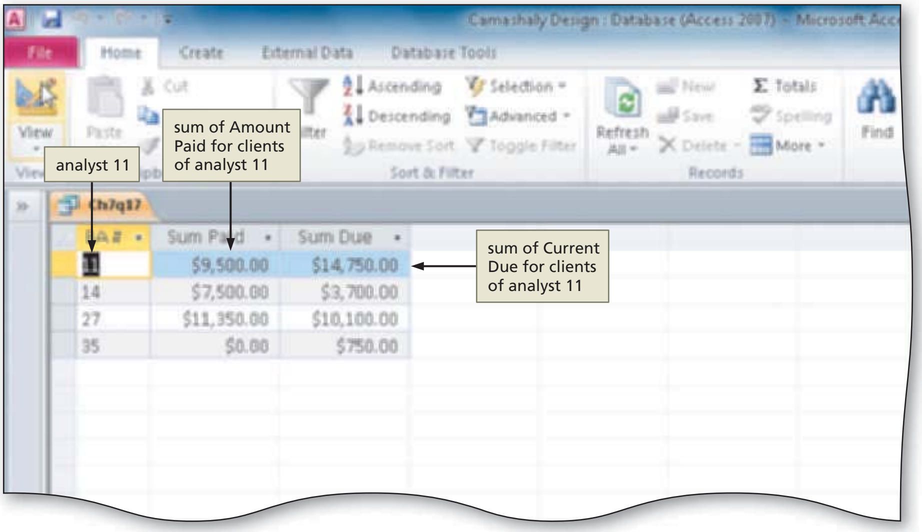

Query Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
View
Run
Select
Make Table
Append
Update
Crosstab
Delete
Union
Pass-Through
Data Definition
Show Table
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Builder
Results
Query Type
Query Setup
Ch7q17

```
SELECT [Business Analyst Number],SUM([Amount Paid]) AS [Sum Paid], SUM([Current Due]) AS [Sum Due]
FROM [Client]
GROUP BY [Business Analyst Number]
ORDER BY [Business Analyst Number]
;
```

records will be grouped by Business Analyst Number field

results will be ordered by Business Analyst Number field

(a) Query


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Acc
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Sort & Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Records
Find
Ch7q17

BA #	Sum Paid	Sum Due
11	$9,500.00	$14,750.00
14	$7,500.00	$3,700.00
27	$11,350.00	$10,100.00
35	$0.00	$750.00

analyst 11

sum of Amount Paid for clients of analyst 11

sum of Current Due for clients of analyst 11

(b) Results

Figure 7–24

Grouping Requirements

When rows are grouped, one line of output is produced for each group. The only output that can be displayed are statistics that are calculated for the group or columns whose values are the same for all rows in a group. When rows are grouped by business analyst number, it is appropriate to display the business analyst number, because the number in one row in a group must be the same as the number in any other row in the group. It is appropriate to display the sum of the Amount Paid and Current Due fields because they are statistics calculated for the group. It would not be appropriate to display a client number, however, because the client number varies on the rows in a group; the analyst is associated with many clients. SQL would not be able to determine which client number to display for the group. SQL will display an error message if you attempt to display a field that is not appropriate, such as the client number.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Restrict the Groups that Appear

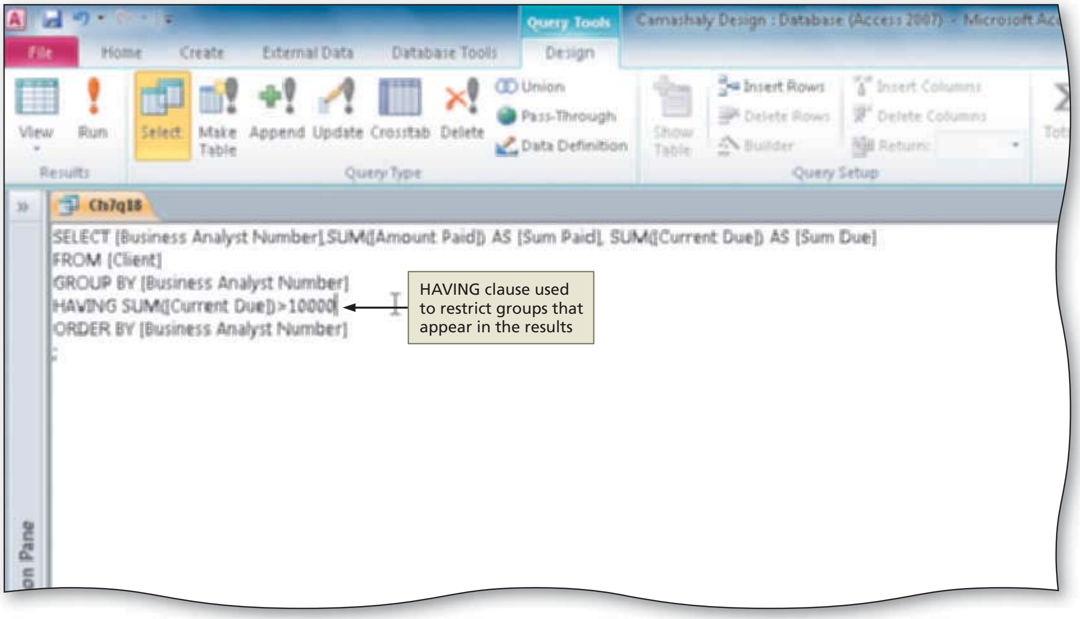
In some cases, Camashaly Design may only want to display certain groups. For example, management may want to display only those analysts for whom the sum of the current due amounts are greater than $10,000. This restriction does not apply to individual rows, but instead to groups. Because WHERE applies only to rows, you cannot use a WHERE clause to accomplish the kind of restriction you have here. Fortunately, SQL provides a clause that is to groups what WHERE is to rows. The HAVING clause, which consists of the word HAVING followed by a criterion, is used in the following steps, which restrict the groups to be included to those on which the sum of the current due is greater than $10,000.00.

1

- Return to SQL view.
- Click the beginning of the fourth line (ORDER BY [Business Analyst Number]) and press the ENTER key to insert a new blank line.
- Click the beginning of the new blank line, and then type **`HAVING SUM([Current Due])>10000`** as the new fourth line.
- View the results (Figure 7–25).

2

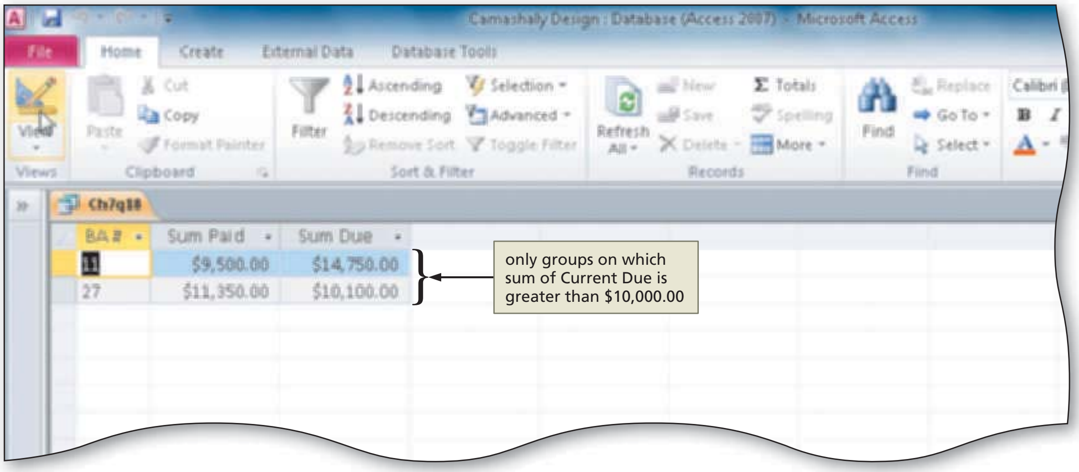
- Save the query as Ch7q19. Return to the query.


Query Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Ac
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
View
Run
Select
Make Table
Append
Update
Crosstab
Delete
Union
Pass-Through
Data Definition
Show Table
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Builder
Insert Columns
Delete Columns
Return:
Results
Query Type
Query Setup
Ch7q18

```
SELECT [Business Analyst Number],SUM([Amount Paid]) AS [Sum Paid], SUM([Current Due]) AS [Sum Due]
FROM [Client]
GROUP BY [Business Analyst Number]
HAVING SUM([Current Due])>10000
ORDER BY [Business Analyst Number]
;
```

HAVING clause used to restrict groups that appear in the results

(a) Query


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Calibri
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Find
Ch7q18

BA #	Sum Paid	Sum Due
11	$9,500.00	$14,750.00
27	$11,350.00	$10,100.00

only groups on which sum of Current Due is greater than $10,000.00

(b) Results

Figure 7–25

Break Point: If you wish to stop working through the chapter at this point, you can close Access now. You can resume the project at a later time by starting Access, opening the database called Camashaly Design, creating a new query in SQL view, and continuing to follow the steps from this location forward.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Joining Tables

Many queries require data from more than one table. Just as with creating queries in Design view, SQL should provide a way to **join** tables, that is, to find rows in two tables that have identical values in matching fields. In SQL, this is accomplished through appropriate criteria following the word WHERE.

If you want to list the client number, name, analyst number, first name of the analyst, and last name of the analyst for all clients, you need data from both the Client and Business Analyst tables. The Business Analyst Number field is in both tables, the Client Number field is only in the Client table, and the First Name and Last Name fields are only in the Business Analyst Table. You need to access both tables in your SQL query, as follows:

1. In the SELECT clause, you indicate all fields you want to appear.
2. In the FROM clause, you list all tables involved in the query.
3. In the WHERE clause, you give the criterion that will restrict the data to be retrieved to only those rows included in both of the two tables, that is, to the rows that have common values in matching fields.

BTW

Inner Joins

A join that compares the tables in the FROM clause and lists only those rows that satisfy the condition in the WHERE clause is called an inner join. SQL has an INNER JOIN clause. You could replace the query shown in Figure 7–26a on page AC 448 with FROM Client INNER JOIN [Business Analyst] ON [Client].[Business Analyst Number]=[Business Analyst].[Business Analyst Number] to get the same results as shown in Figure 7–26b.

Qualifying Fields

There is a problem in indicating the matching fields. The matching fields are both called Business Analyst Number. There is a field in the Client table called Business Analyst Number, as well as a field in the Business Analyst Table called Business Analyst Number. In this case, if you only enter Business Analyst Number, it will not be clear which table you mean. It is necessary to **qualify** Business Analyst Number, that is, to specify to which field in which table you are referring. You do this by preceding the name of the field with the name of the table, followed by a period. The Business Analyst Number field in the Client table, for example, is [Client].[Business Analyst Number].

Whenever there is potential ambiguity, you must qualify the fields involved. It is permissible to qualify other fields as well, even if there is no confusion. For example, instead of [Client Name], you could have typed [Client].[Client Name] to indicate the Client Name field in the Client table. Some people prefer to qualify all fields, and this is not a bad approach. In this text, you only will qualify fields when it is necessary to do so.

To Rename a Table

In Chapter 1, you assigned the name Business Analyst Table to the Business Analyst table. In this chapter, you will change the name to Business Analyst to make it easier to enter SQL commands. The following steps change the name.

1. Open the Navigation Pane and right-click the Business Analyst Table.
2. Click Rename on the shortcut menu.
3. Delete the current entry, type `Business Analyst` as the new table name, and press the ENTER key.
4. Close the Navigation Pane.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Join Tables

Camashaly Design wants to list the client number, client name, analyst number, first name of the analyst, and last name of the analyst for all clients. Because the data comes from two tables, the following steps create a query to join the tables.

1

- Return to SQL view and delete the previous query.
- Type `SELECT [Client Number],[Client Name],[Client].[Business Analyst Number],[First Name],[Last Name]` as the first line of the command.
- Type `FROM [Client],[Business Analyst]` as the second line.
- Type `WHERE [Client].[Business Analyst Number]=[Business Analyst].[Business Analyst Number]` as the third line and type a semicolon (`;`) on the fourth line.

Q&A

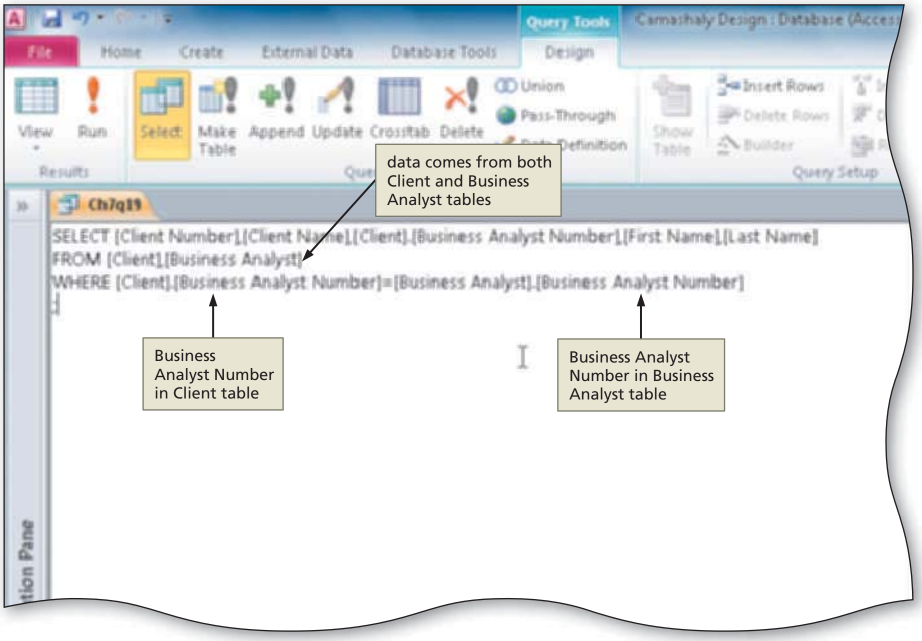
What is the purpose of the WHERE clause?

The WHERE clause specifies that only rows on which the analyst numbers match are to be included. In this case, the analyst number in the Client table ([Client].[Business Analyst Number]) must be equal to the analyst number in the Business Analyst table ([Business Analyst].[Business Analyst Number]).

- View the results (Figure 7–26).

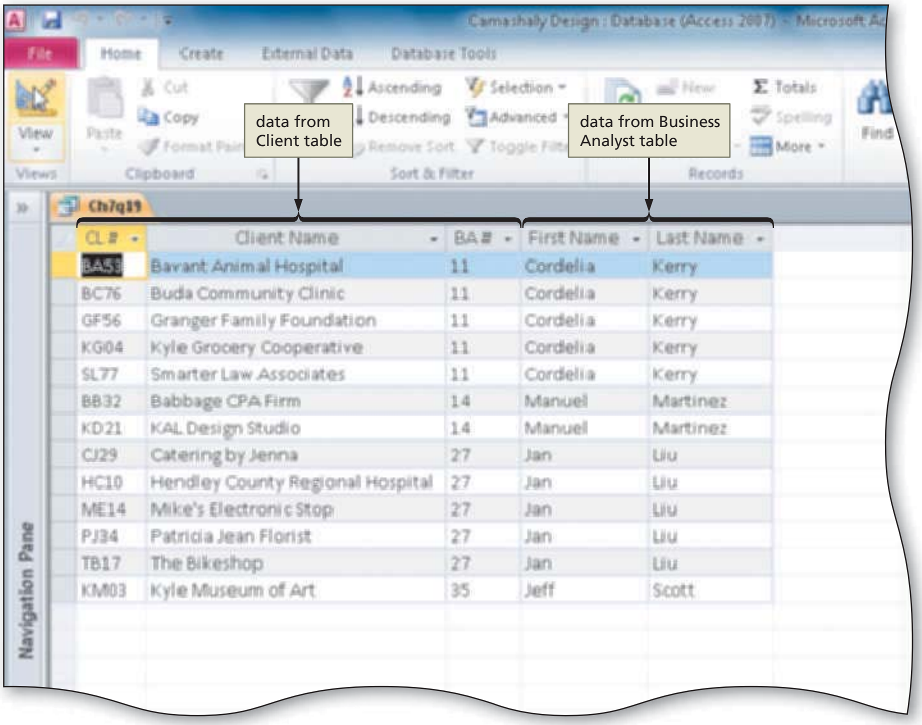
2

- Save the query as Ch7q20. Return to the query.


Query Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
View
Run
Select
Make Table
Append
Update
Crosstab
Delete
Union
Pass-Through
Data Definition
Show Table
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Builder
Results
Query Setup
Ch7q19
data comes from both Client and Business Analyst tables
Business Analyst Number in Client table
Business Analyst Number in Business Analyst table
Navigation Pane

```
SELECT [Client Number],[Client Name],[Client].[Business Analyst Number],[First Name],[Last Name]
FROM [Client],[Business Analyst]
WHERE [Client].[Business Analyst Number]=[Business Analyst].[Business Analyst Number]
```

(a) Query


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Ac
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
New
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Ch7q19
data from Client table
data from Business Analyst table
Navigation Pane

CL #	Client Name	BA #	First Name	Last Name
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	11	Cordelia	Kerry
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	11	Cordelia	Kerry
GF56	Granger Family Foundation	11	Cordelia	Kerry
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	11	Cordelia	Kerry
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	11	Cordelia	Kerry
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	14	Manuel	Martinez
KD21	KAL Design Studio	14	Manuel	Martinez
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	27	Jan	Liu
HC10	Hendley County Regional Hospital	27	Jan	Liu
ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	27	Jan	Liu
PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	27	Jan	Liu
TB17	The Bikeshop	27	Jan	Liu
KM03	Kyle Museum of Art	35	Jeff	Scott

(b) Results

Figure 7–26

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Restrict the Records in a Join

You can restrict the records to be included in a join by creating a compound criterion. The criterion will include the criterion necessary to join the tables along with a criterion to restrict the records. The criteria will be connected with AND.

Camashaly would like to modify the previous query so that only analysts whose start date is prior to May 1, 2011, are included. The following steps modify the previous query appropriately. The date is enclosed between number signs (#).

1

- Return to SQL view.
- Click immediately prior to the semicolon on the last line.
- Type `AND [Start Date] <#5/1/2011#` and press the ENTER key.

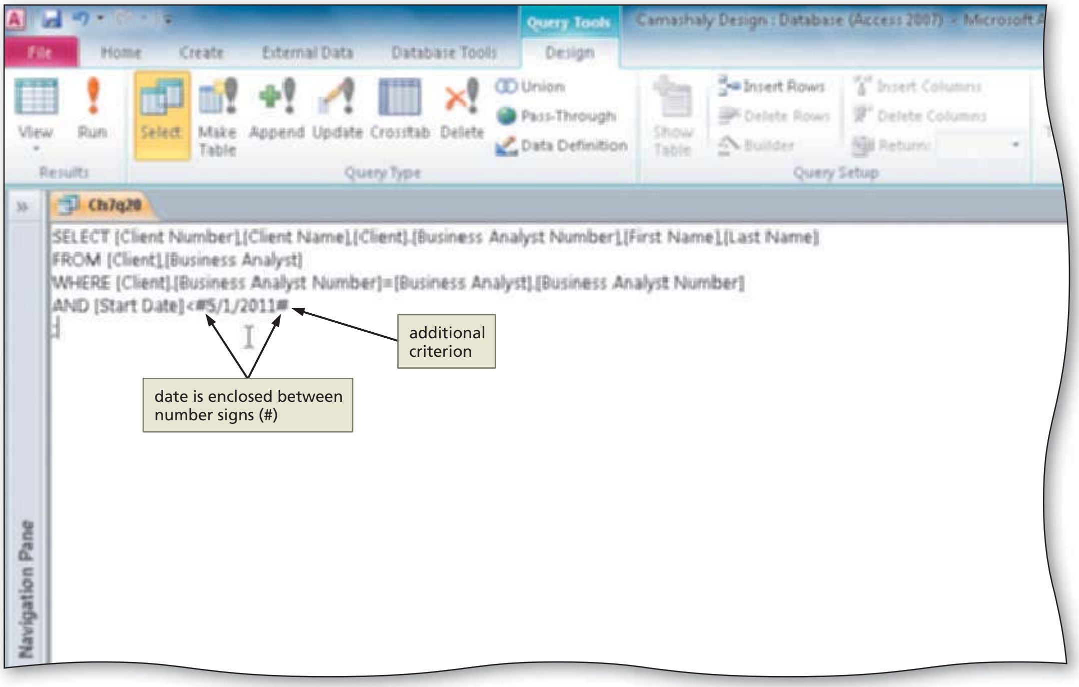
Q&A Could I use other formats for the date in the criterion?

Yes. You could type #May 1, 2011# or #1-May-2011#.

- View the results (Figure 7–27).

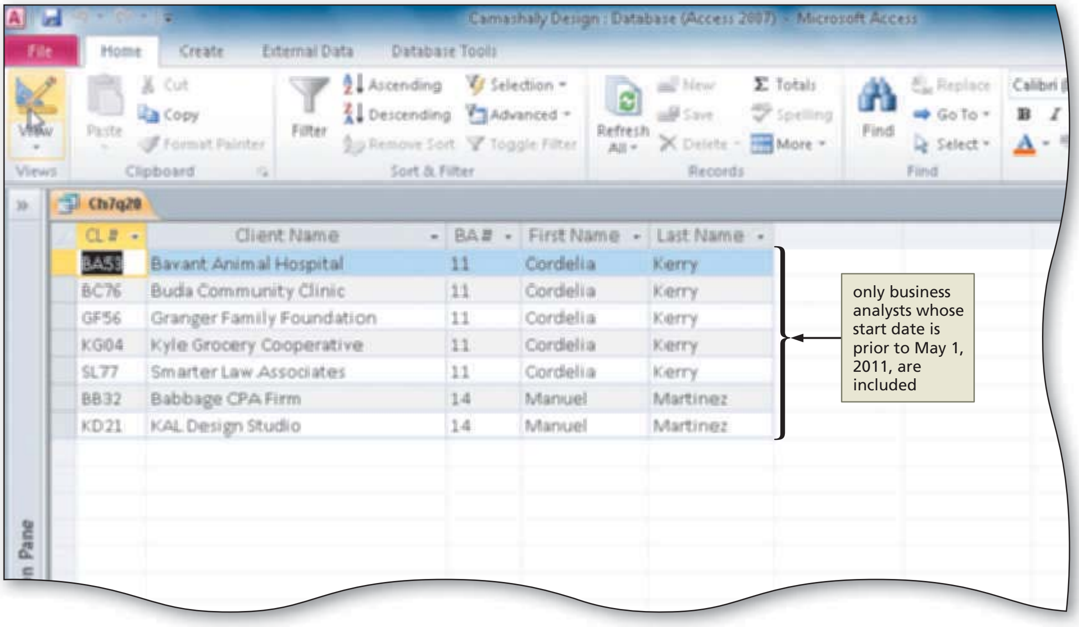
2

- Save the query as Ch7q21. Return to the query.


Query Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft A
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
View
Run
Select
Make Table
Append
Update
Crosstab
Delete
Union
Pass-Through
Data Definition
Show Table
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Builder
Insert Columns
Delete Columns
Return:
Results
Query Type
Query Setup
Ch7q20
Navigation Pane
additional criterion
date is enclosed between number signs (#)

```
SELECT [Client Number],[Client Name],[Client].[Business Analyst Number],[First Name],[Last Name]
FROM [Client],[Business Analyst]
WHERE [Client].[Business Analyst Number]=[Business Analyst].[Business Analyst Number]
AND [Start Date]<#5/1/2011#
```

(a) Query


Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
View
Paste
Cut
Copy
Format Painter
Filter
Ascending
Descending
Remove Sort
Selection
Advanced
Toggle Filter
Refresh All
New
Save
Delete
Totals
Spelling
More
Find
Replace
Go To
Select
Calibri
B
I
Views
Clipboard
Sort & Filter
Records
Find
Ch7q20
Pane

CL #	Client Name	BA #	First Name	Last Name
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	11	Cordelia	Kerry
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	11	Cordelia	Kerry
GF56	Granger Family Foundation	11	Cordelia	Kerry
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	11	Cordelia	Kerry
SL77	Smarter Law Associates	11	Cordelia	Kerry
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	14	Manuel	Martinez
KD21	KAL Design Studio	14	Manuel	Martinez

only business analysts whose start date is prior to May 1, 2011, are included

(b) Results

Figure 7–27

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

BTW

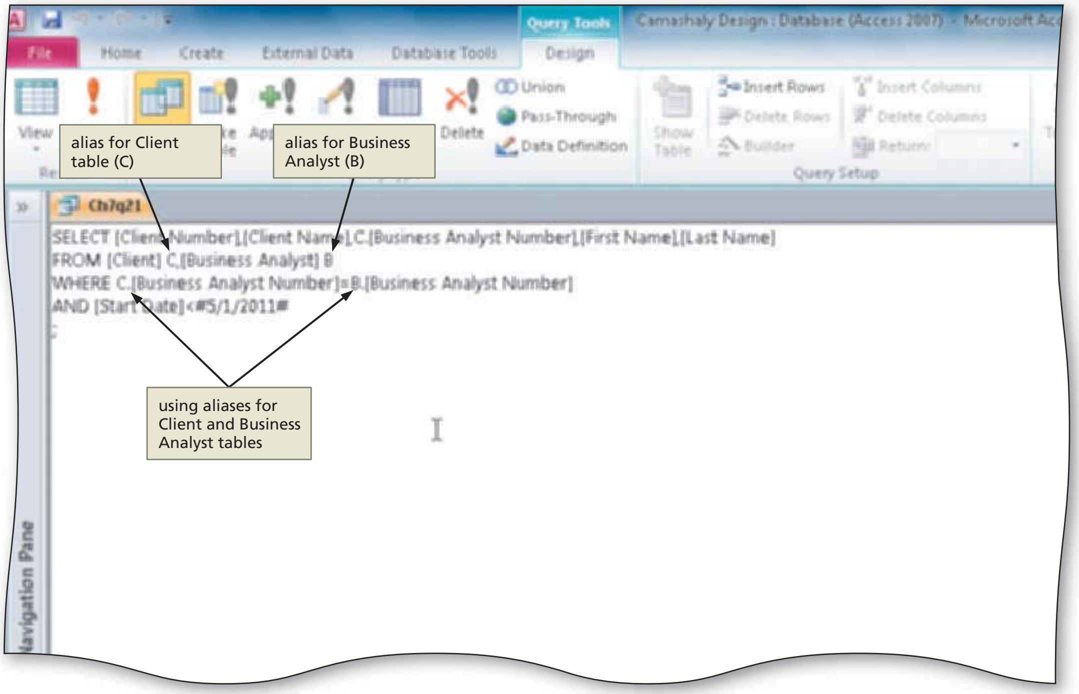
Outer Joins

Sometimes you need to list all the rows from one of the tables in a join, regardless of whether they match any rows in the other table. For example, you can perform a join on the Client and Course Offerings table but display all clients — even the ones without course offerings. This type of join is called an outer join. In a left outer join, all rows from the table on the left (the table listed first in the query) will be included regardless of whether they match rows from the table on the right (the table listed second in the query). Rows from the right will be included only if they match. In a right outer join, all rows from the table on the right will be included regardless of whether they match rows from the table on the left. The SQL clause for a left outer join is LEFT JOIN and the SQL clause for a right outer join is RIGHT JOIN.

Aliases

When tables appear in the FROM clause, you can give each table an **alias**, or an alternative name, that you can use in the rest of the statement. You create an alias by typing the name of the table, pressing the SPACEBAR, and then typing the name of the alias. No commas or periods are necessary to separate the two names.

You can use an alias for two basic reasons: for simplicity or to join a table to itself. Figure 7–28 shows the same query as in Figure 7–27, but with the Client table assigned the letter, C, as an alias and the Business Analyst table assigned the letter, B. The query in Figure 7–28 is less complex. Whenever you need to qualify a field name, you can use the alias. Thus, you only need to type B.[Business Analyst Number] rather than [Business Analyst].[Business Analyst Number].



```
SELECT [Client Number],[Client Name],C.[Business Analyst Number],[First Name],[Last Name]
FROM [Client] C,[Business Analyst] B
WHERE C.[Business Analyst Number]=B.[Business Analyst Number]
AND [Start Date]<#5/1/2011#
;
```

Figure 7–28

To Join a Table to Itself

The other use of aliases is in joining a table to itself. An example of this type of join would enable Camashaly to find client numbers and names for every pair of clients located in the same city. One such pair, for example, would be client CJ29 (Catering by Jenna) and client GF56 (Granger Family Foundation) because both clients are located in the same city (Granger). Another example would be client BA53 (Bavant Animal Hospital) and client SL77 (Smarter Law Associates) because both clients are located in the same city (Burles).

If there were two Client tables in the database, Camashaly could obtain the results they want by simply joining the two Client tables looking for rows where the cities were the same. Even though there is only one Client table, you actually can treat the Client table as two tables in the query by creating two aliases. You would change the FROM clause to:

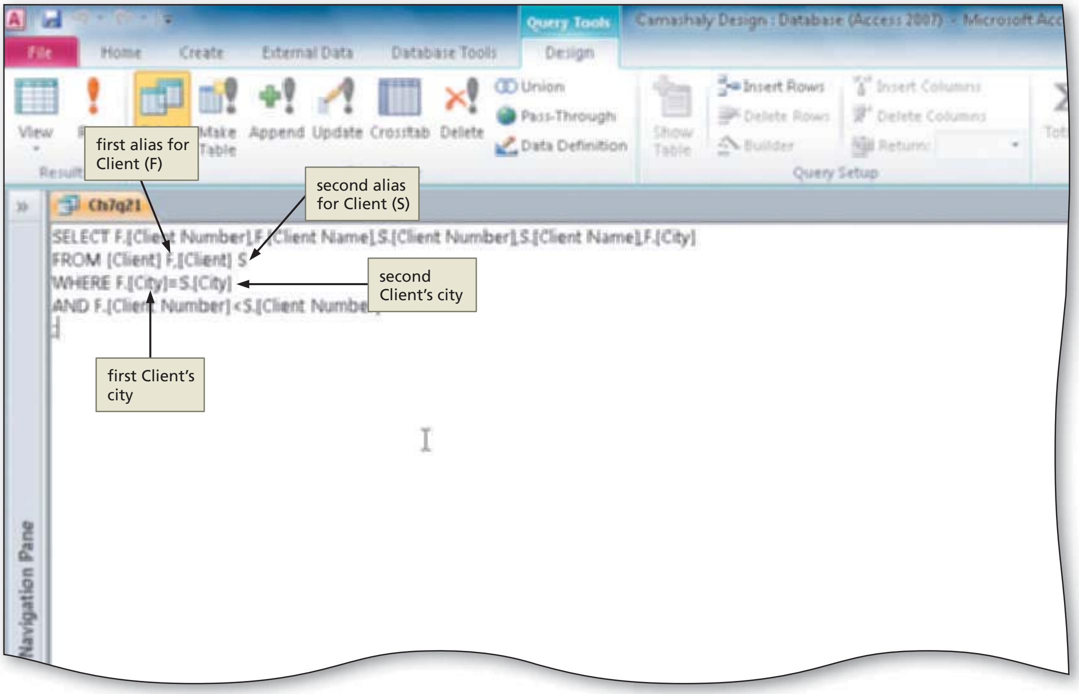
```
FROM CLIENT F, CLIENT S
```

SQL treats this clause as a query of two tables. The clause assigns the first Client table the letter, F, as an alias. It also assigns the letter, S, as an alias for the Client table. The fact that both tables are really the single Client table is not a problem. The following steps assign two aliases (F and S) to the Client table and list the client number and client name of both clients as well as the city in which both are located.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

1

- Return to SQL view and delete the previous query.
- Type `SELECT F.[Client Number],F.[Client Name],S.[Client Number],S.[Client Name],F.[City]` as the first line of the command.
- Type `FROM [Client] F,[Client] S` as the second line.
- Type `WHERE F.[City]=S.[City]` as the third line.
- Type `AND F.[Client Number]<S.[Client Number]` as the fourth line and type a semicolon (`;`) on the fifth line.
- View the results (Figure 7–29).


Query Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access 2007) - Microsoft Acc
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
View
Make Table
Append
Update
Crosstab
Delete
Union
Pass-Through
Data Definition
Show Table
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Builder
Insert Columns
Delete Columns
Return:
Results
Query Setup
Tot
Ch7q21
Navigation Pane

```
SELECT F.[Client Number],F.[Client Name],S.[Client Number],S.[Client Name],F.[City]
FROM [Client] F,[Client] S
WHERE F.[City]=S.[City]
AND F.[Client Number]<S.[Client Numbe
;
```

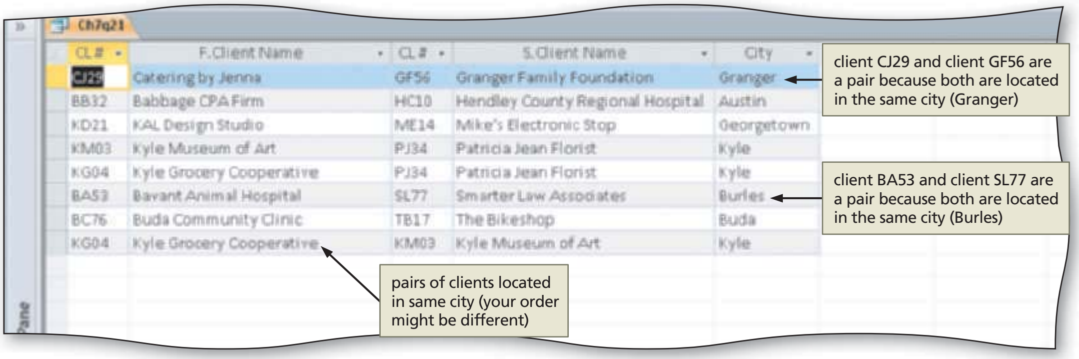
first alias for Client (F)

second alias for Client (S)

second Client's city

first Client's city

(a) Query


Ch7q21
Pane

CL #	F.Client Name	CL #	S.Client Name	City
CJ29	Catering by Jenna	GF56	Granger Family Foundation	Granger
BB32	Babbage CPA Firm	HC10	Hendley County Regional Hospital	Austin
KD21	KAL Design Studio	ME14	Mike's Electronic Stop	Georgetown
KM03	Kyle Museum of Art	PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	Kyle
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	PJ34	Patricia Jean Florist	Kyle
BA53	Bavant Animal Hospital	SL77	Smarter Law Associates	Burles
BC76	Buda Community Clinic	TB17	The Bikeshop	Buda
KG04	Kyle Grocery Cooperative	KM03	Kyle Museum of Art	Kyle

client CJ29 and client GF56 are a pair because both are located in the same city (Granger)

client BA53 and client SL77 are a pair because both are located in the same city (Burles)

pairs of clients located in same city (your order might be different)

(b) Results

Figure 7–29

Q&A

Why is the criterion F.[Client Number] < S.[Client Number] included in the query?

If you did not include this criterion, the query would contain four times as many results. On the first row in the results, for example, the first client number is CJ29 and the second is GF56. Without this criterion, there would be a row on which both the first and second client numbers are CJ29, a row on which both are GF56, and a row on which the first is GF56 and the second is CJ29. This criterion only selects the one row on which the first client number (CJ29) is less than the second client number (GF56).

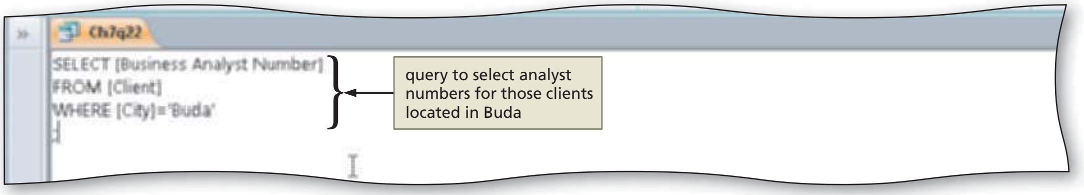
2

- Save the query as Ch7q22. Return to the query.

Subqueries

It is possible to place one query inside another. Figure 7–30, on the following page, illustrates a **subquery**, which is an inner query, contained within parentheses, that is evaluated first. Then the outer query can use the results of the subquery to find its results. In some cases, using a subquery can be the simplest way to produce the desired results, as illustrated in the following query.

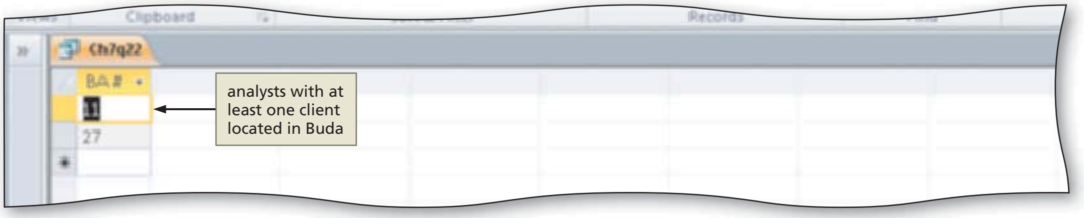
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.



```
SELECT [Business Analyst Number]
FROM [Client]
WHERE [City]='Buda'
```

query to select analyst numbers for those clients located in Buda

(a) Query



Clipboard
Records
Ch7q22

BA #
11
27

analysts with at least one client located in Buda

(b) Results

Figure 7–30

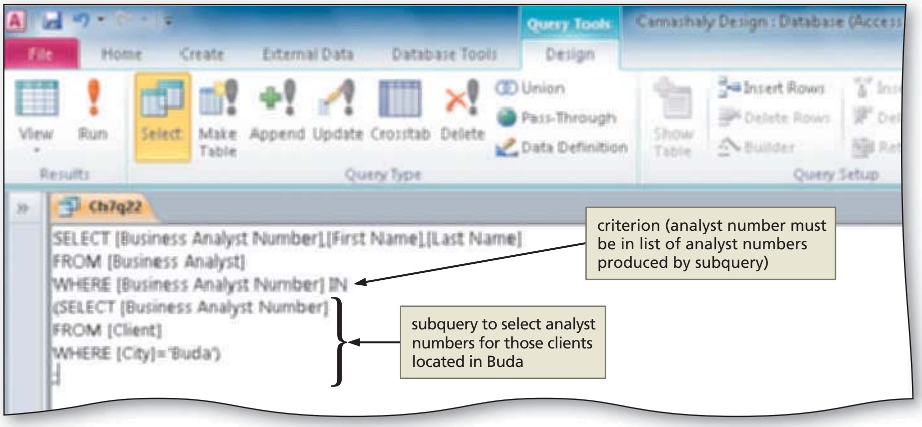
To Use a Subquery

The following steps use the query shown in Figure 7–30 as a subquery. This query selects analyst numbers from those records in the Client table on which the City is Buda. In other words, Camashaly Design can use this query to select analyst numbers for those analysts who have at least one client located in Buda.

After the subquery is evaluated, the outer query will select the analyst number, first name, and last name for those analysts whose analyst number is in the list produced by the subquery.

1

- Return to SQL view and delete the previous query.
- Type `SELECT [Business Analyst Number],[First Name],[Last Name]` as the first line of the command.
- Type `FROM [Business Analyst]` as the second line.
- Type `WHERE [Business Analyst Number] IN` as the third line.
- Type `(SELECT [Business Analyst Number]` as the fourth line.
- Type `FROM [Client]` as the fifth line.
- Type `WHERE [City]='Buda')` as the sixth line and type a semicolon (`;`) on the seventh line.
- View the results (Figure 7–31).



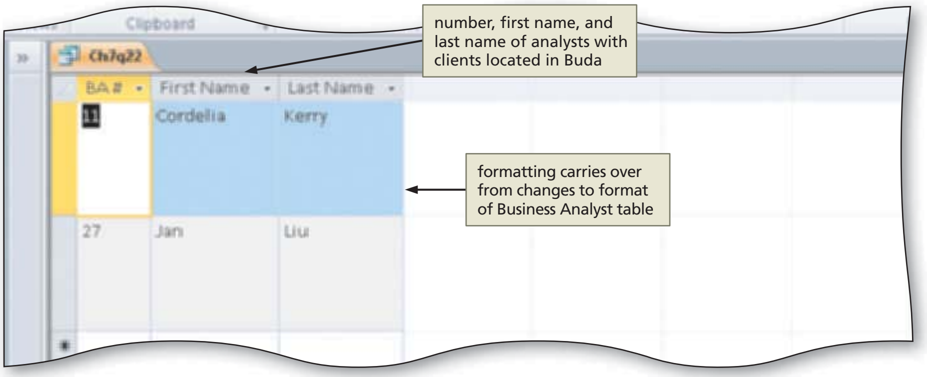
Query Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
View
Run
Select
Make Table
Append
Update
Crosstab
Delete
Union
Pass-Through
Data Definition
Show Table
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Builder
Results
Query Type
Query Setup
Ch7q22

```
SELECT [Business Analyst Number],[First Name],[Last Name]
FROM [Business Analyst]
WHERE [Business Analyst Number] IN
(SELECT [Business Analyst Number]
FROM [Client]
WHERE [City]='Buda')
```

criterion (analyst number must be in list of analyst numbers produced by subquery)

subquery to select analyst numbers for those clients located in Buda

(a) Query



Clipboard
Ch7q22

BA #	First Name	Last Name
11	Cordelia	Kerry
27	Jan	Liu

number, first name, and last name of analysts with clients located in Buda

formatting carries over from changes to format of Business Analyst table

(b) Results

Figure 7–31

2

- Save the query as Ch7q23. Return to the query.

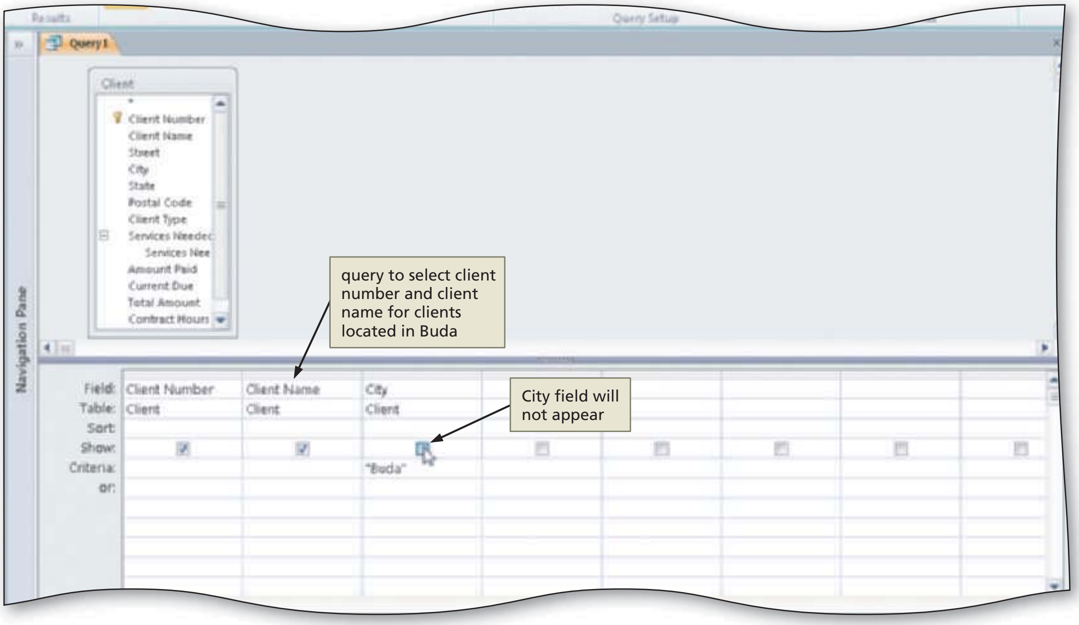
Using an IN Clause

The query in Figure 7–31 uses an IN clause with a subquery. You can also use an IN clause with a list as an alternative to an OR criterion when the OR criterion involves a single field. For example, to find clients whose city is Buda, Georgetown, or Granger, the criterion using IN would be City IN ('Buda','Georgetown','Granger'). The corresponding OR criterion would be City='Buda' OR City='Georgetown' OR City='Granger'. The choice of which one to use is a matter of personal preference.

You also can use this type of IN clause when creating queries in Design view. To use the criterion in the previous paragraph, for example, include the City field in the design grid and enter the criterion in the Criteria row.

Comparison with Access-Generated SQL

When you create a query in Design view, Access automatically creates a corresponding SQL query that is similar to the queries you have created in this chapter. The Access query shown in Figure 7–32, for example, was created in Design view and includes the Client Number and Client Name fields. The City field has a criterion (Buda), but the City field will not appear in the results.

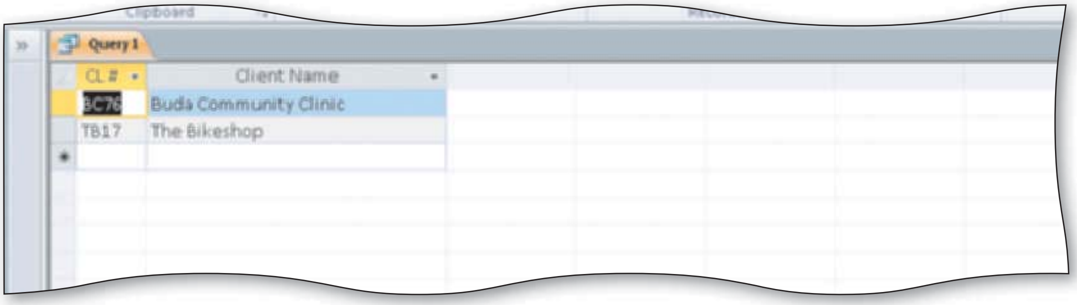


Field:	Client Number	Client Name	City
Table:	Client	Client	Client
Sort:			
Show:	☑	☑	☐
Criteria:			"Buda"
or:			

query to select client number and client name for clients located in Buda

City field will not appear

(a) Query



CL #	Client Name
BC76	Buda Community Clinic
TB17	The Bikeshop

(b) Results

Figure 7–32

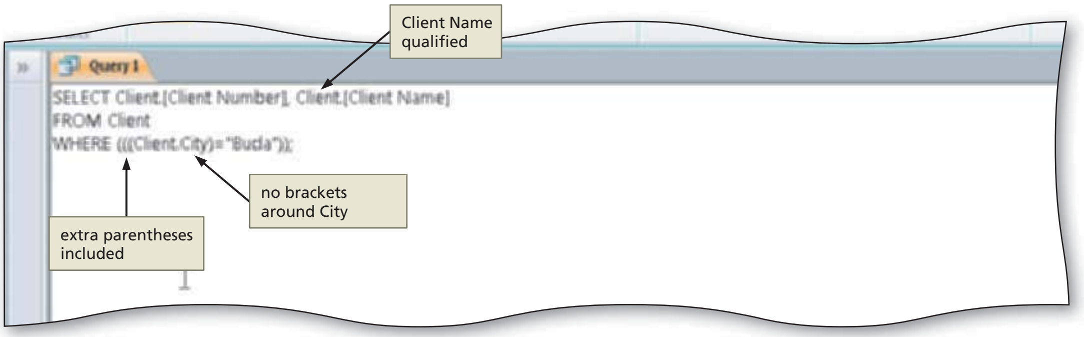
Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

BTW

Union, Pass-Through, and Data Definition Queries

There are three queries that can only be created in SQL view. The Union query combines fields from more than one table into one query result set. The Pass-Through query enables you to send SQL commands directly to ODBC (Open Database Connectivity) databases using the ODBC database's SQL syntax. The Data Definition query allows you to create or alter database tables or create indexes in Access directly.

The SQL query that Access generates in correspondence to the Design view query is shown in Figure 7–33. The query is very similar to the queries you have entered, but there are three slight differences. First, the fields are qualified (Client.[Client Number] and Client.[Client Name]), even though they do not need to be; only one table is involved in the query, so no qualification is necessary. Second, the City field is not enclosed in square brackets. The field legitimately is not enclosed in square brackets because there are no spaces or other special characters in the field name. Finally, there are extra parentheses in the criteria.



```
SELECT Client.[Client Number], Client.[Client Name]
FROM Client
WHERE (((Client.City)="Buda"));
```

Figure 7–33

Both the style used by Access and the style you have been using are legitimate. The choice of style is a personal preference.

Updating Data through SQL

Although SQL is often regarded as a language for querying databases, it also contains commands to update databases. You can add new records, update existing records, and delete records.

Plan Ahead

Determine any update operations to be performed. Examine the database to determine if records must be added, updated, and/or deleted.

- **Determine INSERT operations.** Determine whether new records need to be added. Determine to which table they should be added.
- **Determine UPDATE operations.** Determine changes that need to be made to existing records. Which fields need to be changed? Which tables contain these fields? What criteria identify the rows that need to be changed?
- **Determine DELETE operations.** Determine which tables contain records that are to be deleted. What criteria identify the rows that need to be deleted?

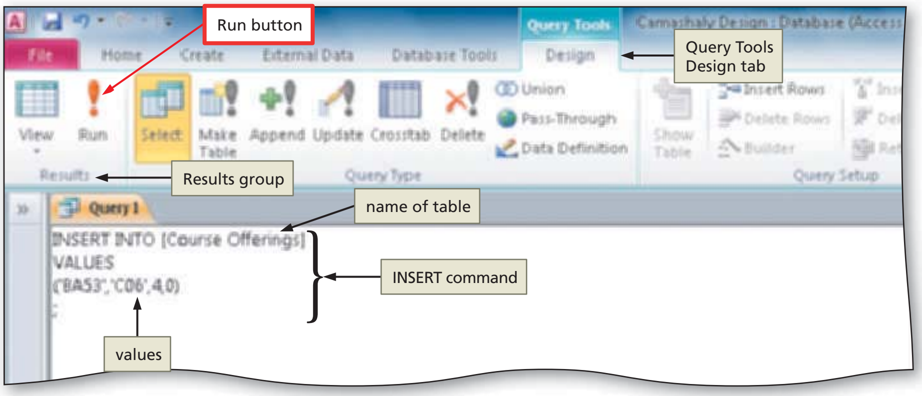
To Use an INSERT Command

You can add records to a table using the SQL INSERT command. The command consists of the words INSERT INTO followed by the name of the table into which the record is to be inserted. Next is the word VALUE followed by the values for the fields in the record. Values for Text fields must be enclosed within quotation marks. The following steps add a record that Camashaly Design wants to add to the Course Offerings table. The record is for client BA53 and Course C06, and indicates that the course will be offered for a total of 4 hours, of which 0 hours already have been spent.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

1

- If necessary, return to SQL view and delete the existing query.
- Type `INSERT INTO [Course Offerings]` as the first line of the command.
- Type `VALUES` as the second line.
- Type `('BA53','C06',4,0)` as the third line and type a semicolon (`;`) on the fourth line (Figure 7–34).



```
INSERT INTO [Course Offerings]
VALUES
('BA53','C06',4,0)
;
```

Run button
Query Tools Design tab
Results group
name of table
INSERT command
values
File
Home
Create
External Data
Database Tools
Design
Query Tools
Camashaly Design : Database (Access
View
Run
Select
Make Table
Append
Update
Crosstab
Delete
Union
Pass-Through
Data Definition
Show Table
Insert Rows
Delete Rows
Builder
Results
Query Type
Query Setup
Query1

Figure 7–34

2

- Run the query by clicking the Run button (Query Tools Design tab | Results group).
- When Access displays a message indicating the number of records to be inserted (appended), click the Yes button to insert the records.

Q&A I clicked the View button and didn't get the message. Do I need to click the Run button?

Yes. You are making a change to the database, so you must click the Run button, or the change will not be made.

Q&A How can I see if the record was actually inserted?

Use a SELECT query to view the records in the Course Offerings table.

3

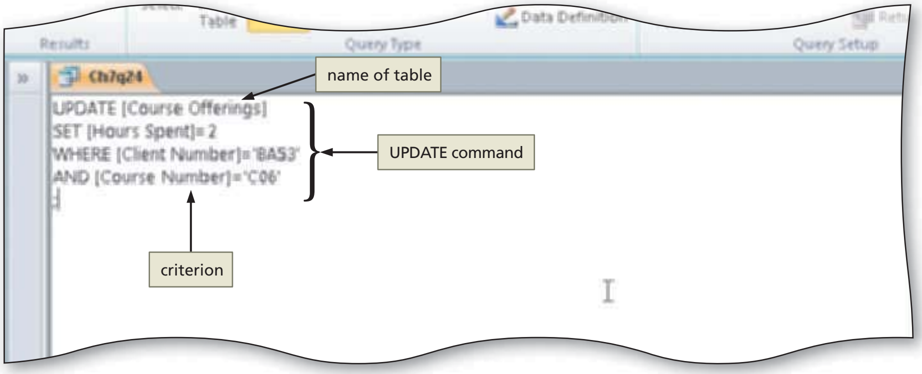
- Save the query as Ch7q24. Return to the query.

To Use an UPDATE Command

You can update records in SQL by using the UPDATE command. The command consists of UPDATE, followed by the name of the table in which records are to be updated. Next, the command contains one or more SET clauses, which consist of the word SET, followed by a field to be updated, an equal sign, and the new value. The SET clause indicates the change to be made. Finally, the query includes a WHERE clause. When you execute the command, all records in the indicated table that satisfy the criterion will be updated. The following steps use the SQL UPDATE command to perform an update requested by Camashaly Design. Specifically, they change the Hours Spent to 2 on all records in the Course Offerings table on which the client number is BA53 and the course number is C06. Because the combination of the Client Number and Course Number fields is the primary key, only one record will be updated.

1

- Delete the existing query.
- Type `UPDATE [Course Offerings]` as the first line of the command.
- Type `SET [Hours Spent]=2` as the second line.
- Type `WHERE [Client Number]='BA53'` as the third line.
- Type `AND [Course Number]='C06'` as the fourth line and type a semicolon (`;`) on the fifth line (Figure 7–35).



```
UPDATE [Course Offerings]
SET [Hours Spent]=2
WHERE [Client Number]='BA53'
AND [Course Number]='C06'
;
```

name of table
UPDATE command
criterion
Table
Data Definition
Results
Query Type
Query Setup
Ch7q24

Figure 7–35

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Q&A

Do I need to change a field to a specific value like 2?

No. You could use an expression. For example, to add $100 to the Current Due amount, the SET clause would be SET [Current Due]=[Current Due]+100.

2

- Run the query.
- When Access displays a message indicating the number of records to be updated, click the Yes button to update the records.

Q&A

How can I see if the update actually occurred?

Use a SELECT query to view the records in the Course Offerings table.

3

- Save the query as Ch7q25. Return to the query.

BTW

Certification

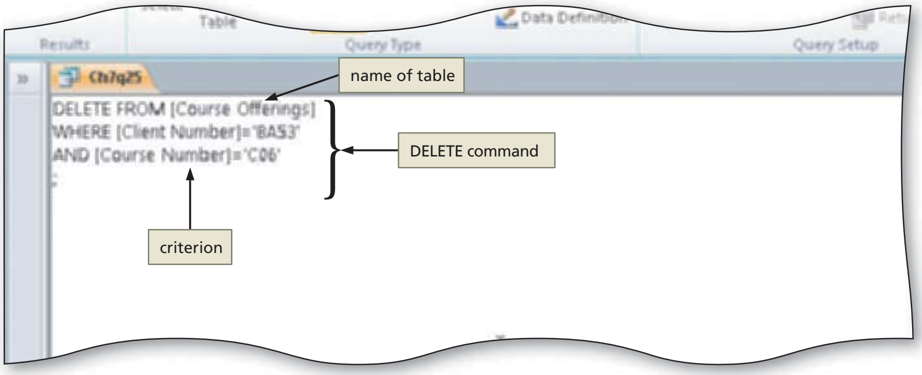
The Microsoft Office Specialist (MOS) program provides an opportunity for you to obtain a valuable industry credential — proof that you have the Access 2010 skills required by employers. For more information, visit the Access 2010 Certification Web page (scsite.com/ac2010/cert).

To Use a DELETE Command

You can delete records in SQL using the DELETE command. The command consists of DELETE FROM, followed by the name of the table from which records are to be deleted. Finally, you include a WHERE clause to specify the criteria. When you execute the command, all records in the indicated table that satisfy the criterion will be deleted. The following steps use the SQL DELETE command to delete all records in the Course Offerings table on which the client number is BA53 and the Course number is C06, as Camashaly Design has requested. Because the combination of the Client Number and Course Number fields is the primary key, only one record will be deleted.

1

- Delete the existing query.
- Type `DELETE FROM [Course Offerings]` as the first line of the command.
- Type `WHERE [Client Number]='BA53'` as the second line.
- Type `AND [Course Number]='C06'` as the third line and type a semicolon (`;`) on the fourth line (Figure 7–36).



```
DELETE FROM [Course Offerings]
WHERE [Client Number]='BA53'
AND [Course Number]='C06'
;
```

Figure 7–36

2

- Run the query.
- When Access displays a message indicating the number of records to be deleted, click the Yes button to delete the records.

Q&A

How can I see if the deletion actually occurred?

Use a SELECT query to view the records in the Course Offerings table.

3

- Save the query as Ch7q26. Return to the query.
- Close the query.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Restore the Font Size

Earlier you changed the font size from its default setting of 8 to 10 so the SQL queries would be easier to read. Unless you prefer to retain this new setting, you should change the setting back to the default. The following steps restore the font size to its default setting.

1. Click File on the Ribbon to open the Backstage view.
2. Click Options to display the Access Options dialog box.
3. Click Object Designers to display the Object Designer options.
4. In the Query design area, click the Size box arrow, and then click 8 in the list that appears to change the size back to 8.
5. Click the OK button to close the Access Options dialog box.

BTW

Quick Reference
For a table that lists how to complete the tasks covered in this book using the mouse, Ribbon, shortcut menu, and keyboard, see the Quick Reference Summary at the back of this book, or visit the Access 2010 Quick Reference Web page (scsite.com/ac2010/qr).

To Quit Access

The following steps quit Access.

1. Click the Close button on the right side of the title bar to quit Access.
2. If a Microsoft Access dialog box appears, click the Save button to save any changes made to the object since the last save.

Chapter Summary

In this chapter you have learned to create SQL queries; include fields in a query; use criteria involving both numeric and text fields as well as use compound criteria; use computed fields and rename the computation; sort the results of a query; use the built-in functions; group records in a query and also restrict the groups that appear in the results; join tables and restrict the records in a join; use subqueries; and use the INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE commands to update data. Finally, you looked at the SQL that is generated automatically by Access. The items listed below include all the new Access skills you have learned in this chapter.

1. Change the Font Size (AC 421)
2. Create a New SQL Query (AC 422)
3. Include Only Certain Fields (AC 423)
4. Prepare to Enter a New SQL Query (AC 425)
5. Include All Fields (AC 426)
6. Use a Criterion Involving a Numeric Field (AC 427)
7. Use a Comparison Operator (AC 428)
8. Use a Criterion Involving a Text Field (AC 429)
9. Use a Wildcard (AC 430)
10. Use a Compound Criterion Involving AND (AC 431)
11. Use a Compound Criterion Involving OR (AC 432)
12. Use NOT in a Criterion (AC 433)
13. Use a Computed Field (AC 434)
14. Sort the Results on a Single Field (AC 435)
15. Sort the Results on Multiple Fields (AC 437)
16. Sort the Results in Descending Order (AC 438)
17. Omit Duplicates When Sorting (AC 439)
18. Use a Built-In Function (AC 441)
19. Assign a Name to the Results of a Function (AC 442)
20. Use Multiple Functions in the Same Command (AC 443)
21. Use Grouping (AC 444)
22. Restrict the Groups that Appear (AC 446)
23. Join Tables (AC 448)
24. Restrict the Records in a Join (AC 449)
25. Join a Table to Itself (AC 450)
26. Use a Subquery (AC 452)
27. Use an INSERT Command (AC 454)
28. Use an UPDATE Command (AC 455)
29. Use a DELETE Command (AC 456)

SAM

If you have a SAM 2010 user profile, your instructor may have assigned an autogradable version of this assignment. If so, log into the SAM 2010 Web site at www.cengage.com/sam2010 to download the instruction and start files.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Learn It Online

Test your knowledge of chapter content and key terms.

Instructions: To complete the Learn It Online exercises, start your browser, click the Address bar, and then enter the Web address **scsite.com/ac2010/learn**. When the Access 2010 Learn It Online page is displayed, click the link for the exercise you want to complete and then read the instructions.

Chapter Reinforcement TF, MC, and SA

A series of true/false, multiple choice, and short answer questions that test your knowledge of the chapter content.

Flash Cards

An interactive learning environment where you identify chapter key terms associated with displayed definitions.

Practice Test

A series of multiple choice questions that test your knowledge of chapter content and key terms.

Who Wants To Be a Computer Genius?

An interactive game that challenges your knowledge of chapter content in the style of a television quiz show.

Wheel of Terms

An interactive game that challenges your knowledge of chapter key terms in the style of the television show *Wheel of Fortune*.

Crossword Puzzle Challenge

A crossword puzzle that challenges your knowledge of key terms presented in the chapter.

Apply Your Knowledge

Reinforce the skills and apply the concepts you learned in this chapter.

Using Criteria, Joining Tables, and Sorting in SQL Queries

Instructions: Start Access. If you are using the Microsoft Access 2010 Complete or the Microsoft Access 2010 Comprehensive text, open the Babbage CPA Firm database that you used in Chapter 6. Otherwise, see your instructor for information on accessing the files required in this book.

Perform the following tasks using SQL:

1. Find all clients whose amount paid amount is greater than $1,000. Display all fields in the query result. Save the query as Apply 7 Step 1 Query.
2. Find all clients whose amount paid amount or balance due amount is $0.00. Display the Client Number, Client Name, Amount Paid, and Balance Due fields in the query result. Save the query as Apply 7 Step 2 Query.
3. Find all records in the Client table where the postal code is not 27036. Display the Client Number, Client Name, and City in the query result. Save the query as Apply 7 Step 3 Query.
4. Display the Client Number, Client Name, Bookkeeper Number, First Name, and Last Name for all clients. Sort the records in ascending order by bookkeeper number and client number. Save the query as Apply 7 Step 4 Query.
5. Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Extend Your Knowledge

Extend the skills you learned in this chapter and experiment with new skills. You may need to use Help to complete the assignment.

Instructions: Start Access. Open the LawnYard Maintenance database. See the inside back cover of this book for instructions for downloading the Data Files for Students, or see your instructor for information on accessing the files required in this book.

LawnYard Maintenance is a small landscaping and maintenance company. The owners have created an Access database in which to store information about the customers they serve and the workers they employ. You will create SQL queries using the LIKE, IN, and BETWEEN operators. You also will create a query that uses a subquery.

Perform the following tasks:

1. Find all customers where the customer's first name is either Frances or Francis. Display the Customer Number, Last Name, First Name, and City fields in the result. Save the query as Extend 7 Step 1 Query.
2. Find all customers who live in Kingston or Anderson. Use the IN operator. Display the Customer Number, Last Name, First Name, and City fields in the result. Save the query as Extend 7 Step 2 Query.
3. Find all customers whose amount paid amount is greater than or equal to $200 and less than or equal to $300. Use the BETWEEN operator. (*Hint*: Use Help to solve this problem.) Display the Customer Number, Last Name, First Name, and Amount Paid fields in the result. Save the query as Extend 7 Step 3 Query.
4. Use a subquery to find all workers whose customers are located in Anderson. Display the worker number, first name, and last name. Save the query as Extend 7 Step 4 Query.
5. Submit the revised database and in the format specified by your instructor.

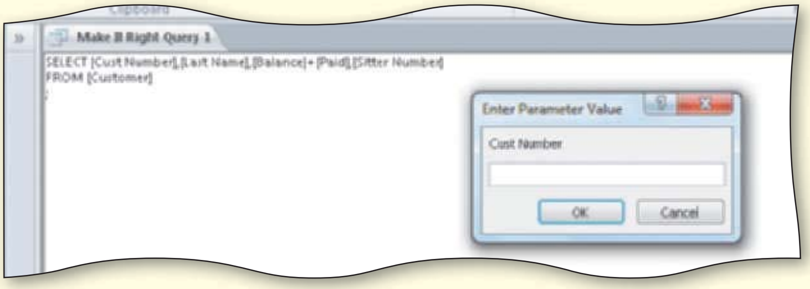
Make It Right

Analyze a database, correct all errors, and/or improve the design.

Correcting Errors in the Query Design

Instructions: Start Access. Open the College Pet Sitters database. See the inside back cover of this book for instructions for downloading the Data Files for Students, or see your instructor for information on accessing the files required in this book.

College Pet Sitters is a database maintained by a small pet-sitting business owned by college students. The queries shown in Figure 7–37 contain a number of errors that need to be corrected before the queries run properly. The query shown in Figure 7–37a displays the Enter Parameter Value dialog box, but this is not a parameter query. Also, the owners wanted to assign the name, Total Amount, to the Balance + Paid calculation. Save the query with your changes.



```
SELECT [Cust Number],[Last Name],[Balance]+[Paid],[Sitter Number]
FROM [Customer]
;
```

(a) Incorrect Field Name Query

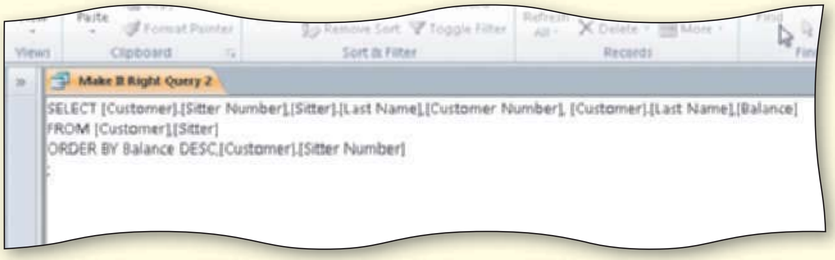
Continued >

Figure 7–37

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Make It Right *continued*

When you view the results for the query shown in Figure 7–37b, you get 30 records. You know this is wrong. Also, the query did not sort correctly. The query results should be sorted first by sitter number and then by descending balance. Correct the errors and save the query with your changes.



```
SELECT [Customer].[Sitter Number],[Sitter].[Last Name],[Customer Number], [Customer].[Last Name],[Balance]
FROM [Customer],[Sitter]
ORDER BY Balance DESC,[Customer].[Sitter Number]
;
```

(b) Incorrect Join and Sort Query

Figure 7–37

Change the database properties, as specified by your instructor. Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

In the Lab

Design, create, modify, and/or use a database following the guidelines, concepts, and skills presented in this chapter. The assignments are listed in order of increasing difficulty.

Lab 1: Querying the ECO Clothesline Database Using SQL

Problem: The management of ECO Clothesline wants to learn more about SQL and has determined a number of questions it wants SQL to answer. You must obtain answers to the questions posed by management.

Instructions: If you are using the Microsoft Access 2010 Complete or the Microsoft Access 2010 Comprehensive text, open the ECO Clothesline database that you used in Chapter 6. Otherwise, see your instructor for information on accessing the files required in this book.

Perform the following tasks:

1. Find all customers where the customer type is SAL. Include the Customer Number, Customer Name, and Sales Rep Number fields in the result. Save the query as Lab 7-1 Step 1 Query.
2. Find all customers located in Tennessee (TN) with a paid amount greater than $1,500.00. Include the Customer Number, Customer Name, and Amount Paid fields in the result. Save the query as Lab 7-1 Step 2 Query.
3. Find all customers whose names begin with the letter, C. Include the Customer Number, Customer Name, and City fields in the result. Save the query as Lab 7-1 Step 3 Query.
4. List all cities in descending order. Each city should appear only once. Save the query as Lab 7-1 Step 4 Query.
5. Display the customer number, name, sales rep number, first name, and last name for all customers. Sort the results in ascending order by sales rep number and customer number. Save the query as Lab 7-1 Step 5 Query.
6. List the average balance amount grouped by sales rep number. Name the average balance as Average Billed. Save the query as Lab 7-1 Step 6 Query.
7. Find the customer number and name for every pair of customers who are located in the same city. Save the query as Lab 7-1 Step 7 Query.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

8. Find the customer numbers, names, and sales rep numbers for all customers that have open orders. Use the alias O for the Open Orders table and C for the Customer table. Each customer should appear only once. Save the query as Lab 7-1 Step 8 Query.
9. Use a subquery to find all sales reps whose customers are located in Pineville. Save the query as Lab 7-1 Step 9 Query.
10. Find the average balance amount for sales rep 44. Save the query as Lab 7-1 Step 10 Query.
11. Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

In the Lab

Lab 2: Querying the Walburg Energy Alternatives Database Using SQL

Problem: The manager of the Walburg Energy Alternatives store would like to learn more about SQL and has determined a number of questions he wants SQL to answer. You must obtain answers to the questions posed by the manager.

Instructions: If you are using the Microsoft Access 2010 Complete or the Microsoft Access 2010 Comprehensive text, open the Walburg Energy Alternatives database that you used in Chapter 6. Otherwise, see your instructor for information on accessing the files required in this book.

Perform the following tasks:

1. Find all records in the Item table where the difference between the cost of the item and the selling price of the item is less than $0.25 (25 cents). Display the item number, description, cost, and selling price in the query result. Save the query as Lab 7-2 Step 1 Query.
2. Display the item number, description, and profit (selling price – cost) for all items. Name the computed field Profit. Save the query as Lab 7-2 Step 2 Query.
3. Find all items where the description begins with the letter, W. Include the item number and description in the result. Save the query as Lab 7-2 Step 3 Query.
4. Display the vendor name, item number, description, and cost for all items where the number on hand is less than 10. Sort the results in ascending order by vendor name and description. Save the query as Lab 7-2 Step 4 Query.
5. Find the average cost by vendor. Name the computed field Average Cost. Save the query as Lab 7-2 Step 5 Query.
6. Find the total number of reordered items for each item in the Reorder table. Name the computed field Total Ordered. Include the item number in the result. Save the query as Lab 7-2 Step 6 Query.
7. Add the following record to the Reorder table.

Item Number	Date Ordered	Number Ordered
8590	4/12/2012	3

   Save the steps to add the record as Lab 7-2 Step 7 Query.

8. Update the Number Ordered field to 5 for those records where the Item Number is 8590 and the date ordered is 4/12/2012. Save the steps to update the record as Lab 7-2 Step 8 Query.
9. Delete all records where the Item Number is 8590 and the date ordered is 4/12/2012. Save the steps to delete the record as Lab 7-2 Step 9 Query.
10. Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

In the Lab

Lab 3: Querying the Philamar Training Database Using SQL

Problem: The management team of Philamar Training would like to learn more about SQL and has determined a number of questions it wants SQL to answer. You must obtain answers to the questions posed by management.

Instructions: If you are using the Microsoft Access 2010 Complete or the Microsoft Access 2010 Comprehensive text, open the Philamar Training database that you used in Chapter 6. Otherwise, see your instructor for information on accessing the files required in this book. Save each query using a format similar to the following: Lab 7-3 Part 1a Query, Lab 7-3 Part 2a Query, and so on. Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

Instructions Part 1: For all the queries in Part 1, include the Client Number, Client Name, Amount Paid, and Current Due fields in the query results. Create SQL queries that answer the following questions: (a) Which clients are located in cities that start with the letter, C? (b) Which clients have a client type other than MAN? (c) Which clients have a current due amount of $0.00 and an amount paid amount of $0.00? (d) Which clients have an amount paid amount between $3,000.00 and $6,000.00? (e) For each client, what is the total of the current due and amount paid? Display the total in the result as Total Amount.

Instructions Part 2: (a) Create a SQL query that includes the Trainer Number, First Name, Last Name, Client Number, Client Name, and Amount Paid fields. Sort the records in ascending order by trainer number and client number. (b) Restrict the records retrieved in part (a) to only those clients whose client type is MAN. (c) Find the client numbers and names for every pair of clients located in the same city. (d) In which cities does Philamar have clients? List each city only once.

Instructions Part 3: Create queries to calculate the following statistics: (a) How many clients does Philamar have, and what is the total of their amount paid amounts? Assign Client Count and Sum Paid as the names for the calculations. (b) What is the total current due amount and total amount paid amount for all clients grouped by trainer? Assign Sum Paid and Sum Due as the names for the calculations. (c) Restrict the records retrieved in (b) to those on which the sum of the current due is greater than $1,000.

Cases and Places

Apply your creative thinking and problem solving skills to design and implement a solution.

See the inside back cover of this book for instructions on downloading the Data Files for Students, or contact your instructor for information about accessing the required files.

1: Querying the Chamber of Commerce Database

Academic

If you are using the Microsoft Access 2010 Complete or the Microsoft Access 2010 Comprehensive text, open the Chamber of Commerce database that you used in Chapter 6. Otherwise, see your instructor for more information about accessing the required files. One of your courses at school requires that you learn to use SQL. The Chamber has agreed that you can use the database and create

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

SQL queries. Use the concepts and techniques presented in this chapter to create SQL queries for the following:

a. Find the advertiser names and addresses of all advertisers located on Berton Street.
b. Find the advertiser number, advertiser name, balance, and amount paid for all advertisers whose balance is less than $100 and whose amount paid is $0.00.
c. Find the total of the balance and amount paid amounts for each advertiser. Show the advertiser number, advertiser name, and total amount.
d. Use a subquery to find all ad reps whose advertisers have an advertiser type of RET. Display the ad rep number, first name, and last name.
e. Find the ad rep for each advertiser. List the ad rep number, first name, last name, advertiser number, advertiser name, and balance. Restrict retrieval to only those records where the balance is greater than $200. Sort the results in ascending order by ad rep number and advertiser number.
f. Add a record to the Active Accounts table for advertiser number G346. The advertiser would like to place a quarter-page ad for the month of Jun.
g. Change the category code to 3 for all records in the Active Accounts table where the advertiser number is G346 and the ad month is Jun.
h. Delete all records in the Active Accounts table where the advertiser number is G346 and the ad month is Jun.

Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

2: Querying the Consignment Database

Personal

If you are using the Microsoft Access 2010 Complete or the Microsoft Access 2010 Comprehensive text, open the Consignment database that you used in Chapter 6. Otherwise, see your instructor for more information about accessing the required files. You recently attended a seminar on the use of Access databases by nonprofit organizations. Now you would like to learn SQL to enhance your understanding of databases. Use the concepts and techniques presented in this chapter to create SQL queries for the following:

a. Find the item number and description of all items that contain the word, Kitchen.
b. Find the item number, description, condition, and date of all items with a date posted prior to March 1, 2012.
c. Find the total price (price * quantity) of each item available for sale. Show the item number, item description, and total price.
d. Find the seller of each item. Show the seller's first name and last name as well as the item number, item description, price, quantity, and date posted. Sort the results by item description within seller last name.
e. Modify the query you created in Step d to restrict retrieval to those items with a price less than $10.00.
f. Find all items in good or excellent condition. Use the IN operator and display all fields in the query result.
g. Find all items posted between March 4, 2012, and March 7, 2012. The user should see all fields in the query result.

Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

Continued >

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Cases and Places *continued*

3: Querying the Senior Care Database

Professional

If you are using the Microsoft Access 2010 Complete or the Microsoft Access 2010 Comprehensive text, open the Senior Care database that you used in Chapter 6. Otherwise, see your instructor for more information about accessing the required files. You and your co-owner are interested in learning SQL. Use the concepts and techniques presented in this chapter to create SQL queries for the following:

a. Find the first names, last names, and addresses of all clients whose first name begins with the letters, Fr.

b. Find the total of the balance and amount paid amounts for each client. Show the client number, client first name, client last name, and total amount.

c. Restrict the records retrieved in Step b to only those records where the total amount is greater than $1,000.

d. Find the helper for each client. List the helper number, helper last name, helper first name, client number, client last name, and client first name. Assign aliases to the Client and Helper tables. Sort the results in ascending order by helper number and client number.

e. Restrict the records retrieved in Step d to only those helpers who speak Spanish.

f. Find the average balance amount grouped by helper number.

g. Restrict the records retrieved in Step f to only those groups where the average balance amount is greater than $125.

Submit the revised database in the format specified by your instructor.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Appendix A

Project Planning Guidelines

Using Project Planning Guidelines

The process of communicating specific information to others is a learned, rational skill. Computers and software, especially Microsoft Office 2010, can help you develop ideas and present detailed information to a particular audience.

Using Microsoft Office 2010, you can create projects such as Word documents, PowerPoint presentations, Excel spreadsheets, and Access databases. Productivity software such as Microsoft Office 2010 minimizes much of the laborious work of drafting and revising projects. Some communicators handwrite ideas in notebooks, others compose directly on the computer, and others have developed unique strategies that work for their own particular thinking and writing styles.

No matter what method you use to plan a project, follow specific guidelines to arrive at a final product that presents information correctly and effectively (Figure A–1). Use some aspects of these guidelines every time you undertake a project, and others as needed in specific instances. For example, in determining content for a project, you may decide that a chart communicates trends more effectively than a paragraph of text. If so, you would create this graphical element and insert it in an Excel spreadsheet, a Word document, or a PowerPoint slide.

Determine the Project's Purpose

Begin by clearly defining why you are undertaking this assignment. For example, you may want to track monetary donations collected for your club's fund-raising drive. Alternatively, you may be urging students to vote for a particular candidate in the next election. Once you clearly understand the purpose of your task, begin to draft ideas of how best to communicate this information.

Analyze Your Audience

Learn about the people who will read, analyze, or view your work. Where are they employed? What are their educational backgrounds? What are their expectations? What questions do they have?

PROJECT PLANNING GUIDELINES

1. DETERMINE THE PROJECT'S PURPOSE
Why are you undertaking the project?

2. ANALYZE YOUR AUDIENCE
Who are the people who will use your work?

3. GATHER POSSIBLE CONTENT
What information exists, and in what forms?

4. DETERMINE WHAT CONTENT TO PRESENT TO YOUR AUDIENCE
What information will best communicate the project's purpose to your audience?

Figure A–1

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Design experts suggest drawing a mental picture of these people or finding photos of people who fit this profile so that you can develop a project with the audience in mind.

By knowing your audience members, you can tailor a project to meet their interests and needs. You will not present them with information they already possess, and you will not omit the information they need to know.

Example: Your assignment is to raise the profile of your college's nursing program in the community. How much do they know about your college and the nursing curriculum? What are the admission requirements? How many of the applicants admitted complete the program? What percent pass the state board exams?

Gather Possible Content

Rarely are you in a position to develop all the material for a project. Typically, you would begin by gathering existing information that may reside in spreadsheets or databases. Web sites, pamphlets, magazine and newspaper articles, and books could provide insights of how others have approached your topic. Personal interviews often provide perspectives not available by any other means. Consider video and audio clips as potential sources for material that might complement or support the factual data you uncover.

Determine What Content to Present to Your Audience

Experienced designers recommend writing three or four major ideas you want an audience member to remember after reading or viewing your project. It also is helpful to envision your project's endpoint, the key fact you wish to emphasize. All project elements should lead to this ending point.

As you make content decisions, you also need to think about other factors. Presentation of the project content is an important consideration. For example, will your brochure be printed on thick, colored paper or posted on the Web? Will your PowerPoint presentation be viewed in a classroom with excellent lighting and a bright projector, or will it be viewed on a notebook computer monitor? Determine relevant time factors, such as the length of time to develop the project, how long readers will spend reviewing your project, or the amount of time allocated for your speaking engagement. Your project will need to accommodate all of these constraints.

Decide whether a graph, photo, or artistic element can express or emphasize a particular concept. The right hemisphere of the brain processes images by attaching an emotion to them, so audience members are more apt to recall these graphics long term rather than just reading text.

As you select content, be mindful of the order in which you plan to present information. Readers and audience members generally remember the first and last pieces of information they see and hear, so you should place the most important information at the top or bottom of the page.

Summary

When creating a project, it is beneficial to follow some basic guidelines from the outset. By taking some time at the beginning of the process to determine the project's purpose, analyze the audience, gather possible content, and determine what content to present to the audience, you can produce a project that is informative, relevant, and effective.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Appendix B

Publishing Office 2010 Web Pages Online

With Office 2010 programs, you use the Save As command in the Backstage view to save a Web page to a Web site, network location, or FTP site. **File Transfer Protocol** (**FTP**) is an Internet standard that allows computers to exchange files with other computers on the Internet.

You should contact your network system administrator or technical support staff at your Internet access provider to determine if their Web server supports Web folders, FTP, or both, and to obtain necessary permissions to access the Web server.

Using an Office Program to Publish Office 2010 Web Pages

When publishing online, someone first must assign the necessary permissions for you to publish the Web page. If you are granted access to publish online, you must obtain the Web address of the Web server, a user name, and possibly a password that allows you to connect to the Web server. The steps in this appendix assume that you have access to an online location to which you can publish a Web page.

To Connect to an Online Location

To publish a Web page online, you first must connect to the online location. To connect to an online location using Windows 7, you would perform the following steps.

1. Click the Start button on the Windows 7 taskbar to display the Start menu.
2. Click Computer in the right pane of the Start menu to open the Computer window.
3. Click the 'Map network drive' button on the toolbar to display the Map Network Drive dialog box. (If the 'Map network drive' button is not visible on the toolbar, click the 'Display additional commands' button on the toolbar and then click 'Map network drive' in the list to display the Map Network Drive dialog box.)
4. Click the 'Connect to a Web site that you can use to store your documents and pictures' link (Map Network Drive dialog box) to start the Add Network Location wizard.
5. Click the Next button (Add Network Location dialog box).
6. Click 'Choose a custom network location' and then click the Next button.
7. Type the Internet or network address specified by your network or system administrator in the text box and then click the Next button.
8. Click 'Log on anonymously' to deselect the check box, type your user name in the User name text box, and then click the Next button.
9. If necessary, enter the name you want to assign to this online location and then click the Next button.
10. Click to deselect the Open this network location when I click Finish check box, and then click the Finish button.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

11. Click the Cancel button to close the Map Network Drive dialog box.
12. Close the Computer window.

TO SAVE A WEB PAGE TO AN ONLINE LOCATION

The online location now can be accessed easily from Windows programs, including Microsoft Office programs. After creating a Microsoft Office file you wish to save as a Web page, you must save the file to the online location to which you connected in the previous steps. To save a Microsoft Word document as a Web page, for example, and publish it to the online location, you would perform the following steps.

1. Click File on the Ribbon to display the Backstage view and then click Save As in the Backstage view to display the Save As dialog box.
2. Type the Web page file name in the File name text box (Save As dialog box). Do not press the ENTER key because you do not want to close the dialog box at this time.
3. Click the 'Save as type' box arrow and then click Web Page to select the Web Page format.
4. If necessary, scroll to display the name of the online location in the navigation pane.
5. Double-click the online location name in the navigation pane to select that location as the new save location and display its contents in the right pane.
6. If a dialog box appears prompting you for a user name and password, type the user name and password in the respective text boxes and then click the Log On button.
7. Click the Save button (Save As dialog box).

The Web page now has been published online. To view the Web page using a Web browser, contact your network or system administrator for the Web address you should use to connect to the Web page.

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Index

A

Access, **OFF 9**
  See also databases
  elements common to Office programs, OFF 23–24
  exporting data to other applications, AC 110–114
  Help, OFF 41–43, AC 62
  importing data from other applications to, AC 38–42
  quitting, AC 26, AC 60
  Ribbon, OFF 23–24
  starting, AC 12, AC 27, AC 214–215, AC 276
  unique elements in, OFF 22–23
  window, Navigation Pane, work area, AC 15
Access 2010, **OFF 8**
Access work area, **AC 15**, **OFF 22**
accounts, user, **OFF 5**
action queries, **AC 161**
actions, undoing, AC 251, AC 390
active tabs, **OFF 26–27**
Add & Delete group, Table Tools Fields tab, AC 282
adding
  calculated fields to tables, AC 159–161
  controls to forms, AC 293–294, AC 297–299
  criteria to join queries, AC 114–115
  fields, AC 155
  fields in reports, AC 382–384
  fields to design grid, AC 79–80
  groups in reports, AC 218
  records, AC 141–144
  records to tables, AC 23–25, AC 28–29
  sorts in reports, AC 219
  special fields, AC 277–279
  text boxes to reports or forms, AC 358–360
  totals, subtotals, AC 56, AC 221–222, AC 387–392
addition, in computed fields, AC 434
Address bar, **OFF 15**
Advanced Filter/Sort, AC 153–154
Aero interface (Windows 7), OFF 2–3, OFF 18
aggregate functions, **AC 119**, AC 441
aliases, **AC 450**
aligning form controls, AC 295–296
allowable values, **AC 167**
alternate colors, **AC 380**, AC 399
ampersand (&) operator, **AC 358**
AND, using in compound criterion, AC 431
AND criterion, **AC 92**
AND operator, **AC 94**
angle brackets (<>), comparison operators, AC 91
append queries, using, **AC 164**
application software
  See also specific program
  described, **OFF 2**
applications
  exporting data from Access to other, AC 110–114
  importing data to Access from, AC 38–42
arguments
  described, AC 399
  and functions, **AC 394**
Arrange tab, Report Layout Tools, AC 230–231
AS, in computed fields, AC 434
ascending order of records, AC 194–195
assigning conditional values, AC 394–398
asterisks (*), query wildcard, **AC 80**, **AC 430**
attached labels, **AC 245**
Attachment data type, AC 278
Attachment fields, entering data in, AC 289–291
Attachment tool, Controls group, AC 357
attachments
  saving, AC 316–317
  viewing, AC 292
audience
  analyzing, APP 1–2
  designing reports and forms for, AC 214
AutoCorrect options, AC 37
automatically updated properties, **AC 58**
AutoNumber data type, AC 343
AutoPlay window, OFF 14
AVG function, AC 119, AC 120, AC 441

B

background colors, changing form's, AC 299–300
backing up (database), **AC 61**
backslash (\) and input mask characters, AC 282
Backstage view
  closing, AC 59
  closing files using, OFF 22
  obtaining Help from, OFF 44–46
  opening, OFF 19, OFF 22
  opening recent Office files using, OFF 36
backup copy, **AC 61**
Basic interface (Windows 7), OFF 2–3
BETWEEN operator, **AC 94**
binding (controls), **AC 358**
border styles, changing, AC 398
bound controls
  converting unbound controls to, AC 358
  described, **AC 221**
Bound Object Frame tool, Controls group, AC 357
Browse for Themes command, AC 239
built-in functions, using, AC 441–444
Button tool, Controls group, AC 357
buttons, removing from Quick Access Toolbar, OFF 30

C

calculated controls
  creating, adding to reports or forms, AC 358–360
  described, **AC 221**
calculated fields, **AC 115**
  adding to tables, **AC 159–161**
  using in queries, AC 116–118
calculations
  See also calculated controls, calculated fields
  aggregate functions, AC 119, AC 441
  assigning name to results of functions, AC 442
  crosstab queries, AC 124–126
  generally, AC 115–116
  grouping, AC 122–123
  in reports, AC 386
  statistics, AC 119–122
Can Grow property, AC 373–374, AC 386
Can Shrink property, AC 374

captions, changing in queries, AC 118
cascading deletes, updates, AC 186
certification, Microsoft Office Specialist (MOS), AC 62, AC 255, AC 325, AC 456
changing
  case of characters, AC 168
  conditional formatting, AC 227
  contents of fields, AC 170–171
  data in tables, AC 25–26
  database properties, AC 59–60
  screen resolution, OFF 32–34
  size mode, AC 309
  subforms, AC 305–307
  tab order, tab stops, AC 314
  table structure, AC 20–22
characters
  input mask, AC 282
  wildcards, using in queries, AC 430
Chart tool, Controls group, AC 357
Check Box tool, Controls group, AC 357
clearing
  filters, AC 150
  form filters, AC 254
  report filters, AC 229
closing
  Backstage view, AC 59
  databases, AC 62
  files using Backstage view, OFF 22
  reports, AC 380
  tables, AC 26
collapsing folders, OFF 17
colors
  alternate, AC 380, AC 399
  background, AC 299–300
  changing form label, AC 309–312
  changing in datasheets, AC 181
  fonts, AC 310
  report header, AC 393
  theme, AC 238, AC 239
  Theme vs. Standard, AC 375
columns, resizing, AC 29–30, AC 42, AC 54–56
Combo Box tool, Controls group, AC 357
Command bar, **OFF 15**
commands
  See also specific command
  adding to Quick Access Toolbar, OFF 30
  described, **OFF 10**
  on Ribbon, OFF 23–24
  SQL, **AC 420**, AC 423–424
  using multiple functions in the same, AC 443–444
comma-separated values (CSV) file, AC 113
comments, adding to datasheets, AC 286
common dialog boxes, **OFF 9**
Communicator, **OFF 8**
compact (database), **AC 61**
comparison operators
  and conditional formatting, AC 225–226
  in queries, AC 427–429
  using in criterion, **AC 91**
compound criterion, **AC 92**, **AC 431**, AC 449
computed fields, **AC 115**, **AC 159**, AC 434
computers, logging on to, OFF 6–7
concatenate, concatenation, **AC 358**
conditional formatting, **AC 224**
  changing, AC 227
  controls, AC 224–227
conditional values, assigning, AC 394–398
connecting to online location, APP 3–4
context-sensitive help in SQL, AC 423
Control group tools, Design tab, AC 357
control layouts, **AC 249**
Control Source property, AC 395
Control Wizards button, AC 368
controls, **AC 221**
  adding to forms, AC 293–294, AC 297–299
  aligning form, AC 295–296
  changing appearance of, AC 374–375
  changing format of, AC 248
  conditionally formatting, AC 224–227
  creating calculated, AC 358–360
  form, AC 245–246
  formatting, grouping, AC 361–363
  modifying grouped, AC 364–365
  modifying multiple, AC 365–367
  moving, AC 249
  naming, AC 400
  placing in control layout, AC 245–246
  report, AC 221–230
  tools, AC 356
  types of, AC 221
converting
  Bitmap Image to Picture (Device Independent Bitmap), AC 289
  unbound to bound controls, AC 358
copying
  and pasting SQL commands, AC 426
  table structures, AC 342
COUNT function, AC 119, AC 441, AC 443
creating
  Access databases, OFF 19–21
  calculated controls, AC 358–360
  crosstab queries, AC 123–126
  databases, AC 13, OFF 37
  folders, OFF 13–15
  folders within folders, OFF 16
  forms, AC 48–50, AC 141–144, AC 243–244
  forms for queries, AC 108–110
  forms in Design view, AC 292–293
  lookup fields, AC 156–158
  mailing labels, AC 255–259
  multitable reports, AC 231–235
  parameter queries, AC 86–92
  queries, AC 77–82
  queries for reports, AC 347–350
  reports, AC 51–58, AC 381–399
  reports in Design view, AC 347–356
  reports in Layout view, AC 236–238
  reports involving joins, AC 106–108
  simple forms with datasheets, AC 322–325
  SQL queries, AC 422, AC 425
  summary reports, AC 242
  table relationships, AC 233
  tables, AC 15–20, AC 32–37, AC 343–344
  top-values queries, AC 99–100
criterion, **AC 46**
  adding to join queries, AC 114–115
  compound, AC 92, **AC 431**, AC 449
  simple, AC 428
  using comparison operators in, AC 91
  using in calculating statistics, AC 121–122
  using in queries, AC 46–47, AC 80–82, AC 85–86, AC 427–429
  using numbers in, AC 90
crosstab queries
  creating, using, AC 124–126
  described, **AC 123**
Currency data type, **AC 9**, AC 20
currency symbols, AC 20

customizing
 desktop, OFF 7
 mailing labels, AC 255–259
 Navigation Pane, AC 127
 Quick Access Toolbar, OFF 30

D

data
 exporting from Access, AC 110–114
 handling inconsistency, AC 193
 importing and linking, AC 345
 text, using in criterion, AC 80–82
 updating through SQL, AC 454–455
 validating entry, AC 162
Data Definition query, AC 454
data types, **AC 9**
 See also specific data type
 available in Access (table), AC 10
 determining, AC 5
database design, **AC 5**
database maintenance, **AC 138**
database management system, **OFF 9**
database management systems (DBMSs), **AC 2**
database properties
 changing, AC 59–60
 described, **AC 58**
databases, **AC 2**, **OFF 9**
 backup and recovery, AC 60–62
 changing structure of, AC 154–161
 closing, AC 62
 compacting, AC 61
 creating, AC 13, OFF 19–21, OFF 37
 creating using templates, AC 14
 design guidelines, AC 5–6
 lookup fields, creating, AC 156–158
 maintenance, AC 138
 making mass changes, AC 161–165
 opening, AC 27, AC 62, AC 77, OFF 36
 overview, components of, AC 2–12
 queries. *See* queries
 records. *See* records
 referential integrity, AC 185–192
 relational, **AC 3**
 saving with different names, OFF 38–39
 searching in, AC 144–145
 SQL. *See* SQL (Structured Query Language)
 tables. *See* tables
Datasheet Formatting dialog box, AC 182
Datasheet view, **AC 15**, AC 48
 adding fields in, AC 282
 creating tables in, AC 343–344
 viewing pictures and attachments in, AC 292
datasheets, **AC 23**
 changing appearance, formatting of, ACC 179–182
 changing row, column size, AC 286–287
 comments, AC 286
 creating simple forms with, AC 322–323
 in forms, AC 322–325
 grouping, AC 444–446
 including totals in, AC 177–179
 ordering records, AC 193–195
 resizing columns in, AC 29–30, AC 42
 sorting, AC 435–440
date
 adding to forms, AC 246–247
 adding to reports, AC 378–379
Date and Time button, AC 246–247
date fields in queries, AC 322
date formats in criterion, AC 449
Date Picker, AC 285
Date/Time data type, AC 278, AC 279
Date/Time fields, AC 285, AC 319–320
default values, specifying, AC 167
DELETE command, using, AC 456
DELETE operations, AC 454
delete queries
 described, **AC 163**
 using, AC 163–164
deleting
 See also removing
 cascading deletes, AC 186
 databases, database objects, AC 62
 fields, AC 155
 files, folders, OFF 41
 records, AC 20, AC 26, AC 147
delimited files, **AC 113**
delimiter described, **AC 113**
dependencies, objects, AC 318–319
DESC operator (sort order), AC 435, AC 438
design grid
 adding fields to, AC 79–80
 clearing, AC 95
 sorting and, AC 94
Design view, **AC 15**, AC 21–22, AC 216
 creating forms in, AC 292–293
 creating queries in, AC 78–81
 creating reports in, AC 347–356
 creating tables in, AC 33–37, AC 343–344
 opening, AC 24
 opening subreports in, AC 371
 for reports, AC 53, AC 376
 saving queries from, AC 82
designing
 databases, AC 5–12
 forms, AC 245
 reports, AC 216
Dialog Box Launcher, **OFF 24**
displaying
 different tabs on Ribbon, OFF 27
 query results, AC 81
 Ribbon, OFF 28
 tables in relationships, AC 346
DISTINCT operator (sorting), **AC 440**
division, in computed fields, AC 434
documents, tabbed, AC 58
dragging
 files to move, OFF 40
 to resize windows, OFF 43
drives, paths and folders (table), OFF 13
duplicates, omitting from queries, AC 97–98

E

e-mail, OFF 8
Enhanced ScreenTip, **OFF 24**, OFF 48
error messages, SQL, AC 445
Excel
 comma-separated values (CSV) file, AC 113
 exporting Access data to, AC 110–114
 importing worksheets into Access, AC 38–42
Excel 2010, **OFF 8**
expanding folders, OFF 17
exporting
 data from Access to other applications, AC 110–114
 reports as PDF, XPS files, AC 381
Expression Builder, AC 161, AC 349, AC 354, AC 399
expressions, entering, AC 349, AC 396

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

F

- Favorites area, **OFF 16**
- field lists, moving, AC 297, AC 299
- field selector, **AC 286**
- fields, **AC 3**
  - *See also specific type*
  - adding, deleting, AC 155
  - adding in Datasheet view, AC 282
  - adding to design grid, AC 79–80
  - adding to forms, AC 251–252
  - adding to reports, AC 382–384
  - adding to tables, AC 278–279
  - changing contents of, AC 170–171
  - changing size, AC 165
  - computed (calculated), AC 115, AC 434
  - determining special properties for, AC 16
  - including all, in SQL queries, AC 426
  - naming, AC 8
  - qualifying, **AC 447**
  - renaming, AC 19
  - searching Memo, AC 319
  - selecting, deselecting, AC 55
  - sorting results of, AC 435–437
  - specifying, AC 166
  - text, using query criterion involving, AC 429
  - updating new, AC 283–287
  - using formats with, AC 168
- file management, **OFF 39–41**
- file names, **OFF 12**
- File Transfer Protocol (FTP), **APP 3**
- files, **OFF 7**
  - *See also specific file type*
  - deleting, OFF 41
  - importing and linking, AC 345
  - moving, OFF 40
  - opening existing Office, OFF 26–27
  - opening from Windows Explorer, OFF 38
  - opening recent, OFF 36
  - renaming, OFF 39–40
  - saving, OFF 12
- Fill/Back Color button, AC 299–300
- Filter by Form, AC 152–153
- Filter by Selection, AC 148–149
- filtering
  - database records, AC 147–154
  - records in reports, AC 228
  - using forms, AC 253–254
- filters, **AC 147**
  - clearing form, AC 254
  - and queries, AC 154–161
  - toggling, clearing, AC 150
  - using common, AC 150–151
- FIRST function, AC 119
- fixed-width files, **AC 114**
- folder windows, **OFF 15**
- folders, **OFF 9**
  - creating, OFF 13–15
  - creating folders within, OFF 16
  - deleting, OFF 41
  - Microsoft Office, OFF 11
  - organizing and managing, OFF 13–17
- fonts
  - changing in datasheets, AC 181
  - changing in labels, AC 256
  - colors, AC 310
  - restoring size, AC 457
  - sizing, AC 420, AC 421
  - theme, AC 238, AC 239
- footers
  - grouping and sorting options, AC 220
  - Page Footer section, AC 216
- foreign keys, **AC 185**
- Form Design Tools Design tab, OFF 24
- Form view, **AC 48**, AC 50, AC 305–307
- Form Wizard, AC 210, AC 243–244
- Format Painter button, OFF 25
- format symbol, **AC 168**
- formats, **AC 168**
  - changing control's, AC 248
  - date, AC 247
- formatting
  - conditional, **AC 224**
  - controls, AC 361–362
  - datasheet appearance, AC 179–182
- forms, **AC 48**, **AC 108**
  - adding date to, AC 246–247
  - adding fields to, AC 251–252
  - adding records with, AC 144
  - adding text boxes to, AC 358–360
  - adding titles to, AC 301
  - background color of, changing, AC 299–300
  - changing special effects, colors, AC 309–312
  - creating, AC 48–50, AC 243–244
  - creating for queries, AC 108–110
  - creating in Design view, AC 292–293
  - creating with datasheets, AC 322–325
  - filtering, sorting with, AC 253–254
  - Layout view, using, AC 245
  - multitable, techniques, AC 292–308
  - planning, AC 214
  - printing, AC 255
  - saving, closing, AC 254
  - saving queries as, AC 84
  - sections, controls, AC 245–246
  - split, AC 141–144
  - titles, changing, AC 312–313
  - updating to reflect table changes, AC 174–175
  - using, AC 314–317
  - using themes, AC 238–241
  - viewing in Form view, AC 305
- FROM clause, **AC 423**
- functions
  - and arguments, **AC 394**
  - built-in, AC 441–444
  - Help on, AC 399
  - list of, AC 399
  - naming results of, AC 442

G

- galleries on Ribbon, **OFF 24**
- greater than symbol (>)
  - comparison operator, AC 91
  - upper- and lower-case characters, AC 168
- green computing, **AC 30**
- gridlines, changing in datasheets, AC 180
- GROUP BY clause, **AC 444**
- Group Footer section, reports, AC 354
- Group Header section, reports, AC 216, AC 354
- grouping, **AC 122**
  - controls, AC 362–363
  - options, AC 220–221
  - in reports, forms, AC 216–219, AC 392
  - requirements, restrictions, AC 445–446
  - vs. subreports, AC 372
  - using, AC 122–123, AC 444
- groups on Ribbon, **OFF 23–24**, OFF 28
- guidelines, project planning, APP 1–2

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

H

- hard copy, **AC 30**
- HAVING clause, AC 446
- headers
  - grouping and sorting options, AC 220
  - Page Header section, AC 216
- headings in reports, AC 54–56, AC 216
- Help, AC 62
  - on functions, AC 399
  - Microsoft Office, Windows, OFF 41–49
  - in SQL, AC 423
- Help and Support, Windows, **OFF 48–49**
- hiding details in reports, AC 242
- Home tab, Ribbon, **OFF 24**, OFF 28
- Hyperlink data type, AC 278
- Hyperlink fields, entering data in`, AC 291
- Hyperlink tool, Controls group, AC 357

I

- IIf function, AC 394
- Image tool, Controls group, AC 357
- Import Spreadsheet Wizard, AC 38–42
- importing, **AC 38**
  - data from other applications to Access, AC 38–42
  - vs. linking files, AC 345
  - tab-delimited files, AC 345
- IN operator, **AC 94**
- InfoPath 2010, **OFF 8**
- inner joins, AC 447
- inner queries, AC 451–452
- Input Mask Wizard, AC 280–281
- input masks
  - described, **AC 277**, **AC 280**
  - planning, AC 278
- INSERT command, using, AC 454–455
- Insert Hyperlink dialog box, AC 291
- Insert Object command, AC 287–288
- IntelliSense, AC 354

J

- join lines, **AC 102**, AC 103
- join properties, **AC 105**
- joining tables, **AC 447**
- joins, **AC 100**
  - adding criteria to join queries, AC 114–115
  - changing join properties, AC 105–106
  - creating reports involving, AC 106–108
  - joining tables, AC 100–108
  - joining tables to themselves, AC 450–451
  - restricting records in, AC 115
  - table, AC 100–108, AC 447–451

K

- keyboard code icons, OFF 26
- keyboard shortcuts, **OFF 5**
- keyboarding, minimizing wrist injuries, OFF 4
- keys, sort, AC 435
- KeyTips, **OFF 26**
- keywords, **AC 58**

L

- Label tool, Controls group, AC 357
- Label Wizard, AC 210, AC 255–259
- labels
  - attached, **AC 245**
  - changing form, AC 308
  - changing report, AC 356
  - control, AC 297–299
  - mailing, AC 255–259
  - planning, AC 214
  - resizing, AC 397–398
- landscape orientation, **AC 30**
- LAST function, AC 119
- Layout view, AC 53
  - creating forms with datasheets in, AC 323–325
  - creating reports in, AC 236–238
  - using in forms, AC 245
  - using in reports, AC 49, AC 53–58, AC 216, AC 230–231
- layouts, **AC 29**
  - print layout issues, reports, AC 371–372
  - stacked and tabular, AC 246, **AC 249**
- LEFT JOIN, AC 450
- legal values, **AC 167**
- less than symbol (<)
  - comparison operator, AC 91
  - upper- and lower-case characters, AC 168
- libraries, **OFF 16**
- Libraries area, **OFF 16**
- Line tool, Controls group, AC 357
- Linked Table Manager, AC 346
- linking vs. importing files, AC 345
- links, Help, OFF 46
- List Box tool, Controls group, AC 357
- lists (Excel), **AC 38**
- live database, **AC 61**
- live preview, for themes, **AC 241**
- logging on
  - to the computer, OFF 6–7
  - described, **OFF 5**
- lookup fields
  - creating, **AC 156–158**
  - using, AC 171–174

M

- mailing labels
  - creating, customizing, printing, AC 255–259
  - planning, AC 214
- maintaining databases, **AC 138**
- major key, **AC 94**, AC 99
- make-table queries, **AC 165**
- Manage Attachments command, AC 289–291, AC 314–317
- many-to-many relationships, AC 342
- margins in reports, AC 400–401
- MAX function, AC 119, AC 441
- maximizing windows, **OFF 12**
- Memo data type, AC 278
- memo fields, AC 277, AC 285–286, AC 319–320
- menus, **OFF 10**
  - *See also specific menu*
  - using shortcut, OFF 29
- metadata, **AC 58**
- Microsoft Access 2010
  - *See also* Access
  - described, **OFF 8**, **OFF 9**
- Microsoft Communicator, **OFF 8**
- Microsoft Excel 2010
  - *See also* Excel
  - described, **OFF 8**
- Microsoft InfoPath 2010, **OFF 8**
- Microsoft Office 2010, **OFF 8**
  - *See also* Office 2010
  - introduction to, **OFF 7**
  - programs included, OFF 8
- Microsoft Office folder, OFF 11
- Microsoft Office Specialist (MOS), AC 62, AC 255, AC 325, AC 456

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Microsoft Office suites, **OFF 8**
Microsoft OneNote 2010, **OFF 8**
Microsoft Outlook 2010, **OFF 8**
Microsoft PowerPoint 2010, **OFF 8**
Microsoft Publisher 2010, **OFF 8**
Microsoft SharePoint Workspace 2010, **OFF 8**
Microsoft Web Apps, **OFF 8**
Microsoft Word 2010
  described, **OFF 8**
  exporting Access data to, AC 113–114
MIN function, AC 119, AC 441
minimizing Ribbon, OFF 28
minor key, **AC 94**, AC 99
mistakes
  correcting table structure errors, AC 37
  erasing with DELETE or BACKSPACE keys, AC 257
  undoing, AC 20, AC 251, AC 252, AC 367
modifying. *See* changing
mouse
  operations (table), OFF 4
  right-clicking, OFF 29
  using, OFF 2, OFF 4
moving
  controls, AC 249
  fields in reports, AC 382–384
  files, OFF 40
  Quick Access Toolbar, OFF 29
  windows, OFF 42–43
multiplication, in computed fields, AC 434
multitable reports, creating, AC 231–235
multivalued fields
  creating, **AC 158–159**
  using in queries, AC 183–185
multivalued lookup fields, AC 172–174

N

names
  fields, AC 8
  file, OFF 12
  tables, AC 8
  user, **OFF 5**
naming controls, AC 400
navigation pane, **OFF 15**, OFF 17
Navigation Pane, OFF 22–23
  Access work area, AC 14
  customizing, AC 127
  matching screenshot of, AC 232
Navigation Pane, Access work area, **AC 15**
NOT, using in compound criterion, AC 432, AC 433
Number data type, **AC 9**

O

object dependencies
  overview of, AC 318
  viewing, AC 319
Object tabs (Access), **AC 15**
object tabs in Access work area, **OFF 22**
objects
  assigning themes to, AC 240–241
  OLE, and Insert Object command, AC 287–288
ODBC (Open Database Connectivity), AC 454
Office 2010
  See also specific program
  elements common to Office programs, OFF 23–30
  features common to programs, OFF 34–39
  Help, OFF 41, OFF 44–48
  opening existing files, OFF 26–27
  publishing Web pages online, APP 3–4
Office 2010 suites, OFF 8–9
Office Help, OFF 44–46
OLE (Object Linking and Embedding), **AC 278**
OLE fields, AC 289
OLE Object data type, AC 278
OLE Object fields, entering data in, AC 287–288
OneNote 2010, **OFF 8**
one-to-many relationship, **AC 9**, **AC 186**, AC 274
Open dialog box, OFF 26–27
opening
  Access Help window, OFF 42
  Backstage view, OFF 22
  databases, AC 27, AC 62, AC 77, AC 215, AC 342
  Design view, AC 24
  existing Office files, OFF 26–27
  files, OFF 38
  forms, AC 50
operating systems, **OFF 2**
Option Button tool, Controls group, AC 357
Option Group tool, Controls group, AC 357
OR, using in compound criterion, AC 432
OR criterion, **AC 92–93**, AC 453
Oracle SQL implementation, AC 431
order, sort, AC 435
ORDER BY clause, **AC 435**
ordering records, AC 193–195
organizing files, folders, OFF 13–17
outer joins, AC 450
Outlook 2010, **OFF 8**
overlapping windows vs. tabbed documents, AC 58

P

page numbers, adding, AC 378–379
Page Setup tab, Report Layout Tools, AC 230–231, AC 399–401
pages, printing report, AC 231
panes
  described, **OFF 10**
  task, OFF 24
parameter queries
  described, **AC 87**
  using, AC 86–92
parentheses (()) and input mask characters, AC 282
passwords, **OFF 5**
Paste, Paste Special, Paste Append commands, AC 384
pasting SQL commands, AC 426
paths, **OFF 13**
PDF files
  described, **AC 30**
  publishing reports as, AC 381
pictures, changing size mode, AC 309
pixels, screen resolution, OFF 31–32
planning
  calculated fields, AC 116
  database maintenance, AC 140
  databases, AC 2
  forms, AC 214, AC 276
  multitable forms, AC 292
  projects, guidelines, APP 1–2
  queries, AC 76, AC 95
  records filtering, AC 148
  reports, AC 214, AC 215, AC 216, AC 341, AC 350

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

- SQL queries, AC 419
- table joins, AC 102

portrait orientation, **AC 30**
positioning
- controls on reports, AC 385
- fields on reports, AC 355
- labels on reports, AC 360
- subforms on forms, AC 301–304

postal codes, AC 12
PowerPoint 2010, **OFF 8**
previewing
- live preview, **AC 241**
- tables, AC 30–32

Previous Locations button, **OFF 15**
primary keys, **AC 3–4**
- AutoNumber field as, AC 343
- determining, AC 5, AC 8–9
- modifying, AC 16–17
- modifying composite, AC 347

primary sort key, **AC 94**
Print Preview, AC 53
printing
- forms, AC 255
- mailing labels, AC 259
- relationships, AC 189
- reports, AC 108, AC 231, AC 236, AC 380, AC 401
- tables, AC 30–32

printouts, **AC 30**
Program Flow functions, AC 395
programs
- *See also specific program*
- displayed on Start menu, OFF 49
- Office 2010. *See* Office 2010
- opening Help window in Office, OFF 42
- starting, OFF 8–9, OFF 11
- starting from Windows Explorer, OFF 38
- starting using search box, OFF 34–35
- switching between, OFF 18

project planning guidelines, APP 1–2
projects
- advanced report techniques, AC 338–341
- database creation, AC 2–12
- maintaining a database, AC 138–140
- multitable forms, AC 274–275
- querying a database, AC 74–76
- reports and forms, AC 210–213
- using SQL, AC 418–420

property sheets, **AC 97–98**
- changing captions, AC 118–119
- resizing, AC 310, AC 351

Publisher 2010, **OFF 8**
publishing
- Office 2010 Web pages online, APP 3–4
- reports, AC 381

Q

qualifying (fields), **AC 447**
queries, AC 95, **AC 42–43**
- *See also* SQL queries
- adding criteria to join, AC 114–115
- changing captions, AC 118
- creating, AC 43–45, AC 77–82
- creating for reports, AC 347–350
- creating forms for, AC 108–110
- date fields in, AC 322
- Date/Time, Memo, Yes/No fields in, AC 319–322
- determining criteria, AC 80–82
- entering new SQL, AC 25
- grouping, AC 444–446
- IN clauses, using, AC 453
- including all fields in, AC 426
- make-table, **AC 165**
- making mass changes, AC 161–165
- parameter, AC 86–92
- saving, AC 47, AC 90, AC 426
- saving SQL, AC 424
- sorting in, AC 94–100, AC 435–440
- special criteria, AC 94
- and subqueries, **AC 451–452**
- top-values, AC 99–100
- Union, AC 454
- update, delete, append, **AC 161–164**
- using, AC 45–48
- using calculated fields in, AC 116–118
- using compound criterion, AC 92–93, AC 431
- using criterion in, AC 46–47
- using criteria, AC 427–429
- using multivalued fields in, AC 183–185
- using saved, AC 82–86
- using simple criterion, AC 428
- wildcards, using, AC 430

question mark (?), query wildcard, AC 430
Quick Access Toolbar, **OFF 25**
- customizing, OFF 30
- moving, OFF 29

quitting Access, AC 26, AC 60
quotation marks (“)
- criterion for text data, AC 82
- and expressions, AC 359
- and input mask characters, AC 282
- in SQL commands, AC 429
- and text fields, AC 47

R

ranges, specifying, AC 166
record selector, **AC 286**
record source, **AC 351**
Record Source, AC 395
records, **AC 3**
- adding to tables, AC 23–25, AC 28–29
- deleting, AC 20, AC 26, AC 147
- duplicates, AC 193
- filtering in reports, AC 228
- ordering, AC 193–195
- restricting in joins, AC 115, AC 449
- unmatched, AC 193
- updating, adding, AC 141–147

recover (database), **AC 61**
Rectangle tool, Controls group, AC 357
Recycle Bin, **OFF 7**
redundancy, removing unnecessary, AC 5, AC 10–12
referential integrity, **AC 185**
- effects of, AC 190–192
- specifying, AC 186–189

Refresh button, **OFF 15**
relational databases, **AC 3**
relationships
- creating, AC 233
- determining, implementing between tables, AC 9
- displaying tables in, AC 346
- one-to-many, **AC 9**, **AC 186**
- printing copy of, AC 189

removing
- *See also* deleting
- alternate colors, AC 380
- buttons from Quick Access Toolbar, OFF 30
- groups, sorts, AC 223–224
- redundancy, AC 10–12

renaming
- database objects, AC 62
- fields, AC 19, AC 282
- files, OFF 39–40
- tables, AC 447

repairing databases, AC 61
Report Footer section, AC 216

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Report Header section, AC 216
Report view, AC 53, AC 216, AC 361
Report Wizard, AC 210, AC 215, AC 351
reports
  adding, moving fields, AC 382–384
  adding date to, AC 246–247
  adding text boxes to, AC 358–360
  adding titles, page numbers, date, AC 378–379
  adding totals to, AC 56
  border styles, AC 398
  conditional formatting, AC 224–227
  controls, using, AC 221–230
  creating, AC 51–53, AC 381–399
  creating in Design view, AC 347–356
  creating in Layout view, AC 236–238
  creating queries for, AC 347–350
  filtering records in, AC 228
  fine-tuning, AC 401
  grouping and sorting options, AC 392
  grouping in, AC 216–219
  involving joins, AC 106–108
  labels, AC 356
  Layout view, using, AC 53–58, AC 216
  margins, AC 400–401
  multitable, creating, AC 231–235
  overview of, AC 215–216
  Page Setup buttons, AC 399
  printing, AC 108, AC 236, AC 380, AC 401
  publishing, AC 381
  resizing, AC 376
  saving, AC 230
  saving queries as, AC 84
  section properties, changing, AC 377
  sections, AC 216
  sorting in, AC 216–219
  subreports. *See* subreports
  summary, creating, AC 242
  titles, placement, AC 398
  totals and subtotals, AC 387–392
  updating to reflect table changes, AC 175–177
  using, AC 210
  using themes, AC 238–241
  viewing in Report view, AC 392–393
resizing
  datasheet columns, **AC 29–30**, AC 42
  fields, AC 165
  labels, AC 397–398
  property sheets, AC 310, AC 351
  report columns, AC 54–56
  reports, AC 376
  windows, OFF 43
resolution, screen, **OFF 31–34**
Restart command, **OFF 6**
Restore Down button, **OFF 12**
restoring Ribbon, OFF 28
restructure the database, **AC 138**
Ribbon, OFF 23–26
  displaying different tabs on, OFF 27
  minimizing, displaying, restoring, OFF 28
  and screen resolution, AC 215, AC 276
RIGHT JOIN, AC 450
row selector, **AC 22**
rules (conditional formatting), **AC 224**, AC 227

S

Save As command, APP 3
save copy, **AC 61**
Save Current Theme command, AC 239
Save Object As, AC 426
saving
  attachments, AC 316–317
  backup and recovery operations, AC 60–62
  databases, OFF 19–21, AC 62
  databases with different names, OFF 38–39
  files, OFF 12
  files online, OFF 13
  forms, AC 254
  import steps, AC 41
  queries, AC 47, AC 90, AC 426
  queries as forms, reports, AC 84
  records, AC 25
  reports, AC 230, AC 380
  SQL queries, AC 424
  tables, AC 21
  validation rules, AC 168
  Web pages to online location, APP 3–4
  your work frequently, AC 367
screen resolution, **OFF 31**
  changing, OFF 32–34
  Ribbon and, AC 215, AC 276
ScreenTip, Enhanced, **OFF 24**, OFF 48
scroll bars, OFF 23
scroll bars, scroll arrows, scroll box, **OFF 4**
search box
  described, OFF 15
  starting programs using, OFF 34–35
searching
  in databases, **AC 144**
  Memo fields, AC 319
  Office Help, OFF 44–46
  for records, AC 144–146
secondary sort key, **AC 94**
section properties, changing, AC 377
sections
  form, AC 245
  report, AC 216
Select, Controls group, AC 357
SELECT clause, **AC 423**
semicolons (;) in SQL commands, AC 423, AC 426
SEQUEL, AC 420
SharePoint Workspace 2010, **OFF 8**
shortcut keys, **OFF 4–5**
shortcut menus, **OFF 29**
  commands on, OFF 32
  using to change Fill/Back color, AC 299–300
Shut down command, **OFF 6**
simple criterion, **AC 428**
Simple Query Wizard, AC 43–45
size mode, changing, **AC 309**
Size/Space menu, Form Design Tools Arrange tab, AC 296
Sleep command, **OFF 6**
sliders, **OFF 33**
software, application, OFF 2
sort key, **AC 94**
sort order in reports, forms, AC 216
sorting, AC 193–195
  Advanced Filter/Sort, AC 153–154
  on multiple keys, AC 98–99
  omitting duplicates when, AC 439–440
  options, AC 220–221
  by postal code, AC 258
  in queries, AC 94–98
  in reports, AC 216–219, AC 392
  results in descending order, AC 438
  results of single, multiple fields, AC 435–437
  in SQL, AC 435
  using forms, AC 253–254
spacing between controls, adjusting, AC 296
special effects, AC 309–312
split forms

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

  - described, **AC 141**
  - updating records with, AC 141–144
- SQL (Structured Query Language), **AC 418**
  - vs. Access-generated SQL, AC 453–454
  - background, **AC 420**
  - built-in functions, using, AC 441–444
  - commands, AC 423–424
  - grouping, AC 444–446
  - IN clauses, using, AC 453
  - joining tables, AC 447–451
  - queries. *See* SQL queries
  - standards, AC 423
  - updating data through, AC 454–456
  - wildcards, AC 430, AC 431
- SQL queries
  - changing font size, AC 421
  - described, creating, AC 421, **AC 422**
  - entering new, AC 425
  - sorting in, AC 435–440
- SQL Server SQL implementation, AC 431
- SQL view, AC 422, AC 425
- square brackets ([])
  - and field names, AC 117
  - in queries, AC 87
- stacked layouts, AC 246, **AC 249**
- Standard Colors, AC 375, AC 393
- standard properties, **AC 58**
- Start button, **OFF 9**
- Start menu
  - described, **OFF 10**
  - programs displayed on, OFF 49
- starting
  - Access, AC 12, AC 27, AC 140, AC 214–215, AC 276
  - programs, OFF 9, OFF 11
  - programs from Windows Explorer, OFF 38
  - programs using search box, OFF 34–35
  - Windows 7, OFF 5–7
- statistics
  - calculating, AC 119–120
  - using criteria in calculating, AC 121–122
- Status bar, **AC 15, OFF 23**
- STDEV function, AC 119
- storage for databases, AC 13
- structure
  - changing database, AC 154–161
  - described, **AC 154**
- styles, border, AC 398
- subdatasheets, **AC 191–192**
- Subform Wizard, AC 301–304
- subforms, **AC 292**
  - modifying, AC 305–307
  - placing on forms, AC 301–304
- Subform/Subreport tool, Controls group, AC 357
- subqueries, using, **AC 451–452**
- subreports
  - adding to reports, AC 368–370
  - changing appearance of controls in, AC 374–375
  - using, AC 351
- subtotals, **AC 211**
  - adding totals and, AC 221–222
  - in reports, AC 387–392
- subtraction, in computed fields, AC 434
- suites, Microsoft Office, **OFF 8**, **OFF 9**
- Sum, calculating, AC 56
- SUM function, AC 119, AC 399, AC 441, AC 443
- Summary Options button, AC 233–234
- summary reports, creating, AC 242
- sums and totals, AC 222
- switching between programs, OFF 18
- System R, AC 420

T

- Tab Control tool, Controls group, AC 357
- tab stops, changing, AC 314
- tabbed documents, AC 58
- tab-delimited files, importing, AC 345
- Table of Contents, Help, OFF 47
- tables
  - *See also* databases
  - adding calculated fields to, AC 159–161
  - adding records to, AC 23–25, AC 28–29
  - changing structure of, AC 20–22, AC 37, AC 154–161
  - checking structure in Design view, AC 22
  - closing, AC 23, AC 26
  - containing validation rules, updating, AC 169–179
  - copying structure, AC 342
  - creating, AC 15–20, AC 32–37, AC 343–344
  - determining relationships between, AC 9
  - identifying, AC 5
  - joining, AC 100–108, AC 447–451
  - naming, AC 8
  - previewing, printing, AC 30–32
  - referential integrity, AC 185–192
  - renaming, AC 447
  - saving, AC 21
- tabs
  - active, **OFF 26–27**
  - changing order, AC 314
  - displaying different, on Ribbon, OFF 27
  - on Ribbon, **OFF 23–24**
- tabular layouts, AC 246, **AC 249**
- task panes, **OFF 24**
- taskbar, starting programs, OFF 9–10
- templates, creating databases using, AC 14
- Text Box tool, Controls group, AC 357
- text boxes
  - adding to reports or forms, AC 358–360
  - described, OFF 6
- Text data type, **AC 9**, AC 281
- text data, using in criterion, **AC 80–82**
- text fields, using query criterion involving, AC 429
- text files, exporting to, AC 113–114
- Theme colors, AC 375, AC 393
- themes, **AC 238**
  - assigning to objects, AC 240–241
  - using in reports, forms, AC 238–241
- title bar, **OFF 11**
- titles
  - form, AC 301, AC 312–313
  - report, AC 52–53, AC 237, AC 378–379
- Toggle Button tool, Controls group, AC 357
- Toggle Filter button, AC 150
- tool tabs on Ribbon, **OFF 24**
- top-values queries, creating, **AC 99–100**
- Total pane, AC 223
- totals
  - adding to reports, AC 56
  - grouping and sorting options, AC 220
  - including in datasheets, AC 177–179
  - removing from datasheets, AC 179
  - and subtotals, AC 211, AC 387–392

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

U

unbound controls
  converting to bound controls, AC 358
  described, **AC 221**
Unbound Object Frame tool, Controls group, AC 357
undoing
  actions, AC 390
  changes in tables, AC 25
  changes to datasheet structure, AC 287
  input mistakes, AC 20
  mistakes, AC 367
ungrouping controls, AC 363
Union queries, AC 454
unique identifiers, **AC 3–4**
UPDATE command, using, AC 455–456
UPDATE operations, AC 454
update queries, **AC 162–163**
updating
  cascading updates, AC 186
  data through SQL, AC 454–455
  database records, AC 141–147
  links with Linked Table Manager, AC 346
  new fields, AC 283–287
  tables containing validation rules, AC 169–179
USB flash drives
  opening databases from, OFF 26–27
  saving to, OFF 20
  storing databases on, AC 13
  viewing, OFF 14
Use Control Wizards button, AC 302–303
user accounts, **OFF 5**
user names, **OFF 5**

V

validation rules, **AC 162**
  creating, AC 162–168
  saving, AC 168
  updating tables that contain, AC 169–179
values, default, legal, allowable, AC 167
VAR function, AC 119
viewing
  attachments, AC 292
  forms in Form view, AC 305, AC 307
  object dependencies, AC 319
  reports in Report view, AC 392–393
views
  See also specific view
  Access, AC 15
  changing, OFF 23
  for reports, AC 53
  SQL, AC 422
  switching between query, AC 45

W

Web Apps, **OFF 8**
Web pages, publishing Office 2010 online, APP 3–4
Web-based templates, AC 14
Welcome screen, **OFF 5–6**
WHERE clause, **AC 423**, AC 427, AC 428, AC 446, AC 448, AC 455
wildcards, query, **AC 80**, AC 430
windows
  Access, AC 15
  AutoPlay, OFF 14
  folder, OFF 15–17
  maximizing, OFF 12
  moving, OFF 42–43
  overlapping, vs. tabbed documents, AC 58
  resizing, OFF 43
Windows 7, **OFF 2**
  Basic and Aero interfaces, OFF 2–3
  desktop overview, OFF 7
  saving and organizing files, OFF 12–22
  starting, OFF 5–7
Windows Explorer
  creating blank databases from, OFF 37
  starting programs from, OFF 38
Windows Help and Support, **OFF 48–49**
Word, exporting Access data to, AC 113–114
Word 2010, **OFF 8**
work area, Access, **OFF 22–23**
worksheets, importing into Access, AC 38–42

X

XPS files
  described, **AC 30**
  publishing reports as, AC 381

Y

Yes/No data type, AC 278
Yes/No fields, AC 284, AC 319–320

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Complete Quick Reference Summary

Microsoft Access 2010 Quick Reference Summary

Task	Page Number	Mouse	Ribbon	Shortcut Menu	Keyboard Shortcut
Advanced Filter/Sort, Use	AC 153		Advanced button (Home tab | Sort & Filter group), Advanced Filter/Sort)		
All Fields in Query, Include	AC 79, AC 80	Double-click asterisk			
Alternate Row Colors, Change in Datasheet	AC 181, AC 182		Select table, Alternate Row Color button arrow (Home tab | Text Formatting group), select color OR Datasheet Formatting Dialog Box Launcher (Home tab | Text Formatting group)		
Append Query, Use	AC 164		Append button (Query Tools Design Tab | Query Type group)		
Ascending Button, Use to Order Records	AC 194		Select field, Ascending button (Home tab | Sort & Filter group)	Right-click field name, click Sort A to Z or Sort Z to A	
Border Style, Change	AC 398		Select controls, Property Sheet button (Report Design Tools Design tab | Tools group), click Border Style property box, select style	Select controls, right-click a control, click Properties, click Border Style property box, select style	
Calculated Field, Create	AC 159	In Design view, create new field, click Data Type box arrow, click Calculated			
Calculated Field in Query, Create Using Expression Builder	AC 348		Builder button (Query Tools Design tab | Query Setup group)	Right-click field row, Build	
Calculated Field in Query, Use	AC 116			Right-click field row, Zoom	
Can Grow Property, Change	AC 373, AC 386		Select control, Property Sheet button (Report Design Tools Design tab | Tools group), change Can Grow property to Yes	Right-click control, click Properties, change Can Grow property to Yes	

Microsoft Access 2010 Quick Reference Summary *(continued)*

Task	Page Number	Mouse	Ribbon	Shortcut Menu	Keyboard Shortcut
Caption, Change in Query	AC 118		Property Sheet button (Query Tools Design Tab | Show/Hide group), Caption box	Right-click field in design grid, click Properties on shortcut menu, Caption box	
Close Object	AC 23	Close button for object		Right-click object tab, Close	
Collection of Legal Values, Specify	AC 167	In Design view, enter criterion specifying legal values in Validation Rule property box in Field Properties pane			
Column Headings, Modify	AC 54			Right-click field name, Rename Field	
Column, Resize	AC 54, AC 55	Double-click right boundary of field selector in datasheet		Right-click field name, Field Width	
Common Filter, Use	AC 150			Click arrow for field, point to filter	
Comparison Operator, Use	AC 91	Create query, enter comparison operator in criterion			
Compound Criterion Involving AND, Use	AC 92	Place criteria on same line			
Compound Criterion Involving OR, Use	AC 93	Place criteria on separate lines			
Conditional Value, Assign	AC 394		Text Box tool (Report Design Tools Design tab | Controls group), select text box, click Property Sheet button (Report Design Tools Design tab | Tools group), click Control Source property, click Build button, assign condition using Expression Builder dialog box		
Control, Change Format	AC 248		Select control, Form Layout Tools Format tab, select formatting option from Font group		
Control for a Field, Add to Form Design	AC 293	Drag field from field list to form			
Control, Move	AC 249	Point to control, drag with four-headed mouse pointer			
Controls, Align	AC 295	Click+SHIFT to select controls, Align button (Form Design Tools Arrange tab | Sizing & Ordering group), select alignment style			
Controls, Conditionally Format	AC 224		Conditional Formatting button (Report Layout Tools Format tab | Control Formatting group), New Formatting Rule dialog box, specify rule		

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Microsoft Access 2010 Quick Reference Summary *(continued)*

Task	Page Number	Mouse	Ribbon	Shortcut Menu	Keyboard Shortcut
Controls, Move in Control Layout	AC 249	Select labels and controls for fields, drag to desired location			
Criteria, Use in Calculating Statistics	AC 121		Totals button (Query Tools Design Tab | Show/Hide group), Total box arrow, click calculation		
Criterion, Use	AC 46	Right-click query, Design View, Criteria row			
Crosstab Query, Create	AC 124		Query Wizard button (Create tab | Queries group), Crosstab Query Wizard		
Database, Create	AC 13		Blank database button (File tab | New tab)		
Database Properties, Change	AC 59		View and edit database properties link (File tab | Info tab)		
Data, Enter in Attachment Field	AC 289			Right-click field for attachment, Manage Attachments command, Add button	
Data, Enter in Date Fields	AC 285	In Datasheet view, click field, type date			
Data, Enter in Hyperlink Field	AC 291			Right-click hyperlink field, Hyperlink command, enter Web address	
Data, Enter in Memo Fields	AC 285	In Datsheet view, click field, type data			
Data, Enter in OLE Object Field	AC 287			Right-click object field, Insert Object command, navigate to file to insert	
Data, Enter in Yes/No Fields	AC 284	In Datasheet view, click check box to indicate Yes value			
Data, Enter Using an Input Mask	AC 283	In Datasheet view, type data into field			
Data, Export to Excel	AC 111		Excel button (External Data tab | Export group)	Right-click object, click Excel on Export menu	
Data, Import	AC 38, AC 345		Button for imported data format (External Data tab | Import & Link group)	Right-click object, click selected format on Import menu	
Data, Sort in Query	AC 96		Select field in design grid, click Sort row, click Sort row arrow, select order		
Date, Add	AC 246		In form, click Date and Time button (Form Layout Tools Design tab | Header/Footer group), select format, OK button		

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Microsoft Access 2010 Quick Reference Summary *(continued)*

Task	Page Number	Mouse	Ribbon	Shortcut Menu	Keyboard Shortcut
Default Value, Specify	AC 167	In Design view, select field in upper pane, enter value in Default Value property box in Field Properties pane			
Delete Query, Use	AC 163		Delete button (Query Tools Design tab | Query Type group)	Right-click any open area in upper pane, point to Query Type on shortcut menu, click Delete Query on Query Type submenu	
Design Grid, Clear	AC 95	In Design view, select all columns, DELETE			
Duplicate Records, Find	AC 193		Query Wizard button (Create tab | Queries group), Find Duplicates Query Wizard		
Duplicates, Omit	AC 97		In Design view, click first empty field, Property Sheet button (Query Tools Design tab | Show/Hide group), click Yes in Unique Values property box	Right-click first empty field, click Properties on shortcut menu, click Yes in Unique Values property box	
Field, Add New	AC 155		In Design view, Insert Rows button (Table Tools Design Tab | Tools group)		Design view, INSERT
Field, Add to Form	AC 251		Add Existing Fields button (Form Layout Tools Design tab | Tools group), drag fields from field list to form		
Field, Add to Report	AC 175		In Layout view, Add Existing Fields button (Report Layout Tools Design tab | Tools group), drag field from field list to desired location		
Field Contents, Change	AC 146	In Datasheet view or Form view, click in field, enter data			
Field, Delete	AC 155	In Design view, click row selector for field, DELETE	Delete Rows button (Table Tools Design tab | Tools group)		
Field in Query, Add	AC 79	Double-click field in upper pane			
Field List, Move	AC 297	Drag field list title bar			
Filter and Sort Using Form	AC 253		Advanced button (Home tab | Sort & Filter group), add field names to design grid, select sort order and specify criteria in design grid, Toggle Filters button		
Filter by Form, Use	AC 152		Advanced button (Home tab | Sort & Filter group), Advanced button, Filter by Form		
Filter by Selection, Use	AC 148		Selection button (Home tab | Sort & Filter group), select criterion		

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Microsoft Access 2010 Quick Reference Summary *(continued)*

Task	Page Number	Mouse	Ribbon	Shortcut Menu	Keyboard Shortcut
Filter, Clear	AC 150		Advanced button (Home tab | Sort & Filter group), Clear All Filters		
Filter, Toggle	AC 150		Toggle Filter button (Home tab | Sort & Filter group)		
Font, Change in Datasheet	AC 181		Select table, Font box arrow (Home tab | Text Formatting group), select font		
Font Color, Change in Datasheet	AC 181		Select table, Font Color button arrow (Home tab | Text Formatting group), select color		
Font Size, Change in Datasheet	AC 181		Select table, Font Size box arrow (Home tab | Text Formatting group), select size		
Format, Specify	AC 168	In Design view, select field, click Format property box, type format			
Form, Create	AC 48		Form button (Create tab | Forms group)		
Form, Create in Design View	AC 292		Select table, Form Design button (Create tab | Forms group)		
Form, Create Using Form Wizard	AC 243		Select table, Form Wizard button (Create tab | Forms group)		
Form Fill/Back Color, Change	AC 299			Right-click form, Fill/Back Color command, select color	
Form for Query, Create	AC 109		Select query, Form button (Create tab | Forms group)		
Form Label, Change	AC 308	In Design View, click twice to produce insertion point, edit text			
Form Title, Modify Appearance	AC 312	In Design view, select control, Property Sheet button (Form Design Tools Design tab | Tools group)		Right-click control, click Properties	
Form, Use	AC 315	Open Form in Form view, view records using navigation buttons, manipulate data using form fields			
Form, View in Form View	AC 305		View button (Home tab | Views group)		
Form with a Datasheet, Create in Layout View	AC 325		Blank Form button (Create tab | Forms group), display field list, click Show all tables, expand "one" table and drag fields to desired locations, expand "many" table and drag first field onto form, drag remaining fields		

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Microsoft Access 2010 Quick Reference Summary *(continued)*

Task	Page Number	Mouse	Ribbon	Shortcut Menu	Keyboard Shortcut
Gridlines, Change in Datasheet	AC 180		Gridlines button (Home tab | Text Formatting group)		
Group and Sort in Report	AC 217		Open report in Layout view, Group & Sort button (Report Layout Tools Design tab | Grouping & Totals group), Add a group or Add a sort button		
Group, Sort and Total Pane, Remove	AC 223	Close Grouping Dialog Box button	Group & Sort button (Design tab | Grouping & Totals group)		
Grouping, Use	AC 122	Create query, select Group By in Total row, select field to group by			
Input Mask Wizard, Use	AC 280	In Design view, click Input Mask property box in Field Properties pane, Build button, select desired mask			
Join Properties, Change	AC 105			In Design view, right-click join line, click Join Properties	
Labels, Create	AC 255		Labels button (Create tab | Reports group)		
Lookup Field, Create	AC 156	In Design view, click Data Type column for field, Data Type box arrow, Lookup Wizard			
Make-Table Query, Use	AC 165		Make Table button (Query Tools Design tab | Query Type group)		
Multiple Keys, Sort on	AC 98	Assign two sort keys in design grid			
Multitable Form Based on Many Table, Create	AC 326		Blank Form button (Create tab | Forms group), Add Existing Fields button		
Multitable Report, Create	AC 232		Select table, Report Wizard button (Create tab | Reports group), add fields for first table in Report Wizard, select second table, add fields for second table		
Multivalued Field, Query Showing Multiple Values	AC 183	Create query with specified fields			
Multivalued Lookup Field, Use	AC 172	In Datasheet view, click field, click check boxes, OK			
Navigation Pane, Customize	AC 127	Navigation Pane arrow			
Number Criterion, Use	AC 90	Create query, select table, enter criterion in field grid			

Microsoft Access 2010 Quick Reference Summary *(continued)*

Task	Page Number	Mouse	Ribbon	Shortcut Menu	Keyboard Shortcut
Object Dependencies, View	AC 319		Select table, Object Dependencies button (Database Tools tab | Relationships group), 'Objects that depend on me' option button		
Open Database	AC 27		Open button (File tab)		
Open Table	AC 24	Double-click table in Navigation Pane		Right-click table in Navigation Pane, click Open in shortcut menu	
Parameter Query, Create	AC 87		In Design view, type parameter in square brackets in criterion row of field grid, View button (Query Tools Design tab | Results group)		
Place Controls in a Control Layout	AC 245		Open form in Layout view, Form Layout Tools Arrange tab, select form controls, select control style from Table group		
Preview or Print Object	AC 31		Print or Print Preview button (File tab | Print tab)		CTRL+P, ENTER
Query, Create in Design View	AC 78, AC 347		Query Design button (Create tab | Queries group)		
Query, Create Using Simple Query Wizard	AC 43		Query Wizard button (Create tab | Queries group)		
Query, Export	AC 111, AC 113, AC 114		Select query in Navigation Pane, application button (External Data tab | Export group)	Right-click query in Navigation Pane, click Export	
Range, Specify	AC 166	In Design view, select field, enter criterion specifying range in Validation Rule property box in Field Properties pane			
Record, Add	AC 28	New (blank) record button in Navigation buttons	New button (Home tab | Records Group)		CTRL+PLUS SIGN (+)
Record, Delete	AC 147	In Datasheet view, click record selector, DELETE	Delete button (Home tab | Records group)		
Record, Search for	AC 144		Find button (Home tab | Find group)		CTRL+F
Record, Update	AC 146	In Form view or in Datasheet view, change desired data			
Records, Filter in Report	AC 228		Selection button (Home tab | Sort & Filter group)	Right-click field, select filter	
Records in a Join, Restrict	AC 115	In Design view, enter criterion for query			
Referential Integrity, Specify	AC 186, AC 346		Relationships button (Database Tools tab | Relationships group)		

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Microsoft Access 2010 Quick Reference Summary *(continued)*

Task	Page Number	Mouse	Ribbon	Shortcut Menu	Keyboard Shortcut
Remaining Fields in Table, Define	AC 19	In Datasheet view, click Click to Add field (Fields tab)			
Report, Add a Date	AC 378		Date and Time button (Report Design Tools Design tab | Header/Footer group)		
Report, Add a Group	AC 352		Group & Sort button (Report Design Tools Design tab | Grouping & Totals group)		
Report, Add a Page Number	AC 378		Page Numbers button (Report Design Tools Design tab | Header/Footer group)		
Report, Add a Sort	AC 353		Group & Sort button (Report Design Tools Design tab | Grouping & Totals group)		
Report, Add a Subreport	AC 368		More button (Report Design Tools Design tab | Controls group), click Subform/Subreport tool		
Report, Add a Text Box	AC 358		Text Box tool (Report Design Tools Design tab | Controls group)		
Report, Add a Title	AC 378		Title button (Report Design Tools Design tab | Header/Footer group)		
Report, Add Additional Fields	AC 385	Drag field from field list to report			
Report, Add Fields	AC 354, AC 382, AC 385		Add Existing Fields button (Report Design Tools Design tab | Tools group)		
Report, Add Totals and Subtotals	AC 387		Group & Sort button (Report Design Tools Design tab | Grouping & Totals group)		
Report, Create	AC 52		Report button (Create tab | Reports group)		
Report, Create in Design View	AC 351		Report Design button (Create tab | Reports group)		
Report, Create in Layout View	AC 236		Blank Report button (Create tab | Reports group)		
Report, Create Involving Join	AC 106		Select query, Report Wizard button (Create tab | Reports group)		
Report Filter, Clear	AC 229			Right-click field, clear filter from menu option	
Report, Group Controls	AC 362		Select controls, Size/Space button (Report Design Tools Arrange tab | Sizing & Ordering group), click Group		
Report Margins, Change	AC 400		Margins button (Report Design Tools Page Setup tab | Page Size group)		

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Microsoft Access 2010 Quick Reference Summary *(continued)*

Task	Page Number	Mouse	Ribbon	Shortcut Menu	Keyboard Shortcut
Report, Publish	AC 381		PDF or XPS button (External Data tab | Export group)	Right-click report, click PDF or XPS on Export menu	
Required Field, Specify	AC 166	In Design view, select field, Required property box in Field Properties pane, down arrow, Yes			
Row and Column Size, Change	AC 286	In Datasheet view, drag field selector edge for column and drag row selector edge for row			
Save Object	AC 21	Save button on Quick Access Toolbar	File tab, Save		CTRL+S
Simple Form with a Datasheet, Create	AC 323	Select “one” table, Form button (Create tab | Forms group)			
Single or Multivalued Lookup Fields, Modify	AC 161	In Design view, select field, click Lookup tab in Field Properties pane, change list in Row Source property to desired list			
Size Mode, Change	AC 309	Click control, Property Sheet button (Form Design Tools Design tab | Tools group), Size Mode property			
Split Form, Create	AC 142		Select table, More Forms button (Create tab | Forms group), Split Form		
Statistics, Calculate	AC 119		Create query, Totals button (Query Tools Design tab | Show/Hide group), click Total row in design grid, click Total box arrow, select calculation		
Subdatasheet, Use	AC 191	In Datasheet view, click plus sign in front of row			
Subform, Place on a Form	AC 301		More button (Form Design Tools Design tab | Controls group), Subform/Subreport tool, click in form to launch SubForm Wizard		
Summary Report, Create	AC 242		Open report in Layout view, Hide Details button (Report Layout Tools Design tab | Grouping & Totals group)		
Tab Stop, Change	AC 314		In Design view, select control, Property Sheet button (Form Design Tools Design tab | Tools group), All tab, change Tab Stop property to No		
Table, Create in Design View	AC 33, AC 343		Table Design button (Create tab | Tables group)		

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Microsoft Access 2010 Quick Reference Summary *(continued)*

Task	Page Number	Mouse	Ribbon	Shortcut Menu	Keyboard Shortcut
Table, View in Design View	AC 21		View button arrow (Table Tools Fields tab | Views group), Design View		
Tables, Join	AC 102		Query Design button (Create tab | Queries group), add field lists for tables to join, add desired fields to design grid, view query		
Text Data Criterion, Use	AC 80	Enter text as criterion in Criteria row of design grid			
Theme, Assign to a Single Object	AC 241		Open object in Layout view, Themes button (Design tab | Themes group), right-click theme in Theme picker, click the Apply Theme to This Object Only command		
Theme, Assign to All Objects	AC 240		Open object in Layout view, Themes button (Design tab | Themes group), select theme from Theme picker		
Title, Add to a Form	AC 301		Title button (Form Design Tools Design tab | Header/Footer group)		
Top Values Query, Create	AC 99		In Design view, Return box arrow (Query Tools Design tab | Query Setup group)		
Totals, Add to a Report	AC 57		Totals button (Report Layout Tools Design tab | Grouping & Totals group)		
Totals and Subtotals, Add	AC 221		Select field, Totals button (Report Layout Tools Design tab | Grouping & Totals group), Sum command		Right-click column header, click Total
Totals, Include in a Datasheet	AC 177		In Datasheet view, Totals button (Home tab | Records group), click Total row, click arrow		
Totals, Remove from a Datasheet	AC 179		Totals button (Home tab | Records group)		
Unmatched Records, Find	AC 193		Query Wizard button (Create tab | Queries group), Find Unmatched Query Wizard		
Update Query, Use	AC 162		Create query, Update button (Query Tools Design tab | Query Type group), select field, click Update To row in design grid	Right-click any open area in upper pane, point to Query Type on shortcut menu, click Update Query on Query Type submenu	
Wildcard, Use	AC 83	In Design view, click Criteria row in design grid, type criterion including wildcard			

Copyright 2010 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.